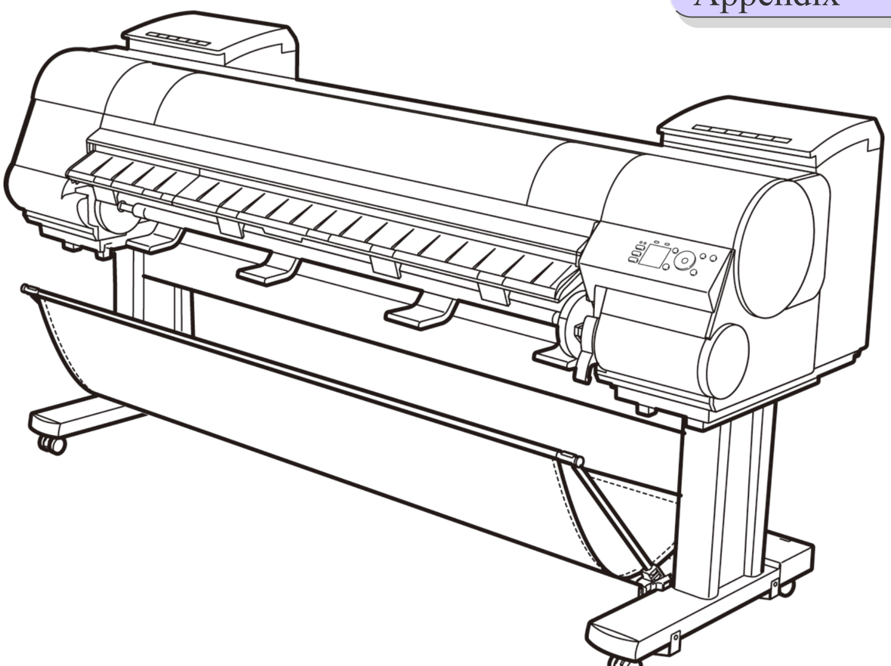
Canon

Large Format Printer

iPF8300S

User's Guide



imagePROGRAF

ver1.00 2011-02-14

ENG

Note

In order to be printed easily, this PDF-format manual is converted from the HTML-format instruction manual included on the "User Manuals CD-ROM" supplied with the printer. Thus, there are descriptions that are applied only in HTML format, and functions (video display function, etc.) that cannot be used. We appreciate your understanding.

Contents

Mac OS X Software 486

Printer Driver 487

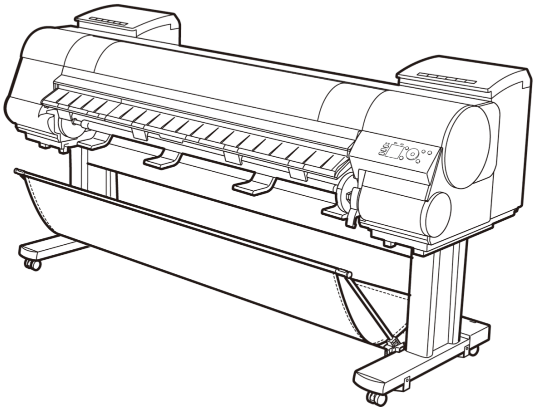
Preview 519

Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional 609

Printmonitor 674

Troubleshooting 1054

Basic Printing Workflow



Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

> Note
> - For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
> - A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working with Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing
  Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications.
  (See "Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing).") →P.122
- Borderless printing
  Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
  (See "Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size.") →P.107
  (See "Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") →P.114
  (See "Borderless Printing at Actual Size.") →P.100
- Banner printing
  You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.
  (See "Printing Multiple Pages Continuously.") →P.144
- 90-degree rotation before printing
  Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently.
  (See "Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees.") →P.172
- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (See "Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.") →P.73
  (See "Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") →P.79
  (See "Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.") →P.85
- Free Layout function
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.

(See "Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other.") →P.139

Sheet printing

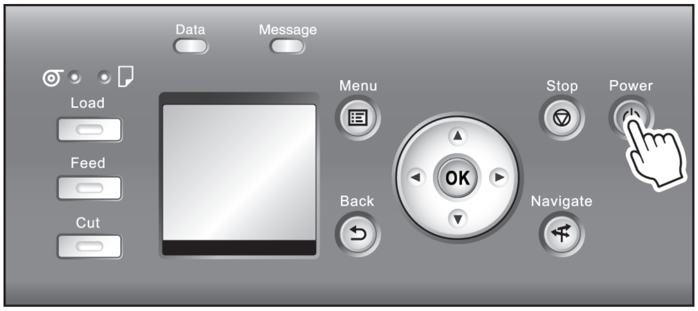
Sheets refer to individual sheets of paper.
Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing
  You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
  (See "Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.") →P.73
  (See "Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.") →P.85
- Free Layout function
  Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
  (See "Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other.") →P.139

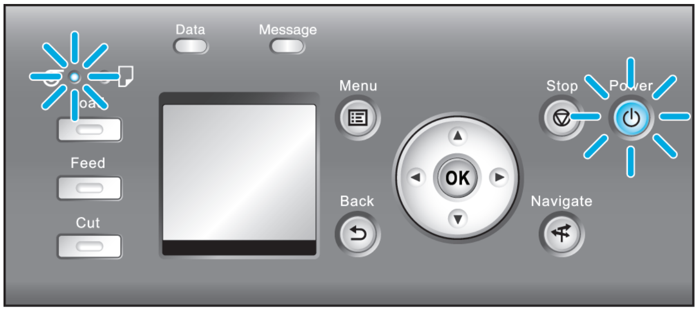
Turning the Printer On and Off

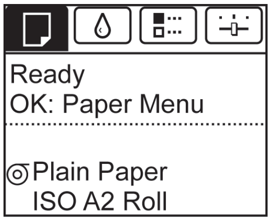
Turning the printer on

1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
   The printer will now start up.
   After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, "**Starting up... Please wait.**" is displayed.



2. The **Power Lamp** is lit when the printer finishes starting up, and the printer is now in **Standby**.




Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

The printer will not go into **Standby** in the following situations. Take the appropriate action.

- The Top Cover is open

  Close the Top Cover.

- The Ink Tank Cover is open

  Close the Ink Tank Cover.

- The Printhead is not installed

  see "Replacing the Printhead." →P.1013

- An Ink Tank is not installed

  see "Replacing Ink Tanks." →P.997

- If **ERROR** is shown on the Display Screen

  see "Error Messages." →P.1093

- The **Power Lamp** and **Message Lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen

  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.

- No paper is loaded

  Load paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") →P.5 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9

Important

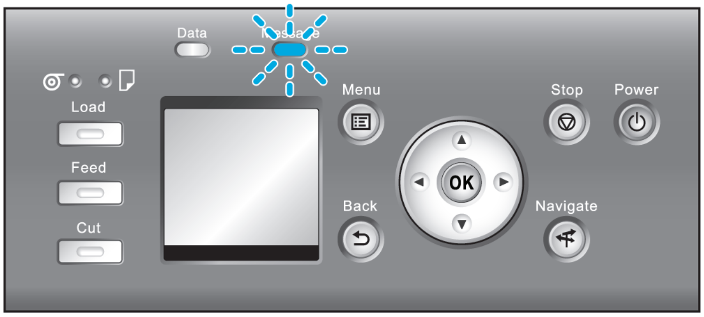
- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off

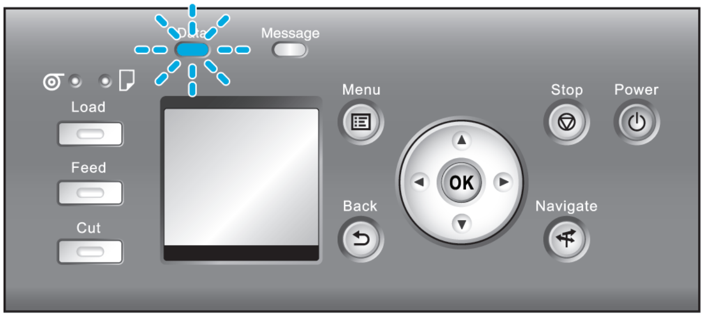
Important

- Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This may damage the printer.

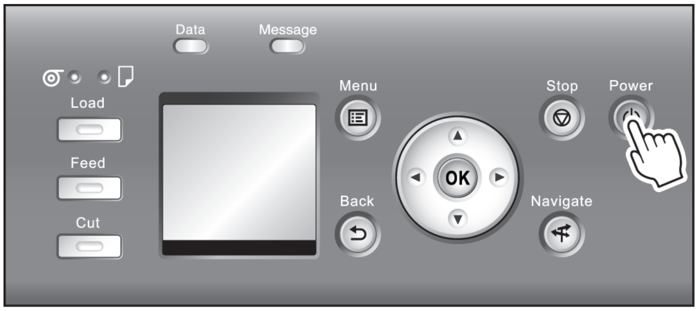
1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.
   If the **Message Lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (See "Error Messages.") →P.1093



If the **Data Lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.



After "**Shut Down.. Please Wait..**" is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow these steps to load and print on rolls.

- For details on using the Output Stacker, see "Using the Output Stacker." →P.823
- For details on using the optional Media Take-up Unit, see "Media Take-up Unit." →P.911

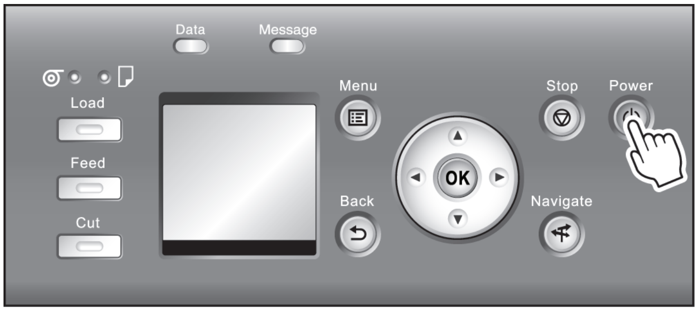
Important

- If you are not using the optional Media Take-up Unit when printing long documents such as banners, spread a clean cloth or paper on the floor. Use the Output Stacker to prevent long printed documents from being soiled by the floor after they are printed. (See "Using the Output Stacker.") →P.823

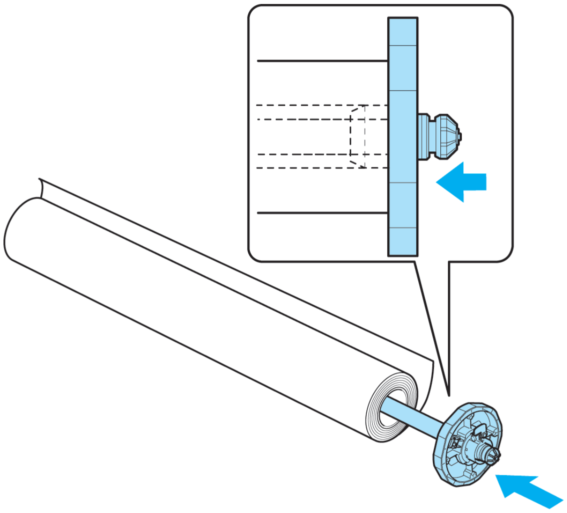
Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see **Paper Sizes** or the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775 (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
- To wait until the ink dries after printing before cutting the roll, set **Drying Time** in the printer driver. (See "Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.") →P.800
- Once you have used all the paper on a roll, clean the platen. If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

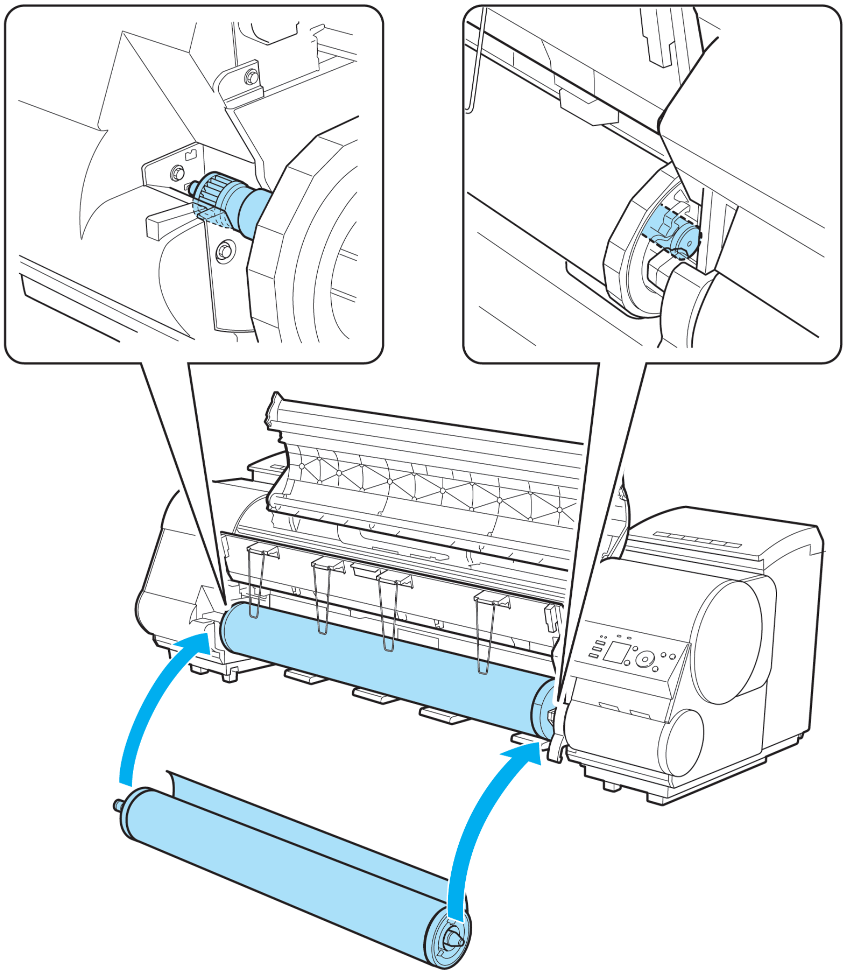
1. Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

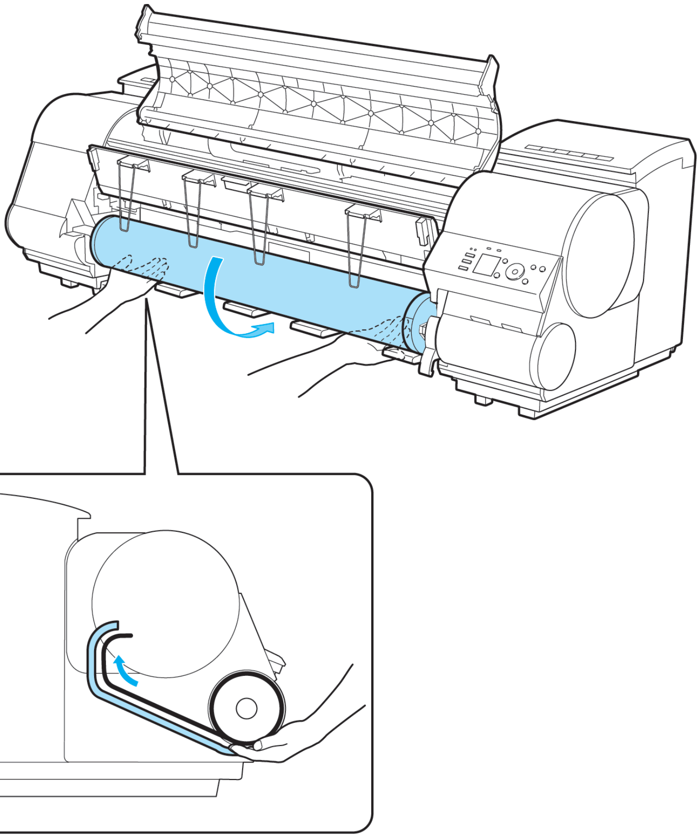


2. Load the roll on the Roll Holder. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782



3. Load the roll in the printer. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786

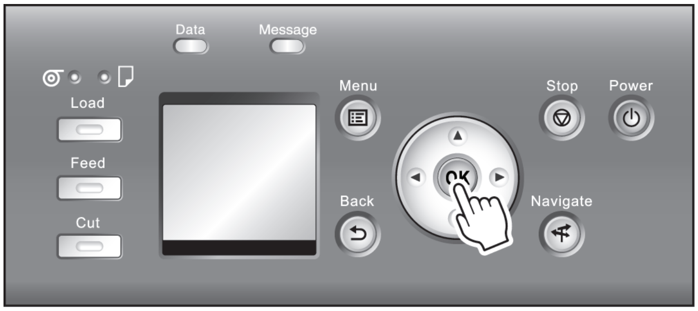




Important

- When printing without borders, definitely set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. If the switch is set incorrectly, print quality may deteriorate. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078

4. Select the type of paper. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.791

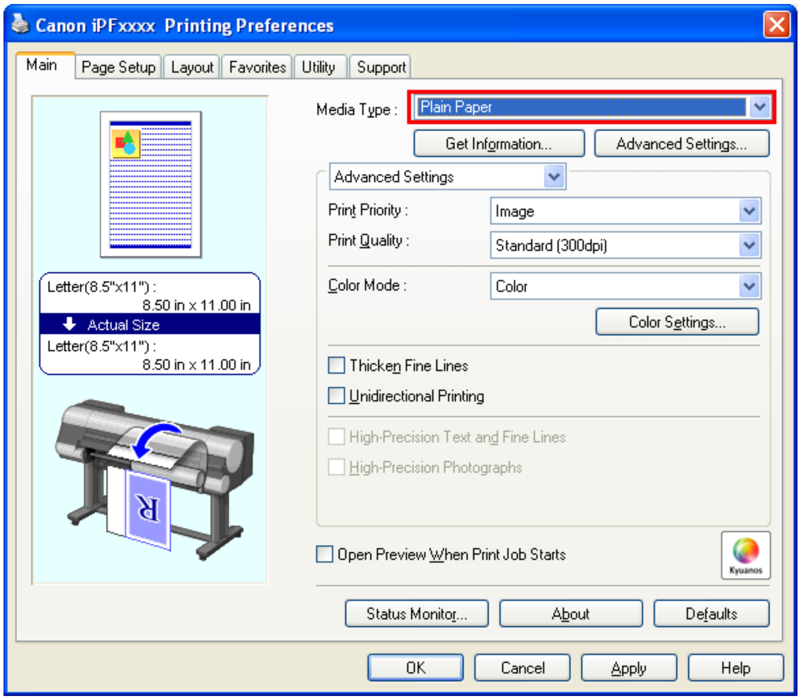


Note

- If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.793

5. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) →P.204
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) →P.489



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Color Mode : Color

☐ Thicken Fine Lines

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

☐ High-Precision Photographs

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows →P.11
- Printing from Mac OS X →P.12

The printer now starts printing the print job.

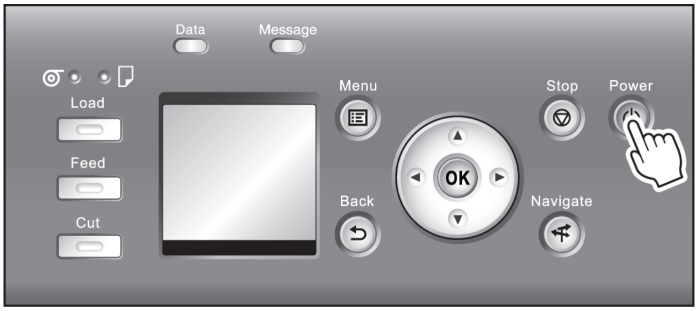
Loading and Printing on Sheets

These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.

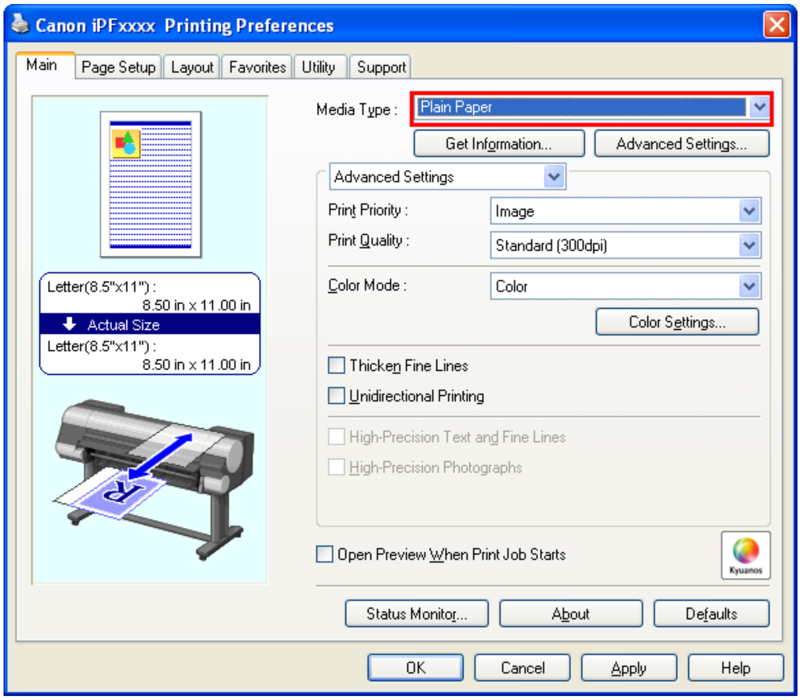
Note

- For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see **Paper Sizes** or the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775 (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. For the features and the main printing methods available for sheet printing, see "Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets." →P.2

1. Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3



2. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.
   - Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) →P.204
   - Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) →P.489


Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Color Mode : Color

☐ Thicken Fine Lines

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

☐ High-Precision Photographs

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

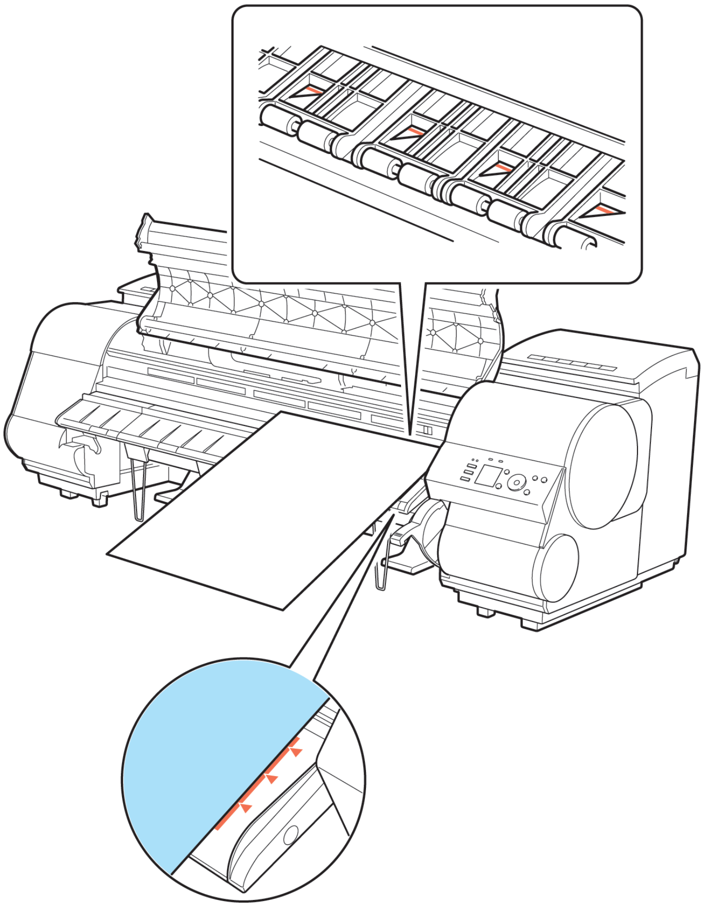
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

3. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows →P.11
- Printing from Mac OS X →P.12

4. Load the sheet. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813



Start printing.

Printing in Windows

Print from the application menu.

Important

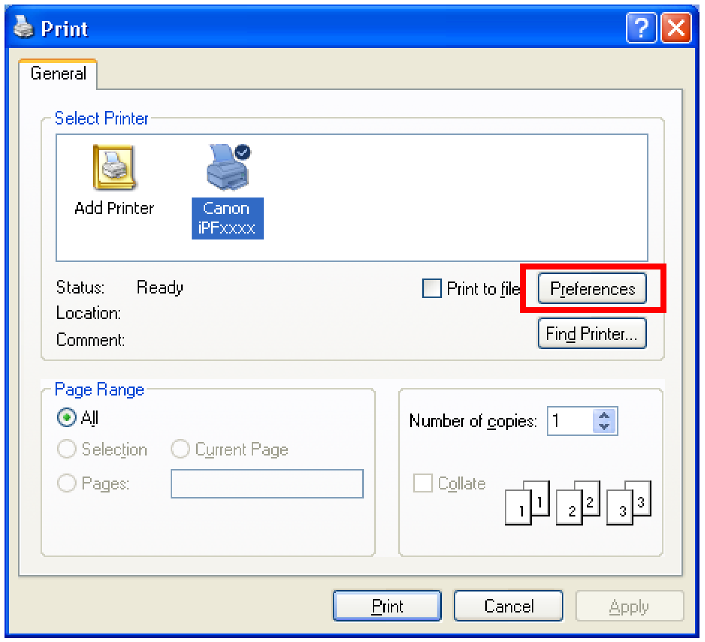
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the software application. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application



- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows.

- From the application
  (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).") →P.211
- From the operating system menu
  (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).") →P.213

Printing from Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup.app**.
For instructions on registering the printer, see "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS X)." →P.970

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.

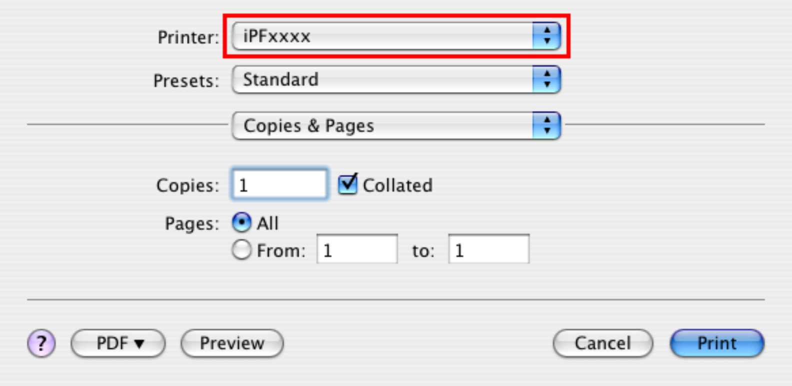
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

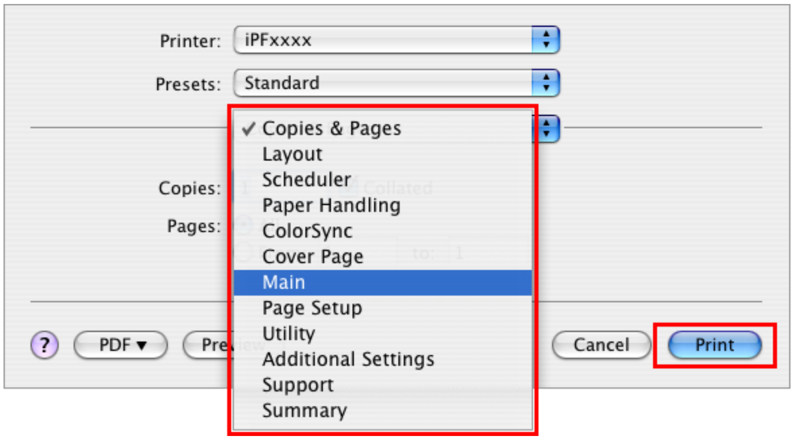
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



Printer: iPFxxxx
Presets: Standard
Copies & Pages
Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
Pages: ● All
○ From: 1 to: 1

3. Click **Print** to start printing.
   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

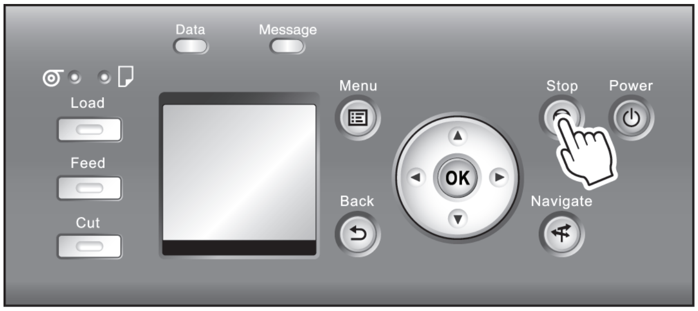


Printer: iPFxxxx
Presets: Standard

Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

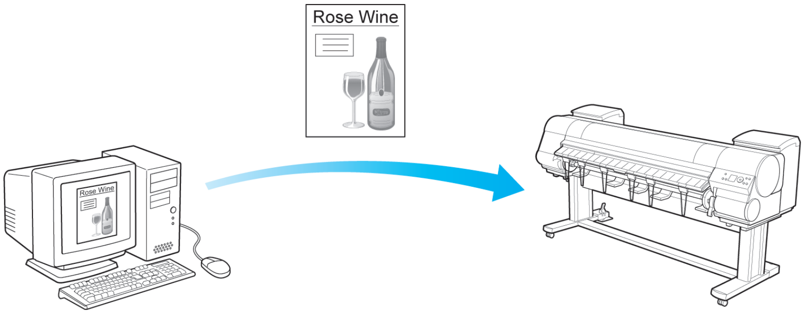
To cancel printing or reception of print jobs, press the **Stop** button on the Control Panel.



When you press the **Stop** button during printing, printer operation varies depending on the current status.

- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts

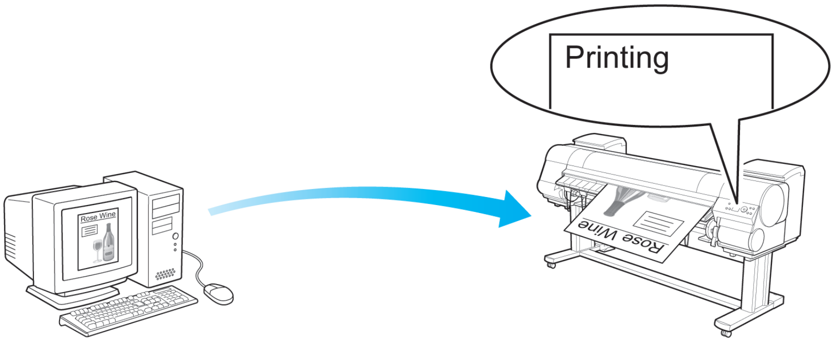
  Pressing the **Stop** button before printing starts will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job, select "**Yes**".



The Printer does not print.

- If you press the **Stop** button during printing

Pressing the **Stop** button during printing will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job immediately, select "**Yes**".



The printer stops immediately.

Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

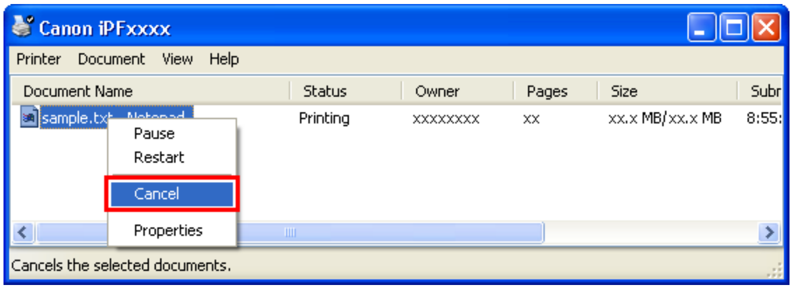
In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, you can cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed.

1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.

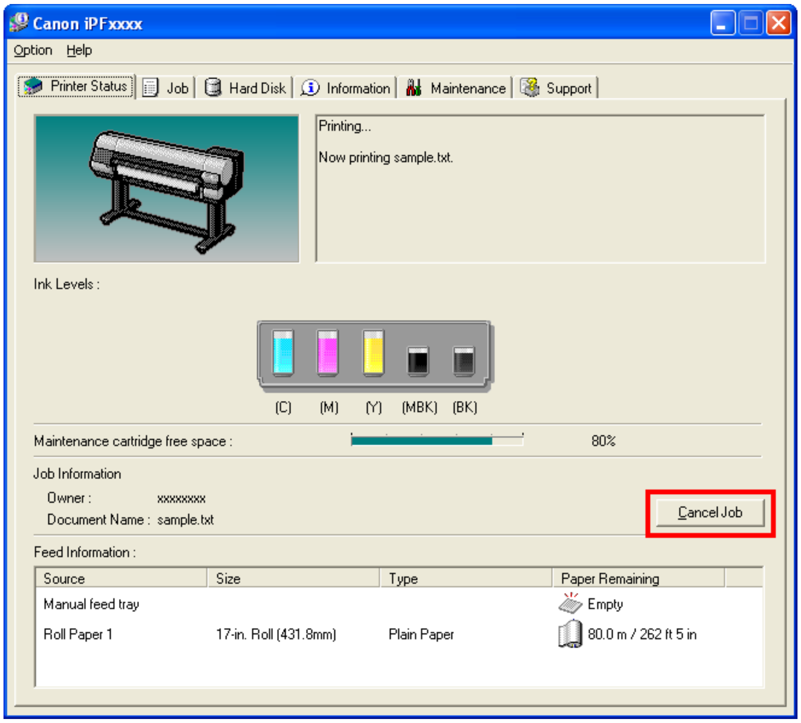


Document Name	Status	Owner	Pages	Size	Subr
sample.txt	Printing	xxxxxxxx	xx	xx.x MB/xx.x MB	8:55:

Cancels the selected documents.

3. If the job to cancel is not shown in the printer window (that is, if the print data has already been received by the printer), double-click the taskbar icon to display imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

4. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Printing...

Now printing sample.txt.

Ink Levels :

Maintenance cartridge free space : 80%

Job Information

Owner : xxxxxxxx

Document Name : sample.txt

Feed Information :

Source	Size	Type	Paper Remaining
Manual feed tray			Empty
Roll Paper 1	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)	Plain Paper	80.0 m / 262 ft 5 in

Note

- The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

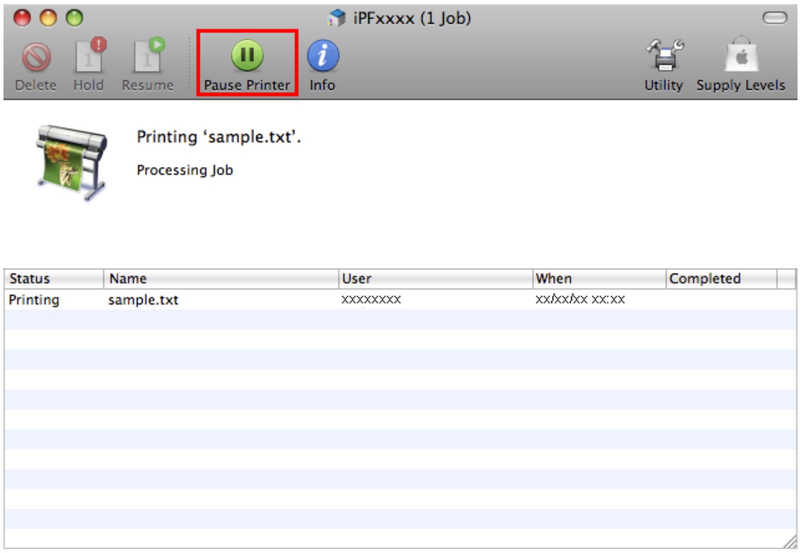
In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.
Otherwise, you can cancel jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor if they have been received by the printer or are currently being printed.

Note

- Print jobs are shown in the printer window while they are being sent from the computer. After transmission, jobs are not displayed even during printing.
- Print jobs are displayed in the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor window from the moment the printer starts receiving the print data until the moment printing is finished. They are not displayed before print data is sent to the printer, even if the computer has started preparing the print data.

1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.

2. Click **Pause Printer** to stop printing.

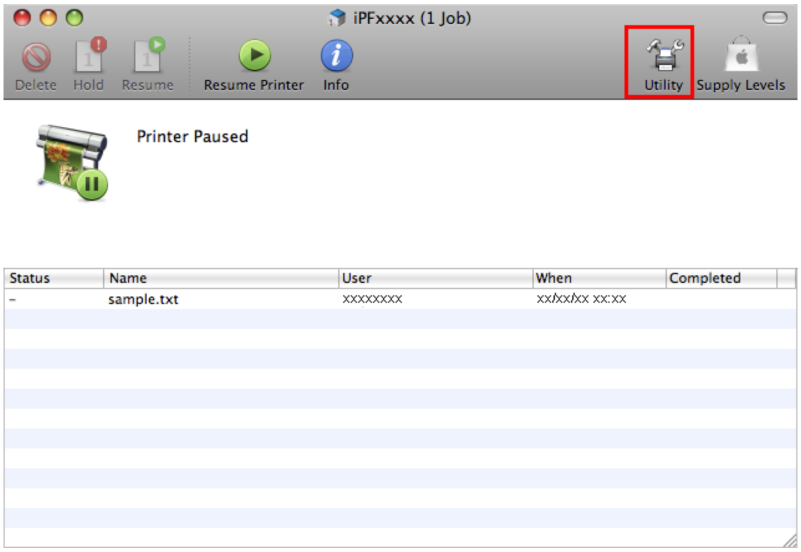


Printing 'sample.txt'.

Processing Job

Status	Name	User	When	Completed
Printing	sample.txt	xxxxxxxx	xx/xx/xx xx:xx	

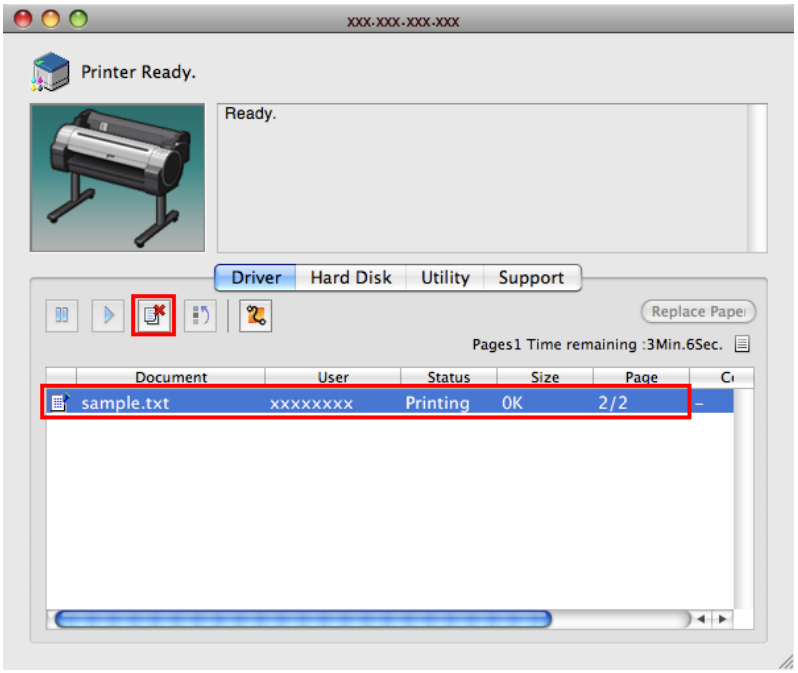
3. If there are no jobs in the printer window that can be canceled, (that is, if the print data has already been sent to the printer), click **Utility** to display imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



Printer Paused

Status	Name	User	When	Completed
-	sample.txt	xxxxxxxx	xx/xx/xx xx:xx	

4. Select the print job to cancel and click to delete the print job.



Printer Ready.

Ready.

Pages1 Time remaining :3Min.6Sec.

Document	User	Status	Size	Page	C
sample.txt	xxxxxxxx	Printing	0K	2/2	-

> **Note**
>
> - The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

The job sent to the printer is canceled.

5. Exit imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. In the printer window, click **Resume Printer**.

> **Important**
>
> - Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

Pausing Printing

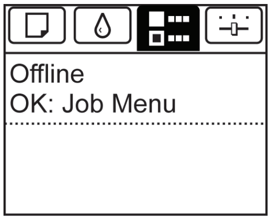
Pausing Printing

During printing, if you set **Pause Print** in the Control Panel menu to **On**, printing is stopped at that point and the printer enters a state in which printing is paused. (See "Control Panel Display.") →P.916
Printing from the job queue is not possible in this state.
To restore normal operation after this state, set **Pause Print** to **Off**.

Note

- In the following cases, the status is cleared even if you do not set **Pause Print** to **Off**, and printing from the job queue resumes.
  - When paper is advanced
  - When you execute **Chg. Paper Type** in the **Paper Menu**

1. During printing, on the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Offline
OK: Job Menu

Note

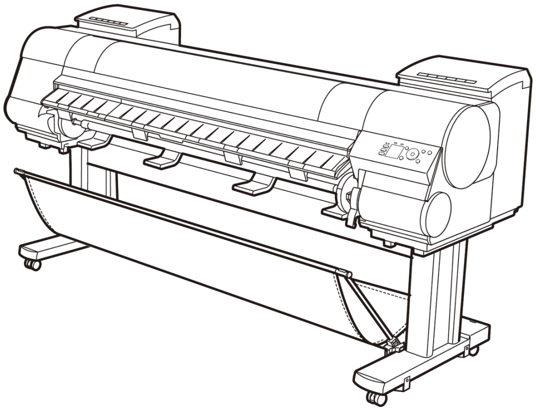
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Pause Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Enhanced Printing Options



Choosing Paper for Printing

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

- **Media Type**
  The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.

  > Note
  > - For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.(See "Types of Paper →P.774 ")
  > - The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool →P.448 (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool →P.677 (Macintosh).
  > - An error message may be displayed on the printer Control Panel if the type of paper as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

- If the paper type is not listed for selection
  If the type of paper loaded cannot be selected, try specifying glossy paper or proofing paper as a special paper (Special 1 to Special 5, in this order). BK (Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Try specifying other types of paper as Special 6 to Special 10. MBK (Matte Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.
  Furthermore, **Register Custom Paper** can also be performed using the Media Configuration Tool.
  For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see Media Configuration Tool →P.448 (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool →P.677 (Macintosh).
  For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics.

  - Changing the Type of Paper →P.791

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) →P.204
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) →P.489

Printing Photos and Office Documents

Printing Photos and Images

By selecting the following **Print Target** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure the printing of illustrations and photos.

	Print Target	Description
	Photo (Color)	Print photographic images from digital cameras with an optimal setting.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Print monochrome photos with an optimal setting.
	Poster	An optimal setting for posters. Print in vivid colors with impact and high saturation.
	Faithful Color Reproduction	Print with minimum color difference. Suitable for printing scanner images and when print results are too vivid.
	Photo (Adobe RGB)	Setting suitable for printing images created using the color space of Adobe RGB in optimal color.

Important

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
  For details on **Advanced Settings**, refer to "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64 ".

For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Photos and Images (Windows) →P.23
- Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) →P.25

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

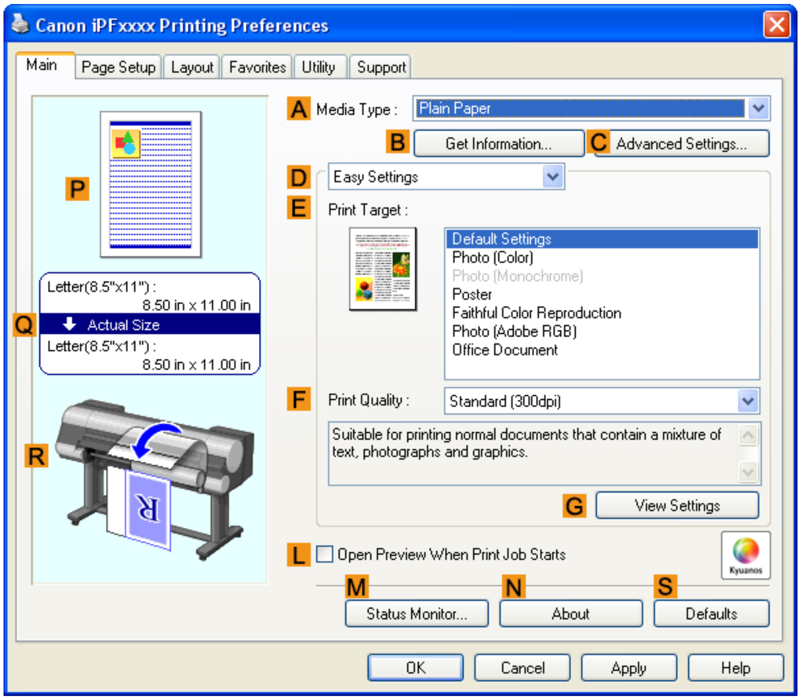
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :

- Default Settings
- Photo (Color)
- Photo (Monochrome)
- Poster
- Faithful Color Reproduction
- Photo (Adobe RGB)
- Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**.

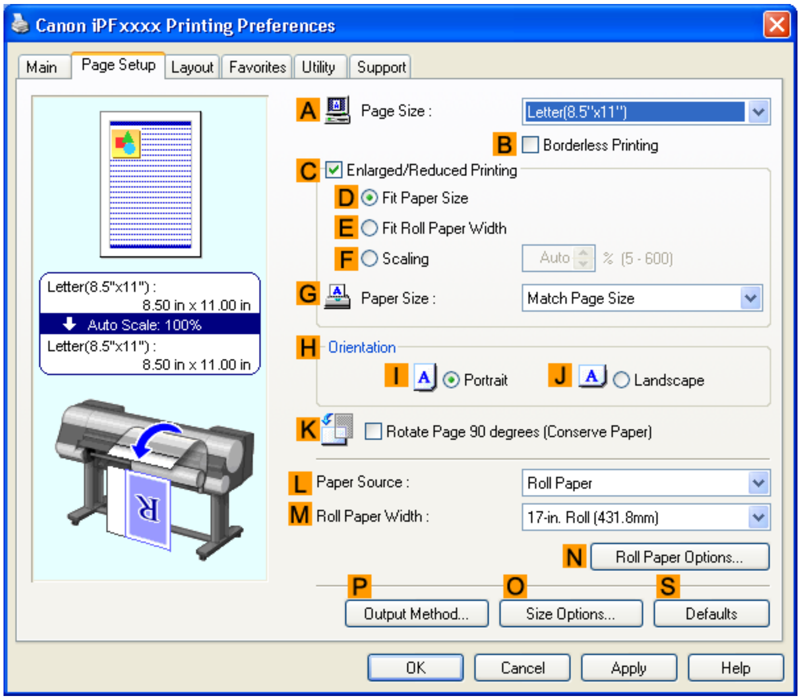
In the A **Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

> Note
>
> - The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see Media Configuration Tool →P.448 .

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the E **Print Target** list.

> Note
>
> - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking G **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

8. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

10. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows) →P.202 "

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> **Note**
>
> - For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

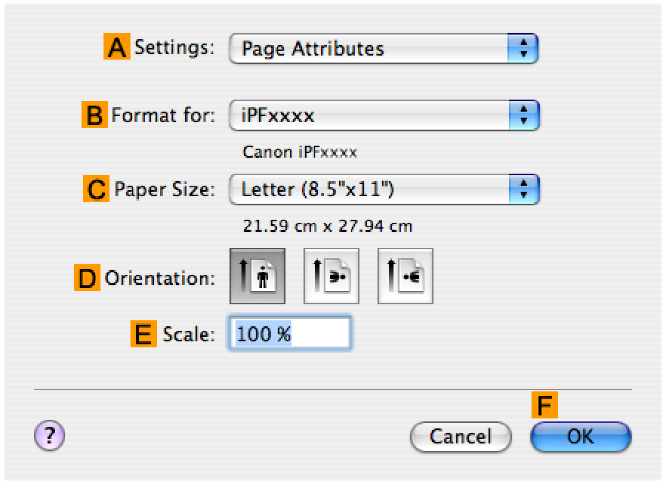
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

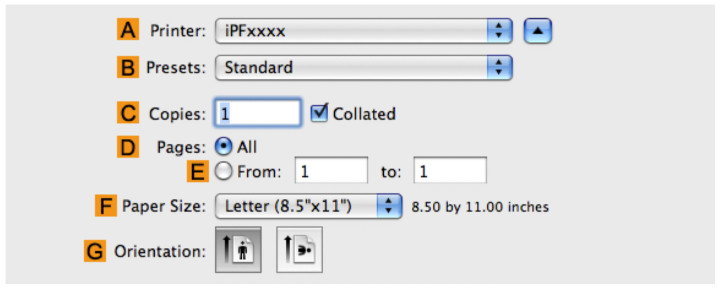
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



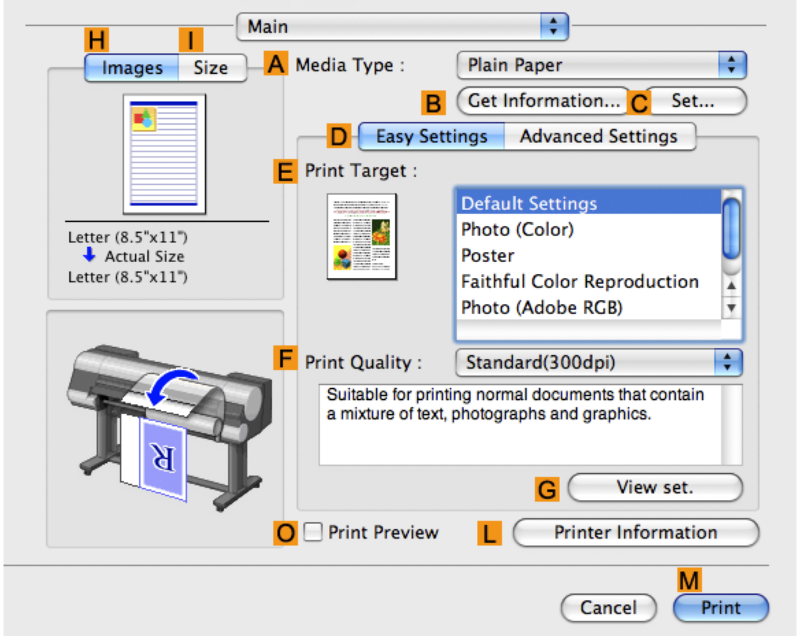
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see Media Configuration Tool →P.677 .

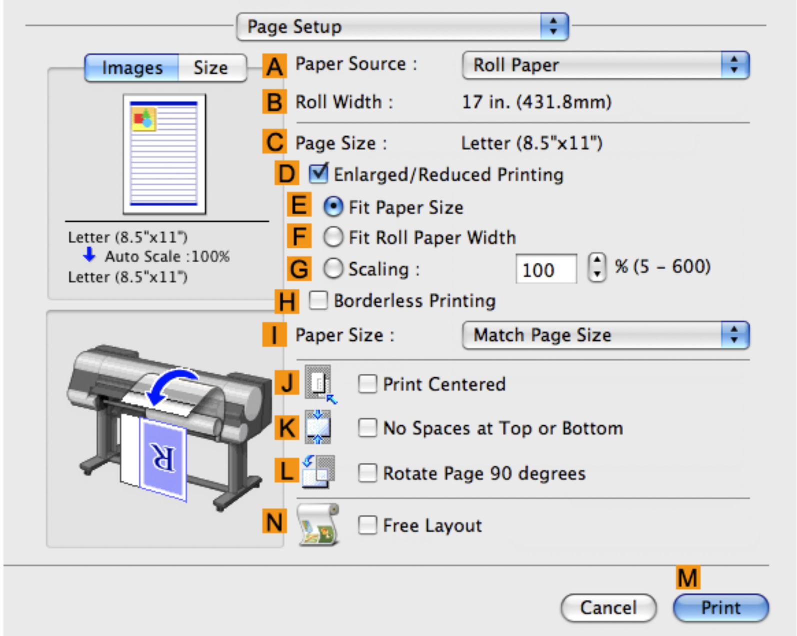
7. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see "Printing Photos and Images →P.22 "
- You can check the settings values selected in the **E** **Print Target** list by clicking **G** **View set.**.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

Scaling : 100

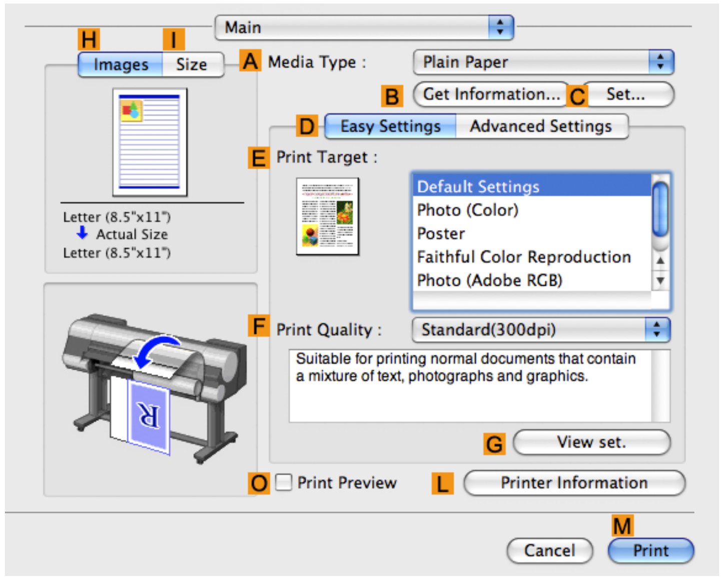
Paper Size : Match Page Size

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



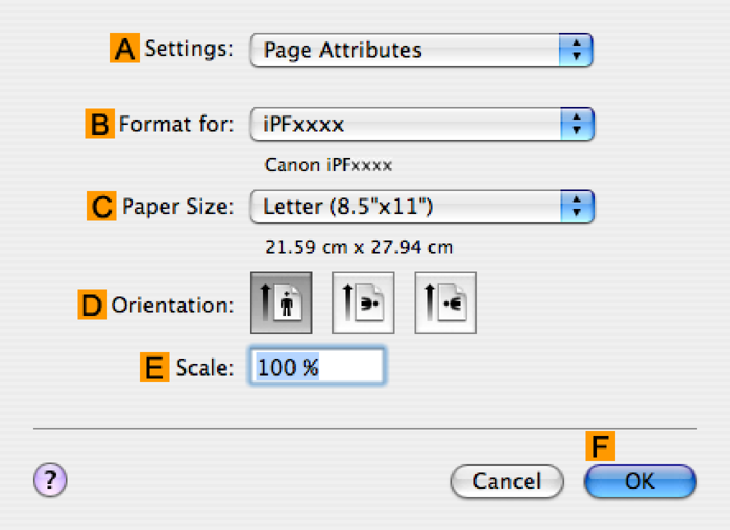
Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) →P.487 "

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing from Photoshop

You can print images in the Adobe RGB color space that you have created in Photoshop, the Adobe Systems photo retouching application. Using the dedicated Photoshop printer driver plug-in (provided with the printer) makes it easy to print Adobe RGB images more attractively.

- Using the Plug-in to Print
The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop is a dedicated plug-in provided with the printer that you can load in Photoshop and customize for your printing needs. By using the plug-in, you can print while preserving the 16-bit RGB data from Photoshop without losing the exceptional color gradations of original image. Some of the settings and customizations available in the plug-in are as follows.
  - Automatic detection of the color space (sRGB or Adobe RGB) for automatic selection of the optimal profile. This feature eliminates the need to complete intricate settings when printing Adobe RGB images.
  - Advanced gray adjustment, including adjustment of tone curves, in addition to an array of standard adjustments for color balance, brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow.
  - Fine-tune color tones in Photoshop while viewing a preview that accurately reproduces printing results.
  - With print log management, you can save and load setting parameters from past print jobs.

> Note
> - imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop for Windows and Macintosh are provided with the printer.

For instructions and details on which versions of Photoshop are compatible with the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional →P.307
  - Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional →P.609

- Using the Printer Driver to Print
  The printer driver offers the following settings and adjustments.
  - Choose the standard sRBG color space or Adobe RGB as desired.
  - Adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray levels.

For instructions on using the printer driver to print Adobe RGB images created in Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) →P.30
  - Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) →P.34

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**
- Roll Paper Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

> Important
> - In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
> - In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   > Note
   > - The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS2.
   > - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the **File** menu to display the **Print** dialog box.

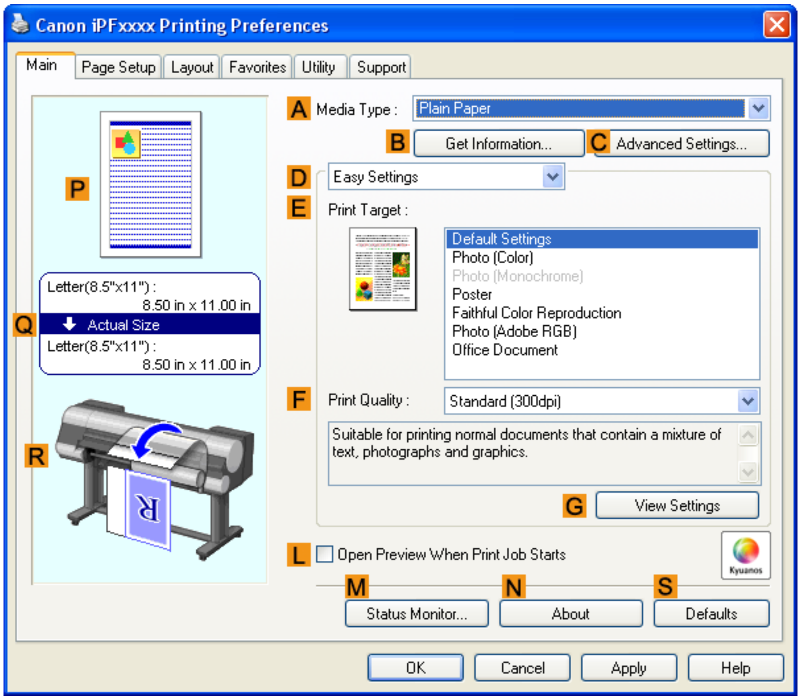
3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.

4. In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **No Color Management**.

5. Click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

6. Select the printer and click **Properties** to display the printer driver dialog box.

7. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

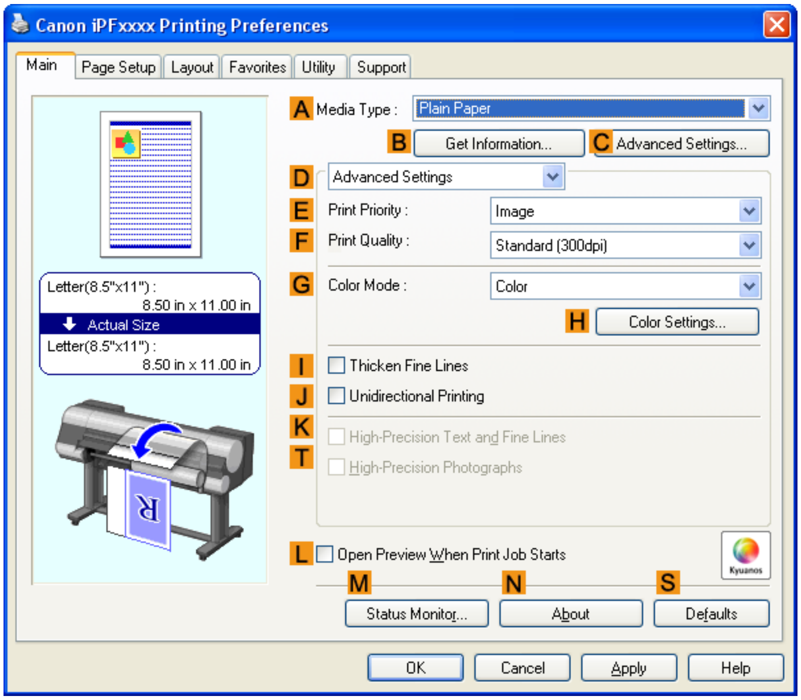
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

8. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**.

9. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Color Mode : Color

☐ Thicken Fine Lines

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

☐ High-Precision Photographs

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

10. Click **Image** in the **E** **Print Priority** list.

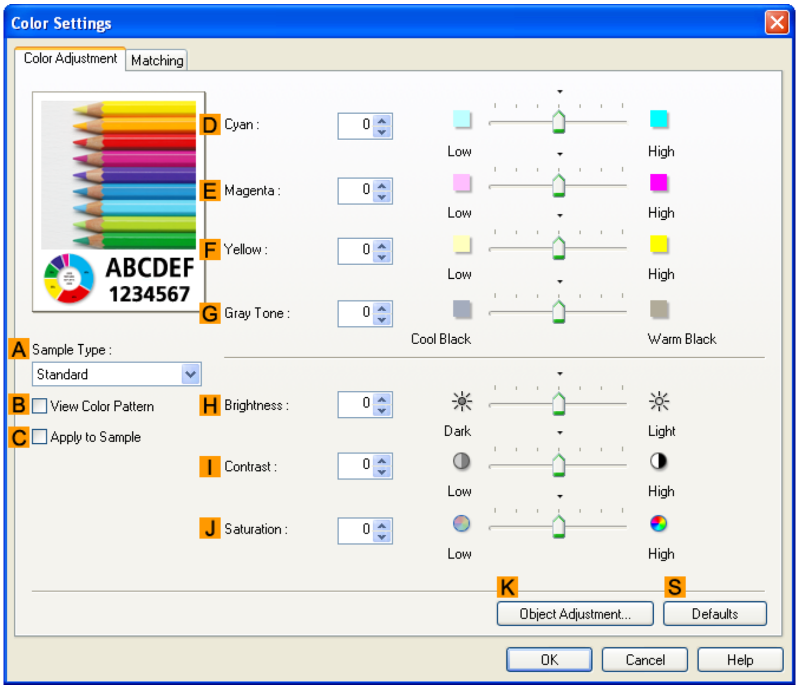
2

11. Select the print quality in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

> Note
>
> - Options displayed in the **F** **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

12. Click **Color** in the **G** **Color Mode** list.

13. Click **H** **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



Color Settings

Color Adjustment

A Sample Type : Standard

B ☐ View Color Pattern

C ☐ Apply to Sample

D Cyan : 0

E Magenta : 0

F Yellow : 0

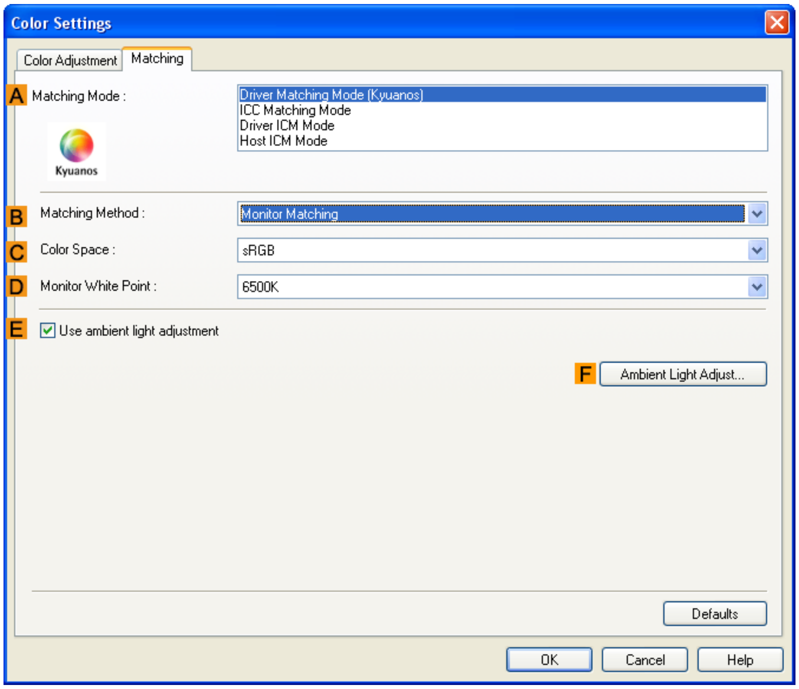
G Gray Tone : 0

H Brightness : 0

I Contrast : 0

J Saturation : 0

14. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.

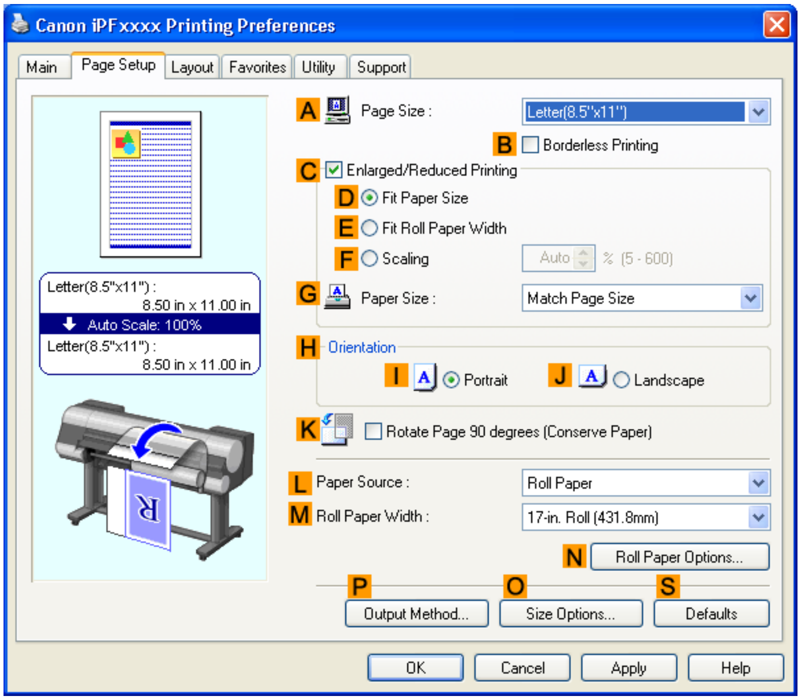


15. In **A** **Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.

16. In **C** **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.

17. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

18. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

N Roll Paper Options...

P Output Method... O Size Options... S Defaults

19. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

20. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

21. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.

22. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

- In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
- In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

   - The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS3/CS4/CS5.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

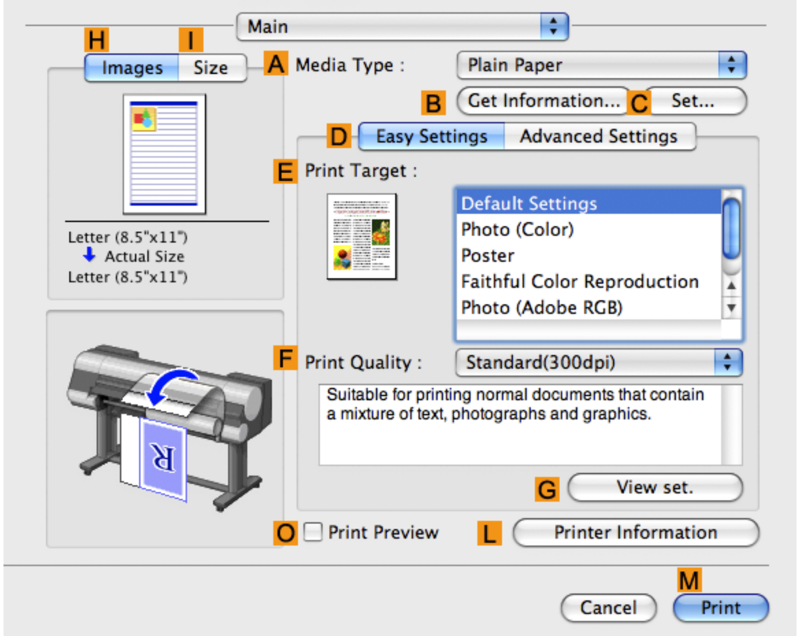
2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the Photoshop menu to display the **Print** dialog box.

3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.

4. In the **Color Handling** list, click **Printer Manages Colors**.

5. Click **Print**.

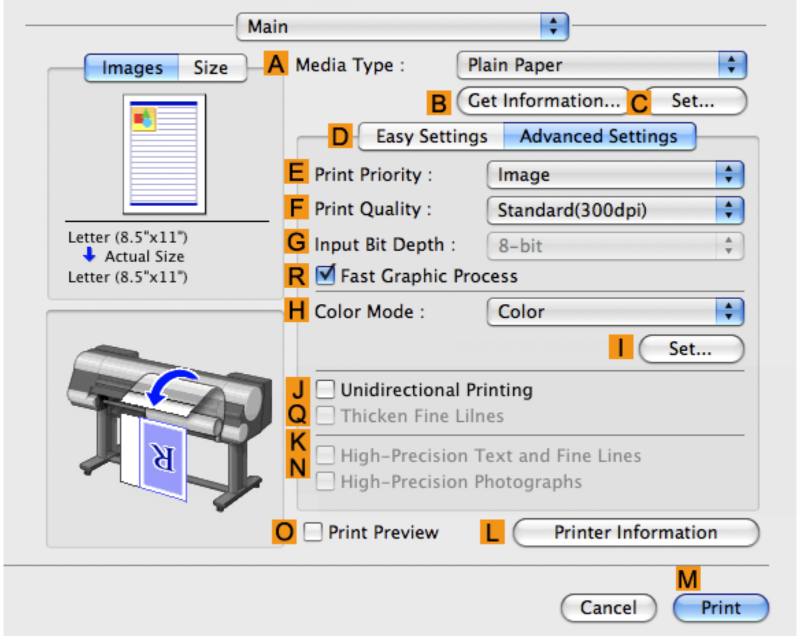
6. Access the **Main** pane.



Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**.

8. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

G Input Bit Depth : 8-bit

R ☑ Fast Graphic Process

H Color Mode : Color

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

Q ☐ Thicken Fine Lilnes

K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

N ☐ High-Precision Photographs

O ☐ Print Preview

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

9. Click **Image** in the **E** **Print Priority** list.

10. Select the print quality in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the **F** **Print Quality** list vary depending on the type of paper.

11. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.

12. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

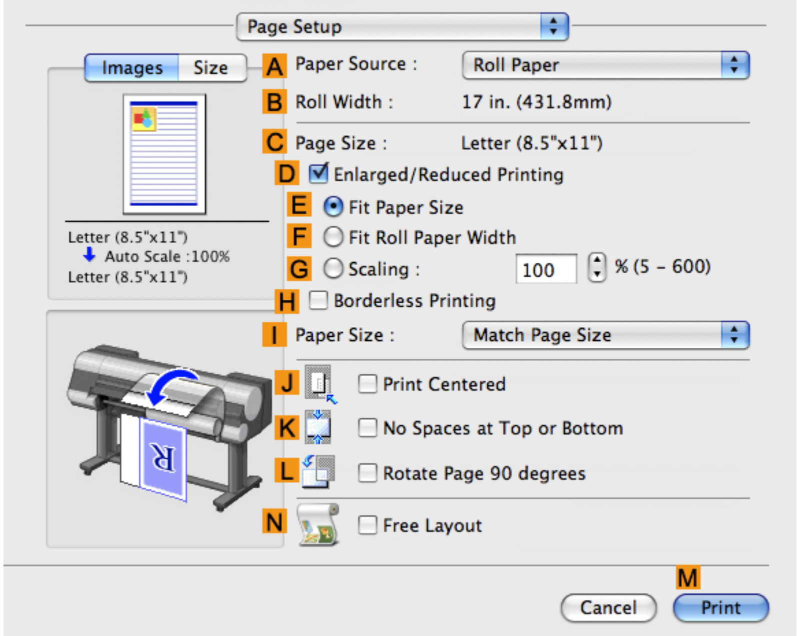
13. Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.

14. In **Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.

15. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.

16. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

17. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 - 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

☐ Free Layout

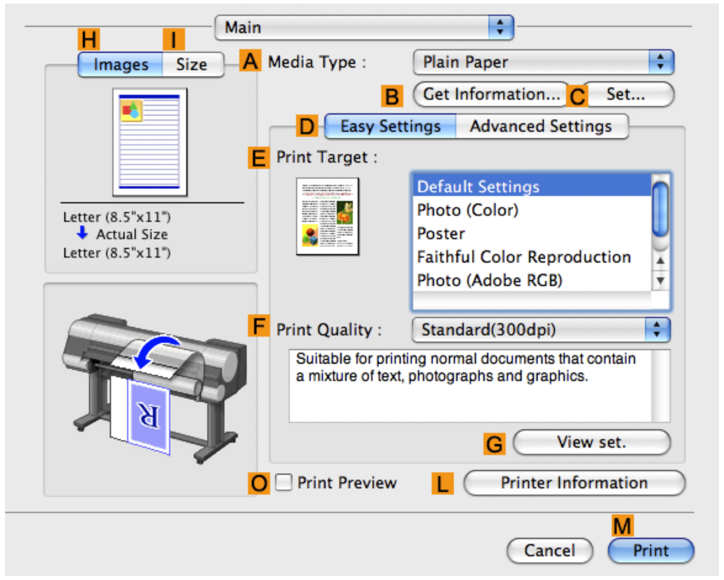
Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

18. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

19. Make sure the width of the loaded roll paper is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—here, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target :
Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Print Preview

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

20. Make sure **C** **Page Size** in the **Page Setup** pane matches the size of the original as specified in Photoshop—in this case, **10"x12"**.

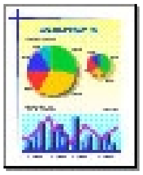
21. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)." →P.492

Printing Office Documents

By selecting **Office Document** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure settings for printing office documents.

	Print Target	Description
	**Office Document**	Setting optimized for printing general office documents such as materials for distribution so that they can be viewed easily.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, refer to "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64 ".

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Office Documents (Windows) →P.38
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) →P.40

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

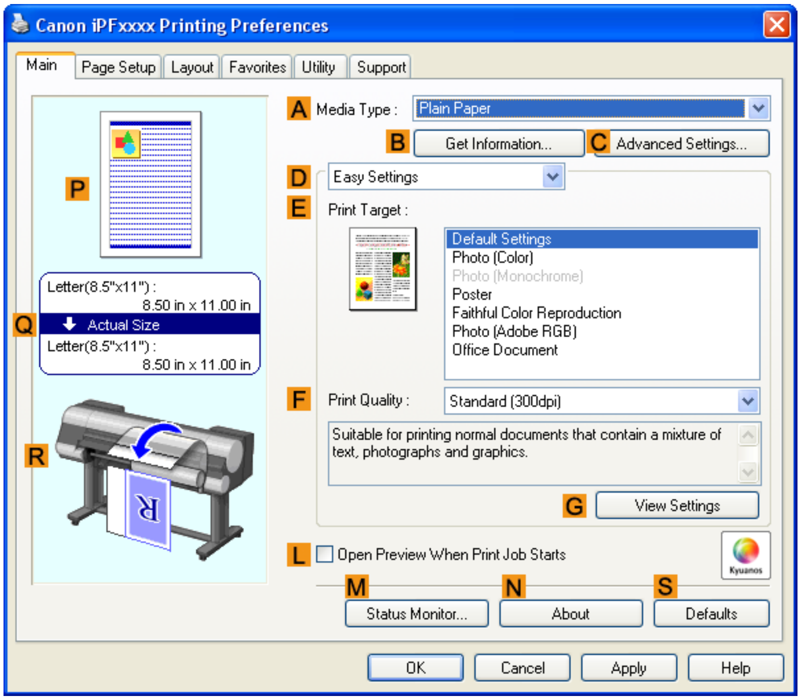
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :

- Default Settings
- Photo (Color)
- Photo (Monochrome)
- Poster
- Faithful Color Reproduction
- Photo (Adobe RGB)
- Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

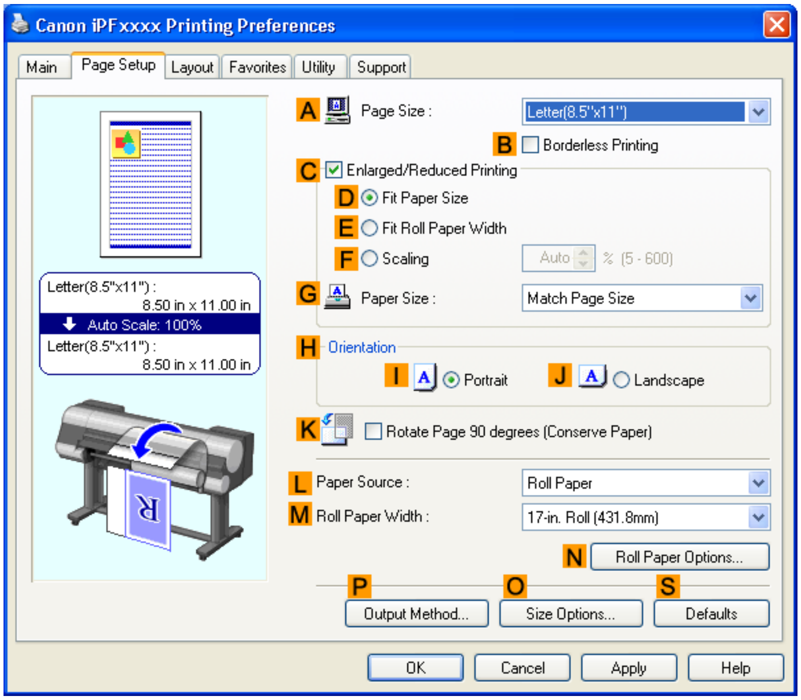
4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E** **Print Target** list by clicking **G** **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
☐ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)
Paper Size : Match Page Size
Orientation
● Portrait
○ Landscape
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
Paper Source : Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.

9. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows) →P.202 "

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

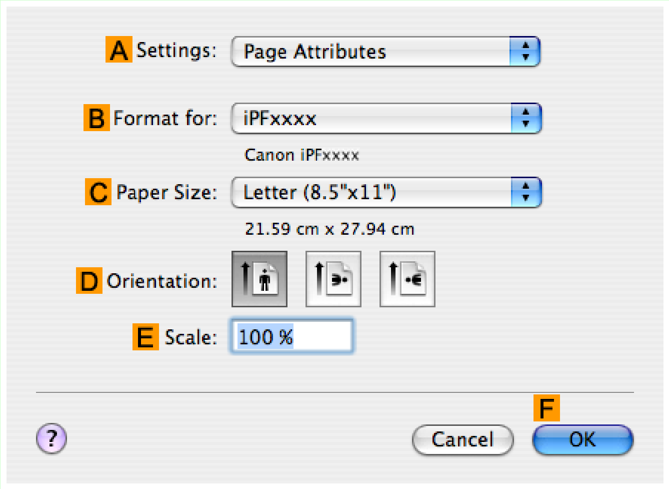
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

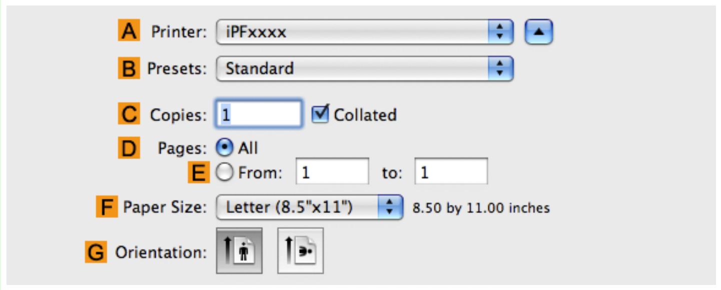
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



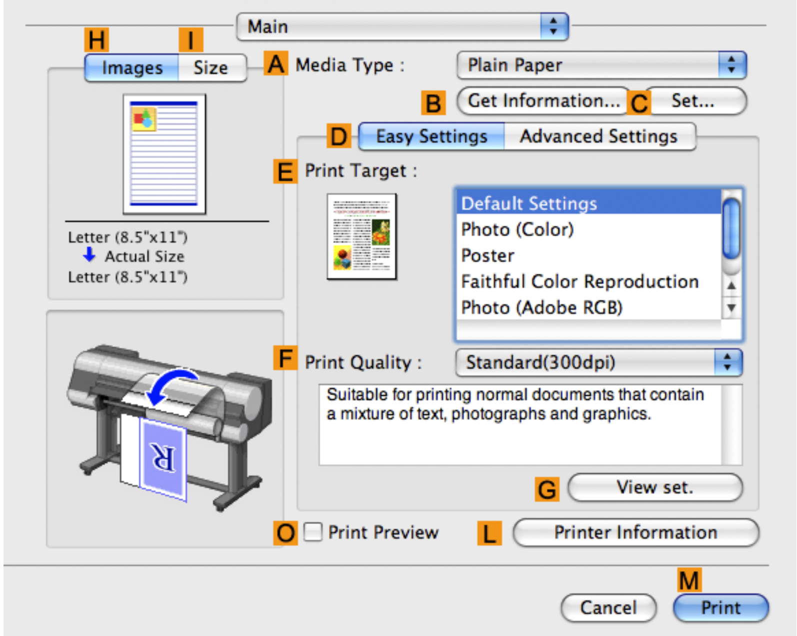
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

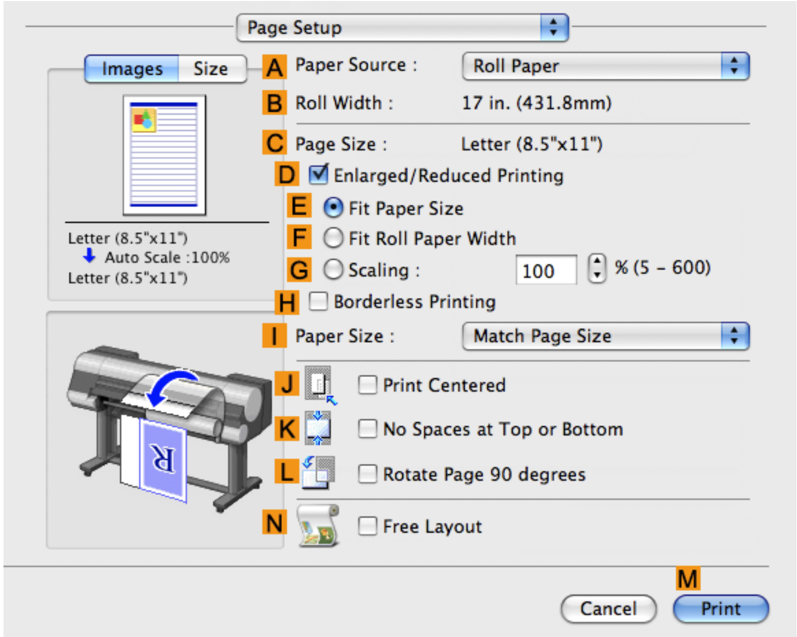
6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

> Note
>
> - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**.

8. Make your selection in the F **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

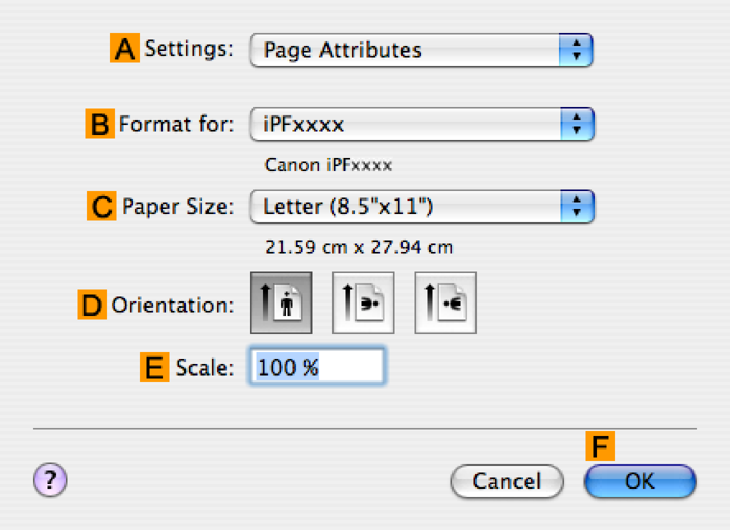


A Paper Source : Roll Paper
B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)
C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")
D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
E ● Fit Paper Size
F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width
G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)
H ☐ Borderless Printing
I Paper Size : Match Page Size
J ☐ Print Centered
K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees
N ☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Click **Cut Sheet** in the A **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) →P.487 "

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

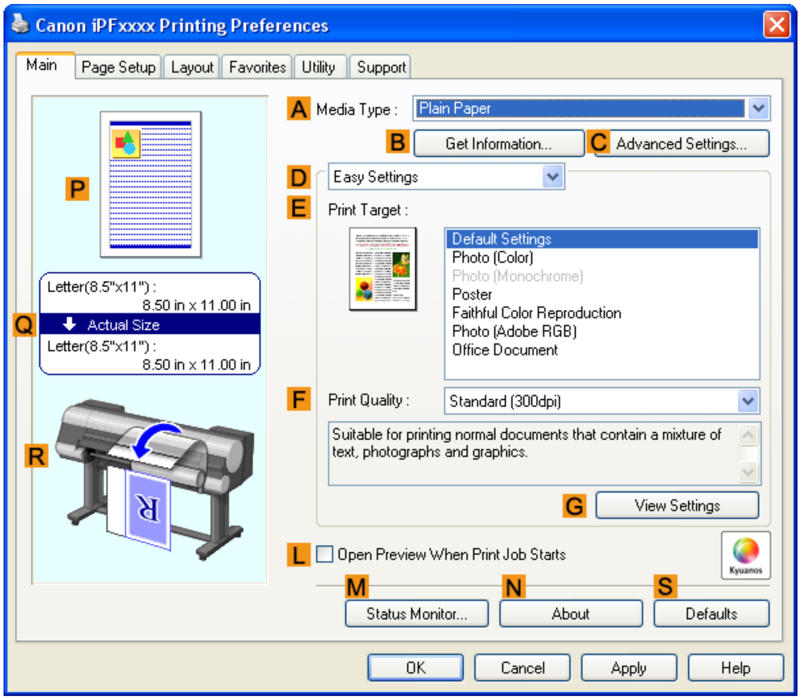
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.
This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).") →P.211

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

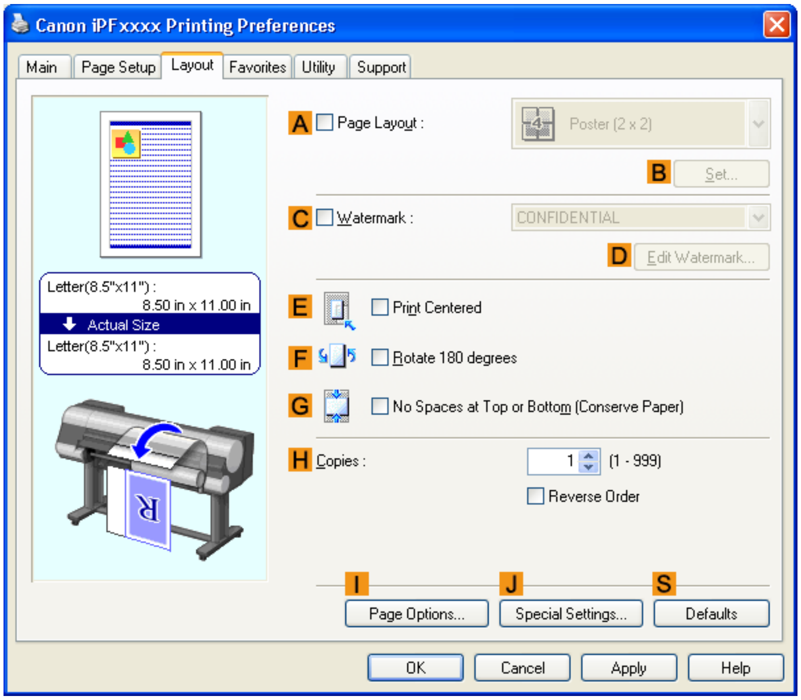
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

☐ Print Centered

☐ Rotate 180 degrees

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

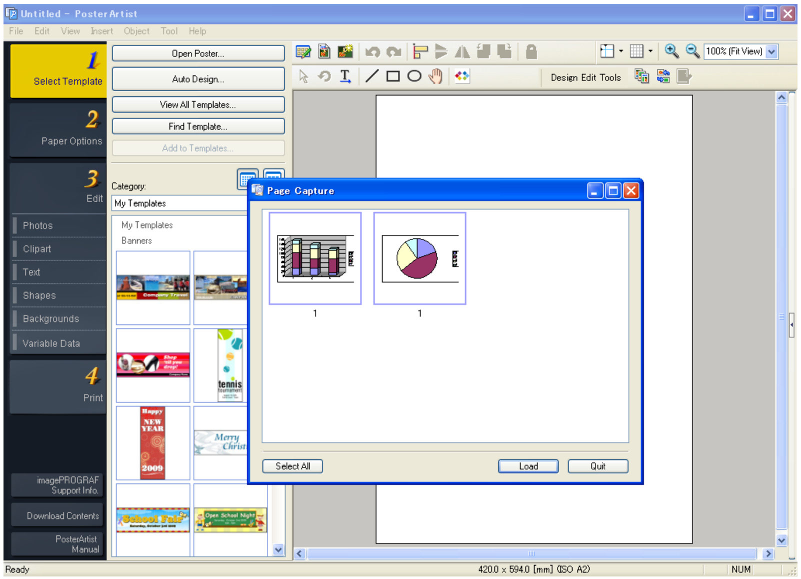
Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.

6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the A **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.

9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.
   Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

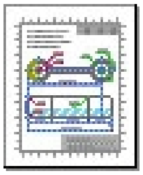
   > Note
   > - For details on how to edit and sort images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing Line Drawings and Text

By selecting the following **Print Target** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure setting for printing line drawings and characters.

	Print Target	Description
	Perspective, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.
	**CAD (Color Line Drawing)**	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.

> Note
> - You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
> - You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
>   For details on **Advanced Settings**, refer to "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64 ".

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) →P.47
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) →P.49

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

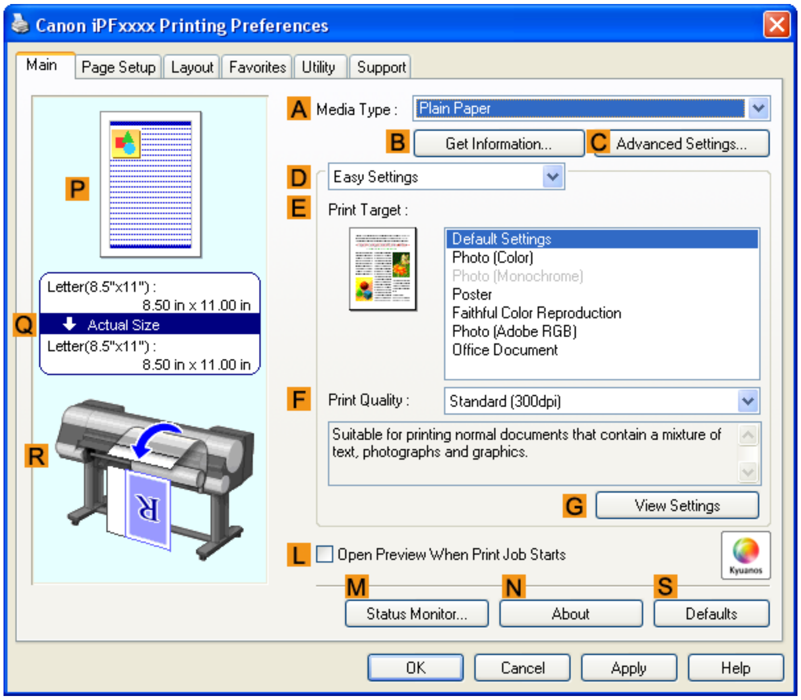
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

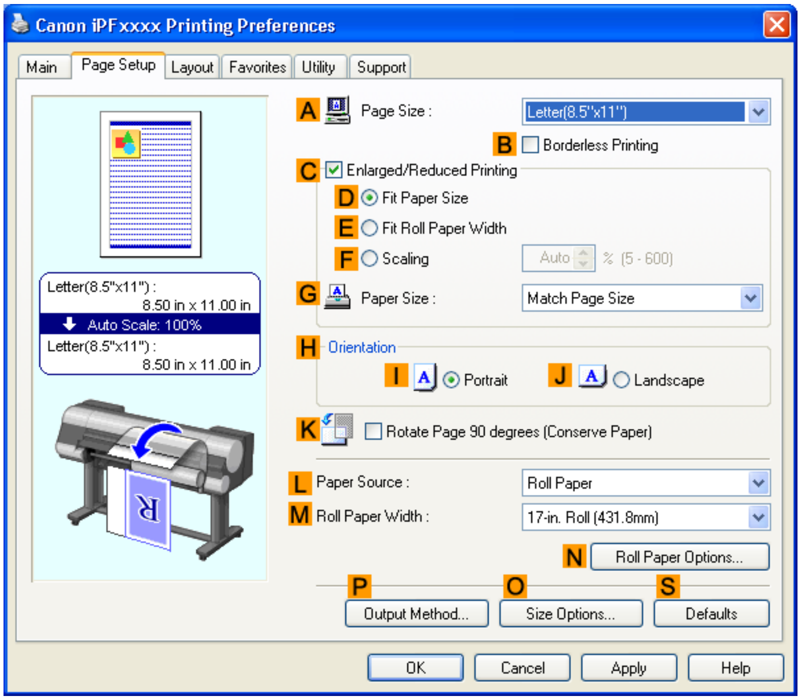
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Color Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

> Note
>
> - You can check the settings values selected in the **E** **Print Target** list by clicking **G** **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

8. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

10. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows) →P.202 "

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "
> - You can conserve roll paper by configuring settings suitable for the document.
> For details on how to conserve paper and print, refer to "Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) →P.172 ".

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

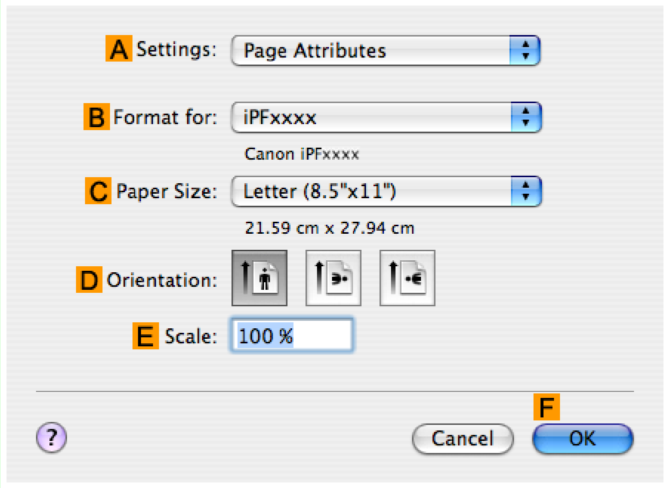
- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper

- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B** **Format for** and **C** **Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

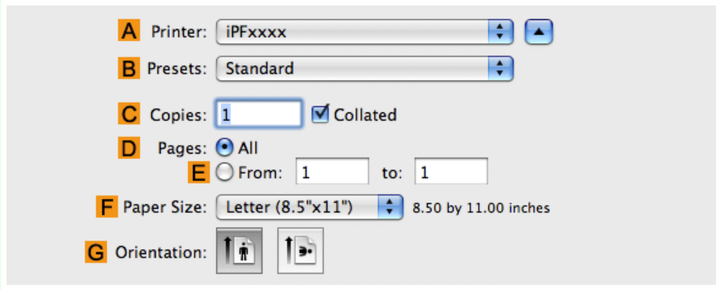
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

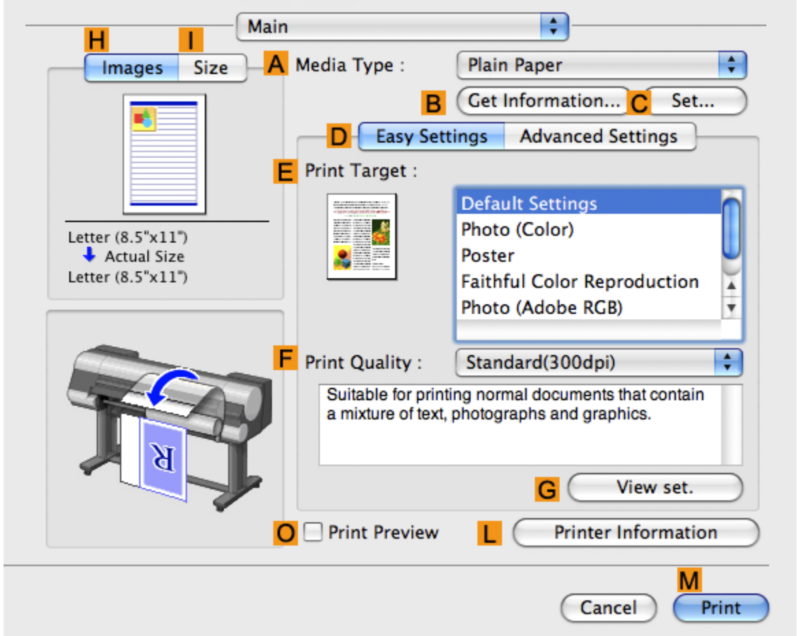
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

3. In the **F** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

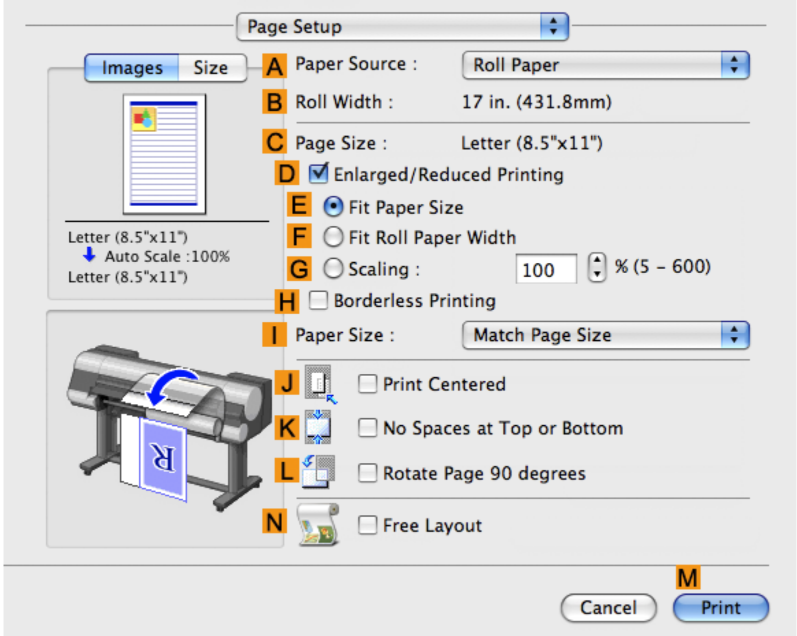
7. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Color Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**.

8. Make your selection in the F **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

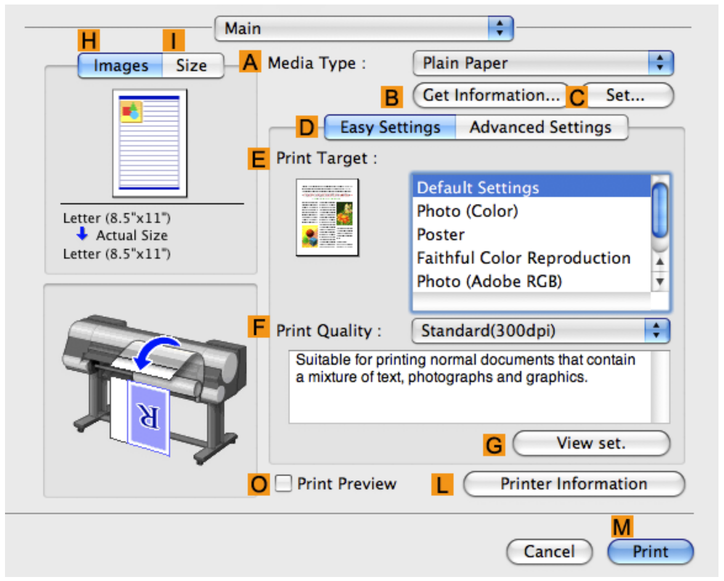
Letter (8.5"x11")
↓ Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Select and click a roll paper in the A **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target :
Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

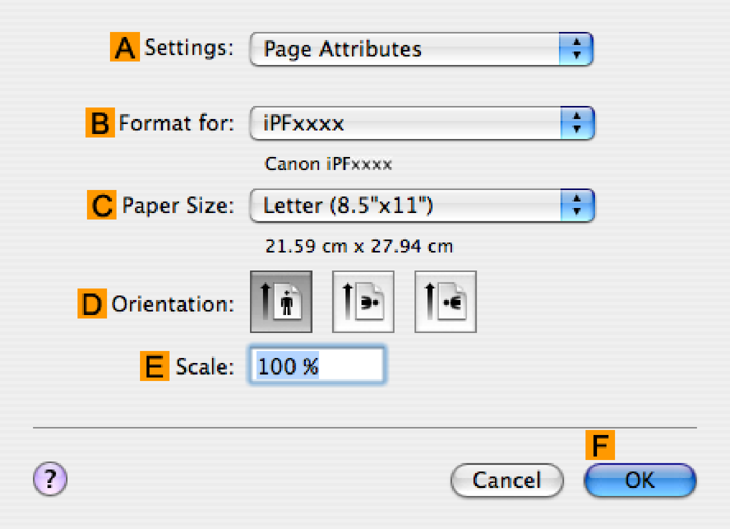
F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

Letter (8.5"x11")
↓ Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

12. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) →P.487 "

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "
- You can conserve roll paper by configuring settings suitable for the document.
  For details on how to conserve paper and print, refer to "Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) →P.174 .

Printing from AutoCAD

Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is software for printing optimally from AutoCAD with the printer driver. By optimally controlling the processing resolution of raster data and the memory to be used in image processing of AutoCAD, printing superior in reliability and productivity is realized.
If you install Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD on a computer on which supported AutoCAD is installed, it will be installed automatically.

Note

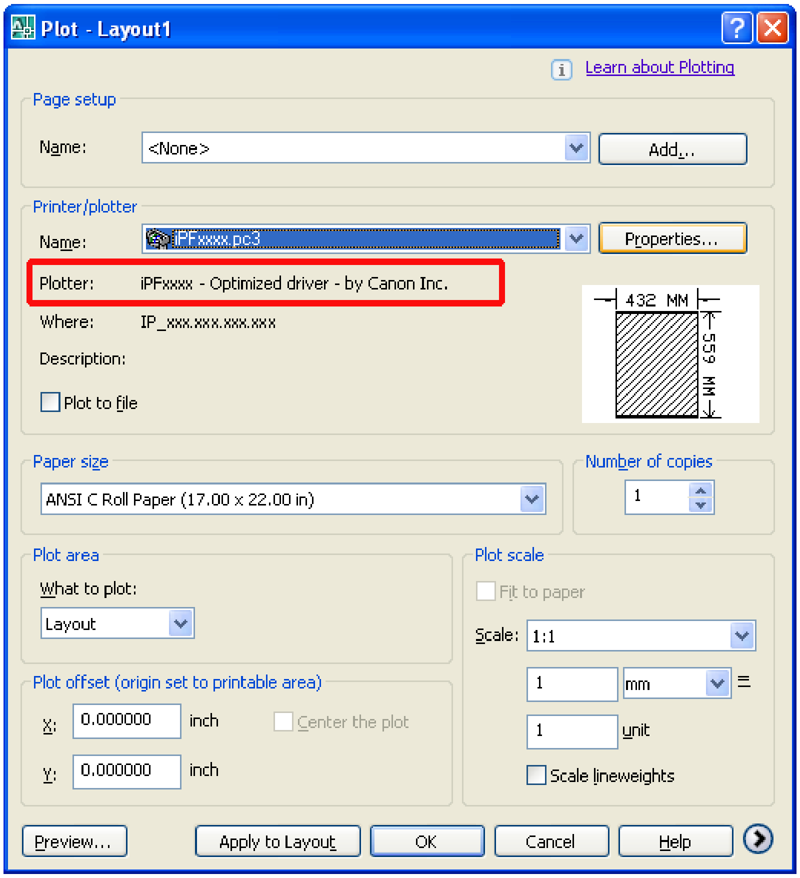
- Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is applied automatically when you print from AutoCAD, and optimal printing is performed.

Confirming the Installation of Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD

You can confirm whether Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is installed by the following method.

1. From the **File** menu of AutoCAD, select **Print**.

2. The **Printing** dialog box is displayed.
   Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is installed if in **Plotter** of **Printer/plotter** this is displayed:**iPFxxxx - Optimized driver - by Canon Inc.**.



Plot - Layout1

Page setup
Name: <None>

Printer/plotter
Name: iPFxxxx.pc3
Plotter: iPFxxxx - Optimized driver - by Canon Inc.
Where: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Description:
☐ Plot to file

Paper size: ANSI C Roll Paper (17.00 x 22.00 in)
Number of copies: 1

Plot area
What to plot: Layout

Plot offset (origin set to printable area)
X: 0.000000 inch
Y: 0.000000 inch
☐ Center the plot

Plot scale
☐ Fit to paper
Scale: 1:1
1 mm =
1 unit
☐ Scale lineweights

Installation of Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD

If Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is not installed, install it by the following method.

1. Insert User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.

2. In the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.

3. Click **Install** of Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD.

4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

• Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.

The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can select the color balance and color matching functions.
Monochrome (Photo)	Grayscale printing optimized for monochrome photos.	You can adjust the color balance in ways tailored to monochrome photos.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
No color correction (*1)	Prints without performing color-matching in the printer driver.	You can adjust the color balance.

*1: If **No color correction** is selected, the **Matching** sheet / **Matching** pane is not displayed.

• Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust the grayscale, in a range from cool, blue tones to warm, red tones.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

- **Matching**

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.

By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

> Important
> - If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** cannot be changed.

Matching Mode	Description	Remarks
Driver Matching Mode	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile.	You should normally select this mode. You should also select this mode if you want to use ambient light adjustment.
ICC Matching Mode	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail.	This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
Driver ICM Mode	Enables color matching by the printer driver using the ICM function of printer driver. Select this if you want to print by only specifying the matching method.	Available when using Windows.
Host ICM Mode	Enables color matching by the host computer using the ICM function of Windows. Select this if you want to print from an application that supports the ICM function.	
ColorSync	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.	Available when using Mac OS.

Matching Method	Description	Remarks
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text.	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selected color-matching mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.	

Matching Method	Description	Remarks
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selected color-matching mode, as well as the operating system.
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to Colorimetric. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.	
Monitor Matching	Suitable for optimized printing to match the appearance on the monitor. Color-matching optimized for accurately reproducing colors on the calibrated sRGB or AdobeRGB monitor.	

• Gray Tone Adjustment

The following settings can be adjusted if **Monochrome (Photo)** is selected in Color Mode.

Gray Adjustment Items	Description
Color Balance	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjust levels of image highlight areas.
Shadow	Adjust levels of image shadow areas.

Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) →P.58
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) →P.61

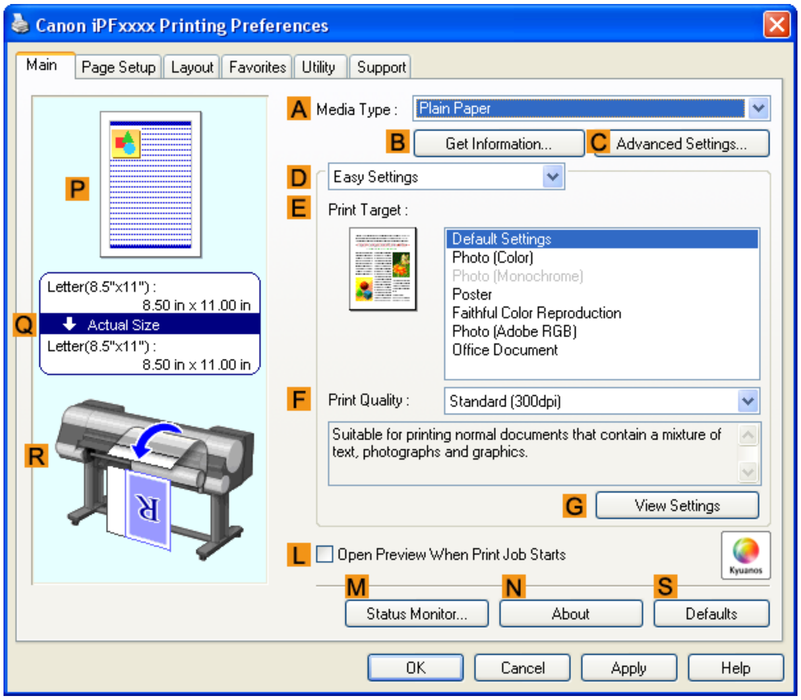
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

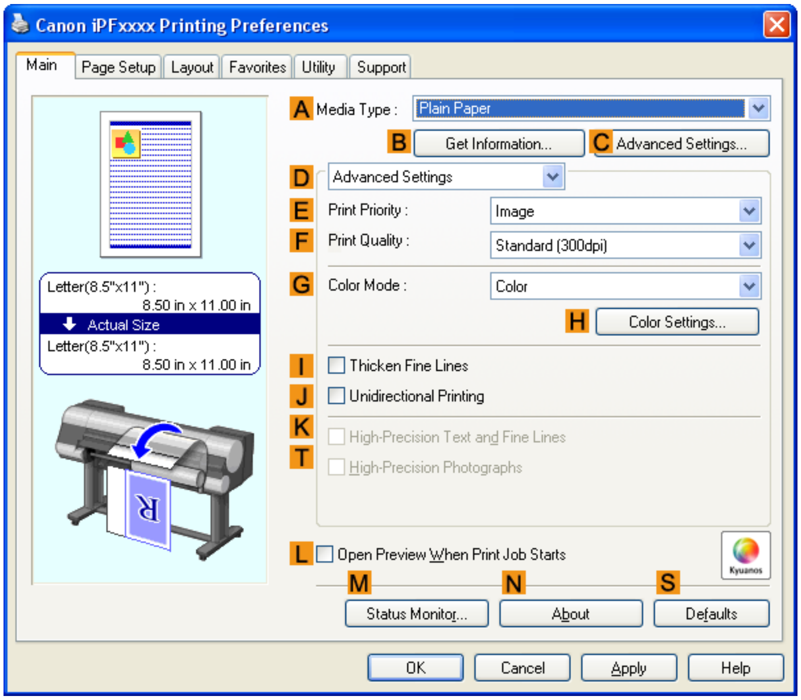
Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

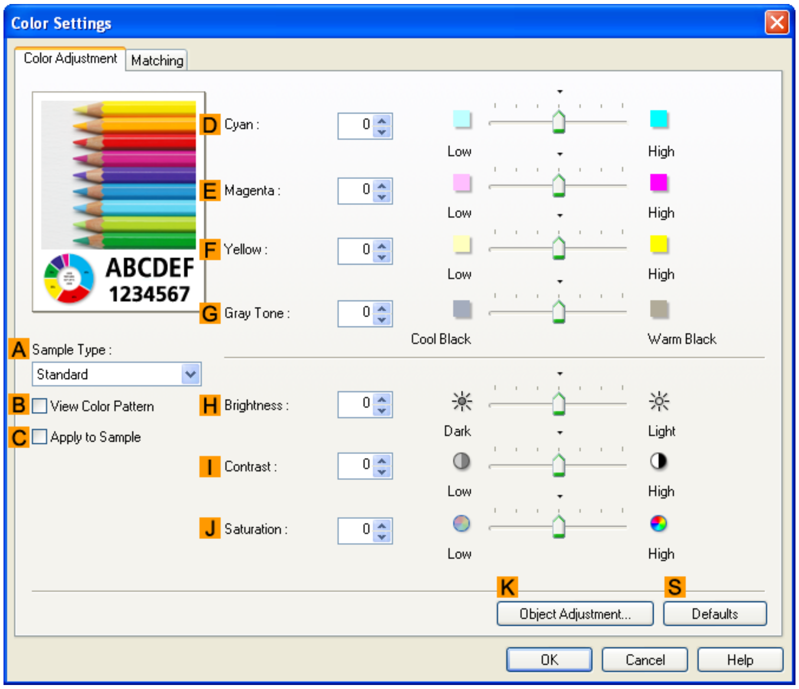
4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the **G** **Color Mode** list.

7. Click **H** **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

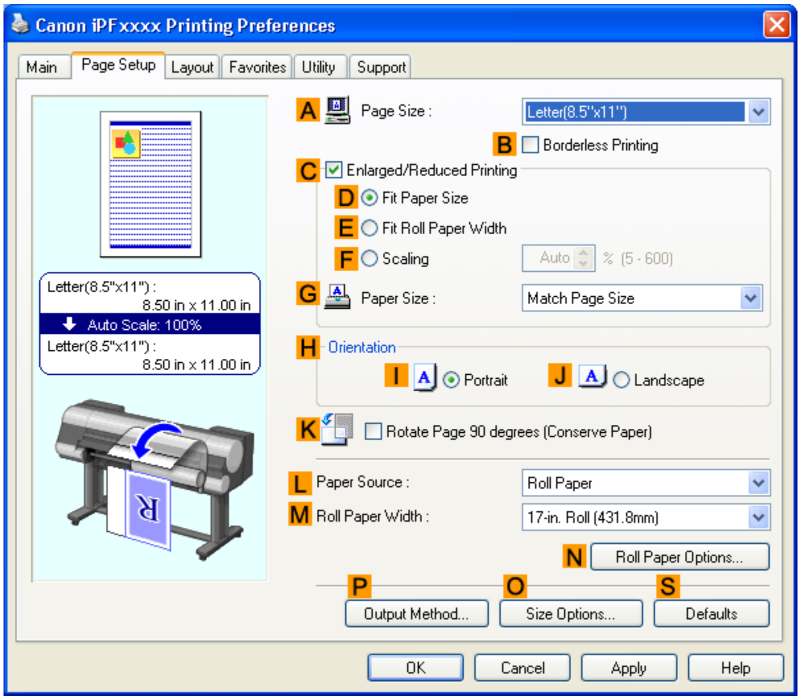
Adjustment Item	Description
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

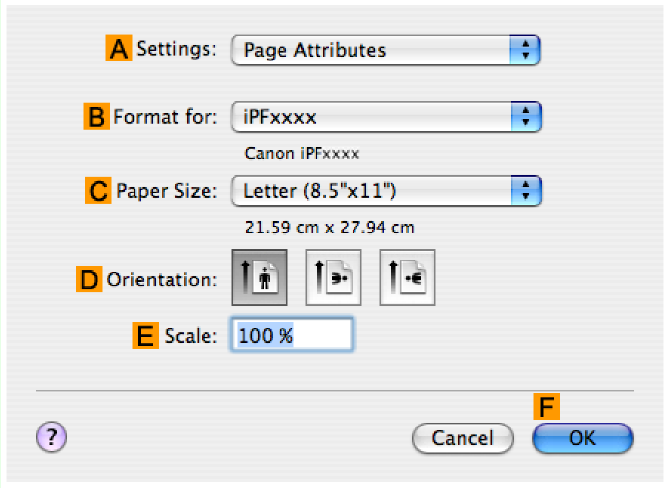
> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

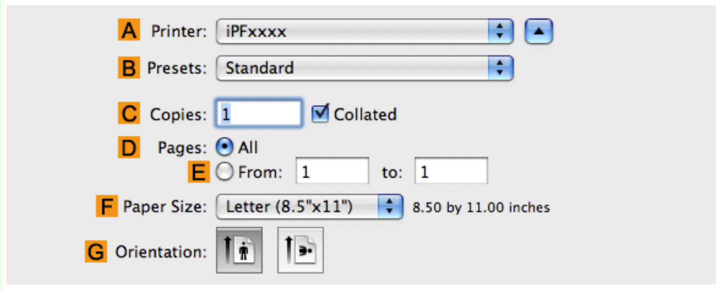
1. This sets the B **Format for** and C **Paper Size**.

> Note
>
> - The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
>   If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

> If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

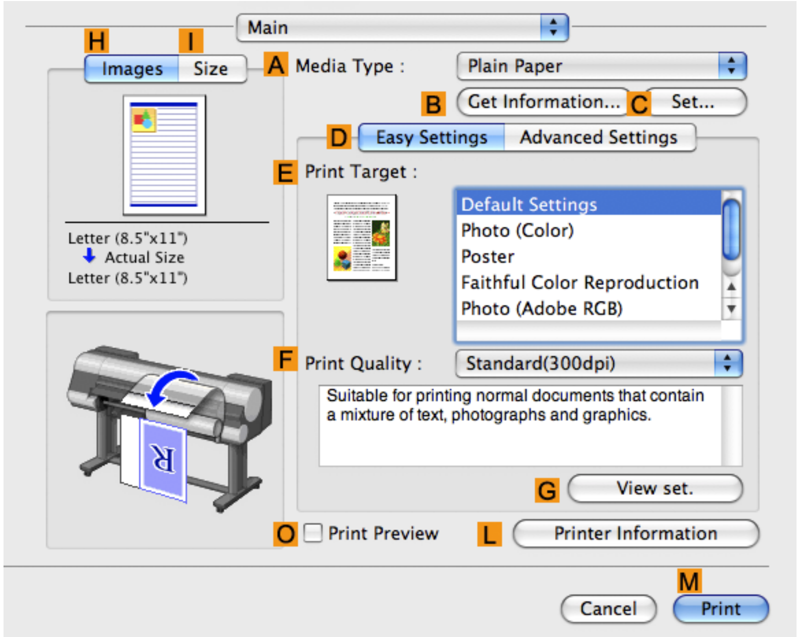
2. Select the printer in the A **Printer** list.

3. Choose the original size in the F **Paper Size** list.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

2

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

E Print Target :
Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

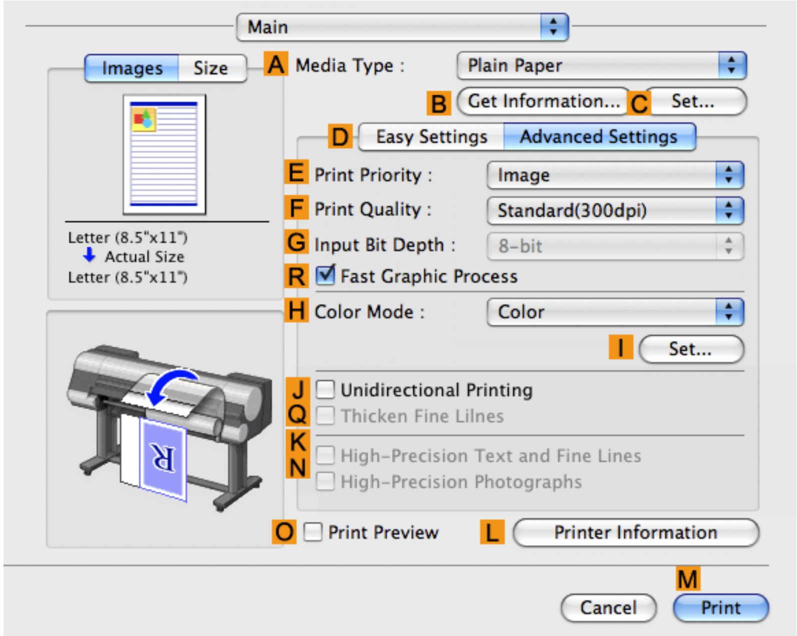
F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

G Input Bit Depth : 8-bit

R ☑ Fast Graphic Process

H Color Mode : Color

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

Q ☐ Thicken Fine Lilnes

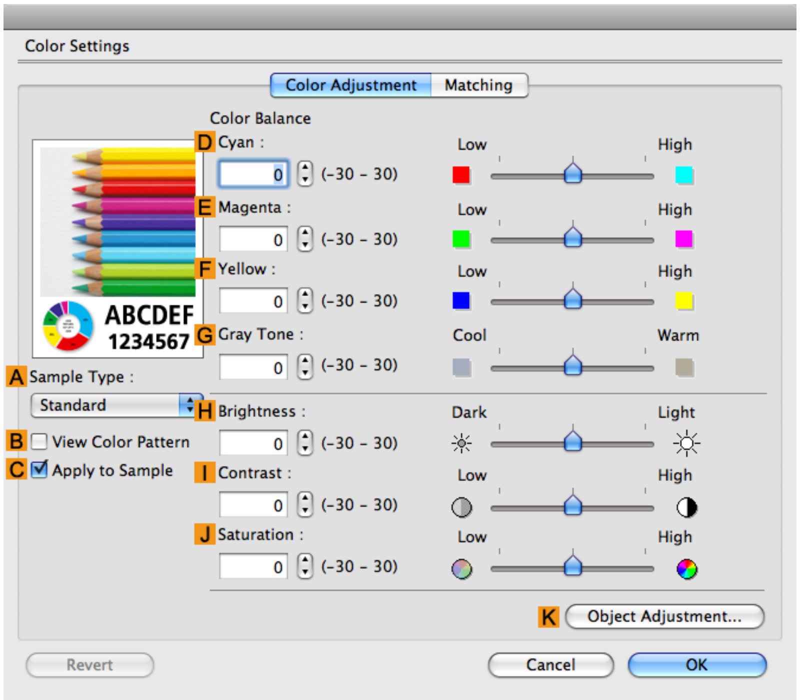
K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

N ☐ High-Precision Photographs

O ☐ Print Preview

8. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

9. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



A Sample Type : Standard

B ☐ View Color Pattern

C ☑ Apply to Sample

D Cyan : 0 (-30 – 30)

E Magenta : 0 (-30 – 30)

F Yellow : 0 (-30 – 30)

G Gray Tone : 0 (-30 – 30)

H Brightness : 0 (-30 – 30)

I Contrast : 0 (-30 – 30)

J Saturation : 0 (-30 – 30)

10. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

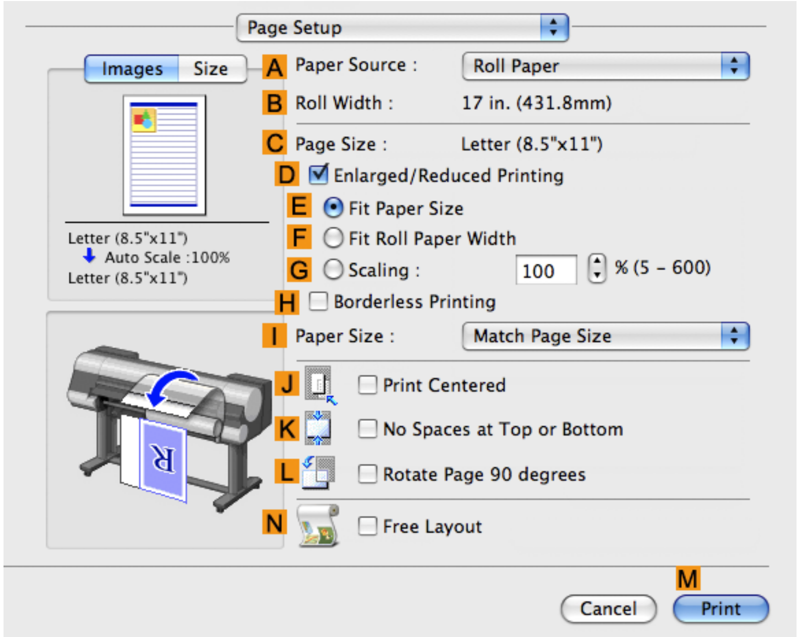
Adjustment Item	Description
D **Cyan**	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E **Magenta**	
F **Yellow**	
G **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Images**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

11. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 - 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

13. Confirm the settings of **A** **Paper Source** and **C** **Page Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

• Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.

Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.
  For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.
  - Printing Photos and Images →P.22
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text →P.47
  - Printing Office Documents →P.38

• Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or to enhance the finishing of fine text. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose **Image** instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproduction of text, illustrations, and photos on print proofs. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

- **Print Quality**

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Proof**
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **High** mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document** **Proof**
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in fast mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Proof**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

- Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome (Photo)** **Monochrome** **No color correction**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (Refer to "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 ")
Color Adjustment (Images) **Color Adjustment** (Graphics) **Color Adjustment** (Text)	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Gray Tone** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tone separately for images, graphics, and text documents. If you choose **Monochrome** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted.

Setting Item	Options	Description
Gray Adjustment	**Color Balance** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Highlight** **Shadow**	Choose the gray tone color balance (**Cool Black** or **Warm Black**) and adjust levels of brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow as desired. These levels can be adjusted when **Monochrome (Photo)** is selected in **Color Mode**.
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Saturation** **Monitor Matching** **Colorimetric** other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in **Color-Matching Mode**.
Color Space (*3)	**sRGB** **Adobe RGB**	Choose a standard color space (**sRGB**) or an expanded color space (**Adobe RGB**).

*1: Options suitable for the selected **Print Priority** and **Media Type** are listed under **Color Mode**.

*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

*3: **Adobe RGB** is not available if an incompatible combination of the paper type and print quality is selected.

- Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Highest quality	This prints at the highest resolution. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
Thicken Fine Lines	Prints making fine lines appear thicker.
Unidirectional Printing	Prints by suppressing color variations and misaligned ruled lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, the quality is diminished from that of regular printing, however less ink is consumed. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when printing to check drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** in **Print Quality**, and select **Highest quality** and print.

For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) →P.67
- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) →P.70

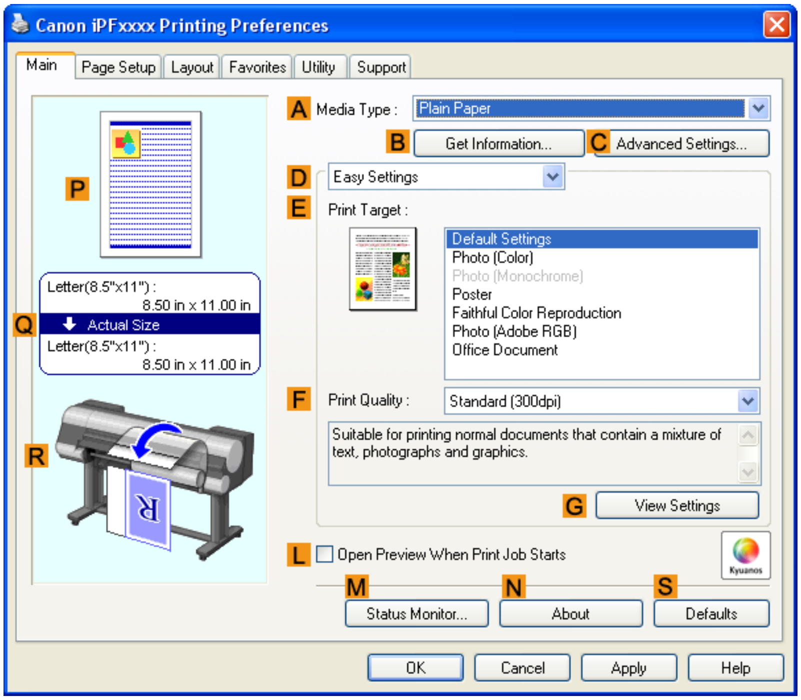
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how print photographic images in monochrome.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(Refer to "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :
- Default Settings
- Photo (Color)
- Photo (Monochrome)
- Poster
- Faithful Color Reproduction
- Photo (Adobe RGB)
- Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

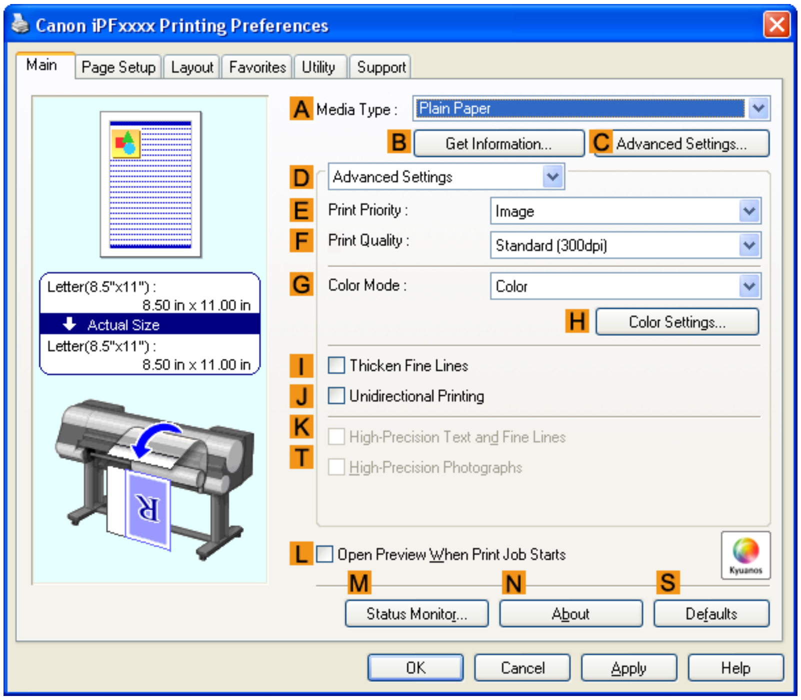
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Advanced Settings

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

G Color Mode : Color

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.

7. Click **High (600dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.

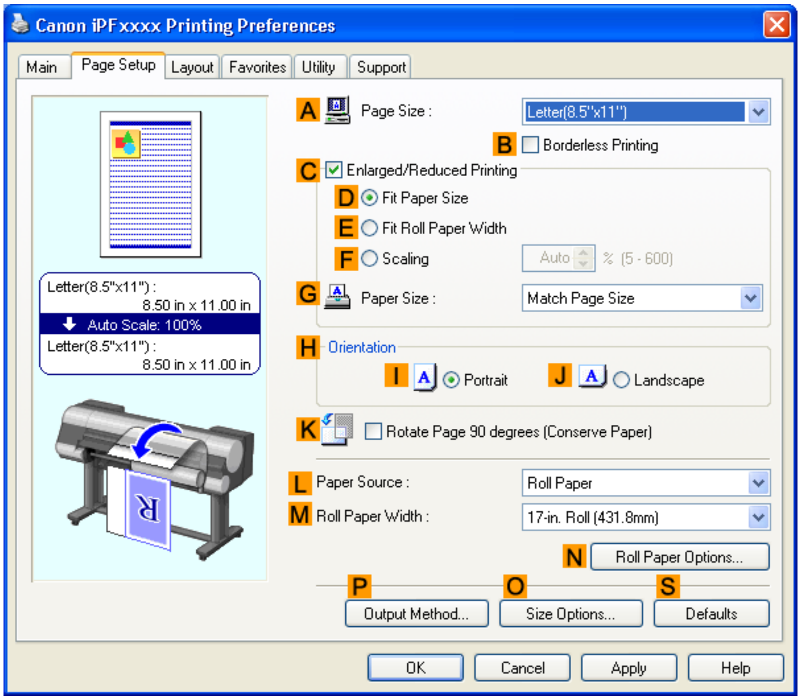
> Note
>
> - Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the type of paper.

8. Click **Monochrome** in the **G Color Mode** list.

9. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click **H Color Settings**.

> Note
>
> - For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver." →P.55

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Paper Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

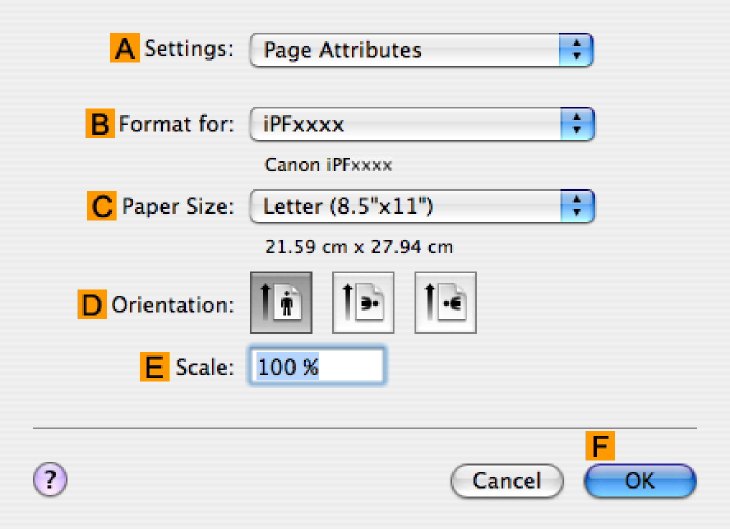
Note

- For details on how to check the printing settings, refer to "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 ".

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how print photographic images in monochrome.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

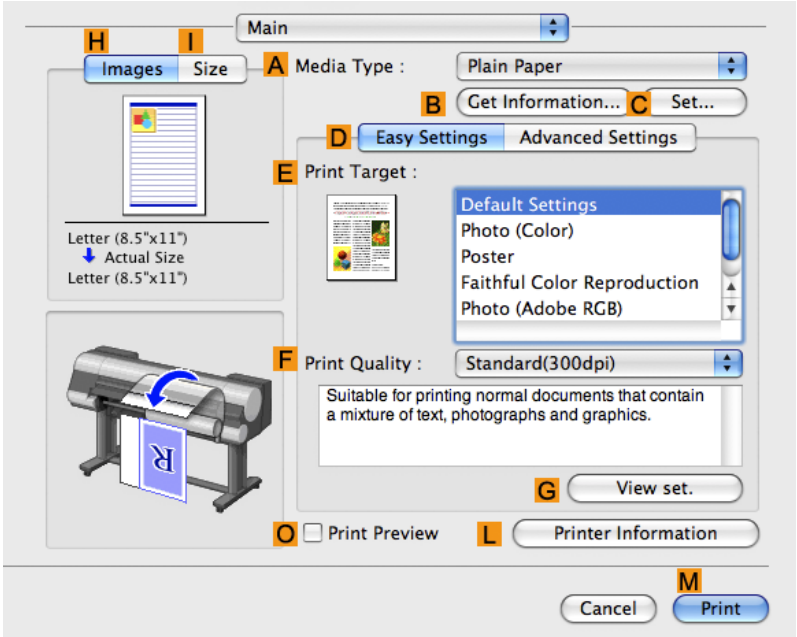
2. Select the printer in the **B** **Format for** list.

3. Choose the original size in the **C** **Paper Size** list.

4. Click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box.

5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

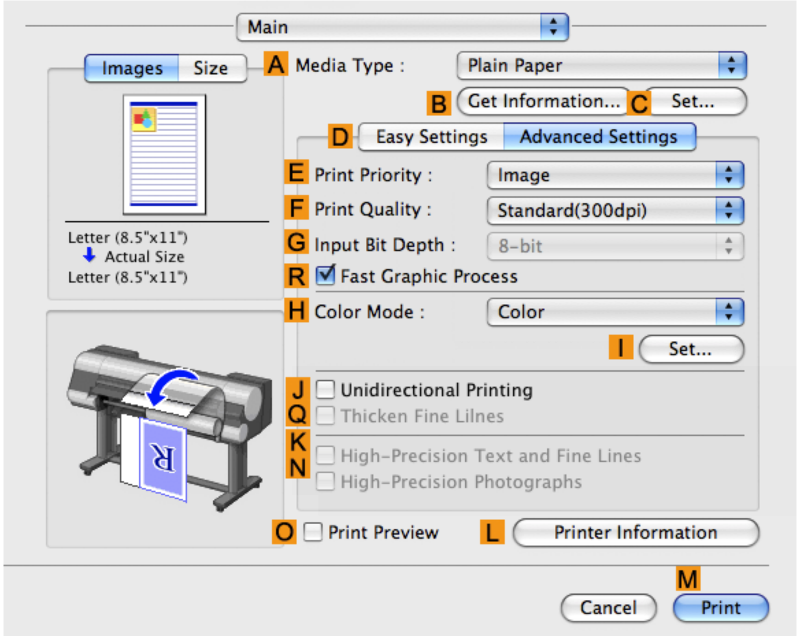
F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

7. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

G Input Bit Depth : 8-bit

R ☑ Fast Graphic Process

H Color Mode : Color

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

Q ☐ Thicken Fine Lilnes

K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

N ☐ High-Precision Photographs

O ☐ Print Preview

9. Click **Image** in the **E** **Print Priority** list.

10. Click **High (600dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

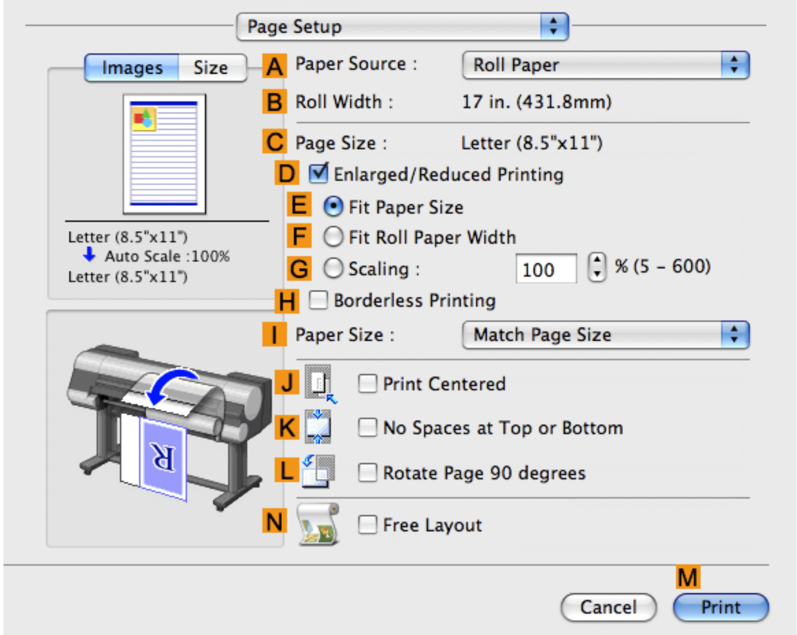
> Note
> - Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.

12. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click I **Set**.

> Note
> - For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
↓ Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

14. Confirm the settings of A **Paper Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

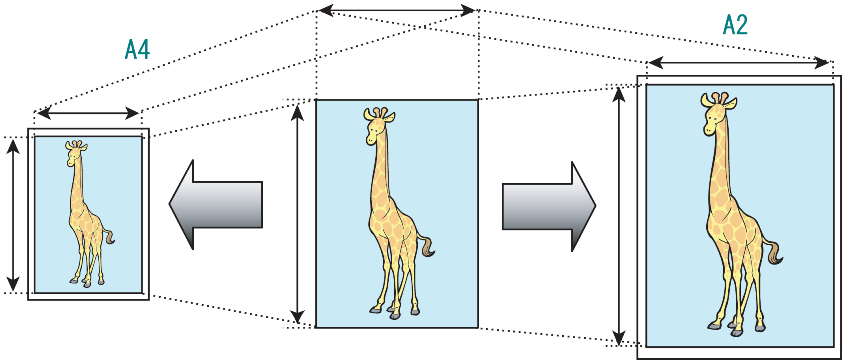
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

- **Fit Paper Size**

  Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) →P.73
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) →P.75

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

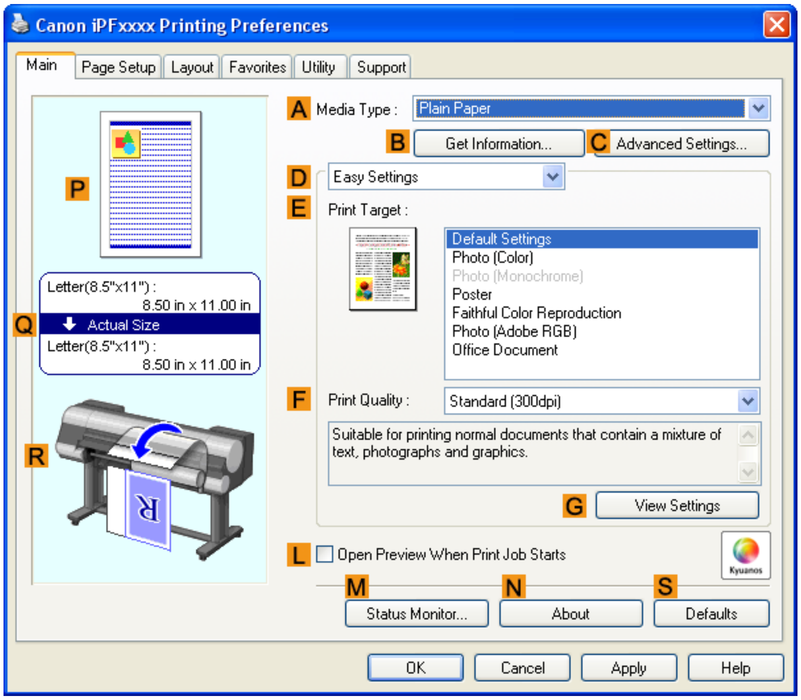
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

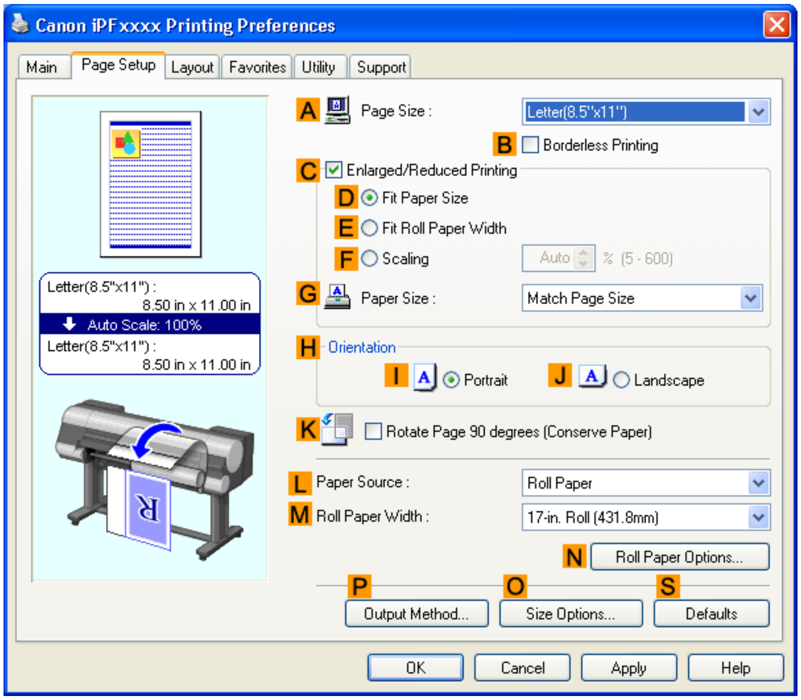
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Select the printing application in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11. Select the D **Fit Paper Size** check box.

12. Click **ISO A3** in the G **Paper Size** list.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

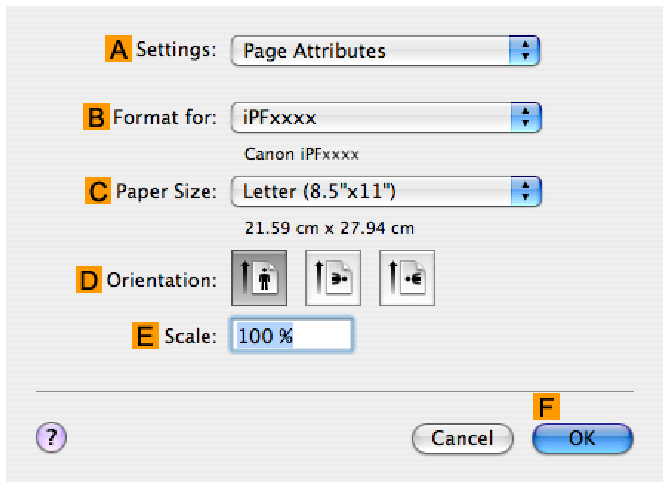
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper

- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

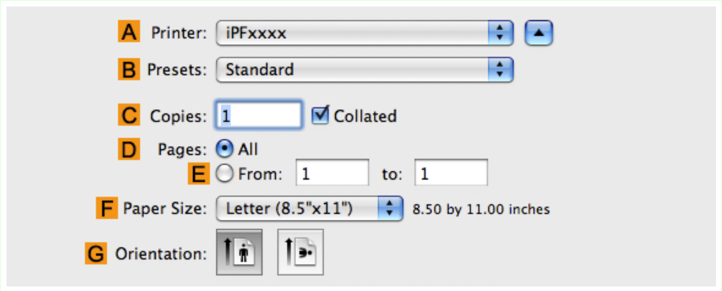
   Note

   - The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
     If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

   A Settings: Page Attributes
   B Format for: iPFxxxx
   Canon iPFxxxx
   C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
   21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
   D Orientation:
   E Scale: 100 %

   If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

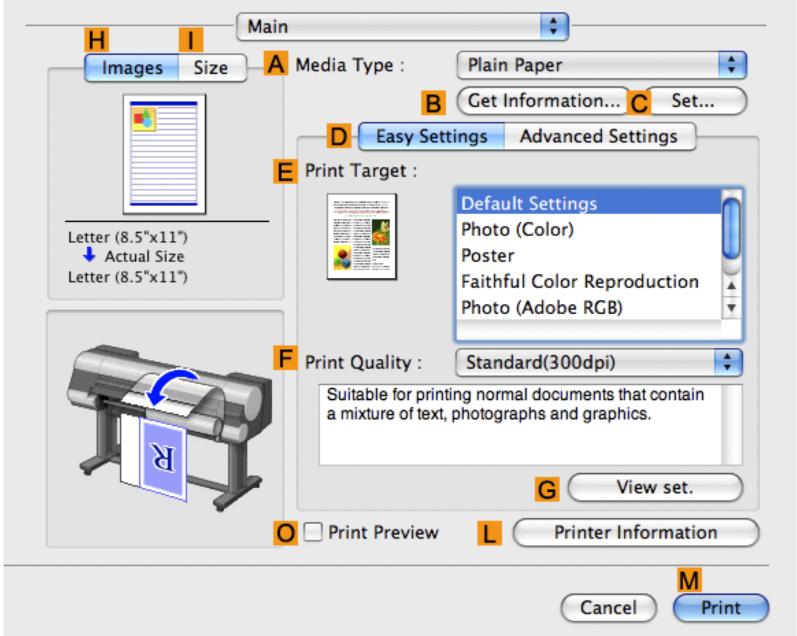
   A Printer: iPFxxxx
   B Presets: Standard
   C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
   D Pages: ● All
   E ○ From: 1 to: 1
   F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
   G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

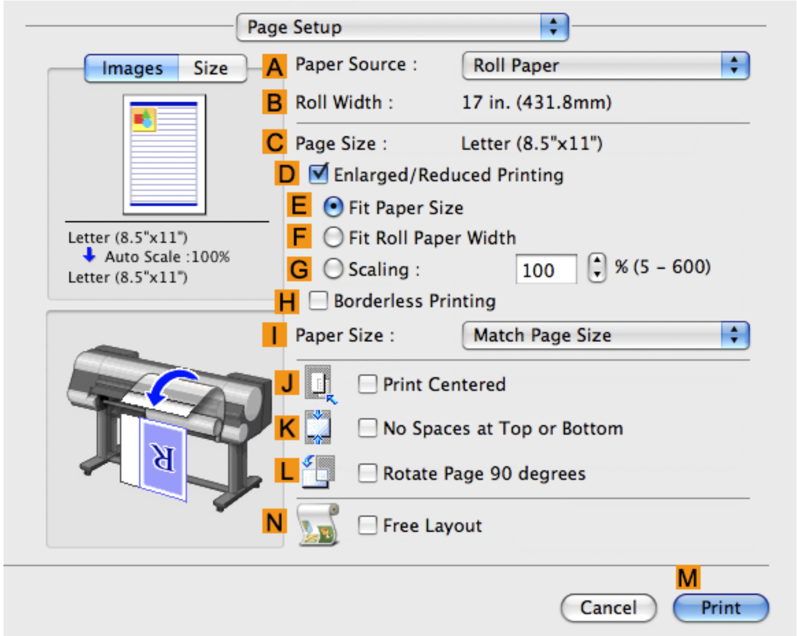
O ☐ Print Preview

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

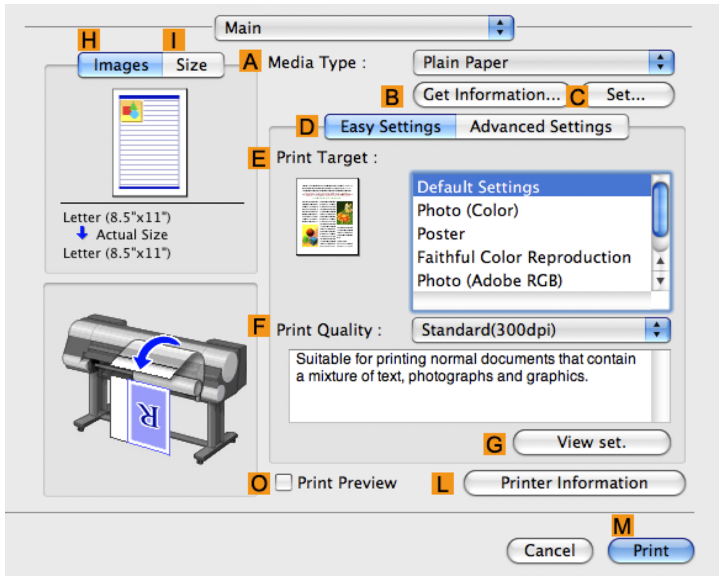
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

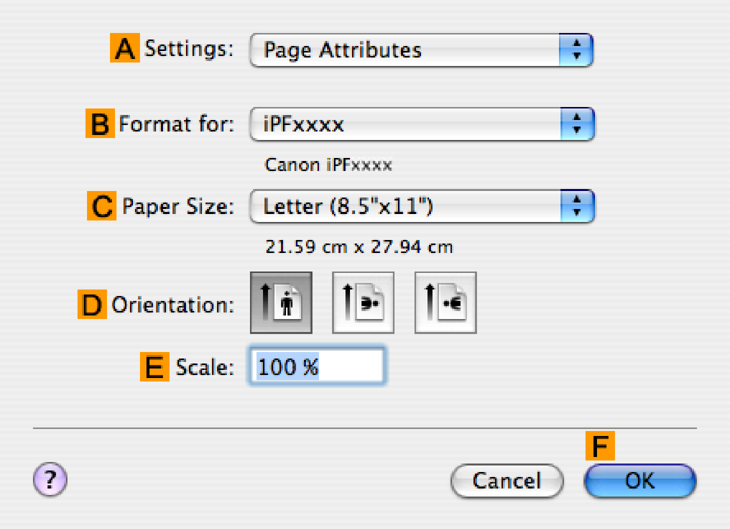
Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

☐ Print Preview

12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Scale: 100 %

13. Select the **D** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Make sure **E** **Fit Paper Size** is selected.

15. Click **ISO A3** in the **I** **Paper Size** list.

16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

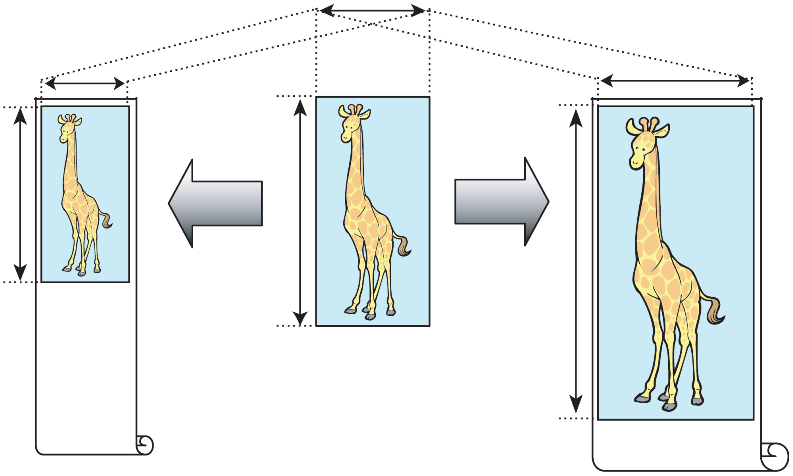
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

- **Fit Roll Paper Width**

  Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) →P.79
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) →P.82

> Note
> - For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

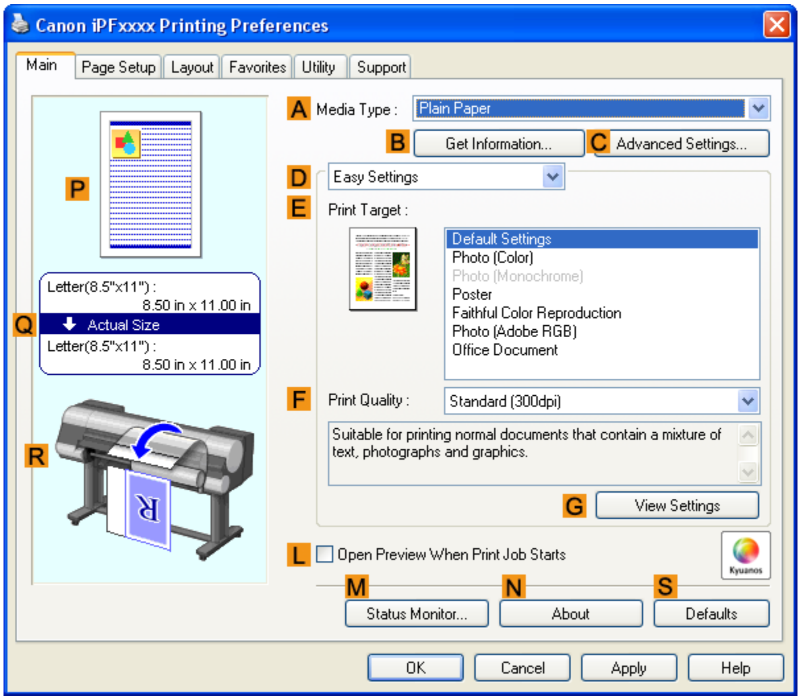
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

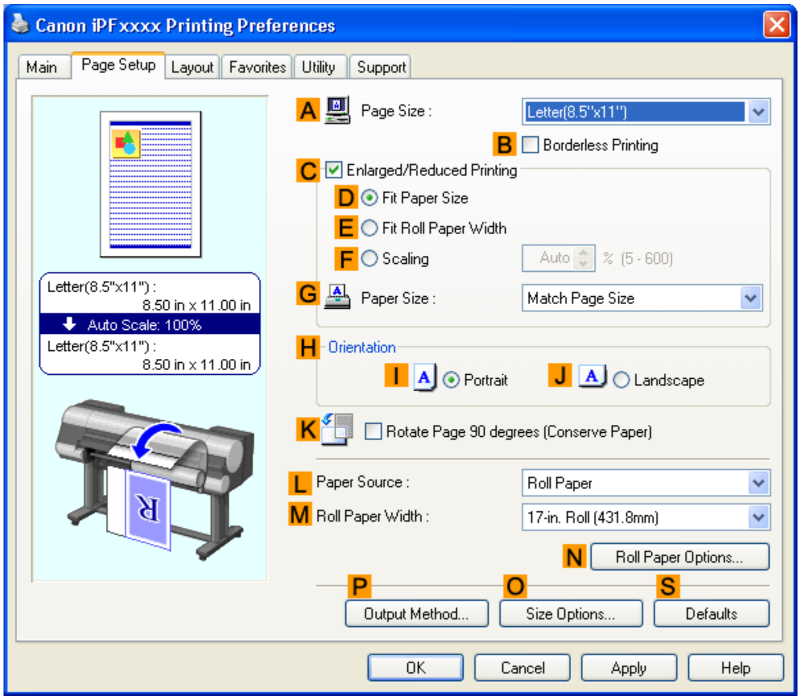
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Select the printing application in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

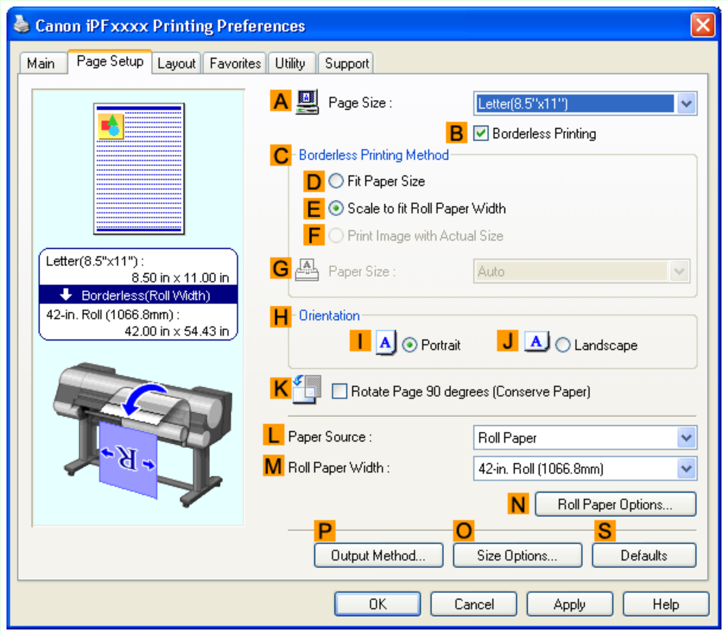
7. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☑ Borderless Printing

C Borderless Printing Method

D ○ Fit Paper Size

E ● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Print Image with Actual Size

G Paper Size : Auto

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Borderless(Roll Width)

42-in. Roll (1066.8mm) : 42.00 in x 54.43 in

10. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

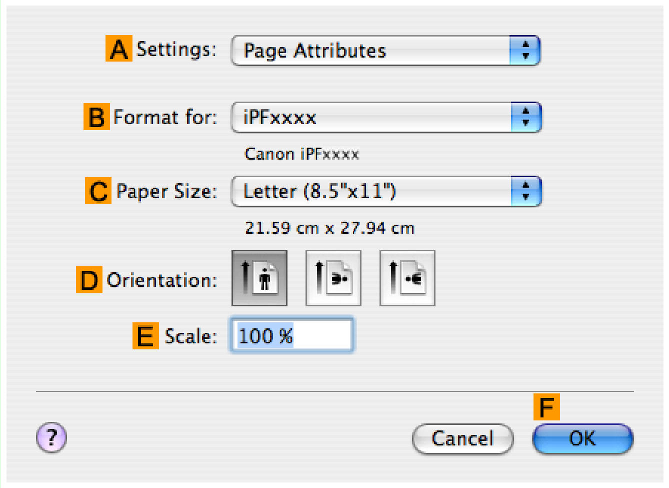
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. This sets the B **Format for** and C **Paper Size**.

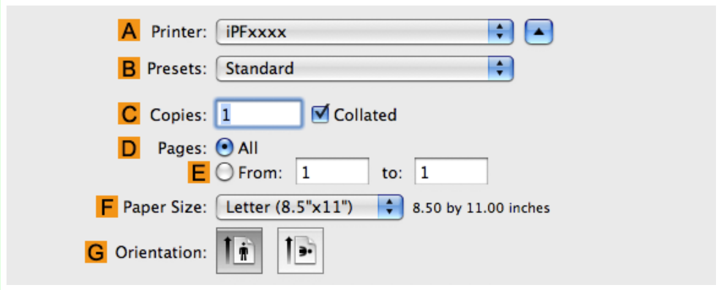
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



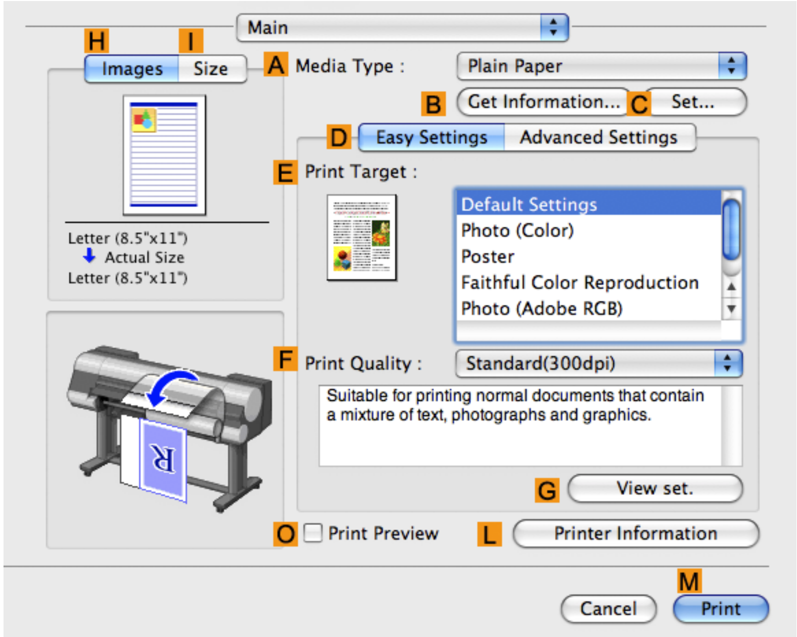
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the A **Printer** list.

3. In the F **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

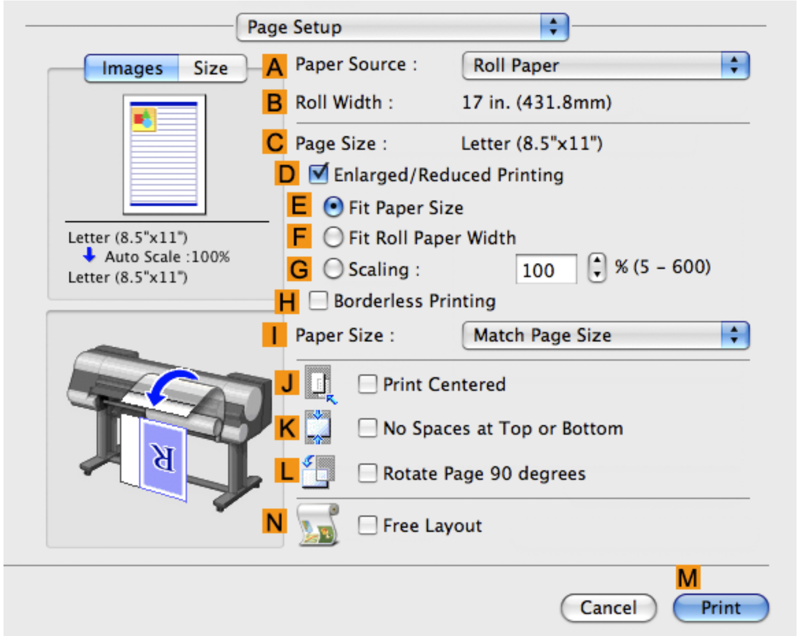
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

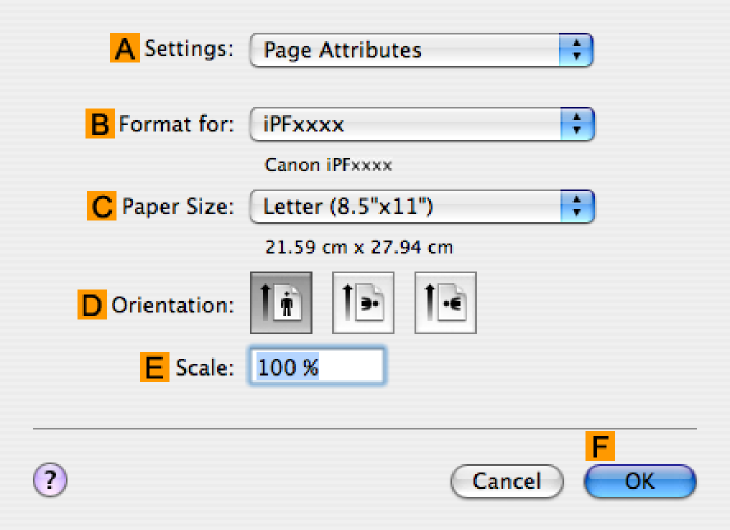
Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

> Note
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.

12. Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

13. Select the **D** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click **F** **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

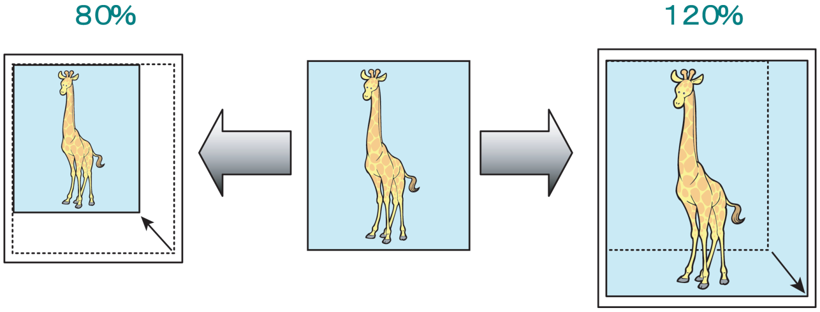
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

- **Scaling**

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) →P.86
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) →P.88

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

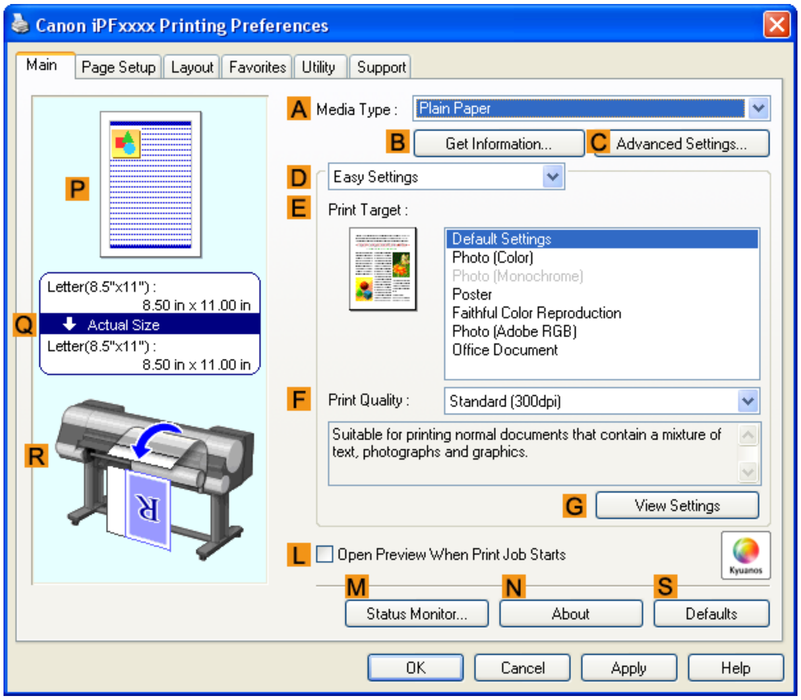
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

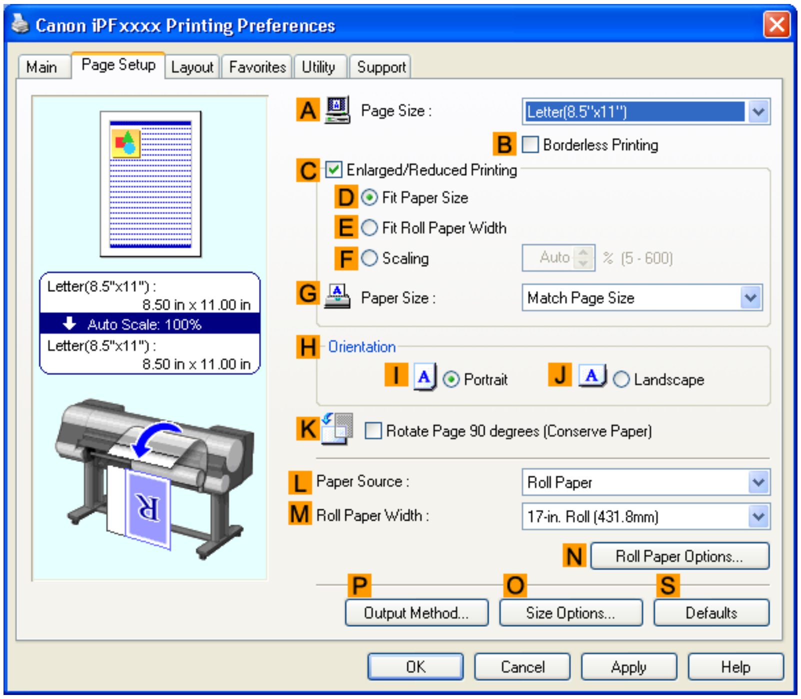
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Select the printing application in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

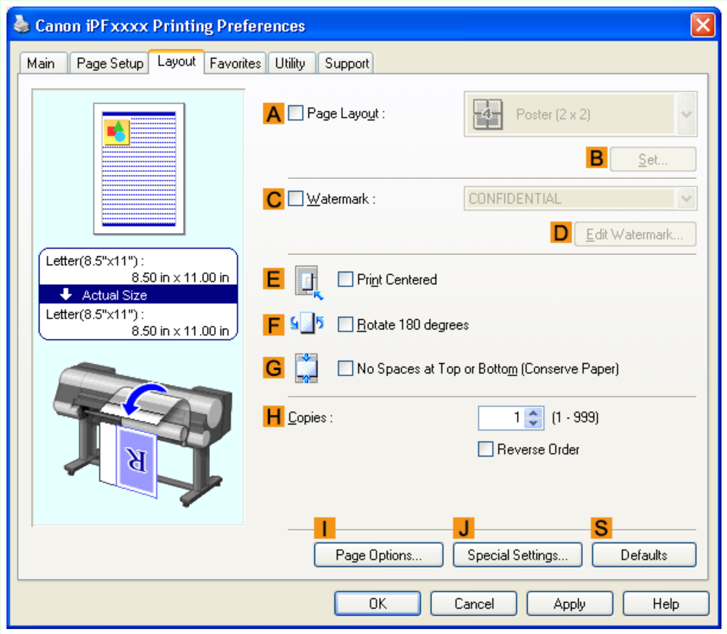
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11. Click **ISO A4** in the G **Paper Size** list.

12. Click F **Scaling** and enter **120**.

> Note
> - You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portions off the bottom and right edges of the paper will not be printed.
> - If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting E **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

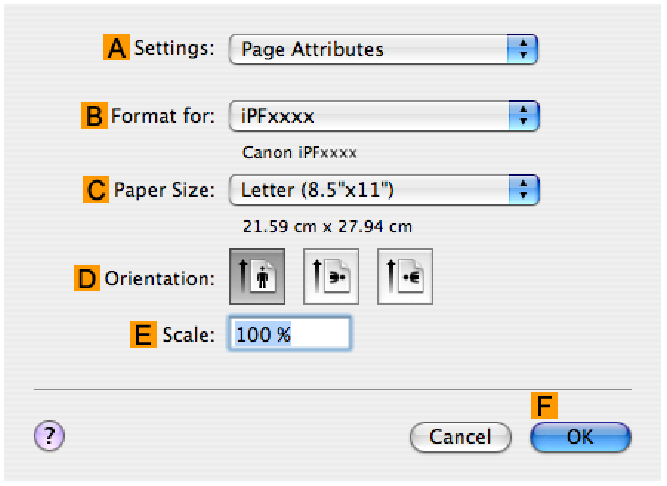
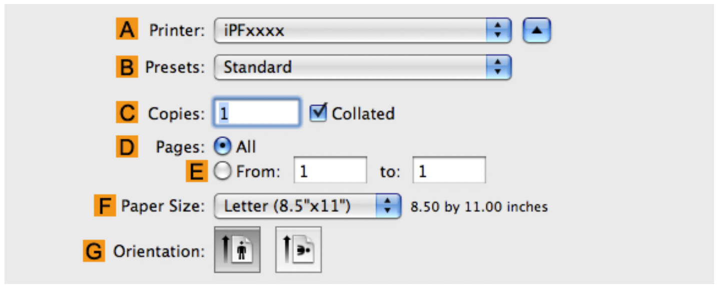
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type

- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B** **Format for** and **C** **Paper Size**.

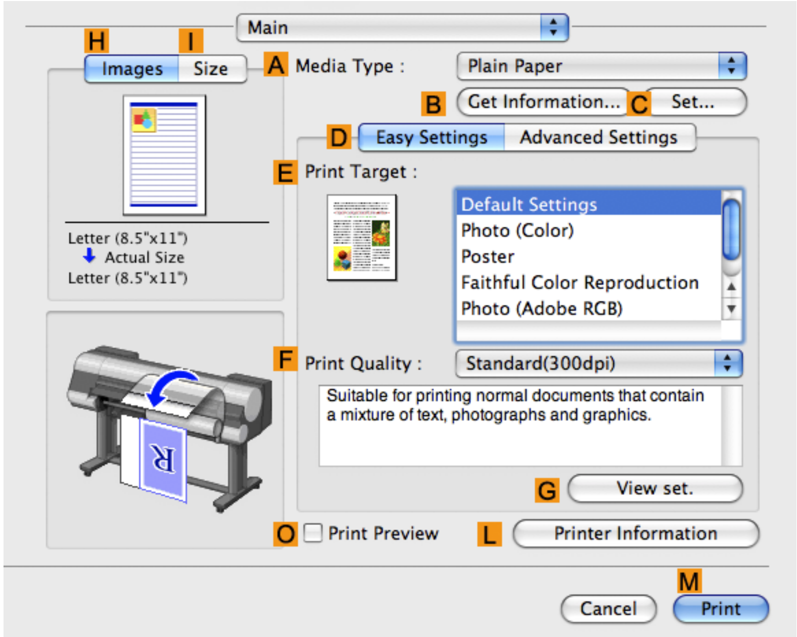
> Note
>
> - The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.
>
> 
>
> A Settings: Page Attributes
> B Format for: iPFxxxx
> Canon iPFxxxx
> C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
> 21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
> D Orientation:
> E Scale: 100 %
>
>
>
> If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.
>
> 
>
> A Printer: iPFxxxx
> B Presets: Standard
> C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
> D Pages: ● All
> E ○ From: 1 to: 1
> F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
> G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

3. In the **F** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

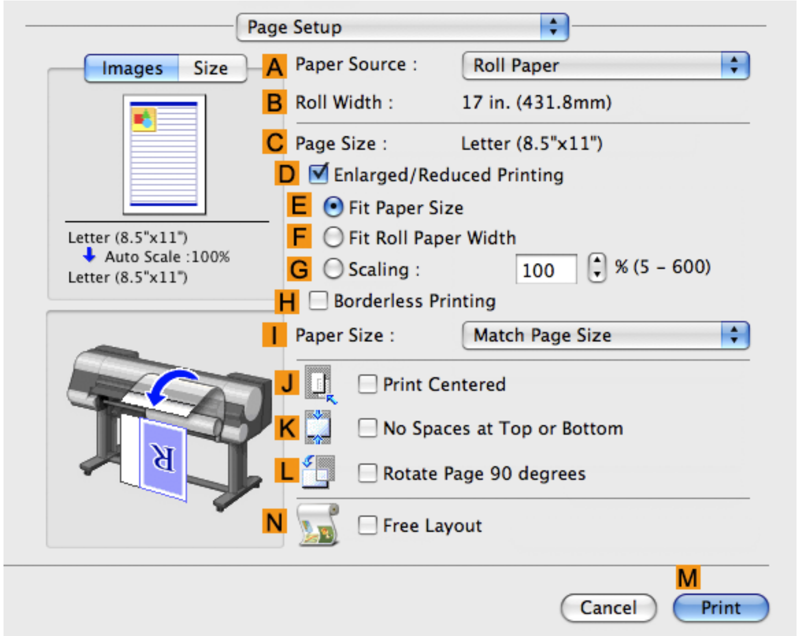
O ☐ Print Preview

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

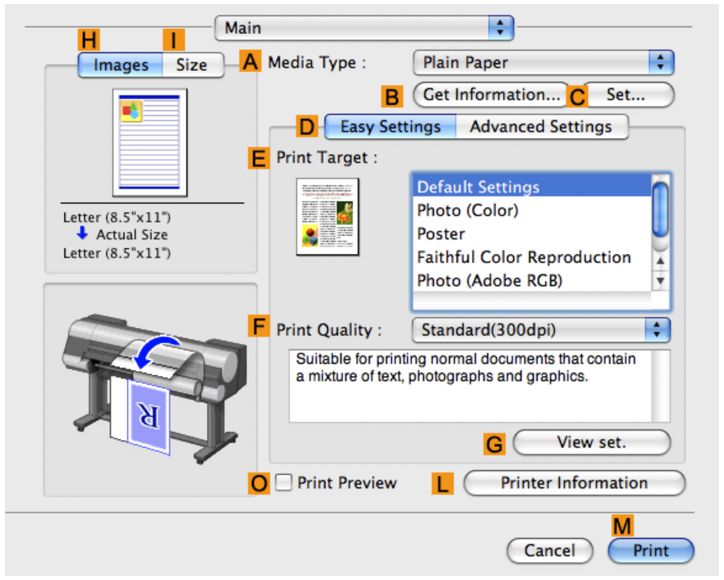
N ☐ Free Layout

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

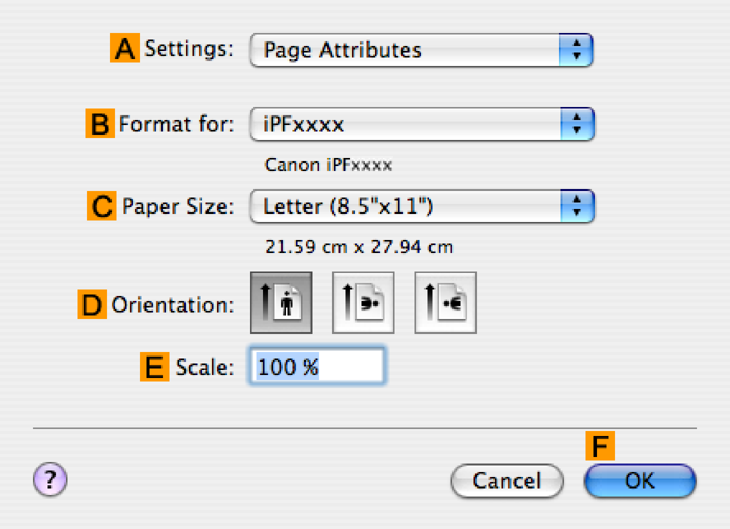
Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

☐ Print Preview

12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Orientation:

Scale: 100 %

13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click G **Scaling** and enter **120**.

> Note
>
> - You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
> - If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the J **Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin (See "Print Area →P.1126 "). To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.

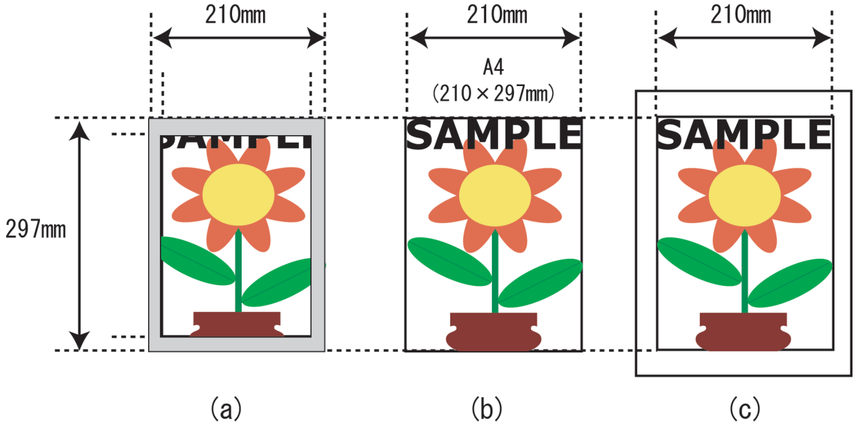
For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

• Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the **outside** of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



- (a) Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
- (b) Page Size
- (c) Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)

Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size—a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 28 mm (1.10 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 10 mm (0.39 in) higher than the page size

Note

- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing.(See "Paper Sizes →P.775 ")
- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a Custom Paper Size. Oversized printing is not available with **Custom Size**.(See "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes →P.131 ")

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) →P.94
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) →P.96

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

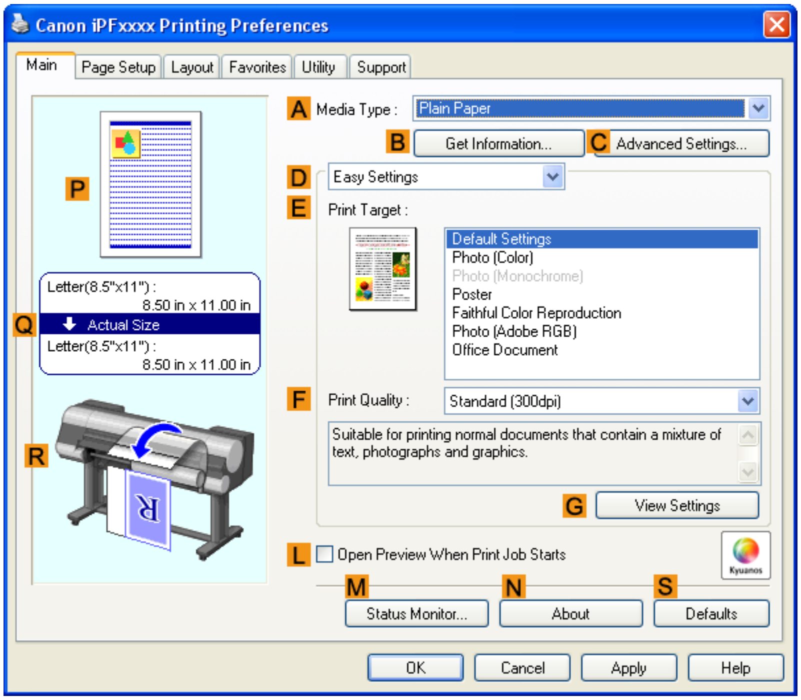
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

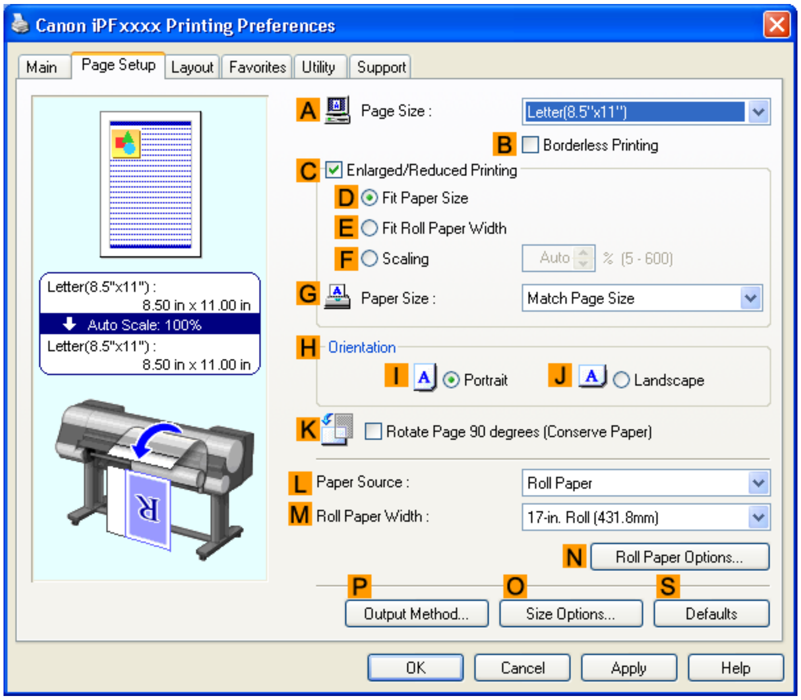
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **O** **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

7. In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.

8. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the A **Page Size** list.

10. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

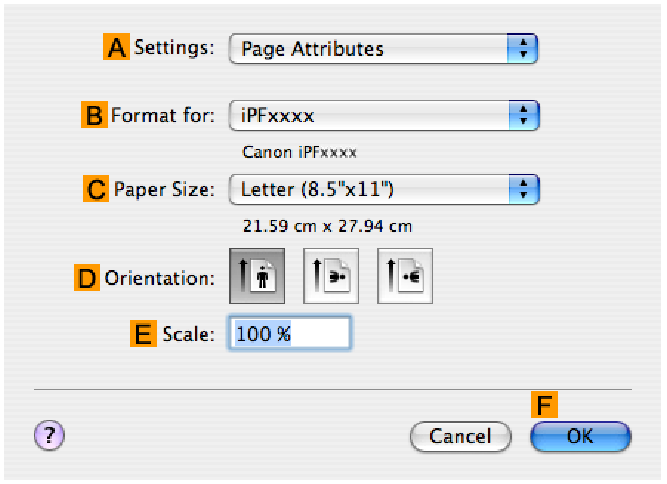
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

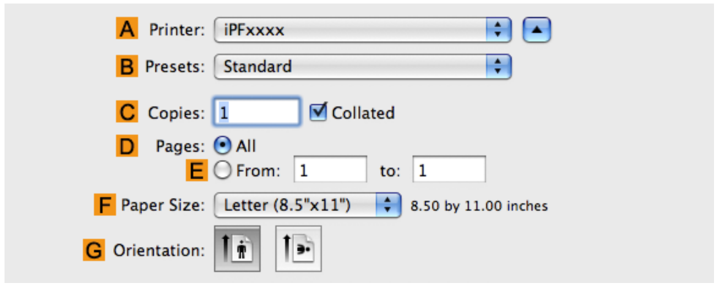
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



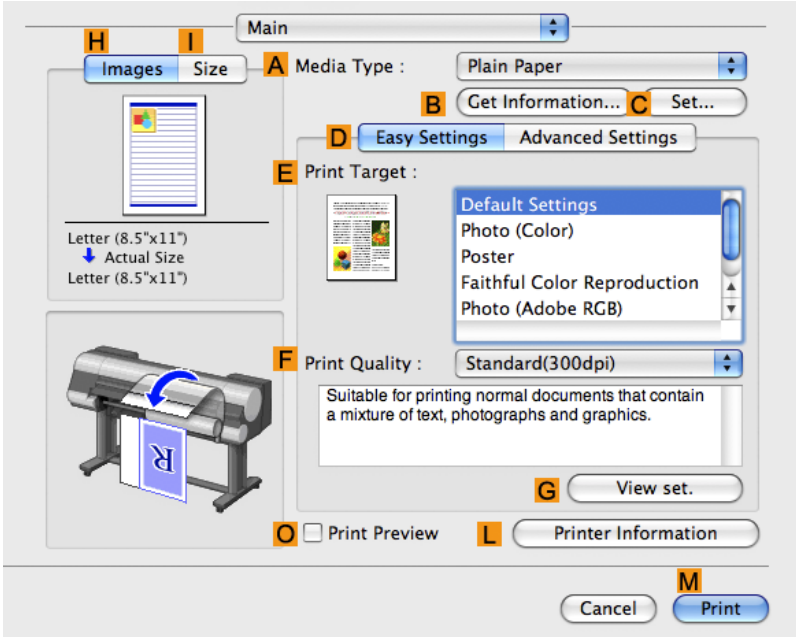
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In **F Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

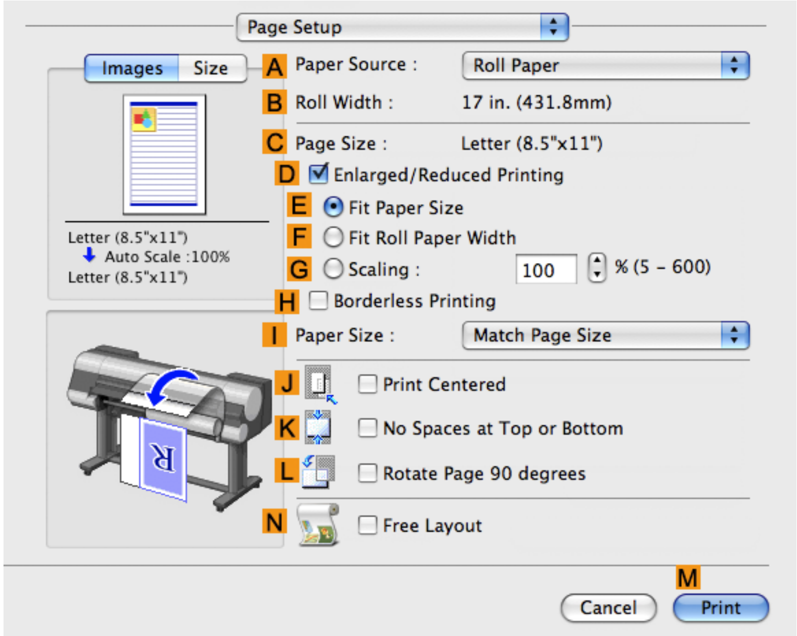
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

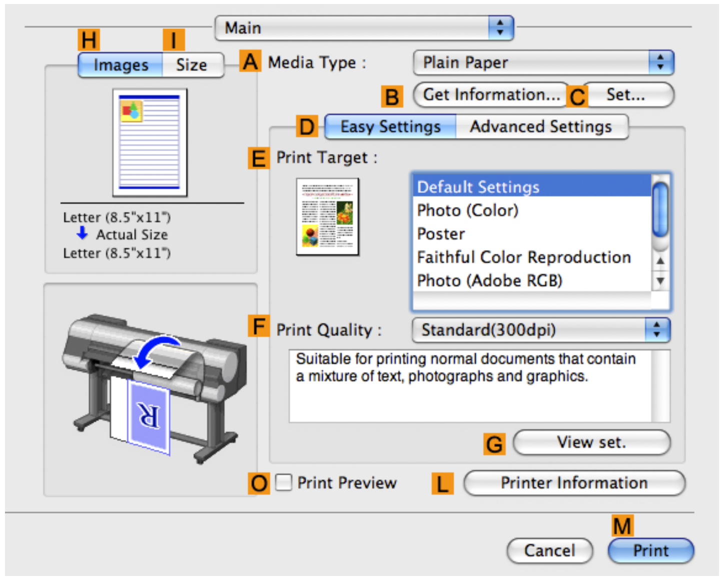
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

☐ Free Layout

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.

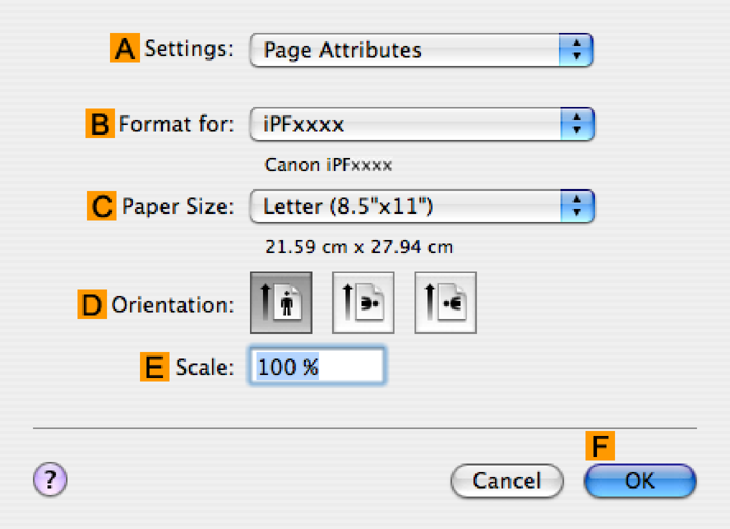


Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Scale: 100 %

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

• Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

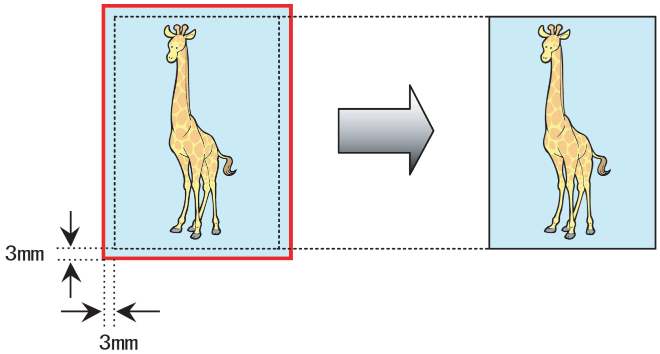
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Always set the blue Switch on the Platen to the ● side for borderless printing. Printing quality may be affected if the Switch is incorrectly set.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper →P.774 ")
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected when performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- When **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**, print without borders only on the left and right sides.
- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

• Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

• Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) →P.101
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) →P.103

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) —that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

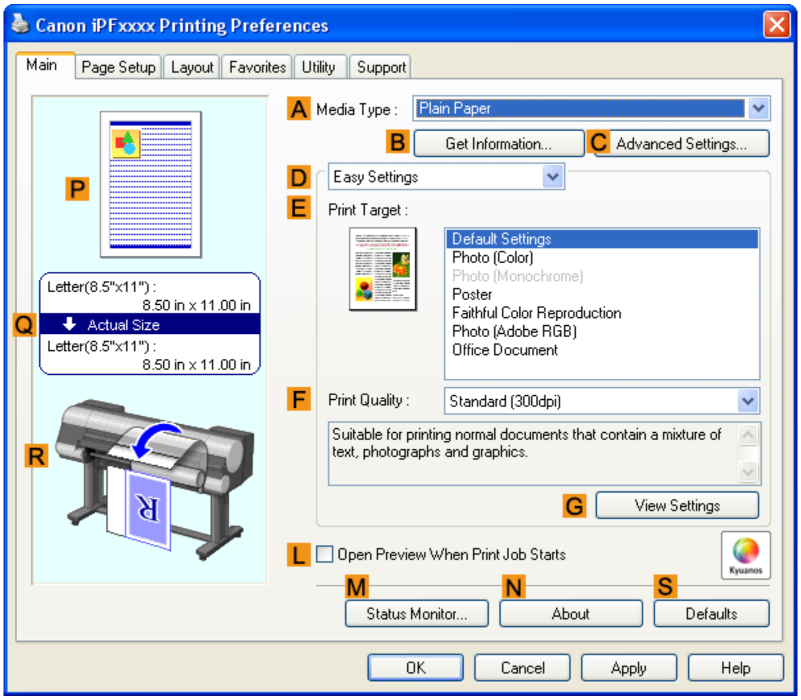
   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
   - The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

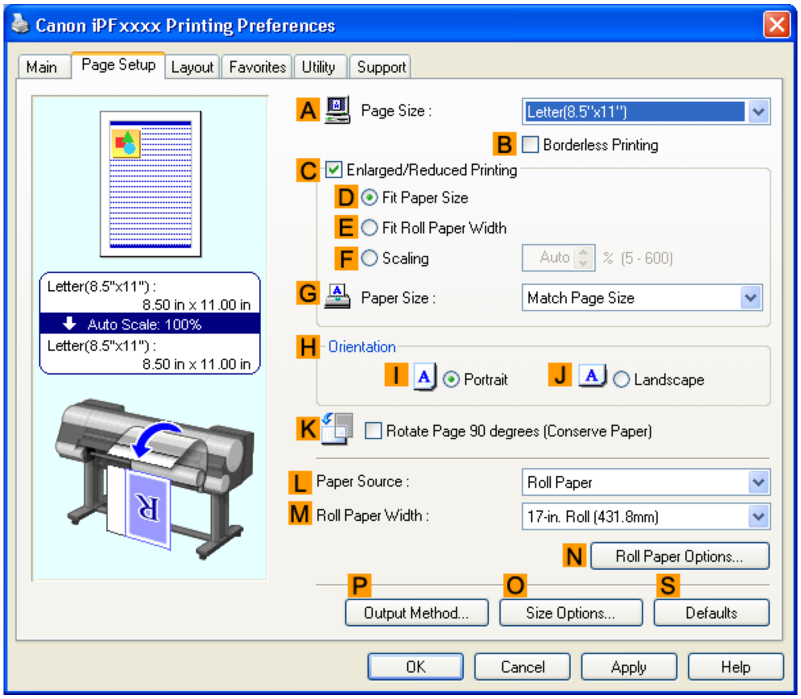
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

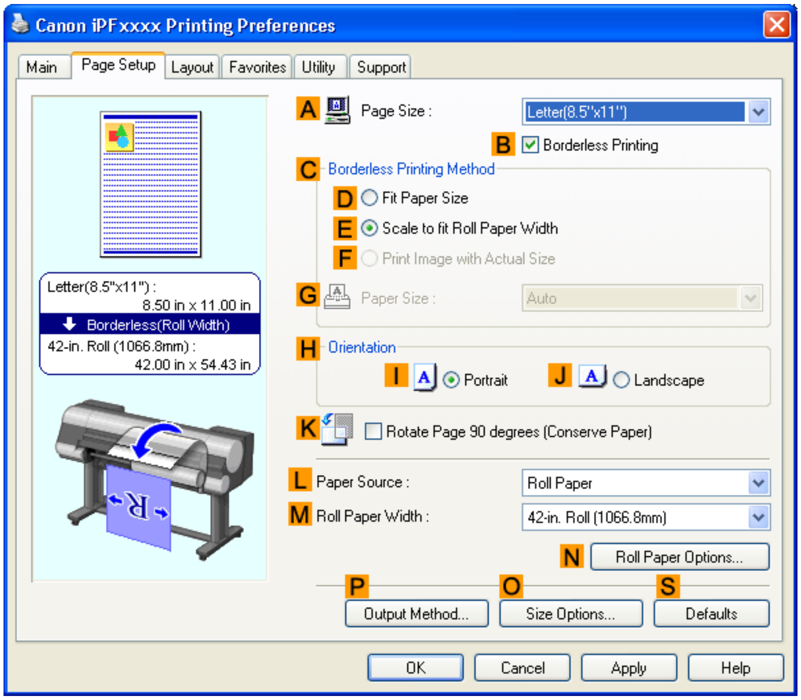
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9. Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



Canon iPF xxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☑ Borderless Printing

C Borderless Printing Method

D ○ Fit Paper Size

E ● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Print Image with Actual Size

G Paper Size : Auto

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in
Borderless(Roll Width)
42-in. Roll (1066.8mm) :
42.00 in x 54.43 in

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

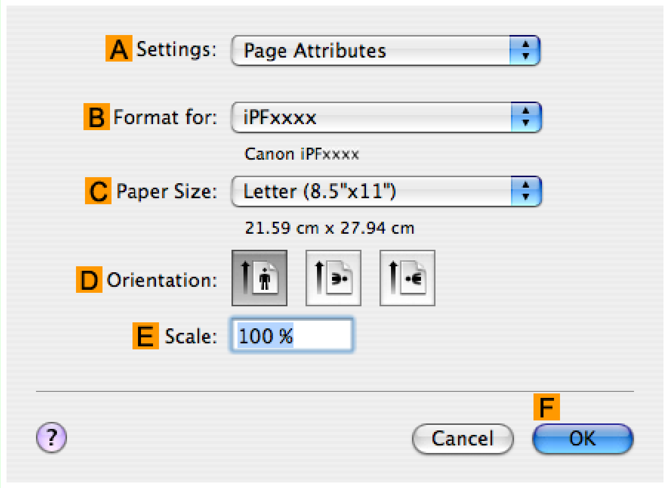
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)–Borderless
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper

- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

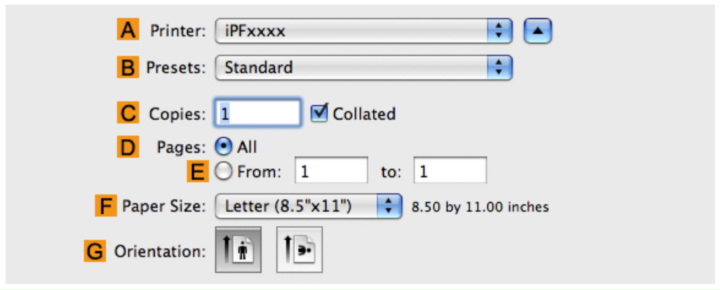
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

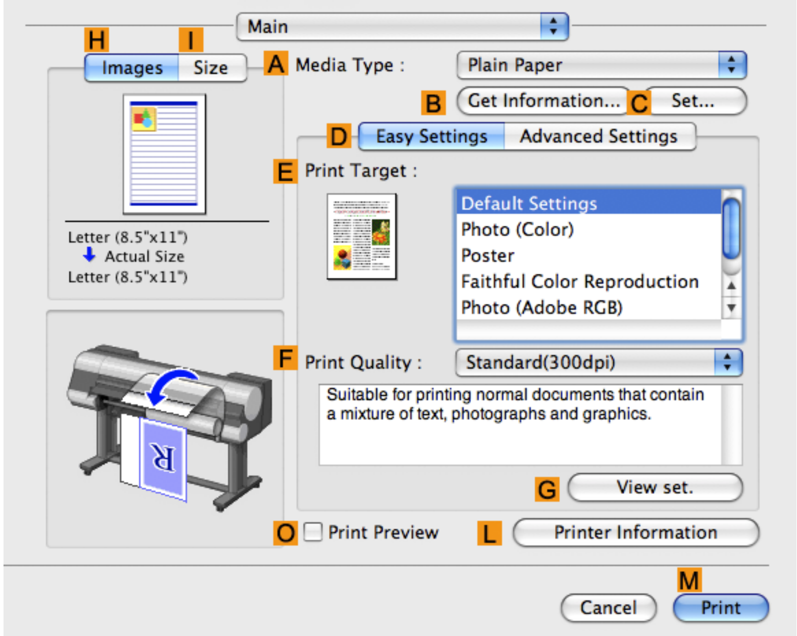
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by **—Borderless**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



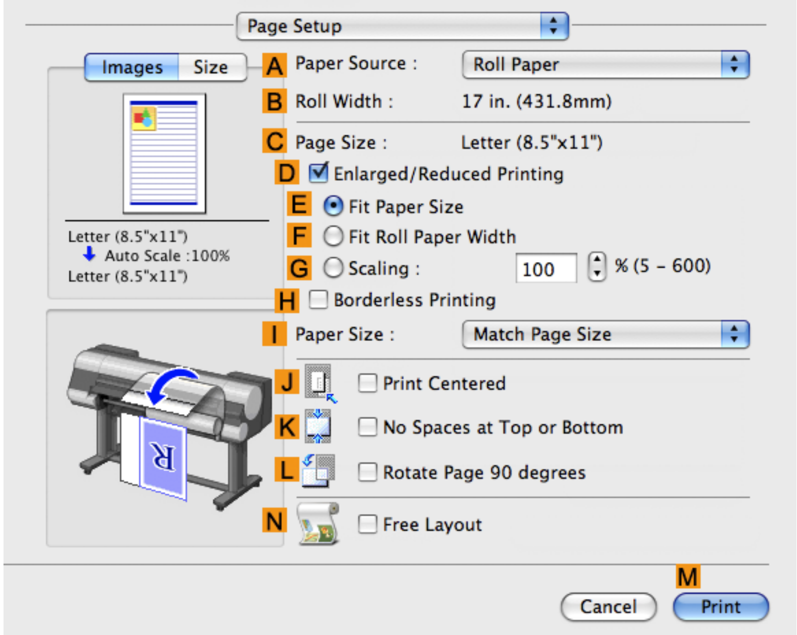
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

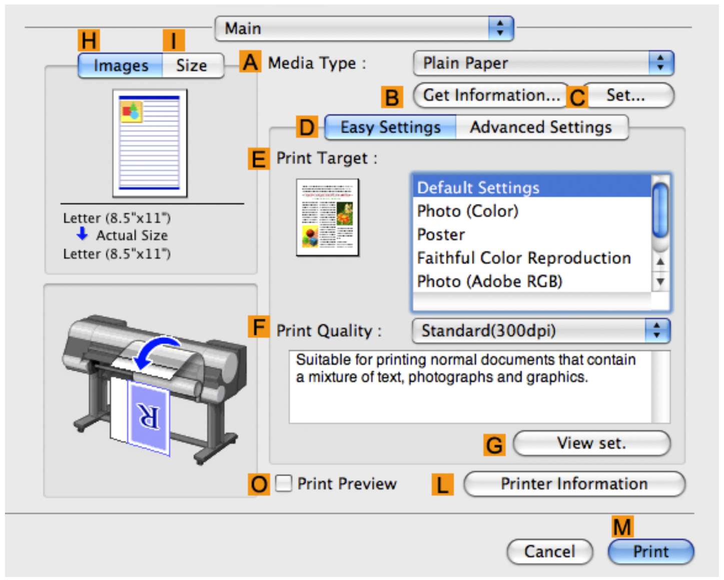
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



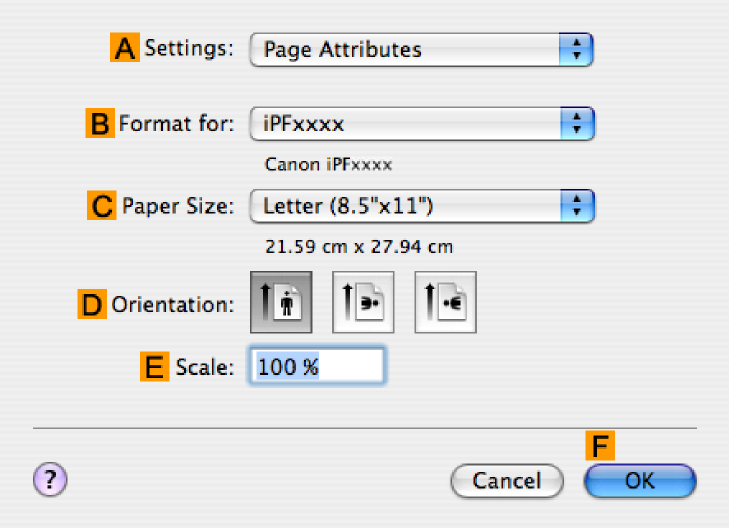
10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

    Note
    - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

    Note
    - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

• Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

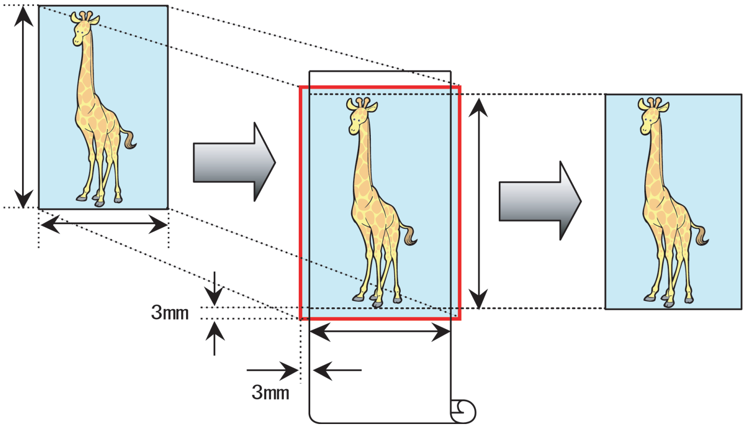
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Always set the blue switch on the platen to the ● side for borderless printing. Printing quality may be affected if the switch is incorrectly set.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (Refer to "Types of Paper →P.774 ")
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected when performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
- When **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**, print without borders only on the left and right sides.
- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

• Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

• Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) →P.108
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) →P.110

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

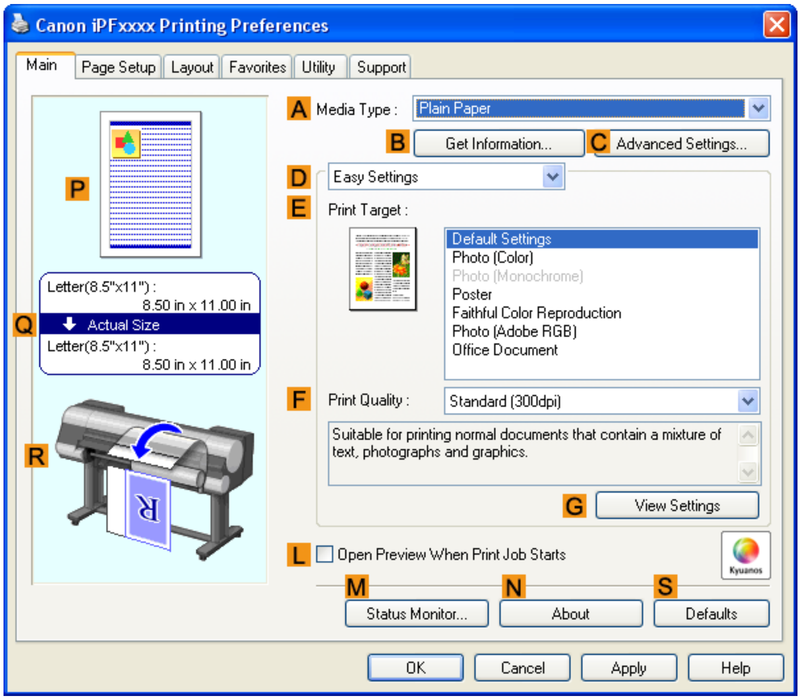
   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :
Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

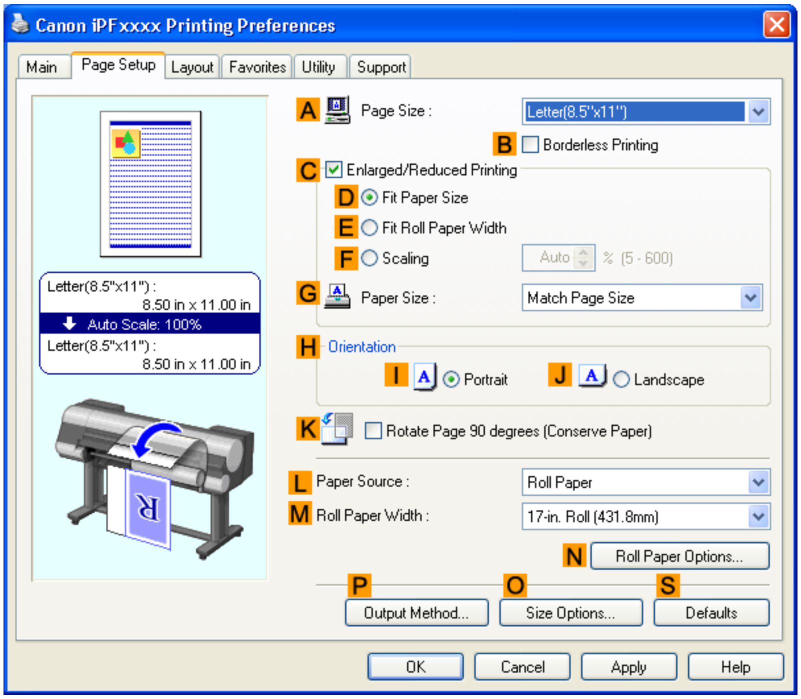
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

5. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

6. Select the print target in the **E** **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

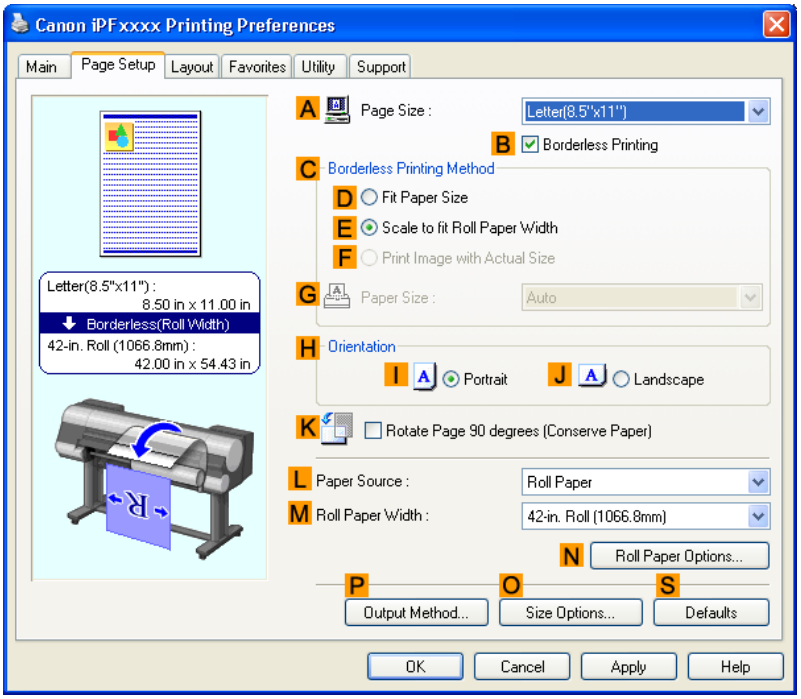
Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Main | Page Setup | Layout | Favorites | Utility | Support

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☑ Borderless Printing

C Borderless Printing Method

D ○ Fit Paper Size

E ● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Print Image with Actual Size

G Paper Size : Auto

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Borderless(Roll Width)

42-in. Roll (1066.8mm) : 42.00 in x 54.43 in

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click D **Fit Paper Size**.

14. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Paper Size** list.

15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

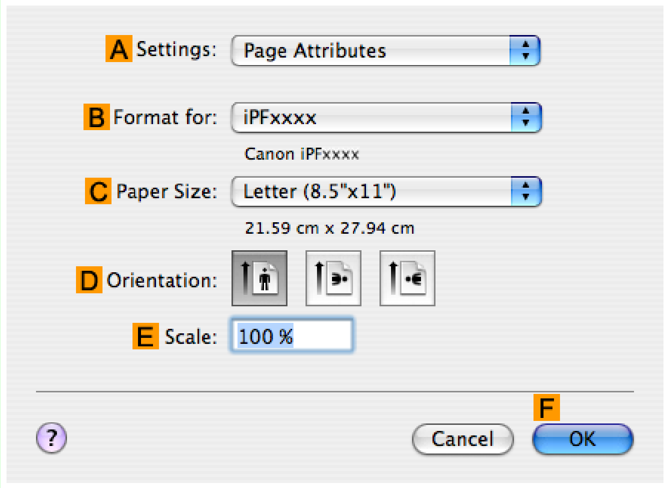
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)

- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

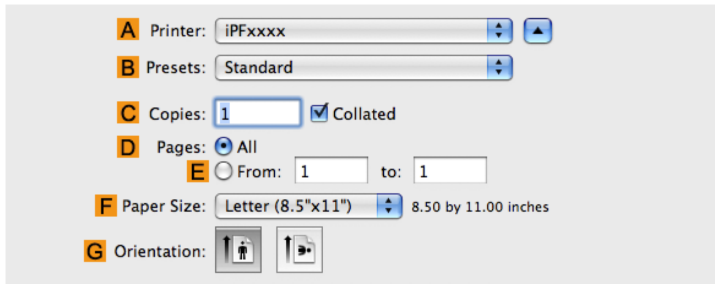
1. This sets the B **Format for** and C **Paper Size**.

   Note

   - The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
     If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



   If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the A **Printer** list.

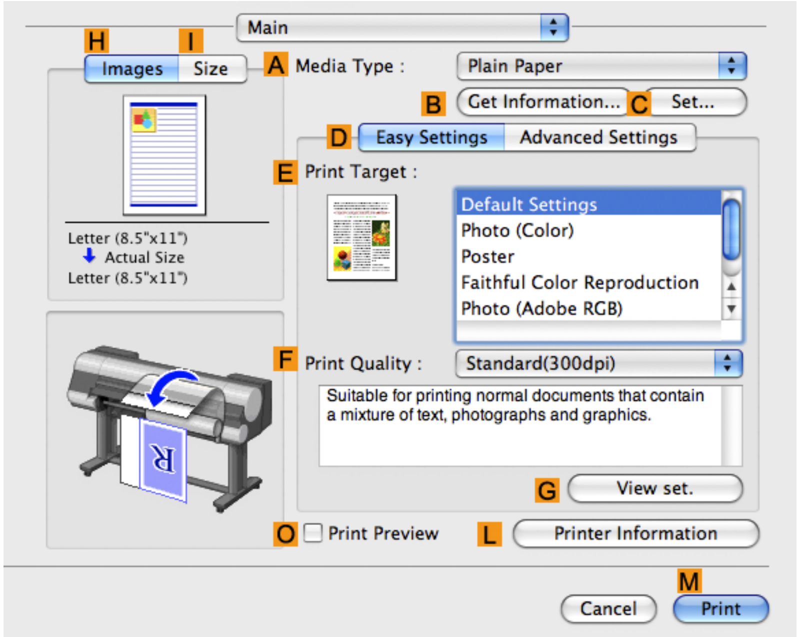
3. In the F **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

   Note

   - All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

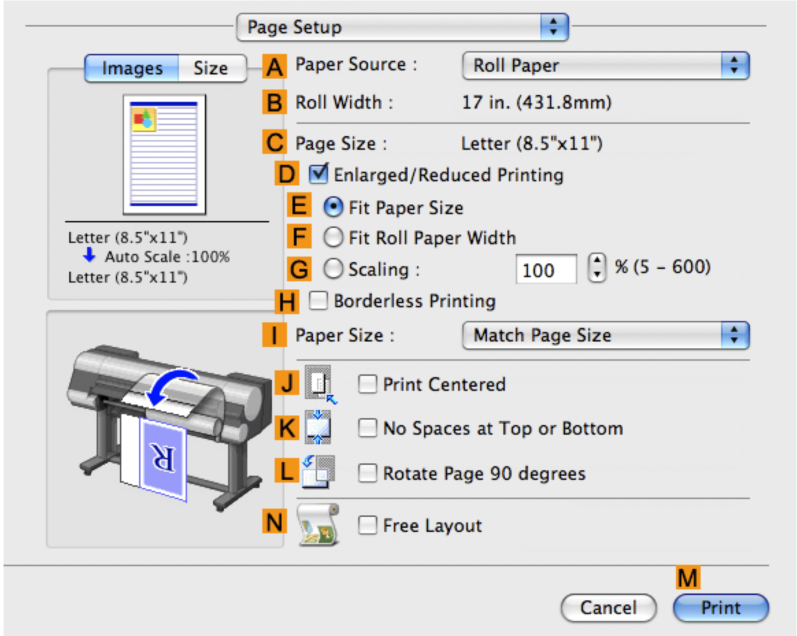


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

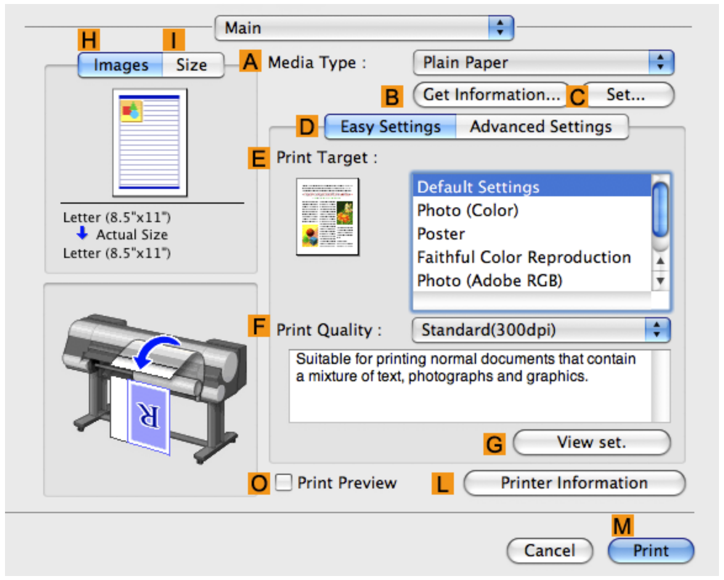
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



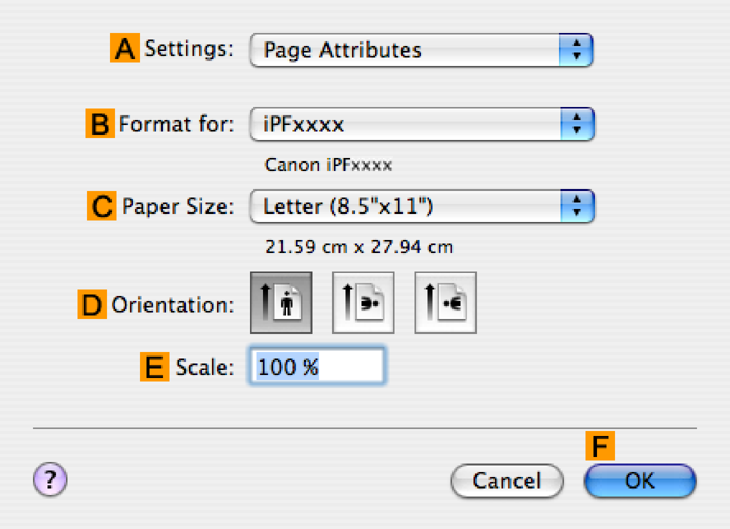
10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list—in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.


Main
Media Type : Plain Paper
Print Target : Default Settings
Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Letter (8.5"x11") → Actual Size → Letter (8.5"x11")

12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **10"x12"**.


A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

13. On the **Page Setup** pane, select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.

15. Click **E Fit Paper Size** under **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

16. In **I Paper Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

17. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

• Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

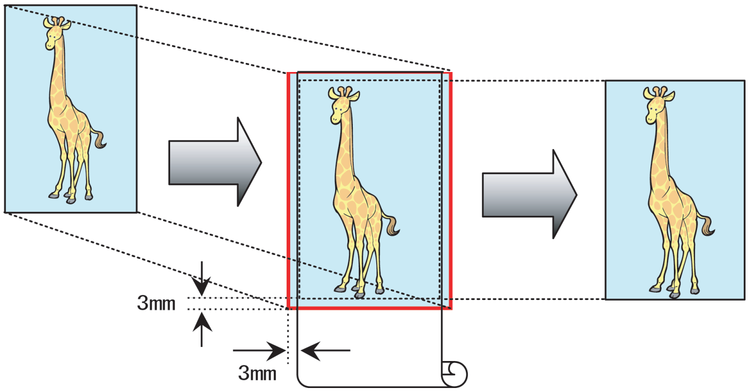
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Always set the blue Switch on the Platen to the ● side for borderless printing. Printing quality may be affected if the Switch is incorrectly set.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper →P.774 ")
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- If **Fit Paper Size** or **Print Image with Actual Size** (Windows only) is selected when performing borderless printing, **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** cannot be selected.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- When **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**, print without borders only on the left and right sides.
- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

• Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

- **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) →P.115
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) →P.117

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

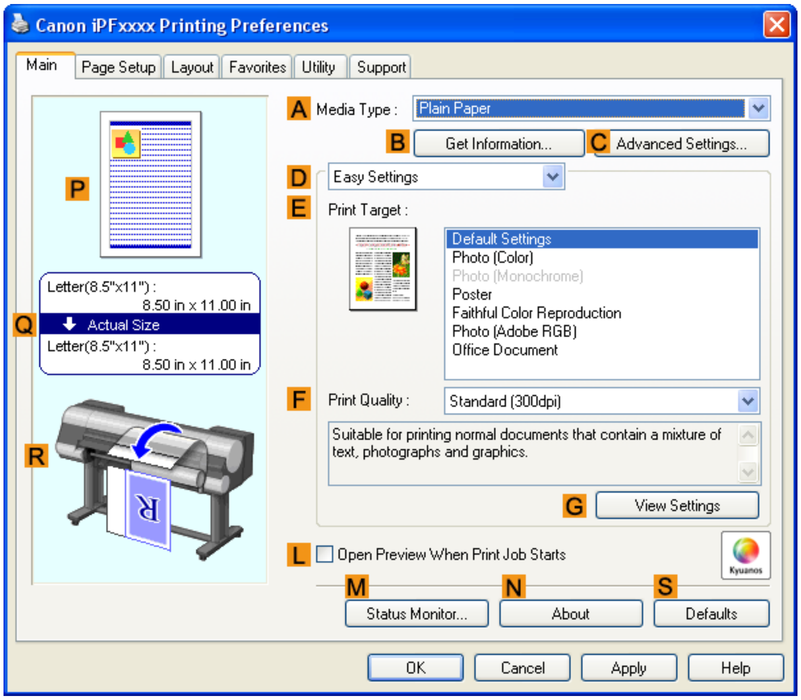
   Note

   - If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

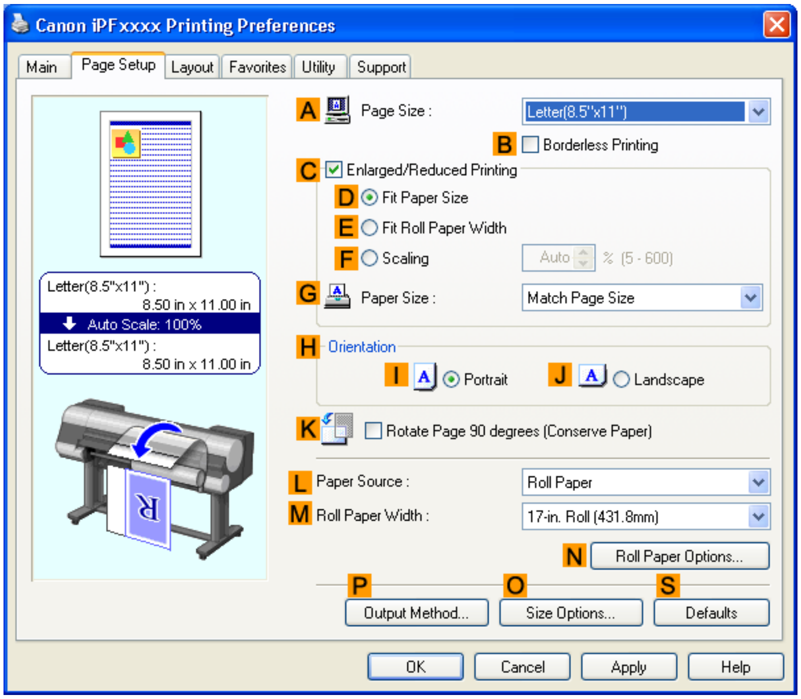
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

5. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

6. Select the print target in the **E** **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

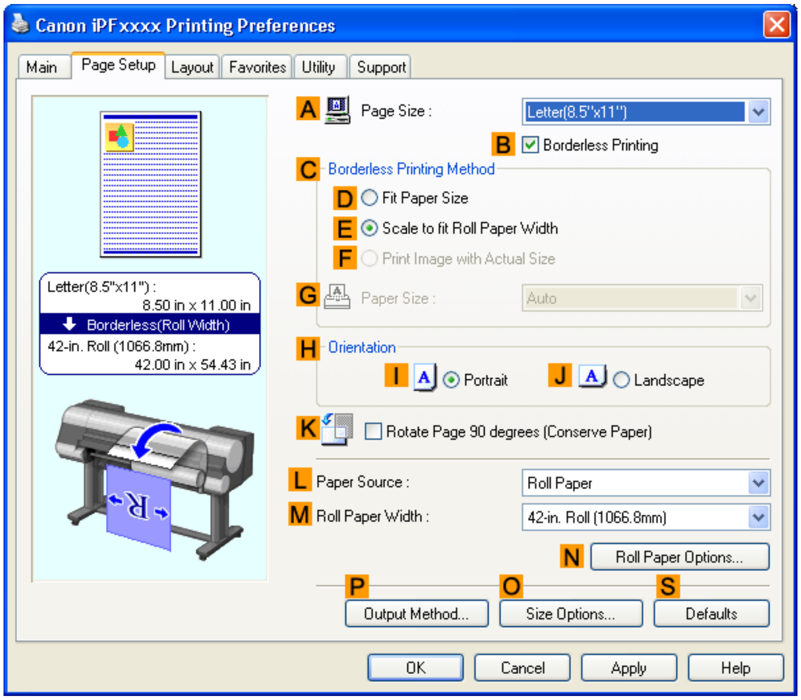
Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



Canon iPF xxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☑ Borderless Printing

C Borderless Printing Method

D ○ Fit Paper Size

E ● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Print Image with Actual Size

G Paper Size : Auto

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Borderless(Roll Width)

42-in. Roll (1066.8mm) : 42.00 in x 54.43 in

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, make sure **E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

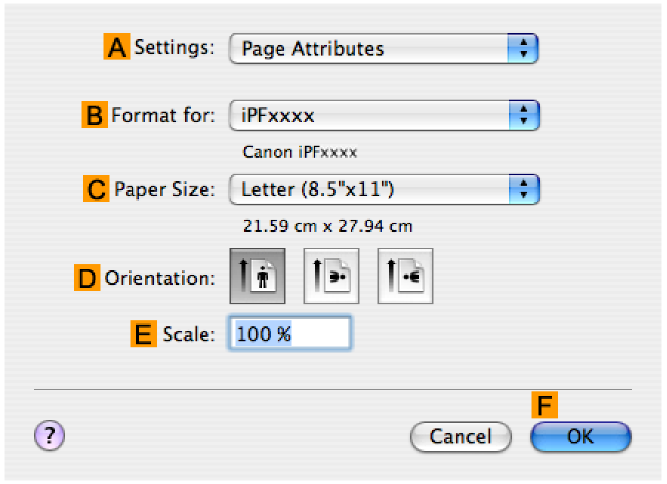
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper

- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

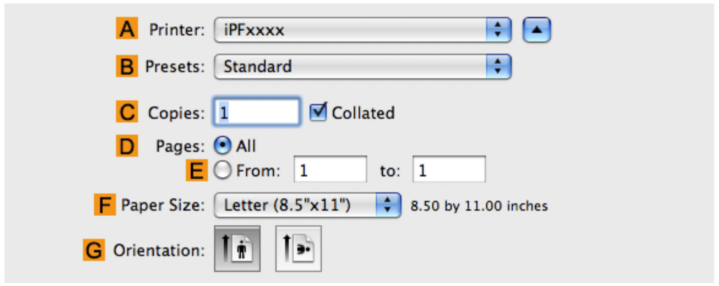
1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.


A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.


A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

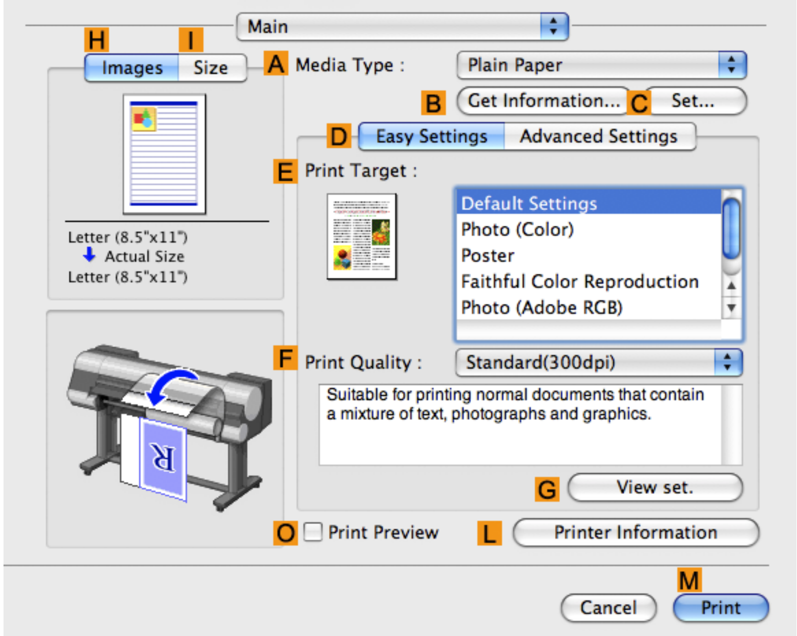
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

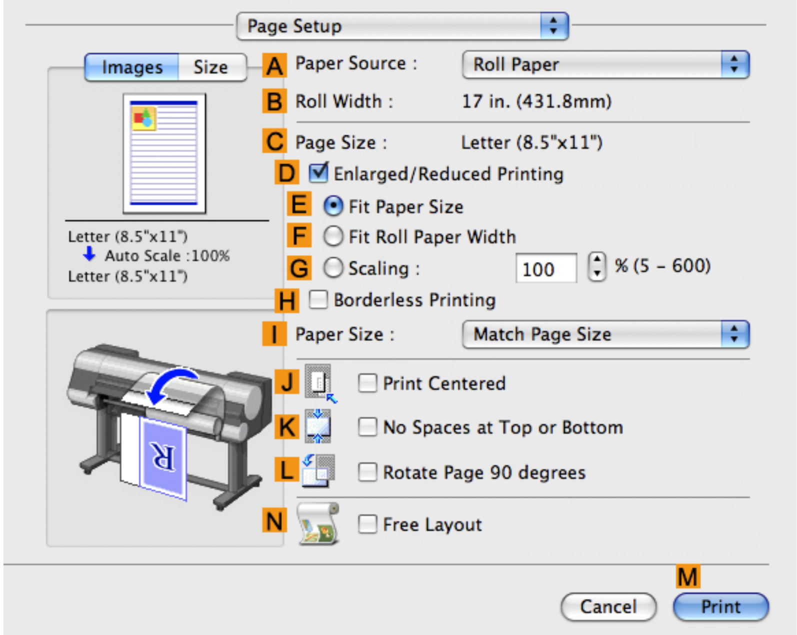
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

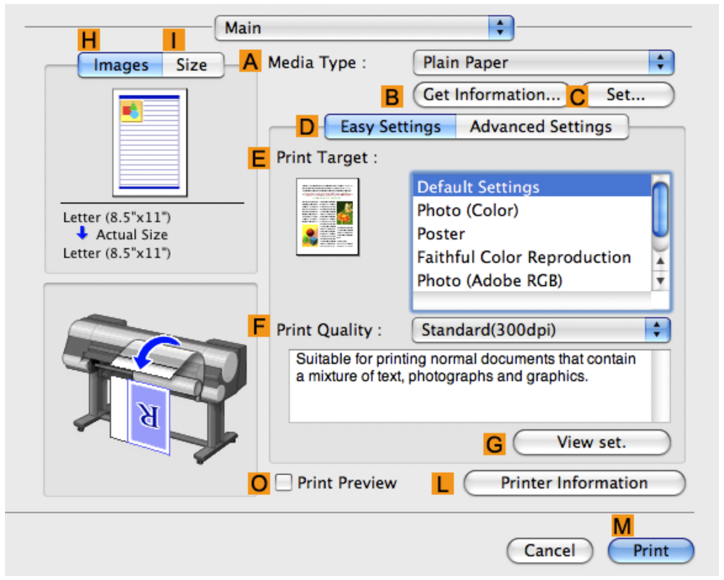
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

☐ Free Layout

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



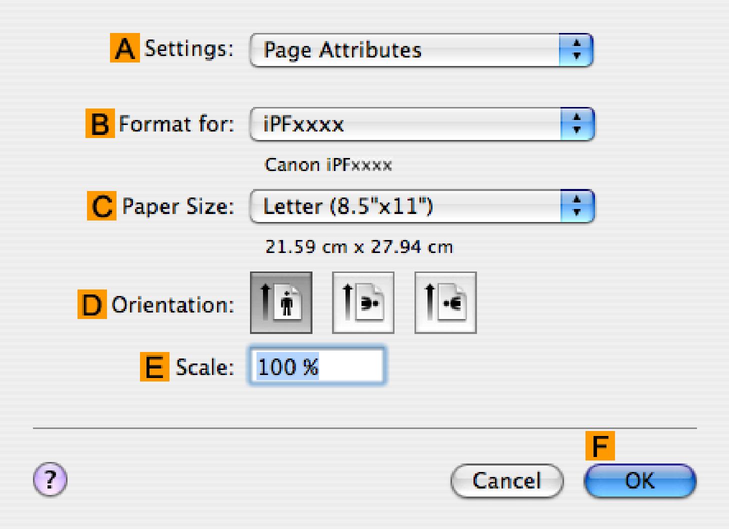
Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

12. Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Scale: 100 %

13. Select the **D** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Select the **H** **Borderless Printing** check box.
This ensures that **F** **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **D** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

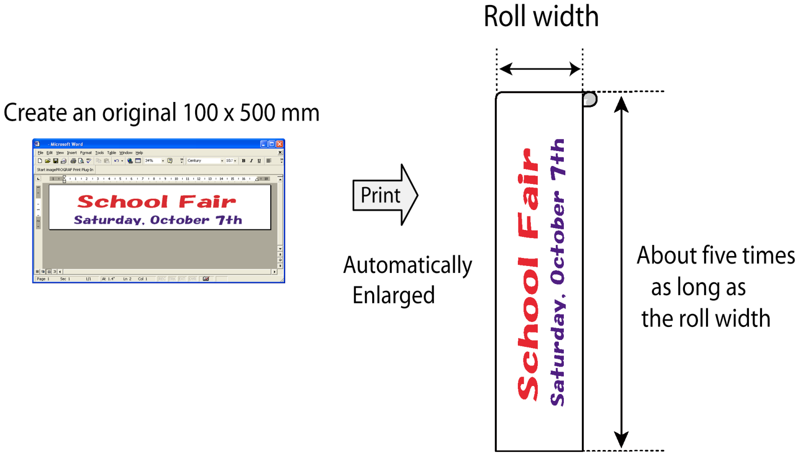
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

On this printer, large-format printing of up to 18.0 m is available using rolls.
If you use Print Plug-In for Office or PosterArtist, you can easily print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners. (Refer to "Print Plug-In for Office features →P.373 " and "Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals →P.44 ".)
However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.

Fit Roll Paper Width

To match the width of vertical and horizontal banners with the width of rolls, use the printer driver function for automatically enlarging/reducing and printing.
For example, if you automatically enlarge a document created with application software such as Microsoft Word, you can print the full width of the roll easily.



For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) →P.123
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) →P.128

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.
However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.
This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

The print procedure is as follows.

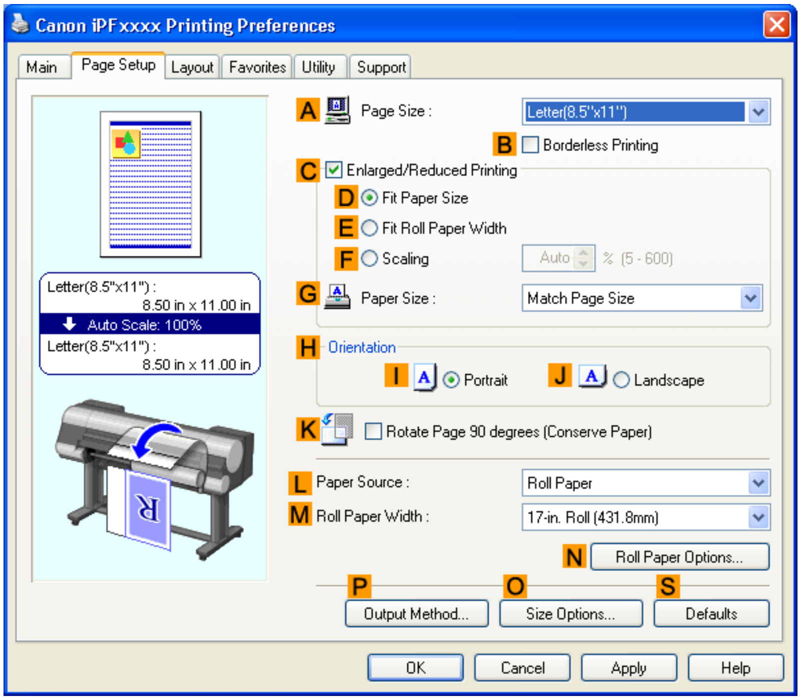
1. Register a Custom Paper Size in the printer driver.
   Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size.
   Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
   Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) →P.213 ")

2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

3. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

4. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. **My Horizontal Banner** is used in this example.

6. In **Units**, click **mm**.

7. Under **Paper Size**, enter **100** in **Width** and **500** in **Height**.

8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of **My Horizontal Banner.**

9. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- Although you can even set **Custom Size** for the paper size, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. The setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.
  For more information, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) →P.132 "

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the Custom Paper Size you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.

2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.

3. Under **Paper Size**, click the Custom Paper Size you registered—**My Horizontal Banner** in this example.

> **Important**
> - If **My Horizontal Banner** is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
> - In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in **Custom** and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal.

5. Create the banner.

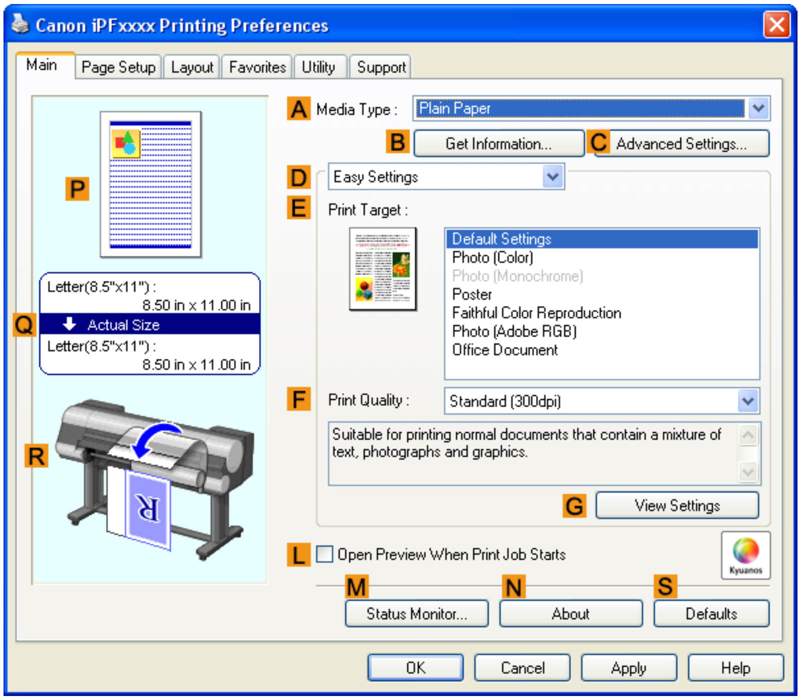
Printing the banner

Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

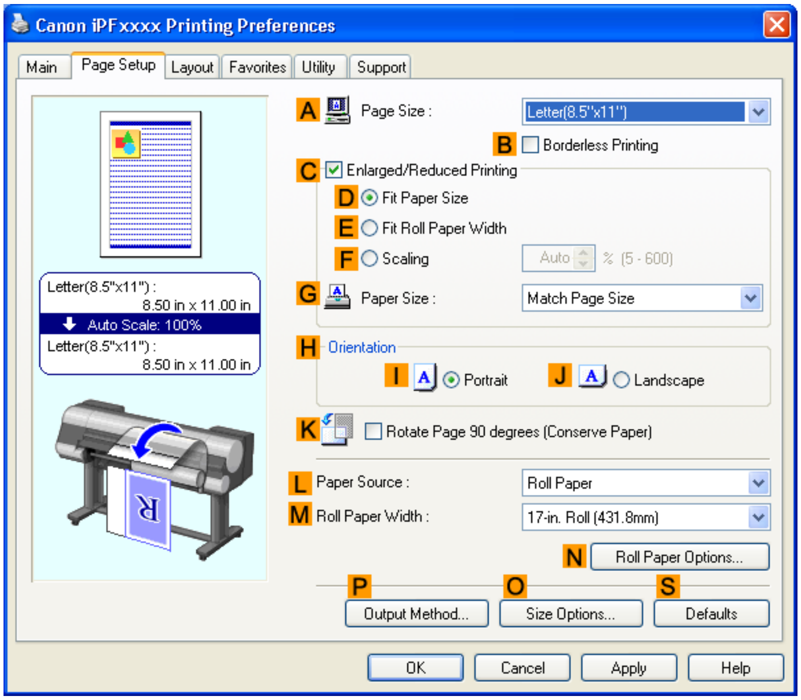
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
☐ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)
Paper Size : Match Page Size
Orientation
● Portrait ○ Landscape
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
Paper Source : Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

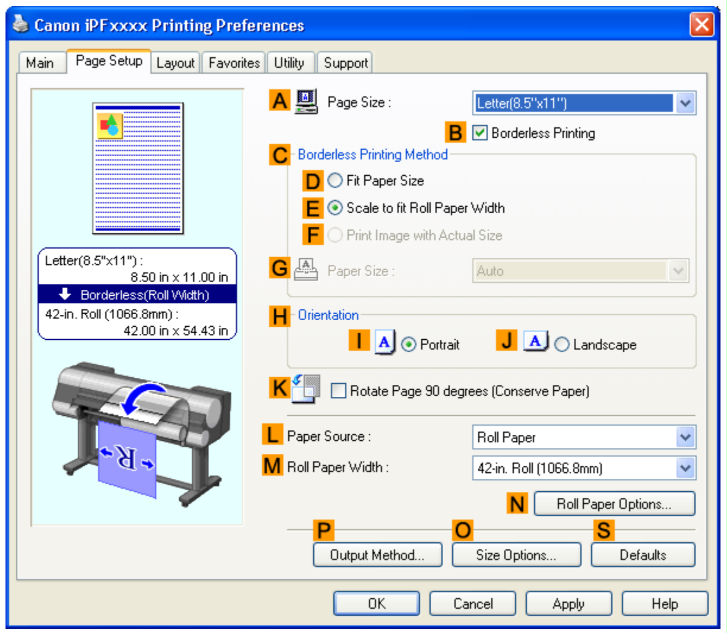
Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size you registered, **My Horizontal Banner**.

8. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B** **Borderless Printing** check box.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
☑ Borderless Printing
Borderless Printing Method
○ Fit Paper Size
● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width
○ Print Image with Actual Size
Paper Size : Auto
Orientation
● Portrait ○ Landscape
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
Paper Source : Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width : 42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in
Borderless(Roll Width)
42-in. Roll (1066.8mm) :
42.00 in x 54.43 in

9. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

10. After you click **E** **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.

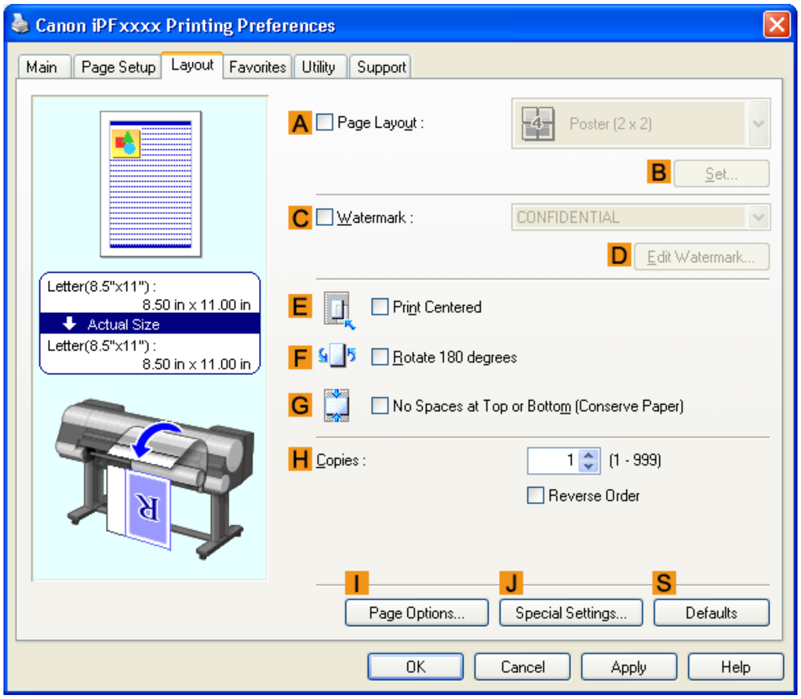
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

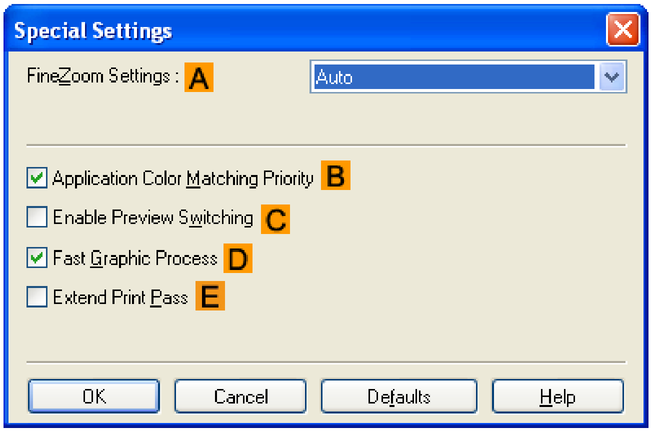
> **Note**
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1. On the **Layout** sheet, click **J** **Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.



Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.
This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

The print procedure is as follows.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. In **Page Setup**, register **Custom Page Sizes** (Mac OS X 10.4.11–10.5) / **Custom Paper Sizes** (Mac OS X 10.6).
   Once you register **Custom Page Sizes** / **Custom Paper Sizes**, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
   Custom Page Sizes / **Custom Paper Sizes** can be set up to 18.0 m.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

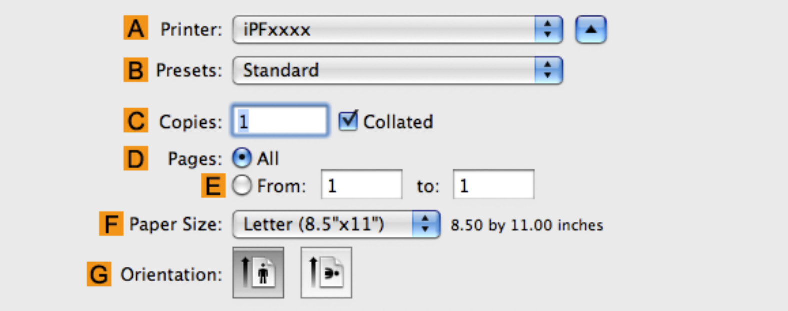
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.5. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a **Custom Page Sizes**

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

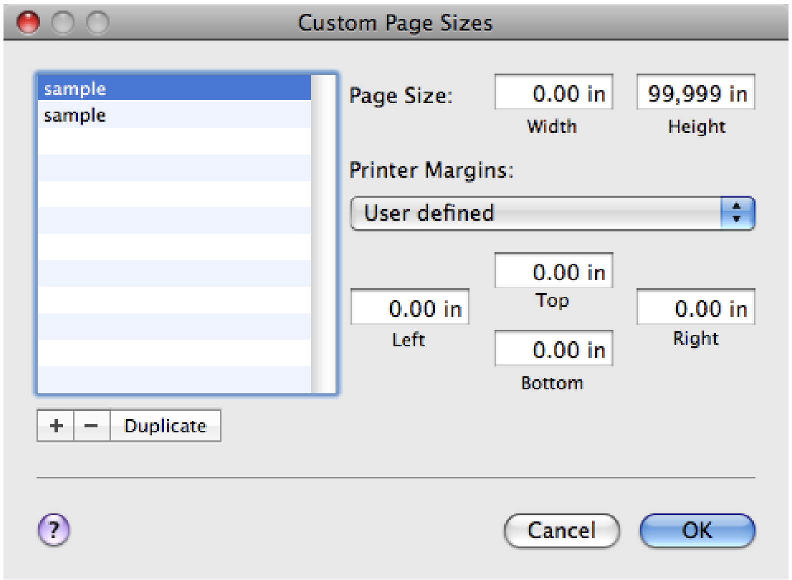
1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.



Printer: iPFxxxx
Presets: Standard
Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
Pages: ● All
○ From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:

3. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C** **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.



Page Size: 0.00 in Width, 99,999 in Height

Printer Margins: User defined

0.00 in Top

0.00 in Left

0.00 in Right

0.00 in Bottom

5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter **100*500**.
   If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click + below the list.

6. Under **Page Size**, enter **10** in **Width** and **50** in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.

7. Specify the margins by entering **0.3** in **Printer Margins**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.

8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

9. In the **C** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **100*500**, the size you registered.

10. In **D** **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

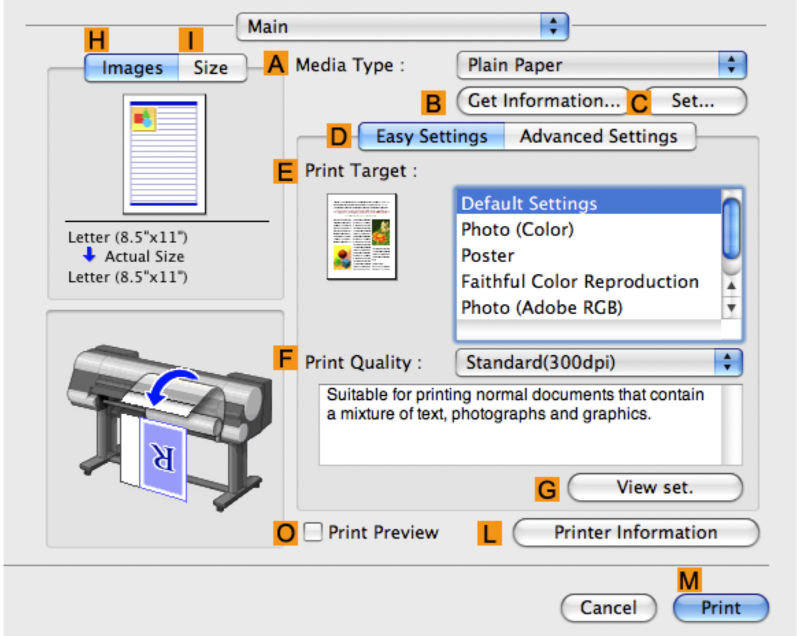
11. Click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box.

Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

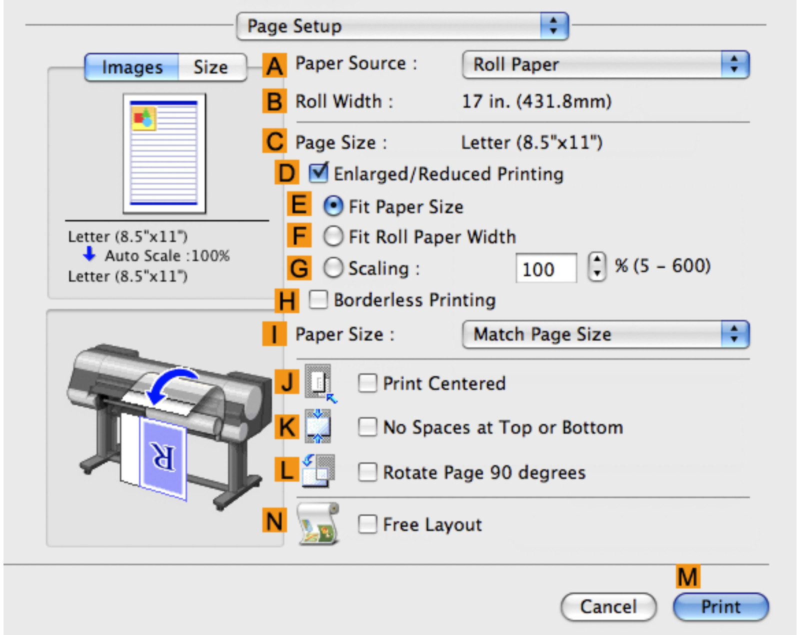
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

3. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

4. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

5. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

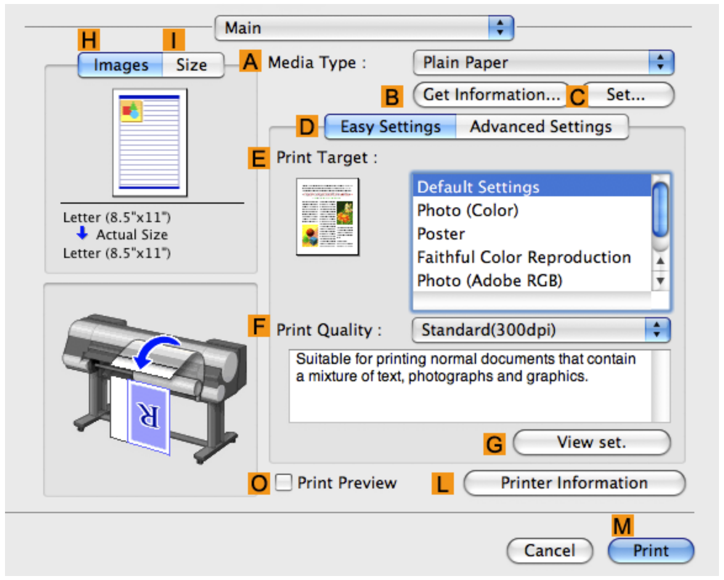
Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

7. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

8. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

9. In **C** **Page Size**, make sure **100*500** is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

10. Select the **D** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

11. Click **F** **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

12. Confirm the print settings, and click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Once you register a paper size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. The paper size can be set up to 18.0 m.

Note

- In Windows, although you can even set **Custom Size** for the paper size, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. The setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) →P.132
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) →P.135

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size.
Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.

Note

- Although you also can set **Custom Size** for the paper size temporarily, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. Also, the setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

Registering and Printing With a Custom Paper Size

This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430 mm Square**and print based on the following example.

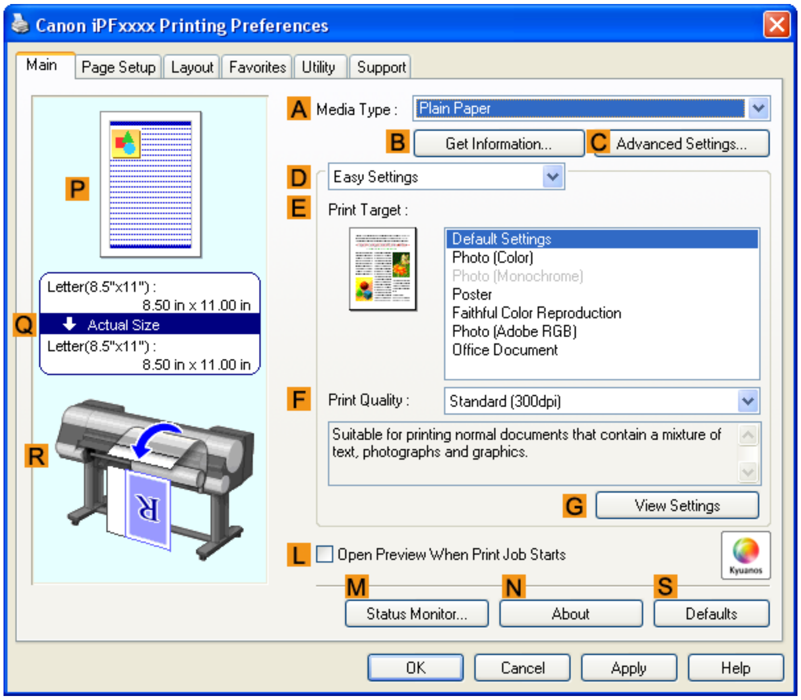
- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

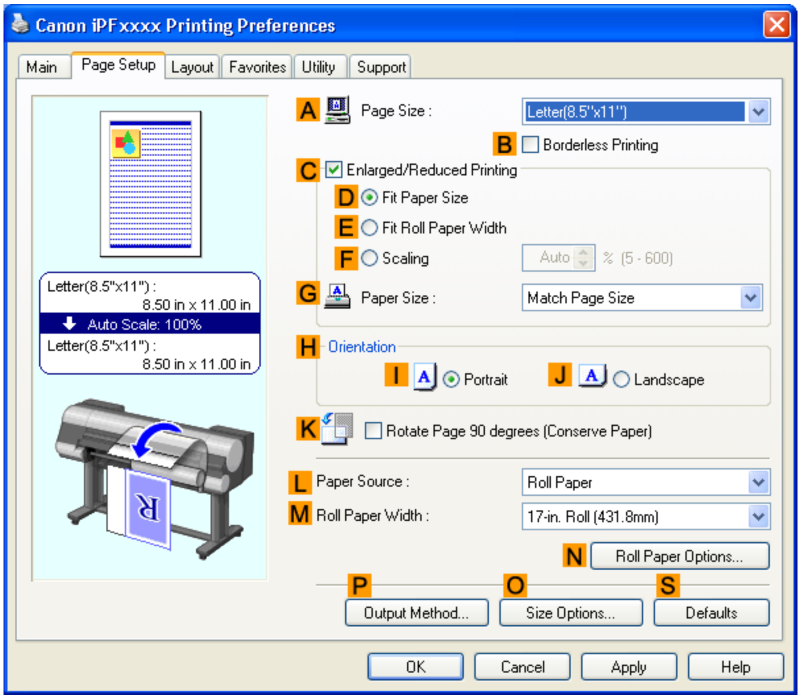
Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, select from the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in

8. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. **430 mm Square** is used in this example.

10. Select **mm** in **Units**.

11. Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

> Note
>
> - If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

12. Click **Add** to register **430 mm Square**.

13. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

14. Click **Cut Sheet** in the L **Paper Source** list.

15. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added,**430 mm Square**.

16. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing by using **Custom Size**

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

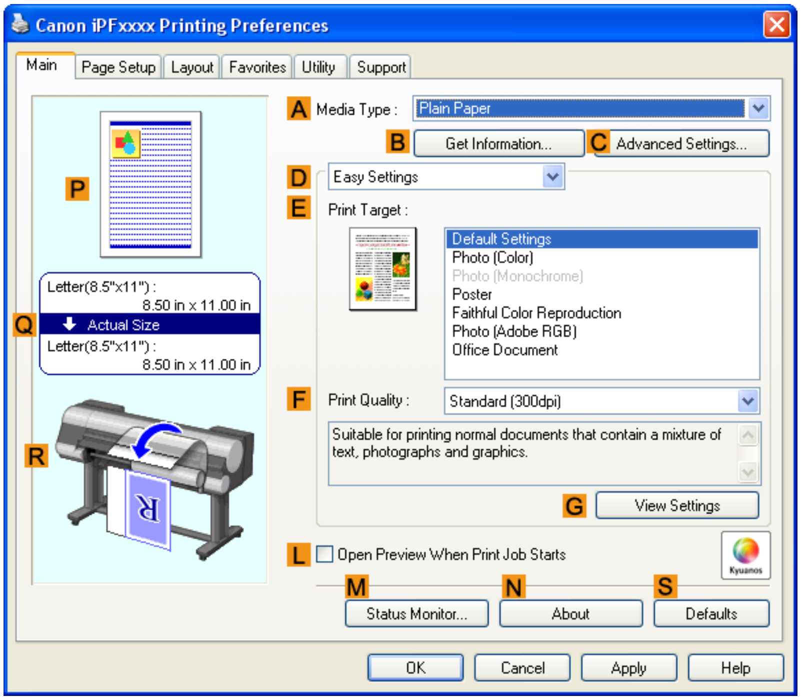
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

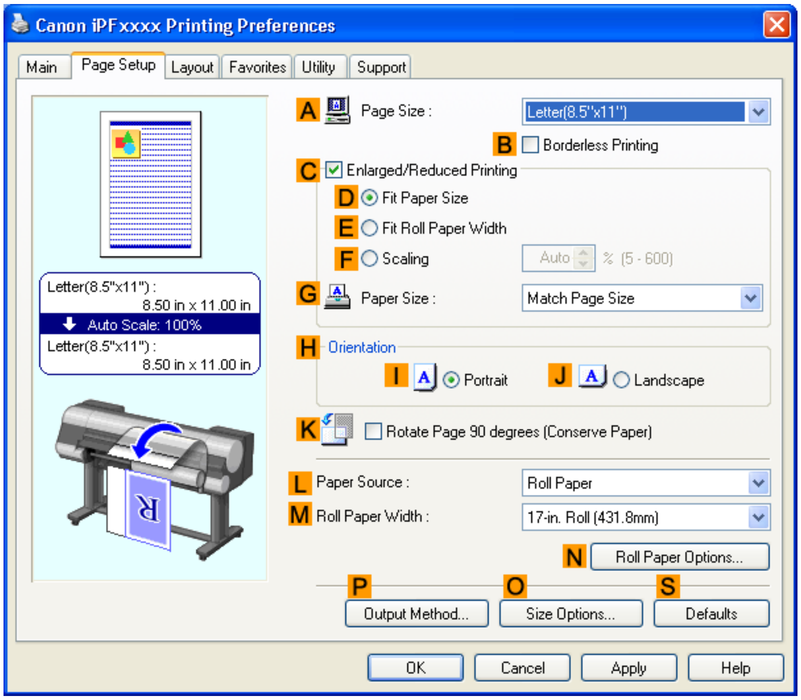
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

6. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E** **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
B ☐ Borderless Printing
C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
D ● Fit Paper Size
E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width
F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)
G Paper Size : Match Page Size
H Orientation
I ● Portrait
J ○ Landscape
K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
L Paper Source : Roll Paper
M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

9. Click **Custom Size** in the **A** **Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.

10. Confirm that **mm** is selected in **Units**.

11. Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.
Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with **Custom Page Sizes** (Mac OS X 10.4.11-10.5)/ **Custom Paper Sizes** (Mac OS X 10.6).
Once you register **Custom Page Sizes** / **Custom Paper Sizes**, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.
Custom Page Sizes / **Custom Paper Sizes** can be set up to 18.0 m.
This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430*430**and print based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type

- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

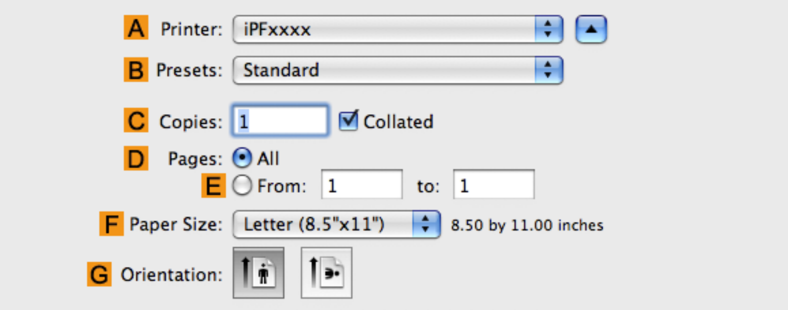
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.5. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. Create the document in the application.

2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.

3. Choose **Print** in the application menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

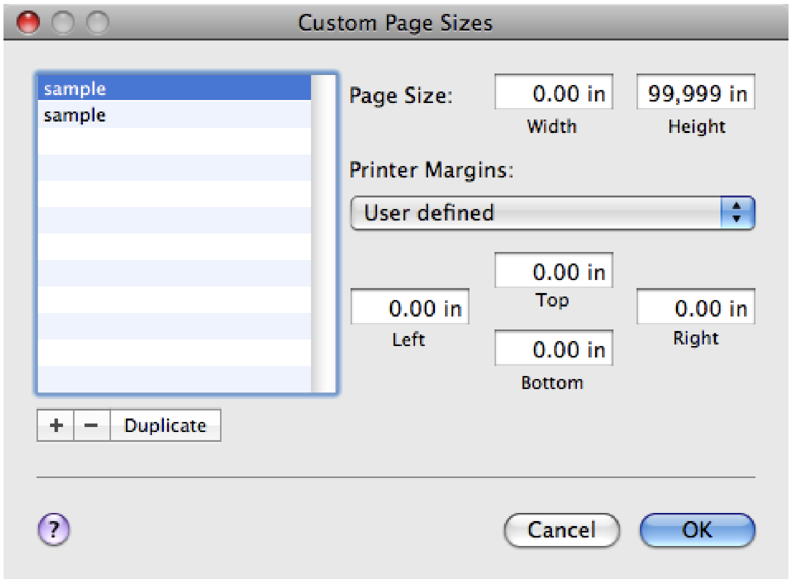
E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

G Orientation:

4. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C** **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.



Custom Page Sizes

sample
sample

Page Size: 0.00 in Width 99,999 in Height

Printer Margins: User defined

0.00 in Top

0.00 in Left

0.00 in Right

0.00 in Bottom

6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter **43.00 cm** in **Height** and **Width**.

7. In **Printer Margins**, enter **0.5** for the top and side margins and **2.3** for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.

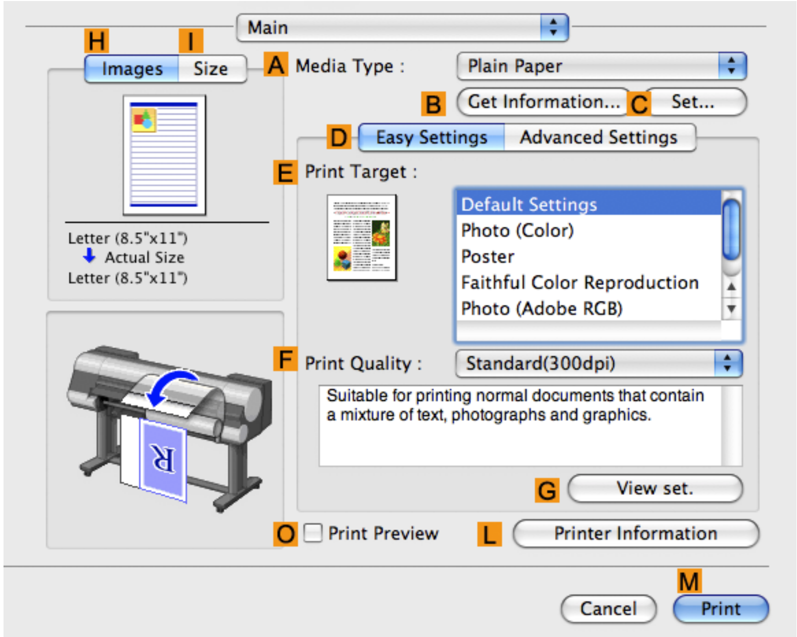
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name—in this case, **430*430**.

9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

10. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **430*430**, the size you registered.

11. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

12. Access the **Main** pane.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

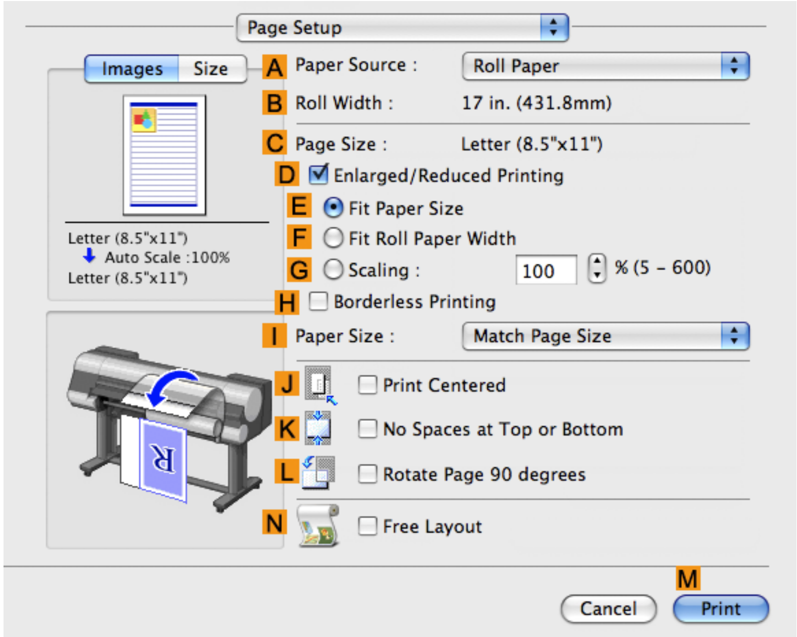
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

13. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

14. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, select from the E **Print Target** list.

15. Make your selection in the F **Print Quality** list.

16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Letter (8.5"x11")
↓ Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

A Paper Source : Roll Paper
B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)
C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")
D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
E ● Fit Paper Size
F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width
G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)
H ☐ Borderless Printing
I Paper Size : Match Page Size
J ☐ Print Centered
K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees
N ☐ Free Layout

17. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

18. In **C** **Page Size**, make sure **430*430** is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

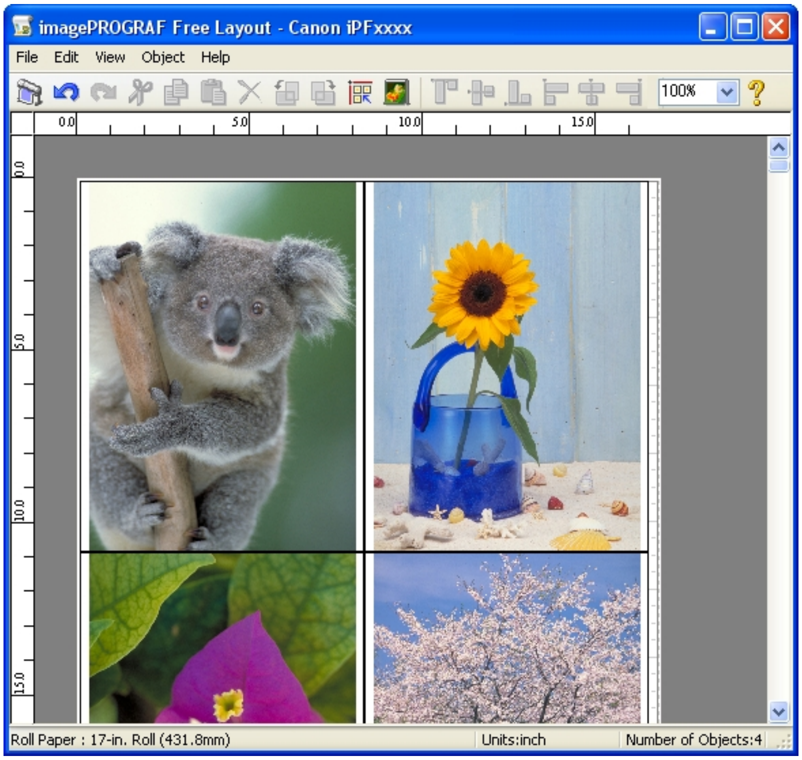
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

- **Free Layout** (Windows)

  Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.

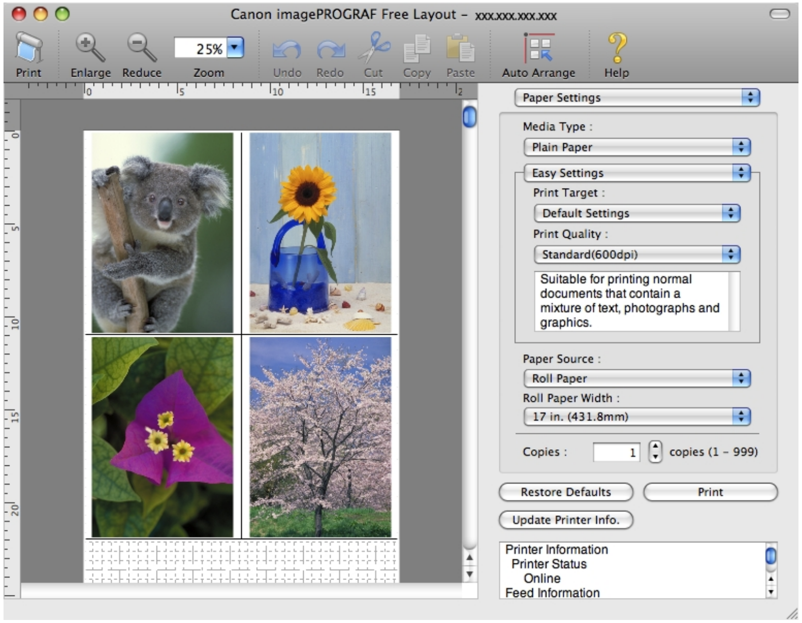

imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx
File
Edit
View
Object
Help
100%
0.0
5.0
10.0
15.0
Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Units:inch
Number of Objects:4

Note

- Free Layout cannot be used in 64-bit version of Windows.

- **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



Zoom: 25%

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) →P.140
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) →P.142

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

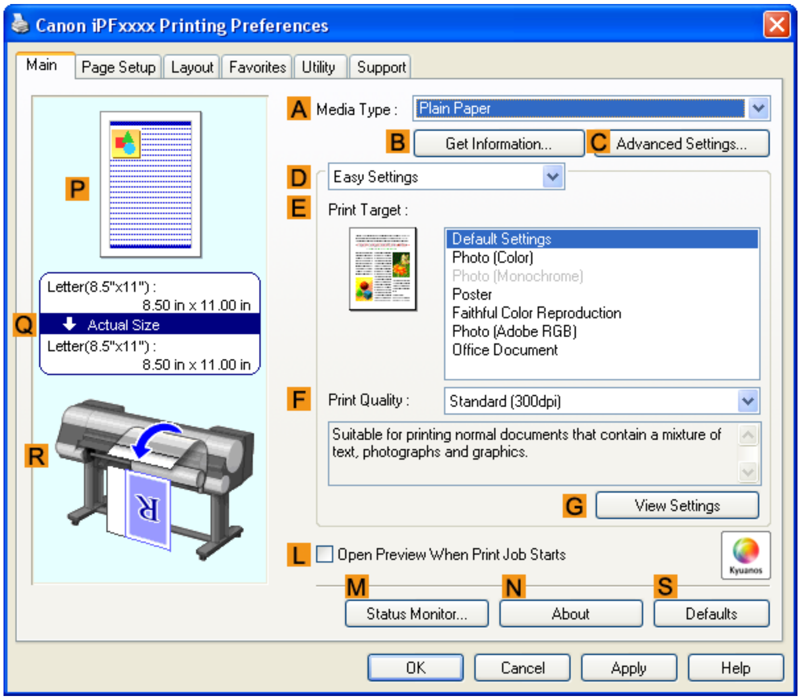
Note

- Free Layout cannot be used in 64-bit version of Windows.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

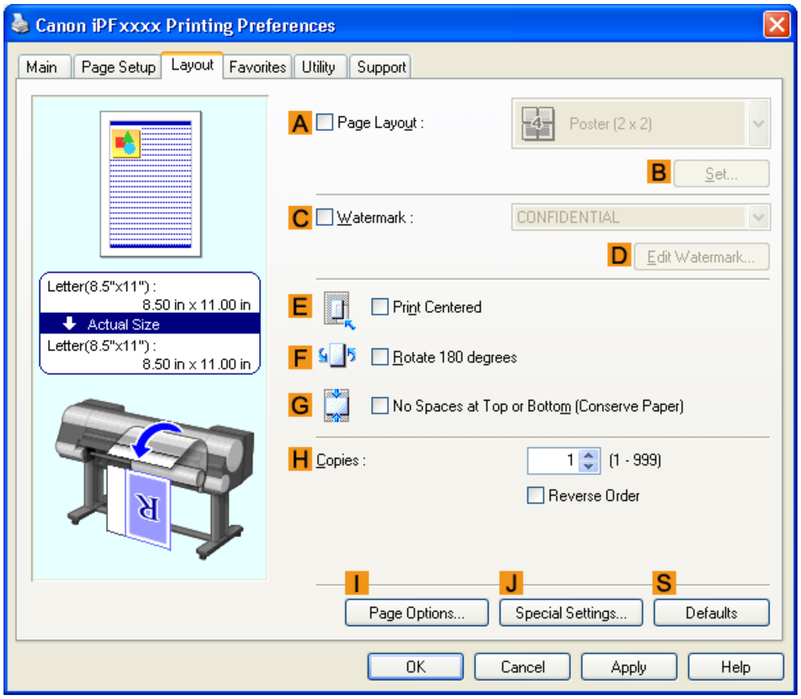
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

☐ Print Centered

☐ Rotate 180 degrees

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

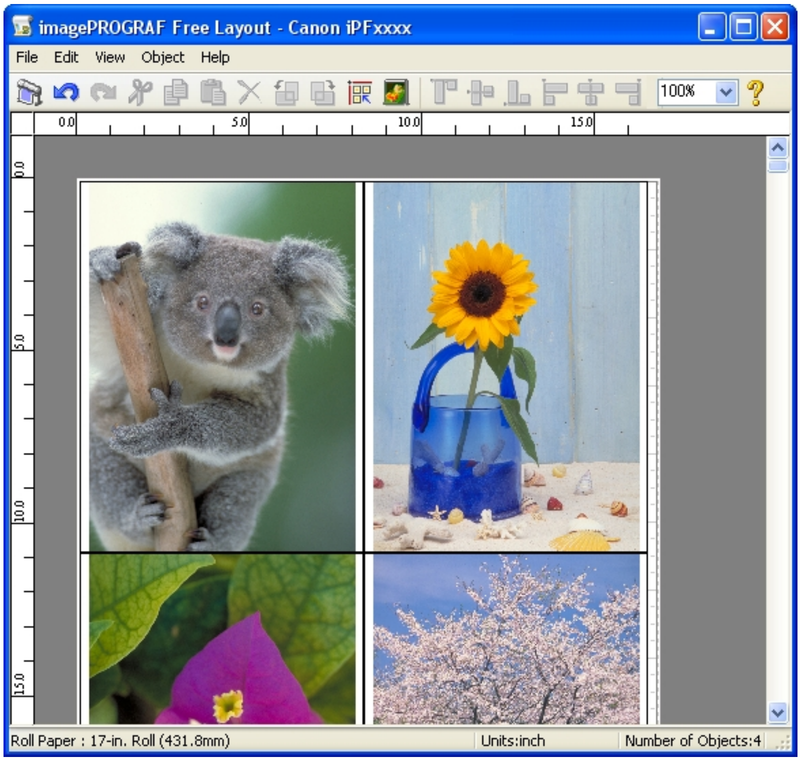
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

5. Select the **A** **Page Layout** check box.

6. Click **Free Layout** in the **A** **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)


imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx
File Edit View Object Help
100%
0.0
5.0
10.0
15.0

Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Units:inch

Number of Objects:4

8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.

> Note
> - Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1–7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
> - For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

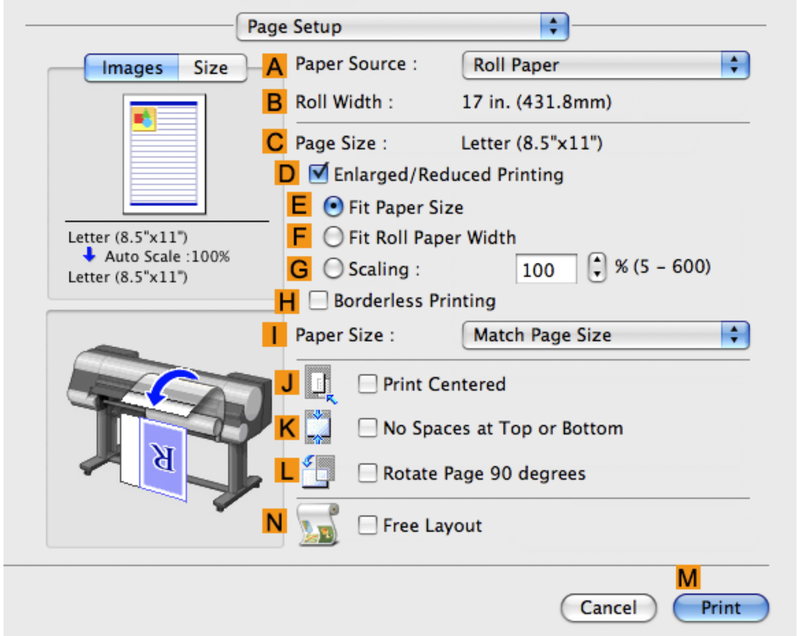
> Note
> - For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout →P.261 .

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Images Size

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

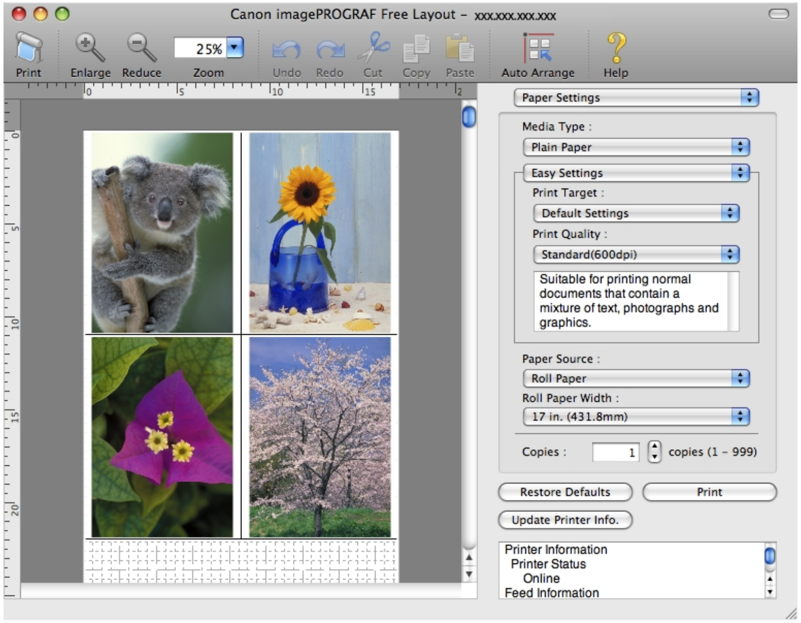
N ☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

3. Select the **N** **Free Layout** check box.

4. Click **M** **Print**.

5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout – xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

6. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

> Note
> - Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1 to 4 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
> - For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

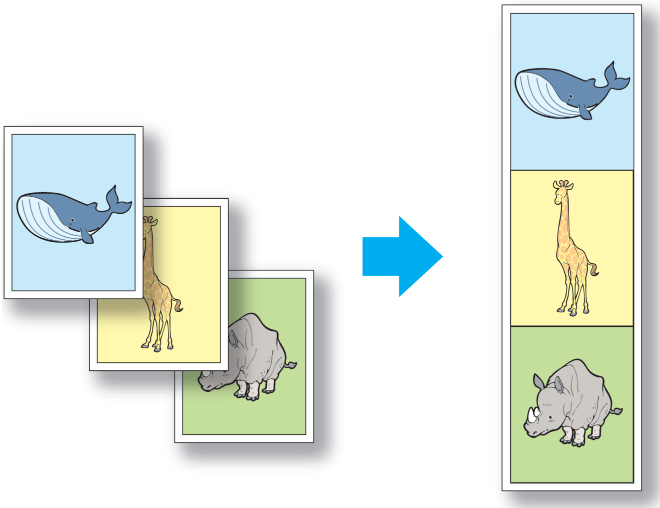
7. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

> Note
> - For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout →P.550 .

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

- Roll paper (banner)



> Important
> - This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
> - During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) →P.145
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) →P.147

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

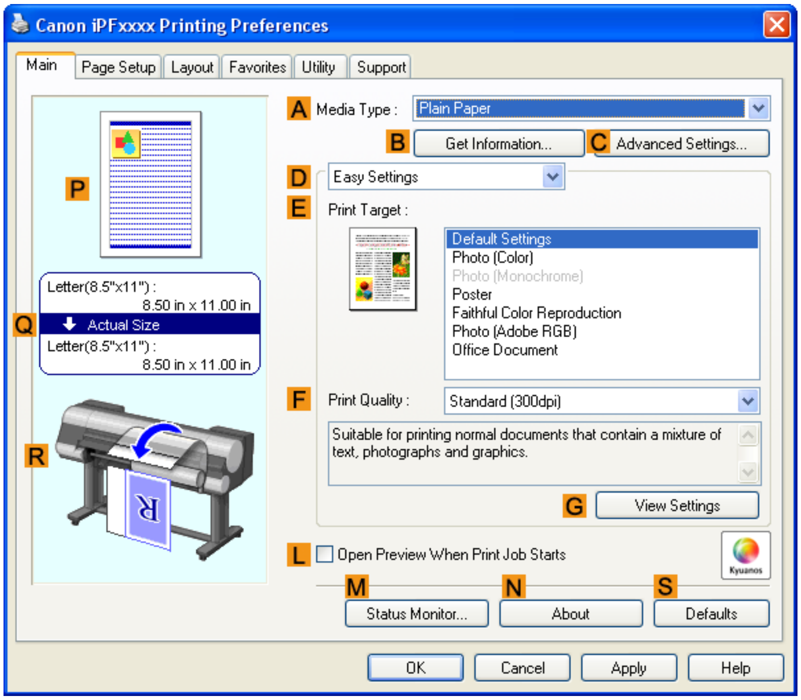
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

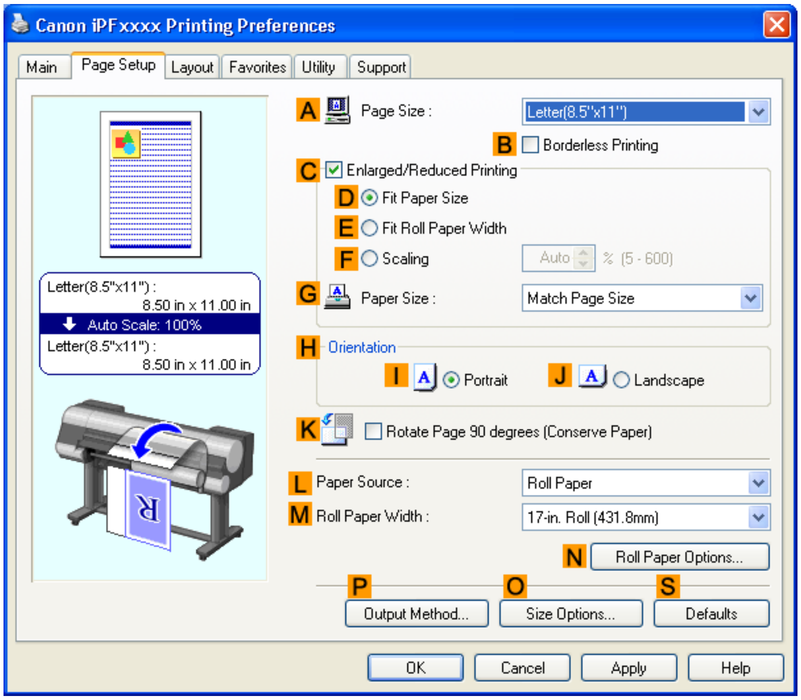
Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the A **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

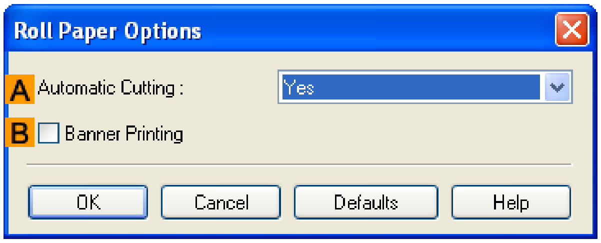
L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

7. Click **N** **Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



A Automatic Cutting : Yes

B ☐ Banner Printing

8. Select the **B** **Banner Printing** check box.

9. Click **OK**.

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

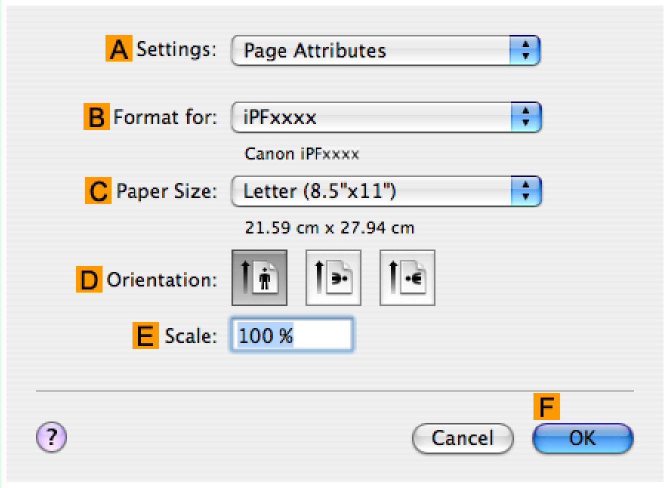
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. This sets the B **Format for** and C **Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

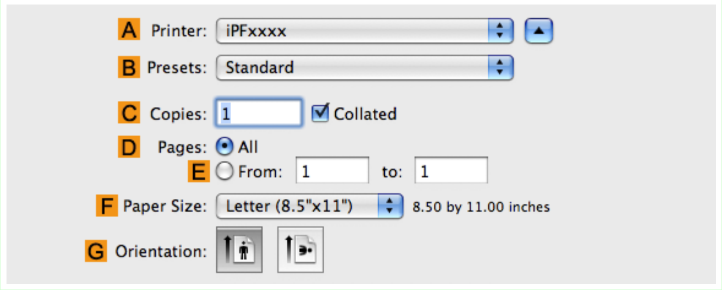
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

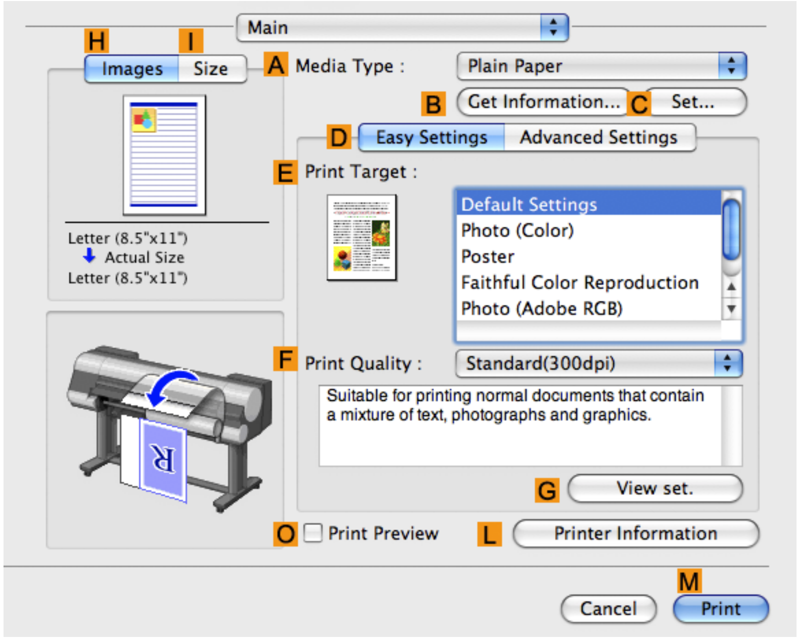
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the A **Printer** list.

3. Click the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

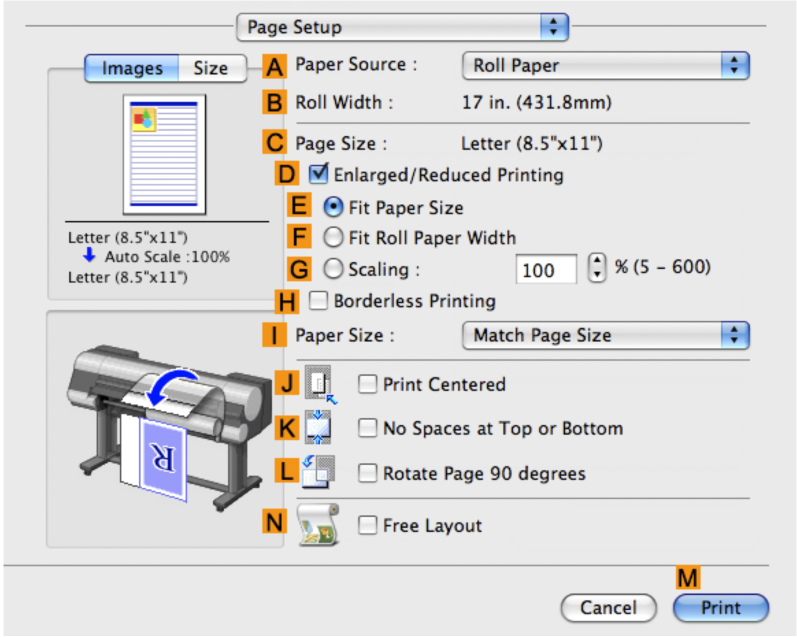
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

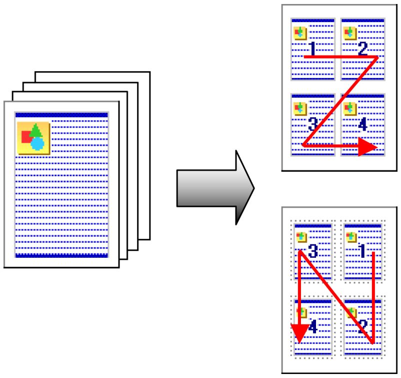
10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



- **Page Layout**

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Important
- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)
- When printing using this function, the **Print Centered** setting is disabled.

Note
- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) →P.149
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) →P.152

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

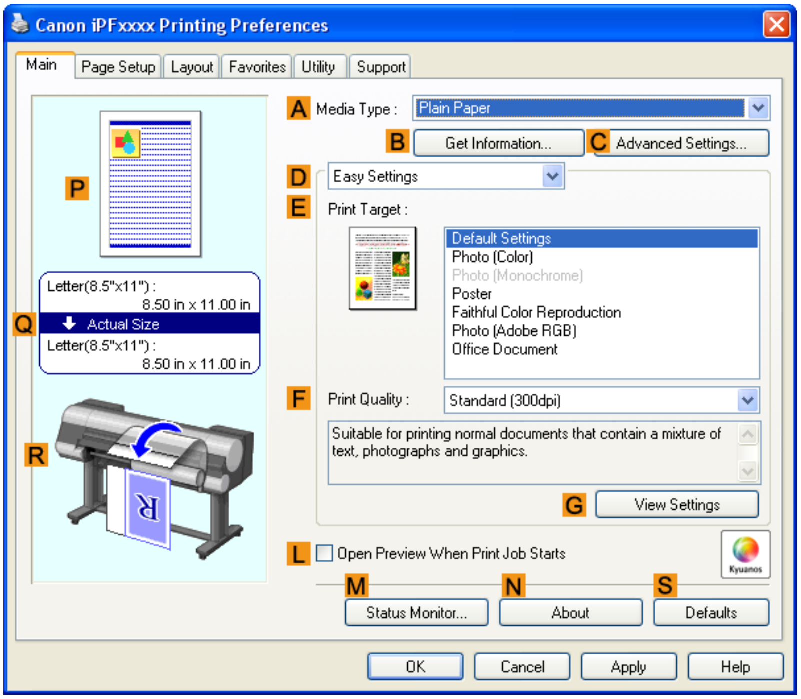
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll

- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target :
Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

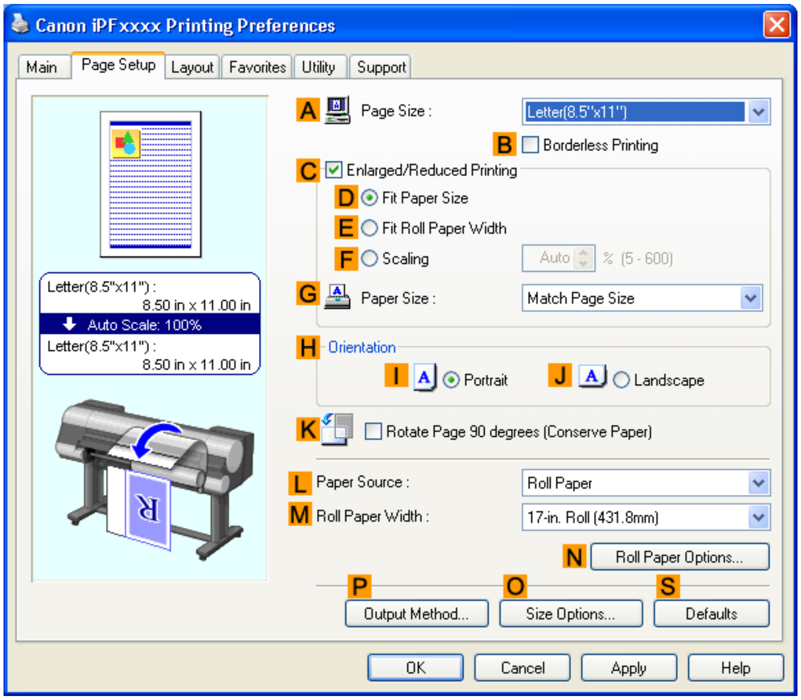
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

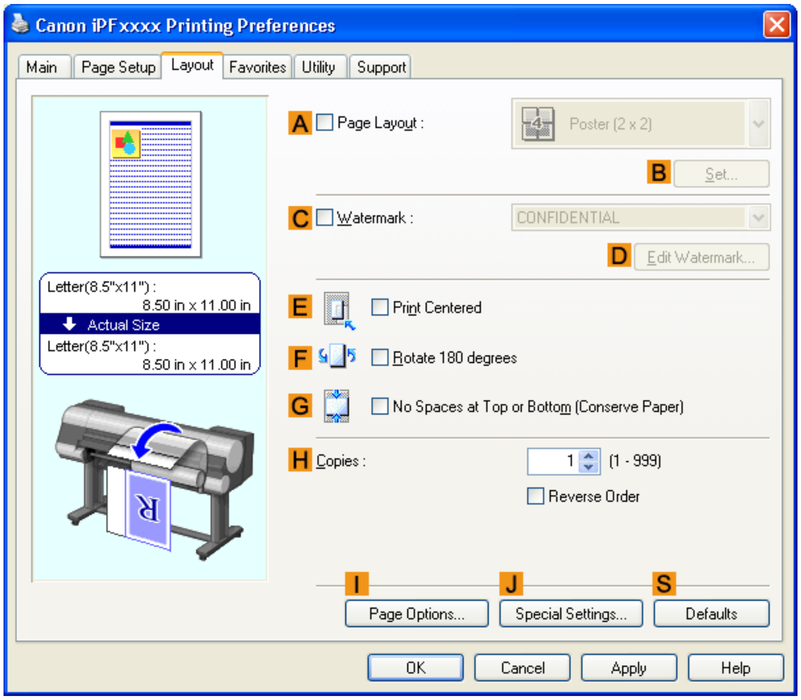
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

8. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

10. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

11. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

☐ Print Centered

☐ Rotate 180 degrees

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

12. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.

13. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the A **Page Layout** list.

> Note
>
> - You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking B **Set**.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

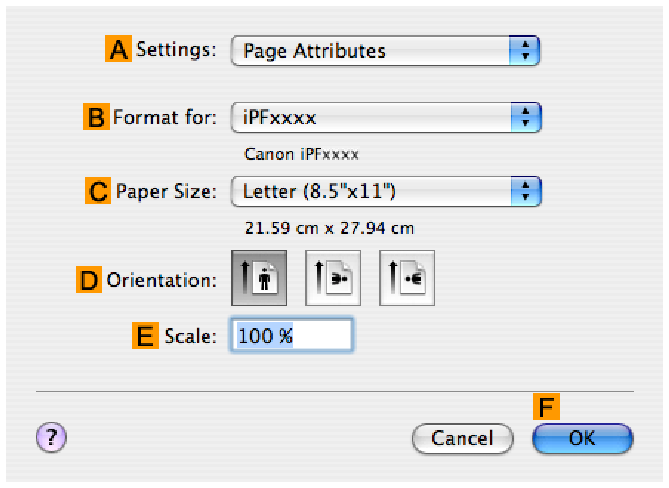
This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B** **Format for** and **C** **Paper Size**.

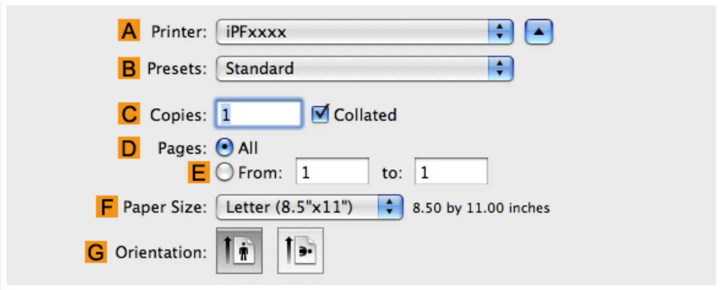
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



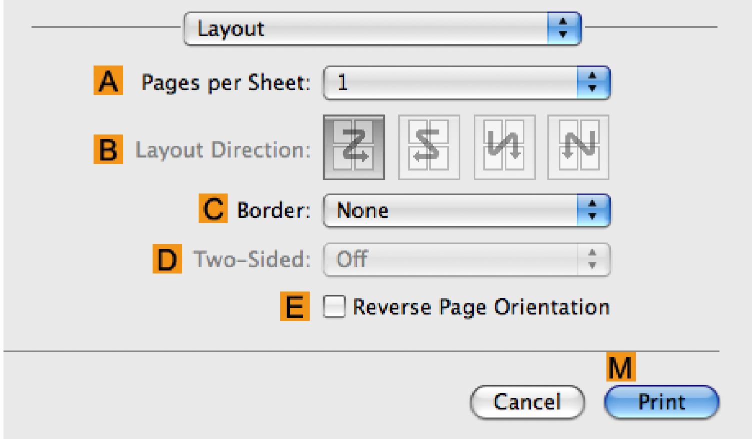
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

3. In the **F** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Layout** pane.



Layout

A Pages per Sheet: 1

B Layout Direction:

C Border: None

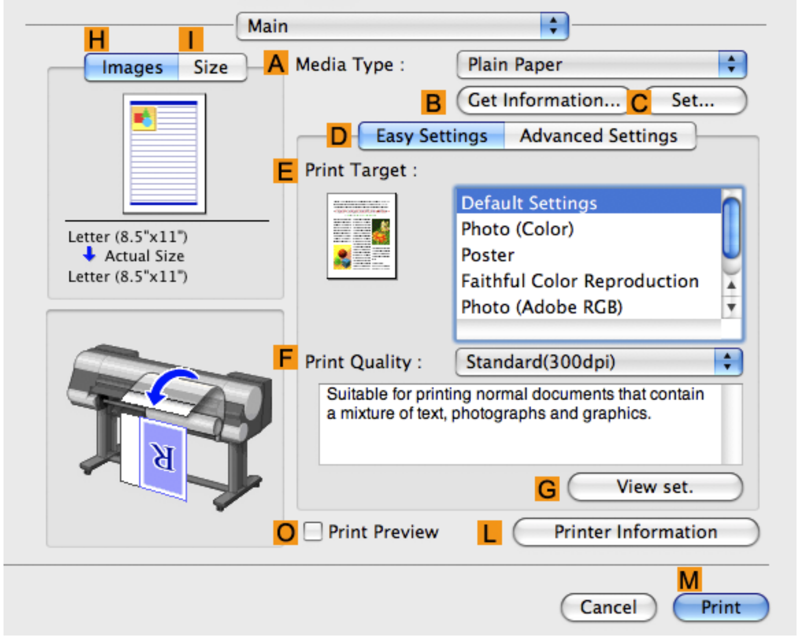
D Two-Sided: Off

E ☐ Reverse Page Orientation

6. Click **4** in the **A Pages per Sheet** list.

> Note
>
> - You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **B Layout Direction** and **C Border**.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Easy Settings | Advanced Settings

E Print Target : Default Settings

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

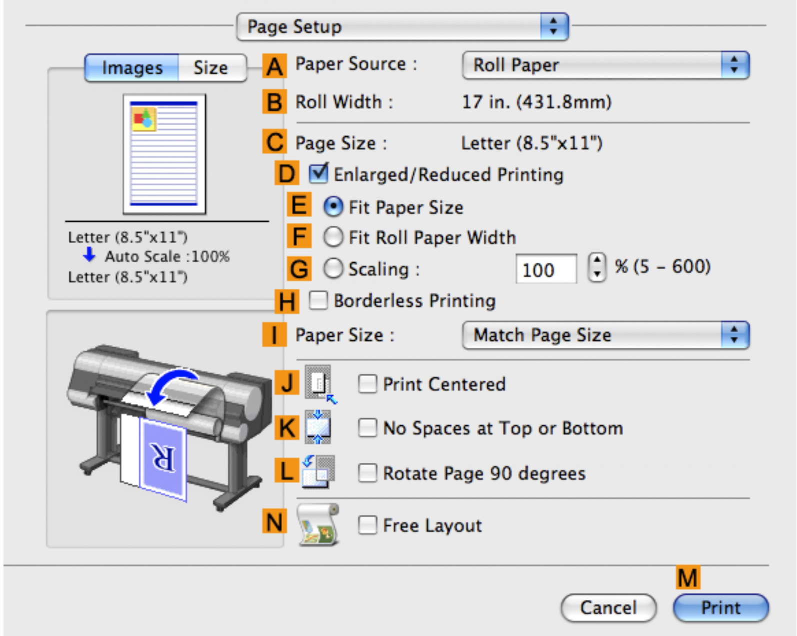
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

9. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

10. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 - 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

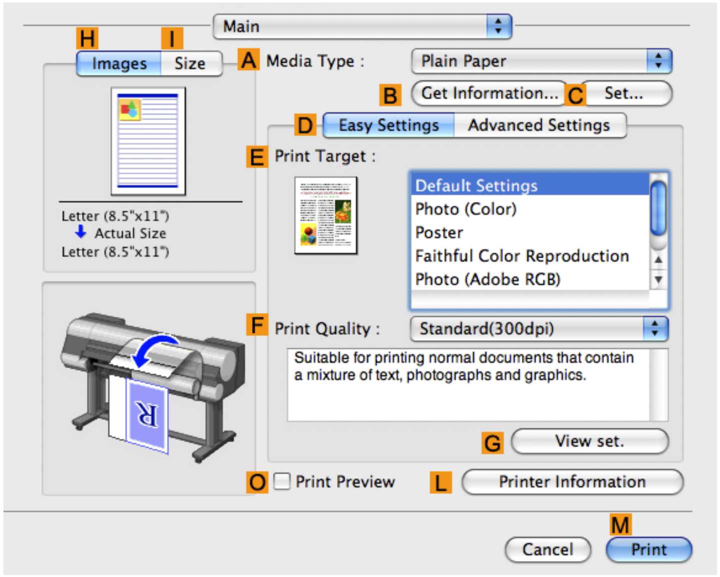
N ☐ Free Layout

12. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Easy Settings

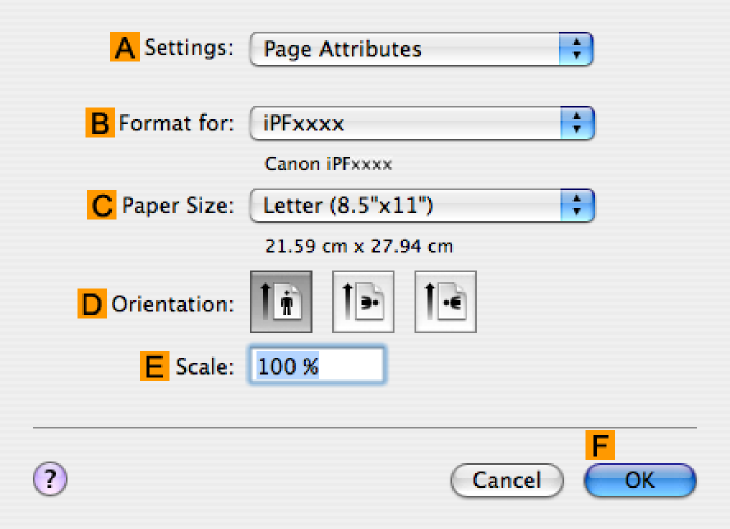
E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

14. Make sure **C Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A3**.


A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

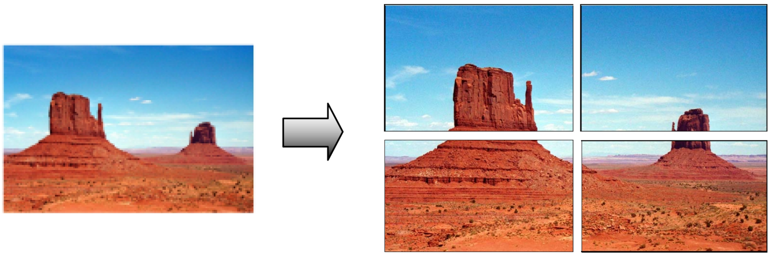
E Scale: 100 %

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



- **Page Layout**

Choose poster printing.

> Important
> - When printing using this function, the **Print Centered**, **Watermark**, **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**, and **Page Options** settings are disabled.

For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) →P.157

Note

- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

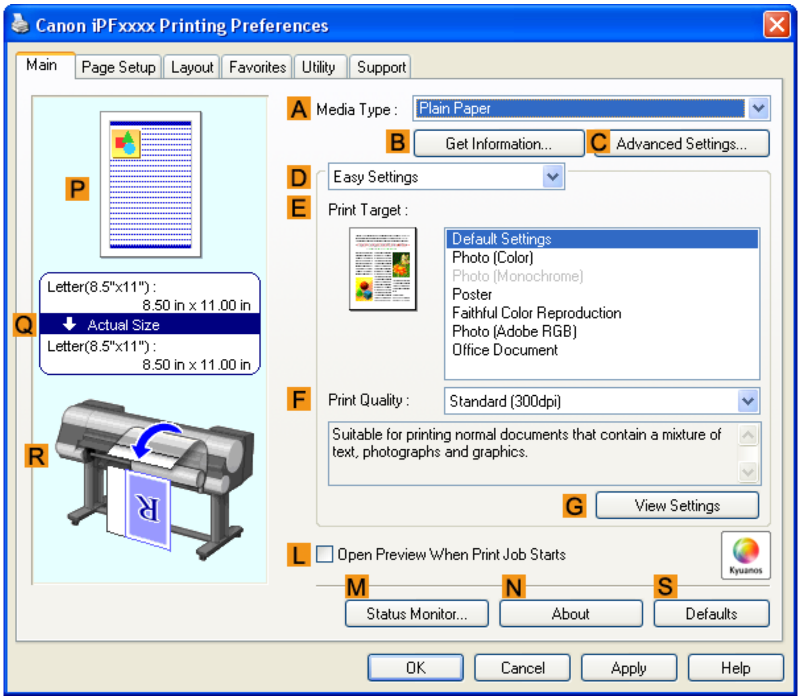
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper Size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

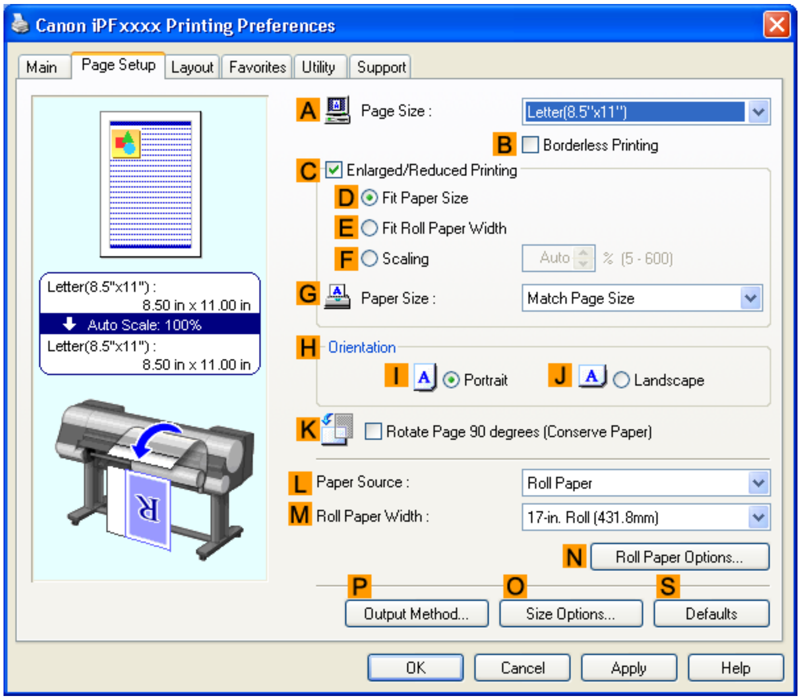
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5. Click **Poster** in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

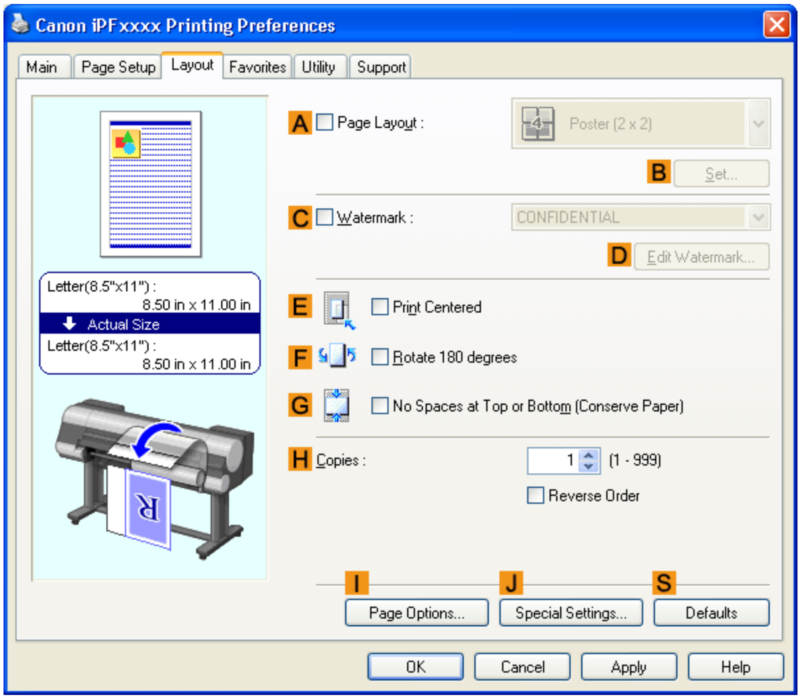
Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.

8. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **L Paper Source** list.

9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A ☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

C ☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

E ☐ Print Centered

F ☐ Rotate 180 degrees

G ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

H Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.

11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the A **Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  - Click B **Set** under A **Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  - On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  - Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

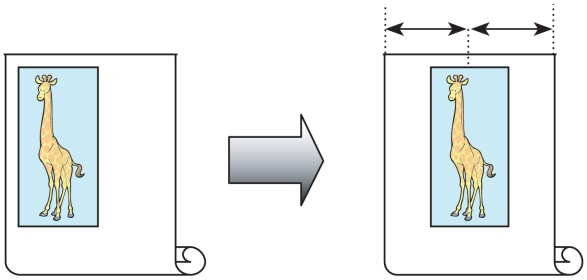
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

- Centering originals relative to roll paper width

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) →P.160
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) →P.162

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

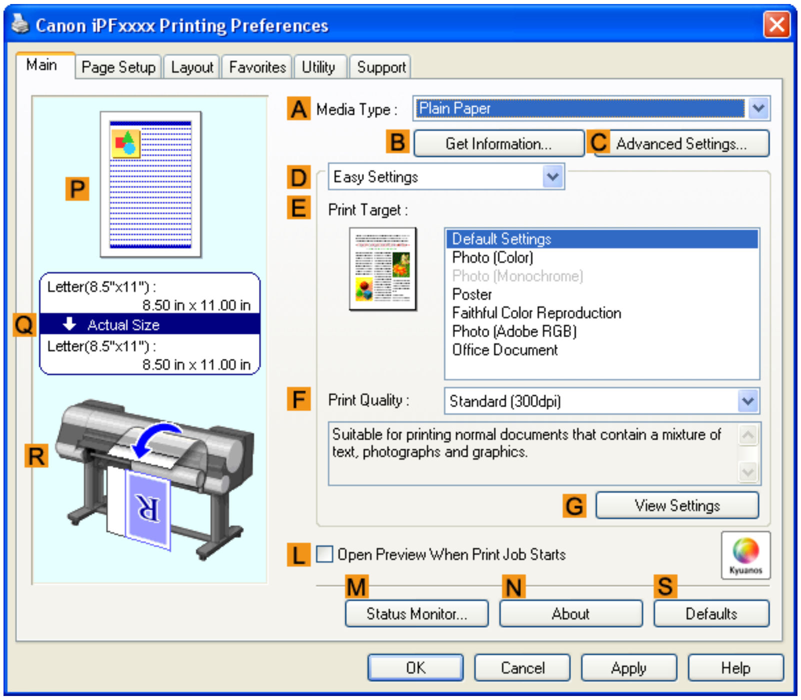
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

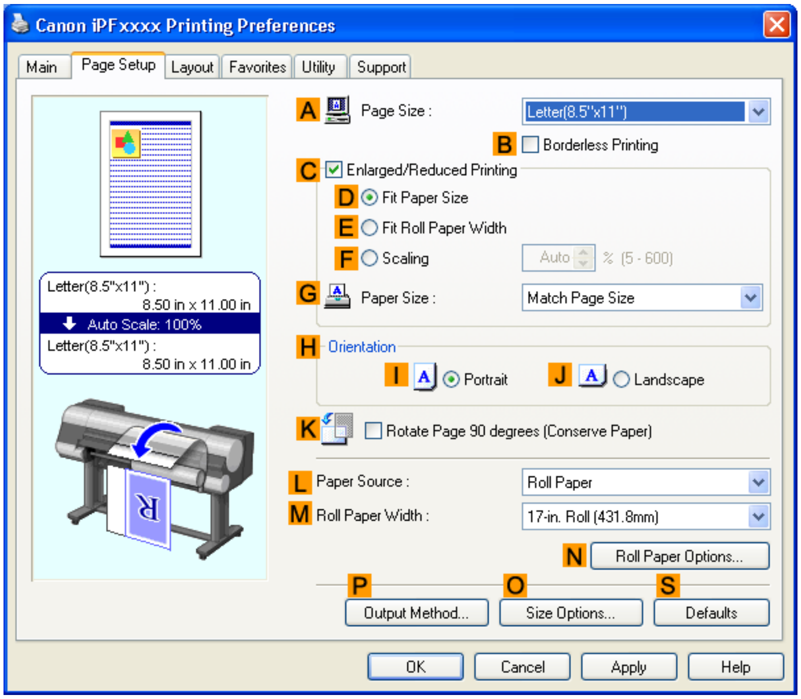
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

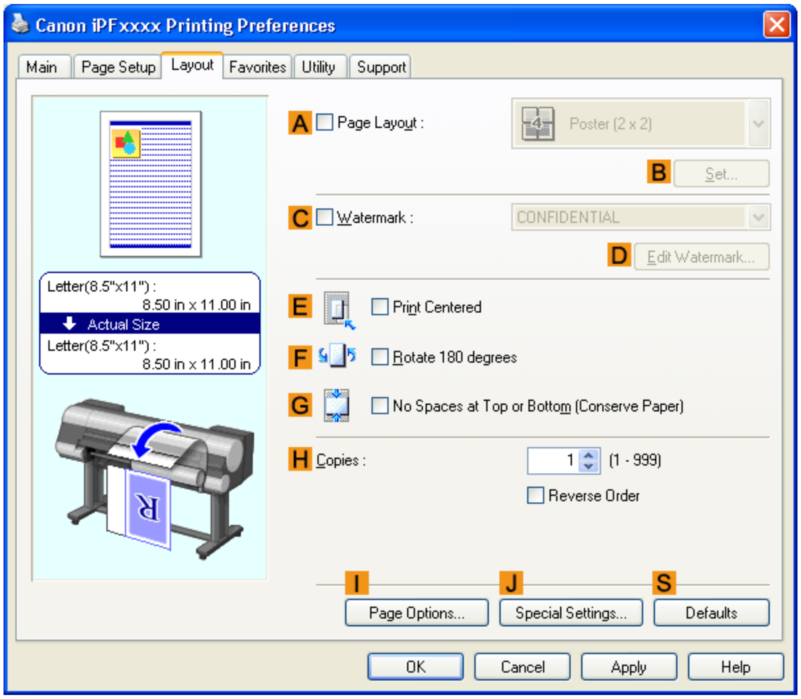


7. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

8. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A ☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

C ☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

E ☐ Print Centered

F ☐ Rotate 180 degrees

G ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

H Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

11. Select the **E** **Print Centered** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

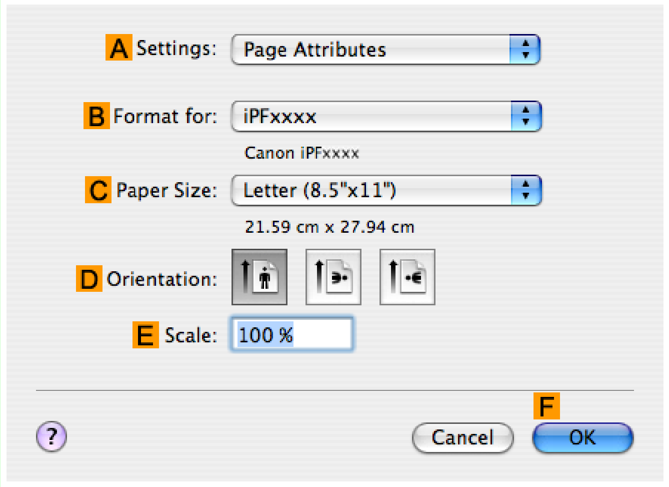
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B** **Format for** and **C** **Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

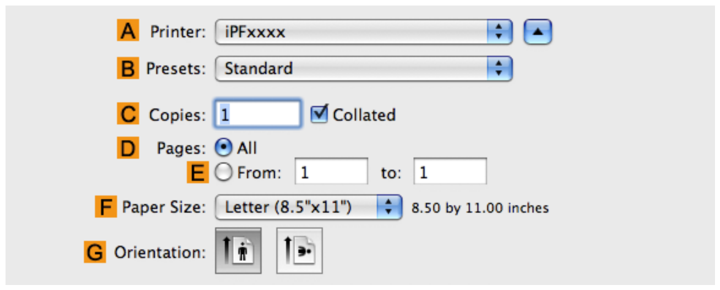
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

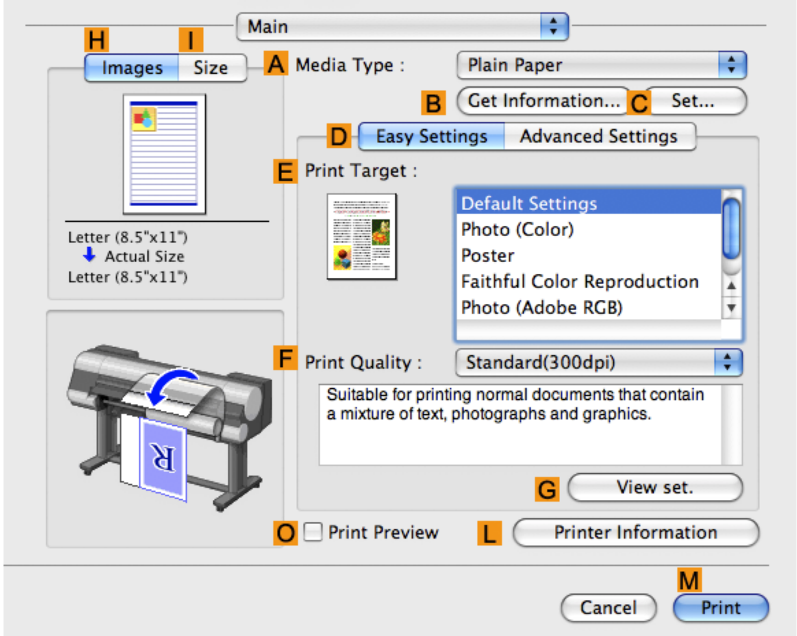
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

3. In the **F** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Print Preview

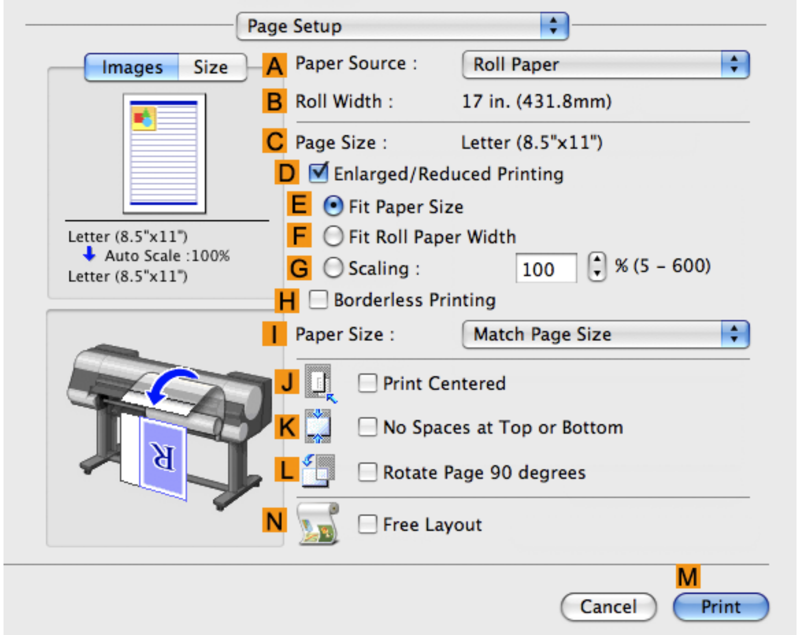
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

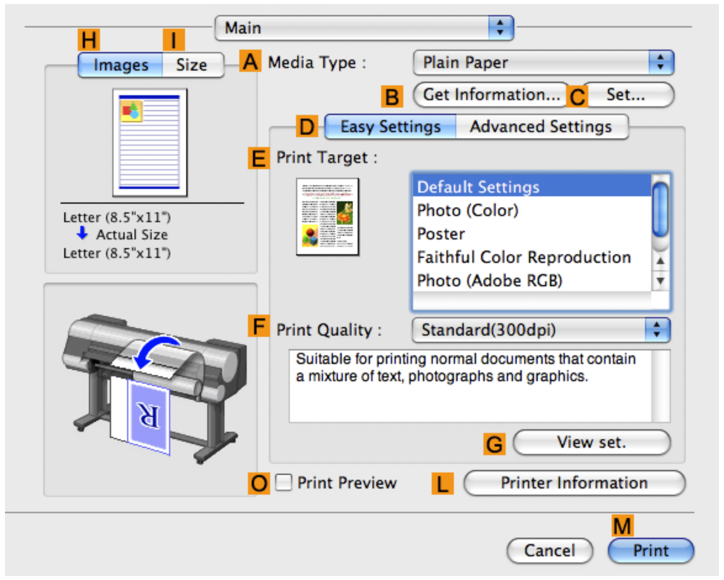
☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width** —in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



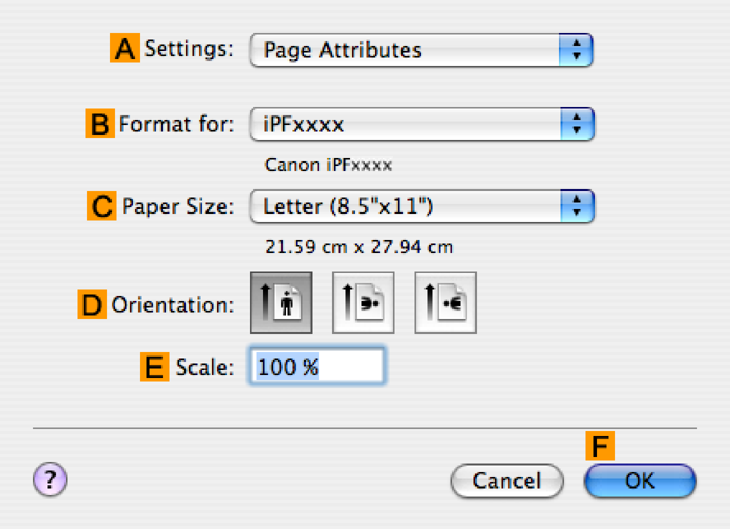
Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Scale: 100 %

13. Select the **J Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

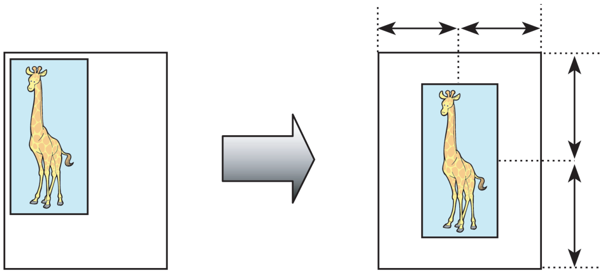
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

- Centering originals on sheets

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) →P.166
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) →P.169

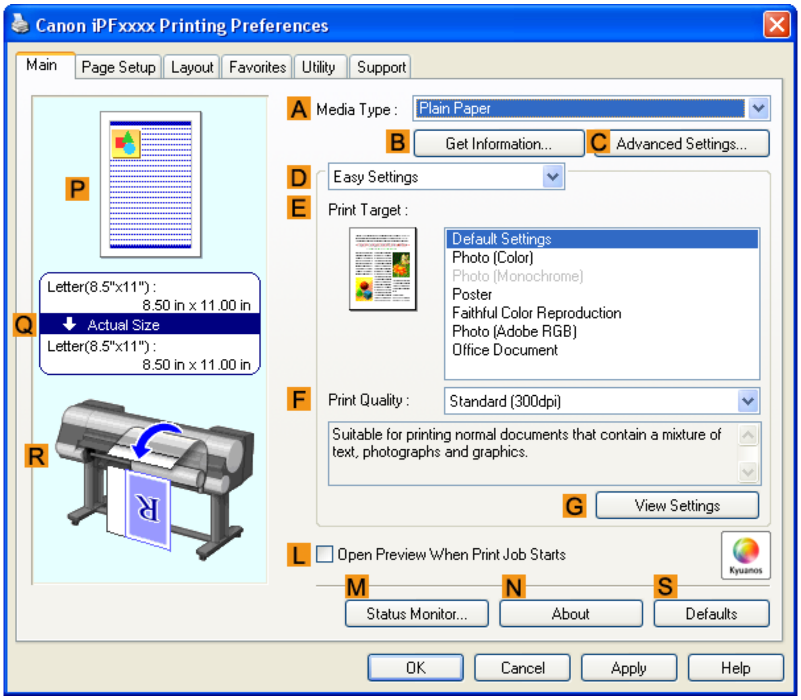
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

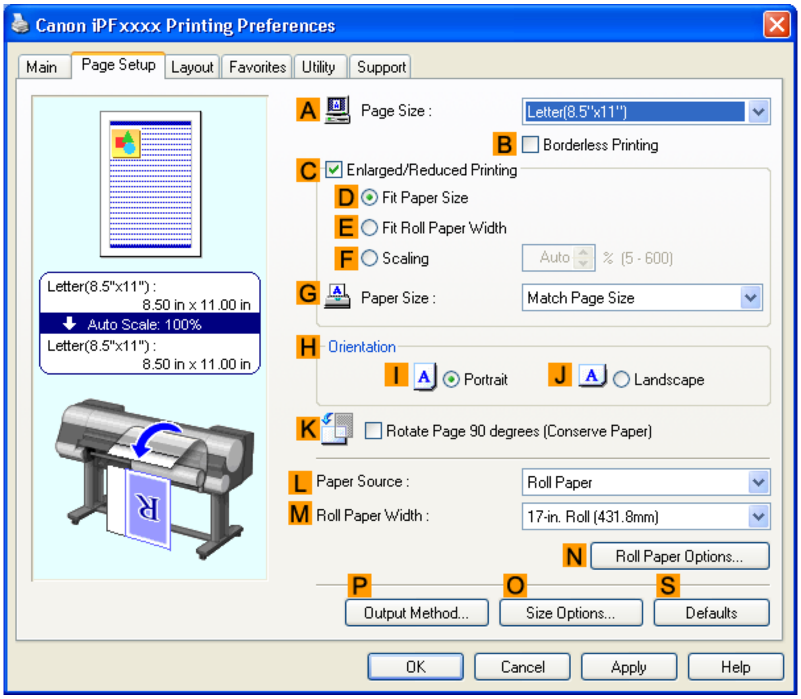


Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

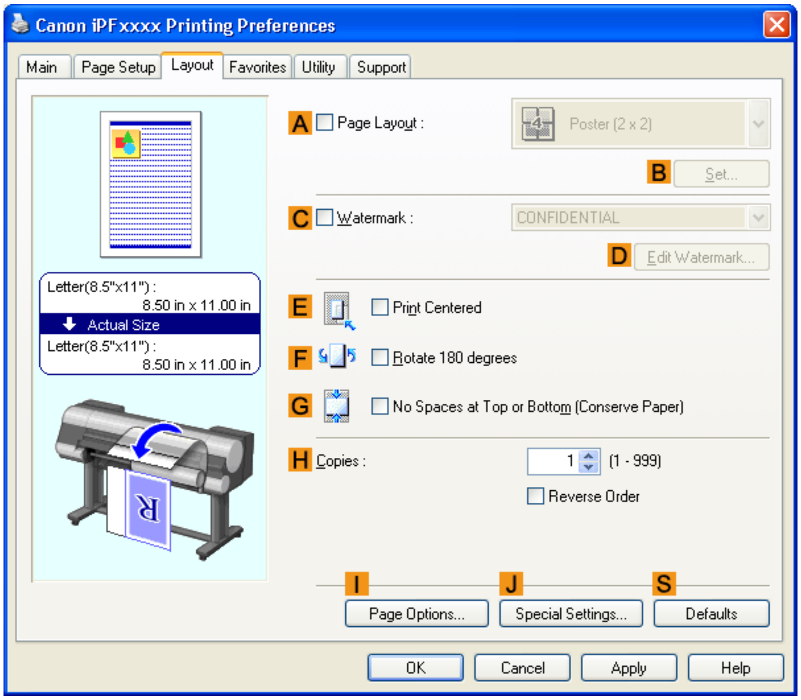
8. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

9. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G** **Paper Size** list.

10. Click **F** **Scaling** and enter **50**.

11. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the **E** **Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

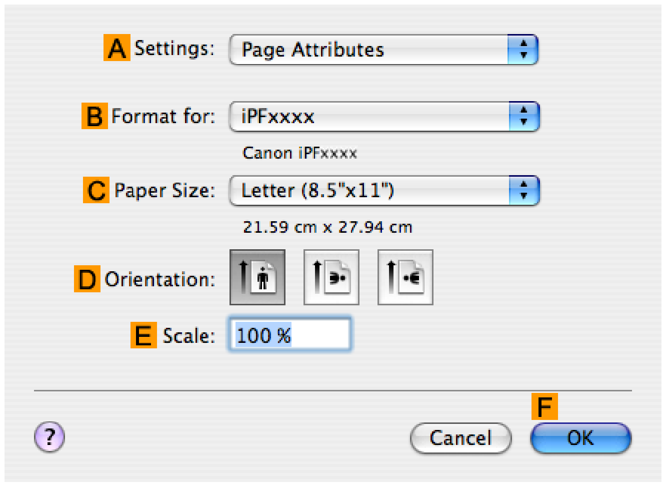
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. This sets the **B** **Format for** and **C** **Paper Size**.

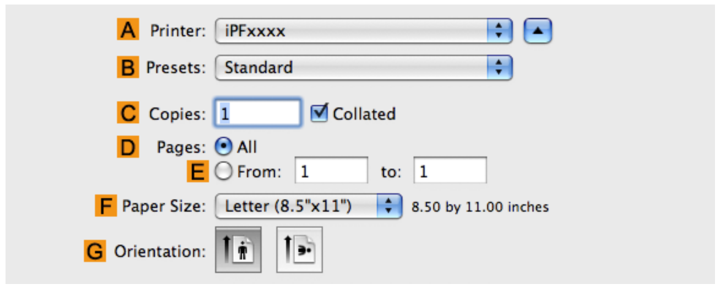
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %
Cancel
F OK

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



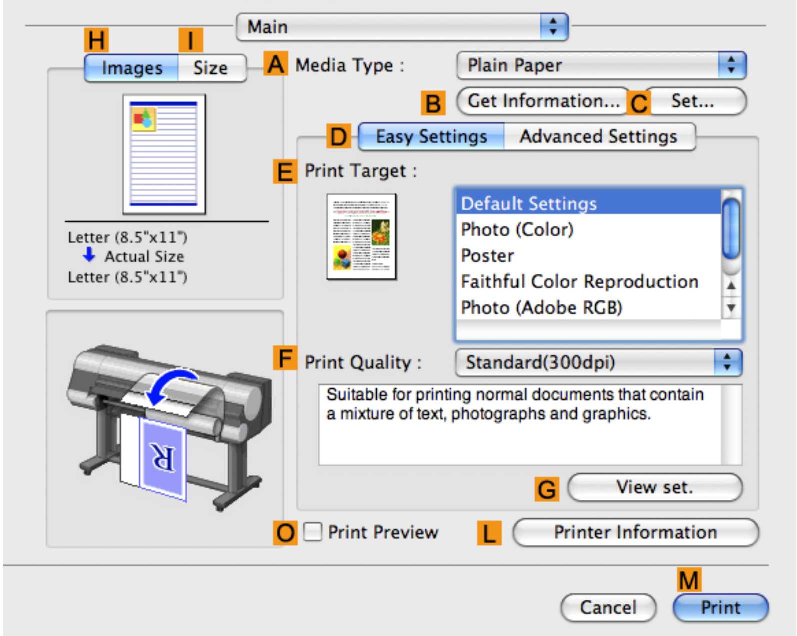
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A** **Printer** list.

3. In the **F** **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Cut Sheet**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Print Preview

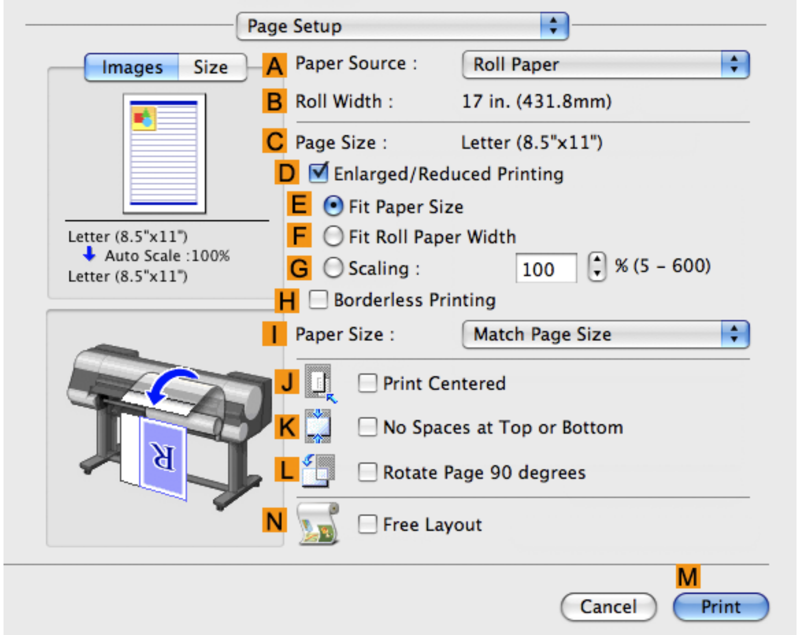
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Page Setup

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

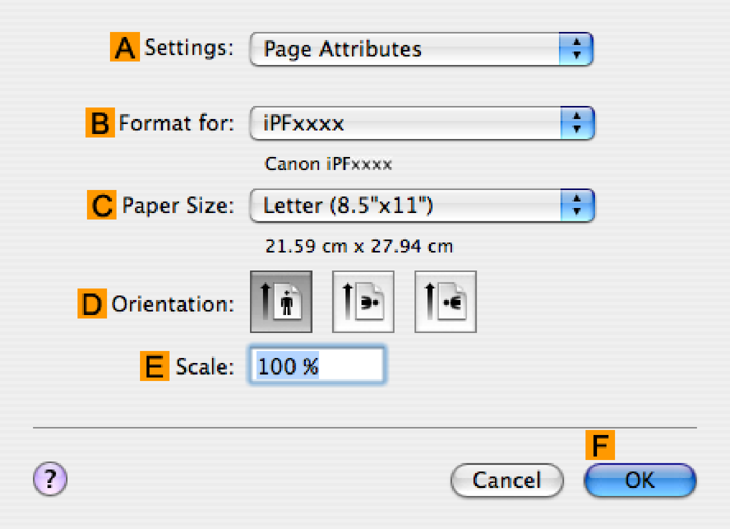
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

☐ Free Layout

Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Click **Cut Sheet** in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4 - Cut Sheet**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

12. Select the **J** **Print Centered** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

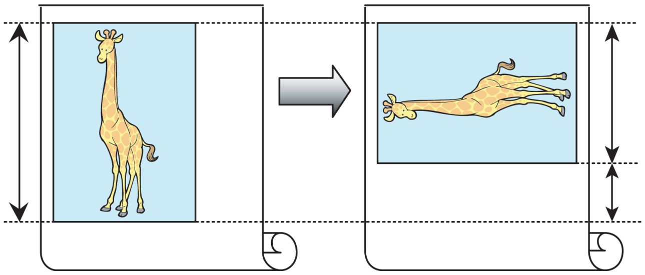
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

- **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**

  When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) →P.172
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) →P.174

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

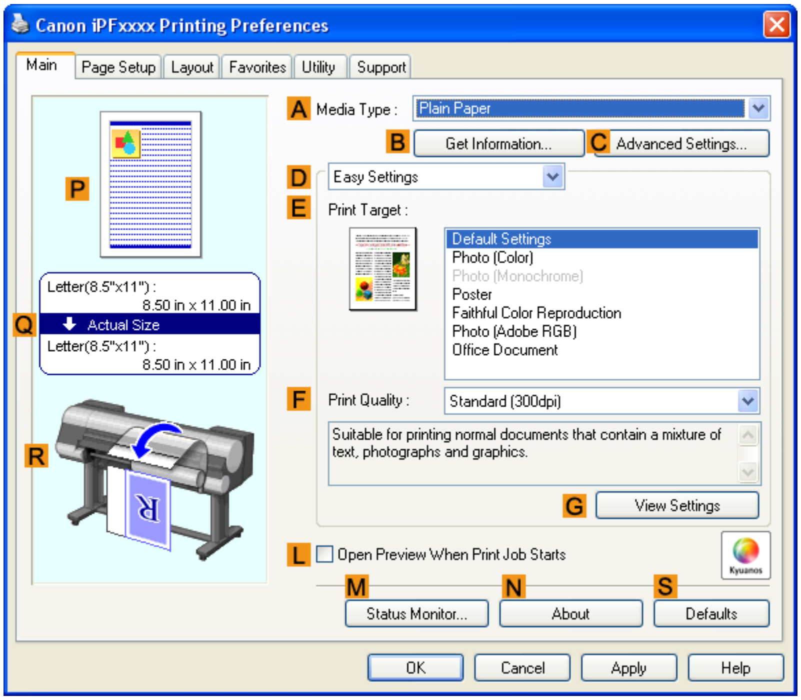
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

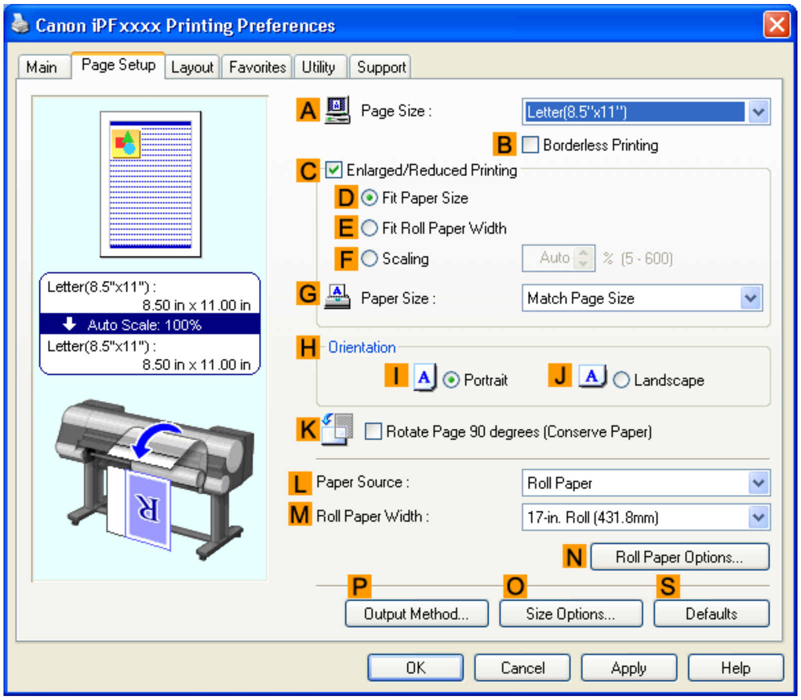
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

7. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

9. Select the K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.

10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

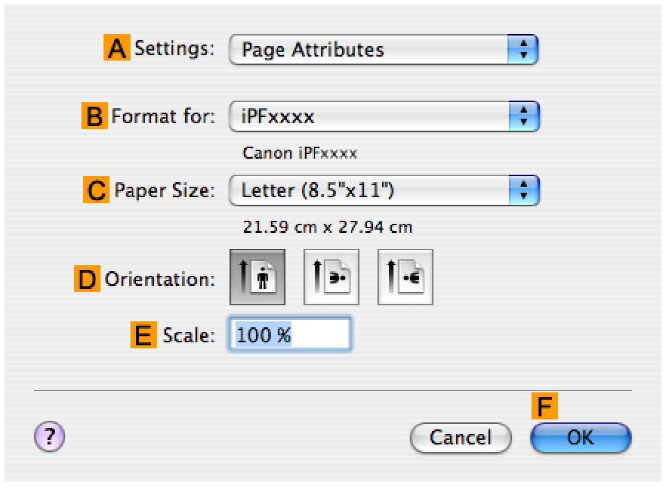
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

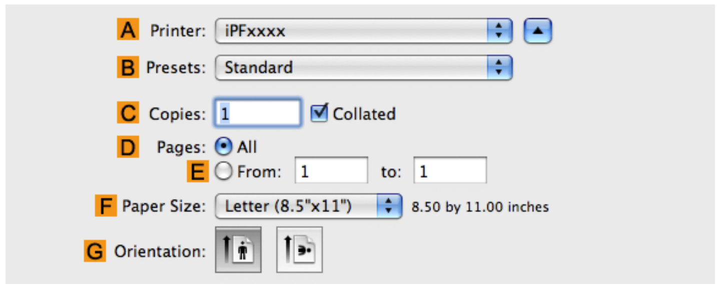
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



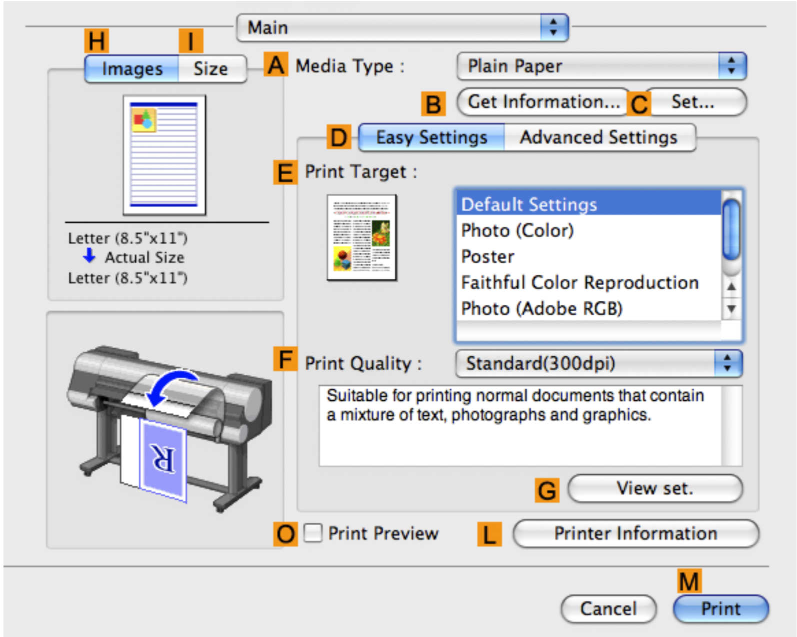
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



A Media Type : Plain Paper

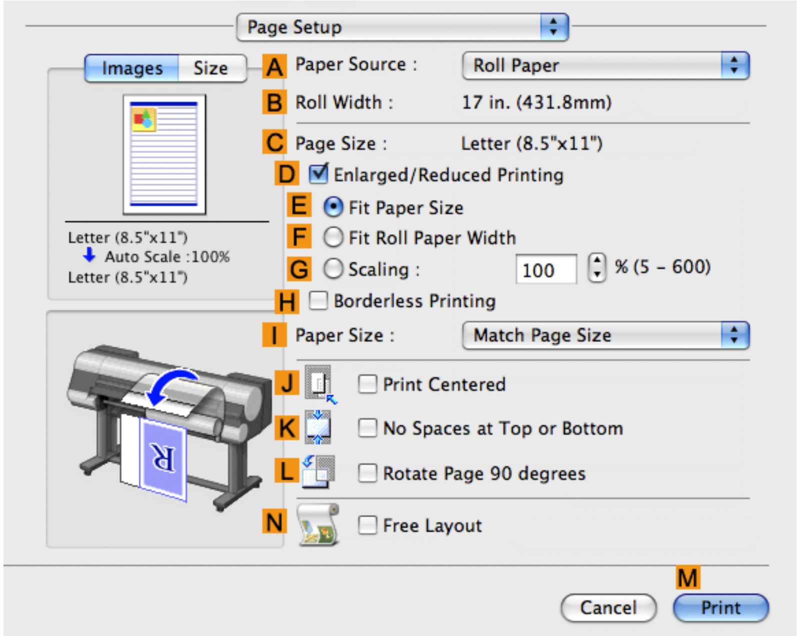
E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

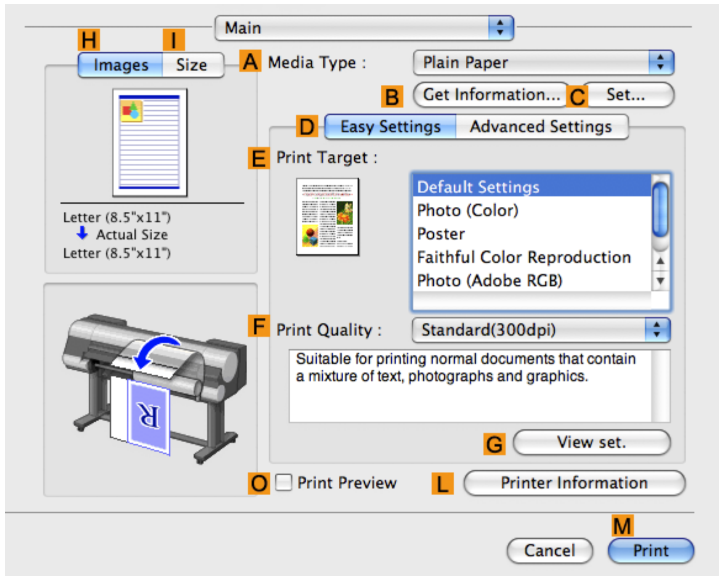
N ☐ Free Layout

8. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

9. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width** —in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Media Type : Plain Paper

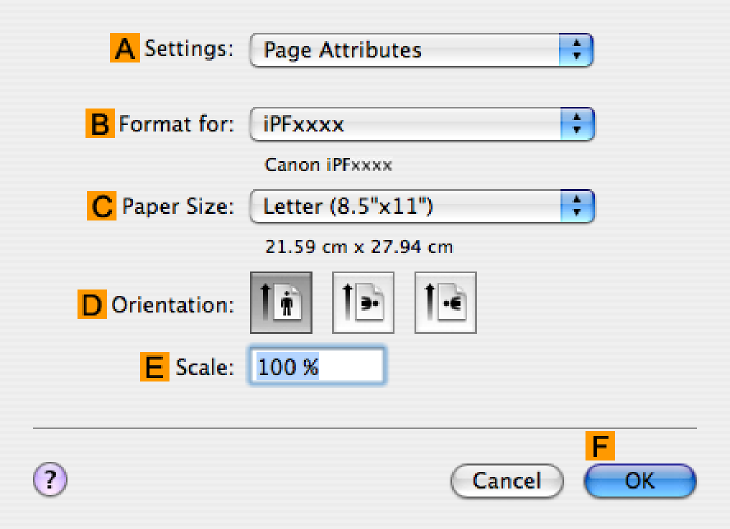
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

10. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



Settings: Page Attributes

Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

Scale: 100 %

11. Select the **L Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

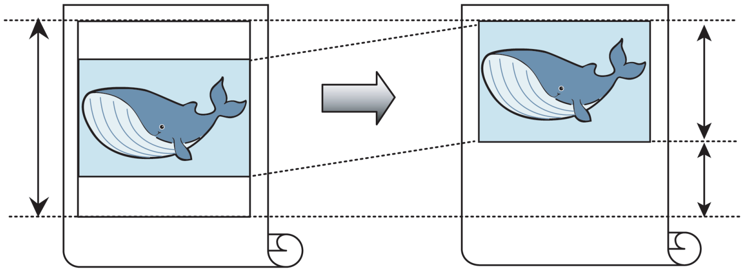
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

• No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
  - Banner printing
  - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) →P.178
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) →P.180

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

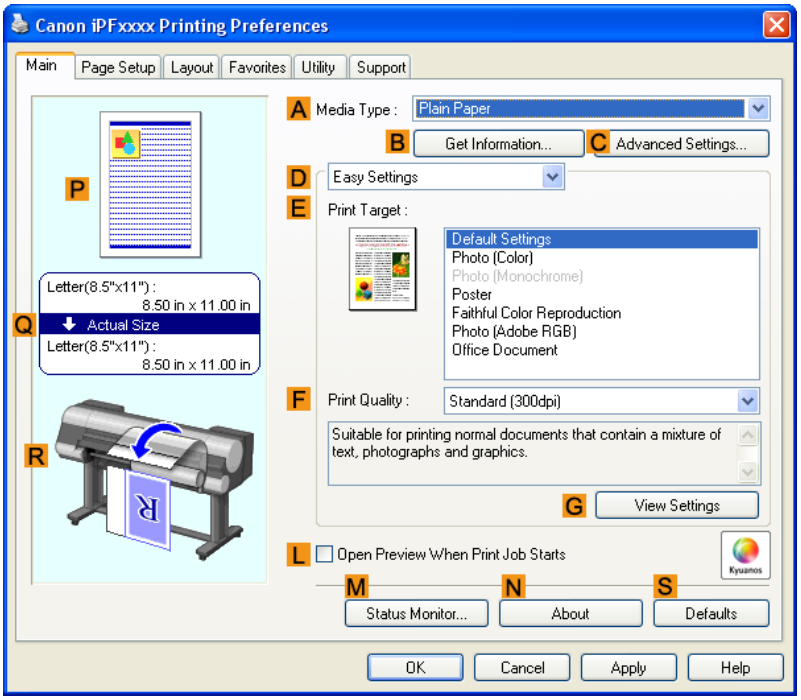
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Easy Settings

E Print Target : Default Settings

F Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

L ☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

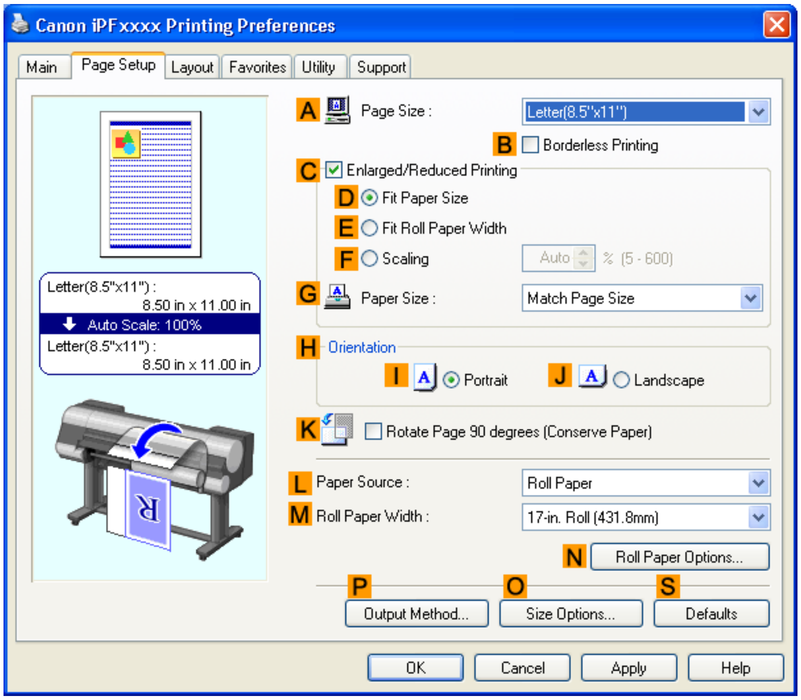
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

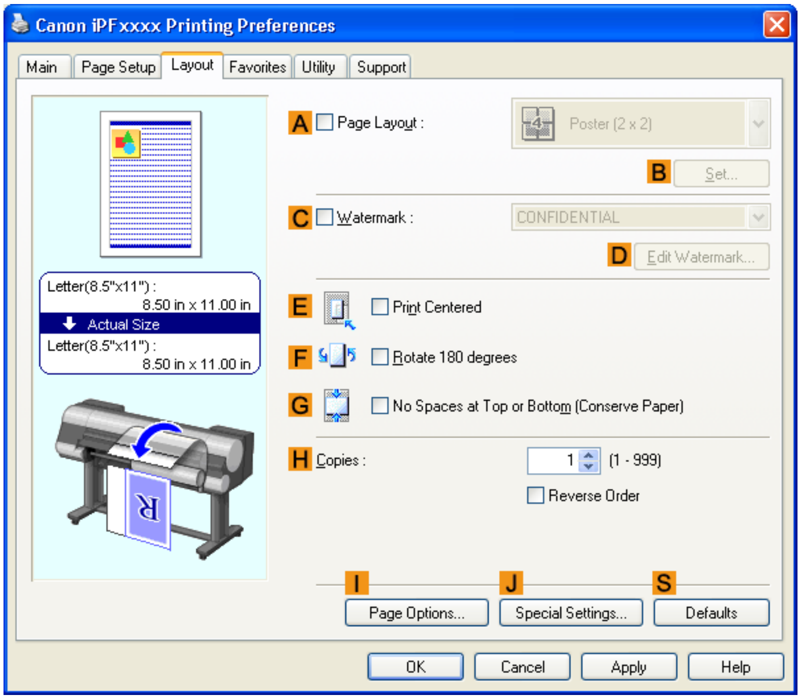
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

7. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.

9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **G** **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

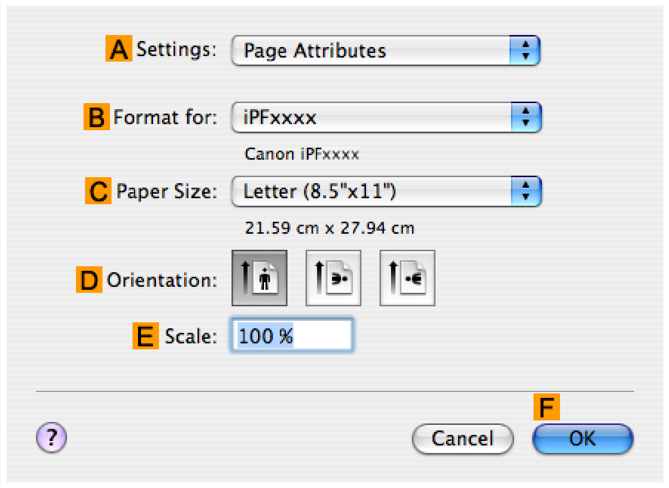
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

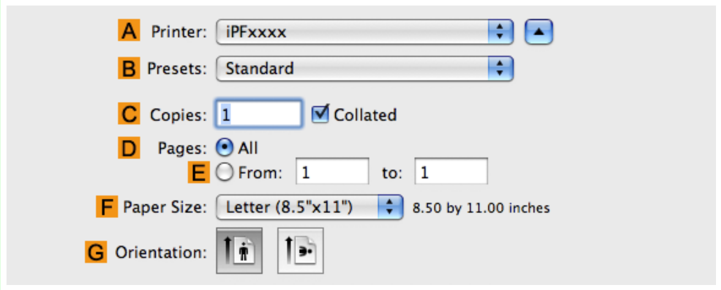
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

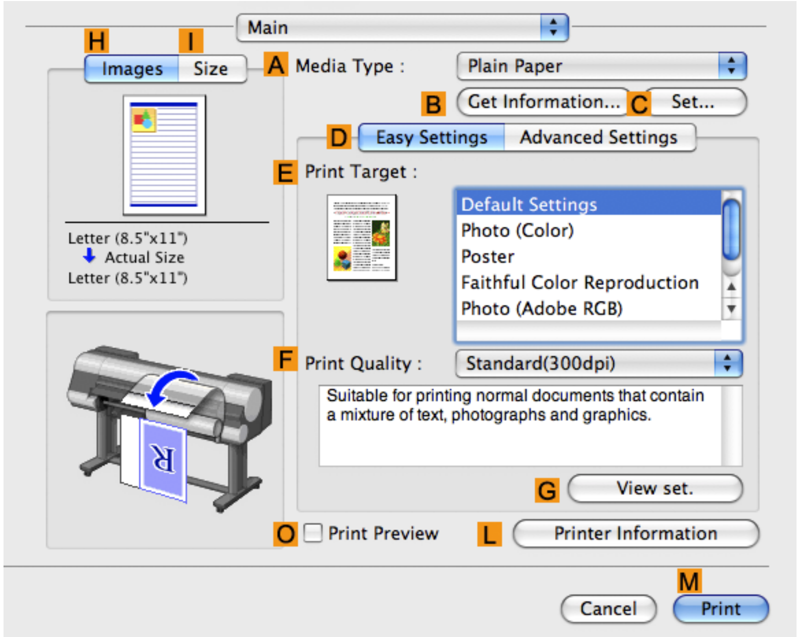
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

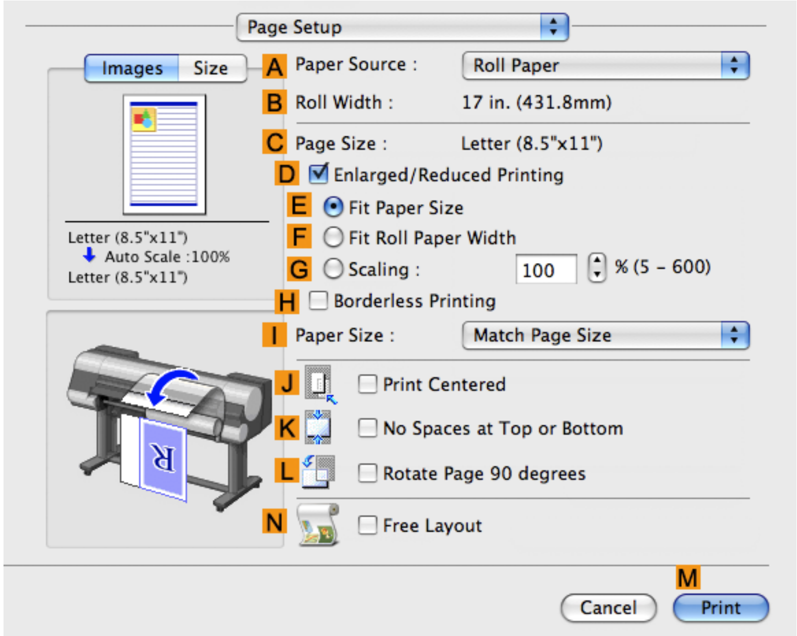
F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O ☐ Print Preview

6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



A Paper Source : Roll Paper

B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

E ● Fit Paper Size

F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)

H ☐ Borderless Printing

I Paper Size : Match Page Size

J ☐ Print Centered

K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

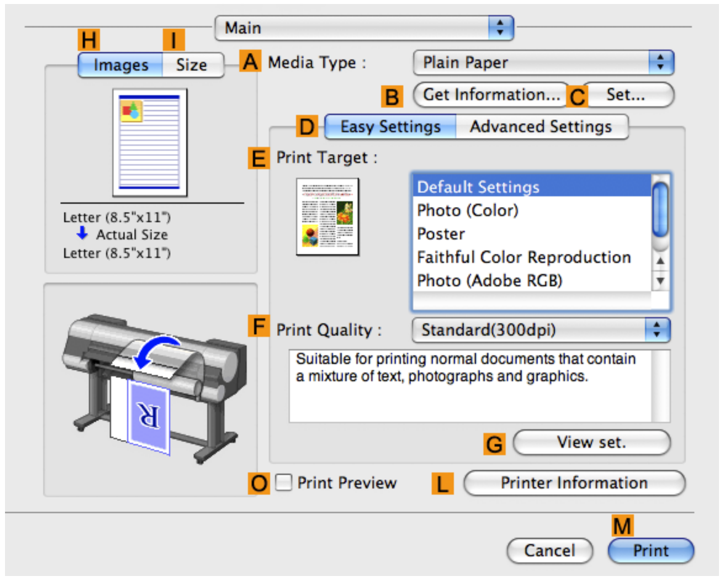
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

N ☐ Free Layout

8. Select and click a roll paper in the A **Paper Source** list.

9. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Width** —in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

> Note
>
> - If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

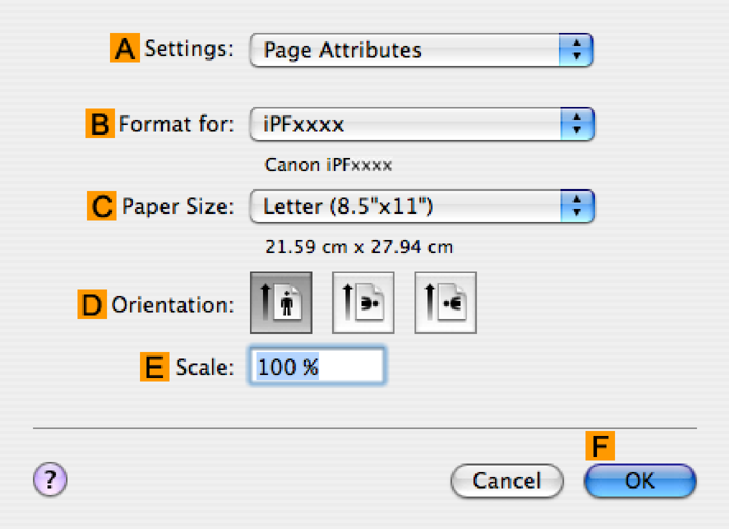
Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

10. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

11. Select the K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

> Note
>
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

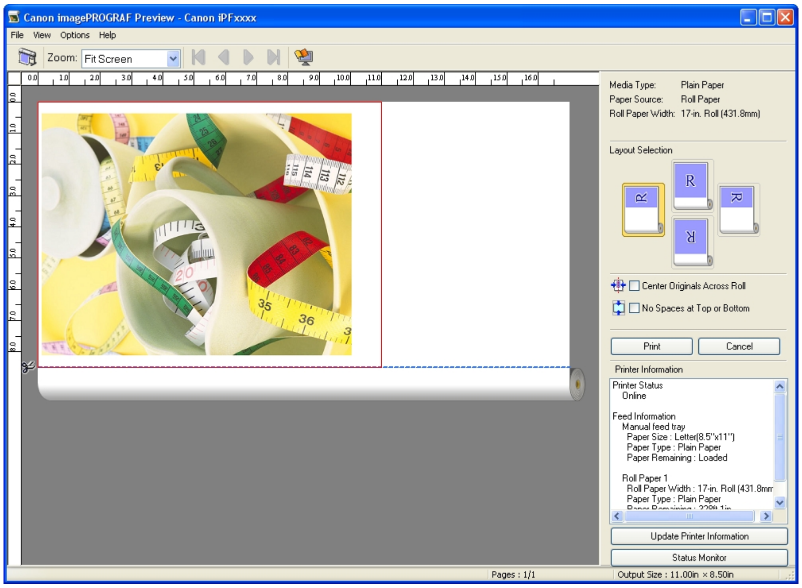
Checking Images Before Printing

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

- **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** (Windows)

  While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

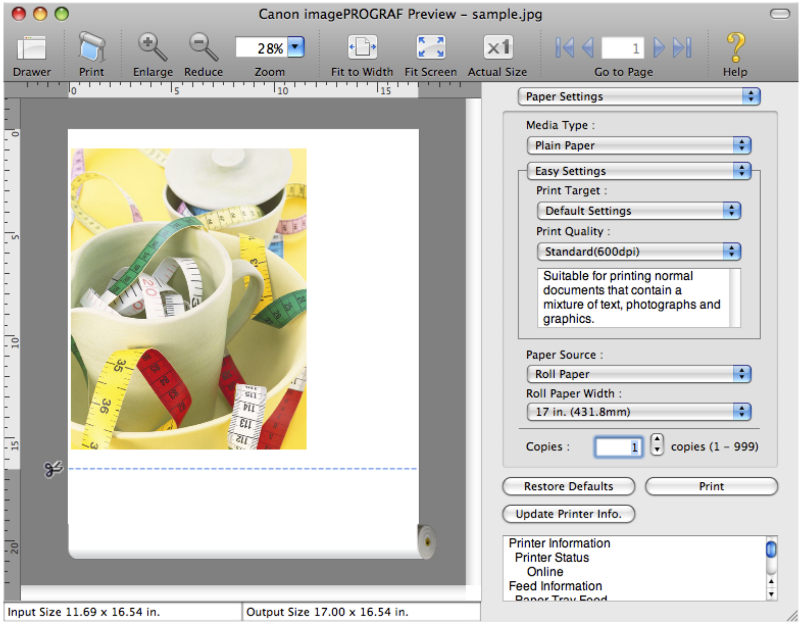
Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Note

- Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

- **Preview** (Macintosh)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
  Printer Status
    Online
Feed Information
  Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 11.69 x 16.54 in.

Output Size 17.00 x 16.54 in.

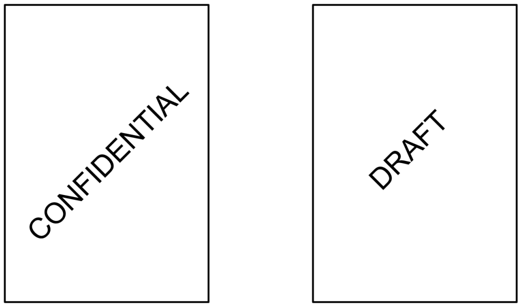
For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) →P.208
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) →P.493

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



- **Watermark**

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

> Important
> - Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- COPY
- DRAFT
- FILE COPY
- FINAL
- PRELIMINARY
- PROOF
- TOP SECRET

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.

- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

> **Note**
> - Watermarks are supported in Windows.
> - In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

- Printing with Watermarks— COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) →P.187

Printing with Watermarks— COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

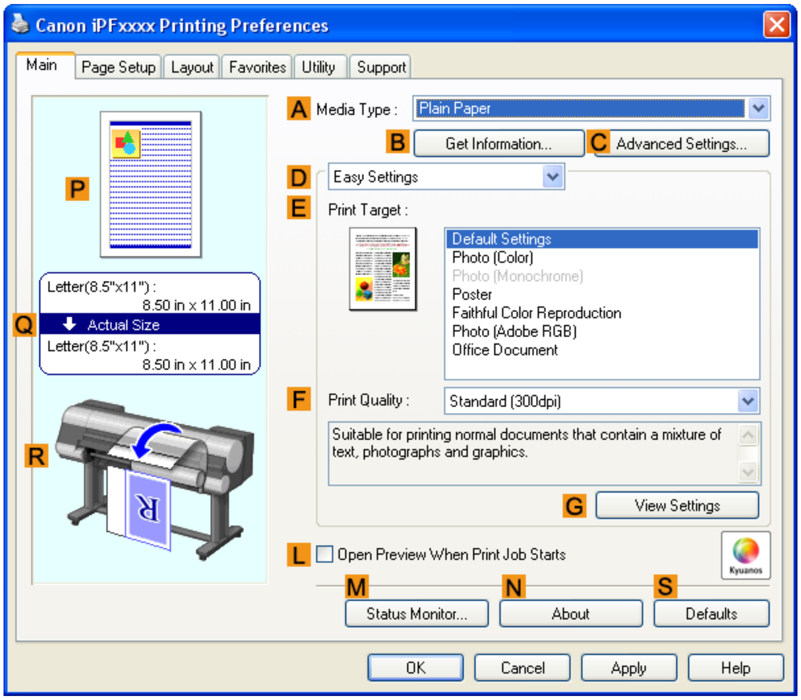
This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a **FILE COPY** watermark.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in[)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

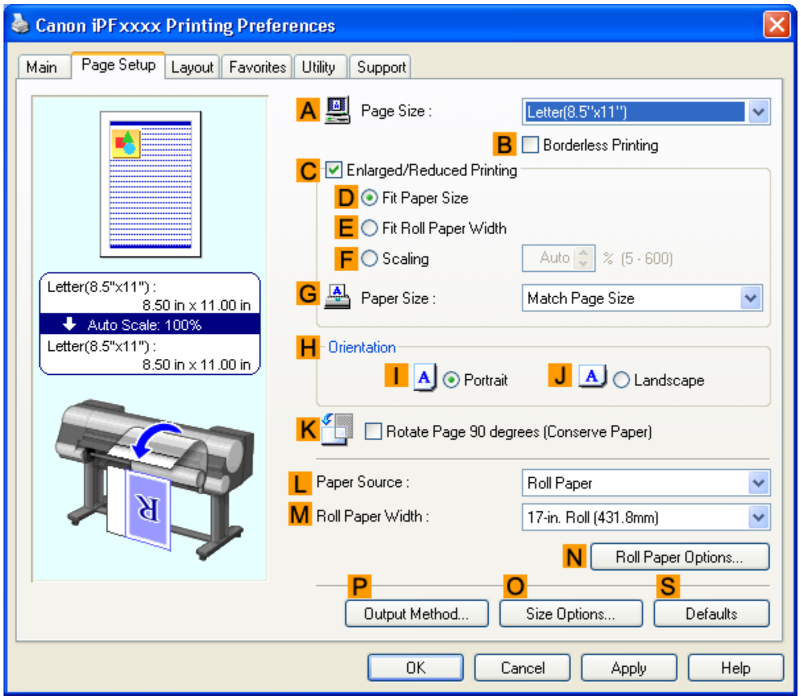
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

> Note
>
> - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking G **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

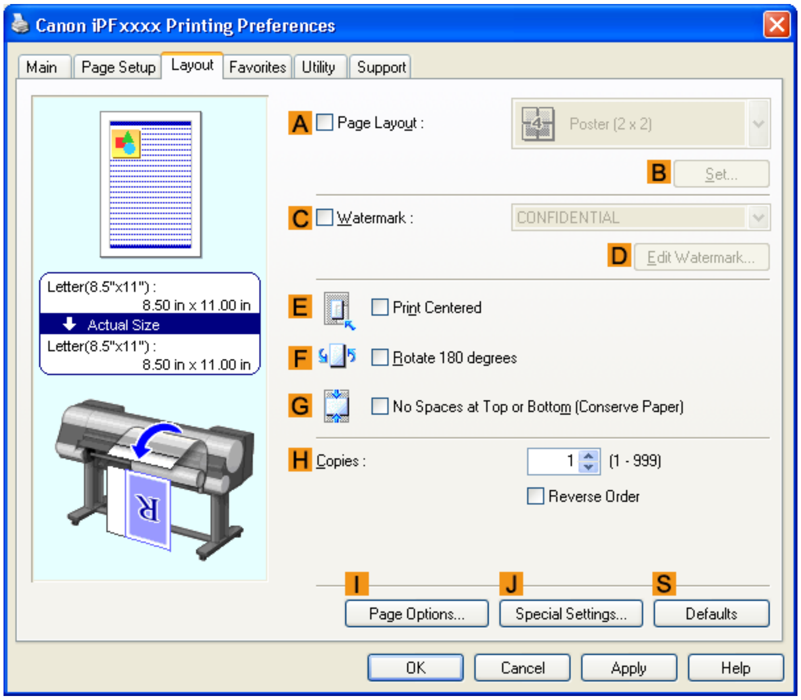
Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in
Auto Scale: 100%
Letter(8.5"x11") :
8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A2**.

8. Select and click a roll paper in the L **Paper Source** list.

9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **C** **Watermark** check box.

12. Click **FILE COPY** in the **Watermarks** list.

Note

- Click **D** **Edit Watermark** to open the **Edit Watermark** dialog box. In the **Edit Watermark** dialog box, you can create custom watermarks and change the position and angle of watermarks.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

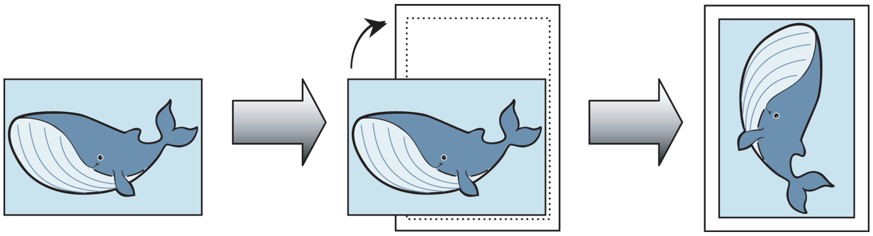
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

- **Orientation**

  Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



- **Rotate 180 degrees**

  The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

- **Mirror**

  A mirror image of the original is printed.

  For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) →P.190
  - Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) →P.192

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

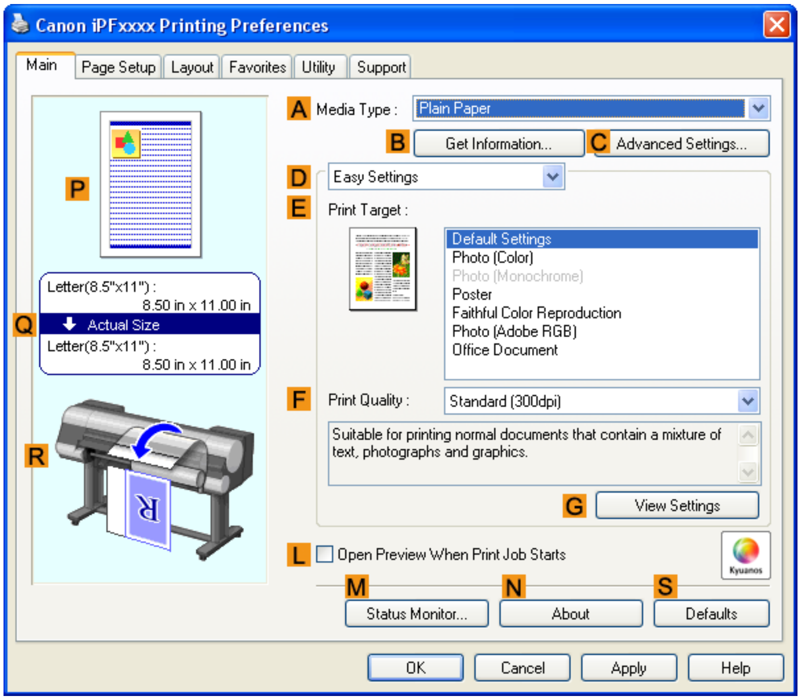
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

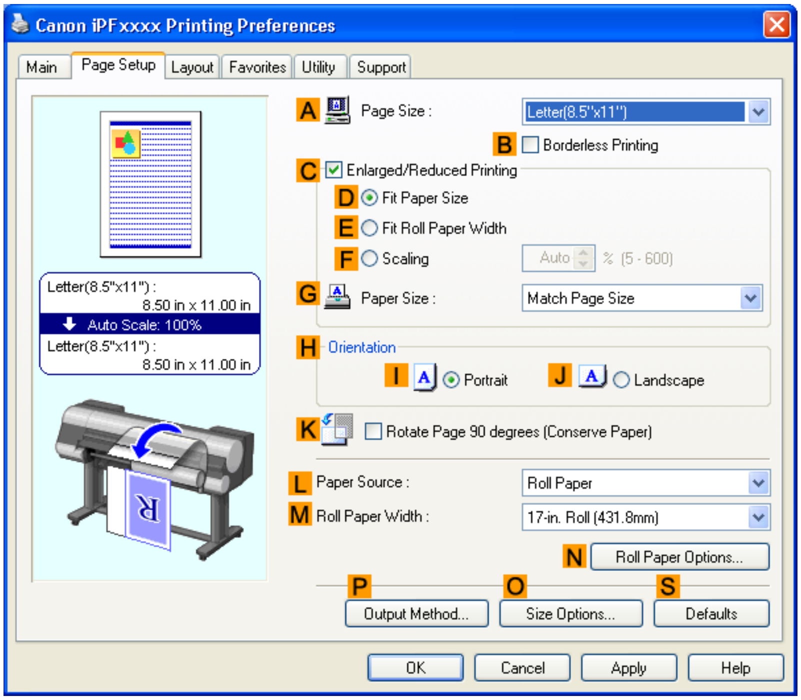


4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

5. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

6. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A** **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. In **H** **Orientation**, click **J** **Landscape**.

10. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

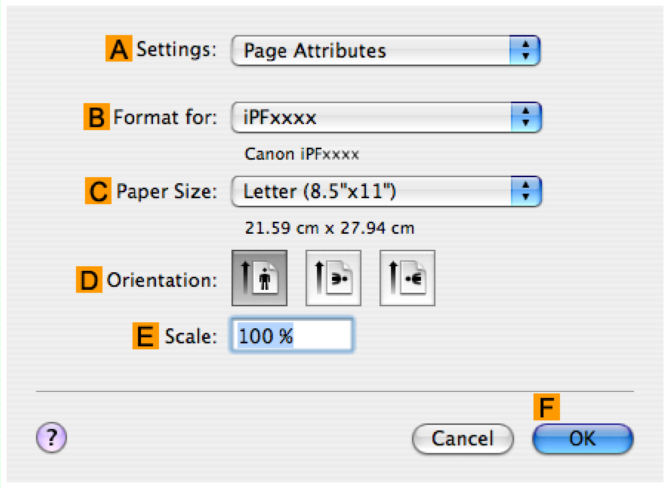
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

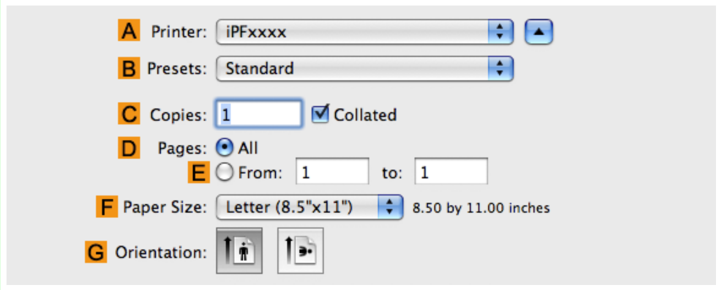
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

  If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

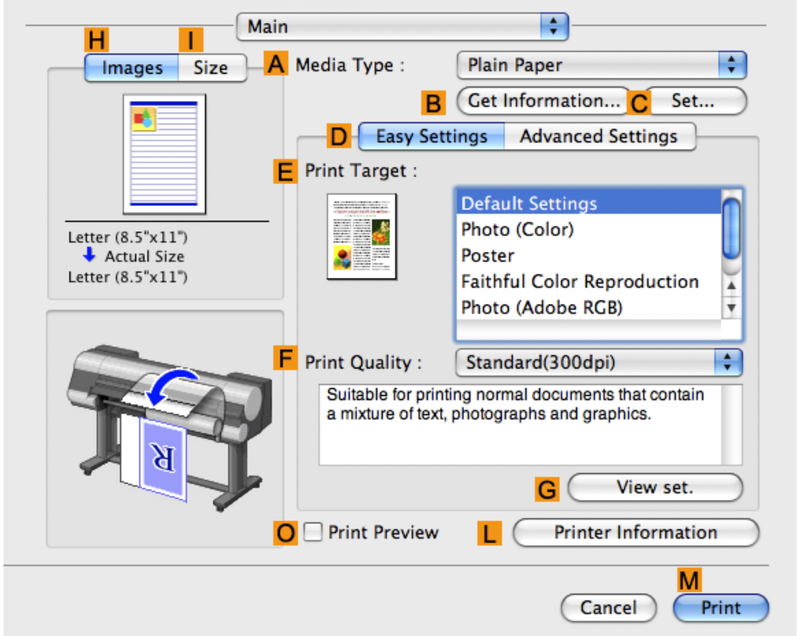
2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

4. In **D Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.

5. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.



Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

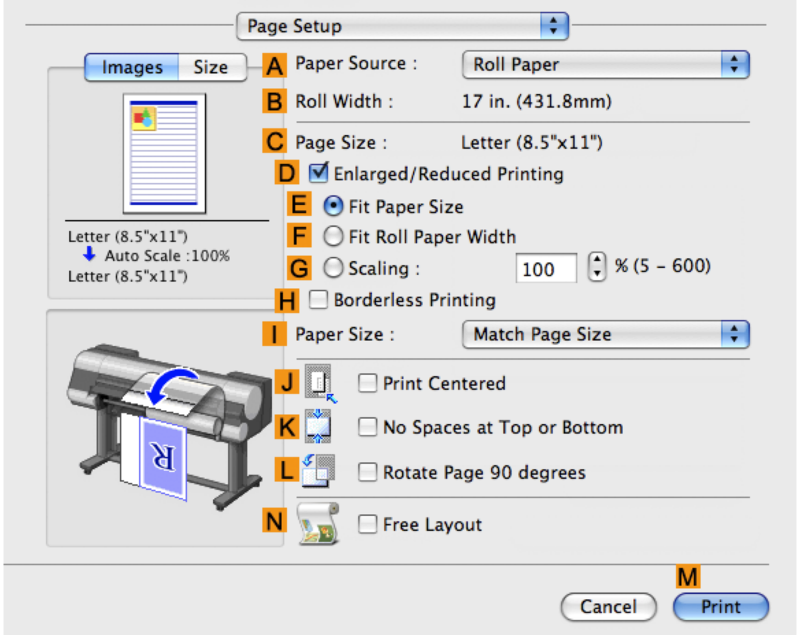
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

7. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Make your selection in the **E** **Print Target** list.

9. Make your selection in the **F** **Print Quality** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100 % (5 - 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : Match Page Size

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees

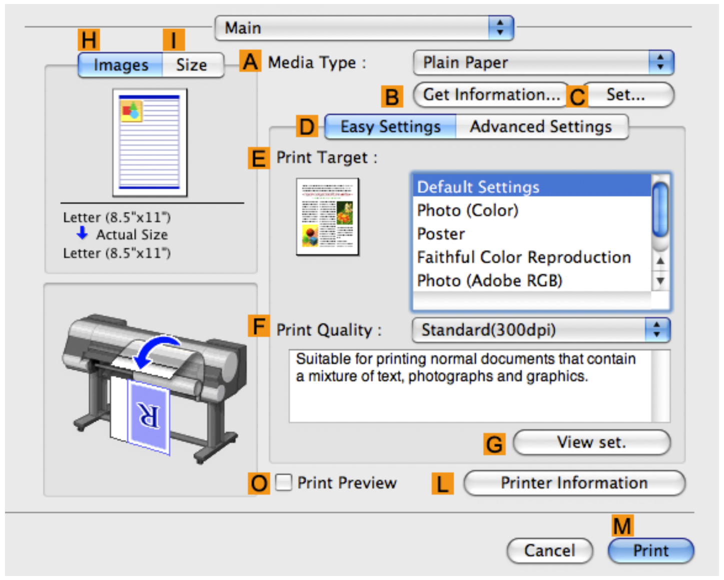
☐ Free Layout

11. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

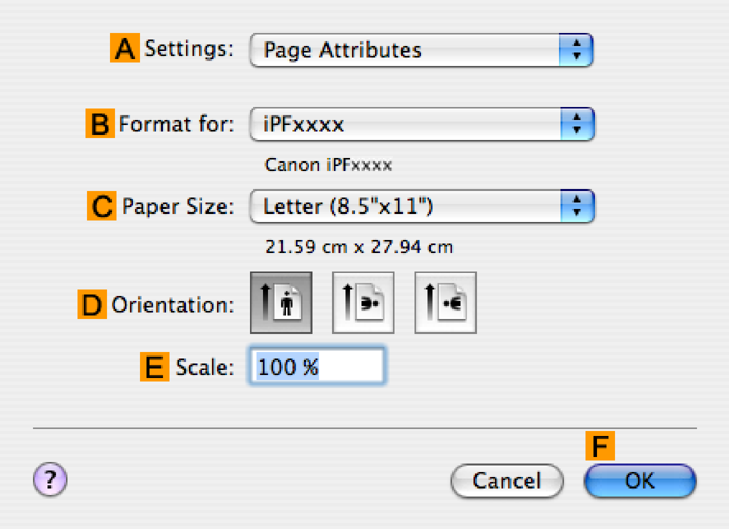
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the **C** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as **Favorites** to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

- **Favorites**

  Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

  > Note
  > - You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

  For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - Using Favorites (Windows) →P.209
  - Using Favorites (Mac OS X) →P.494

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

> Note
> - It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper →P.774 ")

- **Automatic Cutting**

  Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.

  For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

  - Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) →P.196
  - Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) →P.198

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

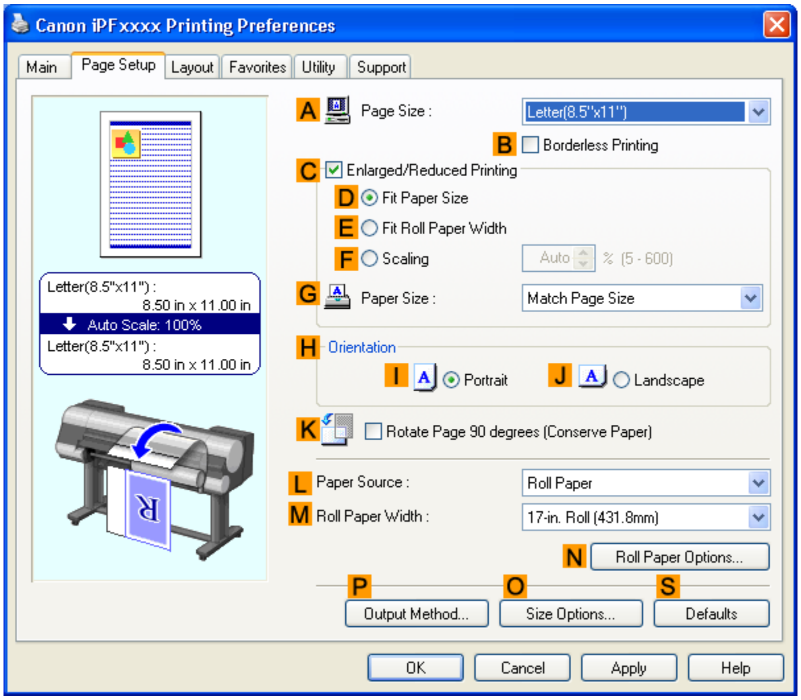
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

> Note
> - The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

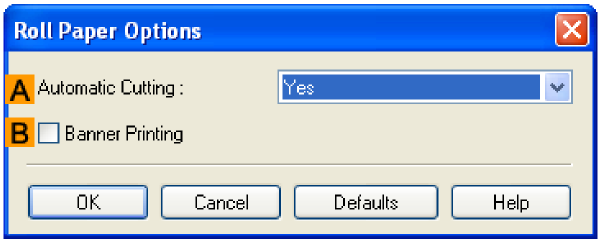
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
☐ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)
Paper Size : Match Page Size
Orientation
● Portrait
○ Landscape
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
Paper Source : Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

4. Select and click a roll paper in the **L** **Paper Source** list.

5. Click **N** **Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



Automatic Cutting : Yes
☐ Banner Printing

6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the **A** **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

7. Click **OK** to close the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.

8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note
- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows) →P.207 "

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.

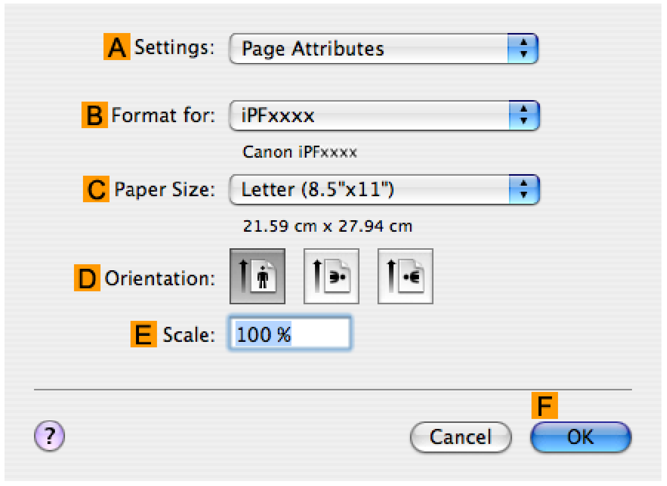
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. This sets the B **Format for** and C **Paper Size**.

   Note

   - The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
     If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes

B Format for: iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

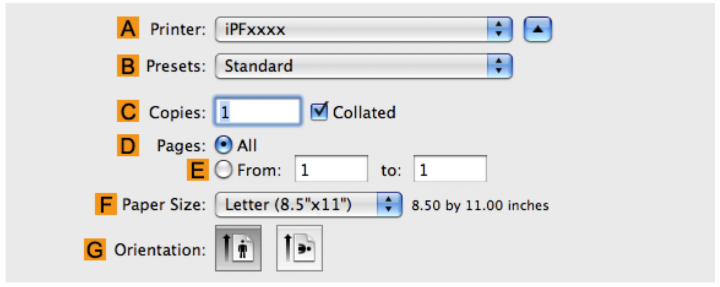
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")

21.59 cm x 27.94 cm

D Orientation:

E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



A Printer: iPFxxxx

B Presets: Standard

C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

D Pages: ● All

E ○ From: 1 to: 1

F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

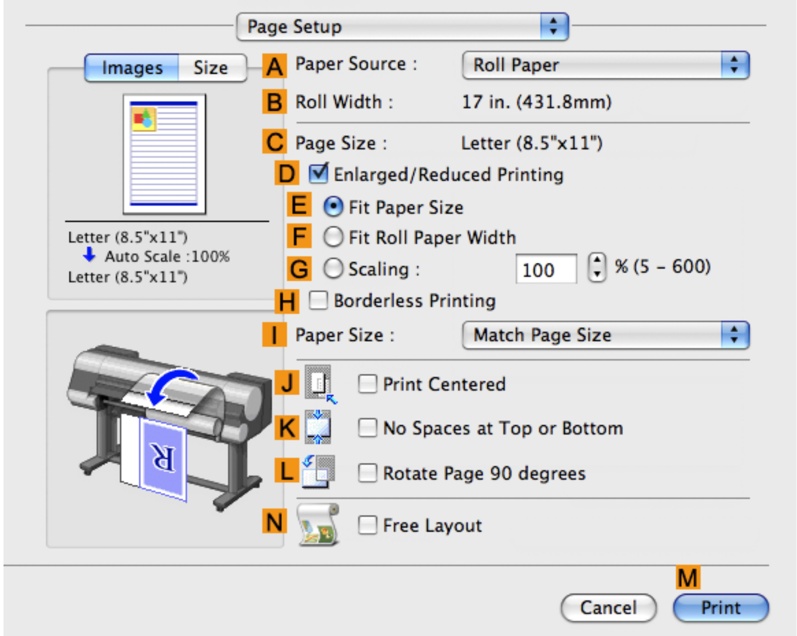
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the A **Printer** list.

3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.

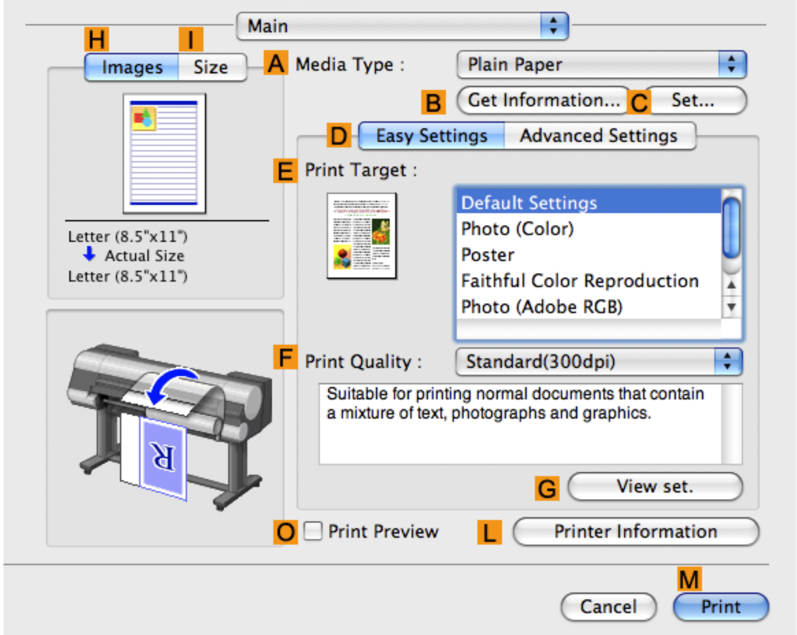
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click F **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



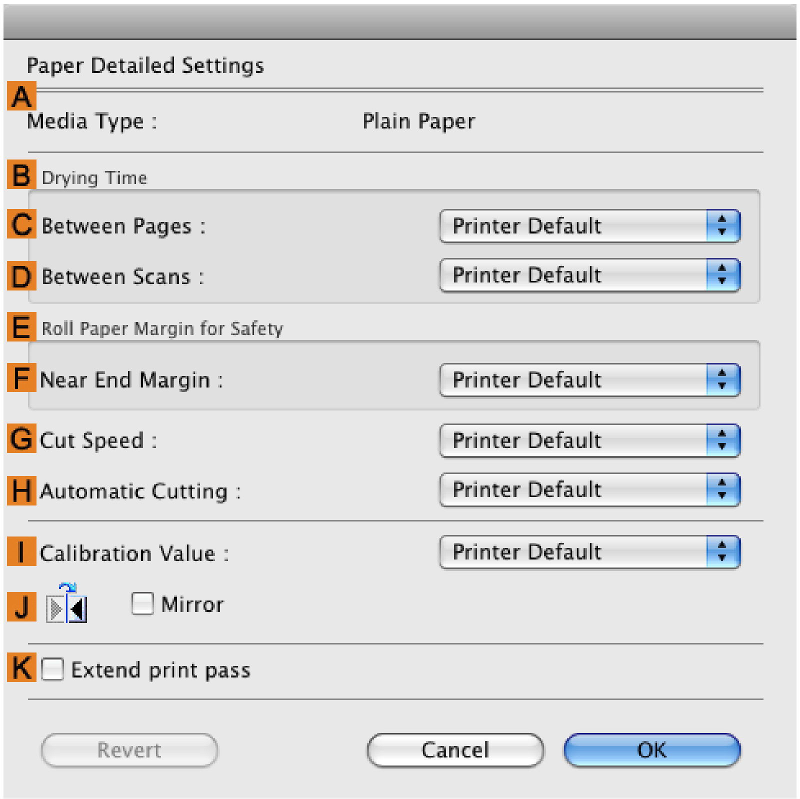
6. Select and click a roll paper in the **A** **Paper Source** list.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

9. Click **C** **Set** to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.



Paper Detailed Settings

A Media Type : Plain Paper

B Drying Time

C Between Pages : Printer Default

D Between Scans : Printer Default

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

F Near End Margin : Printer Default

G Cut Speed : Printer Default

H Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

I Calibration Value : Printer Default

J ☐ Mirror

K ☐ Extend print pass

10. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H** **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

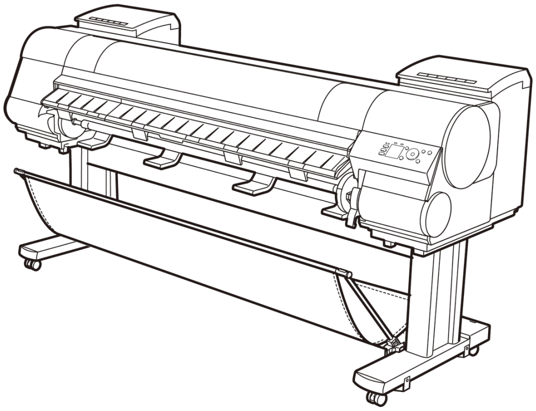
> Important
> - If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

11. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

> Note
> - For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) →P.492 "

Windows Software



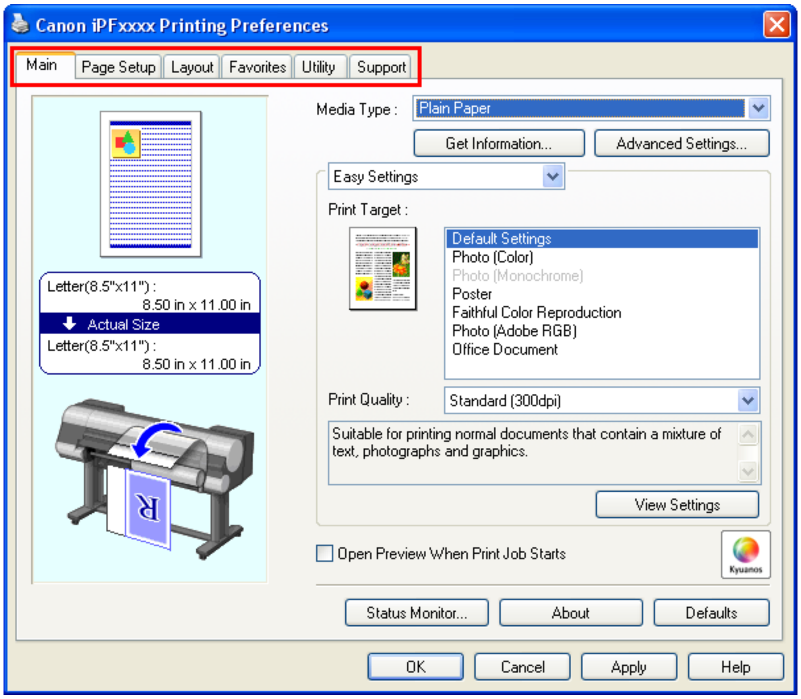
Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu →P.213

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

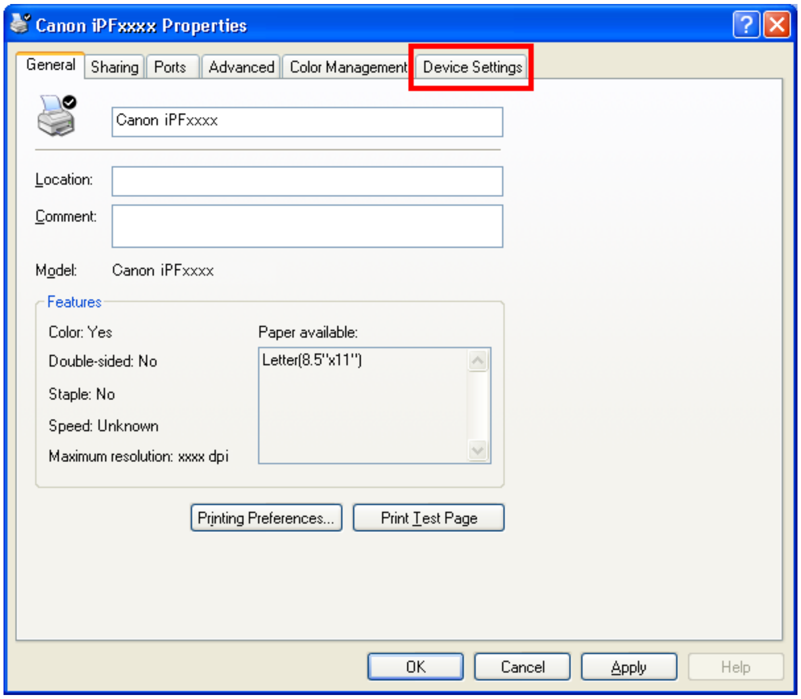
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

- Main Sheet →P.215
  You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
  - Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.220
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.222
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Color →P.222
  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.224
  - Matching Sheet →P.225
  - Ambient Light Adjust dialog box →P.227
  - Light Source Check Tool →P.229
  - Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome →P.230
  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.231
  - Gray Adjustment Sheet →P.232
- Page Setup Sheet →P.233
  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.
  - Output Method dialog box →P.236
  - Paper Size Options Dialog Box →P.237
- Layout Sheet →P.238
  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.
  - Page Options Dialog Box →P.240
  - Special Settings Dialog Box →P.241
- Favorites Sheet →P.242

Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.

- Utility Sheet →P.244
  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Support Sheet →P.245
  You can view support information and the user manual.



Canon iPFxxxx Properties

Canon iPFxxxx

Location:

Comment:

Model: Canon iPFxxxx

Features

Color: Yes

Double-sided: No

Staple: No

Speed: Unknown

Maximum resolution: xxxx dpi

Paper available:

Letter(8.5"x11")

- Device Settings Sheet →P.247
  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the version information for the printer driver.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout →P.261 .
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.292 .

Note
- **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** and **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

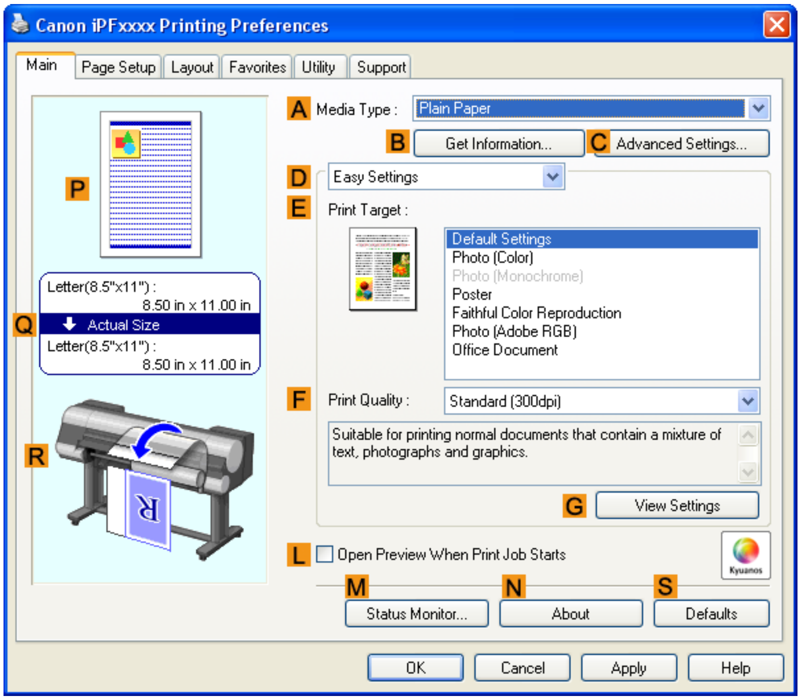
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

Important
- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

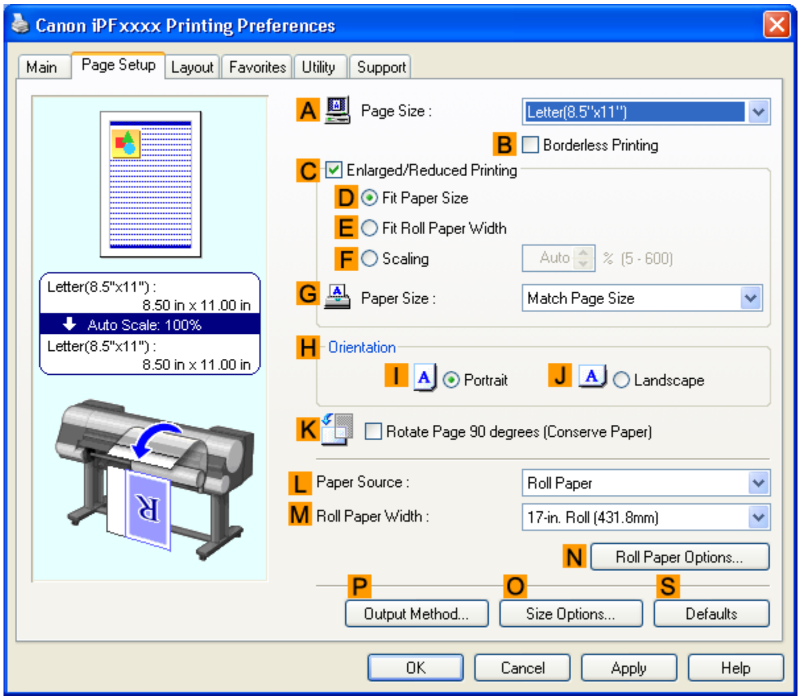
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Note

- Click the **B** **Get Information** button to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box. On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.
  This function requires that the **Status Monitor** be installed.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

6. In the **A** **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.

7. In the **L** **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

8. If you have selected roll paper in **L** **Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M** **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

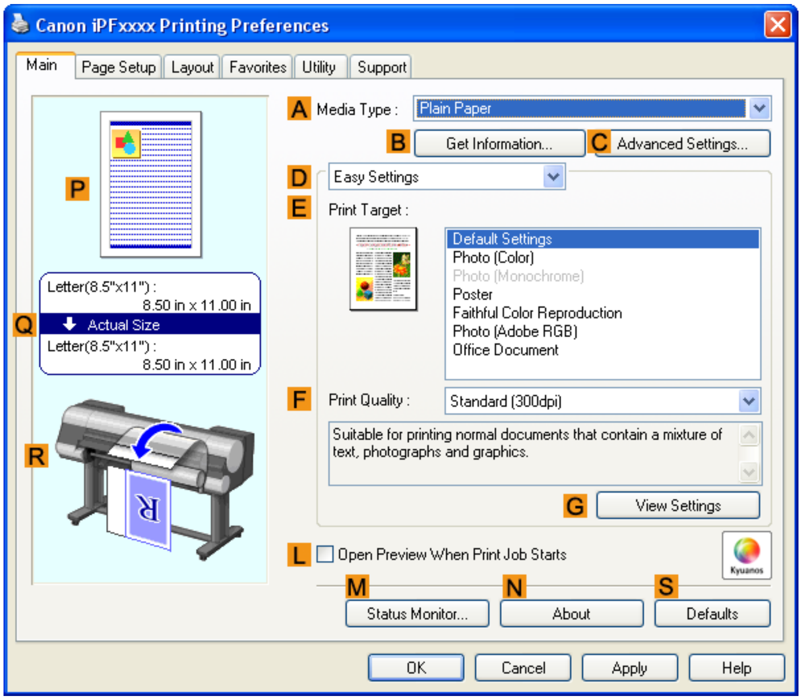
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings →P.202 "

Confirming Print Settings

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking illustrations and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.



Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings, Photo (Color), Photo (Monochrome), Poster, Faithful Color Reproduction, Photo (Adobe RGB), Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Display Area	Information Displayed
P Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Q Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are indicated.
R Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click G **View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.

- Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

When you activate this feature, imagePROGRAF Preview or PageComposer is started before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see "Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.184 "

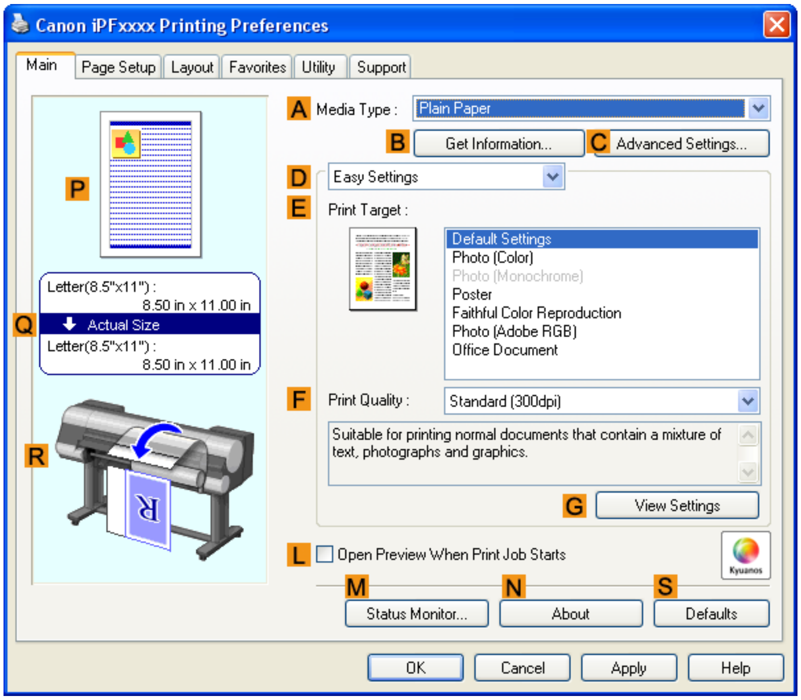
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

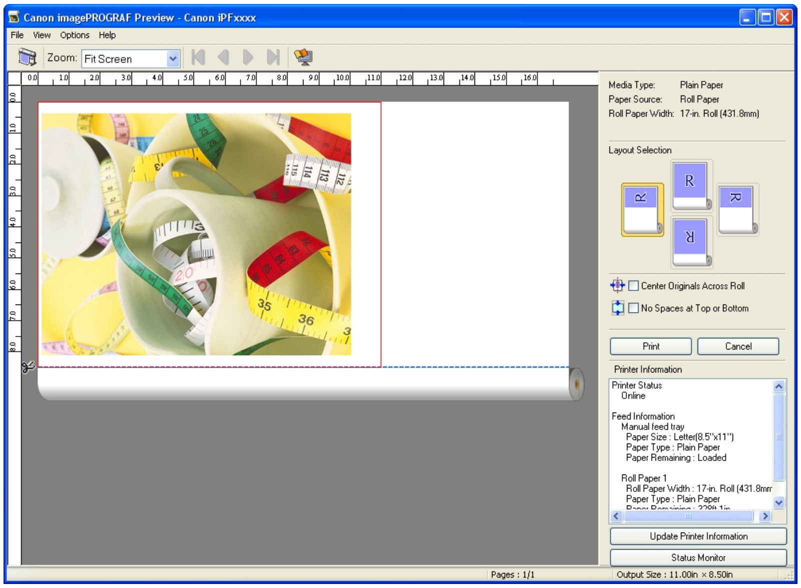
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L** **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.

5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **imagePROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Pages : 1/1
Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

6. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.

7. To print, click **Print** in the **File** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see Preview →P.248 .

Using Favorites

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

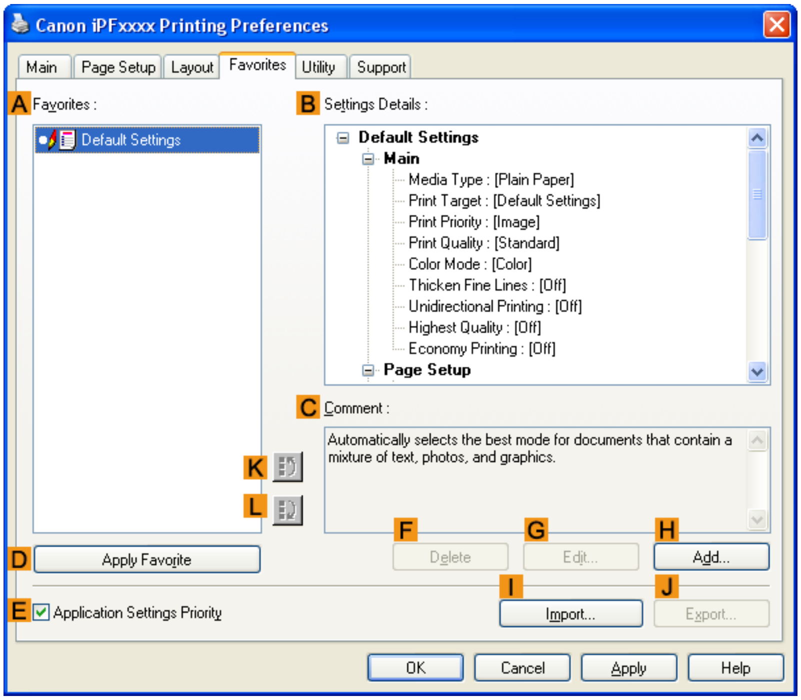
This section describes the procedure for registering printing settings that have been changed in the driver as **Favorites**.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (Refer to "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211 ")

3. Perform normal printing settings.
   The favorite is registered from here.

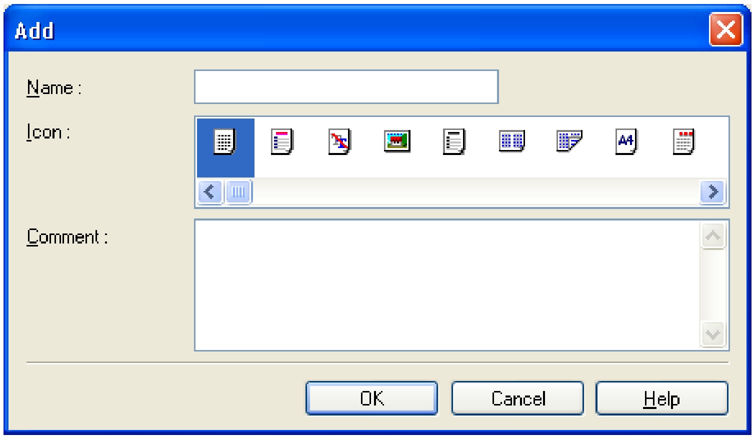
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



Default Settings
- Main
  - Media Type : [Plain Paper]
  - Print Target : [Default Settings]
  - Print Priority : [Image]
  - Print Quality : [Standard]
  - Color Mode : [Color]
  - Thicken Fine Lines : [Off]
  - Unidirectional Printing : [Off]
  - Highest Quality : [Off]
  - Economy Printing : [Off]
- Page Setup

Comment : Automatically selects the best mode for documents that contain a mixture of text, photos, and graphics.

5. Click **H** **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.



6. Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as **Photos for Presentations** or **Monthly Report.**

7. Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.

8. In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.

9. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.
The favorite you have added is now displayed in **A** **Favorites**.

Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click **J** **Export** and specify the file to save.

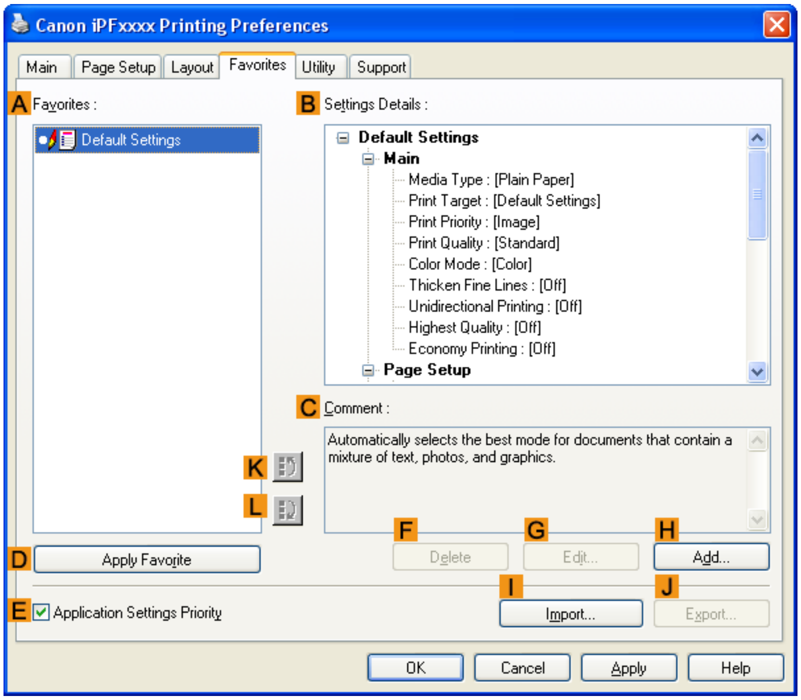
Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211 ")

3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



Default Settings
- Main
  - Media Type : [Plain Paper]
  - Print Target : [Default Settings]
  - Print Priority : [Image]
  - Print Quality : [Standard]
  - Color Mode : [Color]
  - Thicken Fine Lines : [Off]
  - Unidirectional Printing : [Off]
  - Highest Quality : [Off]
  - Economy Printing : [Off]
- Page Setup

Automatically selects the best mode for documents that contain a mixture of text, photos, and graphics.

4. In the **A** **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

> Note
> - To import a favorite, click **I** **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click **D** **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.

6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

> Note
> - For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings →P.207 "

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

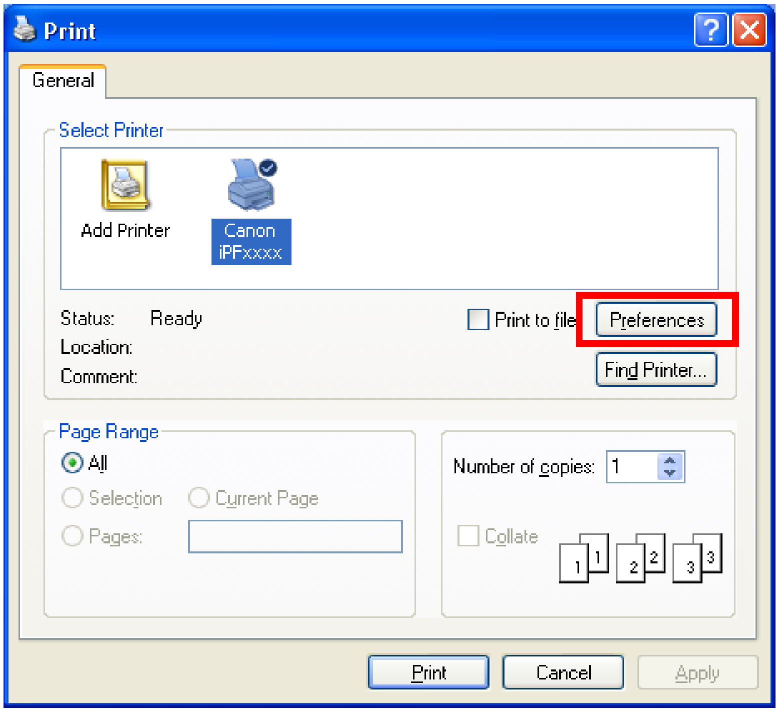
1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

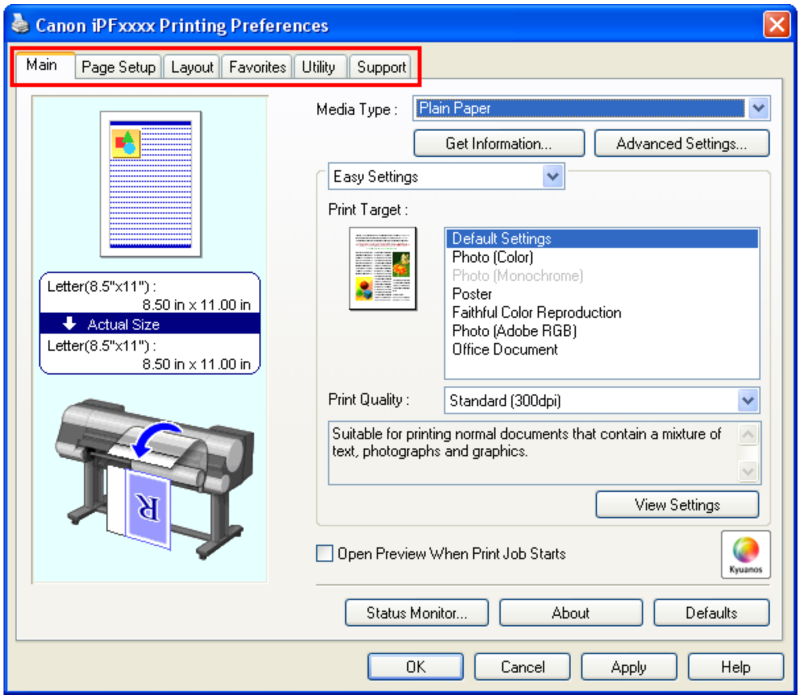
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

- Example: **Print** dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

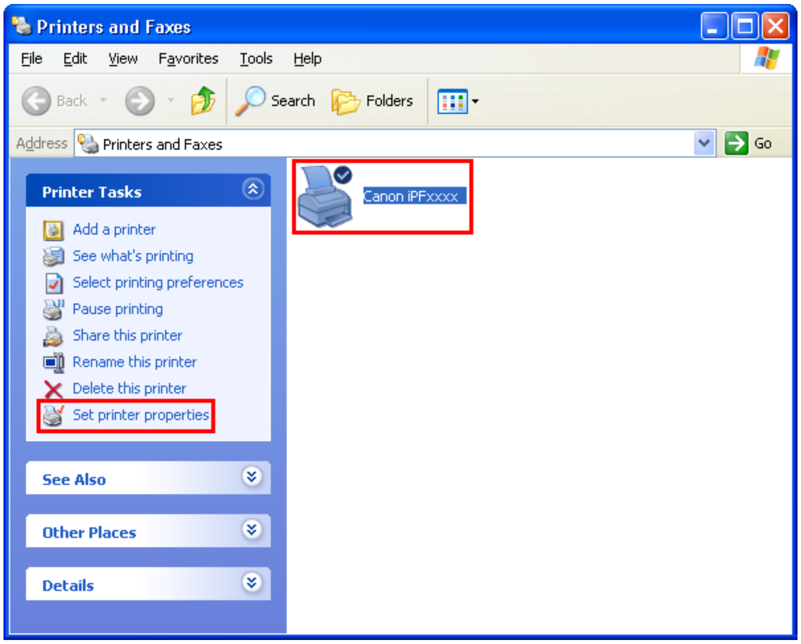
Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  To use the settings continuously in all applications, open the printer driver from the system menu to make the settings.
  See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu →P.213 ".

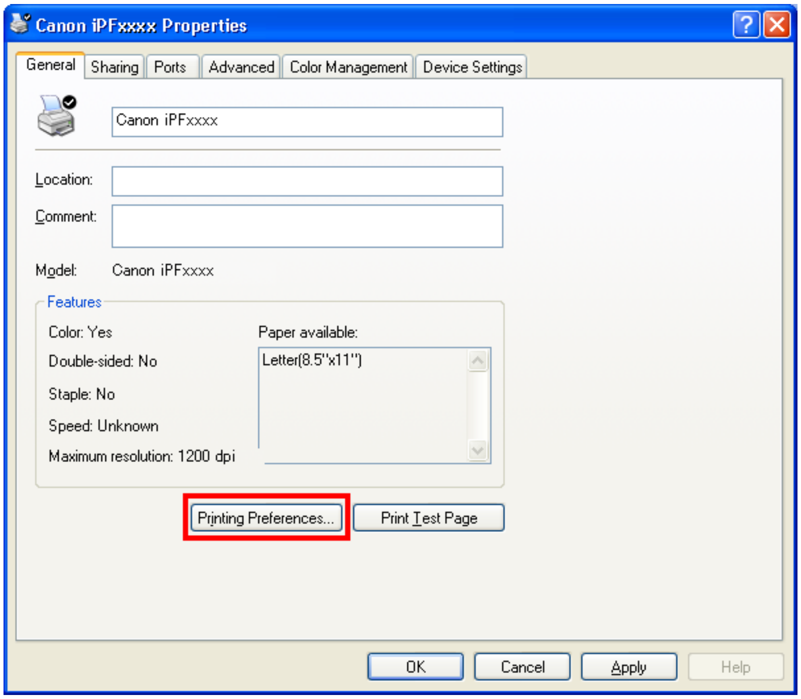
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).

2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Canon iPFxxxx

Location:

Comment:

Model: Canon iPFxxxx

Features

Color: Yes

Double-sided: No

Staple: No

Speed: Unknown

Maximum resolution: 1200 dpi

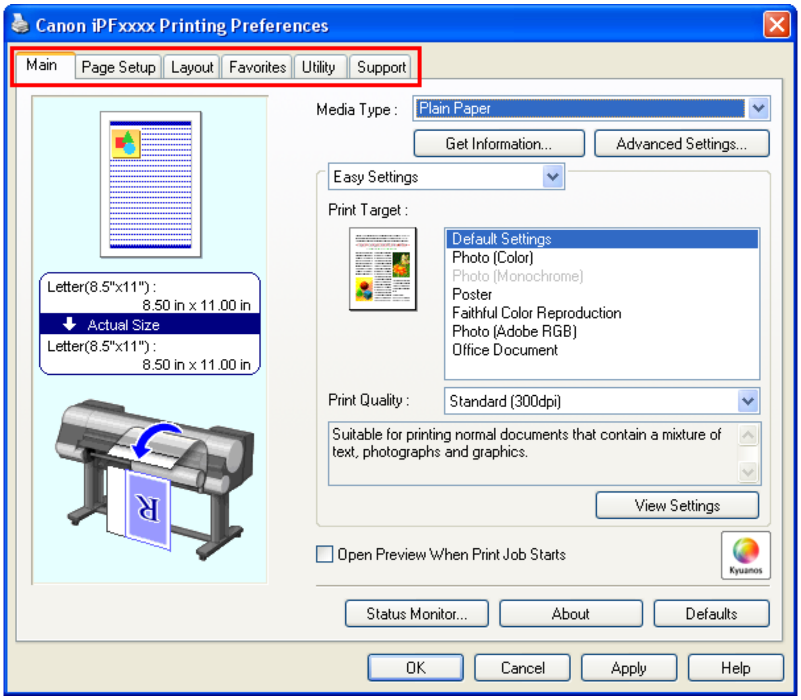
Paper available:

Letter(8.5"x11")

Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver.(See "Device Settings Sheet →P.247 ")

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.211 ".

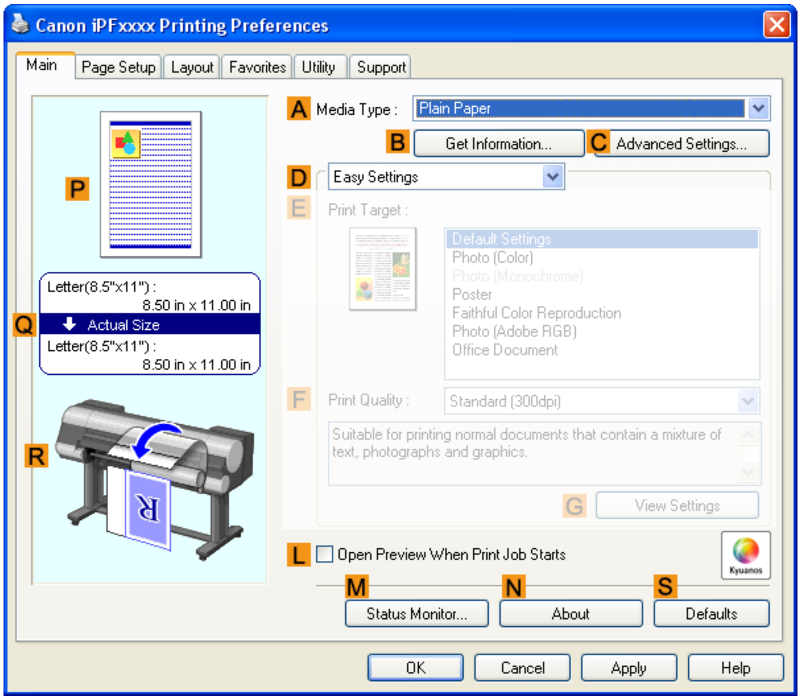
Main Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the particular printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target :
- Default Settings
- Photo (Color)
- Photo (Monochrome)
- Poster
- Faithful Color Reproduction
- Photo (Adobe RGB)
- Office Document

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

• A Media Type

Select the type of paper.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See " Paper Reference Guide ".)

• B Get Information

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

- Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box →P.219

• C Advanced Settings

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.220

• L Open Preview When Print Job Starts

If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.

This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.184

• M Status Monitor

Starts imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

You can check the printer status, job status, and other conditions.

You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings.

For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.

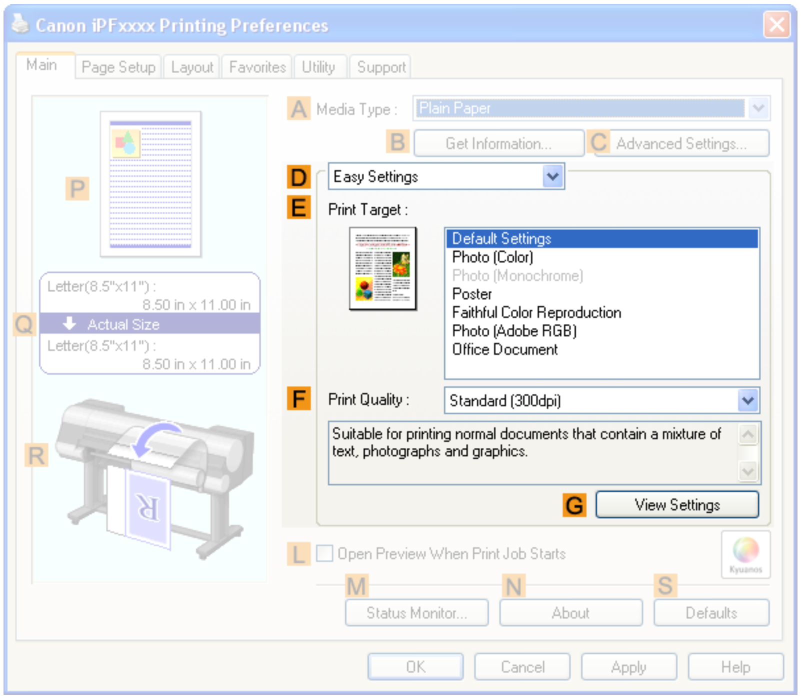
• N About

Displays version information for the printer driver.

- **S Defaults**

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using **Easy Settings**



- **E Print Target**

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- Printing Photos and Images →P.22
- Printing Line Drawings and Text →P.47
- Printing Office Documents →P.38

Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **E Print Target** options may not be available.

- **F Print Quality**

Choose the level of print quality.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

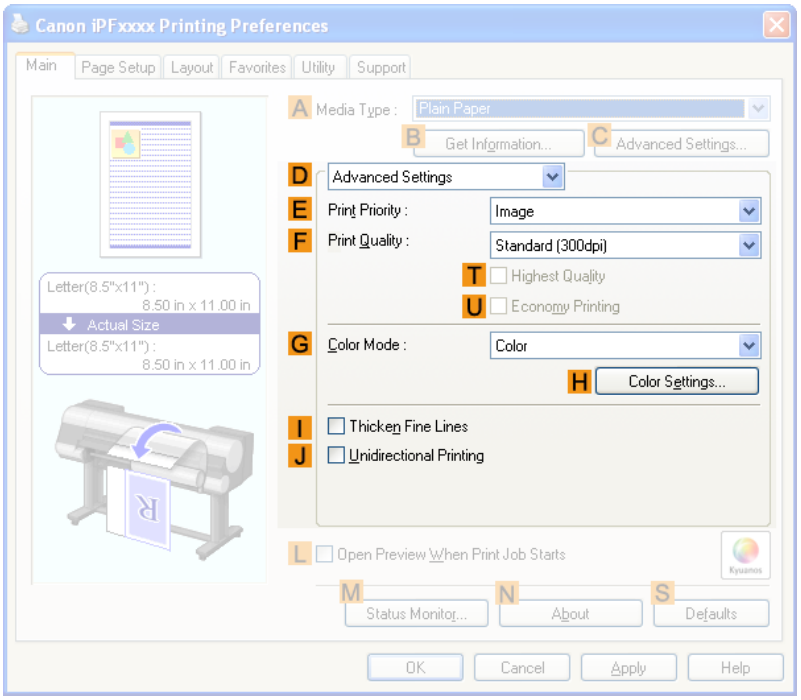
- **G View Settings**

Displays the **E Print Target** setting values.

You can view and change the order of **E Print Target** setting values.

- View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.222

Configuration using **Advanced Settings**



Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

☐ Highest Quality

☐ Economy Printing

Color Mode : Color

☐ Thicken Fine Lines

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

- **E Print Priority**

  Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

  - Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

- **F Print Quality**

  Choose the level of print quality.

  - Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

- **T Highest quality**

  If you select this option, the document will be printed with enhanced quality at the highest resolution. Compared to the other options, more time and ink are consumed in printing, however you will attain print results with the highest quality.

  Note

  - If you set F **Print Quality** to **High**, you can select T **Highest quality**. However, depending on A **Media Type** and E **Print Priority**, you may not be able to select T **Highest quality**.

- **U Economy Printing**

  If you select this option, you can print with less ink consumed. However, print quality is lower than in regular printing.

  Select this option to save ink, such as when printing to check drawings. Depending on the settings of A **Media Type** and F **Print Quality**, you may not be able to select this option.

  Note

  - If you set F **Print Quality** to **Fast**, you can select U **Economy Printing**. However, depending on A **Media Type** and E **Print Priority**, you may not be able to select U **Economy Printing**.

- **G Color Mode**

  Choose the color mode.

  - Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

Note

- Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **G Color Mode** options may not be available.

- **H Color Settings**

  Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

  - Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55

- **I Thicken Fine Lines**

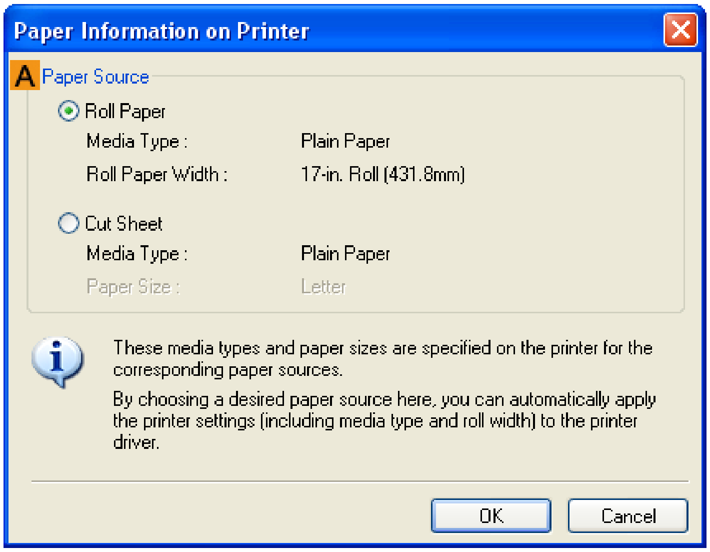
  Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

- **J Unidirectional Printing**

  Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.



Paper Information on Printer

A Paper Source

● Roll Paper

Media Type : Plain Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

○ Cut Sheet

Media Type : Plain Paper

Paper Size : Letter

These media types and paper sizes are specified on the printer for the corresponding paper sources.

By choosing a desired paper source here, you can automatically apply the printer settings (including media type and roll width) to the printer driver.

Note

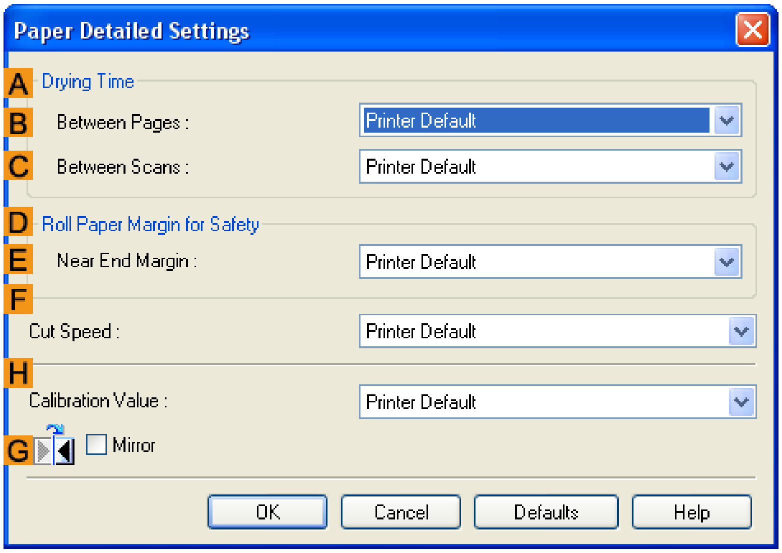
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.(See "Main Sheet →P.215 ")

- **A Paper Source**

  Shows the paper source supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the paper source and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, you can set **Drying Time** for the paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** sheet, etc.
You can display this dialog box by clicking **Settings** of **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet. (Refer to "Main Sheet →P.215 ".)
As for the items for which you can select**Printer Default** in this dialog box, you also can set them from the control panel of the printer. (Refer to "Menu Settings →P.938 ".)



Drying Time

Between Pages : Printer Default

Between Scans : Printer Default

Roll Paper Margin for Safety

Near End Margin : Printer Default

Cut Speed : Printer Default

Calibration Value : Printer Default

☐ Mirror

A Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls.

• B Between Pages

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / **1 min.** / **3 min.** / **5 min.** / **10 min.** / **30 min.** / **60 min.**	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

• C Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
1 sec. / **3 sec.** / **5 sec.** / **7 sec.** / **9 sec.**	The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed. * Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

D Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

- ### E Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
5 mm (0.2 in)	The document is printed in the standard size. * Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

F Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
High Speed	When the **Standard** setting does not result in cutting the surface cleanly, select this.
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

H Calibration Value

You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.

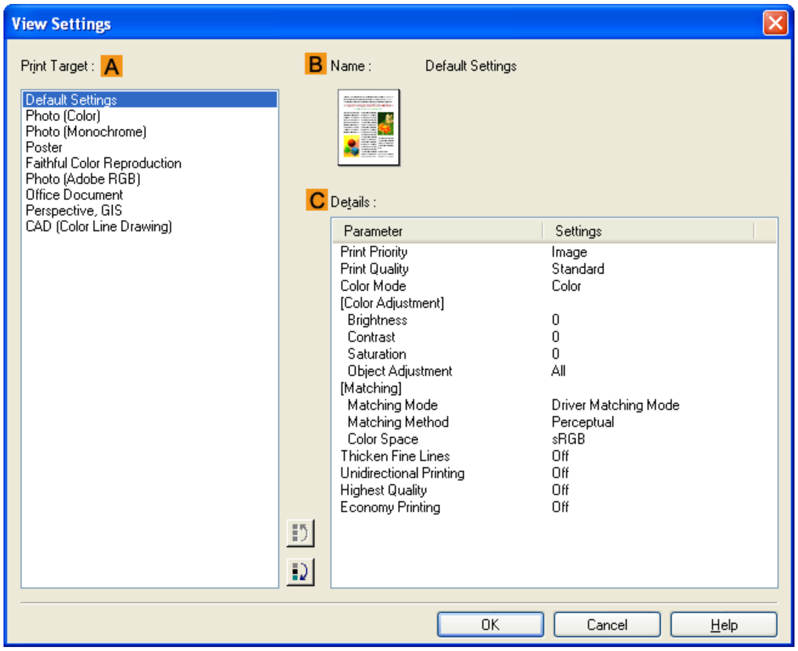
Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Enabled	Print using the calibration results.
Disabled	Print without using the calibration results. Select this to avoid the changing of the color of images during printing by color calibration.

G Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Print Target :

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document
Perspective, GIS
CAD (Color Line Drawing)

Name : Default Settings

Details :

Parameter	Settings
Print Priority	Image
Print Quality	Standard
Color Mode	Color
[Color Adjustment]	
Brightness	0
Contrast	0
Saturation	0
Object Adjustment	All
[Matching]	
Matching Mode	Driver Matching Mode
Matching Method	Perceptual
Color Space	sRGB
Thicken Fine Lines	Off
Unidirectional Printing	Off
Highest Quality	Off
Economy Printing	Off

Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.(See "Main Sheet →P.215 ")

- **A Print Target**

  Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

- **B Name**

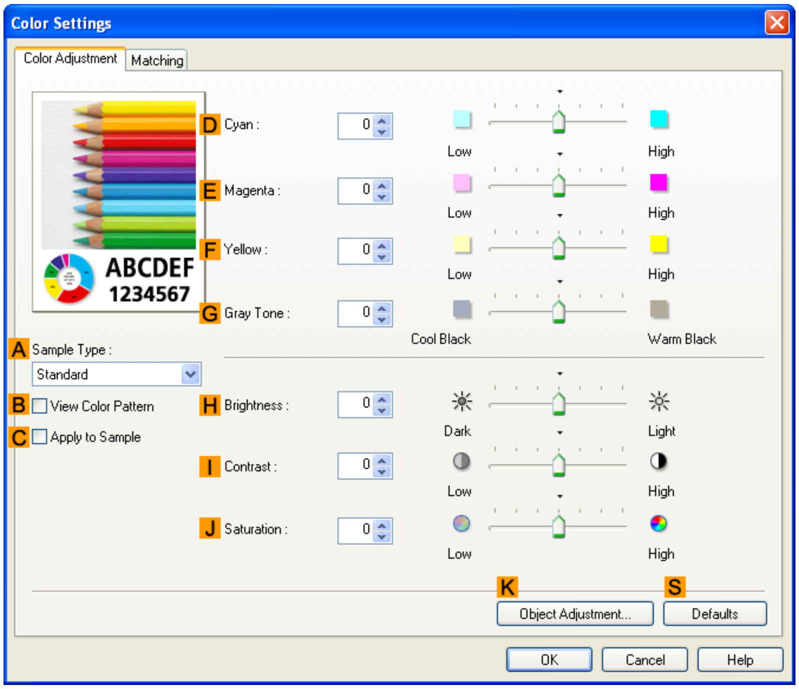
  Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

- **C Details**

  Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target**.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Cyan : 0

Magenta : 0

Yellow : 0

Gray Tone : 0

Sample Type : Standard

☐ View Color Pattern

☐ Apply to Sample

Brightness : 0

Contrast : 0

Saturation : 0

Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.(See "Main Sheet →P.215 ")

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow**

  Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.224

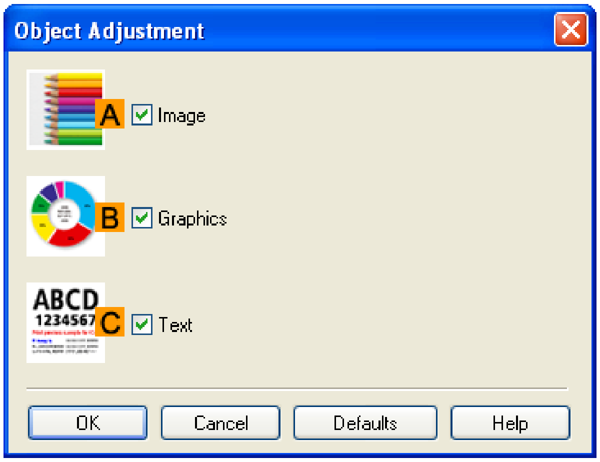
- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

  Note
  - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Object Adjustment dialog box: Color

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

- **A Image**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching Sheet

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Important

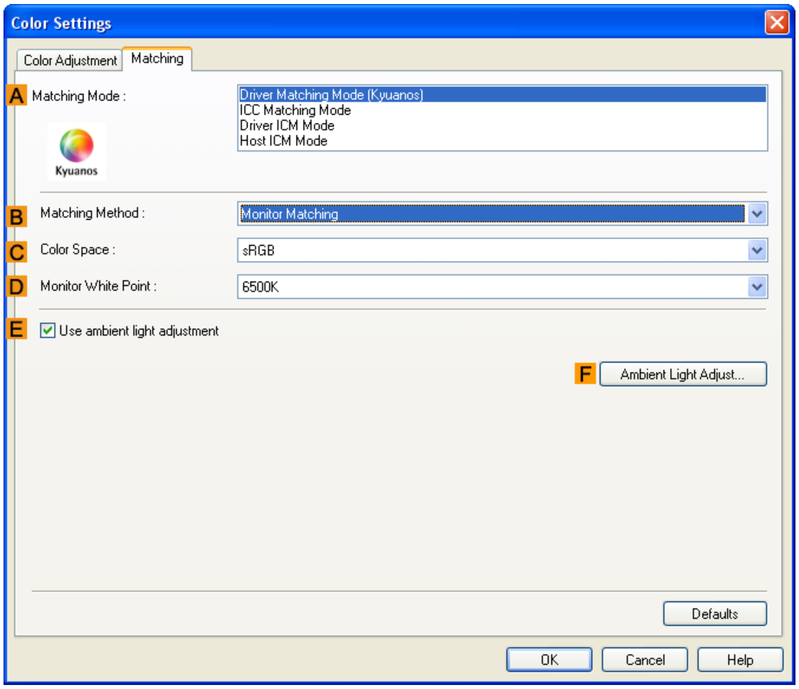
- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** sheet is not displayed.

Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (Refer to "Main Sheet →P.215 ")

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A** **Matching Mode** list.



Color Settings

Color Adjustment | Matching

A Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos) / ICC Matching Mode / Driver ICM Mode / Host ICM Mode

B Matching Method : Monitor Matching

C Color Space : sRGB

D Monitor White Point : 6500K

E ☑ Use ambient light adjustment

- **A** **Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

  Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system.

- **B** **Matching Method**

  Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching Mode**.

- **C** **Color Space**

  Select the applicable color space as desired.

- **D** **Monitor White Point**

  Enter the color temperature set on the monitor.

  Displayed when the **B** **Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching**.

- **E Use ambient light adjustment**

  Select this option for adjustment of colors to suit the ambient light in the viewing environment.

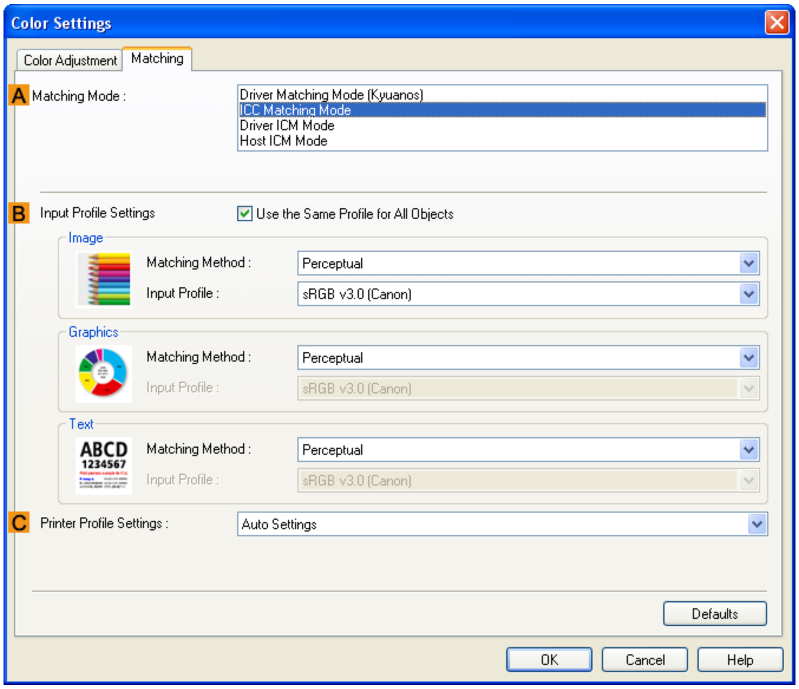
- **F Ambient Light Adjust**

  Click to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing to match the ambient light.

  - Ambient Light Adjust dialog box →P.227

ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode

The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.



Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos) / ICC Matching Mode / Driver ICM Mode / Host ICM Mode

Input Profile Settings ☑ Use the Same Profile for All Objects

Image — Matching Method : Perceptual; Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Graphics — Matching Method : Perceptual; Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Text — Matching Method : Perceptual; Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile Settings : Auto Settings

- **A Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

- **B Input Profile Settings**

  You can select **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**. You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode**.

  To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.

- **C Printer Profile Settings**

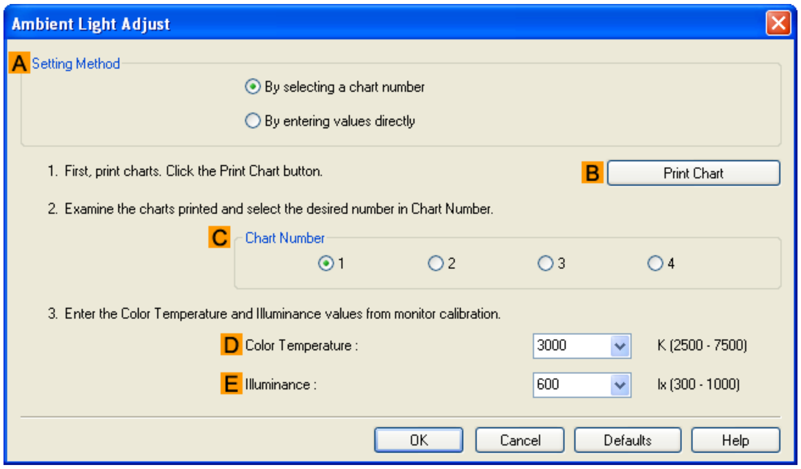
  Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings**.

> Note
>
> - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Ambient Light Adjust dialog box

The **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box is used to select the setting method and to enter and select the information required for the settings.

When you select **By selecting a chart number** in **Setting Method**



Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method

● By selecting a chart number

○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button.

2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

C Chart Number: ● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

D Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

E Illuminance : 600 lx (300 - 1000)

- **A Setting Method**

  You can choose configuration based on the printed **Chart** or based on using the i1 colorimeter.

- **B Print Chart**

  Click to start the **Light Source Check Tool**, for printing **Chart**. The **Light Source Check Tool** must be installed to use this function.

  - Light Source Check Tool →P.229

- **C Chart Number**

  In **Chart**, select the number of the pattern with your desired colors.

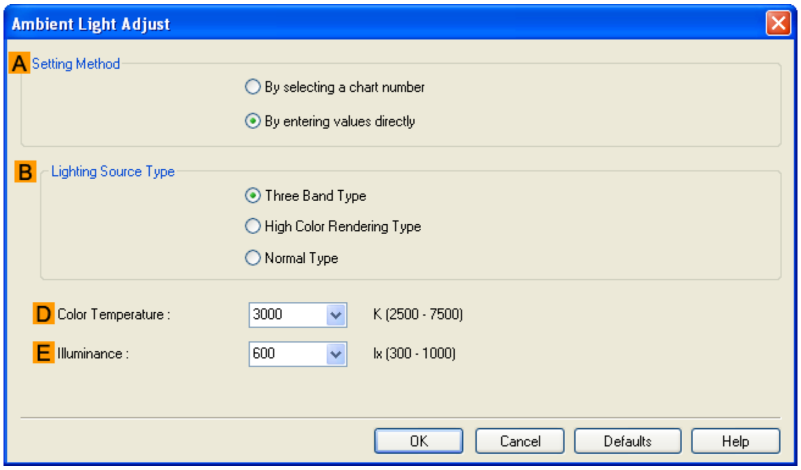
- **D Color Temperature**

  Enter the **D Color Temperature** measured during monitor calibration. Displayed when the **A Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** sheet.

- **E Illuminance**

  Enter the **E Illuminance** measured during monitor calibration. Displayed when the **A Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** sheet.

When you select **By entering values directly** in **Setting Method**



Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method

○ By selecting a chart number

● By entering values directly

B Lighting Source Type

● Three Band Type

○ High Color Rendering Type

○ Normal Type

D Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

E Illuminance : 600 lx (300 - 1000)

- **A Setting Method**

  You can choose configuration based on the printed **Chart** or based on using the i1 colorimeter.

- **B Lighting Source Type**

  Select the light source measured using the i1 colorimeter.

- **D Color Temperature**

  Enter the **Color Temperature** measured using the i1 colorimeter.

- **E Illuminance**

  Enter the **Illuminance** measured using the i1 colorimeter.

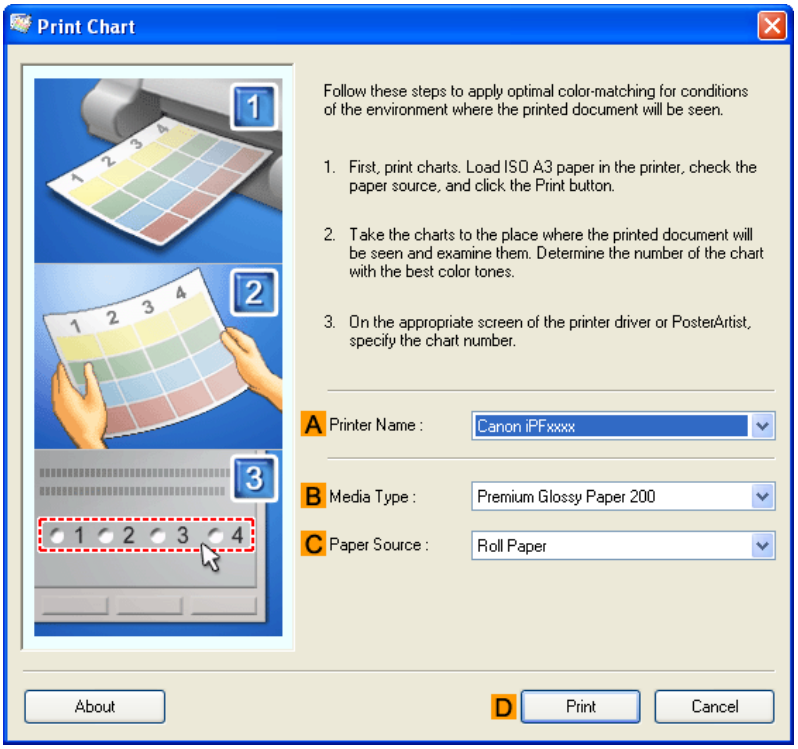
  Displayed when the A **Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** sheet.

Note

- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Light Source Check Tool

The **Light Source Check Tool** enables you to print **Chart**.



Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.

1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the paper source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver or PosterArtist, specify the chart number.

A Printer Name : Canon iPFxxxx

B Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

C Paper Source : Roll Paper

- **A Printer Name**

  The printer name is displayed here.

- **B Media Type**

  Select the paper type.(See "Types of Paper →P.774 ")

- **C Paper Source**

  Choose the paper source, as desired.

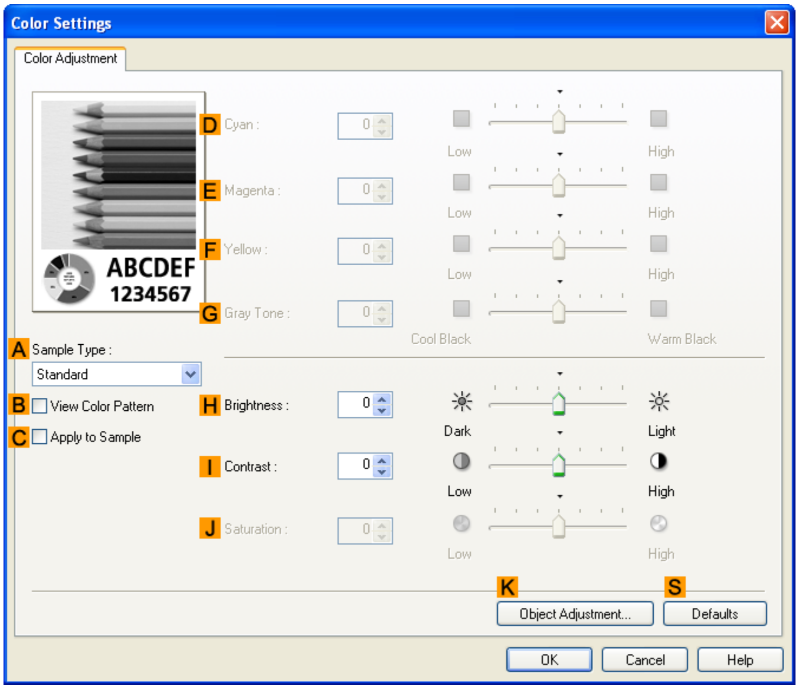
  Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **B Media Type** in the **Main** sheet.

- **D Print**

  Click to print the **Chart**.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Cyan : 0
Magenta : 0
Yellow : 0
Gray Tone : 0
Sample Type : Standard
☐ View Color Pattern
☐ Apply to Sample
Brightness : 0
Contrast : 0
Saturation : 0

Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.(See "Main Sheet →P.215 ")

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow**

  Not available.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Not available.

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

  Not available.

- **K Object Adjustment**

  Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.231

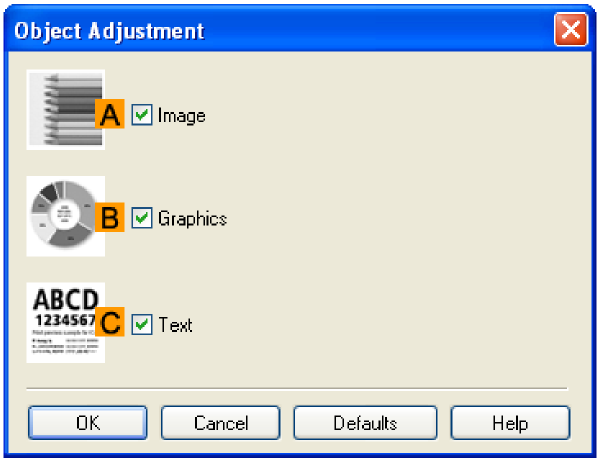
- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

> Note
>
> - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



> Note
>
> - To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

- **A Image**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

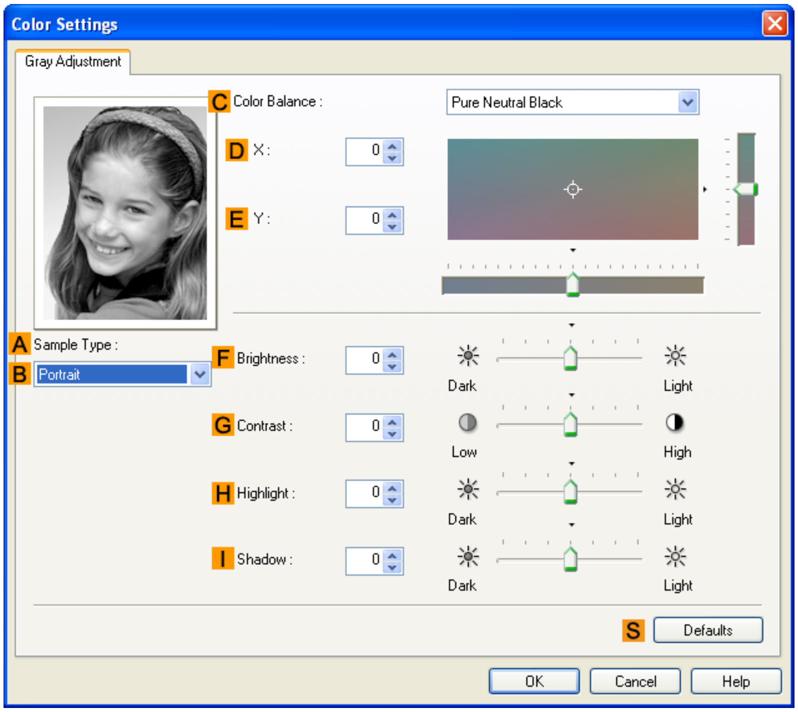
  Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

  Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Gray Adjustment Sheet

On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



Color Balance : Pure Neutral Black

X : 0

Y : 0

Sample Type : Portrait

Brightness : 0

Contrast : 0

Highlight : 0

Shadow : 0

Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, on theMain Sheet →P.215 , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

• A Sample Type

The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.

• B Sample List

Select a sample image, as desired.

• C Color Balance

Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.

• D X / E Y

Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

You can click the arrows by the D **X** (horizontal) and E **Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

• F Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **G Contrast**

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **G Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **G Contrast** softens images.

- **H Highlight**

Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **I Shadow**

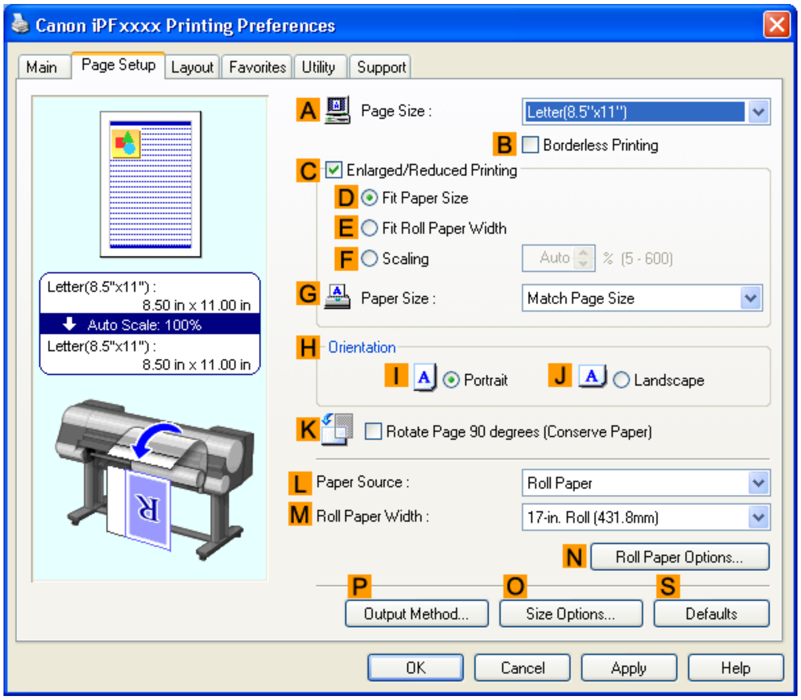
Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

- **S Defaults**

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Setup Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

B ☐ Borderless Printing

C ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

H Orientation

I ● Portrait

J ○ Landscape

K ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

L Paper Source : Roll Paper

M Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Auto Scale: 100%

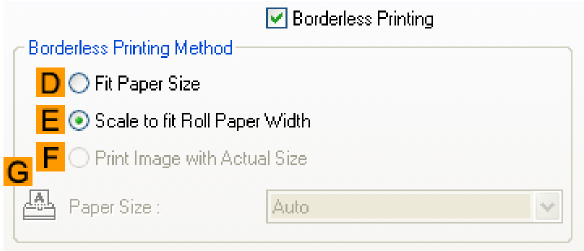
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

- **A Page Size**

Select the page size as specified in the source application.

For details on available page sizes, see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "

• B Borderless Printing



☑ Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing Method

D ○ Fit Paper Size

E ● Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Print Image with Actual Size

G Paper Size : Auto

Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the L **Paper Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size →P.107
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.114
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size →P.100

• D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

• E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

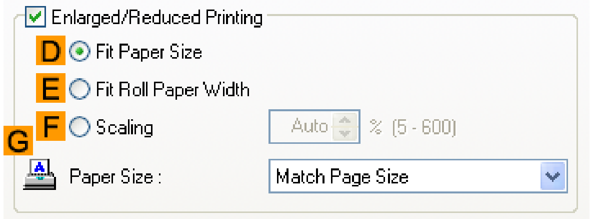
• F Print Image with Actual Size

Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the A **Page Size** list.

• G Paper Size

Available when D **Fit Paper Size** is selected.
Choose the size of the paper you will print on.
For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "
Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.

• C Enlarged/Reduced Printing



☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

D ● Fit Paper Size

E ○ Fit Roll Paper Width

F ○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

G Paper Size : Match Page Size

Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size →P.73
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.79
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value →P.85

• D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

• E Fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

- **F Scaling**

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of **5–600.**

- **G Paper Size**

Choose the size of the paper you will print on.

For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "

- **H Orientation**

Choose the printing orientation.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation →P.190

- **K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**

Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees →P.172

- **L Paper Source**

Choose the feed source, as desired.

Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.

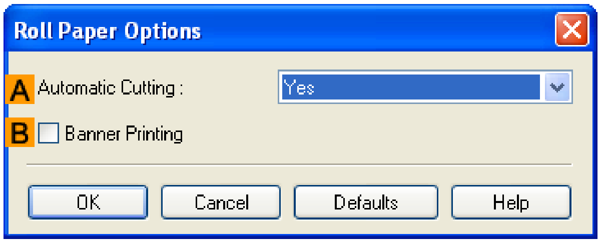
- **M Roll Paper Width**

Choose the roll width.

For details on available roll widths, see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "

- **N Roll Paper Options**

Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



Automatic Cutting : Yes

Under **A Automatic Cutting**, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline**.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing →P.196

Select **B Banner Printing** when printing multiple pages continuously.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously →P.144

- **P Output Method**

Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.

- Output Method dialog box →P.236

- **O Size Options**

Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.

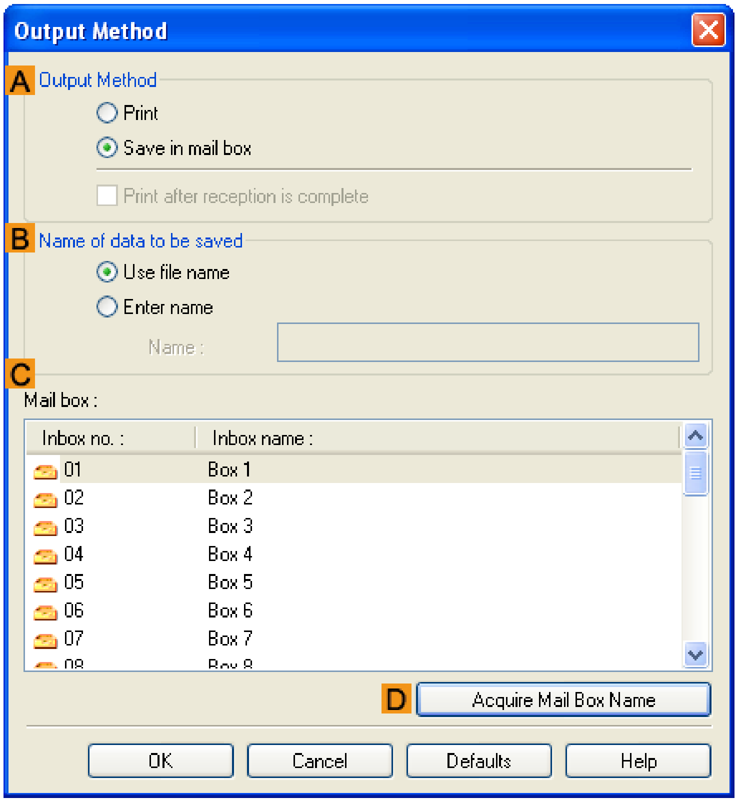
- Paper Size Options Dialog Box →P.237

- **S Defaults**

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Output Method dialog box

The **Output Method** dialog box allows you to select the **Output Method** and set the save settings when saving to the box.



Output Method

○ Print

● Save in mail box

☐ Print after reception is complete

Name of data to be saved

● Use file name

○ Enter name

Name :

Mail box :

Inbox no. :	Inbox name :
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8

Note

- To display the **Output Method** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Output Method**. (Refer to "Page Setup Sheet →P.233 ")

- **A Output Method**

  If **Print** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk after printing has finished.

  If **Save in mail box** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.

  If **Print after reception is complete** is checked, the print job is first saved completely on the printer hard disk before printing begins.

  These can be selected as **Print** options.

- **B Name of data to be saved**

  To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.

  Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.

- **C Mail box**

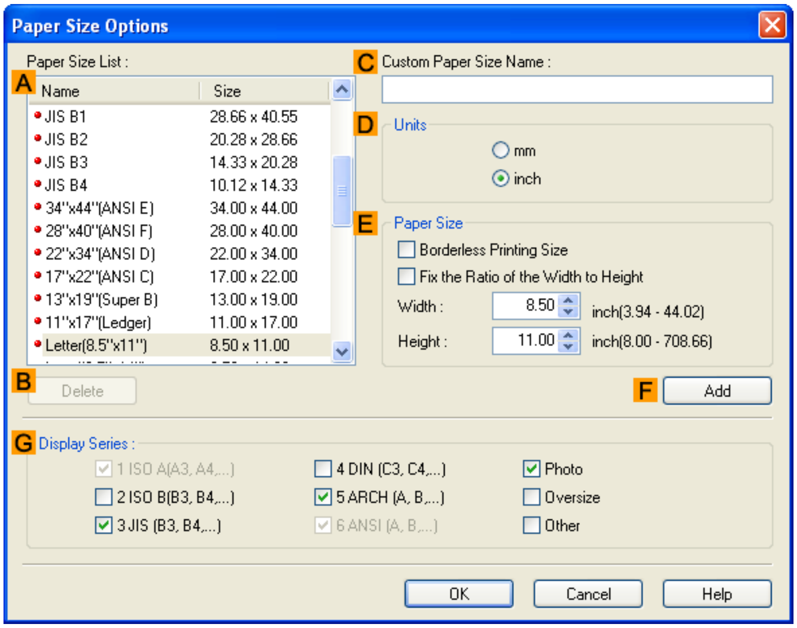
  Displays a list of mail boxes. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box from the list.

- **D Acquire Mail Box Name**

  When this is clicked, the box name acquired from the printer main unit is displayed in **Mail box**.

Paper Size Options Dialog Box

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own Custom Paper Size. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.



Paper Size List :

Name	Size
JIS B1	28.66 x 40.55
JIS B2	20.28 x 28.66
JIS B3	14.33 x 20.28
JIS B4	10.12 x 14.33
34"x44"(ANSI E)	34.00 x 44.00
28"x40"(ANSI F)	28.00 x 40.00
22"x34"(ANSI D)	22.00 x 34.00
17"x22"(ANSI C)	17.00 x 22.00
13"x19"(Super B)	13.00 x 19.00
11"x17"(Ledger)	11.00 x 17.00
Letter(8.5"x11")	8.50 x 11.00

Custom Paper Size Name :

Units
○ mm
● inch

Paper Size
☐ Borderless Printing Size
☐ Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height
Width : 8.50 inch(3.94 - 44.02)
Height : 11.00 inch(8.00 - 708.66)

Display Series :
☑ 1 ISO A(A3, A4,...)
☐ 2 ISO B(B3, B4,...)
☑ 3 JIS (B3, B4,...)
☐ 4 DIN (C3, C4,...)
☑ 5 ARCH (A, B,...)
☑ 6 ANSI (A, B,...)
☑ Photo
☐ Oversize
☐ Other

Note

- To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**.(See "Page Setup Sheet →P.233 ")

• A Paper Size List

Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.

• B Delete

Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the A **Paper Size List**, as needed.

However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations.

- If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected.
- If an oversized paper size is selected.
- If a paper size marked with a red circle is selected.

• C Custom Paper Size Name

You can name Custom Paper Size as desired.

• D Units

Specify the desired unit of measure for the Custom Paper Size height and width.

• E Paper Size

Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.

• F Add

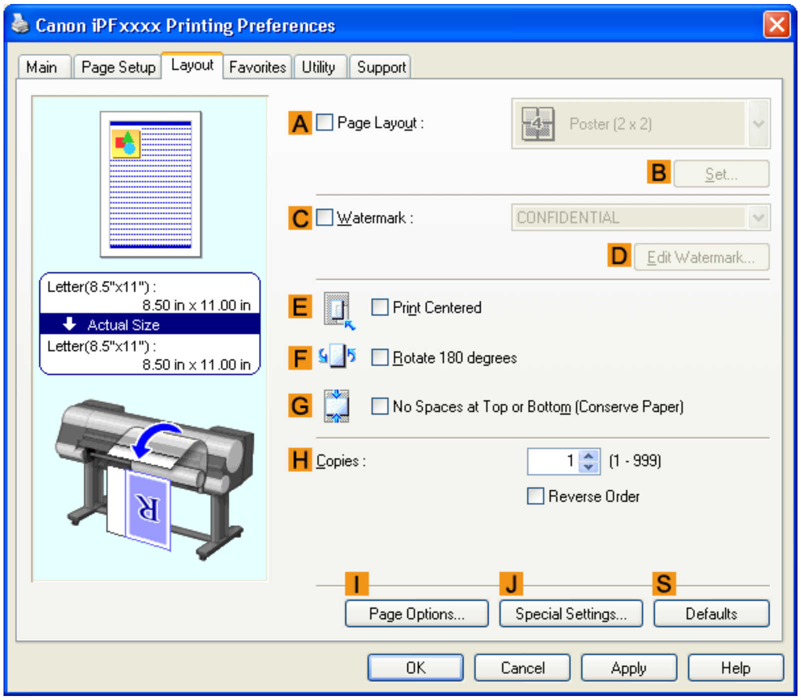
Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.

- **G Display Series**

  You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size**, **Paper Size**, and **Paper Size List**.

Layout Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A ☐ Page Layout : Poster (2 x 2)

C ☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

E ☐ Print Centered

F ☐ Rotate 180 degrees

G ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

H Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

- **A Page Layout**

  Activate this setting to select a particular page layout.

  - Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet →P.149
  - Printing Posters in Sections →P.156
  - Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other →P.139
  - Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals →P.44

- **B Set**

  Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings.

  - **Page Layout Printing**
  - **Pages to Print**
  - **Free Layout Settings**

- **C Watermark**

  Activating this option makes two settings available, **Watermarks** and **D Edit Watermark**.

  - Printing With Watermarks →P.186

- **Watermarks**

  Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.

- **D Edit Watermark**

  Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.

- **E Print Centered**

  Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper.

  - Printing Originals Centered on Rolls →P.160
  - Printing Originals Centered on Sheets →P.166

- **F Rotate 180 degrees**

  Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.

- **G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**

  Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

  - Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins →P.178

- **H Copies**

  Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of **1–999.**

- **Reverse Order**

  Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

- **I Page Options**

  Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.

  - Page Options Dialog Box →P.240

- **J Special Settings**

  If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.

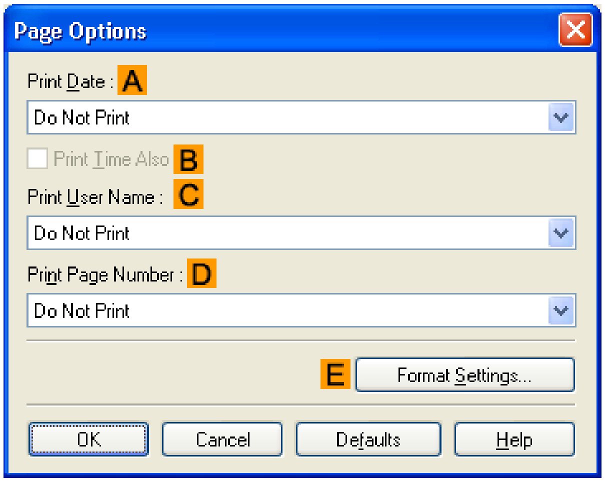
  - Special Settings Dialog Box →P.241

- **S Defaults**

  Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Options Dialog Box

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Print Date : Do Not Print

☐ Print Time Also

Print User Name : Do Not Print

Print Page Number : Do Not Print

Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**.(See "Layout Sheet →P.238 ")

- **A Print Date**

Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select **B Print Time Also**.

- **C Print User Name**

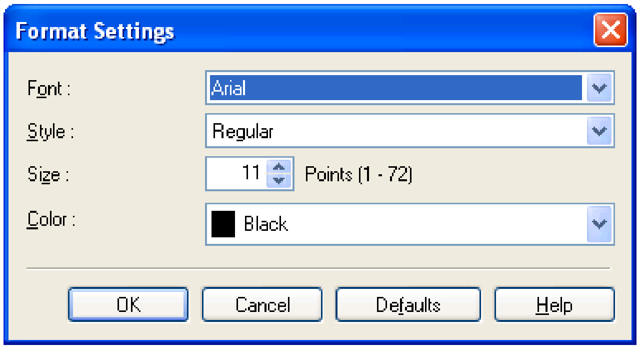
Select where the user name is printed, as desired.

- **D Print Page Number**

Select where the page number is printed, as desired.

- **E Format Settings**

Click to display the **Format Settings** dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings.



Font : Arial

Style : Regular

Size : 11 Points (1 - 72)

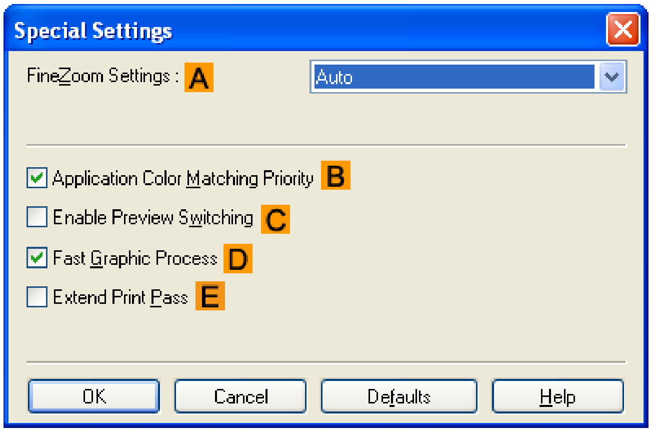
Color : Black

Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Special Settings Dialog Box

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



Special Settings

FineZoom Settings : A Auto

☑ Application Color Matching Priority B

☐ Enable Preview Switching C

☑ Fast Graphic Process D

☐ Extend Print Pass E

Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**.(See "Layout Sheet →P.238 ")

• A FineZoom Settings

This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto**. If documents are not printed correctly on large-format paper, it may help to select **Yes**, and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No**.

• B Application Color Matching Priority

You can give applications priority in color management.

• C Enable Preview Switching

When this option is selected, PageComposer starts if you print with **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** selected on the **Main** sheet.

• D Fast Graphic Process

If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.

Note

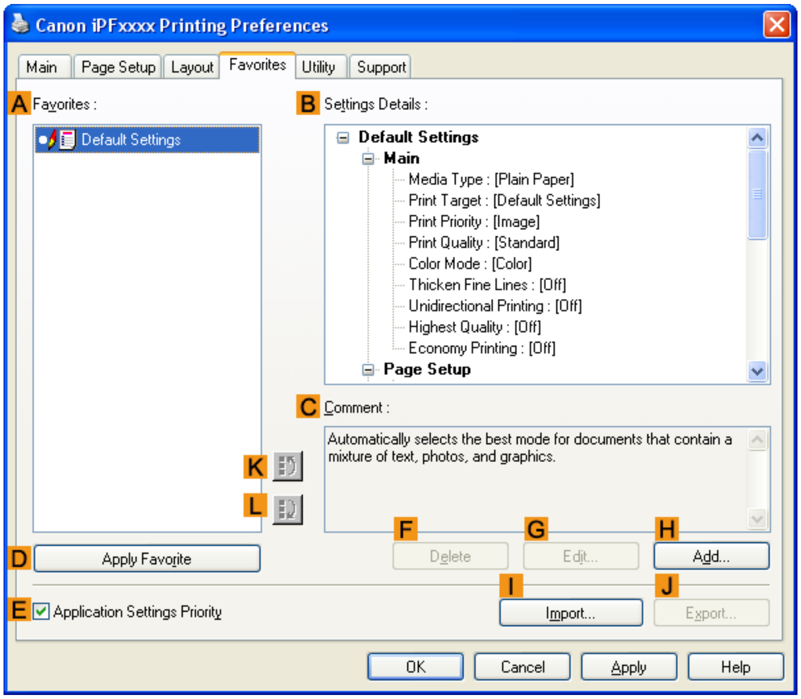
- This function cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

• E Extend print pass

If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Favorites Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Default Settings
- Main
  - Media Type : [Plain Paper]
  - Print Target : [Default Settings]
  - Print Priority : [Image]
  - Print Quality : [Standard]
  - Color Mode : [Color]
  - Thicken Fine Lines : [Off]
  - Unidirectional Printing : [Off]
  - Highest Quality : [Off]
  - Economy Printing : [Off]
- Page Setup

Automatically selects the best mode for documents that contain a mixture of text, photos, and graphics.

☑ Application Settings Priority

• A Favorites

Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites.

- Using Favorites →P.196

• B Settings Details

Displays details of the favorite selected in the A **Favorites**.

• C Comment

Displays notes registered in the favorite.

• D Apply Favorite

Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the A **Favorites**.

• E Application Settings Priority

Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the A **Favorites**, when clicking D **Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.

• F Delete

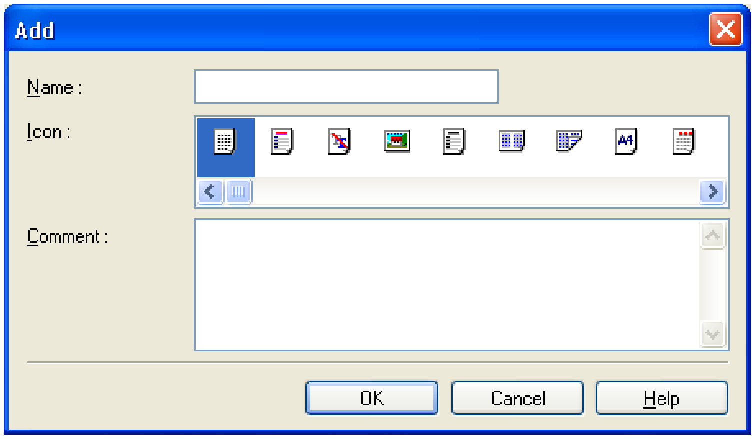
Click to delete the selected favorite from the A **Favorites** list.

• G Edit

Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the A **Favorites** list.

- **H Add**

Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite.



- **I Import**

Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.

- **J Export**

Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

- **K Up**

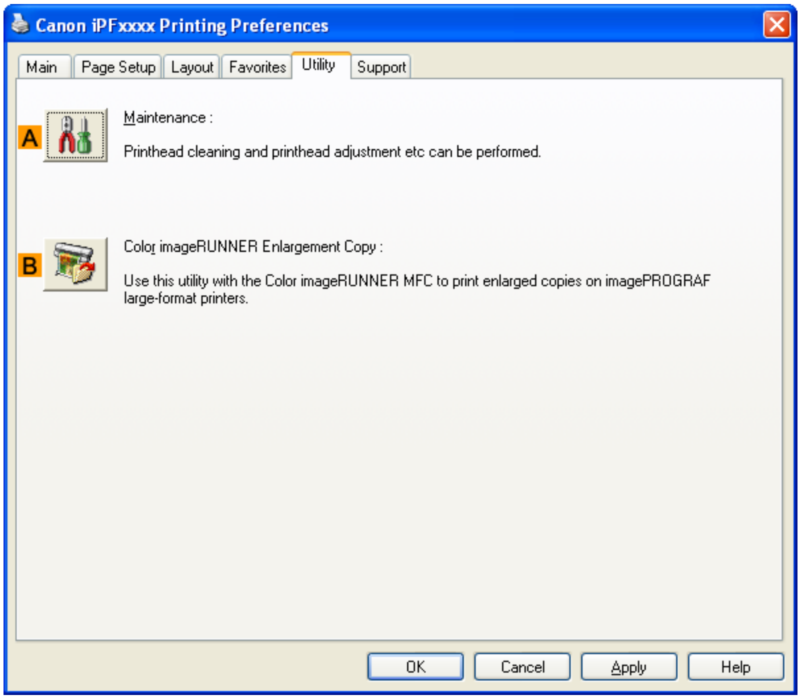
Click to move the selected favorite up in the **A** **Favorites** list.

- **L Down**

Click to move the selected favorite down in the **A** **Favorites** list.

Utility Sheet

The following items can be executed on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



Maintenance :

Printhead cleaning and printhead adjustment etc can be performed.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy :

Use this utility with the Color imageRUNNER MFC to print enlarged copies on imagePROGRAF large-format printers.

• A Maintenance

Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check
- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
- Head alignment adjustment
- Feed amount adjustment

• B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders.

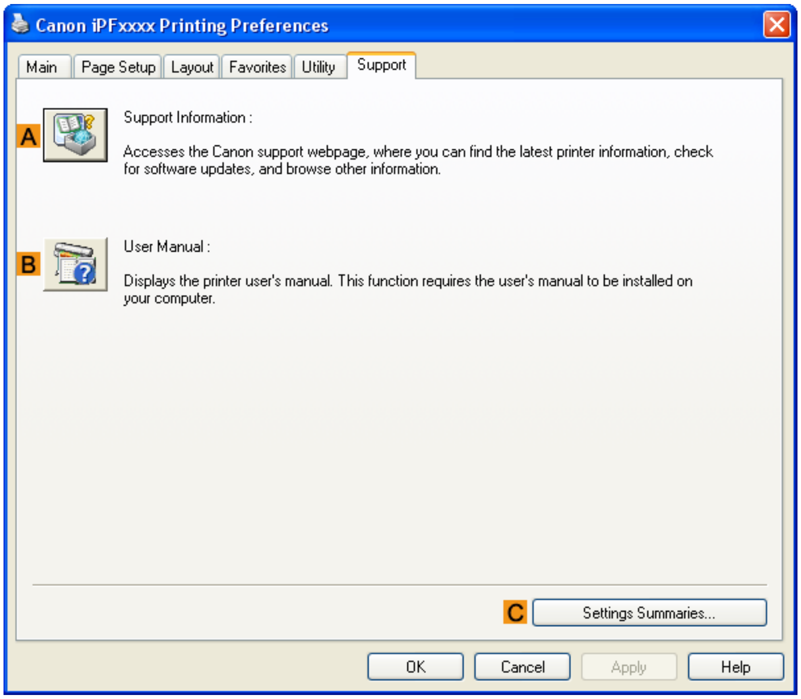
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER →P.304

For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.292 .

Note
- This function is not available on 64-bit version of Windows.

Support Sheet

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Support Information :

Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

User Manual :

Displays the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

- ### A Support Information

  Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

- ### B User Manual

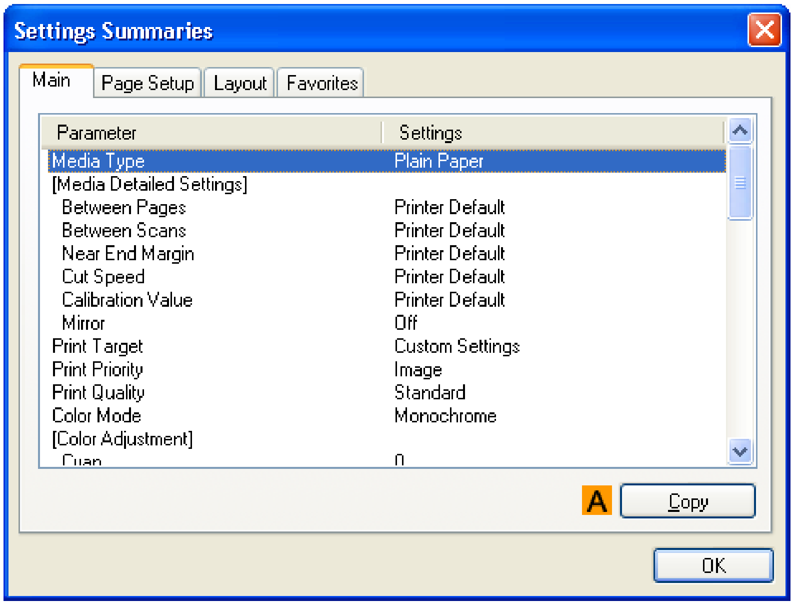
  Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

- ### C Settings Summaries

  Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

Settings Summaries Dialog Box

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



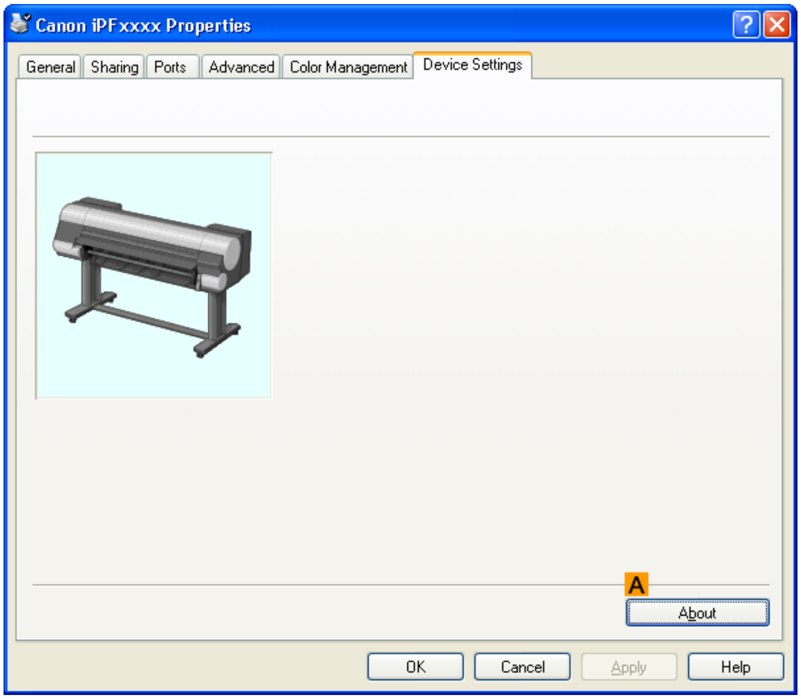
Parameter	Settings
Media Type	Plain Paper
[Media Detailed Settings]	
Between Pages	Printer Default
Between Scans	Printer Default
Near End Margin	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off
Print Target	Custom Settings
Print Priority	Image
Print Quality	Standard
Color Mode	Monochrome
[Color Adjustment]	
Cyan	0

- **A Copy**

  Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

Device Settings Sheet

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



- **A About**

  You can display version information for the printer driver.

Preview

The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Preview in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  - 32 bit edition Windows OS
    Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7
  - 64 bit edition Windows OS
    Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7

  Note

  - For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Preview

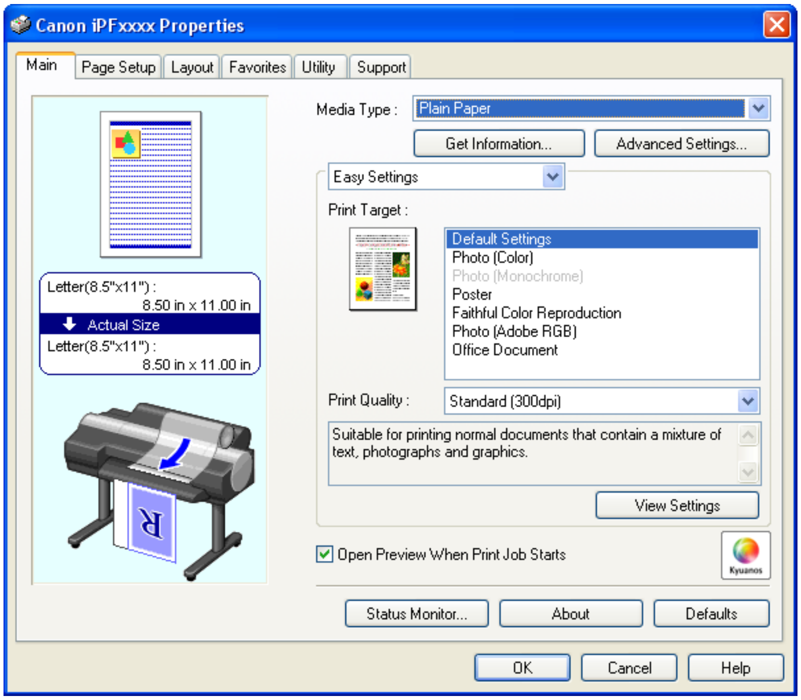
Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

1. Start the apllication software which you use.

2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

> Note
> - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. On the **Main** sheet, click on the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
   Click the **OK** button to save the settings.



Canon iPFxxxx Properties

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

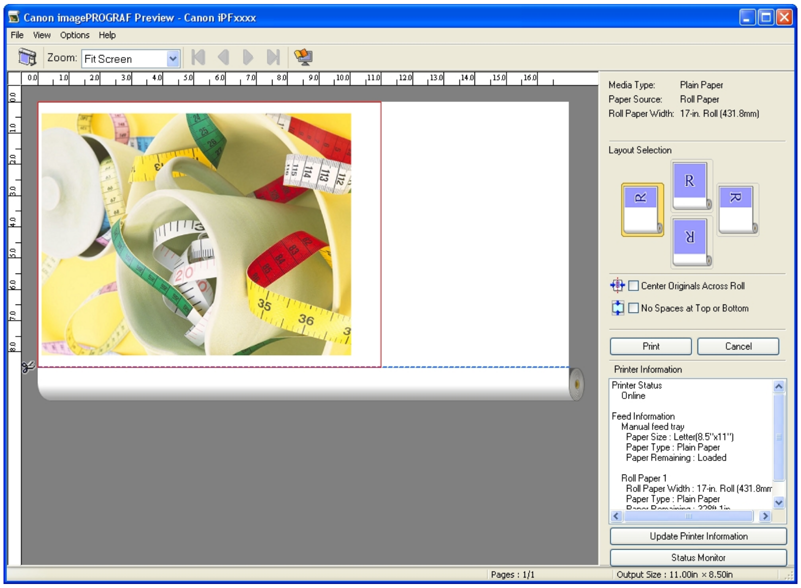
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☑ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

> Note
> - Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. On the **Print** dialog box in the apllication software, click the **Print** button.

5. Preview main window is displayed.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

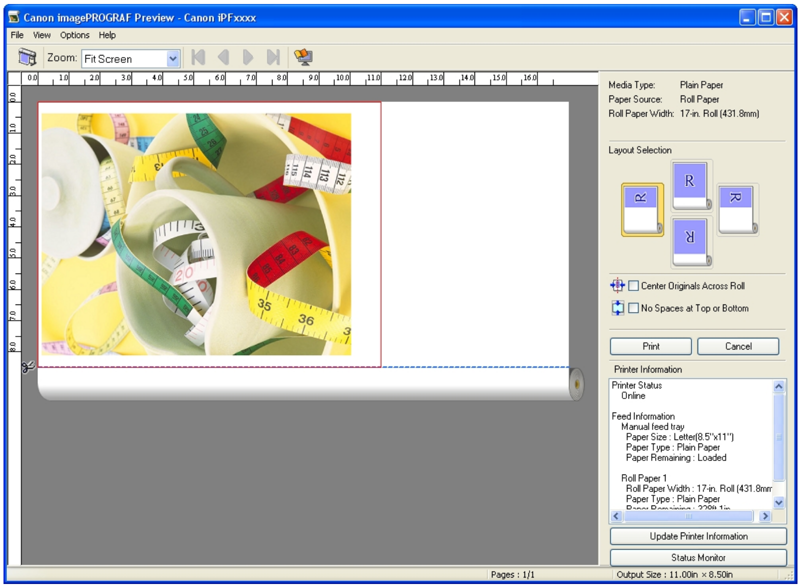
Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, preview and dialog area and status bar.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

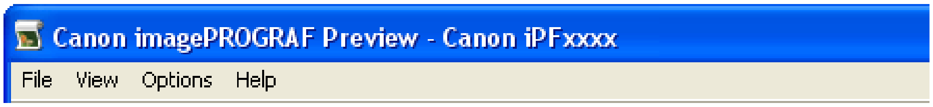
Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

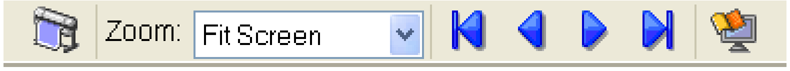
- **Menu Bar**

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



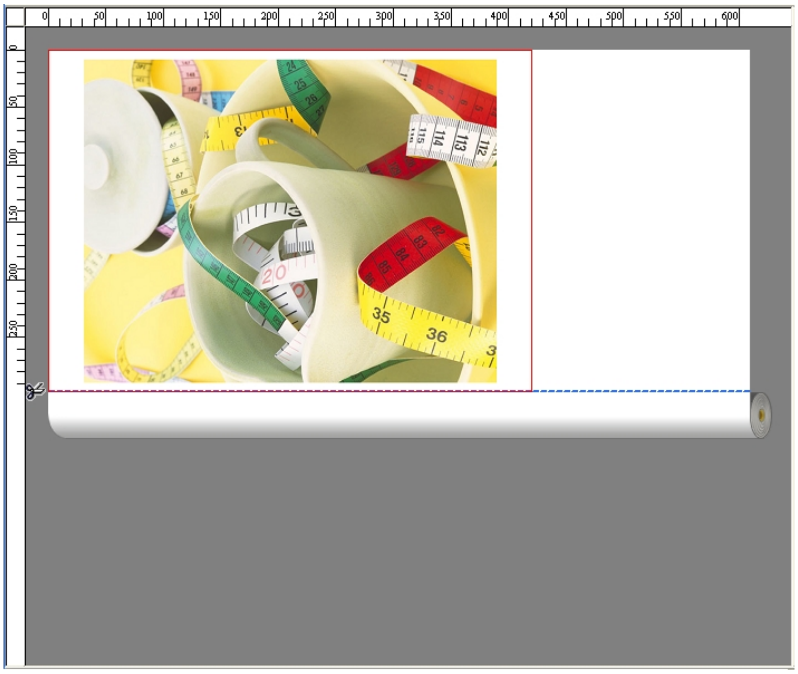
- **Tool Bar**

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



- **Preview Area**

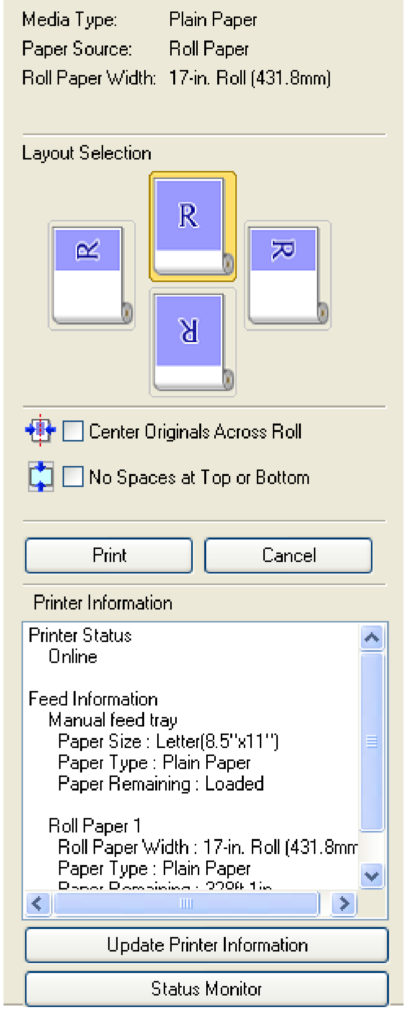
You can check the settings you made in this area.



- **Dialog Area**

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.

For more information about Dialog Area, see "Dialog Area." →P.253



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Layout Selection
R
R
R
R
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
Print
Cancel
Printer Information

Printer Status
Online

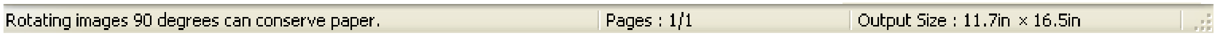
Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Update Printer Information
Status Monitor

- Status Bar

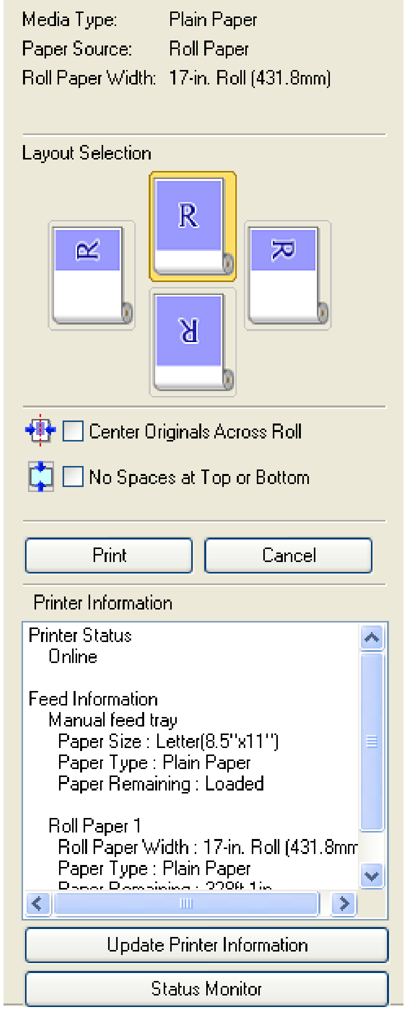
This shows the message, **Pages** and **Output Size**.



Rotating images 90 degrees can conserve paper. | Pages : 1/1 | Output Size : 11.7in × 16.5in

Dialog Area

You can select the layout and print on the center.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Layout Selection
R
R
R
R
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
Print
Cancel
Printer Information

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8m
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Update Printer Information
Status Monitor

- **Media Type / Paper Source /Paper Size**

  You can confirm the information that is set.

- **Layout Selection**

  You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

  For more information about **Layout Selection**, see "Printing with Selecting the Layout." →P.257

- **Center Originals Across Roll**

  You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

  For more information about **Center Originals Across Roll**, see "Print on the Center." →P.259

> Note
> - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

  You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

  For more information about **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**, see "Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom." →P.260

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Print** Button

Click the button to start printing.

- **Cancel** Button

Click the button to stop printing.

- **Printer Information**

You can confirm the information acquired from the printer.

- **Update Printer Information** Button

Click the button to update the printer information with connecting to the printer.

- **Status Monitor** Button

Click the button to start **Status Monitor**.

Enlarge/Reduce the screen display

You can enlarge or reduce the screen display when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
Fit Screen	Display all.
Fit to Width	Display to the width of the paper.
Reduce	Display at half of the standard size.
Standard	Display at the standard size.
Enlarge	Display with the double of the standard size.
Enlarge More	Display with the triple of the standard size.

Note

- This item can be selected even if you have clicked the ▼ button in the toolbar **Zoom**.

Moving a Page

You can move a page to display when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
First Page	Go to the first page.
Previous Page	Go to the previous page.
Next Page	Go to the next page.
Last Page	Go to the last page.
Go To Page	Go to the specified page.

Note

- You can also move a page by clicking ⏮ ◀ ▶ ⏭ on the tool bar.

Using the ruler

You can confirm the layout with using the ruler.

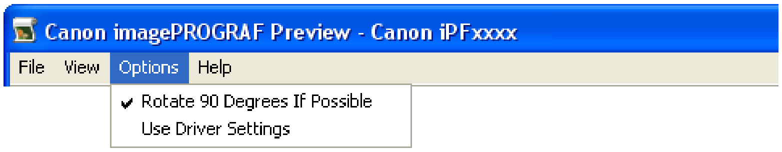
- Switching the ruler Show/Hide
  In the **View** menu, select **Ruler** to switch the ruler Show/Hide.

- Changing the ruler unit
  You can set the ruler unit when you select **Units** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
mm	Use mm as the ruler unit.
inch	Use inches as the ruler unit.

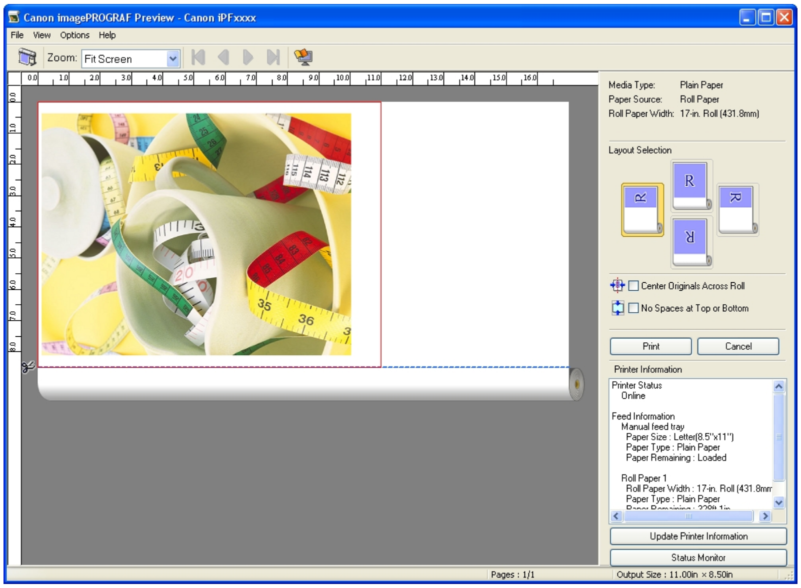
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees

You can select **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or **Use Driver Settings** from the **Options** menu.


Canon imagePROGRAF Preview - Canon iPFxxxx
File
View
Options
Help
✓ Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible
Use Driver Settings

Setting	Details
Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible	Rotates pages in portrait orientation 90 degrees before printing. Pages are only rotated if they can fit lengthwise across the roll.
Use Driver Settings	Follows printer driver settings when determining whether to rotate pages.

Selecting **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or Placing a checkmark for **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** on the printer driver



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

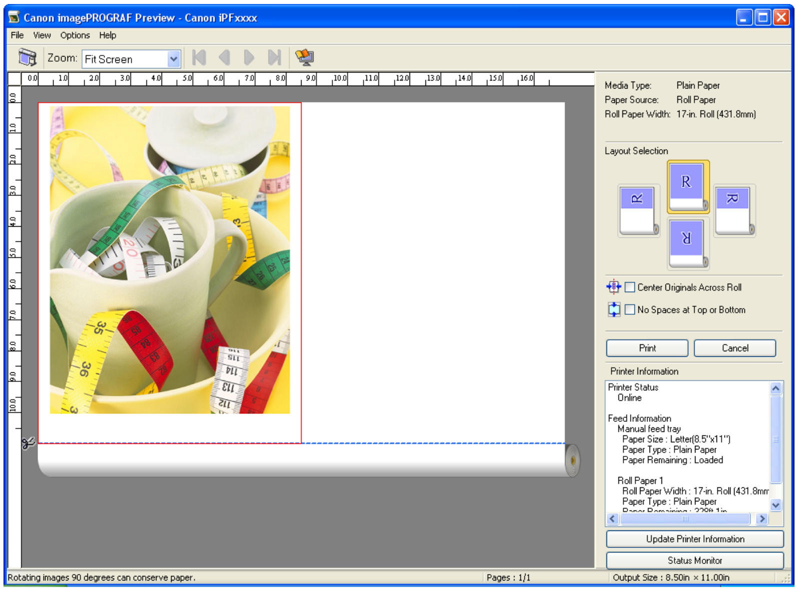
Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Pages : 1/1
Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Selecting **Use Driver Settings**



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

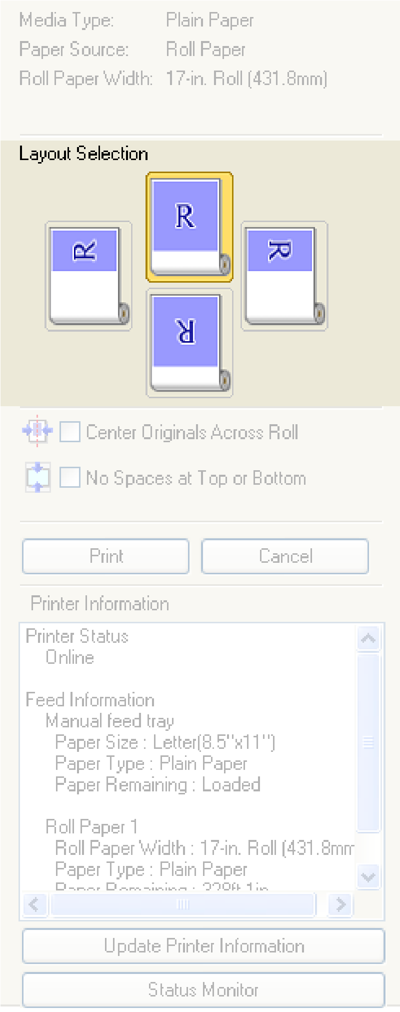
Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Rotating images 90 degrees can conserve paper.
Pages : 1/1
Output Size : 8.50in × 11.00in

Printing with Selecting the Layout

You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

1. In **Layout Selection**, click the layout button to use.



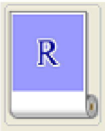
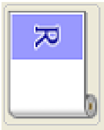
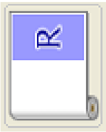
Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

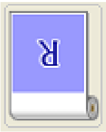
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

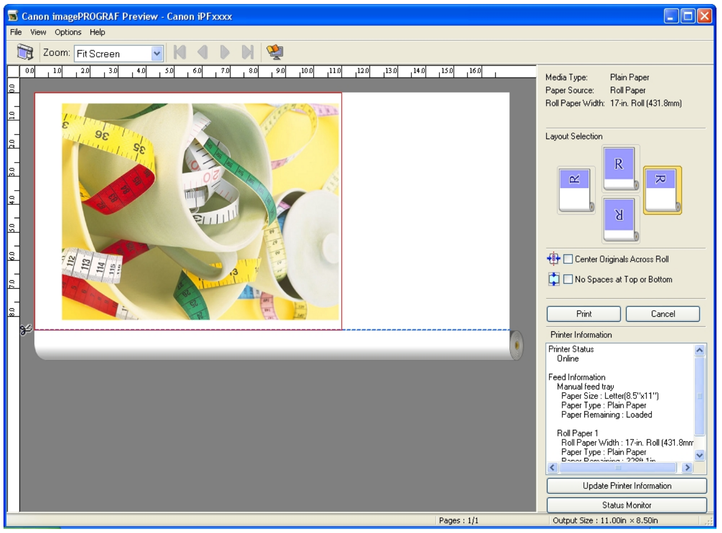
Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Button	Details
Upper Button	Turn at the position of .
Right Button	Turn at the position of .
Left Button	Turn at the position of .

Button	Details
Lower Button	Turn at the position of  .

Note

- **Right Button** or **Left Button** can be selected only when the rotated pages can fit lengthwise across the roll.
- By clicking **Right Button** or **Left Button**, you can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.
- You can select only **Upper Button** or **Lower Button** if **Cut Sheet** is selected.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

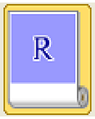
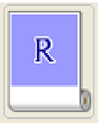
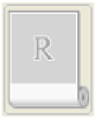
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Pages : 1/1
Output Size : 11.00in × 8.50in

Button	Details
	The button is selected currently.
	The button can be selected.
	The button can not be selected.

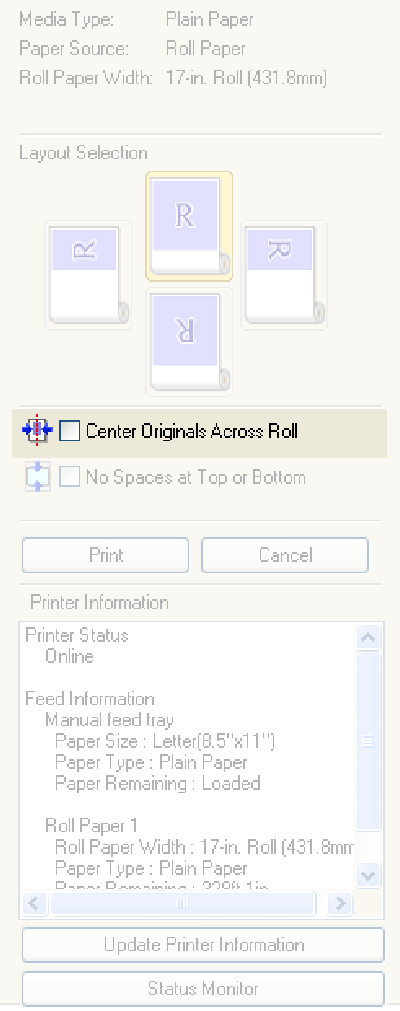
2. Click the **Print** Button.

   Printing on the selected layout begins.

Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

1. Click the **Center Originals Across Roll** check box on.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Layout Selection
R
R
R
R
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
Print
Cancel
Printer Information

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Update Printer Information
Status Monitor

2. Click the **Print** button

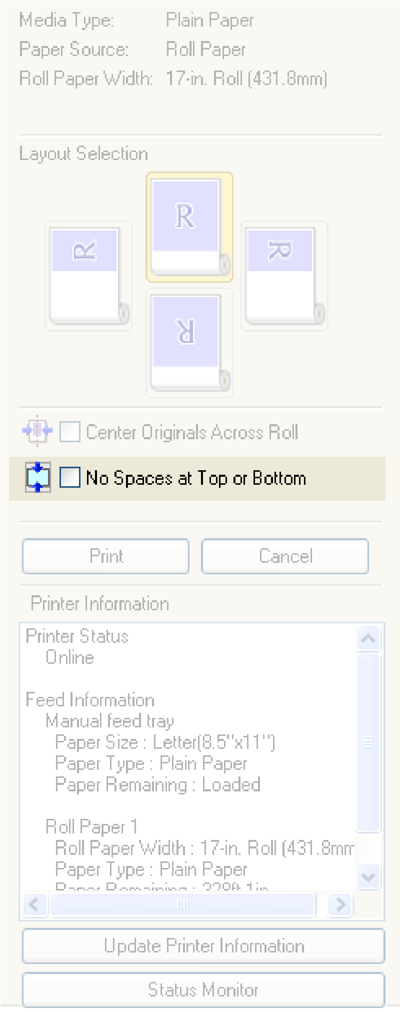
Printing on the center begins.

> Note
> - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

1. Click the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box on.



Media Type: Plain Paper
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Layout Selection
R
R
R
R
☐ Center Originals Across Roll
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
Print
Cancel
Printer Information

Printer Status
Online

Feed Information
Manual feed tray
Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11")
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8m
Paper Type : Plain Paper

Update Printer Information
Status Monitor

2. Click the **Print** button.

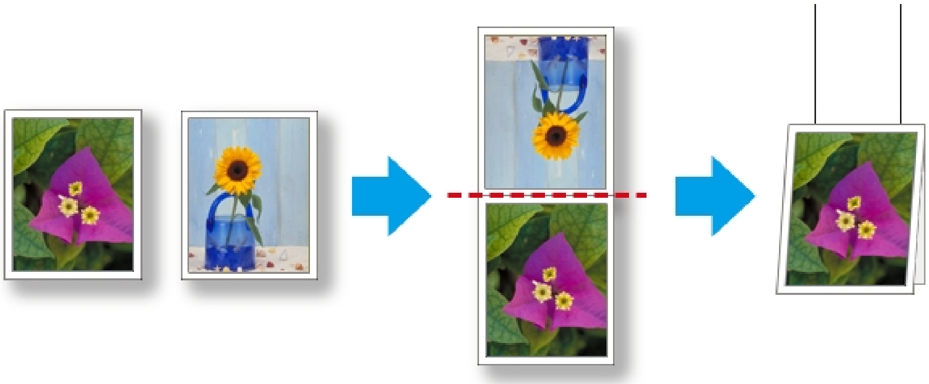
   Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.
- Any two pages can be arranged and printed in a layout that becomes duplex on folding.
  This can be used such as for advertising posters that are suspended from the ceiling.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Free Layout in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7

  Note

  - This function is not available on 64-bit version of Windows.
  - For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Free Layout

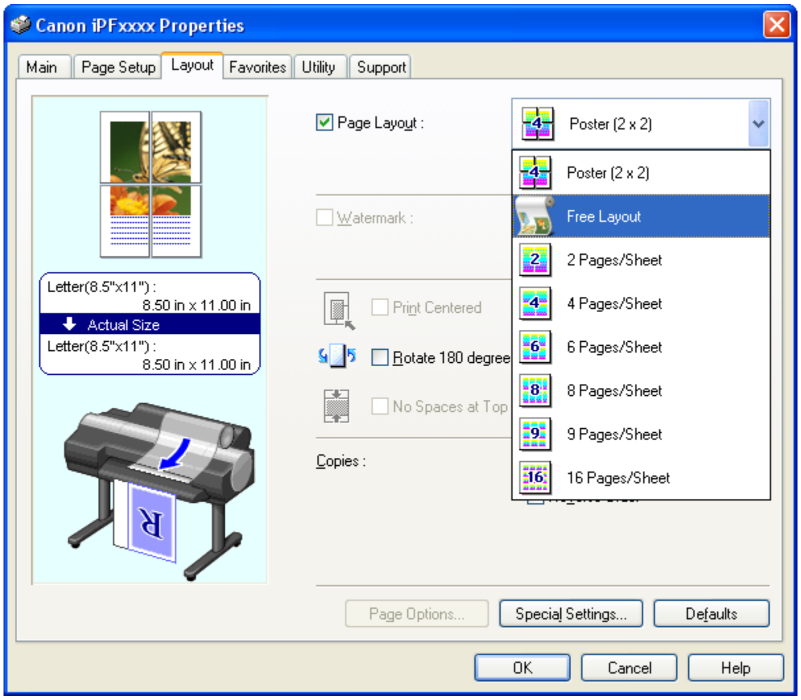
Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

1. Start the apllication software which you use.
2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

   Note

   - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. From the list, select the printer and select the **Layout** sheet.



Note

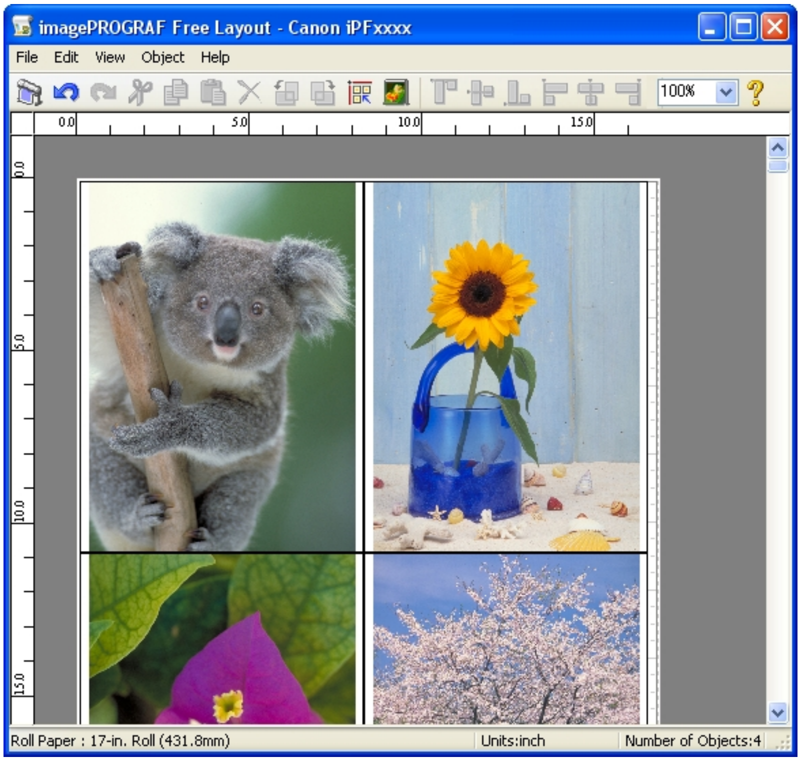
- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

Note

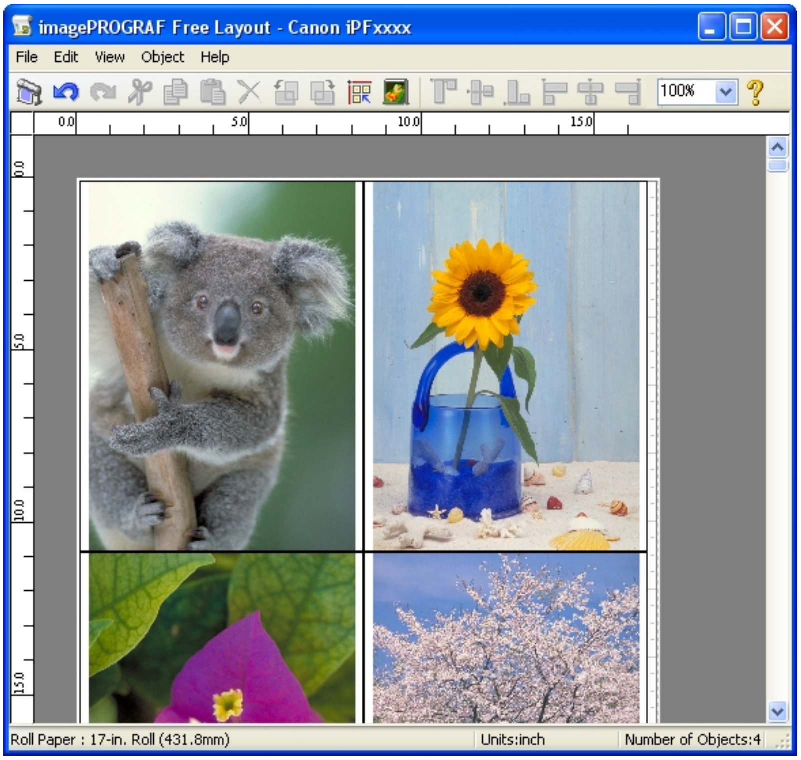
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5. On the **Print** dialog box in the apllication software, click the **Print** button.
Free Layout main window is displayed.


imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx
File
Edit
View
Object
Help
100%
Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Units:inch
Number of Objects:4

Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.

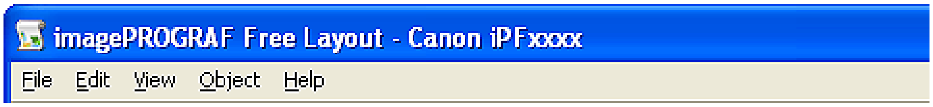

imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx
File Edit View Object Help
100%
Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Units:inch
Number of Objects:4

Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool and status bar.

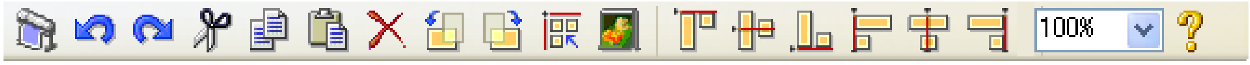
- Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.


imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx
File Edit View Object Help

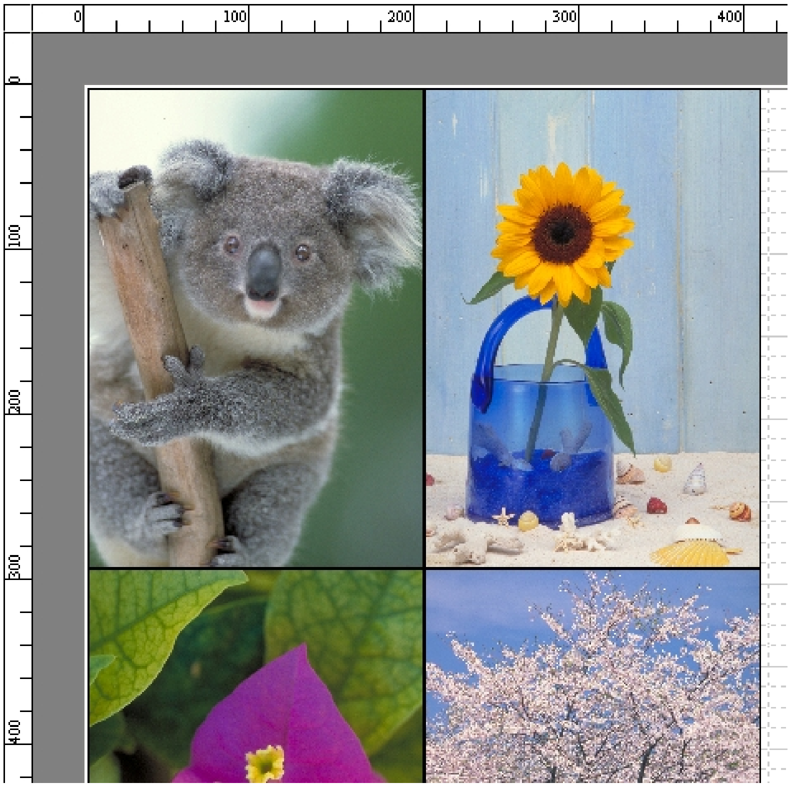
- Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



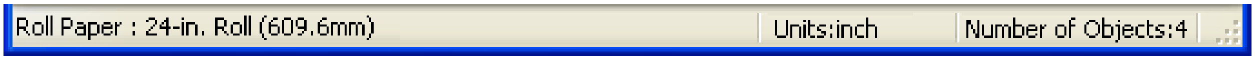
- Layout Area

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



- Status Bar

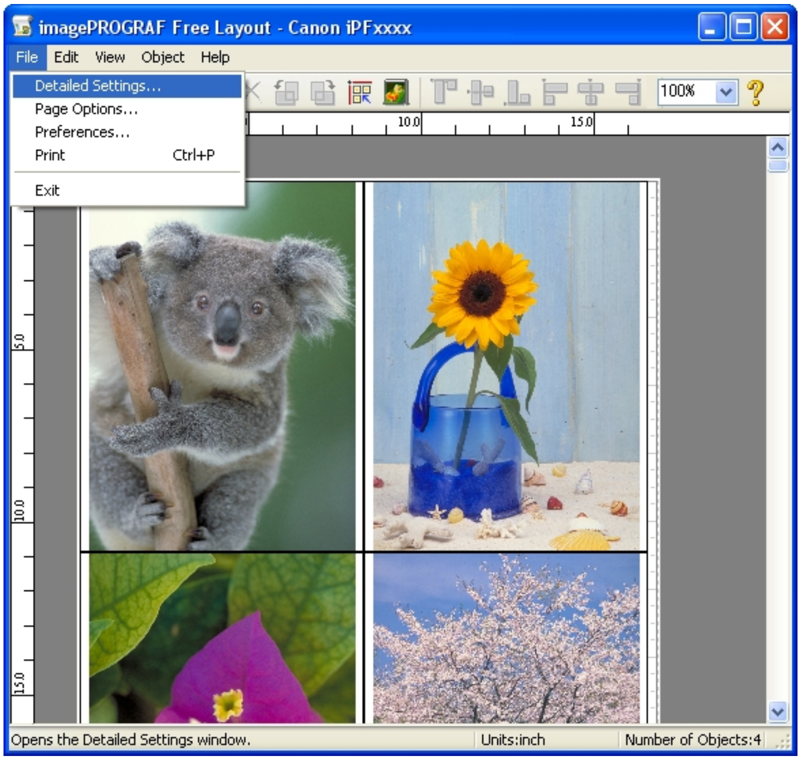
This shows the paper size, unit of length, and number of objects.



Roll Paper : 24-in. Roll (609.6mm) | Units:inch | Number of Objects:4

Detailed Settings

The printer driver opens when you select **Detailed Settings** from the **File** menu. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



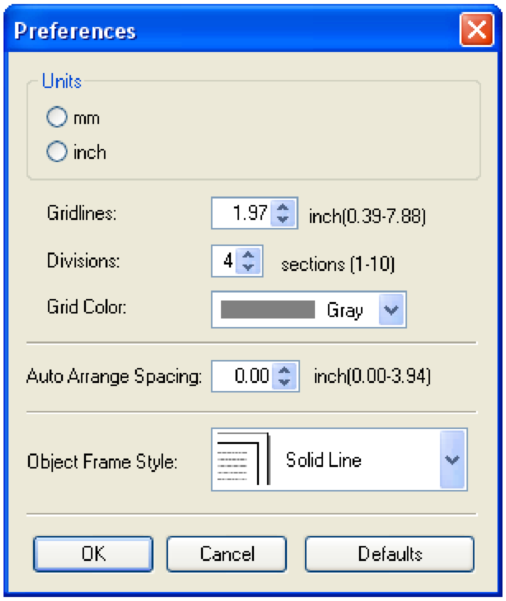
Refer to Printer Driver →P.202 for details on the printer driver.

Note

- When you select the **Detailed Settings**, the only three sheets displayed are the **Main** sheet, the **Page Setup** sheet, and the **Layout** sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the **File** menu. This allows you to configure the preferences of Free Layout.



Gridlines: 1.97 inch(0.39-7.88)

Divisions: 4 sections (1-10)

Grid Color: Gray

Auto Arrange Spacing: 0.00 inch(0.00-3.94)

Object Frame Style: Solid Line

- **Units**

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

- **Gridlines**

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

Note
- You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.88(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Divisions**

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

Note
- You can input between 1 and 10.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Grid Color**

Select the grid line color.

- **Auto Arrange Spacing**

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.

Note
- You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

• Object Frame Style

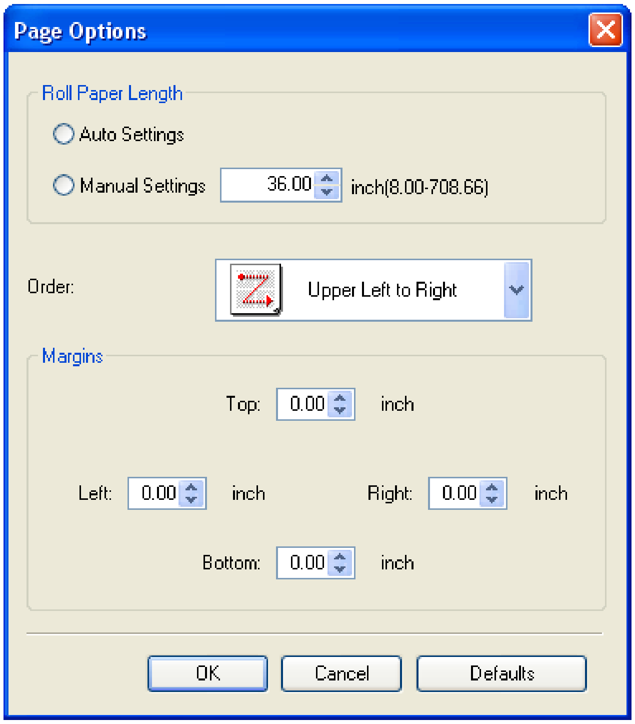
You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
None	You can print with no frame style.
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.
Crop Marks	You can print with the crop marks.

Page Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Options** from the **File** menu. This allows you to configure the roll paper length, object layout order, and margins of Free Layout.



Page Options

Roll Paper Length

○ Auto Settings

○ Manual Settings 36.00 inch(8.00-708.66)

Order: Upper Left to Right

Margins

Top: 0.00 inch

Left: 0.00 inch

Right: 0.00 inch

Bottom: 0.00 inch

• Roll Paper Length

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

The following settings are available for roll paper length.

Setting	Details
Auto Settings	The one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.
Manual Settings	You can input the length of one page to print on roll paper in numerical characters.

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Order**

Set the object layout order.
The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
Upper Left to Right	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
Upper Left to Bottom	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.
Upper Right to Left	The objects are laid out from upper right to left.
Lower Left to Top	The objects are laid out from lower left to top.

Note
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Vertical**, you can choose **Upper Left to Right** or **Upper Right to Left**.
- When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Horizontal**, you can choose **Upper Left to Bottom** or **Lower Left to Top**.

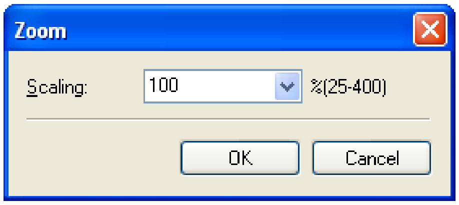
- **Margins**

You can input the paper margins in numerical characters.

Note
- You can input between 0.0 and 50.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 1.97(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



Scaling: 100 %(25-400)

- **Scaling**

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

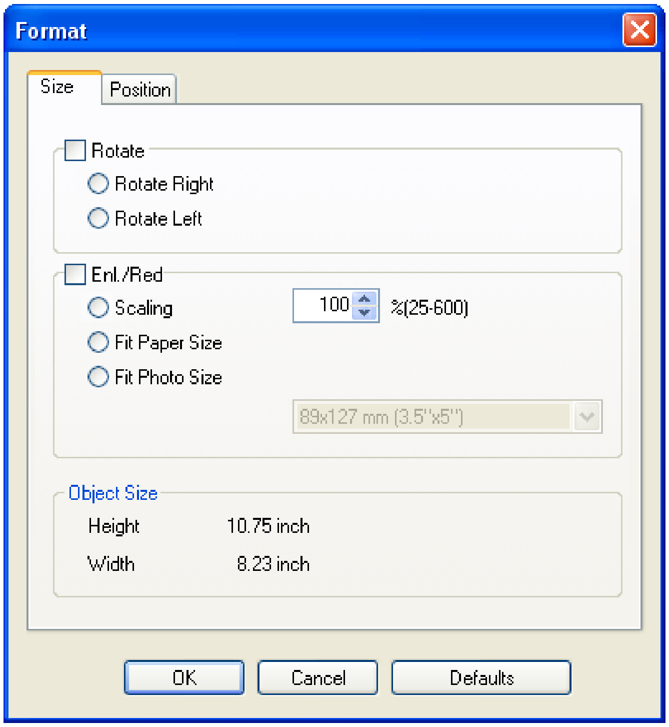
Note
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Format** from the **Object** menu after you select an object.

Size Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



100 %(25-600)

89x127 mm (3.5"x5")

Height 10.75 inch

Width 8.23 inch

Note
- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

• Rotate

When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
Rotate Left	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.

Note
- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

• Enl./Red.

When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Scaling**, **Fit Paper Size**, or **Fit Photo Size**.

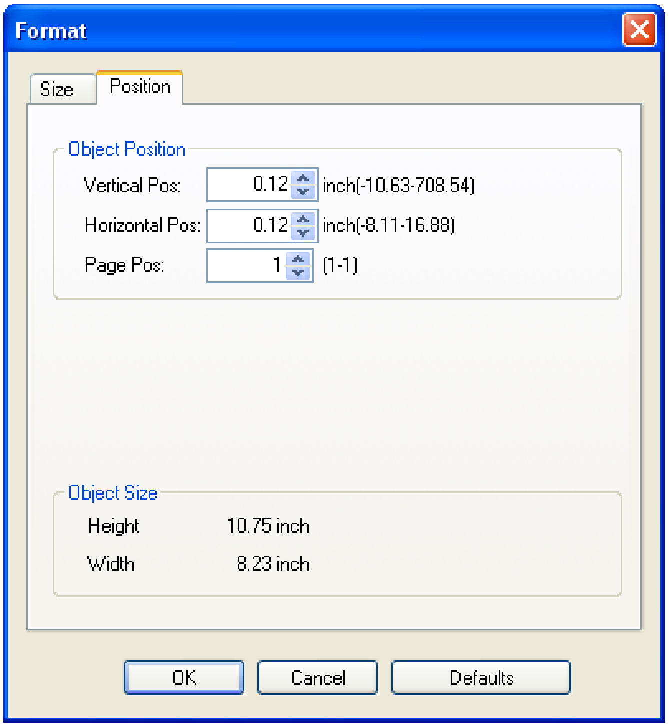
Setting	Details
Scaling	Allows you to input the value of the enlargement or reduction ratio of an object.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Prints by enlarging or reducing each object to match the paper size. If you are using roll paper, objects are enlarged or reduced so that the width of each object matches the width of the roll paper.
Fit Photo Size	Prints all of the objects at the specified photo size.

Note
- You can input between 25 and 600.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Position Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.


Format

Object Position

Vertical Pos: 0.12 inch(-10.63-708.54)

Horizontal Pos: 0.12 inch(-8.11-16.88)

Page Pos: 1 (1-1)

Object Size

Height 10.75 inch

Width 8.23 inch

Note
- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

• Object Position

You can move the object position by changing the values.

Setting	Details
Vertical Pos	You can input the number of the vertical position in numerical characters.
Horizontal Pos	You can input the number of the horizontal position in numerical characters.
Page Pos	You can input the number of the page position in numerical characters.

• Object Size

You can confirm the object size.

Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot display **Object Size**.

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

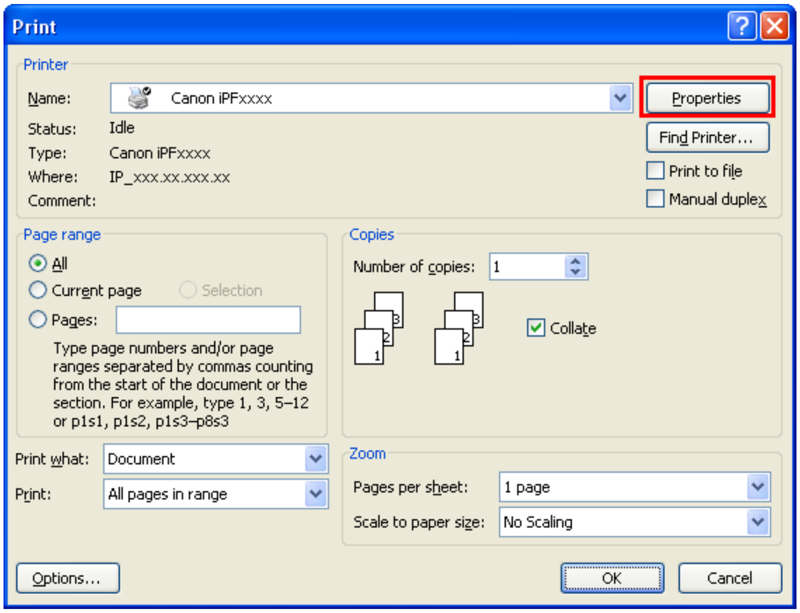
You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

1. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

   Note

   - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2. Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.



Print

Printer

Name: Canon iPFxxxx

Status: Idle

Type: Canon iPFxxxx

Where: IP_xxx.xx.xxx.xx

Comment:

☐ Print to file

☐ Manual duplex

Page range

● All

○ Current page ○ Selection

○ Pages:

Type page numbers and/or page ranges separated by commas counting from the start of the document or the section. For example, type 1, 3, 5–12 or p1s1, p1s2, p1s3–p8s3

Copies

Number of copies: 1

☑ Collate

Print what: Document

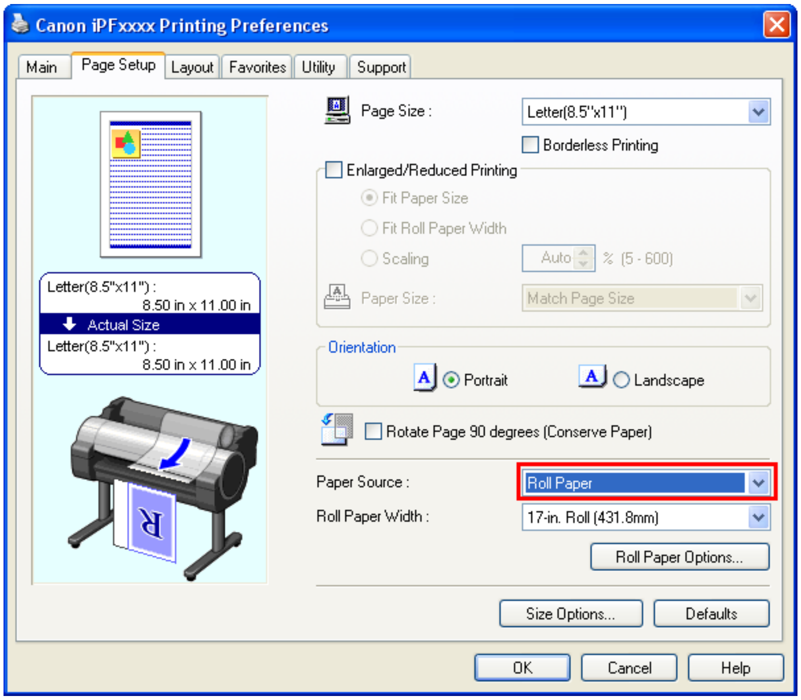
Print: All pages in range

Zoom

Pages per sheet: 1 page

Scale to paper size: No Scaling

3. In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

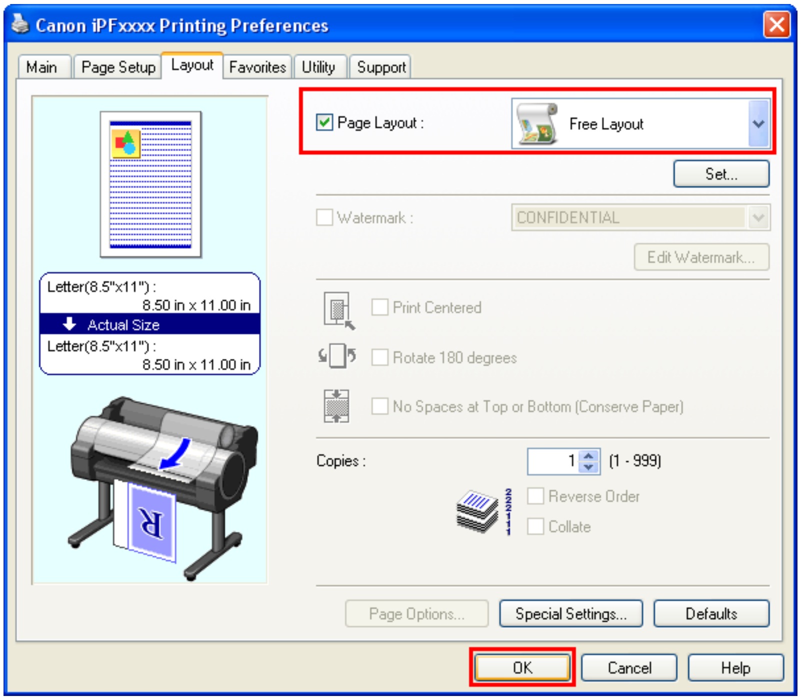
Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

☑ Page Layout : Free Layout

☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

☐ Print Centered

☐ Rotate 180 degrees

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

☐ Collate

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

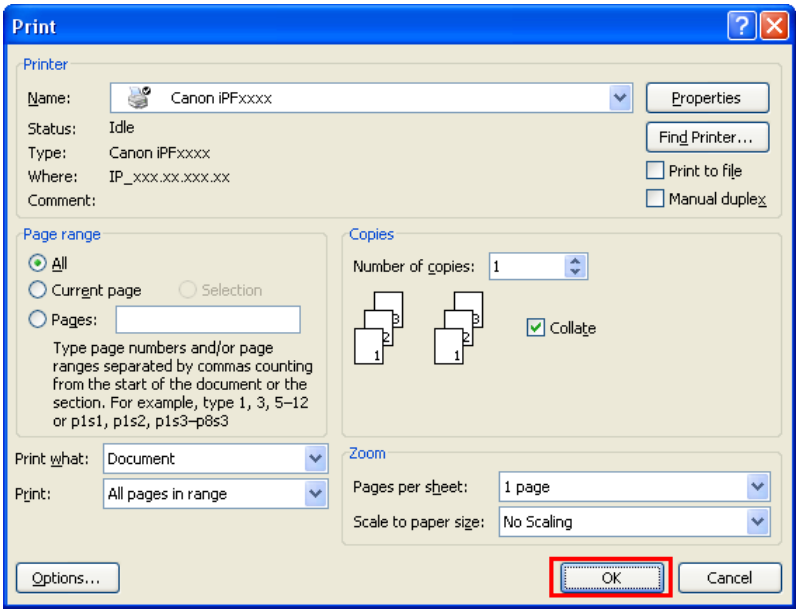
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

6. In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **OK** button.



Print

Printer

Name: Canon iPFxxxx

Status: Idle

Type: Canon iPFxxxx

Where: IP_xxx.xx.xxx.xx

Comment:

☐ Print to file

☐ Manual duplex

Page range

● All

○ Current page

○ Selection

○ Pages:

Type page numbers and/or page ranges separated by commas counting from the start of the document or the section. For example, type 1, 3, 5–12 or p1s1, p1s2, p1s3–p8s3

Copies

Number of copies: 1

☑ Collate

Print what: Document

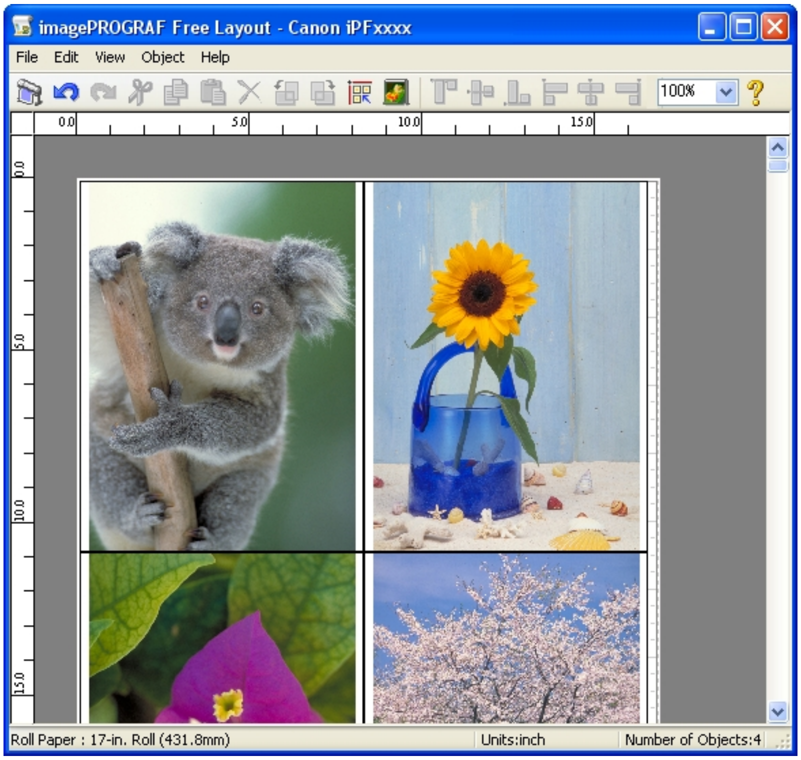
Print: All pages in range

Zoom

Pages per sheet: 1 page

Scale to paper size: No Scaling

Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx

Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Units:inch

Number of Objects:4

7. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

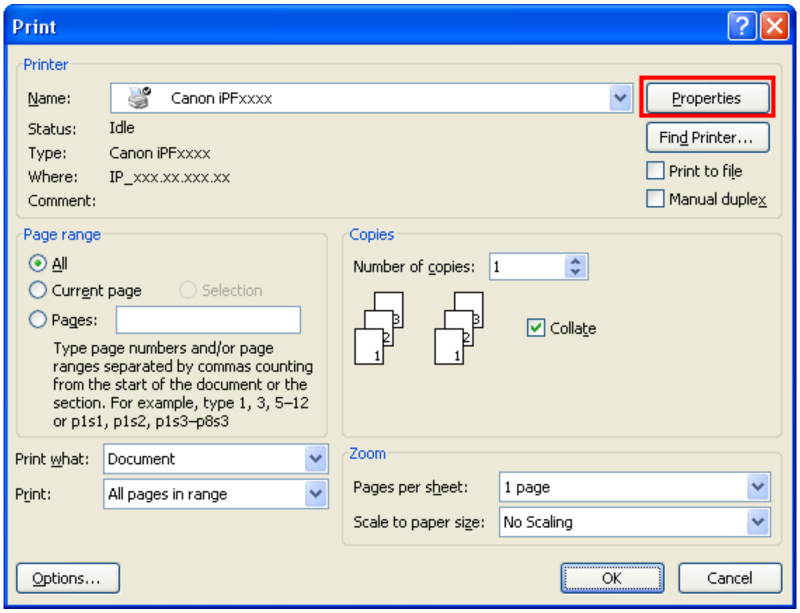
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

1. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

> Note
>
> - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2. Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.



Name: Canon iPFxxxx
Status: Idle
Type: Canon iPFxxxx
Where: IP_xxx.xx.xxx.xx
Comment:

☐ Print to file
☐ Manual duplex

● All
○ Current page
○ Selection
○ Pages:

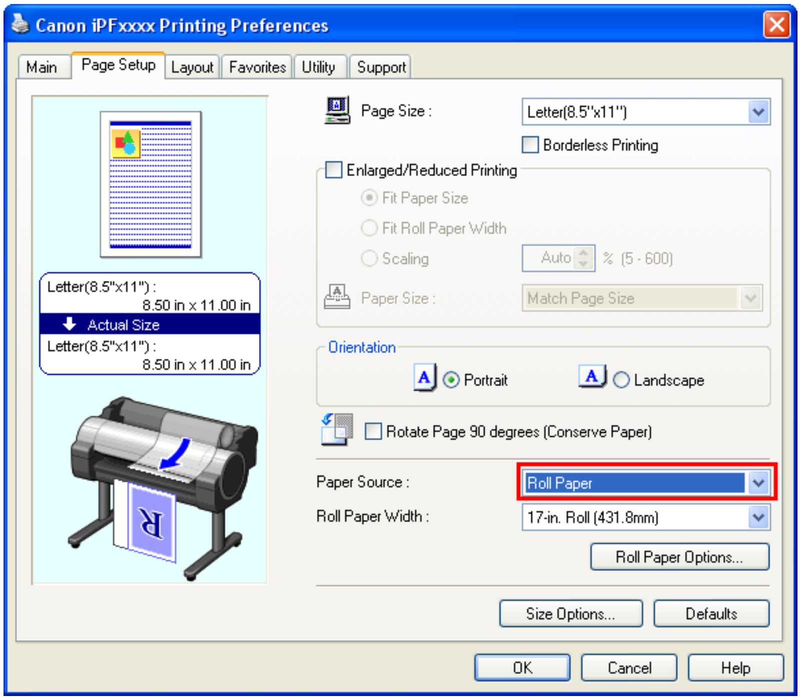
Type page numbers and/or page ranges separated by commas counting from the start of the document or the section. For example, type 1, 3, 5–12 or p1s1, p1s2, p1s3–p8s3

Number of copies: 1
☑ Collate

Print what: Document
Print: All pages in range

Pages per sheet: 1 page
Scale to paper size: No Scaling

3. In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Main | Page Setup | Layout | Favorites | Utility | Support

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Page Size : Letter(8.5"x11")

☐ Borderless Printing

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)

Paper Size : Match Page Size

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

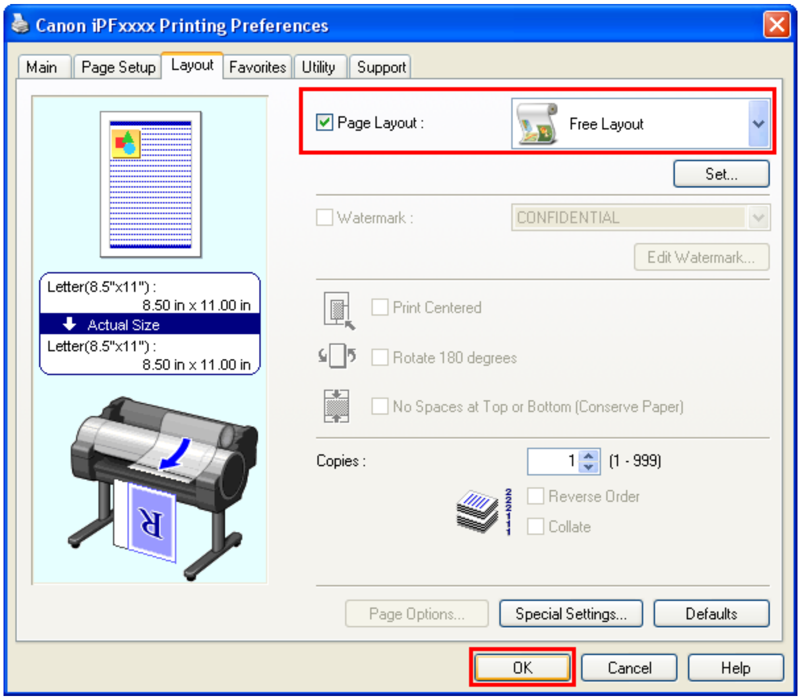
Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Main | Page Setup | Layout | Favorites | Utility | Support

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

☑ Page Layout : Free Layout

☐ Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL

☐ Print Centered

☐ Rotate 180 degrees

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Reverse Order

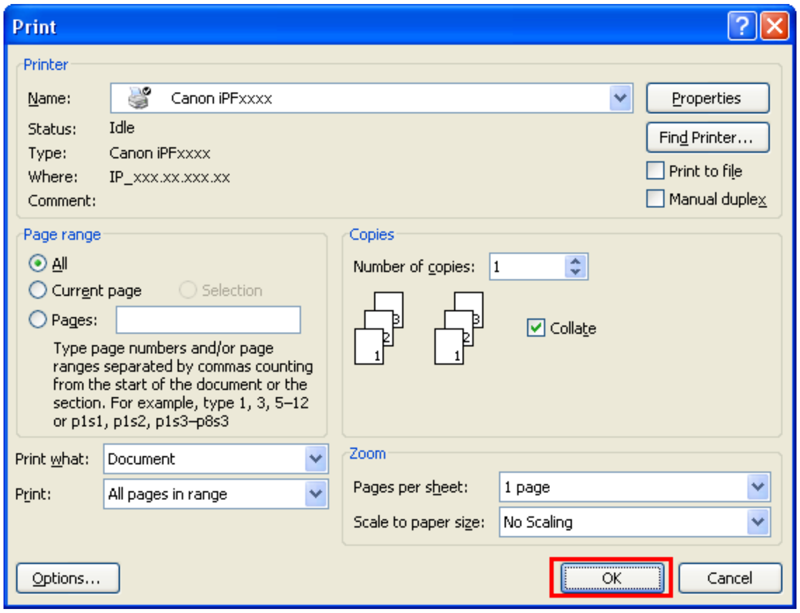
☐ Collate

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.
- When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.

5. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

6. In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **OK** button.



Name: Canon iPFxxxx

Status: Idle

Type: Canon iPFxxxx

Where: IP_xxx.xx.xxx.xx

Comment:

☐ Print to file

☐ Manual duplex

● All

○ Current page ○ Selection

○ Pages:

Type page numbers and/or page ranges separated by commas counting from the start of the document or the section. For example, type 1, 3, 5–12 or p1s1, p1s2, p1s3–p8s3

Number of copies: 1

☑ Collate

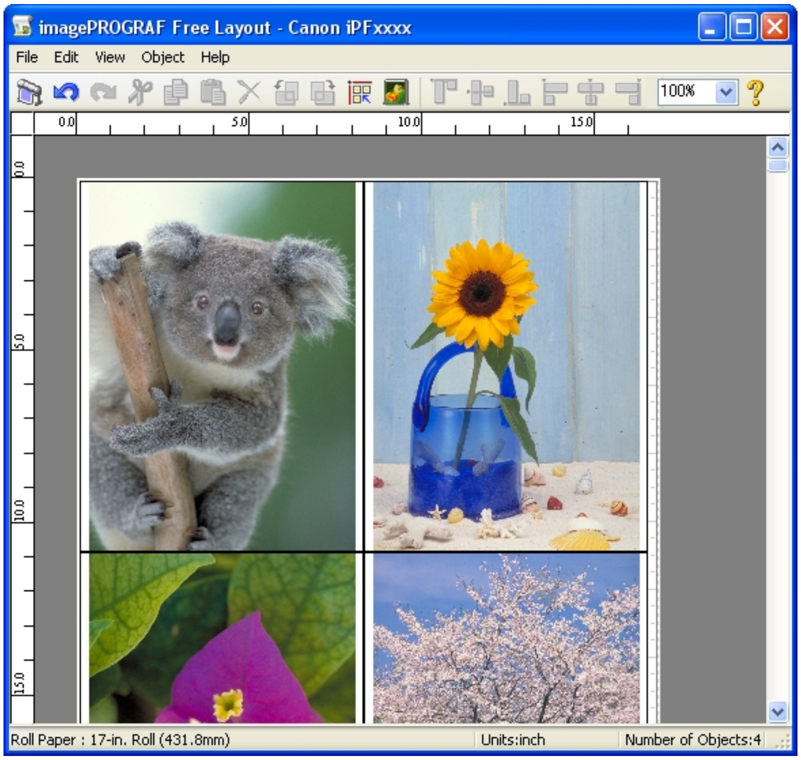
Print what: Document

Print: All pages in range

Pages per sheet: 1 page

Scale to paper size: No Scaling

Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



Roll Paper : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

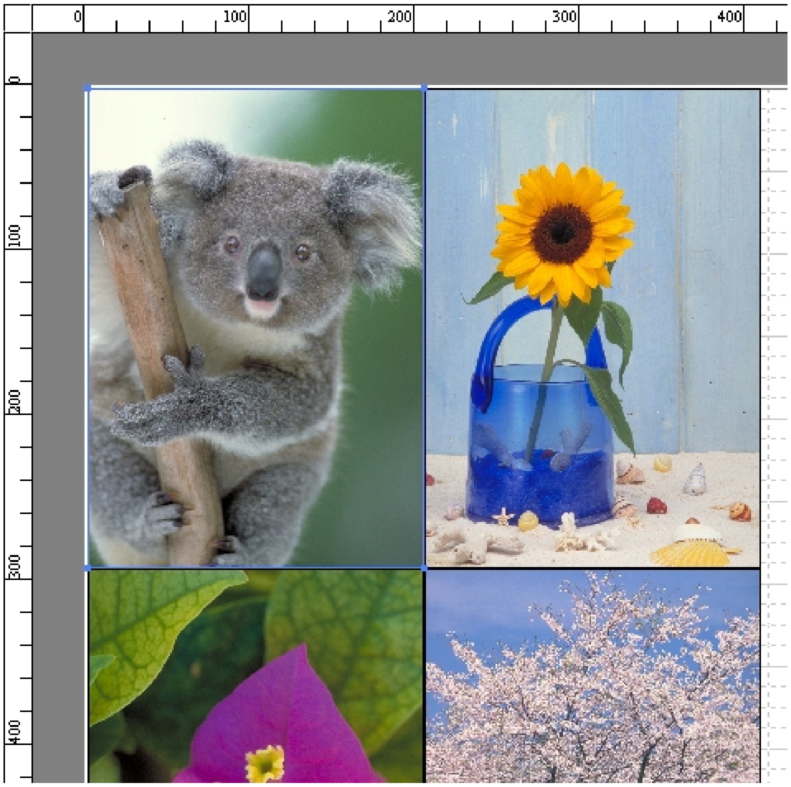
Units:inch

Number of Objects:4

7. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

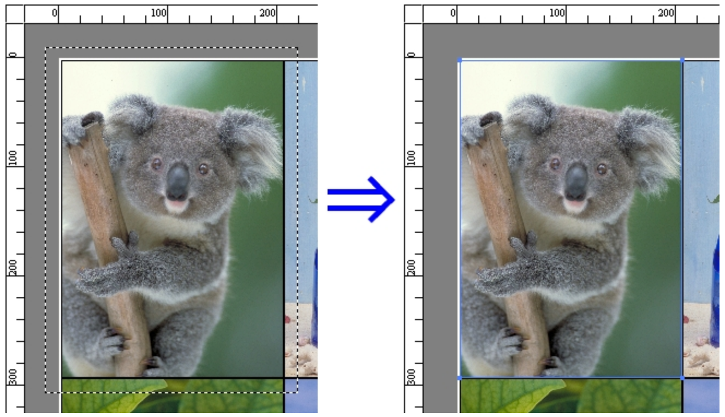
Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note

- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the Shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the Ctrl key.
- To select all objects, select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu.
- When you specify the area with dragging the mouse, the object in the area is selected.



Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

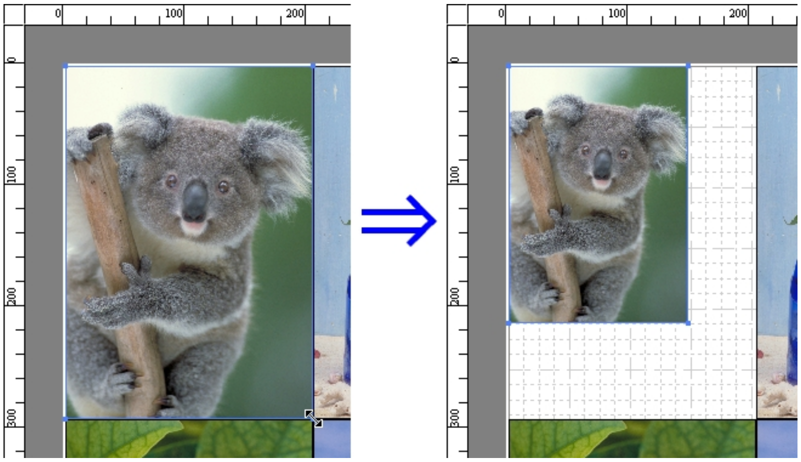
Note

- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1. Select an object.

2. Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1. Select an object.
   Click on the **Enl./Red.** checkbox in the Format Dialog Box →P.271 and select **Scaling**.

2. You either enter numbers directly.

   Note

   - You can input between 25 and 600.
   - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

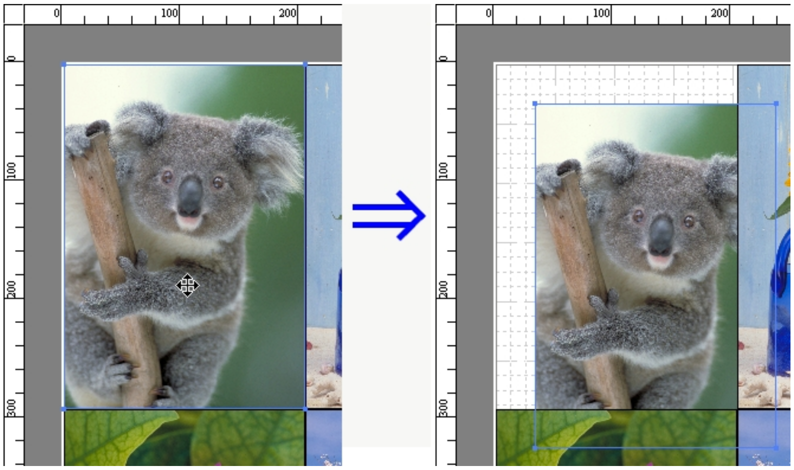
3. Click the **OK** button.

Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

1. Select an object.

2. Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.
   Alternatively, you can move the **Object Position** by changing the values in **Vertical Pos**, **Horizontal Pos** and **Page Pos** in the Format Dialog Box →P.271 .

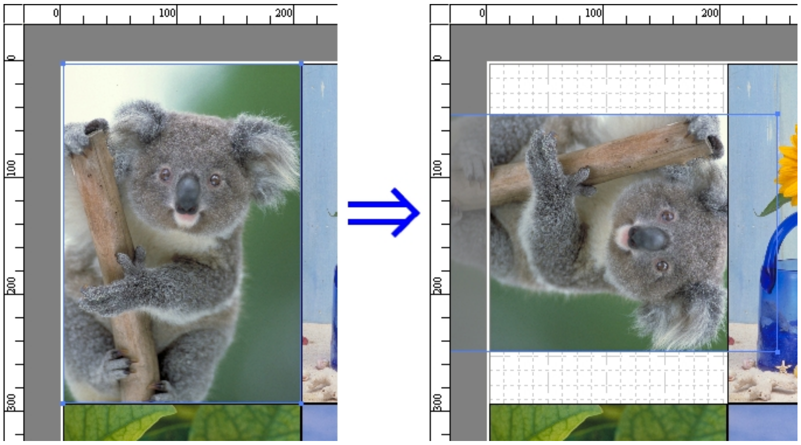


Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

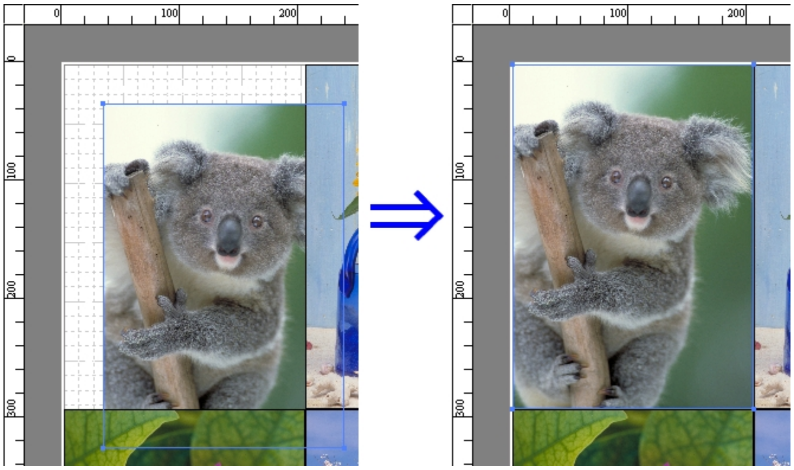
1. Select an object.

2. Select **Rotate Left 90 Degrees** or **Rotate Right 90 Degrees** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may click on the **Rotate** check box in the Format Dialog Box →P.271 then select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**, and click the **OK** button.



Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange Object** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting in the Page Options Dialog Box →P.269 dialog box.

Aligning Objects

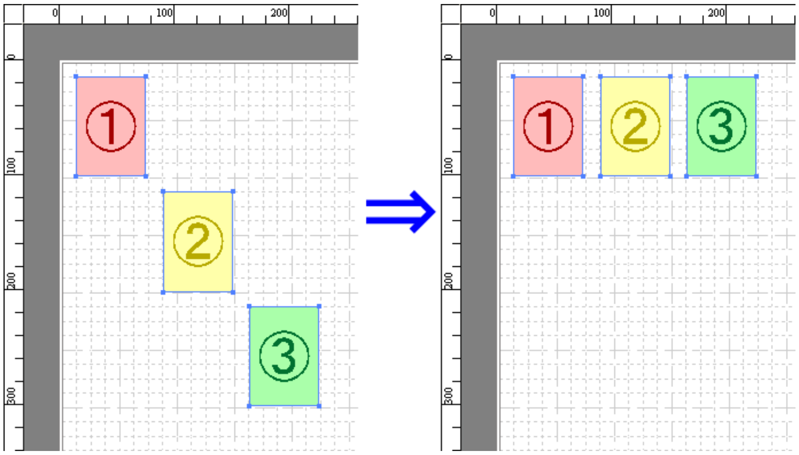
You can align objects systematically.

1. Select multiple objects.

2. Click the align button from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select the align menu from the **Object** menu.

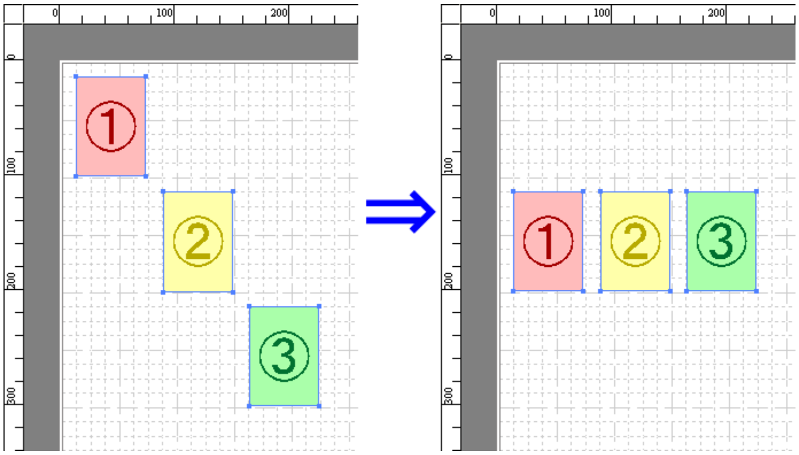
Align Top

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



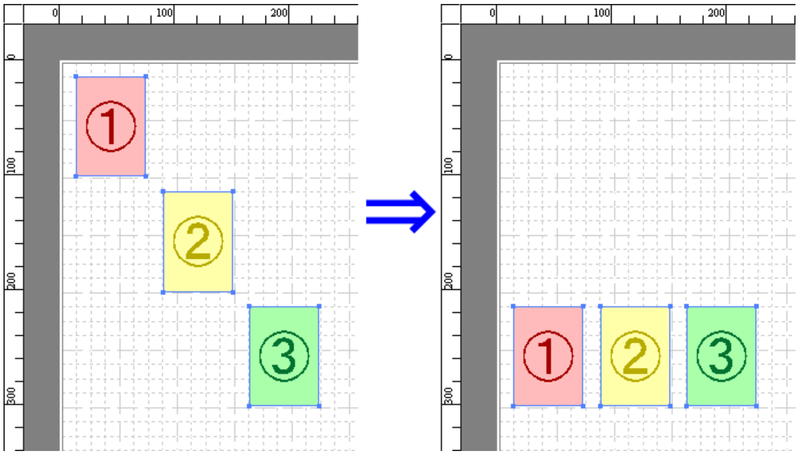
Center Vertically

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



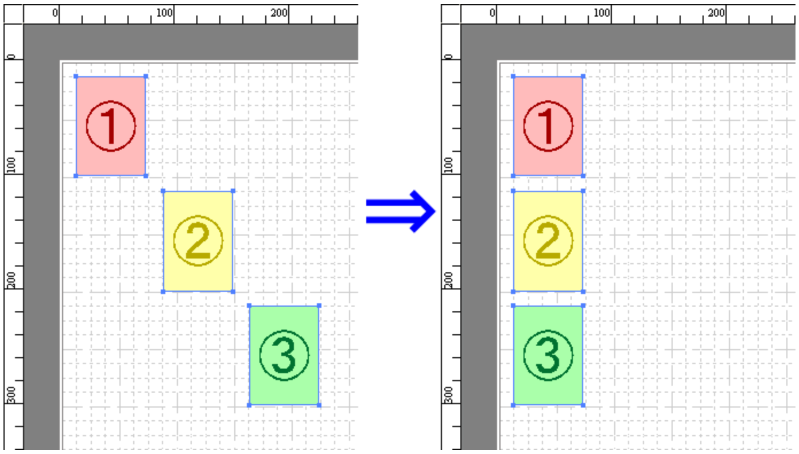
Align Bottom

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



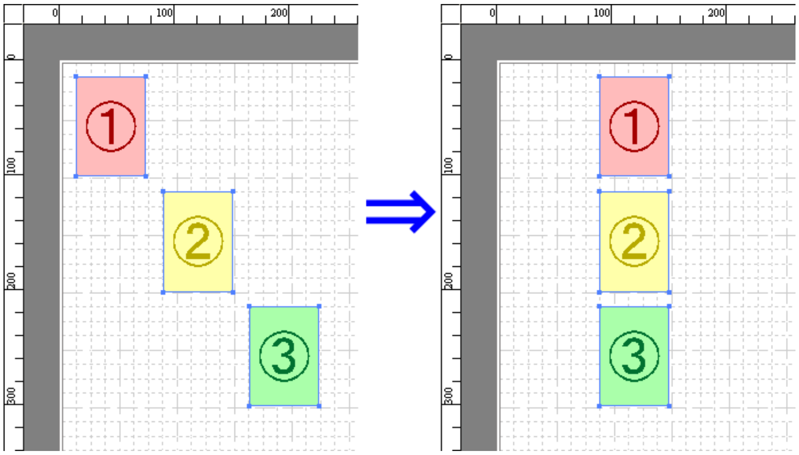
Align Left

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



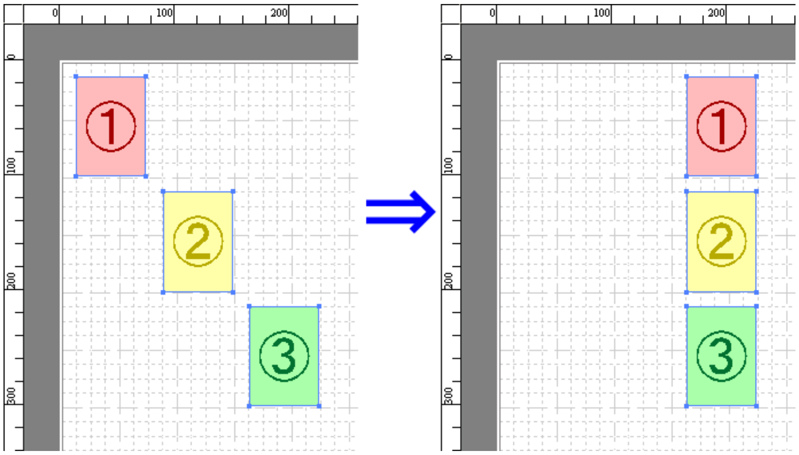
Center Horizontally

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



Align Right

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.

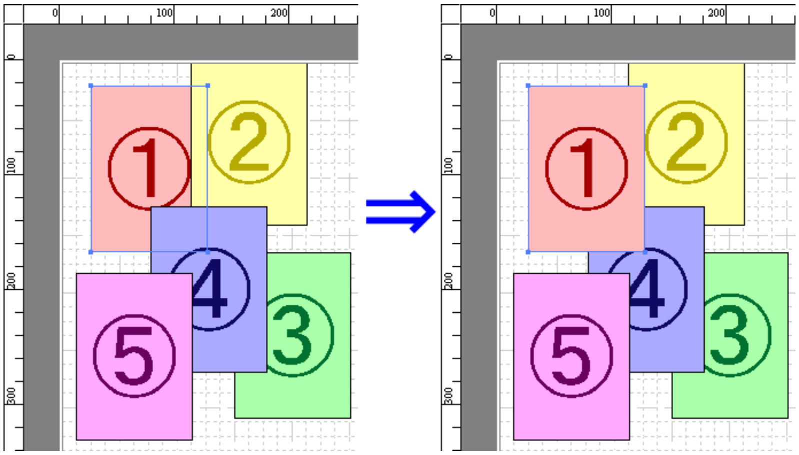
2. Select the Overlapping Order menu from the **Object** menu.

Note

- The order of overlapping affects the order of objects automatically laid out.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.

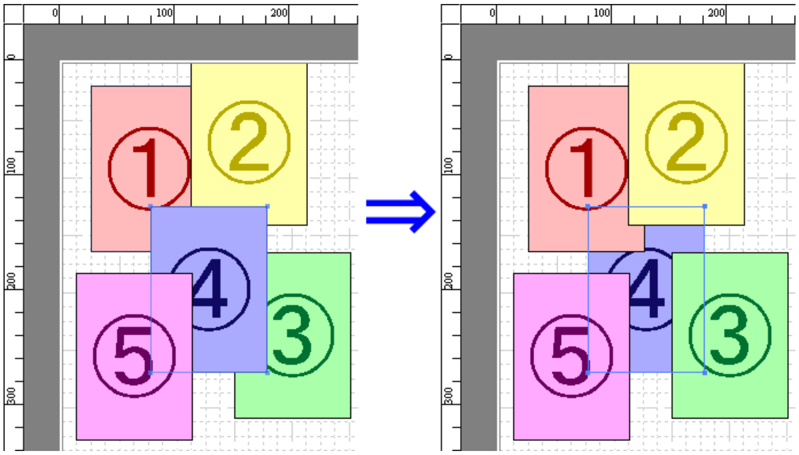
Bring to Front

Moves the object to the frontmost position.



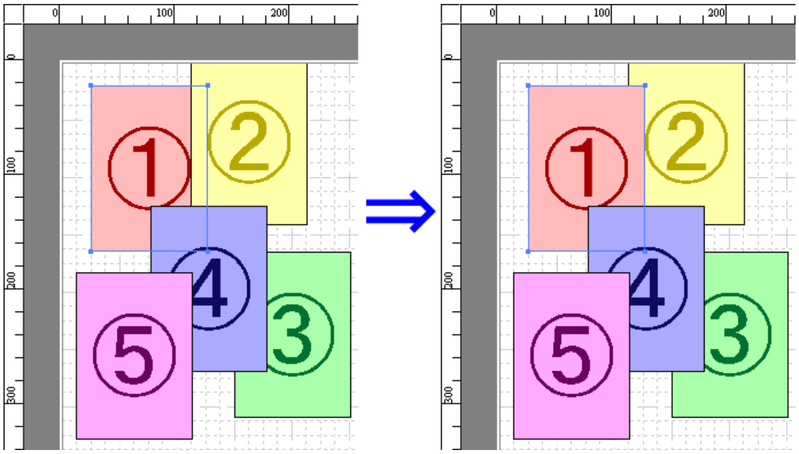
Send to Back

Moves the object to the backmost position.



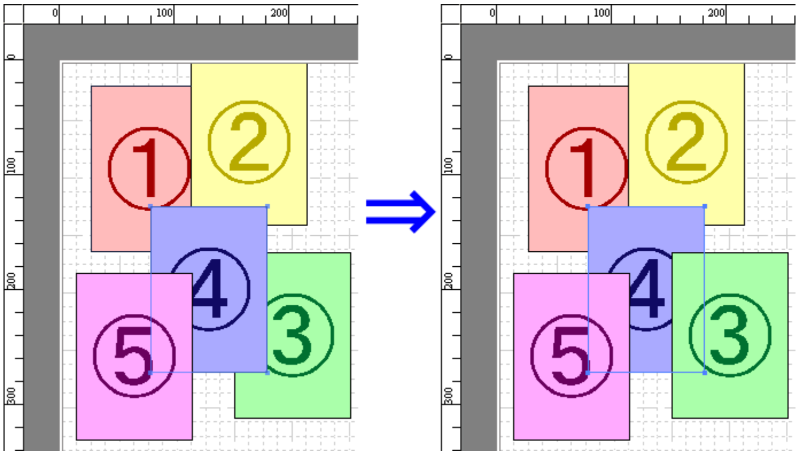
Bring Forward

Moves the object one position to the front.



Send Backward

Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click **Copy** or **Cut** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Copy** or **Cut** from the **Edit** menu.

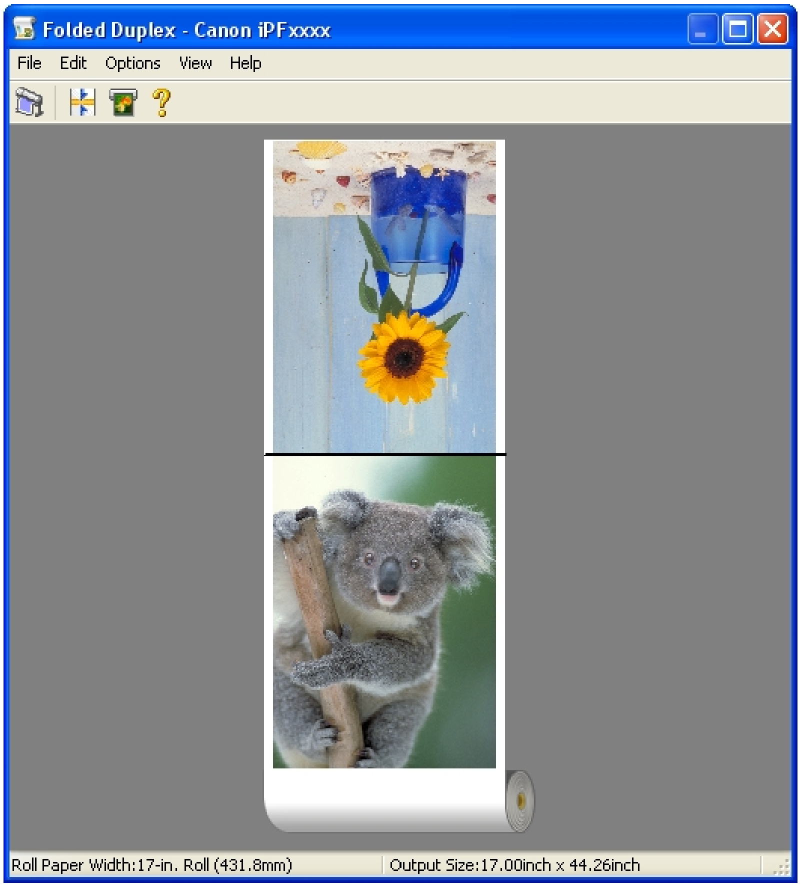
2. Click **Paste** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.

Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.
- In order to paste an object on any position that you like, you can paste the object with **Pointed Paste** by clicking the right button of the mouse on any position that you want.

Folded Duplex Window

This window is displayed if you select **Folded Duplex** from the **Edit** menu after selecting an object. Using the **Folded Duplex** function allows you to print with fold lines added.
The **Folded Duplex** window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



Roll Paper Width:17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Output Size:17.00inch x 44.26inch

Note

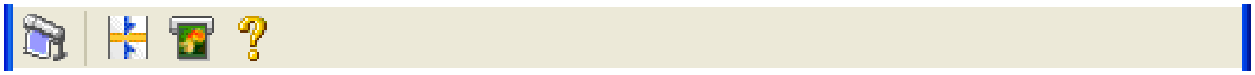
- The toolbar and status bar can be toggled between hidden and displayed from the **View** menu.

- Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

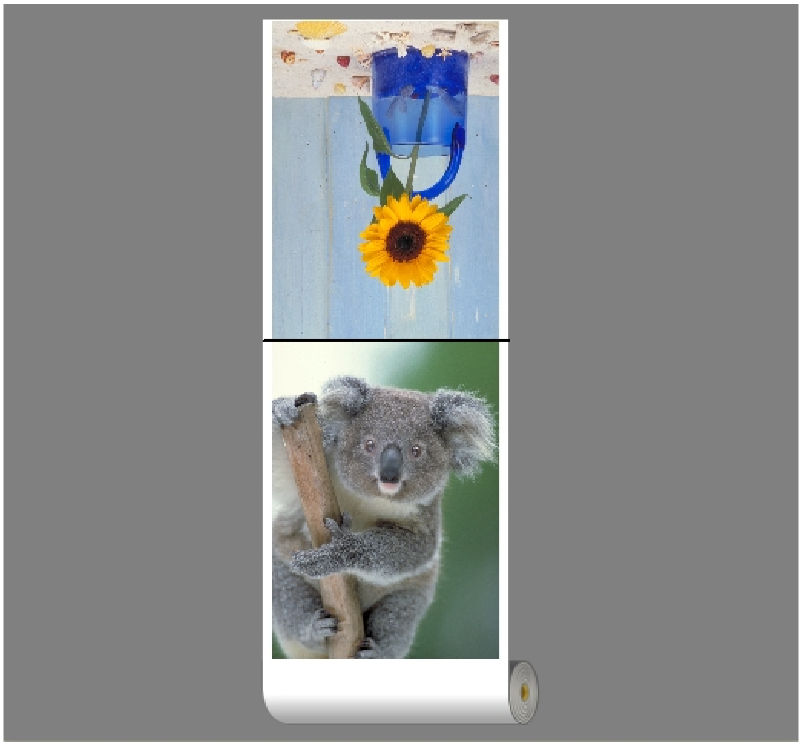
- Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



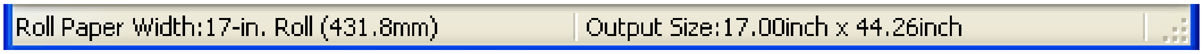
- **Layout Area**

This allows you to check the arrangement and orientation of objects.



- **Status Bar**

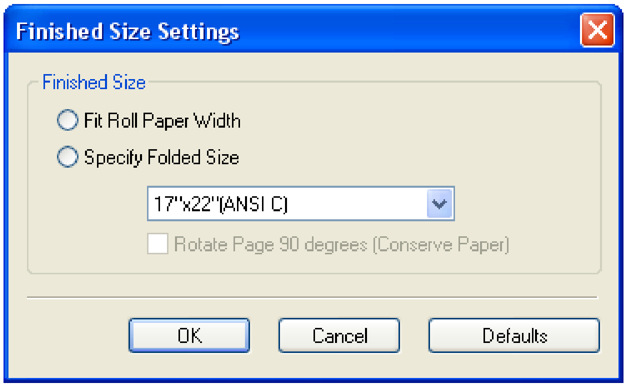
This shows the paper source, roll paper width, and output size.



Roll Paper Width:17-in. Roll (431.8mm) | Output Size:17.00inch x 44.26inch

Finished Size Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box is displayed when you select **Finished Size Settings** from the **Edit** menu. This allows you to configure finished size settings.



Finished Size Settings

Finished Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Specify Folded Size

17"x22"(ANSI C)

☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

- **Finished Size**

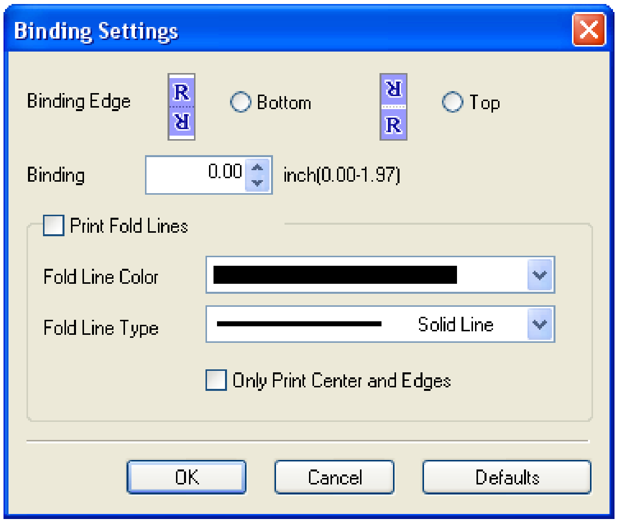
Selects the method for setting the finished size.

The following settings are available for the finished size.

Setting	Details
Fit Roll Paper Width	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document so that the width of the document matches the roll paper width.
Specify Folded Size	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document to match the size of the paper. Select the actual size of the paper you want to print on in **Fit Paper Size**.
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Prints by rotating pages by 90 degrees. Pages are automatically rotated if they will fit within the roll paper width when rotated, and are not rotated if they will not fit within the roll paper width.

Binding Settings Dialog Box

This is displayed when you select **Binding Settings** from the **Edit** menu. This allows you to configure the binding edge settings.


Binding Settings

Binding Edge ○ Bottom ○ Top

Binding 0.00 inch(0.00-1.97)

☐ Print Fold Lines

Fold Line Color

Fold Line Type Solid Line

☐ Only Print Center and Edges

• Binding Edge

Configures the binding edge when folding paper.

The following settings are available for the binding edge.

Setting	Details
Bottom	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the bottom of the document.
Top	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the top of the document.

• Binding

Configures the binding margin (gutter).

Prints by creating a binding margin (gutter) of the specified size. Enter the margin size as a number.

Note

- The values that can be entered are 0 to 50 (mm).

• Print Fold Lines

Configures the color and type of fold lines.

Note

- To not print fold lines, clear the **Print Fold Lines** checkbox.

• Fold Line Color

You can select the fold lines.

• Fold Line Type

You can select the fold lines.
The following settings are available for the fold line type.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

• Only Print Center and Edges

To print fold lines at the center and both edges, select the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox.

Prints using Folded Duplex

This prints 2 pages consecutively. Folding back the paper at the fold lines of the center substitutes for duplex printing.

1. Select two objects from the layout area of Free Layout.

2. Select **Folded Duplex** from the **Edit** menu of Free Layout.
   Open the **Folded Duplex** window and arrange the selected objects in the layout area.

3. Open the **Finished Size Settings** dialog box from the **Edit** menu.

4. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width** or **Specify Folded Size** in **Finished Size**.

   Note

   - **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** is also available when **Specify Folded Size** is selected.

5. Click **OK** to save the settings.

6. Open the **Binding Settings** dialog box from the **Edit** menu.

7. Select **Bottom** or **Top** in **Binding Edge**.

8. Specify the **Binding** width in **Binding**.

9. Configure the **Fold Line Color** and **Fold Line Type** from **Print Fold Lines**.

   > Note
   >
   > - When the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox is selected, fold lines are only printed at the three locations of the center and both edges.

10. Click **OK** to save the settings.

11. Confirm the print setting and begin printing.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7

  Note

  - This function is not available on 64-bit version of Windows.
  - For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

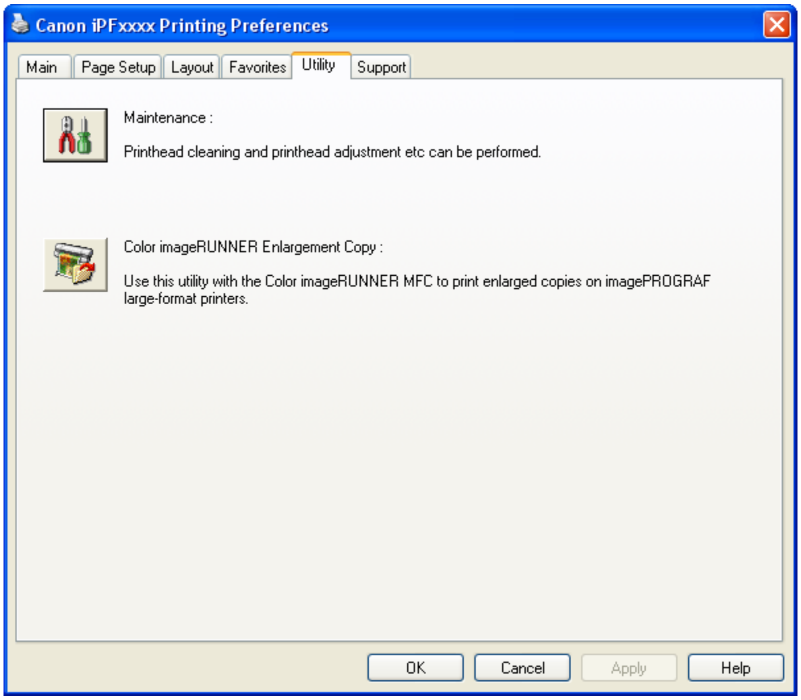
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

To start by selecting **Printers and Faxes** from the **start** button

1. Open the folder of the OS you are using for configuring printers.
   For example, on Windows XP click the **start** button on the desktop, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

2. Right-click the Printers icon and select **Printing Preferences** to open the **Printing Preferences** dialog box. In the **Utility** sheet, click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** button.



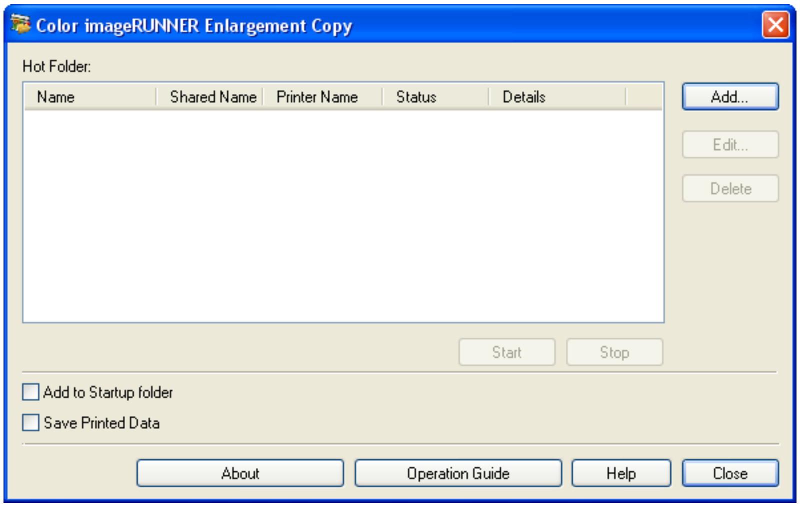
Maintenance :

Printhead cleaning and printhead adjustment etc can be performed.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy :

Use this utility with the Color imageRUNNER MFC to print enlarged copies on imagePROGRAF large-format printers.

3. The **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box displays.



☐ Add to Startup folder

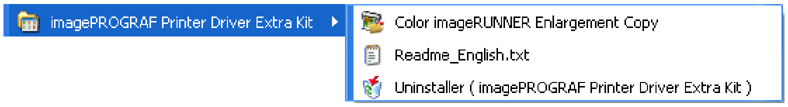
☐ Save Printed Data

Note

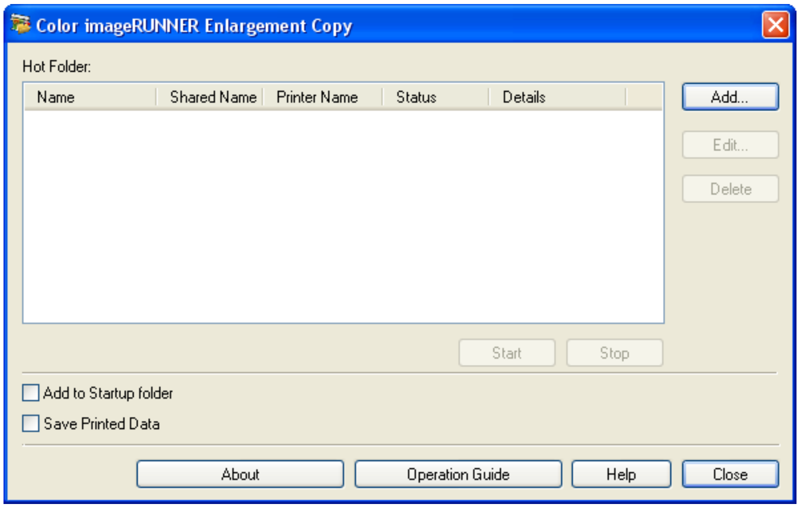
- If you click on the **Add to Startup folder** check box in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the task bar when starting Windows thereafter.

To start by selecting **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** from the **start** button

1. From the Windows **start** button, select **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

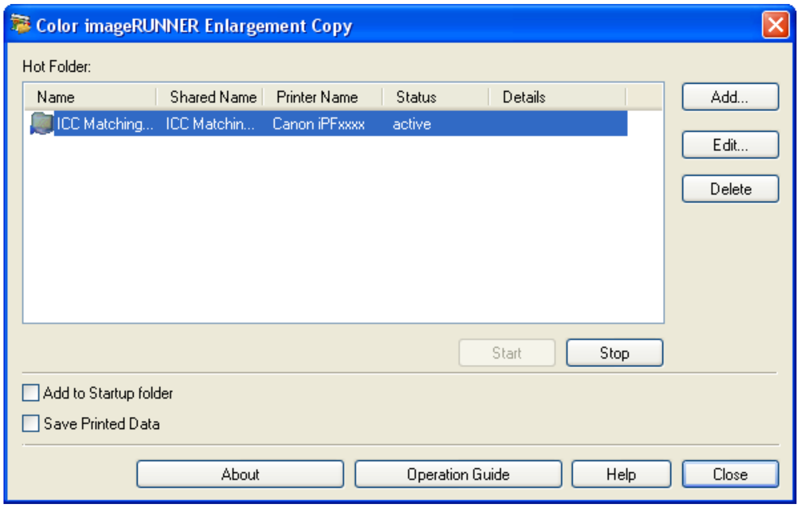

imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Extra Kit
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
Readme_English.txt
Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Extra Kit)

2. The **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box displays.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.292

- **Hot Folder**

  The hot folder list appears.

- **Add** Button

  Click the button to open the **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

- **Edit** Button

  From the **Hot Folder** list, select a hot folder and click the button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

- **Delete** Button

  From the **Hot Folder** list, select a hot folder and click the button to delete the hot folder.

- **Start** Button

  Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **inactive** Hot Folder to **active**.

- **Stop** Button

  Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **active** Hot Folder to **inactive**.

- **Add to Startup folder**

  Register the application in the Windows startup menu.

- **Save Printed Data**

  Automatically saves printed data.

- **About** Button

  Click the button to display the name and the version number of the utility.

- **Operation Guide** Button

  Click the button to display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual**.

Hot Folder

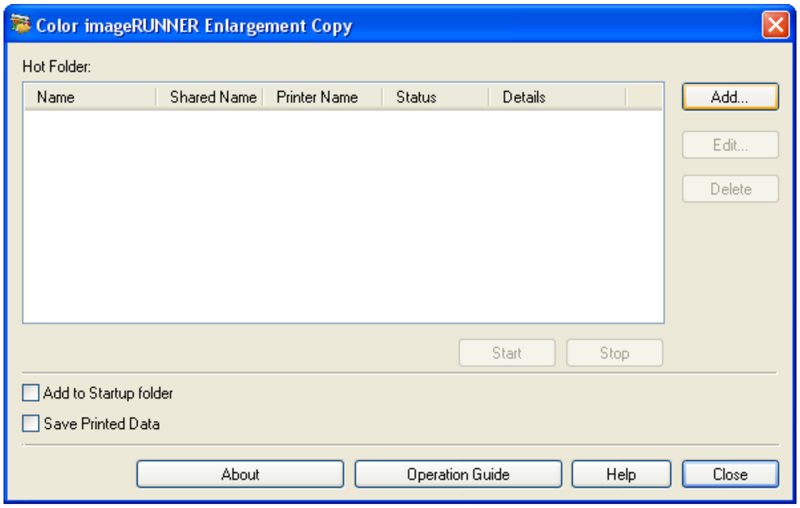
Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

> Note
> - You can create up to 20 hot folders.

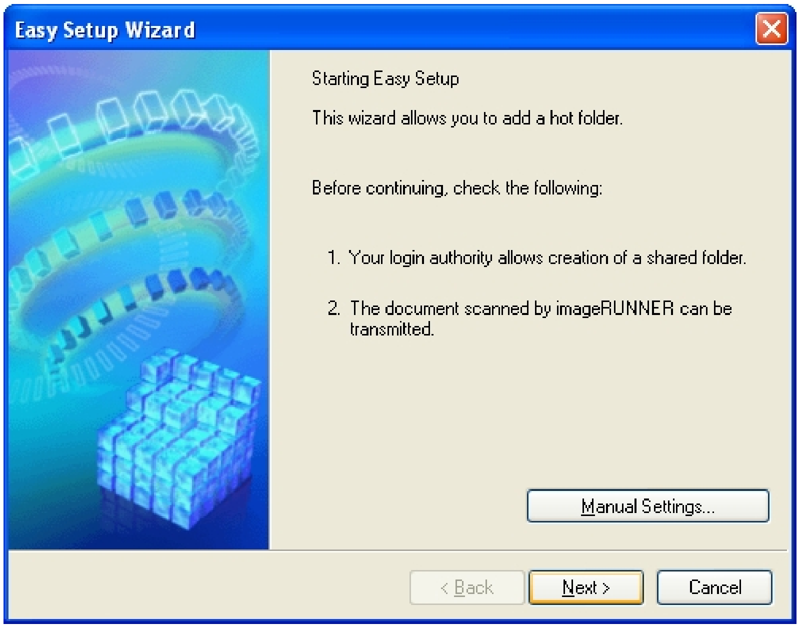
Creating a New Hot Folder

1. Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



> **Note**
> - For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.292

2. The **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box displays.
Click the **Next** button.



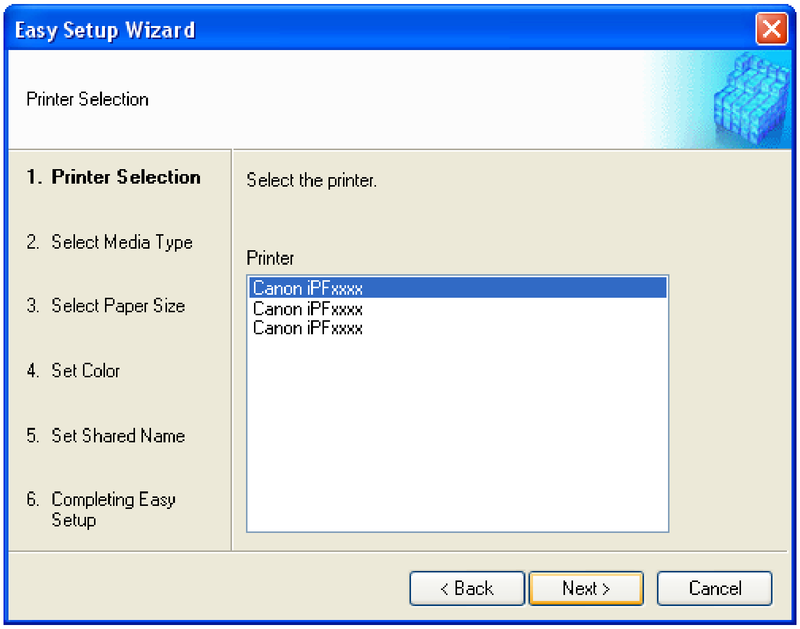
Starting Easy Setup

This wizard allows you to add a hot folder.

Before continuing, check the following:

1. Your login authority allows creation of a shared folder.
2. The document scanned by imageRUNNER can be transmitted.

3. Select the type of printer to use.
Click the **Next** button.



Select the printer.

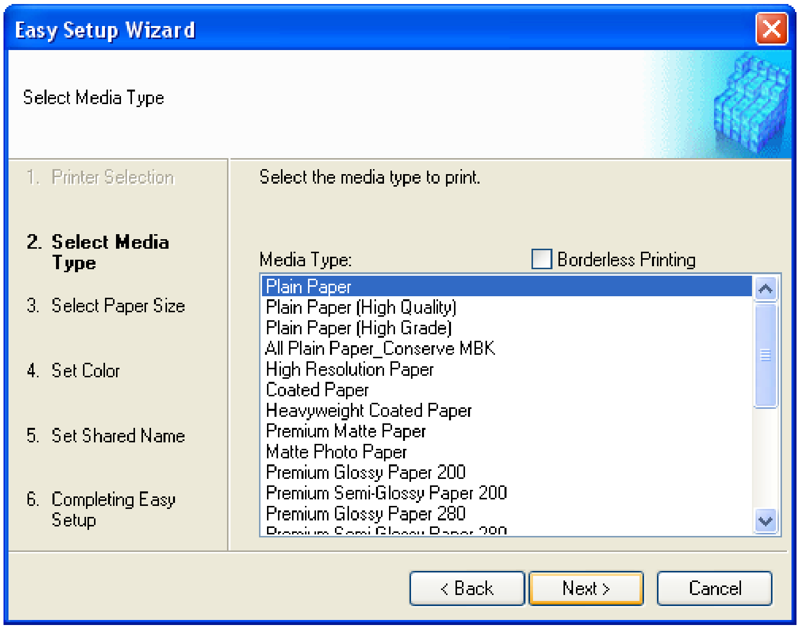
Printer

- Canon iPFxxxx
- Canon iPFxxxx
- Canon iPFxxxx

4. Select the media type to print.

> Note
>
> - If the **Borderless Printing** checkbox is checked, only media types that can be used for borderless printing are displayed in the list.

Click the **Next** button.

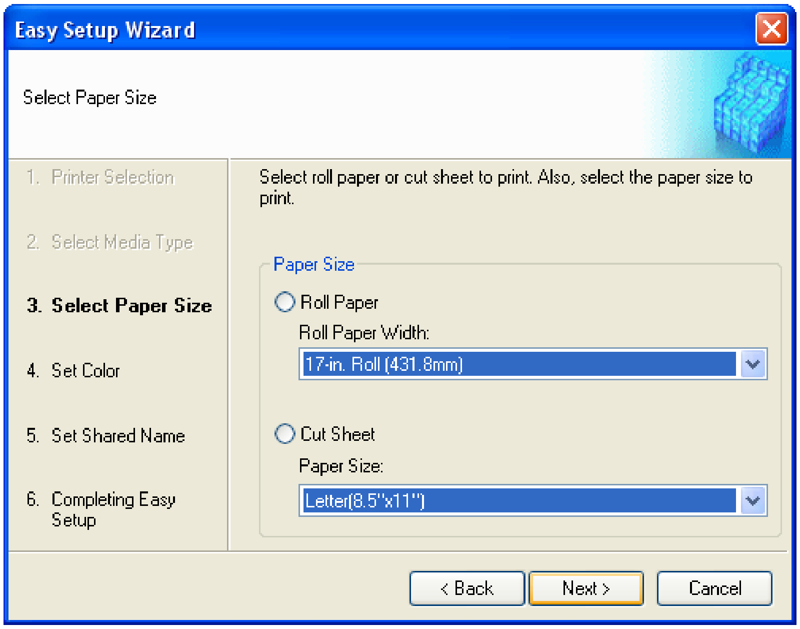


Select the media type to print.

Media Type: ☐ Borderless Printing

- Plain Paper
- Plain Paper (High Quality)
- Plain Paper (High Grade)
- All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK
- High Resolution Paper
- Coated Paper
- Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Premium Matte Paper
- Matte Photo Paper
- Premium Glossy Paper 200
- Premium Semi-Glossy Paper 200
- Premium Glossy Paper 280

5. Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the media size to print.
Click the **Next** button.



Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the paper size to print.

Paper Size

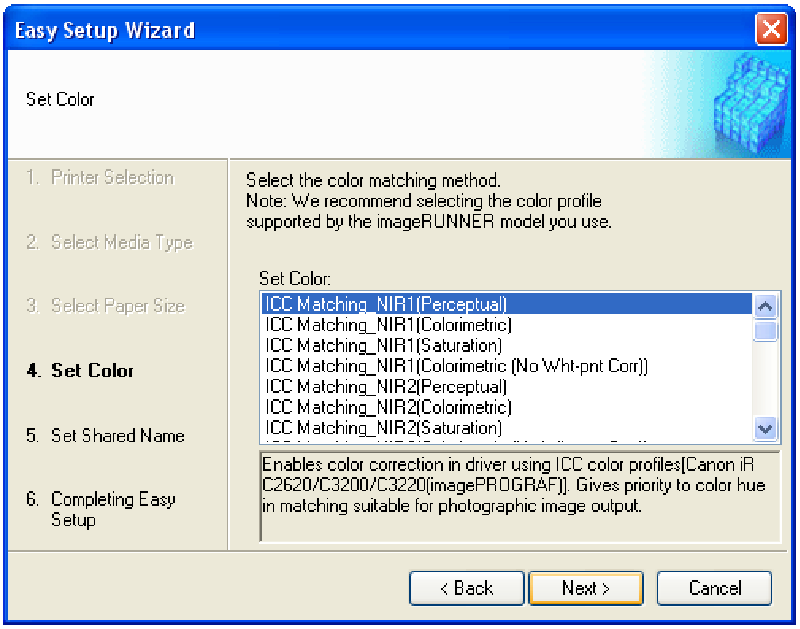
○ Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

○ Cut Sheet

Paper Size: Letter(8.5"x11")

6. Select the color matching method.
Click the **Next** button.



Select the color matching method.
Note: We recommend selecting the color profile supported by the imageRUNNER model you use.

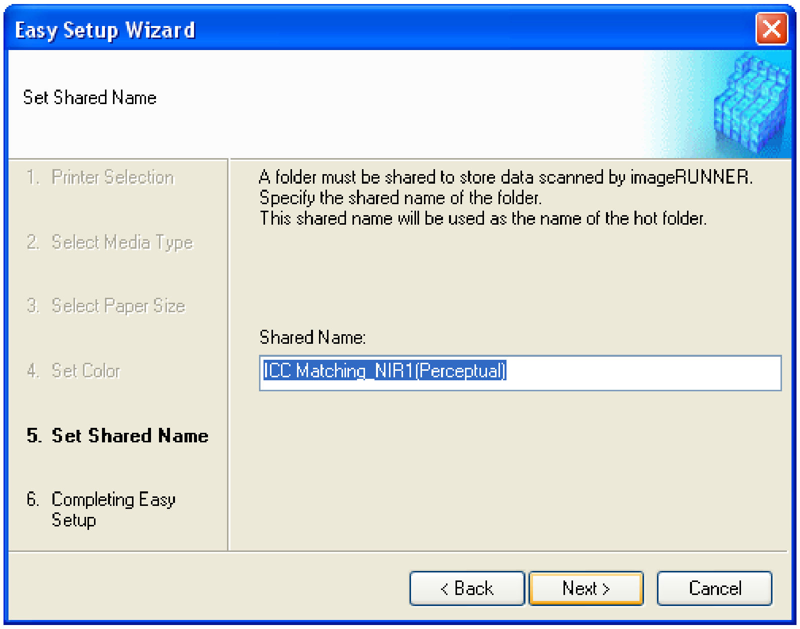
Set Color:
- ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)
- ICC Matching_NIR1(Colorimetric)
- ICC Matching_NIR1(Saturation)
- ICC Matching_NIR1(Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr))
- ICC Matching_NIR2(Perceptual)
- ICC Matching_NIR2(Colorimetric)
- ICC Matching_NIR2(Saturation)

Enables color correction in driver using ICC color profiles(Canon iR C2620/C3200/C3220(imagePROGRAF)). Gives priority to color hue in matching suitable for photographic image output.

7. To receive a document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER, you need to share a folder. Enter the folder shared name in **Shared Name**.
Click the **Next** button.

Note

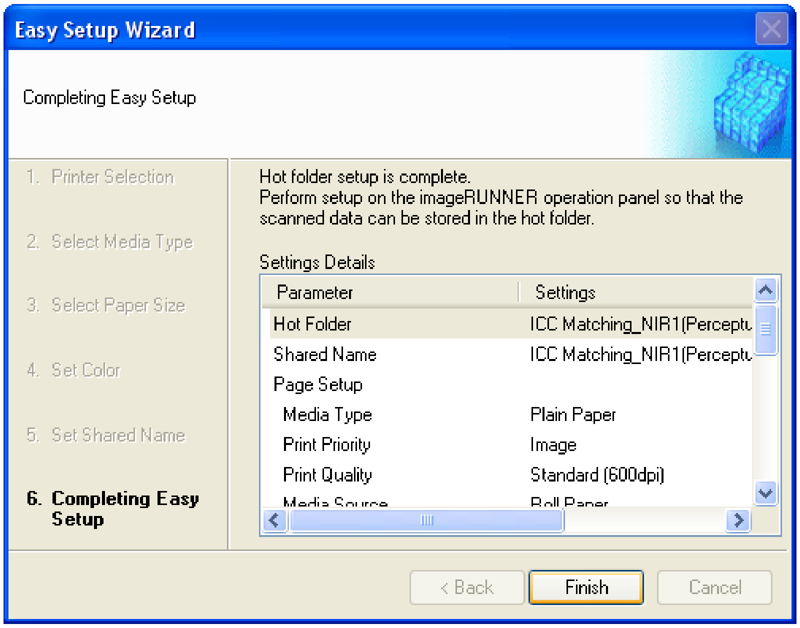
- This shared name is used as the name of the hot folder.
- You cannot use the **Back** button, after clicking the **Next** button here.



A folder must be shared to store data scanned by imageRUNNER.
Specify the shared name of the folder.
This shared name will be used as the name of the hot folder.

Shared Name: ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)

8. Click **Finish** button to close the **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box.

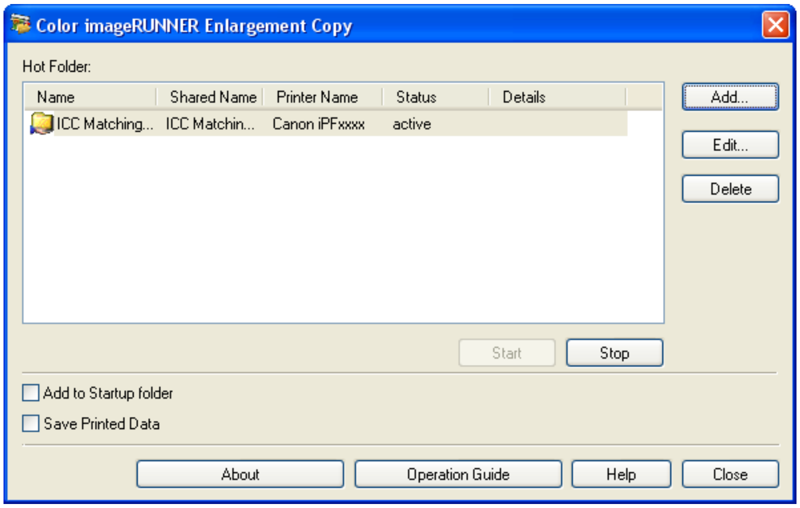


Hot folder setup is complete.
Perform setup on the imageRUNNER operation panel so that the scanned data can be stored in the hot folder.

Settings Details

Parameter	Settings
Hot Folder	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptu
Shared Name	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptu
Page Setup	
Media Type	Plain Paper
Print Priority	Image
Print Quality	Standard (600dpi)
Media Source	Roll Paper

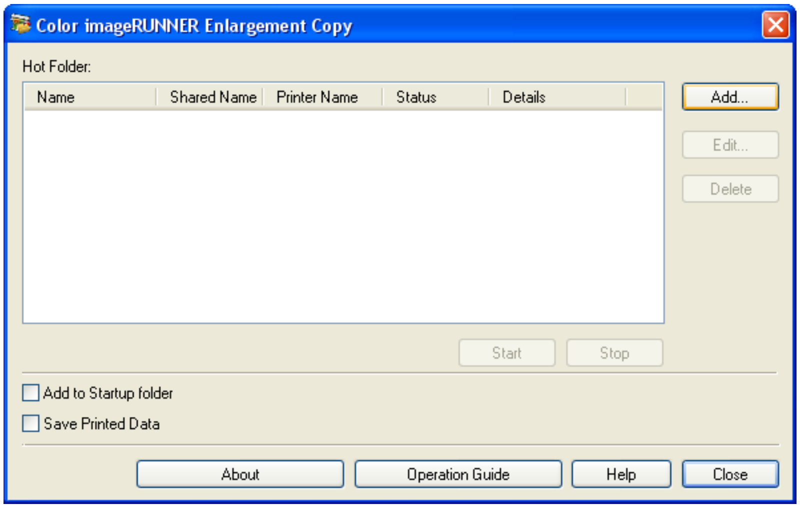
The hot folder you have created appears in the **Hot Folder** list in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder

1. Share the folder you want to specify as a hot folder.

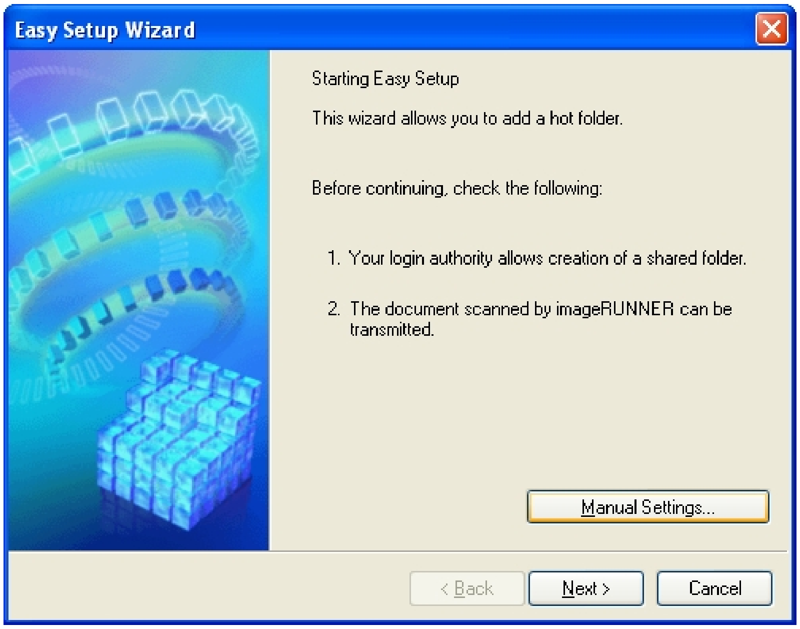
2. Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.292

3. The **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box displays.
   Click the **Manual Settings** button.



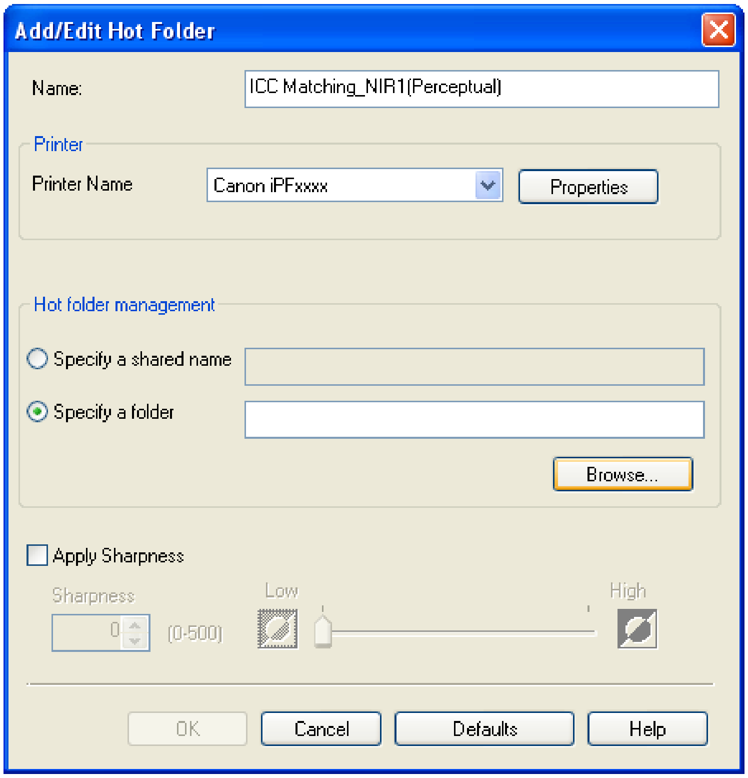
Starting Easy Setup

This wizard allows you to add a hot folder.

Before continuing, check the following:

1. Your login authority allows creation of a shared folder.
2. The document scanned by imageRUNNER can be transmitted.

4. The **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box displays.
   Enter the hot folder name in **Name**.
   Click the **Browse** botton, with selecting **Specify a folder**, to set the existing shared folder.



Name: ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)

Printer Name: Canon iPFxxxx

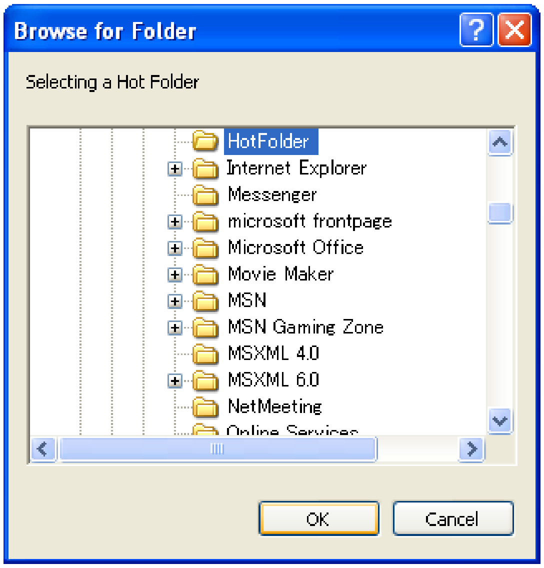
○ Specify a shared name

● Specify a folder

☐ Apply Sharpness

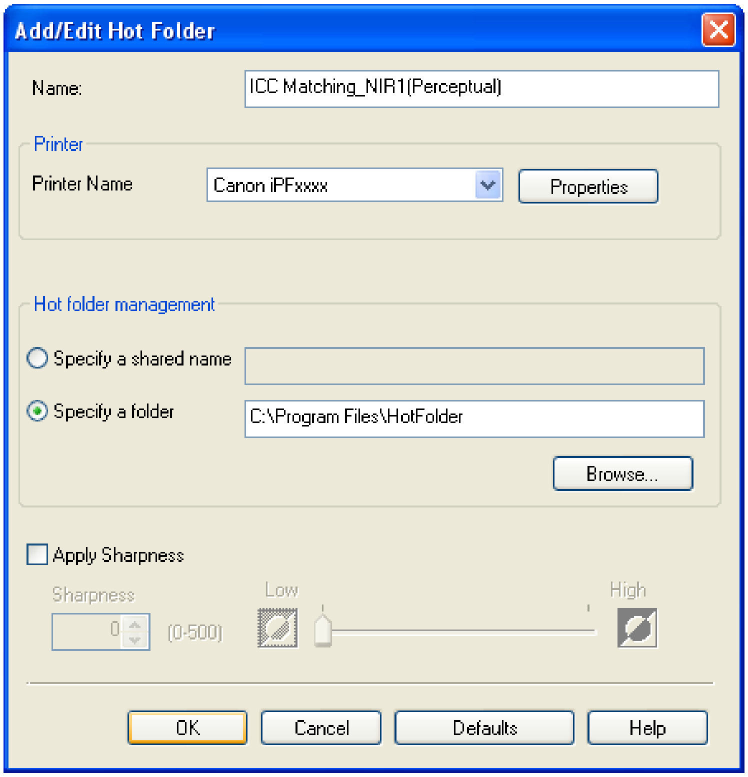
Sharpness 0 (0-500)

5. The location of the folders will appear.
Select the folder to specify a hot folder, and click the **OK** button.


Browse for Folder

Selecting a Hot Folder

6. As necessary, set the print conditions in the hot folder. (See "Setting the Print Parameters.") →P.303
Click the **OK** button to close the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.


Add/Edit Hot Folder

Name: ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)

Printer

Printer Name: Canon iPFxxxx

Hot folder management

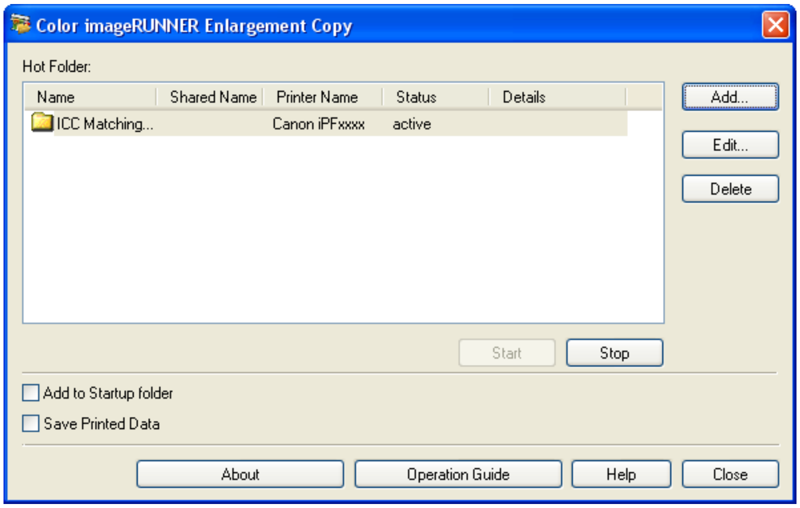
○ Specify a shared name

● Specify a folder: C:\Program Files\HotFolder

☐ Apply Sharpness

Sharpness: 0 (0-500)

The hot folder you have created appears in the **Hot Folder** list in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Hot Folder:

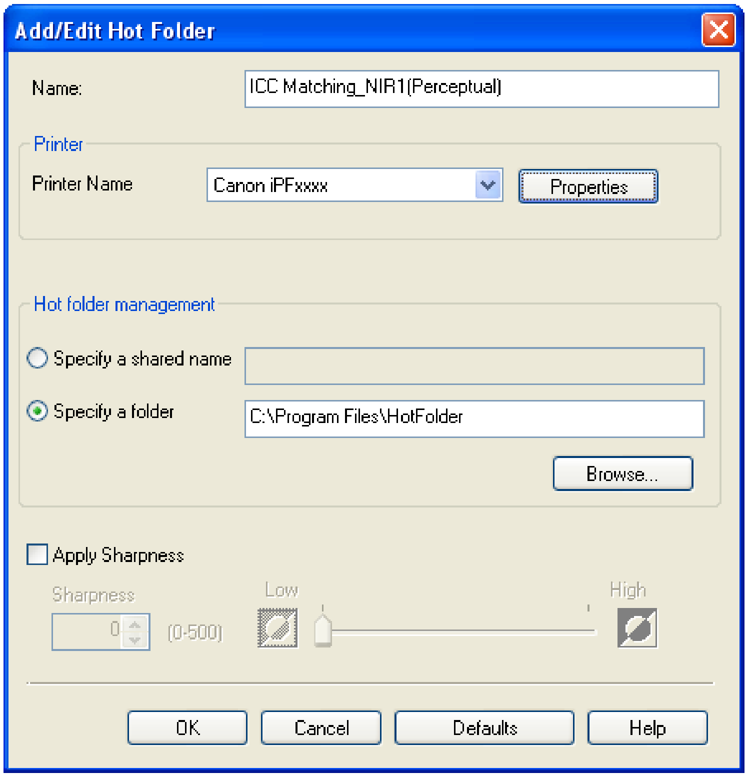
Name	Shared Name	Printer Name	Status	Details
ICC Matching...		Canon iPFxxxx	active	

☐ Add to Startup folder

☐ Save Printed Data

Setting the Print Parameters

The printer driver opens when you click the **Properties** button in the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



Name: ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)

Printer Name: Canon iPFxxxx

○ Specify a shared name

● Specify a folder: C:\Program Files\HotFolder

☐ Apply Sharpness

Sharpness: 0 (0-500)

Refer to Printer Driver →P.202 for details on the printer driver.

Note

- The only three sheets displayed are the **Main** sheet, the **Page Setup** sheet, and the **Layout** sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

- **Apply Sharpness**

  Place a checkmark here to set the sharpness.

  Drag the slider bar to the left or right to adjust. You can also adjust by directly entering a number in the numeric input field.

> Note
> - You can input between 0 and 500.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.
> - You cannot be applied to PDF files.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

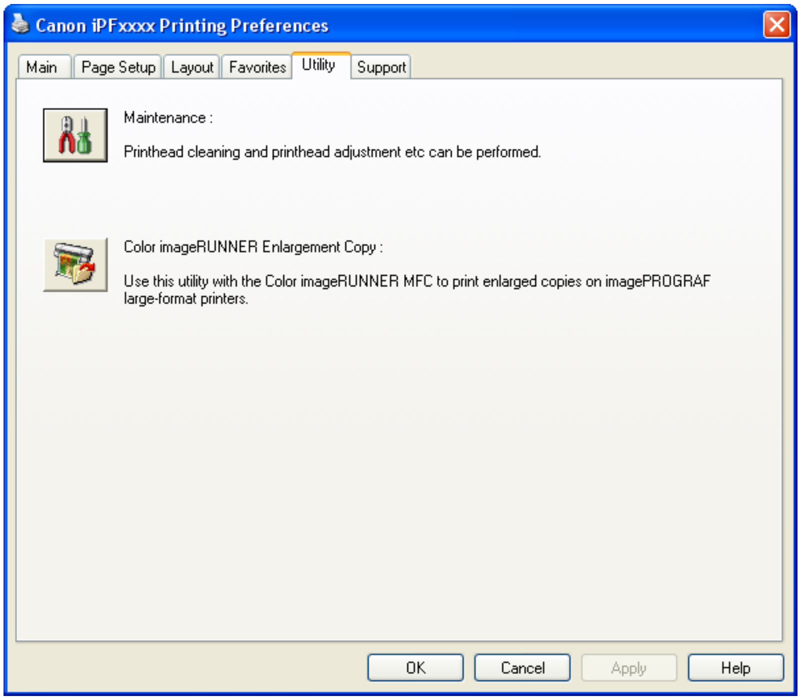
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu .") →P.213

2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



Maintenance :

Printhead cleaning and printhead adjustment etc can be performed.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy :

Use this utility with the Color imageRUNNER MFC to print enlarged copies on imagePROGRAF large-format printers.

3. Click **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.

2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.

3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.

4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional

The Features of Print Plug-In

The main features of Print Plug-In are as follows.

- You can automatically detect the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB-use images, etc., and automatically set optimal profiles. Thus, you can print without the trouble of configuring settings.
- You can directly process image data on Photoshop, and forward the image data to a printer. In this way, you can process 16-bit image data in addition to 8-bit image data.
- By using the preview function for images based on real images, and the preview function for layouts based on image positioning by media size, you can use this software to make color adjustments and confirm print layout.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.
- By using the print history management function, you can import past print settings parameters. Additionally, you can save preferences as a file.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Print Plug-In settings (the arrangement of the image in the layout preview, the print start position, and the media size).

- Loss of gradation in dark areas can be reduced by performing black point compensation.

Note

- Adobe CMM is required in order to use the black point compensation function.

- You can perform printing press simulation printing by specifying the printing press profile.

Operating Environment

The Print Plug-In operating environment is as follows.

- Compatible Operating System
  Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7
- Compatible Photoshop Version
  Photoshop CS5, Photoshop CS4, Photoshop CS3
- Compatible Digital Photo Professional Version
  Digital Photo Professional 3.8x or later
- Software needed for Print Plug-In Installation
  Photoshop or Digital Photo Professional, imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Note

- For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.
- The version of supporting OS differs for each version of Photoshop, For details, consult Adobe Incorporated.
- 32-bit Print Plug-In in 32-bit Photoshop and 64-bit Print Plug-In in 64-bit Photoshop must be installed.
- The supported OS version differs for each version of Digital Photo Professional.

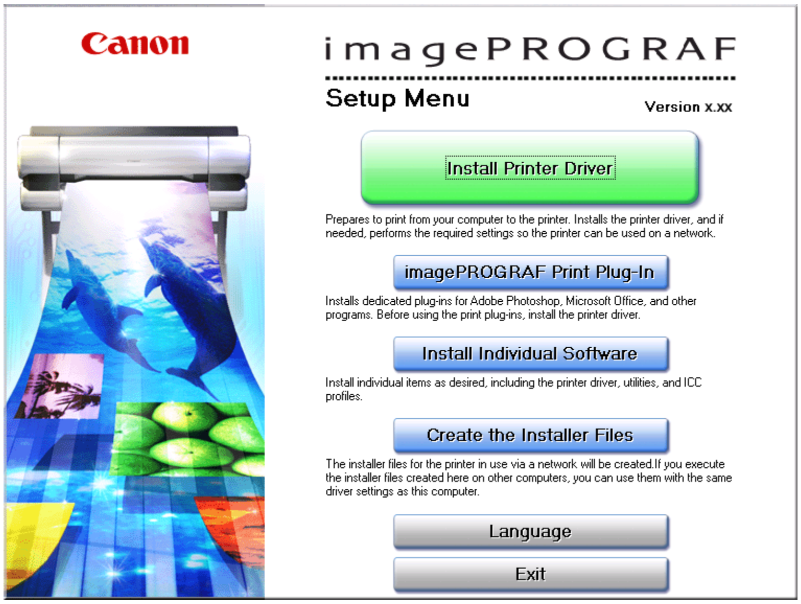
Installation Procedures

The procedures to install Print Plug-In are as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive to start the installer.

> Note
>
> - If the installer screen does not appear, open the CD-ROM icon in **My Computer** and click on **setup.exe** to open the icon.

2. Click **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-in** button.


Canon
imagePROGRAF
Setup Menu
Version x.xx
Install Printer Driver
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
Install Individual Software
Create the Installer Files
Language
Exit

Prepares to print from your computer to the printer. Installs the printer driver, and if needed, performs the required settings so the printer can be used on a network.

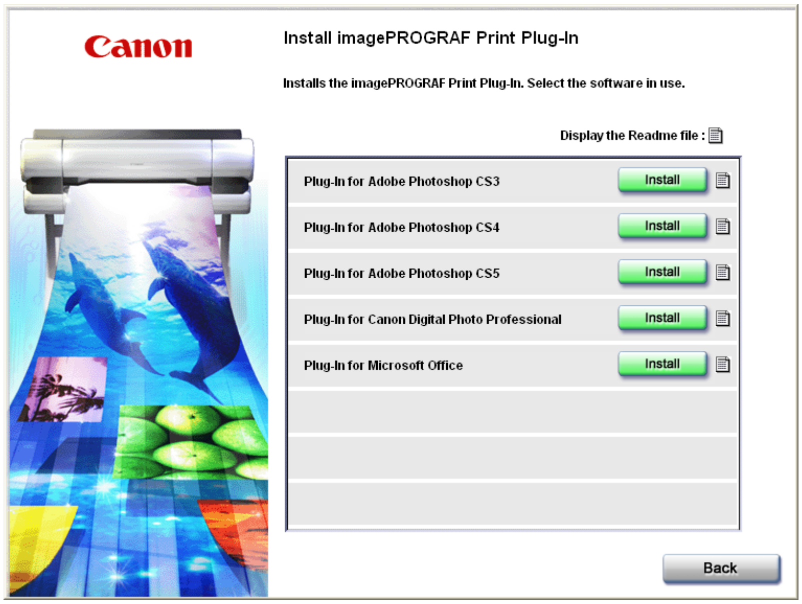
Installs dedicated plug-ins for Adobe Photoshop, Microsoft Office, and other programs. Before using the print plug-ins, install the printer driver.

Install individual items as desired, including the printer driver, utilities, and ICC profiles.

The installer files for the printer in use via a network will be created.If you execute the installer files created here on other computers, you can use them with the same driver settings as this computer.

3. Click the appropriate **Install** button for your Print Plug-In.

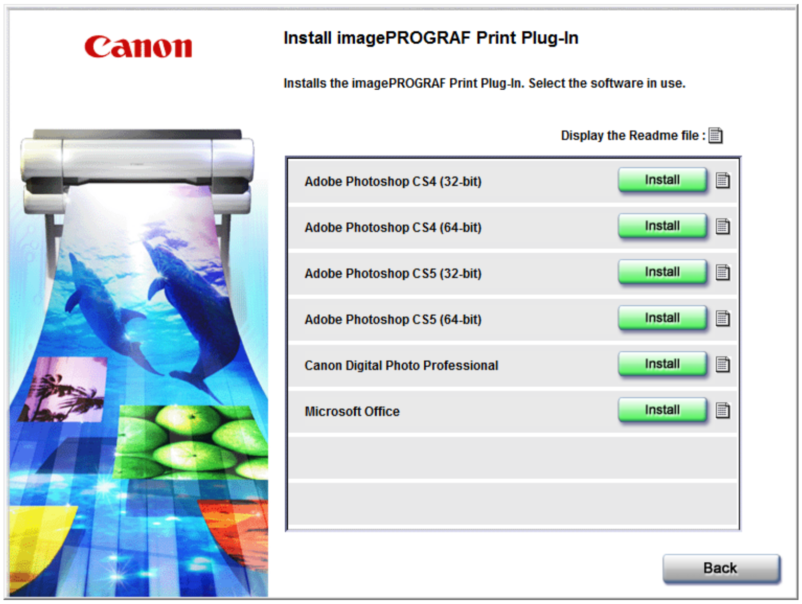
- For 32-bit Windows



Installs the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In. Select the software in use.

Plug-In for Adobe Photoshop CS3
Plug-In for Adobe Photoshop CS4
Plug-In for Adobe Photoshop CS5
Plug-In for Canon Digital Photo Professional
Plug-In for Microsoft Office

- For 64-bit Windows



Install imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

Installs the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In. Select the software in use.

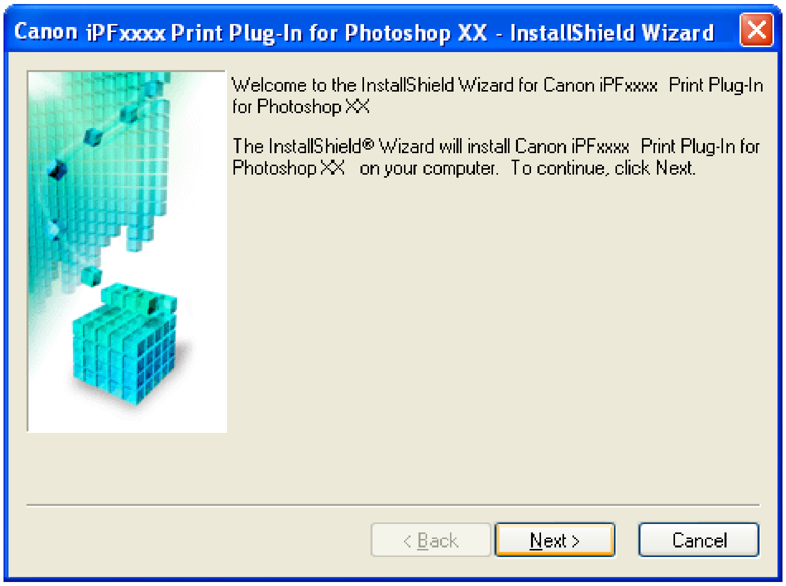
Display the Readme file :

Adobe Photoshop CS4 (32-bit)	Install
Adobe Photoshop CS4 (64-bit)	Install
Adobe Photoshop CS5 (32-bit)	Install
Adobe Photoshop CS5 (64-bit)	Install
Canon Digital Photo Professional	Install
Microsoft Office	Install

Note

- If a version of Photoshop that is not compatible with Print Plug-In is installed, the message **No target software exists.** is displayed. Install Print Plug-In in a computer with a compatible Photoshop installed. (See "Operating Environment.") →P.308
- If the folder for the Photoshop Plug-In to install Print Plug-In cannot be found, **Specify the destination for installation of the plug-in?** will appear. In this case, refer to the Photoshop manual then specify a folder for the Plug-In.
- The Print Plug-In cannot be installed in Photoshop until after Photoshop has been installed and then opened at least once on a PC. Install the Print Plug-In after installing, opening and quitting Photoshop.

4. Click **Next** button.

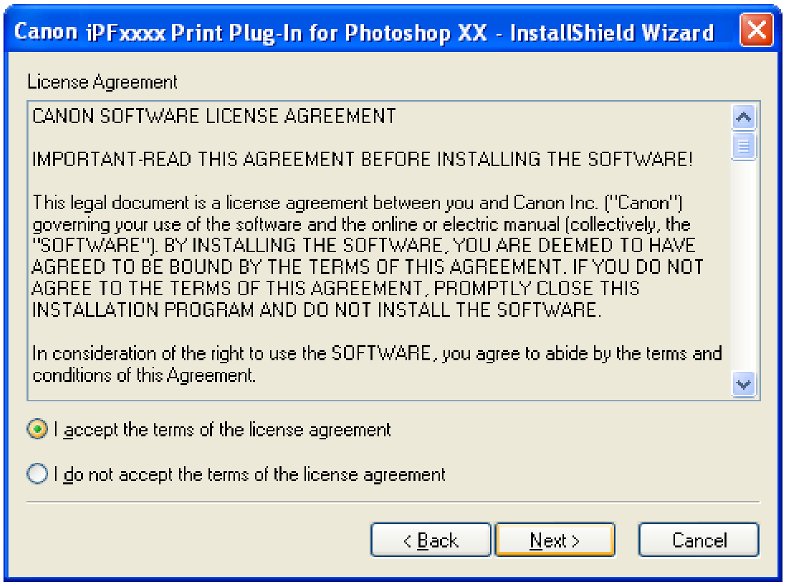


Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX - InstallShield Wizard

Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX

The InstallShield® Wizard will install Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX on your computer. To continue, click Next.

5. After you have read the Licensing Agreement, select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click the **Next** button.


Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX - InstallShield Wizard

License Agreement

CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

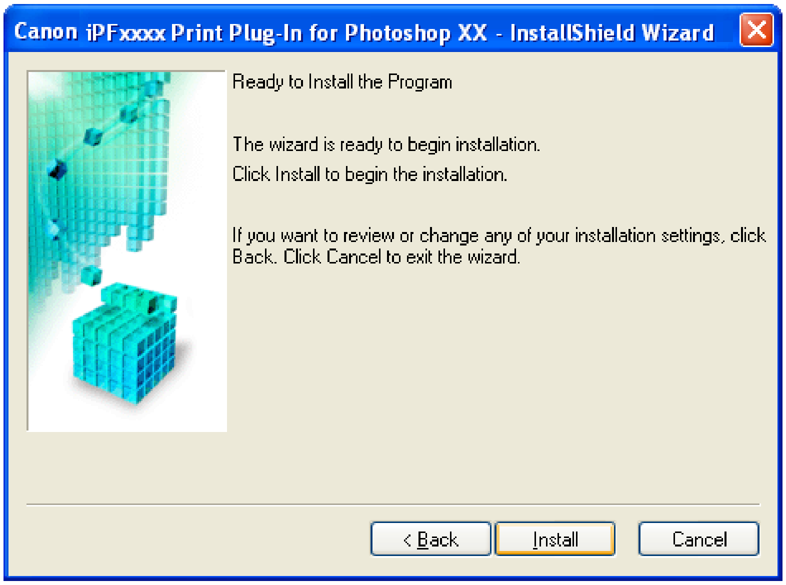
This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

● I accept the terms of the license agreement

○ I do not accept the terms of the license agreement

6. Click **Install** button.


Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX - InstallShield Wizard

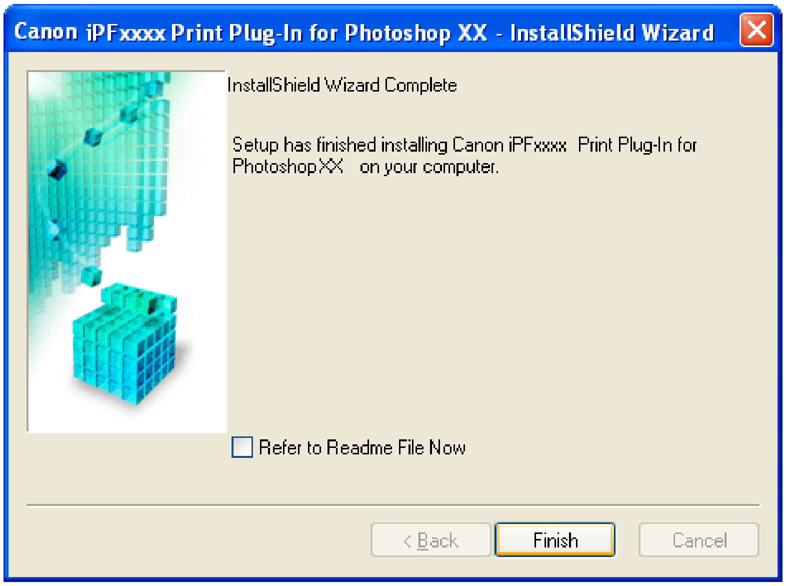
Ready to Install the Program

The wizard is ready to begin installation.

Click Install to begin the installation.

If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.

7. Click **Finish** button.



Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop XX - InstallShield Wizard

InstallShield Wizard Complete

Setup has finished installing Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for PhotoshopXX on your computer.

☐ Refer to Readme File Now

Print Plug-In installation is complete.

Uninstall Procedures

The procedures for uninstalling the Print Plug-In are as follows.

- Uninstall the Print Plug-In for Photoshop

1. Select **start** in **Control Panel** menu.
2. Open **Add or Remove Programs** (For Windows 7 and Windows Vista, **Programs and Features**).
3. Select **Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Photoshop xx**, then click **Change/Remove**.

- Uninstall the Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional

1. Select **start** in **Control Panel** menu.
2. Open **Add or Remove Programs** (For Windows 7 and Windows Vista, **Programs and Features**).
3. Select **Canon iPFxxxx Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional**, then click **Change/Remove**.

Note

- iPFxxxx is the name of your printer.

Starting from Photoshop

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In from Photoshop.

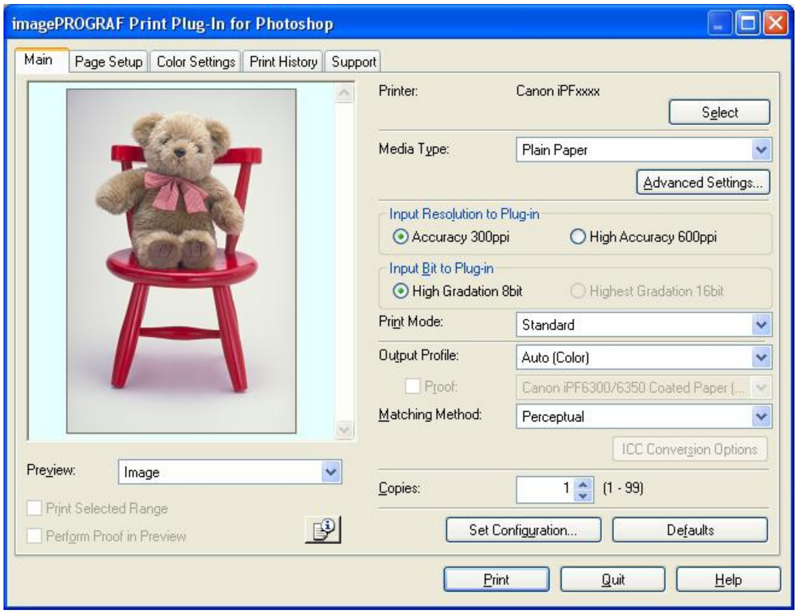
1. Start Photoshop.

2. Open the image that you wish to print.

3. If required, select the print range.

> Note
>
> - Images for use with Print Plug-In are less than 60,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 60,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **Export**(or **Data Export**) from the **File** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer.
The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop window (known below as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

> Important
>
> - When a profile is created with a commercially available profile creation tool, it may be created in ICCv4 format. When an image source profile is ICCv4, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment.
> When Adobe CMM is not installed in a Windows XP environment, a message is displayed, and the source profile changes to Adobe RGB. To use an ICCv4 profile in a Windows XP environment, exit Plug-In and then install Adobe CMM. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 .

> Note
>
> - If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, install the newest imagePROGRAF printer driver and then attempt step 3.
> **The imagePROGRAF Printer Driver for iPFxxxx is either not installed correctly or not installed at all. Please install.**
> (The iPFxxxx portion of the above message will reflect your printer name.)
> - If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, convert the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color and then attempt step 3.
> **Set the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color.**
> - When the color space of the entry screen is CMYK, it changes to AdobeRGB due to processing with Print Plug-In. Also, [Relative Colorimetric] is used for the matching method.

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In from Digital Photo Professional.

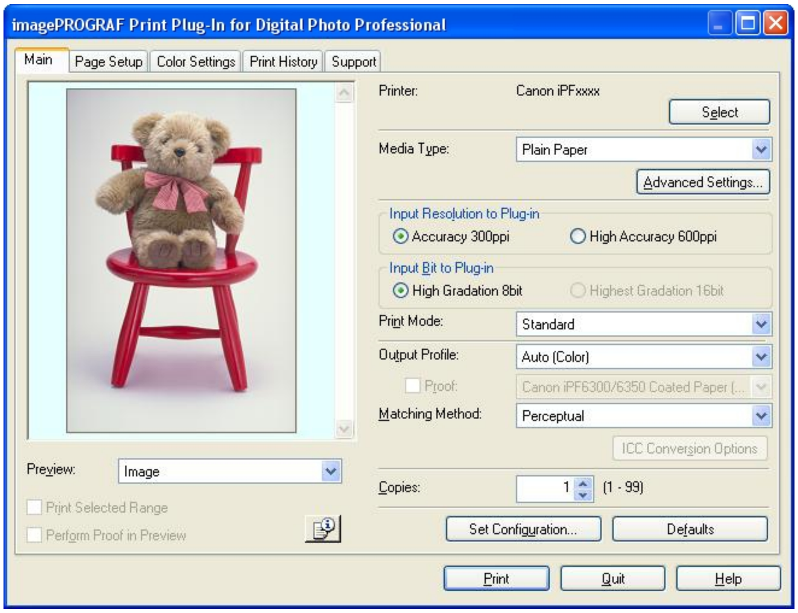
1. Start Digital Photo Professional.

2. Open the RGB color image that you want to print.

3. If required, select the print range.

> **Note**
>
> - Images for use with Print Plug-In are less than 6,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 6,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **File** from the **Plug-in printing** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer.
The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional window (hereinafter referred to as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

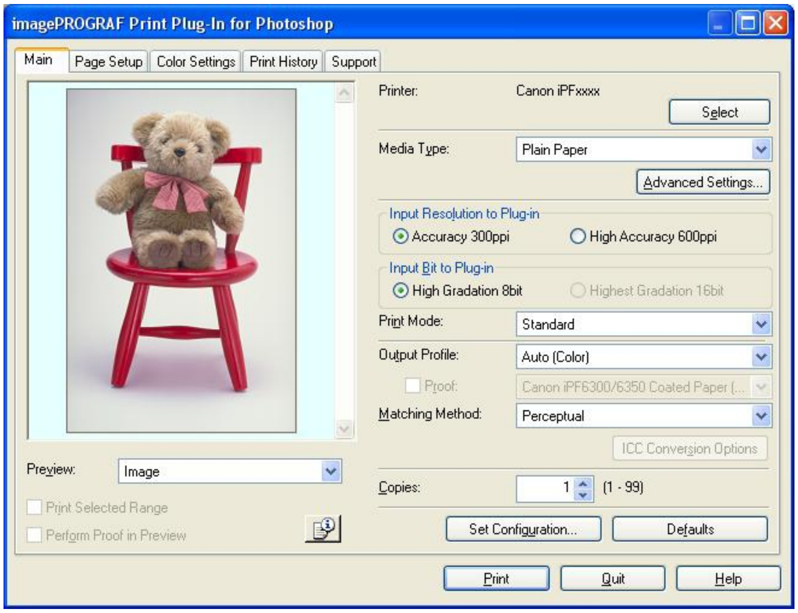
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

> **Important**
>
> - When a profile is created with a commercially available profile creation tool, it may be created in ICCv4 format. When an image source profile is ICCv4, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment.
> When Adobe CMM is not installed in a Windows XP environment, a message is displayed, and the source profile changes to Adobe RGB. To use an ICCv4 profile in a Windows XP environment, exit Plug-In and then install Adobe CMM. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 .

Print Plug-In Main Window

The Print Plug-In main window consists of the sheet selection area, and the preview and button area.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

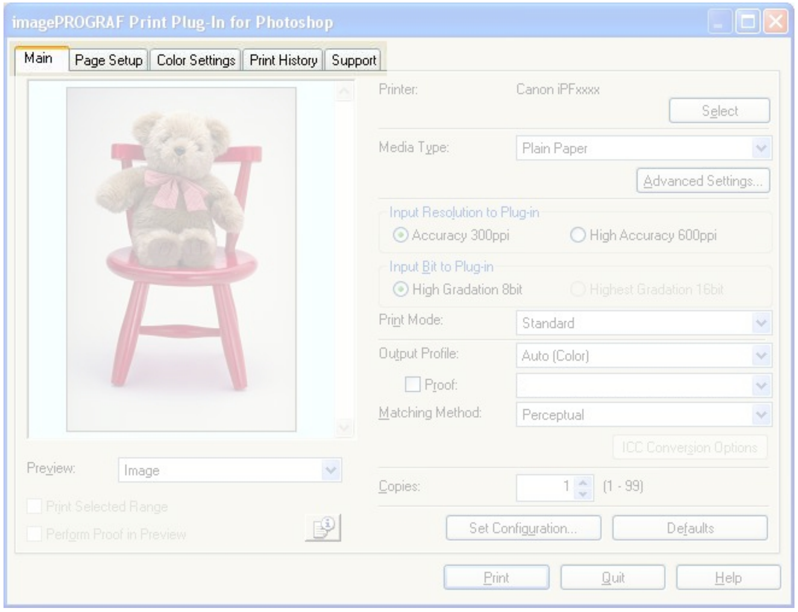
Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Sheet Selection Area**

  The tabs used to switch between each sheet on the Print Plug-In window are displayed.

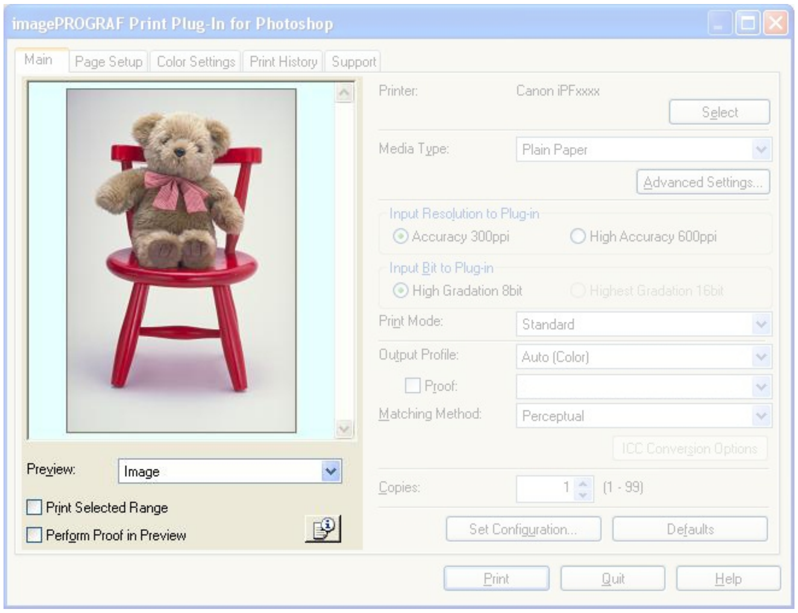


When you select a tab, a sheet is displayed. The settings available on each sheet are as follows.

- Main Sheet →P.318
- Page Setup Sheet →P.322
- Color Settings Sheet →P.325
- Print History Sheet →P.326
- Support Sheet →P.327

- Preview Area

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.

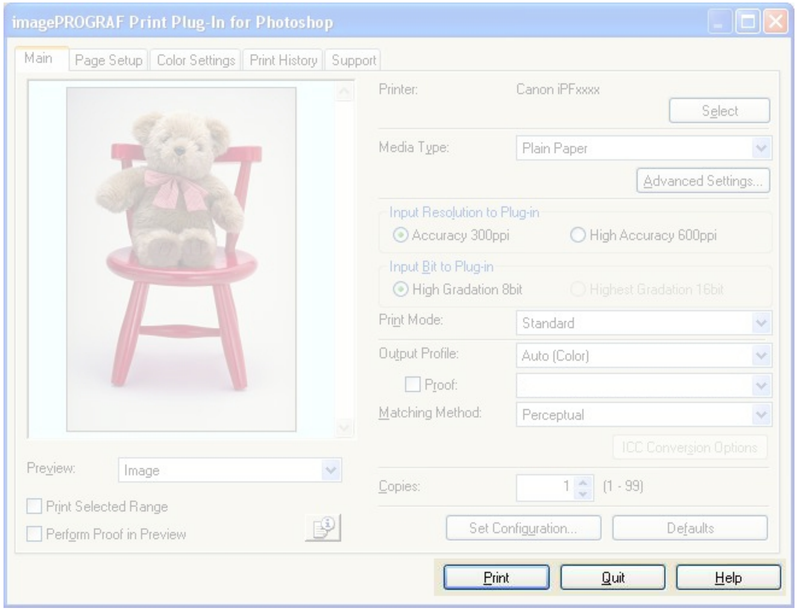


Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Auto (Color)
☐ Proof:
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

About the settings available on the preview area, see "Preview Area." →P.317

- Button Area

This contains the buttons **Print**, **Quit** and **Help**

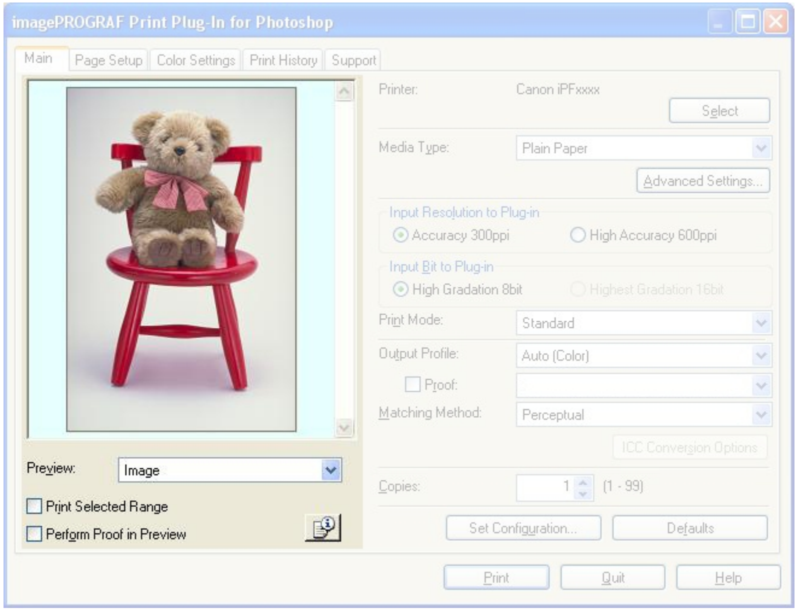


Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Auto (Color)
☐ Proof:
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Print**Button
  Click this button to begin printing.
- **Quit**Button
  Click this button to close the Print Plug-In window and return to application software.
- **Help**Button
  Click this button to display the Print Plug-In Help file.

Preview Area

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof:

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Preview**
  Select the preview display method.
  For more information about preview, see "Utilize Three Types of Previews." →P.336

Setting	Details
Print Area Layout	Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the **Paper Size** set. *You can change the image print position when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as ✋.
Image	The entire image is displayed. *You can select the print range when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as 🔍. *When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as 🔍, the selected area is deselected.
Roll Paper Preview	Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper. *To select **Roll Paper Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

- **Print Selected Range**
  Place a checkmark here to only print the selected range.

> Note
>
> - When you select **Preview** in the **Image**, then select a portion of the image on the preview display, this becomes valid.

- **Perform Proof in Preview**
  Place a checkmark here to simulate the colors of the output product in the preview.

Note

- If **Auto (Color)** is selected under **Output Profile**, some media types are enabled.
- If ICC profile is selected under **Output Profile**, this is always enabled.
- The actual color balance of the print product and the simulation product may differ with some environments and conditions. In addition, when you have selected an ICC Profile with **Output Profile** and it is not compatible with the printer or media that you are using, the color balance of the actual print product will differ.

- **Image Properties** button

  When you click the button to open the **Image Properties** dialog box, where **Image Size**, **Resolution**, **Bit** and **Color Space** information of the image imported to Print Plug-In are displayed.
  Click the **Close** button to return to Print Plug-In.

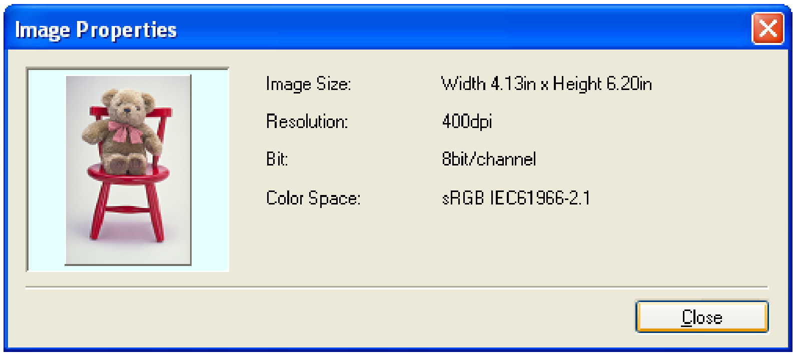
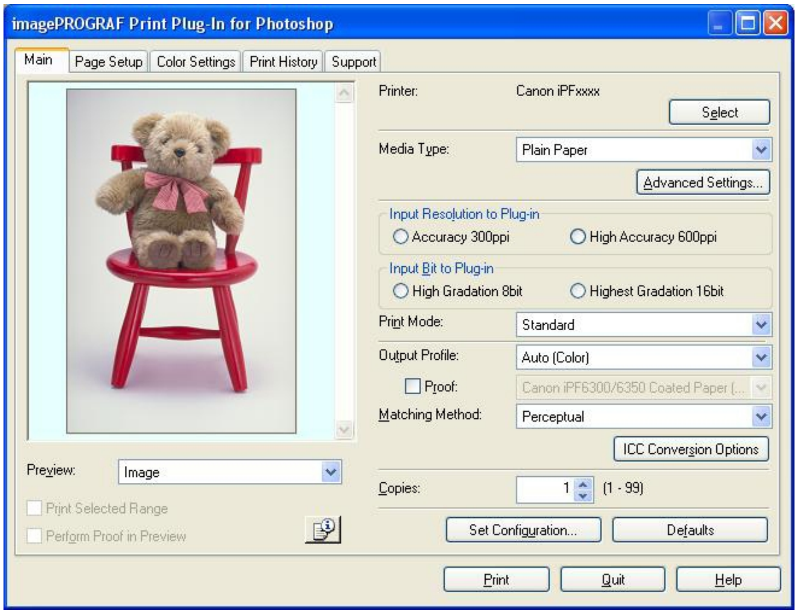


Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in
Resolution: 400dpi
Bit: 8bit/channel
Color Space: sRGB IEC61966-2.1

Main Sheet

You can use this sheet to perform basic settings such as selecting a printer, setting the media type, or adjusting image quality.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Image

- **Printer**

  The printer types are displayed.

- **Select** button

Click this button to display the **Select Printer** dialog box.

When you click the **OK** button after selecting the printer in the **Select Printer** dialog box, you can change the printer that corresponds with Print Plug-In.

- **Media Type**

This allows you to select the media type.

For more information about **Media Type**, see "Customize Media Settings." →P.358

Note
- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Advanced Settings** button

Click the button to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

For more information about the media detailed settings, see "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box." →P.328

- **Input Resolution to Plug-in**

You can select the resolution to process the image with Print Plug-In.

The following settings are available for resolution.

Setting	Details
Accuracy 300ppi	This processes images at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
High Accuracy 600ppi	This processes images at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity. *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**

- **Input Bit to Plug-in**

You can select the bit number to process with Print Plug-In.

The following settings are available for the input bit number.

Setting	Details
High Gradation 8bit	This processes images with at 8bit/channel (24 bit).
Highest Gradation 16bit	This processes images with at 16bit/channel (48 bit). *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type** and **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

- **Print Mode**

Selecting the printing mode strikes the balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The following settings are available for the print mode.

Setting	Details
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.

Setting	Details
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **Highest** or **High** mode.
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in fast mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.
Highest (Max. No. of Passes)	If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Note

- The selectable fields may vary according to the **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in** and **Input Bit to Plug-in** settings.

- **Output Profile**

You can select the output profile.

The following settings are available for the output profile.

Setting	Details
Auto (Color)	Performs the optimum color conversion from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc. You should normally select these settings.
Auto (Monochrome Photo)	Performs the best color conversion to monochrome from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc.
None (No Color Correction)	You cannot perform color conversion with a plug-in. This is useful for creating an original ICC profile.
External ICC Profiles	This selects printer ICC profiles to be output to ICC profiles saved in the OS standard folder. Use the color space of the input data as well as the select ICC profile to perform color conversion.

Important

- To use an ICCv4 profile, you must install AdobeCMM or use Print Plug-In in a Windows Vista or later environment. For details on installing Adobe CMM, refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 .

Note

- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can only be selected for the corresponding media types.

- **Proof**

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.

When this is checked, you can perform printing press simulation prints.

Refer to Perform Printing Press Simulation Print →P.352 for details on printing press simulation prints.

- **Matching Method**

You can select the processing method when performing color conversion.

The following settings are available for the matching method.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	This converts the image to an image with natural color balance and gradation. This is useful for pictures.
Saturation	This converts the image to an image with heightened color saturation. The color balance of pictures and drawings may change.
Relative Colorimetric	This converts the image with emphasis on color balance before the conversion or on visual color balance. This is useful for pictures and drawings.

Note

- When the **Output Profile** you have set is **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** or **None (No Color Correction)**, you cannot select a matching method.

- **ICC Conversion Options** button

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.

When this button is clicked, the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box is displayed allowing you to configure color conversion related settings.

Refer to ICC Conversion Options dialog box →P.331 for details on ICC Conversion Options.

- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note

- The maximum value is 99.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

- **Set Configuration** button

Clicking the button opens the **Set Configuration** dialog box that provides settings for the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.

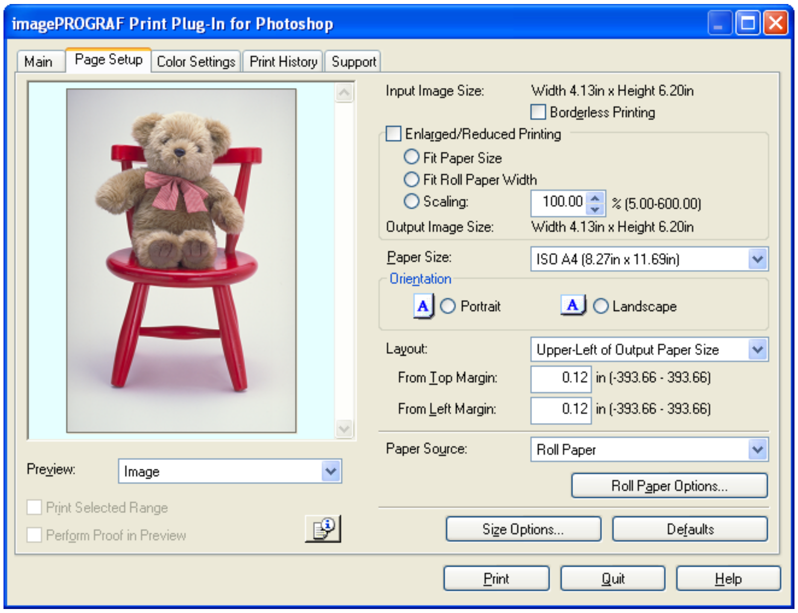
For more information about **Set Configuration**, see "Set Configuration Dialog Box." →P.330

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Main** sheet to their defaults.

Page Setup Sheet

You can use this sheet to set the size of the image to be printed, the media size, and whether to enlarge/reduce the image.



Input Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in

☐ Borderless Printing

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

○ Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling: 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)

Output Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in

Paper Size: ISO A4 (8.27in x 11.69in)

Orientation

○ Portrait ○ Landscape

Layout: Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)

From Left Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)

Paper Source: Roll Paper

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

• Input Image Size

The size of the image imported to Print Plug-In is displayed.

• Borderless Printing

When you place a checkmark here, the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box is displayed and you can print an image without borders.

For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." →P.357

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

• Enlarged/Reduced Printing

When you place a checkmark here, you can print enlarged/reduced images.

When printing an enlarged/reduced image, select the method for enlargement/reduction. The image size sent to the printer is displayed matching the selected method in **Output Image Size**.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the export media size when printing.
Fit Roll Paper Width	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the width of the roll paper with the width of the image when printing. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	This enlarges/reduces the entire image by the specified scaling value. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5-600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

• Output Image Size

The output image size is displayed up to one place after the decimal point in millimeters.

Note
- When **Paper Size** is smaller than **Output Image Size**, part of the image may not print.

• Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

• Orientation

This selects the print orientation.
The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Portrait	Prints the image on the media as it appears on the screen.
Landscape	Prints the image on the media rotated 90 degrees.

• Layout

You can select the print position of an image on the media.
The following settings are available for layout.

Layout

<table>
<tr><th>Setting</th><th colspan="2">Details</th></tr>
<tr><td><b>Upper-Left of Output Paper Size</b></td><td colspan="2">Prints the image with fitting the top left of the active print area for <b>Paper Size</b>.</td></tr>
<tr><td><b>Center of Output Paper Size</b></td><td colspan="2">Prints the center of the image on the center of the selected <b>Paper Size</b>.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3"><b>Specify Print Start Position</b></td><td colspan="2">You can print with specifying the top and left printing start positions in <b>From Top Margin</b> and <b>From Left Margin</b> for <b>Paper Size</b>.</td></tr>
<tr><td><b>From Top Margin</b></td><td>Input the margin from the top of the media in numbers.
*You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.</td></tr>
<tr><td><b>From Left Margin</b></td><td>Input the margin from the left of the media in numbers.
*You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.</td></tr>
</table>

Note
- Select **Print Area Layout** or **Image** in **Preview** when you select **Layout**.

Roll Paper Layout

Setting	Details
Upper-Left of Roll Paper	Prints the top left of Media Size on the top left of the selected roll paper.
Center of Roll Paper	Prints the center of Media Size on the center of the selected roll paper.

Note

- Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview** when you select **Roll Paper Layout**.

- **Paper Source**

You can select the media source.

The following settings are available for media source.

Setting	Details
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.
Cut Sheet	Select to print on the cut sheet.

- **Roll Paper Options** button

Click this button to open the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, where you can set roll paper width and perform auto cut settings.

For more information about the roll paper options, see "Roll Paper Options Dialog Box." →P.332

- **Size Options**

Click the Size Options button to open the **Size Options** dialog box and you can select a media name, size and other settings.

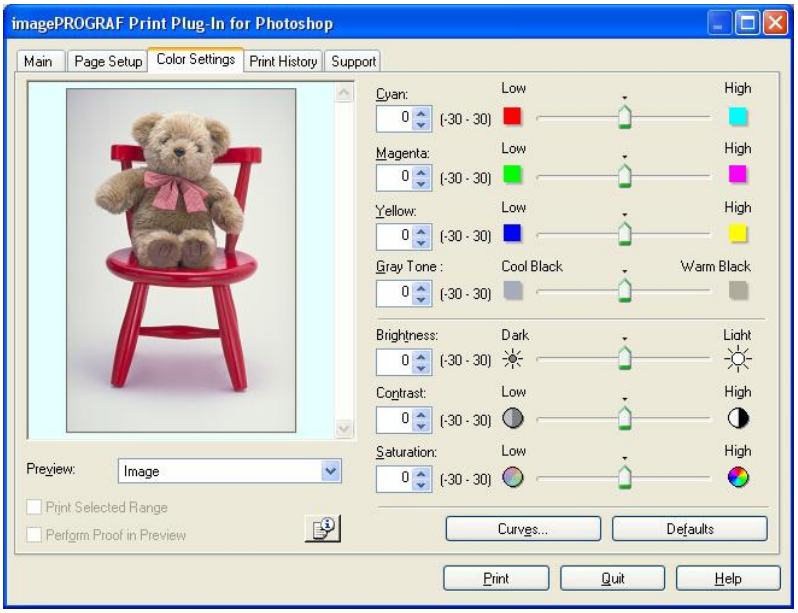
For more information about the size options, see "Size Options Dialog Box." →P.333

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Page Setup** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet

You can use this sheet to adjust image Color, **Brightness**, [**Contrast**, **Saturation**, and you can set the color balance of print product more to your liking.



Cyan: 0 (-30 - 30)

Magenta: 0 (-30 - 30)

Yellow: 0 (-30 - 30)

Gray Tone : 0 (-30 - 30)

Brightness: 0 (-30 - 30)

Contrast: 0 (-30 - 30)

Saturation: 0 (-30 - 30)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Cyan / Magenta / Yellow**

You can adjust the strength or weakness of a color by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Gray Tone**

You can adjust gray tone from cool black (cool tones) to warm black (red tones) by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Brightness**

You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Contrast**

You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Saturation**

You can adjust the saturation of vivid color balance to dark color balance by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Curves** button

Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

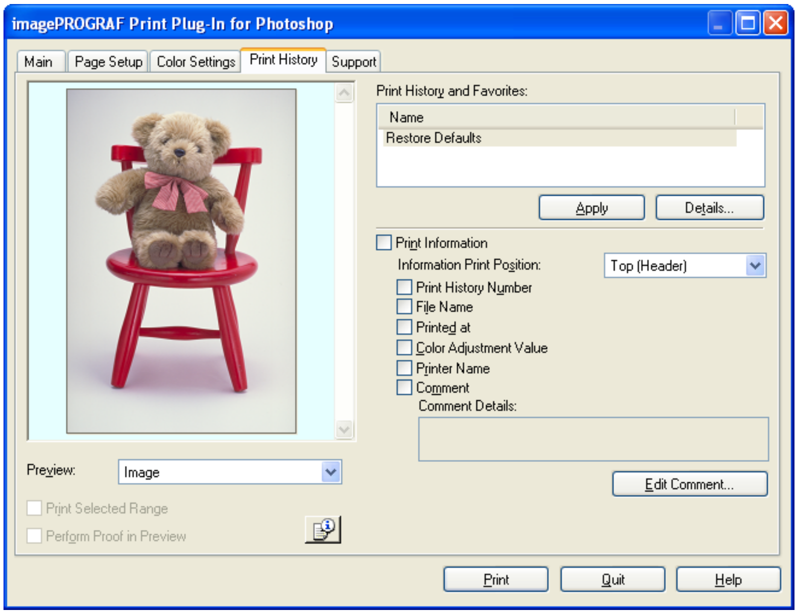
For more information about **Curves**, see "Curves Dialog Box." →P.334

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Print History Sheet

You can use this sheet to apply settings history used in printing, and to print information, such as the image file name, with the image.



☐ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☐ Print History Number

☐ File Name

☐ Printed at

☐ Color Adjustment Value

☐ Printer Name

☐ Comment

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Print History and Favorites**

This displays a list of print preferences.

Select **Restore Defaults** and click the **Apply** button to restore all settings to their initial settings.

> Note
> - You can check the 3 print preferences in the preview display.

- **Apply** button

When you click the button, the print setting content applies to the current image selected with **Print History and Favorites**.

- **Details** button

Click the Details button to open the **Print History Details** dialog box, where you can manage print history.

For more information about the print history details, see "Print History Details Dialog Box." →P.335

- **Print Information**

When you place a checkmark here, you can print the file name and print time and date on the image. The following settings are available for the print position and content.

For more information about **Print Information**, see "Set Information to Print with Image." →P.371

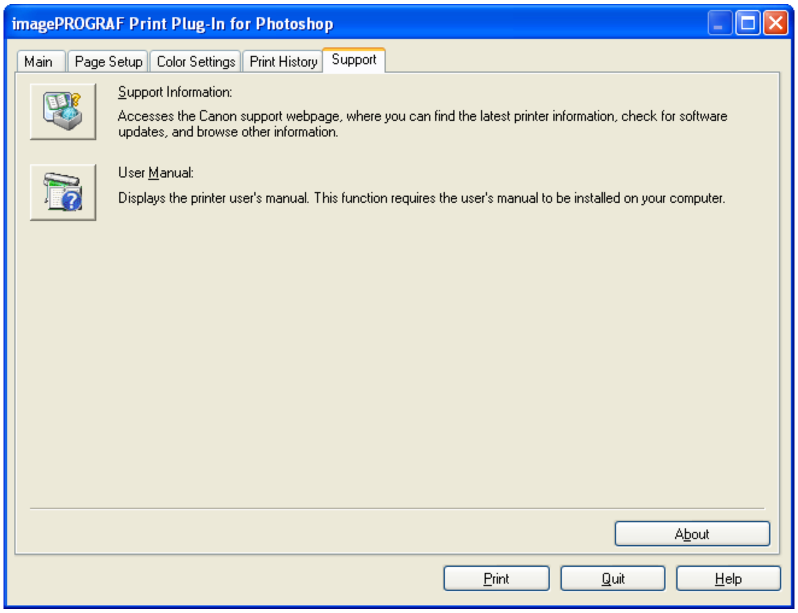
Setting	Details	
Information Print Position	Selects the information print position.	
	Top (Header)	Information is printed on the top of the image.
	Bottom (Footer)	Information is printed on the bottom of the image.
Print History Number	Place a checkmark here to print the print history number.	
File Name	Place a checkmark here to print the file name.	
Printed at	Place a checkmark here to print the time and date.	
Color Adjustment Value	Place a checkmark here to print the color adjustment value.	
Printer Name	Place a checkmark here to print the printer name.	
Comment	Place a checkmark here to print the comment details.	
Comment Details	Place a checkmark here to display the comment details.	

- **Edit Comment** button

Click the button to display the **Edit Comment** dialog box, where you can edit the comment.

Support Sheet

You can display product support information and the electronic manual.



Support Information:

Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

User Manual:

Displays the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

- **Support Information** button

Click the button to display websites that contain the latest product information.

Note

- An Internet connection is needed to view the websites.

- **User Manual** button

Click the button to display the printer manuals installed on the computer.

Note

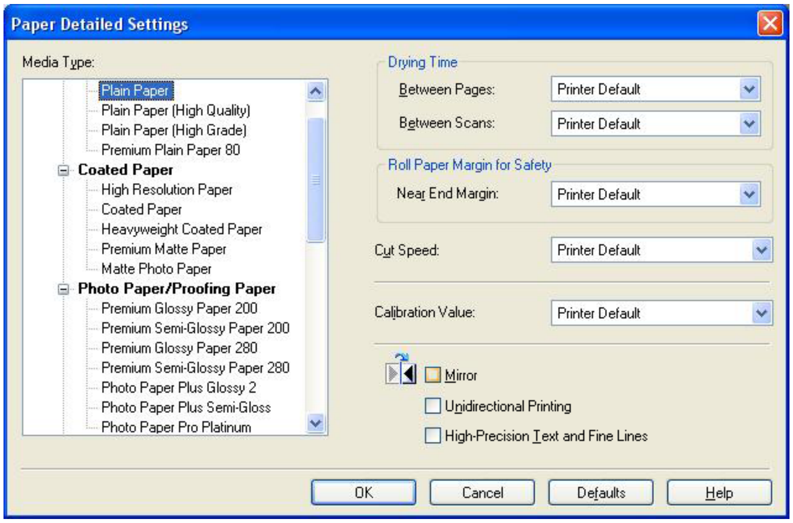
- You must have User Manual installed on your computer.

- **About** button

Click the button to open the version information window of the Print Plug-In. Click the **OK** button in the version information window to return to the Print Plug-In window.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Advanced Settings** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set **Drying Time** and **Roll Paper Margin for Safety** by media type.


Paper Detailed Settings

Media Type: Plain Paper

Drying Time

Between Pages: Printer Default

Between Scans: Printer Default

Roll Paper Margin for Safety

Near End Margin: Printer Default

Cut Speed: Printer Default

Calibration Value: Printer Default

☐ Mirror

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

- **Drying Time**

Between Pages

This sets the wait time for the ink to dry between each completely printed sheet and the output of the sheet.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The paper is ejected immediately after printing.
30sec. / 1min. / 3min. / 5min. / 10min. / 30min. / 60min.	The sheet is ejected when the specified time after printing has elapsed.

Between Scans

This sets the wait time between line scans during printing.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The printing continues to the next line immediately after the last line.
1sec. / 3sec. / 5sec. / 7sec. / 9sec.	The printing continues to the next line after the set time. *For the media type that has problems, such as ink smears on the page or colors that seem uneven during borderless printing etc., increase the value for this setting.

- **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**

Near End Margin

This sets the length of the near end margin of the roll paper.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
5mm	Print at a standard size. *Select for Media Type that has no problem when printing with a standard size margin.
20mm	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

- **Cut Speed**

This selects the auto cut speed.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Fast	Select this setting if cutting with the **Standard** setting is not clean.
Standard	Select this setting when you are not experiencing problems.
Slow	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

- **Calibration Value**

When calibration has been carried out on the printer, use this setting to choose whether or not to use the results.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Use Value	The calibration results are used for printing.
Disregard Value	The calibration results are not used for printing. Select this option to avoid changes to image color tones during printing due to color calibration.

- **Mirror**

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

- **Unidirectional Printing**

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines**

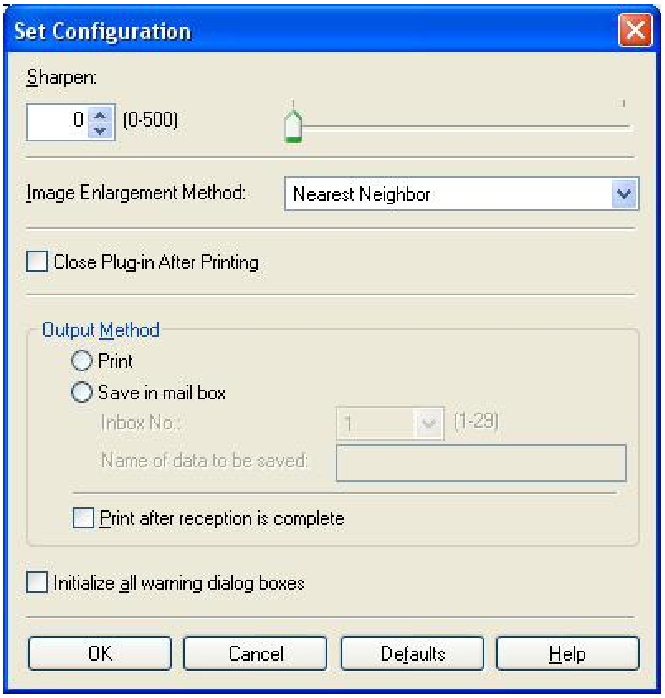
Print increasing ink impact accuracy, particularly for sharper text and fine lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

Note

- When **Highest (Max. No. of Passes)** is selected as the print mode, **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines** cannot be selected.

Set Configuration Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Set Configuration** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.


Set Configuration
Sharpen:
0
(0-500)
Image Enlargement Method:
Nearest Neighbor
☐ Close Plug-in After Printing
Output Method
○ Print
○ Save in mail box
Inbox No.:
1
(1-29)
Name of data to be saved:
☐ Print after reception is complete
☐ Initialize all warning dialog boxes
OK
Cancel
Defaults
Help

- **Sharpen**

Performs adjustment of the sharpness (outline) settings.

- **Image Enlargement Method**

You can select the image enlargement method.

The following settings are available for the image enlargement method.

Setting	Details
Nearest Neighbor	Performs simple enlargement.
Bilinear	Performs line vector enlargement.
Bicubic	Adjust pixels with calculation of elements such as a color or brightness of neighboring pixels.

- **Close Plug-in After Printing**

When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in closes after printing finishes.

Note

- If printing does not finish correctly because it was canceled or an error occurred, the plug-in does not close.

• Output Method

You can select the output method.

The following settings are available for the output method.

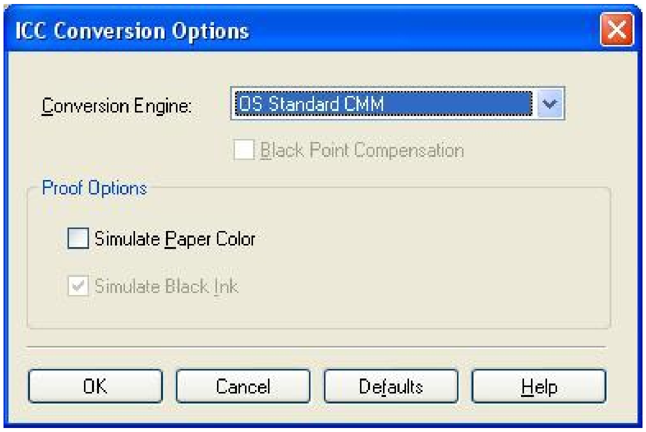
Setting	Details
Print	Normal printing. The print job data is stored temporarily in the box as the job prints.
Save in mail box	Saves the print data in the mail box. If you select **Save in mail box**, you must specify **Name of data to be saved**.
Print after reception is complete	When you place a checkmark here, you can print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space. This cannot be used when **Save in mail box** is selected.

• Initialize all warning dialog boxes

When this is checked, all of the warning dialog boxes that have been set to "Do not show this screen again" become displayed.

ICC Conversion Options dialog box

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected in the **Output Profile** list in the **Main** sheet and the **ICC Conversion Options** button is clicked. This allows you to configure detailed color matching related settings.



• Conversion Engine

Selects the conversion engine to use when converting colors.

> Note
> - Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use **Adobe CMM**. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

• Black Point Compensation

Check this check box to perform black point compensation. Loss of gradation in dark areas can be improved by performing black point compensation.

> Note
> - This can be used if **Adobe CMM** is selected as the **Conversion Engine**.

• Proof Options

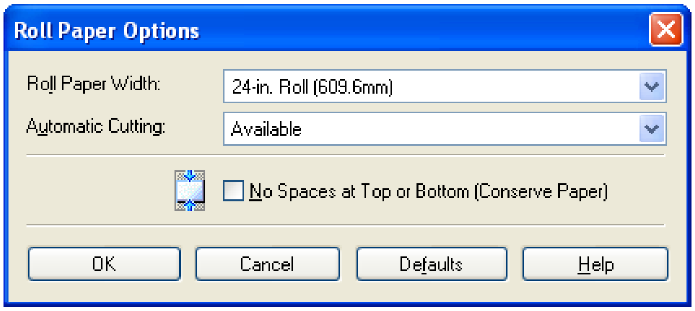
Configures settings related to printing press simulation.

The proof options consist of the following settings.

Setting	Details
Simulate Paper Color	Select this when performing paper color simulation. When this is on, **Simulate Black Ink** is automatically turned on and becomes grayed out.
Simulate Black Ink	Select this when performing simulation of black ink. In order to enable this setting, **Adobe CMM** needs to be selected under **Conversion Engine**.

Roll Paper Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Roll Paper Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can set the roll paper width and perform the auto cut settings.



Roll Paper Width: 24-in. Roll (609.6mm)
Automatic Cutting: Available
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

• Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

• Automatic Cutting

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

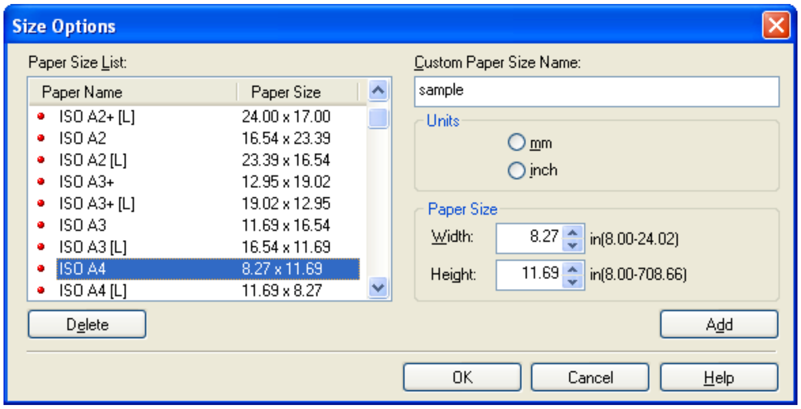
Setting	Details
Available	Each page is automatically cut after it is printed.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

• No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

When you place a checkmark here, the print data is printed without margins.

Size Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can select a media name, size and other settings.



Paper Name	Paper Size
ISO A2+ [L]	24.00 x 17.00
ISO A2	16.54 x 23.39
ISO A2 [L]	23.39 x 16.54
ISO A3+	12.95 x 19.02
ISO A3+ [L]	19.02 x 12.95
ISO A3	11.69 x 16.54
ISO A3 [L]	16.54 x 11.69
ISO A4	8.27 x 11.69
ISO A4 [L]	11.69 x 8.27

Custom Paper Size Name: sample

Width: 8.27 in(8.00-24.02)

Height: 11.69 in(8.00-708.66)

- **Paper Size List**

  Displays all the standard sizes and custom media sizes.

- **Custom Paper Size Name**

  You can enter any name up to 63 characters.

- **Units**

  You can select the units of measure to use when you define custom media size. Switching this setting resets the units of measure for the entire Plug-In.

- **Paper Size**

  Width

  Enter the width of the media size.

  Height

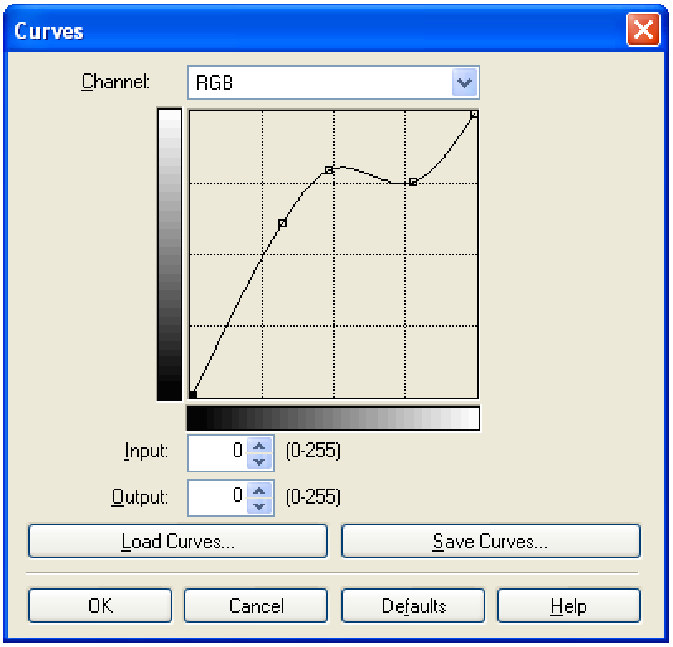
  Enter the height of the media size.

- **Add** button

  Click the button to register the contents of the settings.

Curves Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Curves** button on the **Color Settings** Sheet. You can set **Channel** and other settings.



- **Channel**

Select from among **RGB**, **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**.

> Note
> - **Gray** is displayed for monochrome printing and this selection cannot be changed.

- **Input**

Enter an input value.

> Note
> - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Output**

Enter an output value.

> Note
> - The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Load Curves** button

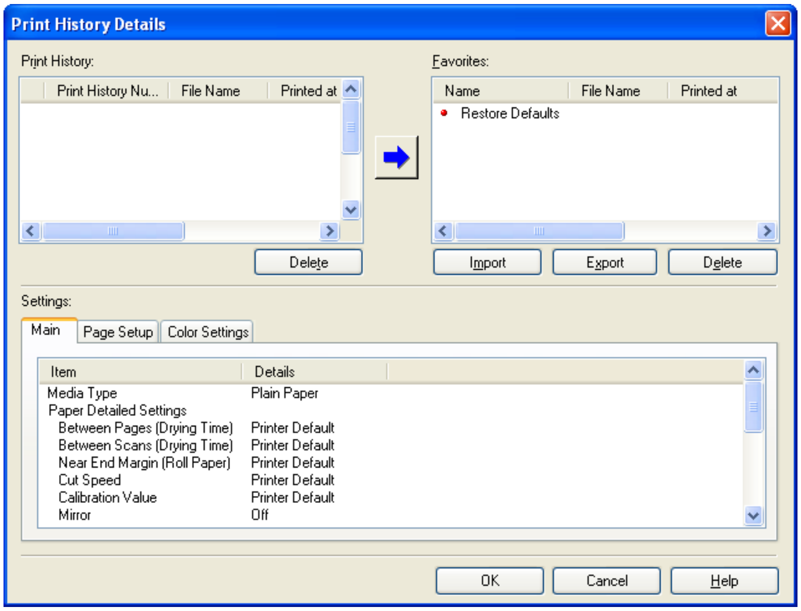
Click the button to load stored data for a tone curve.

- **Save Curves** button

Click the button to stores the current tone curve settings.

Print History Details Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Details** button on the **Print History** Sheet. This controls print history. For more information about **Print History Details**, see "Utilize Print History." →P.359



Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

• Print History

Print History appears in list format.

Display Items	Details
Print History Number	Displays the print history number.
File Name	Displays image file name.
Printed at	Displays time and date of printing.
Comment	Displays comment details.

Note

- Up to 200 print history items can be displayed. All items above 200 are deleted.
- When you cannot print properly because you canceled the printing or an error occurred, appears ✕ to the left of the print history number.

• **Delete** button

Click the button to delete the selected print history.

• **Add** button

Click the ➡ button to add the selected print history to preferences.

Note

- Up to 200 print preference items can be added.

- **Favorites**

  The print history stored in print preferences displays in list format.

  Note
  - You can change the order by selecting an item and dragging it to another place.

- **Import** button

  Click the button to import print history saved as a file.

- **Export** button

  Click the button to save print history as a file that is stored in print preferences.

- **Delete** button

  Click the button to delete print history stored in print preferences.

- **Settings**

  Displays the print history settings selected from the **Print History** or **Favorites**.

Setting	Details
Main	When you select this the **Main** sheet settings are displayed.
Page Setup	When you select this the **Page Setup** sheet settings are displayed.
Color Settings	When you select this the **Color Settings** sheet settings are displayed.

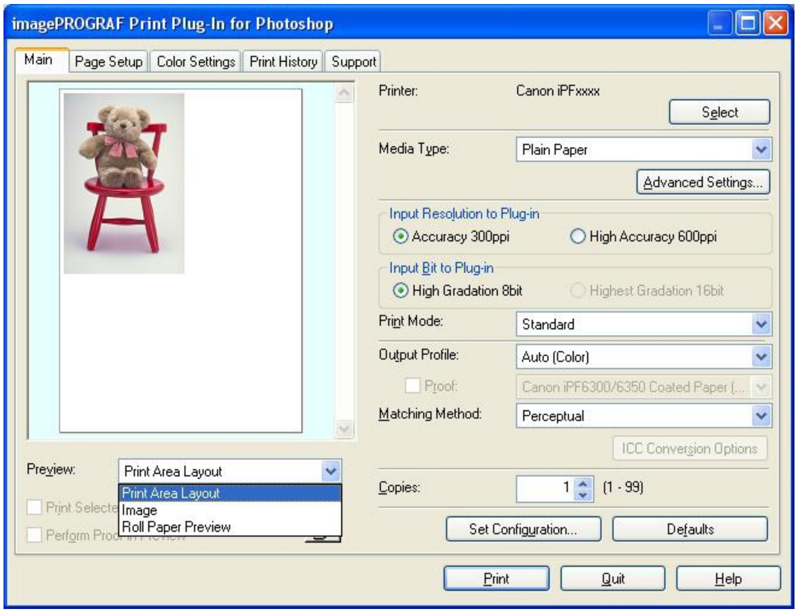
Utilize Three Types of Previews

You can use Print Plug-In to check an image in three types of previews.
The preview types are as follows.

- Check Image with Print Area Layout →P.337
- Check the original image with Image →P.338
- Check Image with Roll Paper Preview →P.339

Check Image with Print Area Layout

Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the media size set in the print area layout. Select **Print Area Layout** in **Preview**.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Print Area Layout

☐ Print Selecte

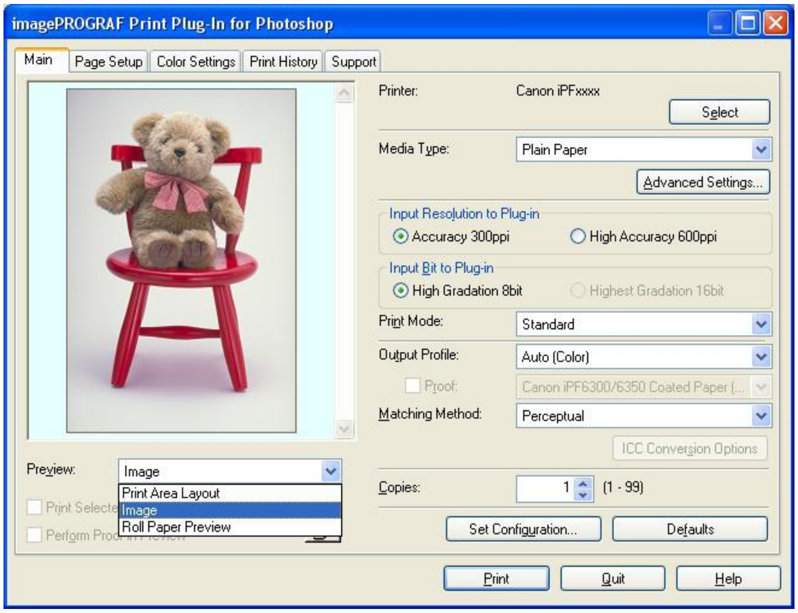
☐ Perform Pro

Note

- When the cursor on the preview is displayed as ✋ on the preview, you can specify the print position by dragging the image.
- When the cursor is displayed as ✋ on the preview, the below conditions on the **Page Setup** sheet have all been met.
  - There is no checkmark in **Borderless Printing**.
  - There is no checkmark in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** or **Scaling** has been selected.

Check the original image with Image

In the image preview you can check the entire image that you have input.
Select **Image** in **Preview**.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Main | Page Setup | Color Settings | Print History | Support

Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

Print Area Layout
Image
Roll Paper Preview

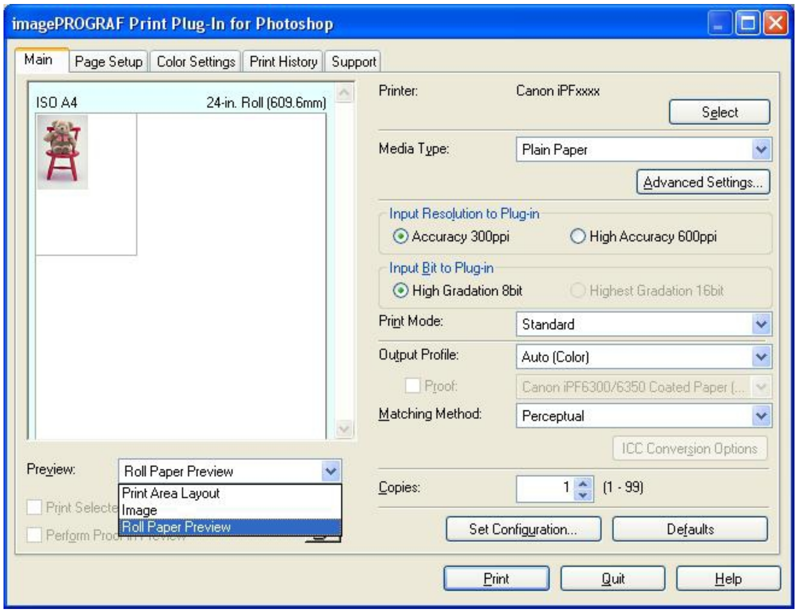
☐ Print Selecte...
☐ Perform Pro...

Note

- When the cursor appears as a small magnifying glass 🔍 while there is an **Image** in the **Preview** area, the **Selected Range** feature is enabled and you an drag the cursor on the image and select an area for printing.
- When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as 🔍 on the preview, the selected area is deselected.

Check Image with Roll Paper Preview

Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper in Roll Paper Preview
Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**.



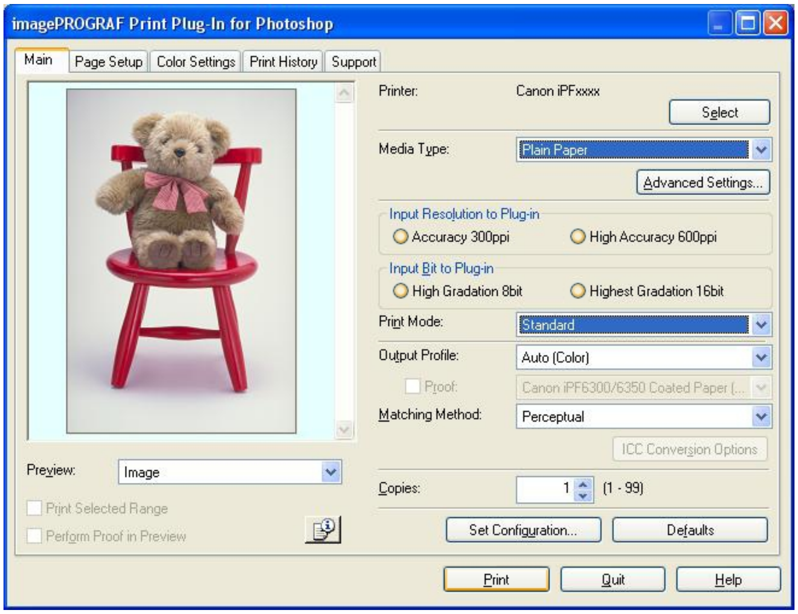
Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Roll Paper Preview

> **Note**
>
> - To select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

Print with a Desired Picture Quality

You can specify and print at the resolution you desire.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
○ Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
○ High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the media set to the printer in **Media Type**.

> Note
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3. Choose either **Accuracy 300ppi** or **High Accuracy 600ppi** for the resolution to process images in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

> Note
> - When you select **Accuracy 300ppi** images are processed at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
> - When you select **High Accuracy 600ppi** images are processed at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity.
> - **High Accuracy 600ppi** will not display with some **Media Type** settings.

4. Choose either **High Gradation 8bit** or **Highest Gradation 16bit** for the bit number when processing images in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

> Note
> - When you select **High Gradation 8bit**, images are processed at 8 bit/channel (24 bit).
> - When you select **Highest Gradation 16bit**, images are processed at 16bit/channel (48 bit).
> - **Highest Gradation 16bit** will not display with some **Media Type** or **Input Resolution to Plug-in** settings.

5. Select the mode to be printed when processing images in **Print Mode**.

> Note
> - The settings that can be selected differ by **Media Type**,**Input Resolution to Plug-in**, and **Input Bit to Plug-in** selected.

6. Click the **Print** button.

   Printing begins.

Adjust the Colors and Print

You can adjust the colors to your liking and print images.
The explanation below is on 6 ways to adjust the colors using Print Plug-In.

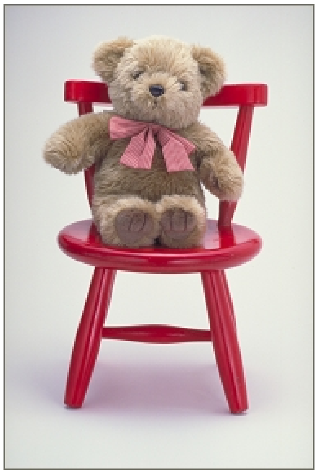
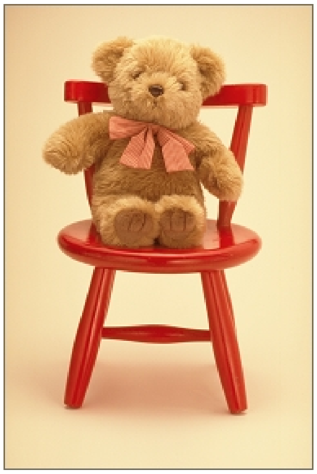
- Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) →P.341
- Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) →P.342
- Adjust the Colors by Color Matching →P.346
- Print High-Quality Adobe RGB16bit Images →P.347
- Prints monochrome photographs with high quality →P.349
- Using Adobe CMM →P.349

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)

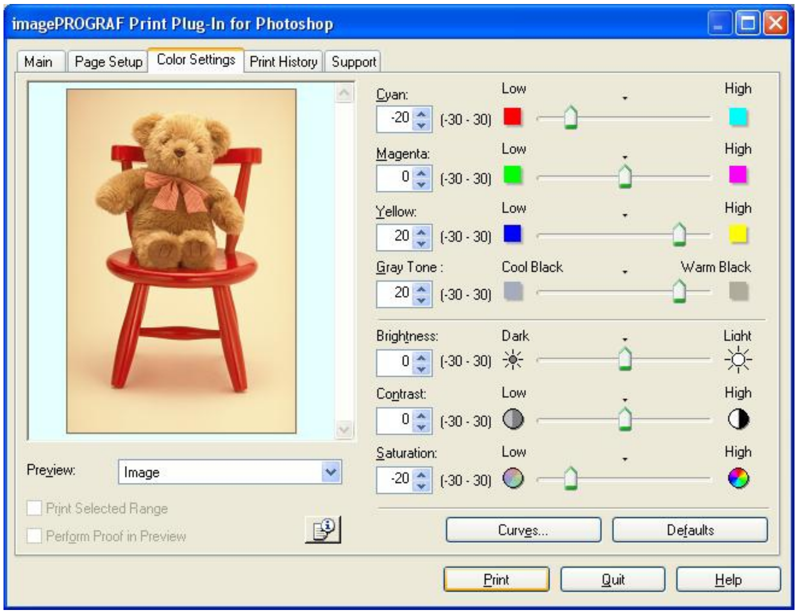
You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is on the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Cyan**
- **High** for **Yellow**
- **Low** for **Saturation**
- **Warm Black** for **Gray Tone**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The above image adjustments are reflected in the before and after images below.

Before Application	After Application
	

1. Display the **Color Settings** sheet.



Cyan: -20 (-30 - 30)
Magenta: 0 (-30 - 30)
Yellow: 20 (-30 - 30)
Gray Tone : 20 (-30 - 30)
Brightness: 0 (-30 - 30)
Contrast: 0 (-30 - 30)
Saturation: -20 (-30 - 30)
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Cyan**.

3. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **High** in **Yellow**.

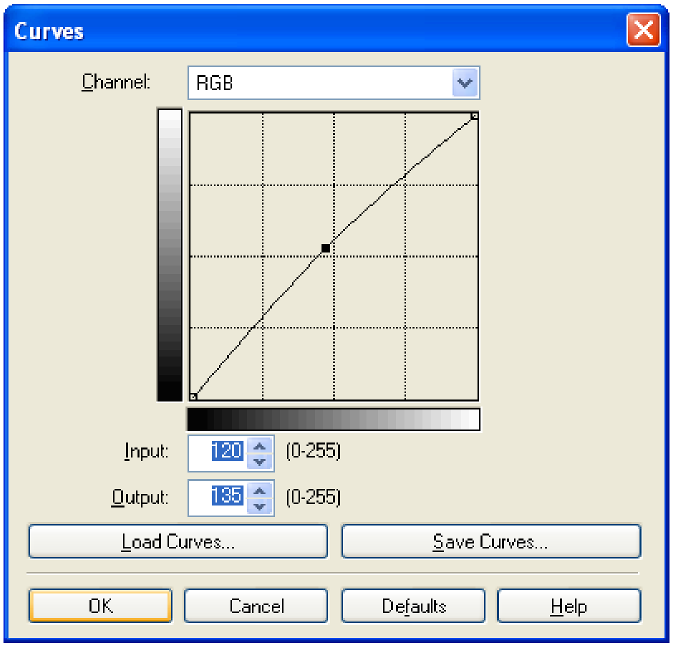
4. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Saturation**.

5. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Warm Black** in **Gray Tone**.

> Note
> - You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

6. Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

7. Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



8. Click the **Print** button.

The adjustments are reflected in the image and printing begins.

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)

You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is about the procedures for adjusting example image below.

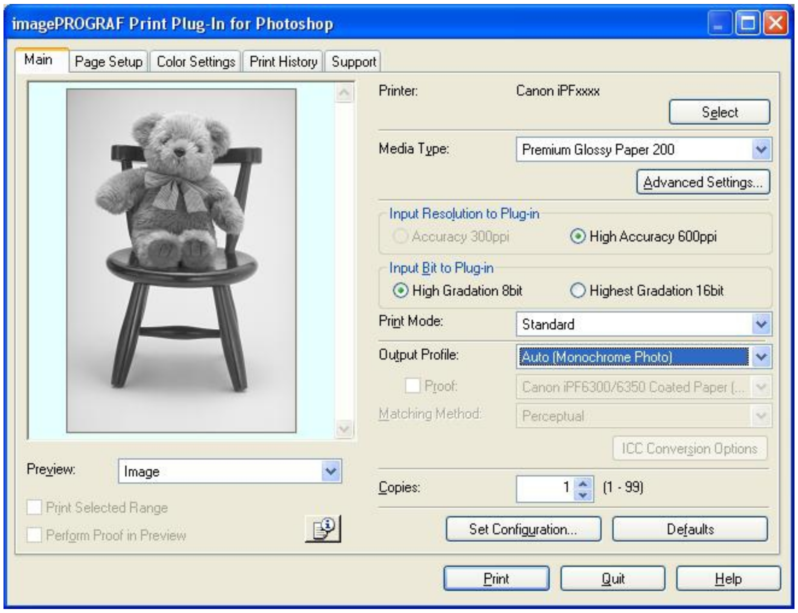
- **Low** for **Contrast**
- **Light** for **Highlight**
- **Light** for **Shadow**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The unapplied and the applied images of the above image adjustments are as below.

Before Application	After Application

1. Open the **Main** sheet.

2. Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Monochrome Photo)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

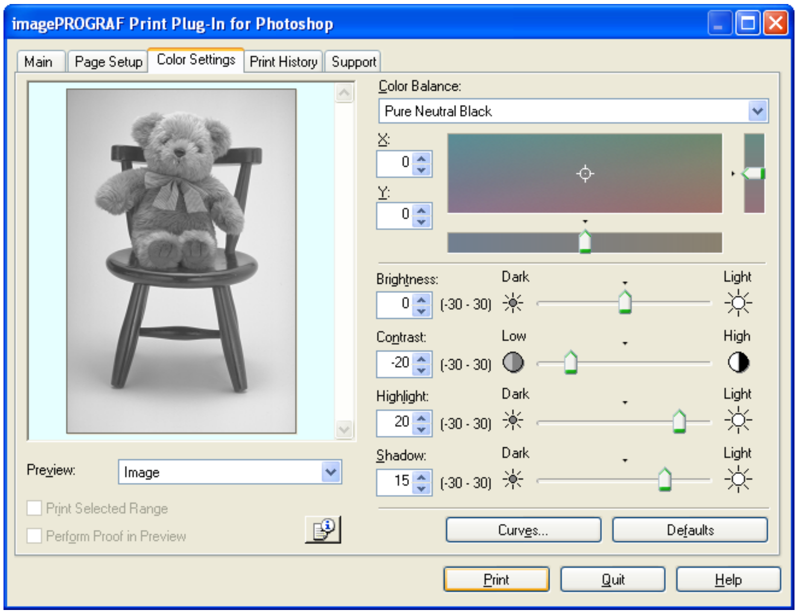
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

3. Open the **Color Settings** sheet.



Color Balance: Pure Neutral Black

X: 0

Y: 0

Brightness: 0 (-30 - 30)

Contrast: -20 (-30 - 30)

Highlight: 20 (-30 - 30)

Shadow: 15 (-30 - 30)

Preview: Image

4. In **Contrast**, drag the slide bar toward **Low**.

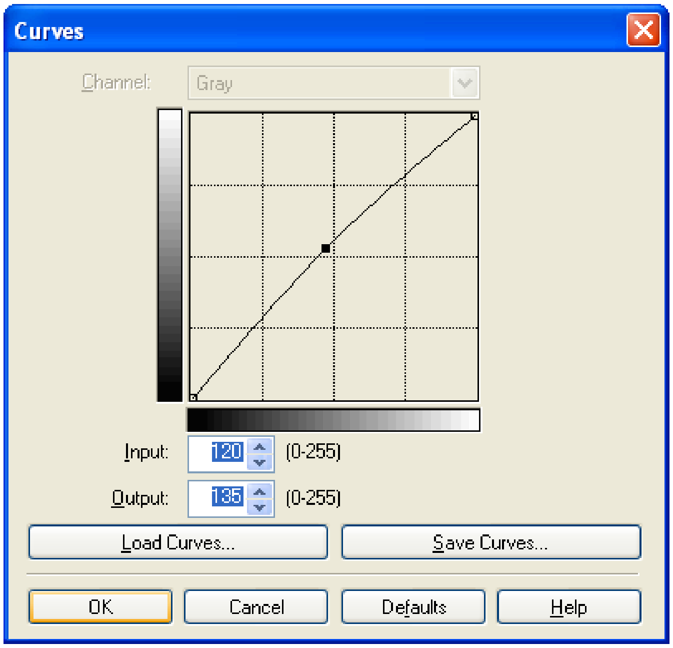
5. In **Highlight**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

6. In **Shadow**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

> **Note**
> - You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

7. Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

8. Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



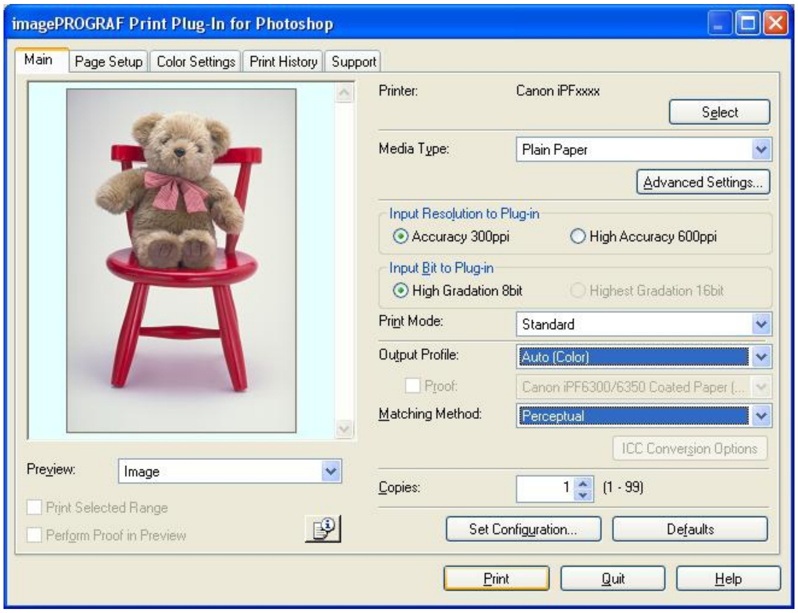
9. Click the **Print** button.

   This applies the image adjustments and starts the print job.

Adjust the Colors by Color Matching

When you print a color image imported from a scanner or a digital camera, the image may appear different from the image on the screen. That is due to the differences in color on the screen and in the printer. In Print Plug-In, you can get the color balance of the print product closer to the color balance displayed on the screen through performing ICC (International Color Consortium) color profile settings, matching method settings, and settings for the internal profile, which performs optimum color conversion in response to media and resolution settings.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the profile in **Output Profile**.

> Note
>
> - When you place a checkmark in **Perform Proof in Preview**, you can check the color matching in the preview. This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**.
> - The details of **Output Profile** you have set is saved even when you close the Print Plug-In, but when the specified profile cannot be located it is set to **Auto (Color)**.
> - If an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**, Adobe CMM can be selected as the color conversion engine. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 for details.

3. Select the profile matching method in **Matching Method**.

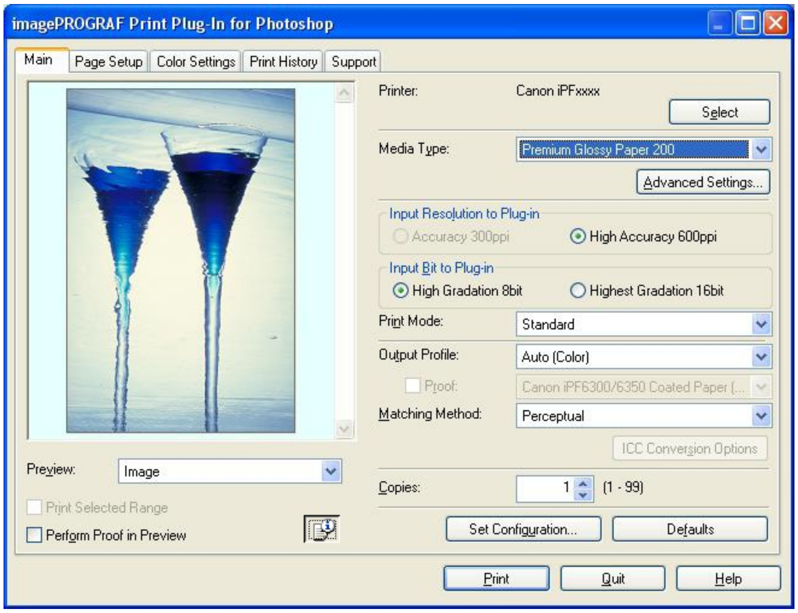
4. Click the **Print** button.

   Printing begins with the output profile and matching method that you have set.

Print High-Quality Adobe RGB16bit Images

This prints a high-quality Adobe RGB16bit image taken with a high-end digital camera. Print Plug-In allows you to print high color gamut and high tone images, when the Adobe RGB16bit image data has been retouched in Photoshop, without compromising the level of tone in the image.

1. Select the Adobe RGB16bit image data in Photoshop and start Print Plug-In. (See "Starting from Photoshop.") →P.312



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click button.

3. Check that **Adobe RGB** is displayed in **Color Space**, and **16bit/channel** is displayed in **Bit** in the **Image Properties** dialog box, and click the **Close** button.

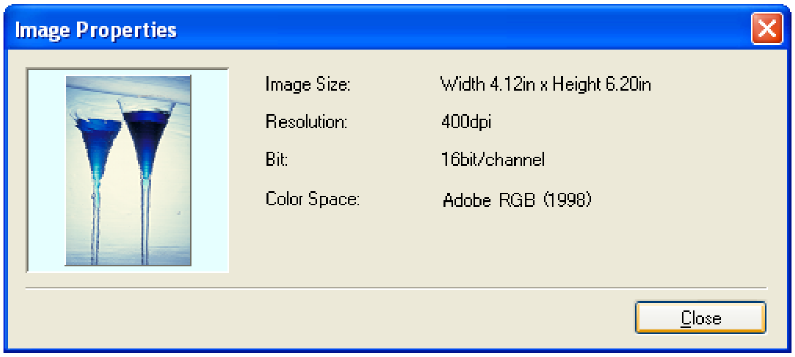


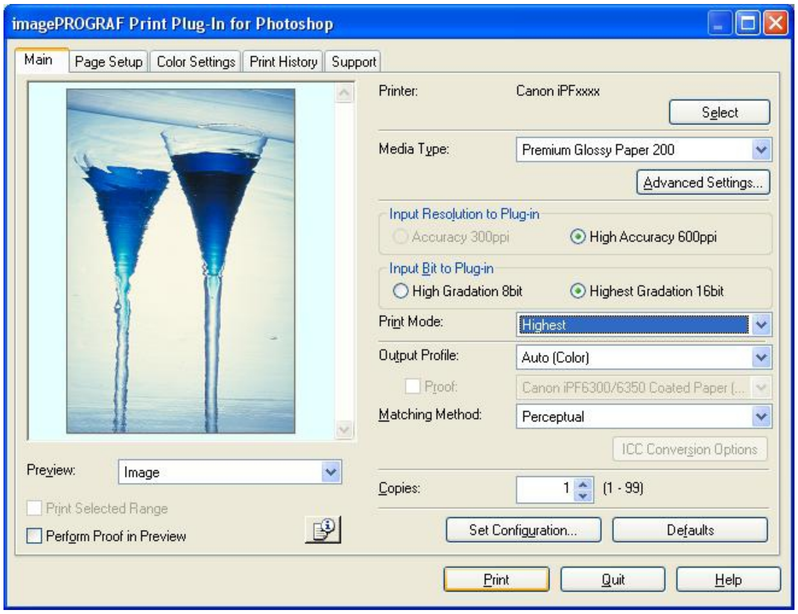
Image Size: Width 4.12in x Height 6.20in

Resolution: 400dpi

Bit: 16bit/channel

Color Space: Adobe RGB (1998)

4. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ○ High Gradation 8bit ● Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Highest

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

5. Select **High Accuracy 600ppi** in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

6. Select **Highest Gradation 16bit** in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

7. Select the highest quality possible in **Print Mode**.

8. If required, adjust the colors using color matching.

Note

- For more information about the color matching, see "Adjust the Colors by Color Matching." →P.346

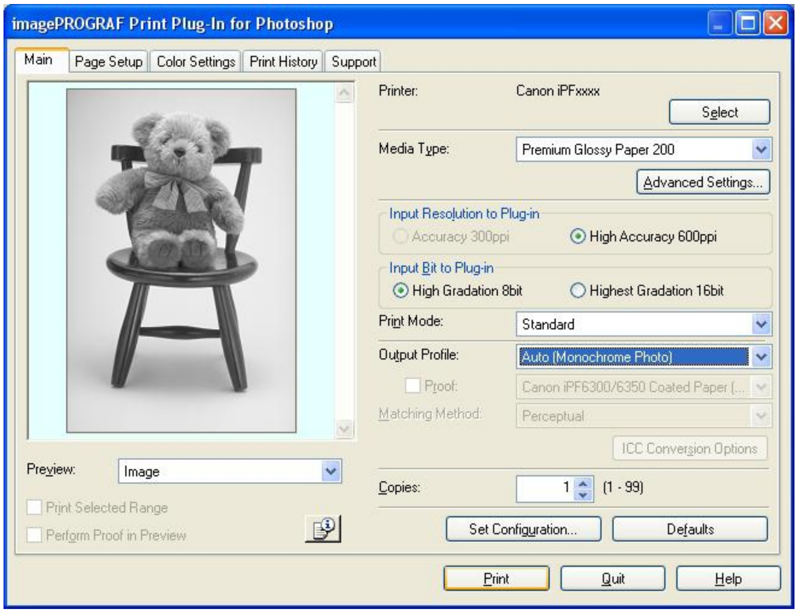
9. Click the **Print** button.

Printing of the Adobe RGB16bit image begins.

Prints monochrome photographs with high quality

Prints images captured with a scanner or digital camera in monochrome with high quality. Provides stable monochrome photo images without color casts and minimizes the influences of the difference of the light source.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Monochrome Photo)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

2. Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.

Note

- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can be selected only after a compatible **Media Type** has been selected.

3. Click the **Print** button.

   Performs conversion to the most suitable monochrome and printing begins.

Using Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM is a color conversion engine made by Adobe. Using Adobe CMM makes it possible to obtain uniform color conversion results and to use the black point compensation function.

- How to Obtain Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM can be obtained using the following procedure.

1. Open the Adobe website (http://www.adobe.com).

2. Enter "Adobe CMM" in the search input box on the screen.

3. Search for the "Adobe Color Management Module (CMM)" item and select the Windows version.

4. Download the file by following the on-screen directions.

5. Start the installer in the downloaded file to perform the installation.

> Important
> - Use version 1.1 or higher of Adobe CMM.

• Adobe CMM System Requirements

The system requirements for Adobe CMM are as follows.

- Supported OS
  Windows XP SP2, Windows Vista

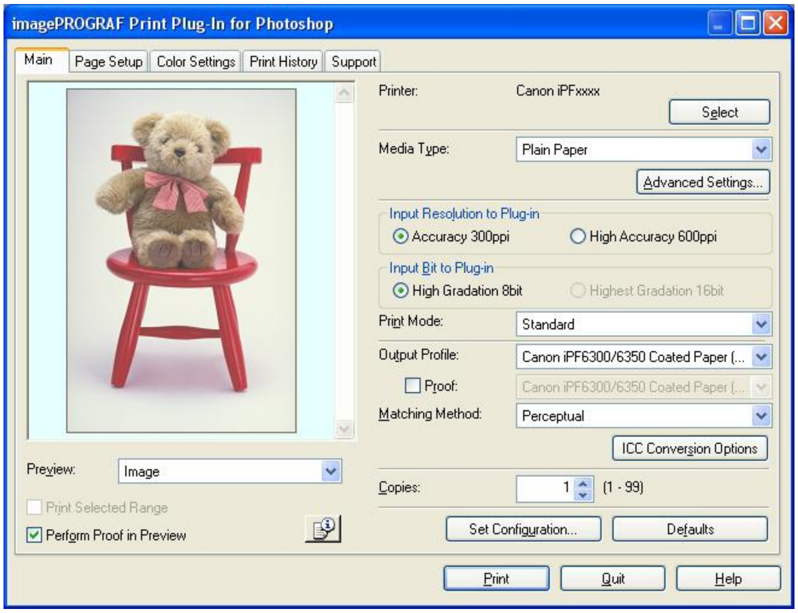
- Supported CPU
  Intel Xeon, Xeon Dual, Intel Centrino, Pentium 4 processor

> Note
> - Check with Adobe for details.

• How to Use Adobe CMM

The procedure for using Adobe CMM is as follows.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.

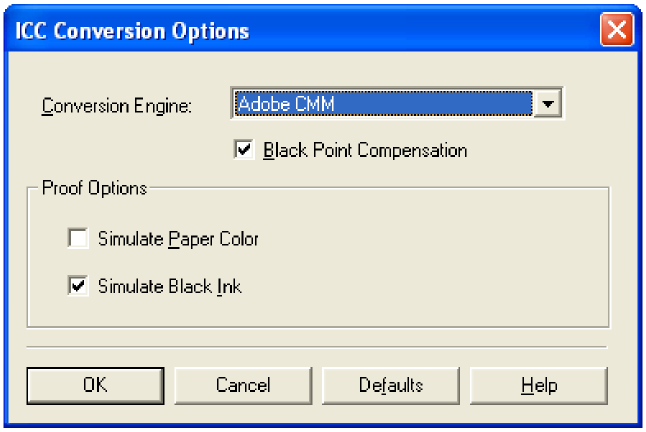


Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type: Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode: Standard
Output Profile: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...
Matching Method: Perceptual
Copies: 1 (1 - 99)
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☑ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button.

4. In the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box, select **Adobe CMM** from **Conversion Engine**.



Conversion Engine: Adobe CMM

☑ Black Point Compensation

Proof Options

☐ Simulate Paper Color

☑ Simulate Black Ink

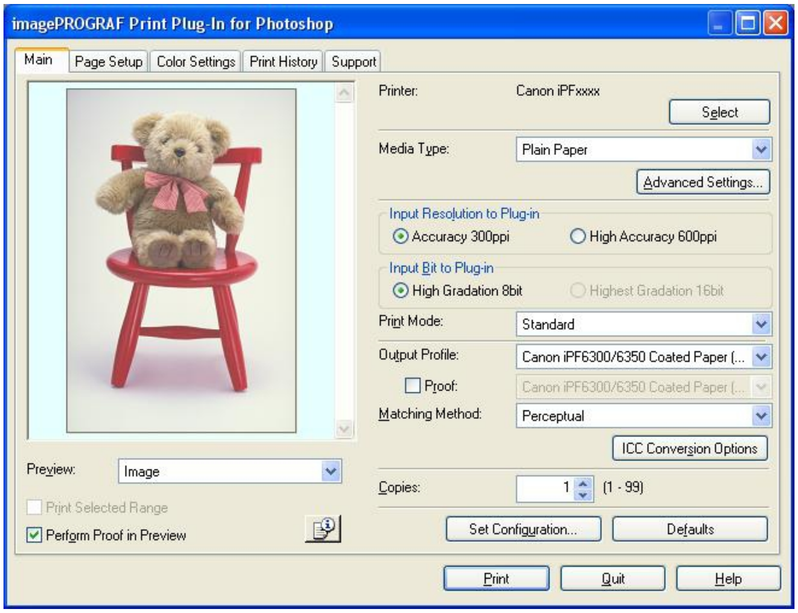
5. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Perform Black Point Compensation

Black point compensation that is equivalent to Photoshop can be performed using the following procedure. Use this to avoid saturation in the black areas of images.

> **Important**
>
> - Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use black point compensation. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.349 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in

● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

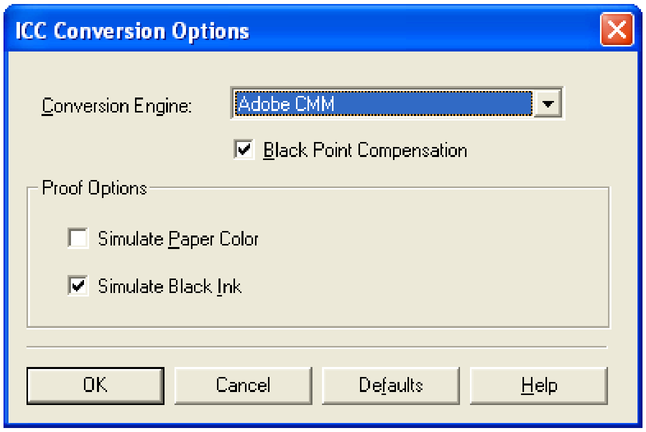
☑ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

4. Select **Adobe CMM** as the **Conversion Engine**.

5. Check the **Black Point Compensation** check box.



Conversion Engine: Adobe CMM

☑ Black Point Compensation

Proof Options

☐ Simulate Paper Color

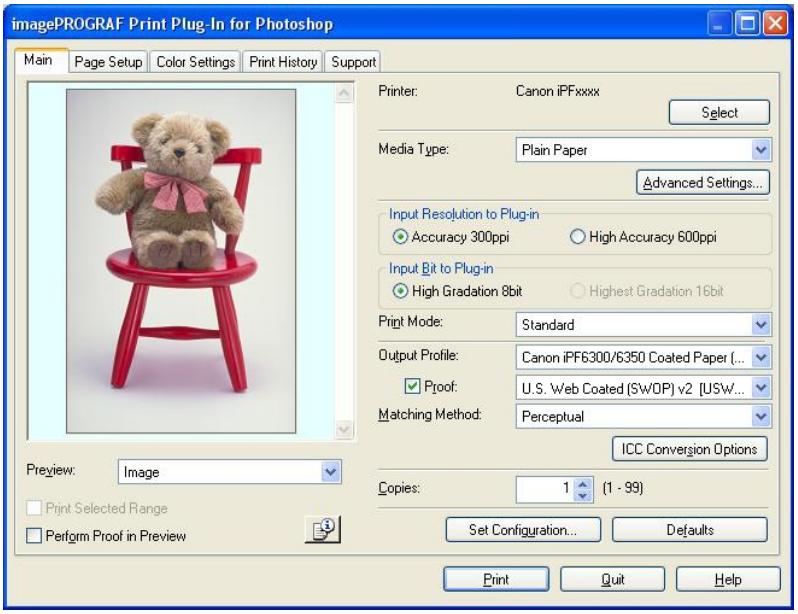
☑ Simulate Black Ink

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Perform Printing Press Simulation Print

You can perform printing press simulation prints by specifying ICC profiles such as Japan Color or SWOP, and specifying an ICC profile for the printing press.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in

● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

☑ Proof: U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 [USW...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

Preview: Image

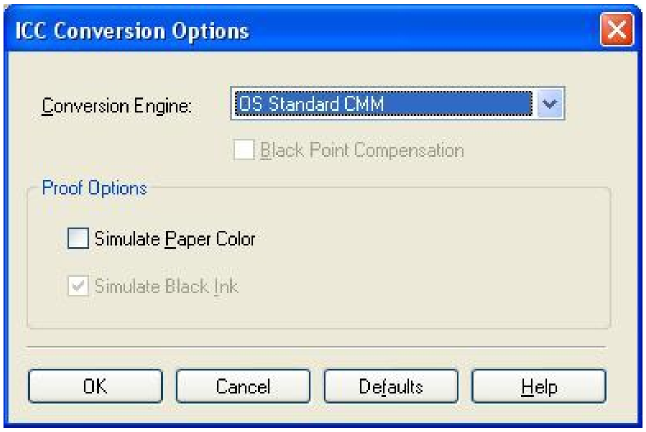
☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Check the **Proof** check box and select the profile for the printing press you want to target from the list on the right.

4. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.



5. Configure the **Proof Options** as needed.

> Note
> - The proof options are **Simulate Paper Color** and **Simulate Black Ink**. The settings that can be selected vary depending on the **Conversion Engine** settings.

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

7. Click the **Print** button.
Printing begins.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can enlarge or reduce an image in Print Plug-In.
Three methods to enlarge/reduce and print are as follows.

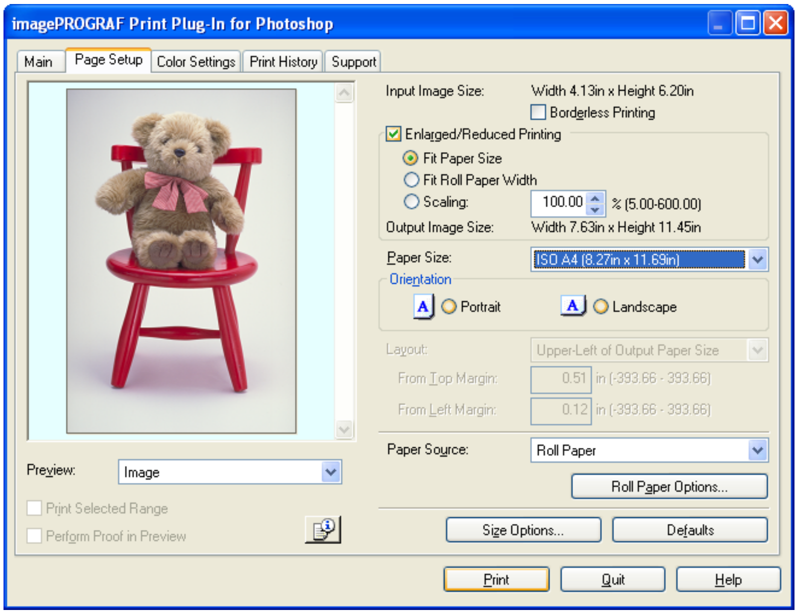
- Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size →P.353
- Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper →P.355
- Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print →P.356

Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size

By specifying the media type loaded in the printer, the image can be enlarged or reduced to fit the size of the image area of the media. This feature is useful when you need to print on the full width of Media that you have selected.

> Note
> - When you need to print on the full width of roll media, see "Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper." →P.355
> - When you do the procedure below to print on roll media, the print job will match the size of the output with the media selected with the **Paper Size** setting.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Input Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in
☐ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling: 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)
Output Image Size: Width 7.63in x Height 11.45in
Paper Size: ISO A4 (8.27in x 11.69in)
Orientation
○ Portrait ○ Landscape
Layout: Upper-Left of Output Paper Size
From Top Margin: 0.51 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
From Left Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note
- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5. Select **Fit Paper Size**.

6. Click the **Print** button.

   The image prints filling the entire output media surface.

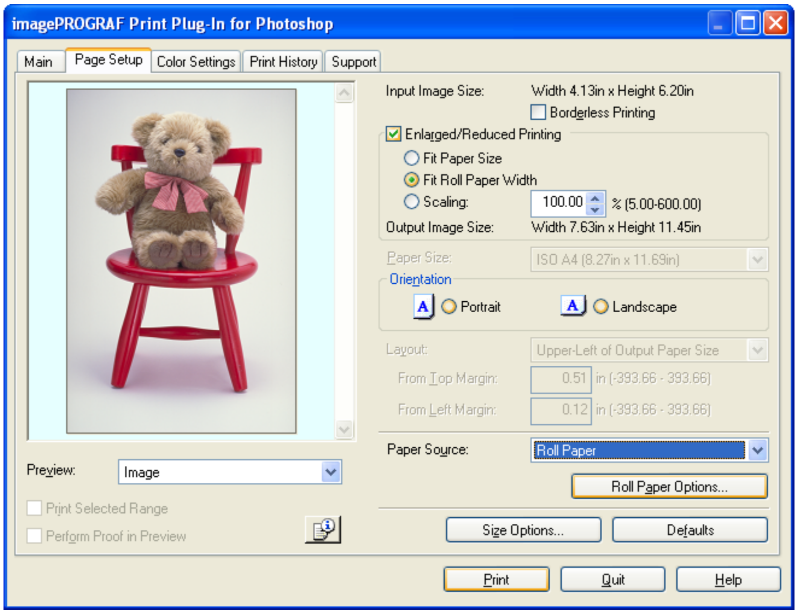
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper

You can enlarge/reduce and print an image matching the width of the roll paper set in the printer. This is useful when you wish to print an image that covers the entire width of the roll paper.

Note

- Printing will not occur properly when a print roll is not set to the printer.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Input Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in
☐ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
○ Fit Paper Size
● Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling: 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)
Output Image Size: Width 7.63in x Height 11.45in
Paper Size: ISO A4 (8.27in x 11.69in)
Orientation: ○ Portrait ○ Landscape
Layout: Upper-Left of Output Paper Size
From Top Margin: 0.51 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
From Left Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3. Click the **Roll Paper Options** button.

4. Set the roll paper options and click the **OK** button.

Note

- For more information about the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, see "Roll Paper Options Dialog Box." →P.332
- Click the **Defaults** button to return all of the roll paper option settings to their defaults.

5. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note

- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

6. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

7. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

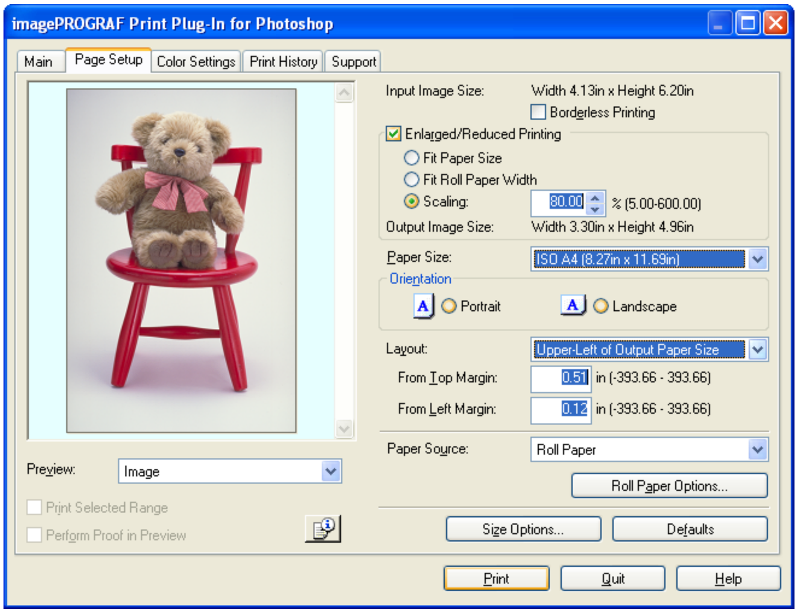
8. Click the **Print** button.

   The image prints covering the entire width of the roll paper.

Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can specify scaling to enlarge/reduce an image and print. This is useful when you wish to print an image at a specific size.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Input Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

○ Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

● Scaling: 80.00 % (5.00-600.00)

Output Image Size: Width 3.30in x Height 4.96in

Paper Size: ISO A4 (8.27in x 11.69in)

Orientation

○ Portrait ○ Landscape

Layout: Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin: 0.51 in (-393.66 - 393.66)

From Left Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)

Paper Source: Roll Paper

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
> - **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

> Note
> - When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
> - When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5. Select **Scaling** and input the scaling factor or drag the four corners of the image in the Preview display.

Note

- You can specify scaling rate in intervals of 0.01%.
- You can specify a range between 5.00-600.00%.
- The size of the width and height proportionally grow when the image is enlarged/reduced.

6. Either drag the image on the **Print Area Layout** preview, or set the print position **Layout**.

7. Click the **Print** button.

   Printing begins at the set scaling rate.

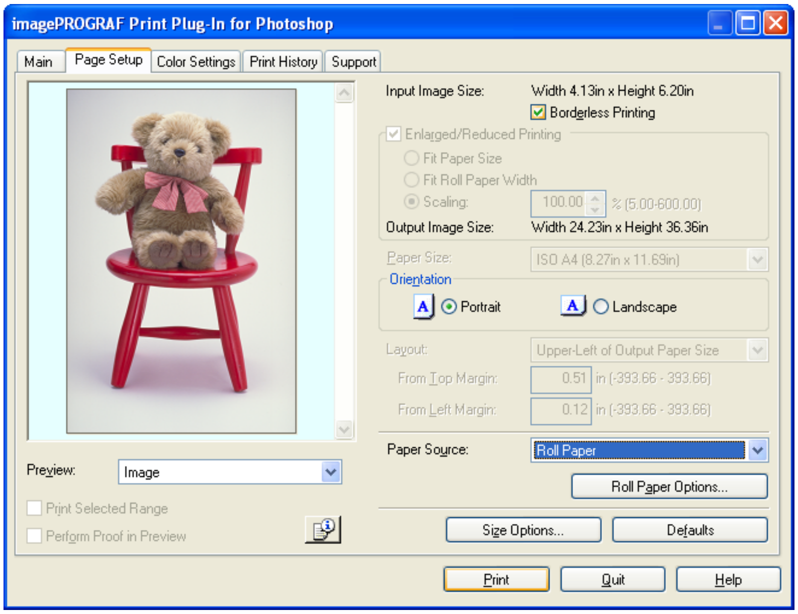
Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

Note

- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



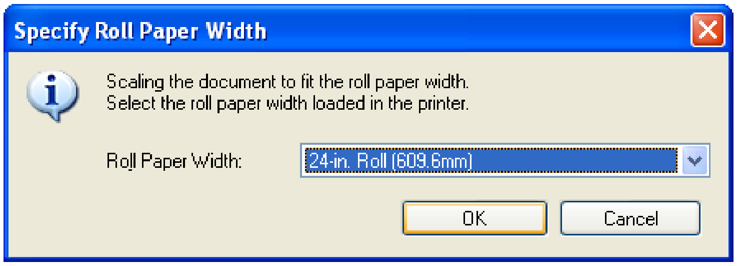
Input Image Size: Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in
☑ Borderless Printing
☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
○ Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
● Scaling: 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)
Output Image Size: Width 24.23in x Height 36.36in
Paper Size: ISO A4 (8.27in x 11.69in)
Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape
Layout: Upper-Left of Output Paper Size
From Top Margin: 0.51 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
From Left Margin: 0.12 in (-393.66 - 393.66)
Paper Source: Roll Paper
Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3. Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.

Note

- Select the width for roll paper set in the printer in **Roll Paper Width** in the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box, and click **OK**.


Specify Roll Paper Width

Scaling the document to fit the roll paper width.
Select the roll paper width loaded in the printer.

Roll Paper Width: 24-in. Roll (609.6mm)

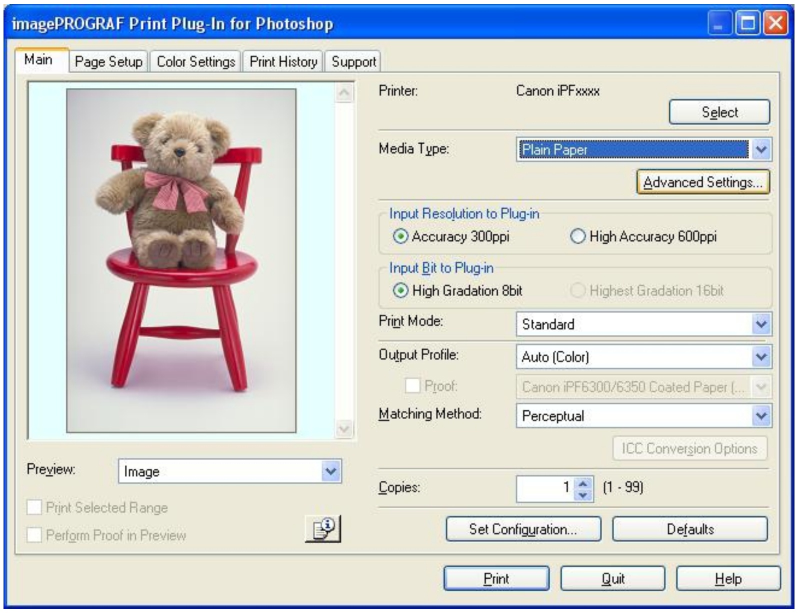
4. Click the **Print** button.

   Borderless printing begins.

Customize Media Settings

You can customize media settings.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.


imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type: Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode: Standard

Output Profile: Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated Paper (...

Matching Method: Perceptual

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Copies: 1 (1 - 99)

2. Select the media type that you wish to customize in **Media Type**.

> Note
>
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3. Click the **Advanced Settings** button.

4. Perform the settings in the Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.328 and click the **OK** button.

Utilize Print History

When you perform various settings and print in Print Plug-In, those settings are saved as print history. Also, you can export and import as files. You can store often-used print history under a specified name in print preferences.

Note

- You can save up to 200 print history items. All items over 200 are deleted in chronological order.

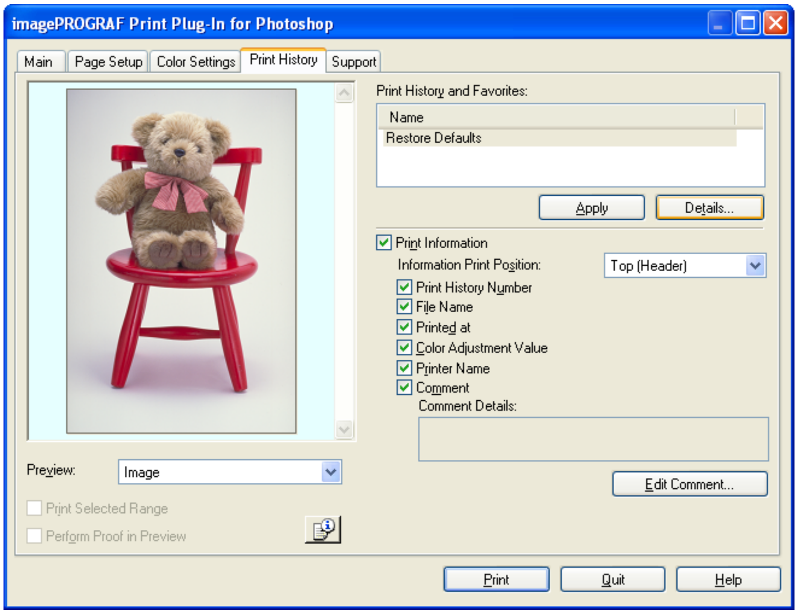
You can do the following things using print history.

- Confirm Print History Details →P.359
- Apply Print History to an Image →P.361
- Store Print History to Print Preferences →P.361
- Delete Print History →P.364
- Export Print History from Print Preferences →P.366
- Import Print History to Print Preferences →P.367
- Delete Print History from Print Preferences →P.369
- Set Information to Print with Image →P.371

Confirm Print History Details

You can confirm the print history details.

1. Display **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites:

Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details:

Preview: Image

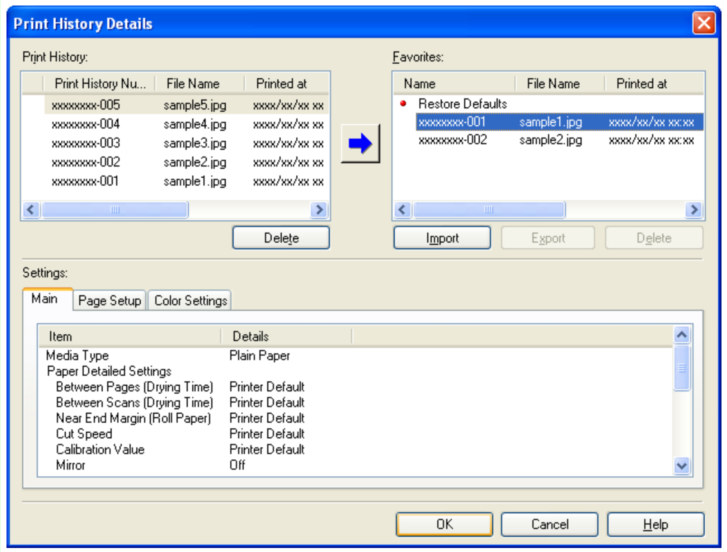
☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

Note

- Select the print history you wish to check the details of, from either **Print History** or **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

3. Check the print history details in **Settings**, and click the **OK** button.

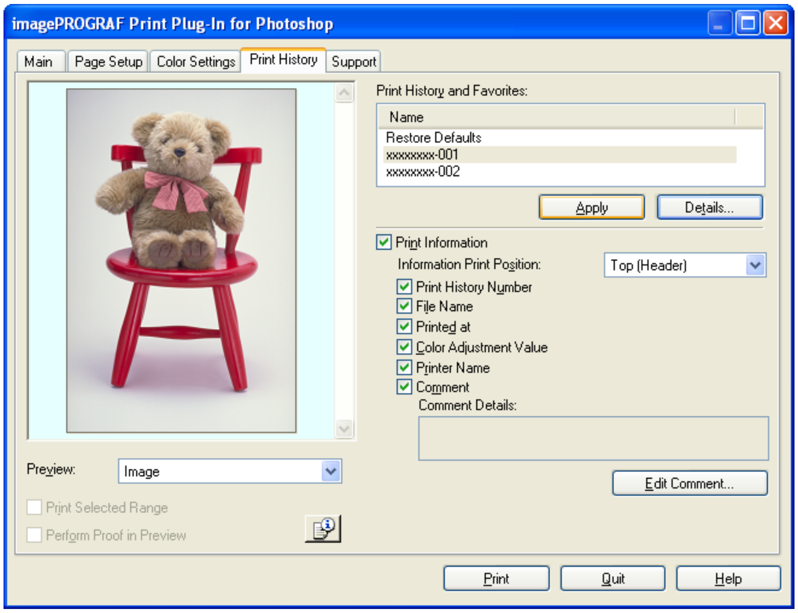
Note

- You can display the print history details by switching the sheets.

Apply Print History to an Image

You can use previous print history, and apply it to an image.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites:

Name
Restore Defaults
xxxxxxxx-001
xxxxxxxx-002

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment

Comment Details:

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. If required, check the print history details. (See "Confirm Print History Details.") →P.359

3. Select the print history you wish to apply from **Print History and Favorites**, and click the **Apply** button.

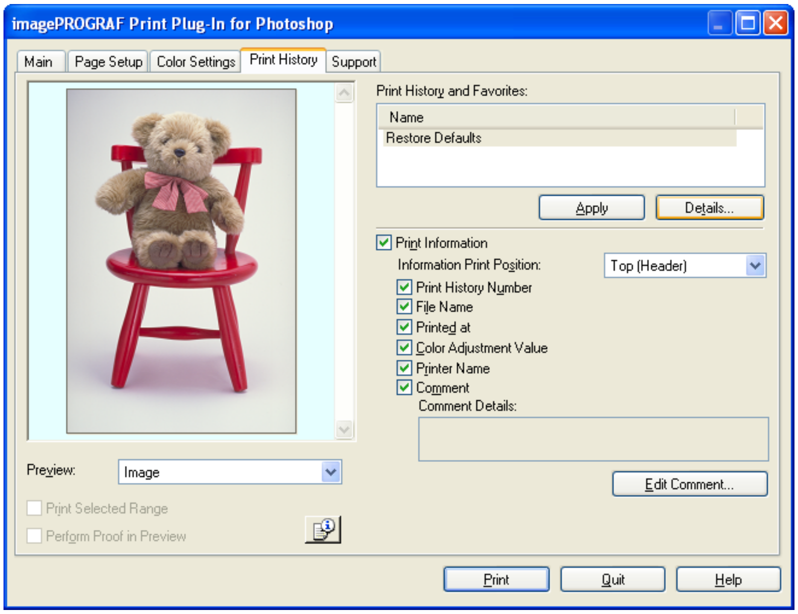
Store Print History to Print Preferences

You can store often-used print history to print preferences. Not only can you store the print history stored under a different name in print preferences, you can also find it with ease.

Note

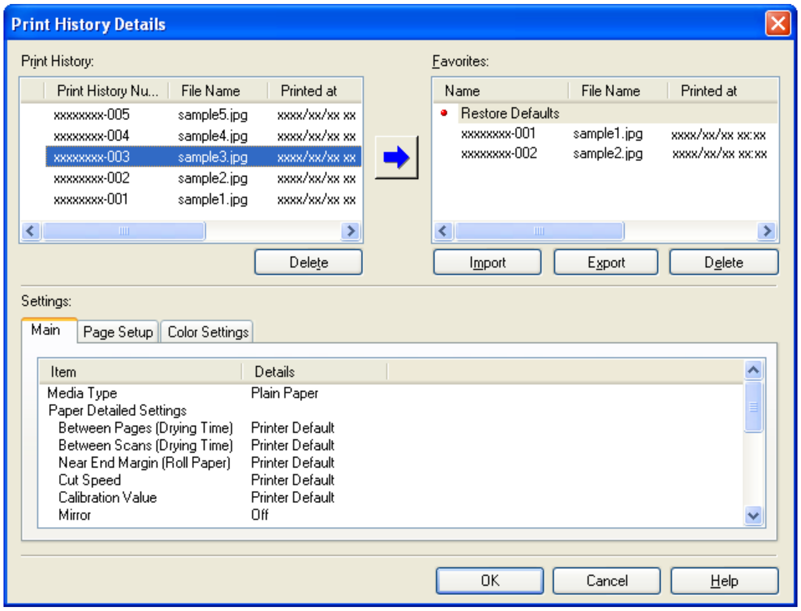
- You can store up to 200 print history items to print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and check the print history details in **Settings**.



Print History:

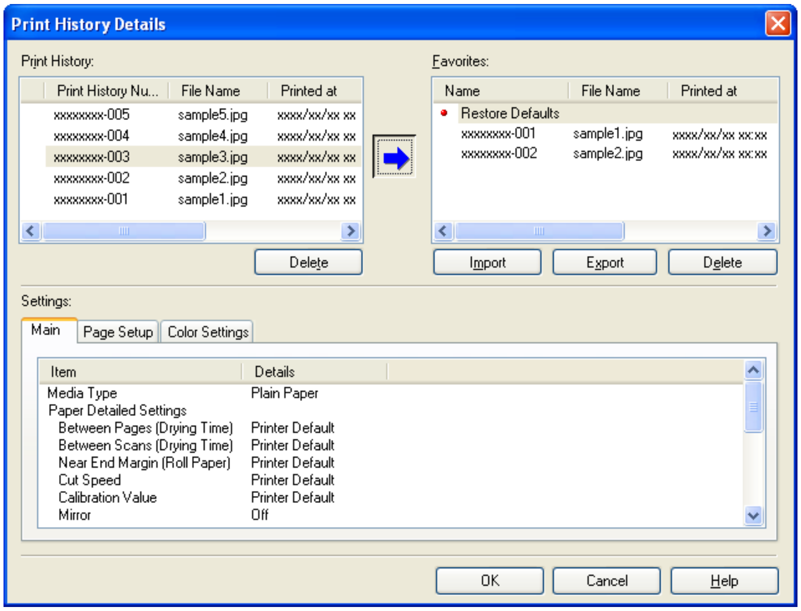
Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** and click the ➡ button.



Print History:

Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

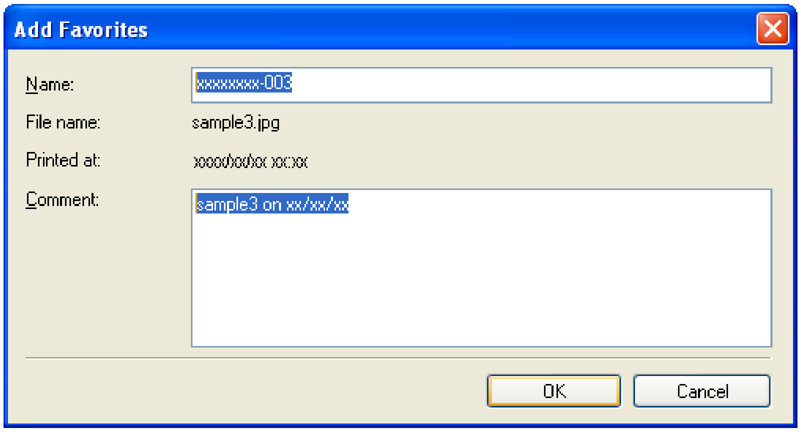
Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings:

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

5. In the **Add Favorites** dialog box input the name of the print history in **Name**, input a comment in **Comment**, and click the **OK** button.



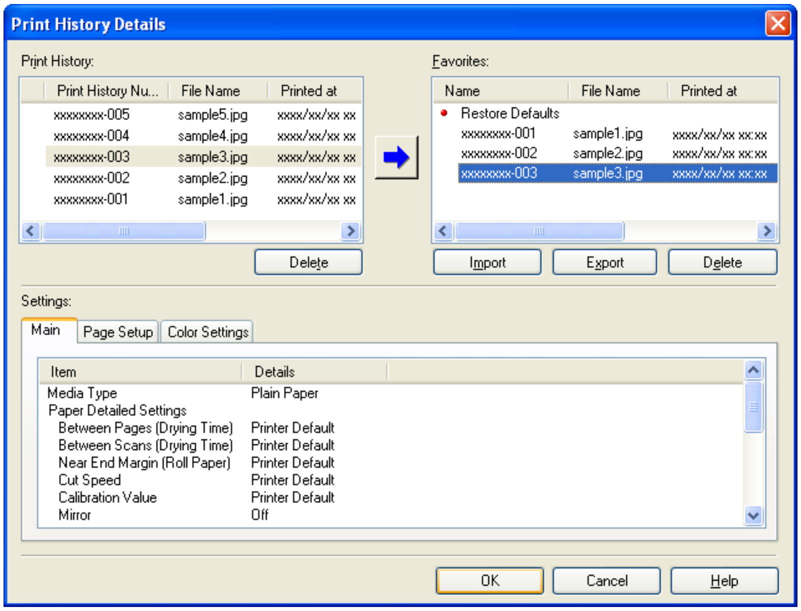
Name: xxxxxxxx-003

File name: sample3.jpg

Printed at: xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Comment: sample3 on xx/xx/xx

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

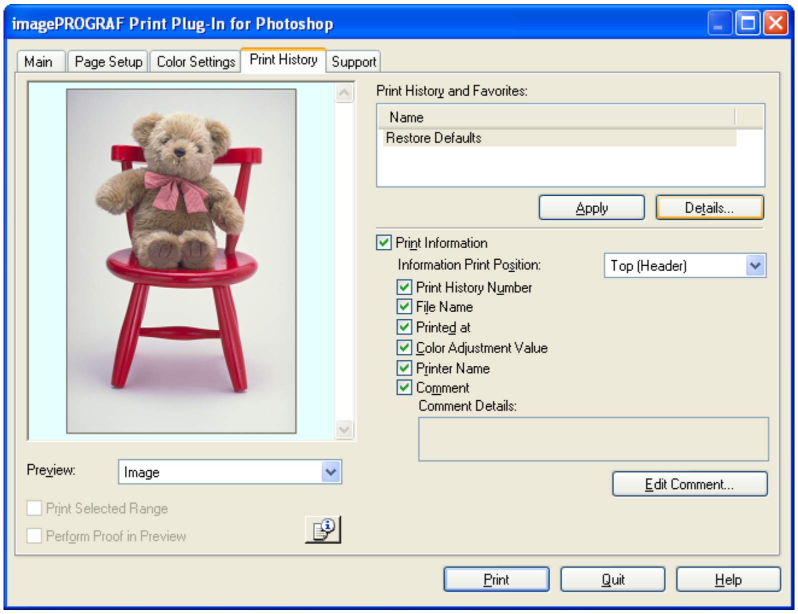
Delete Print History

You can delete print history.

Important

- Be aware that you cannot undo deletions of print history.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

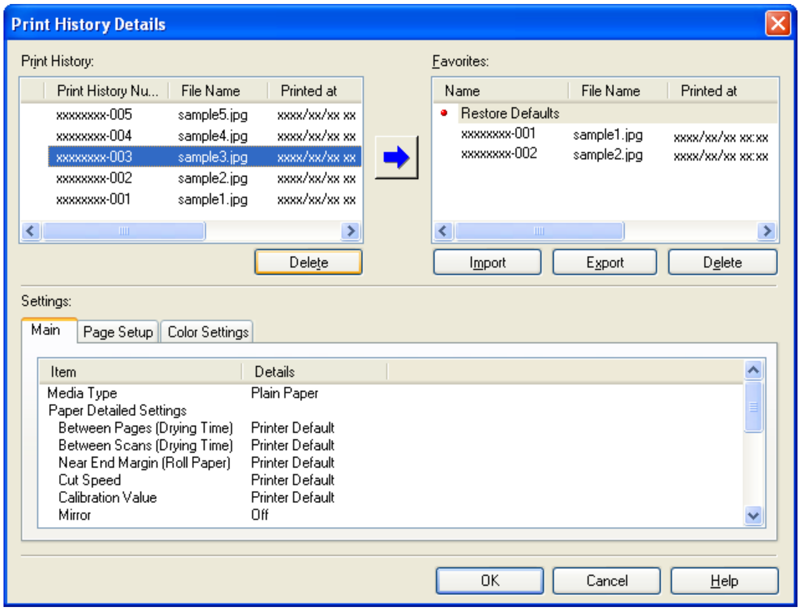
☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details:

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to delete from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.



Print History Details

Print History:

Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

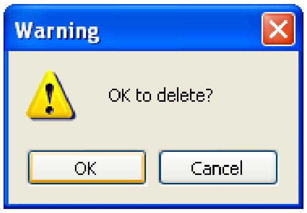
Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings:

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

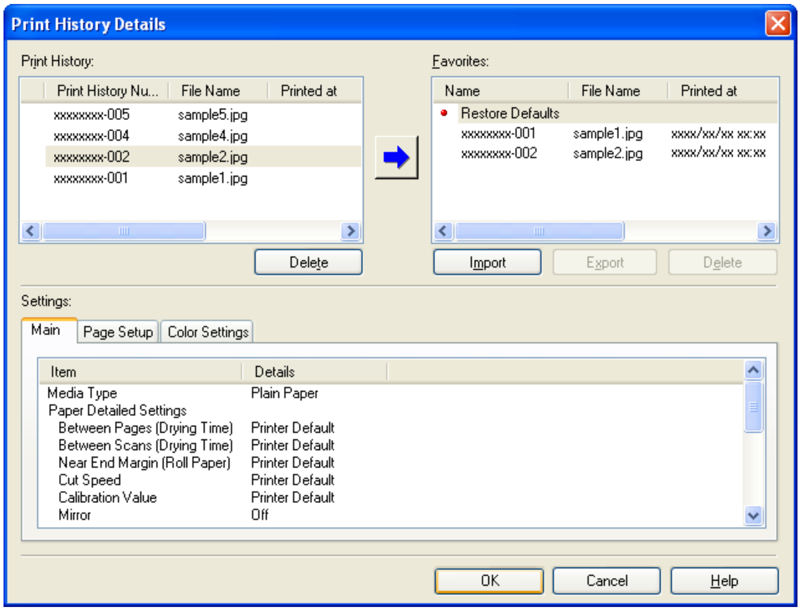
4. Click the **OK** button.



Warning

OK to delete?

5. Click the **OK**button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Details

Print History:

Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	

Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

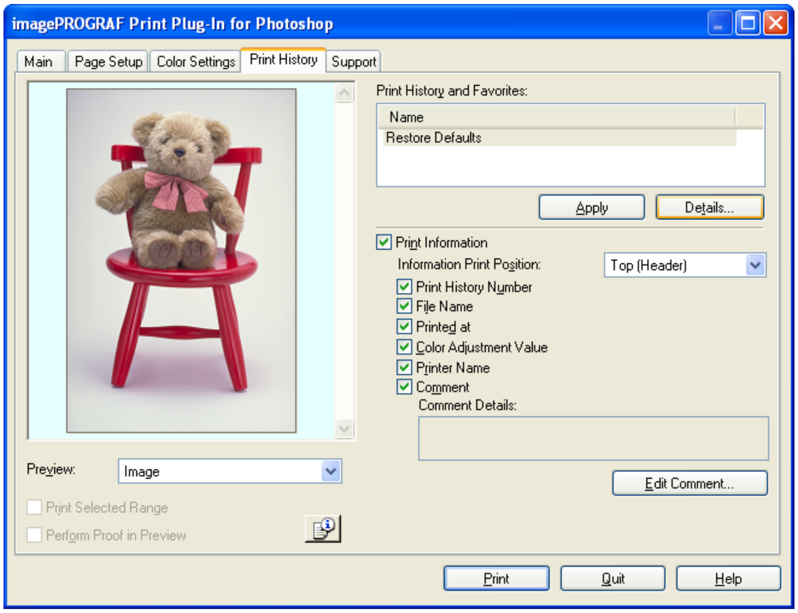
Settings:

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

Export Print History from Print Preferences

You can export print history stored in print preferences as a file.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites:

Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment

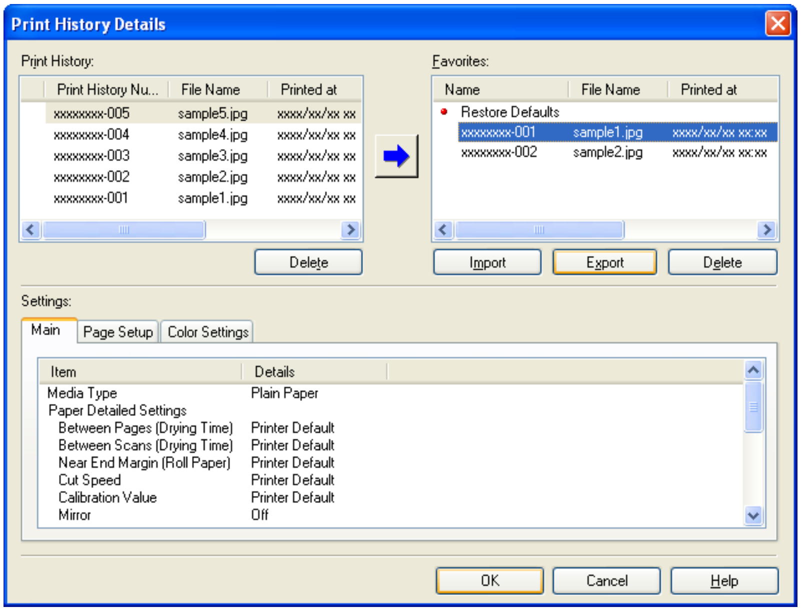
Comment Details:

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to export from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Export** button.



Print History:

Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

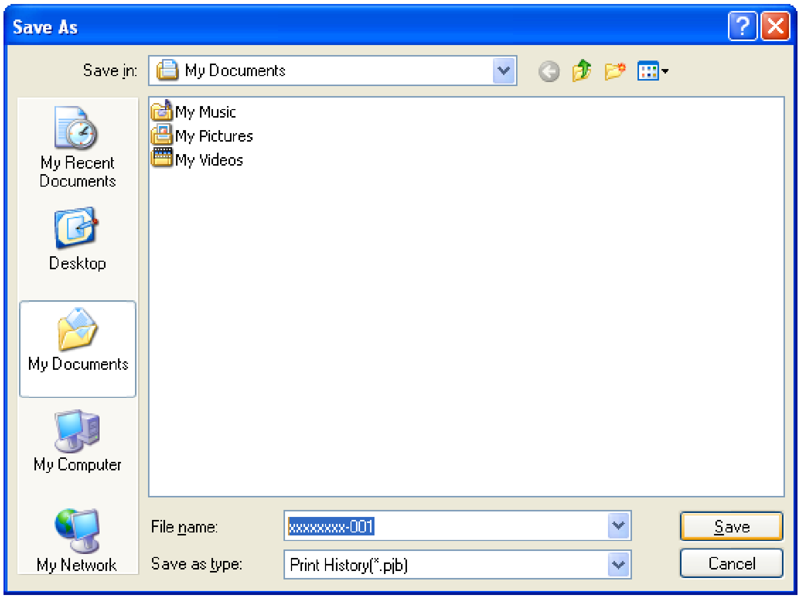
Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings:

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Input the name of the print history in **File Name** in the **Save As** dialog box, and click the **Save** button.



Save in: My Documents

File name: xxxxxxxx-001

Save as type: Print History(*.pjb)

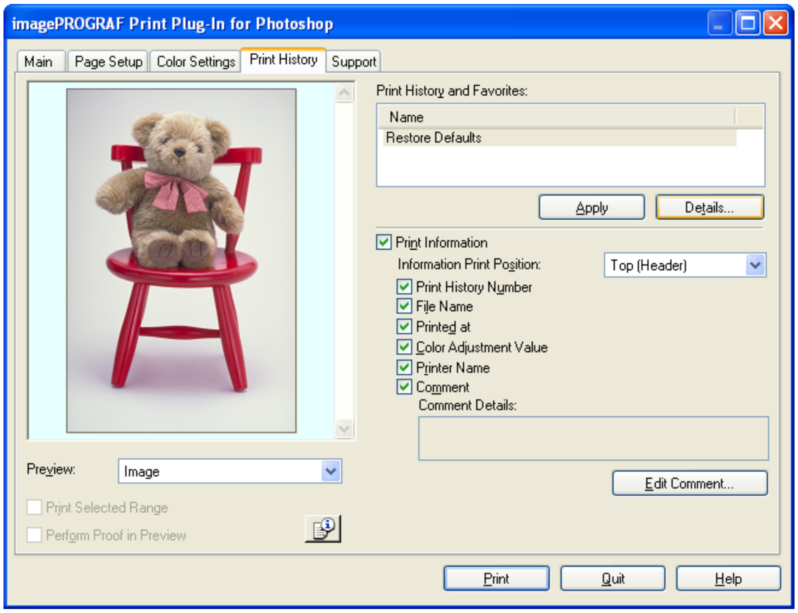
The print history is exported under the specified file name.

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.

Import Print History to Print Preferences

You can import print history in file format and store it to print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

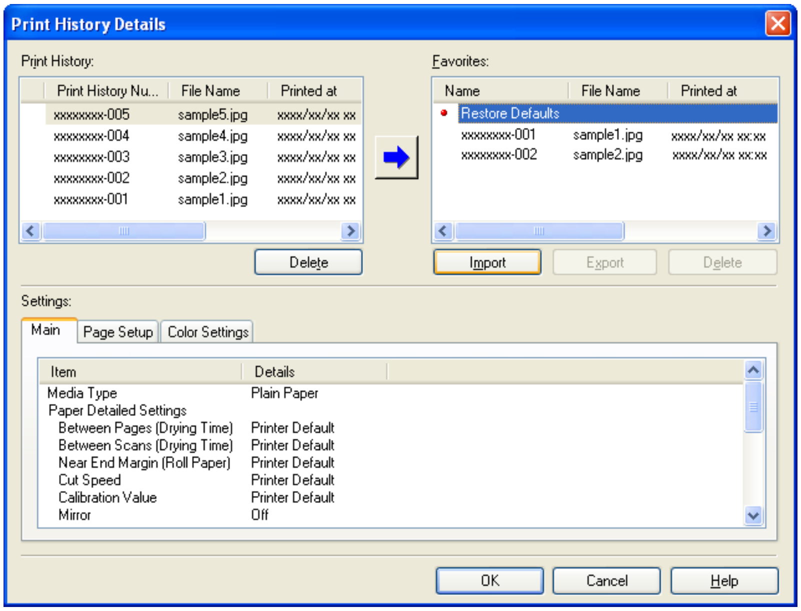
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Click the **Import** button in the **Print History Details** dialog box.

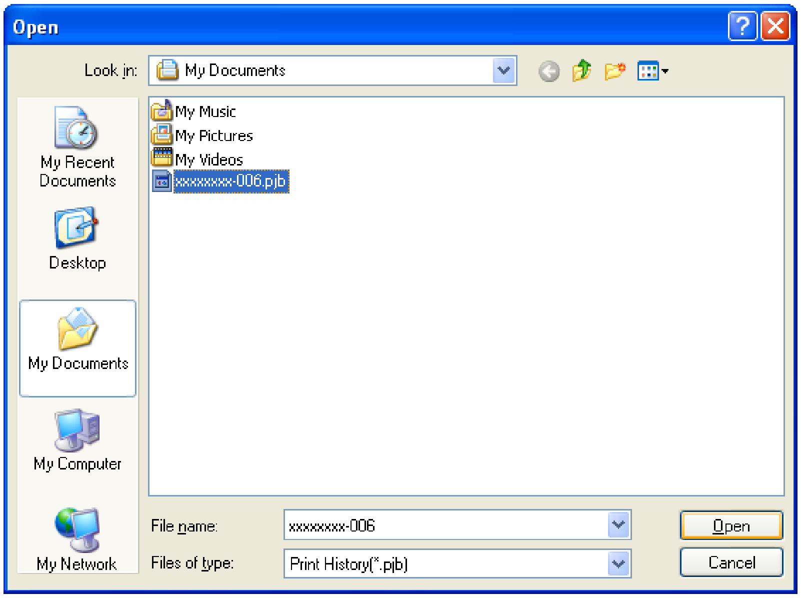


Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Select the print history you wish to import in the **Open** dialog box, and click the **Open** button.



Look in: My Documents

My Music
My Pictures
My Videos
xxxxxxxx-006.pjb

File name: xxxxxxxx-006

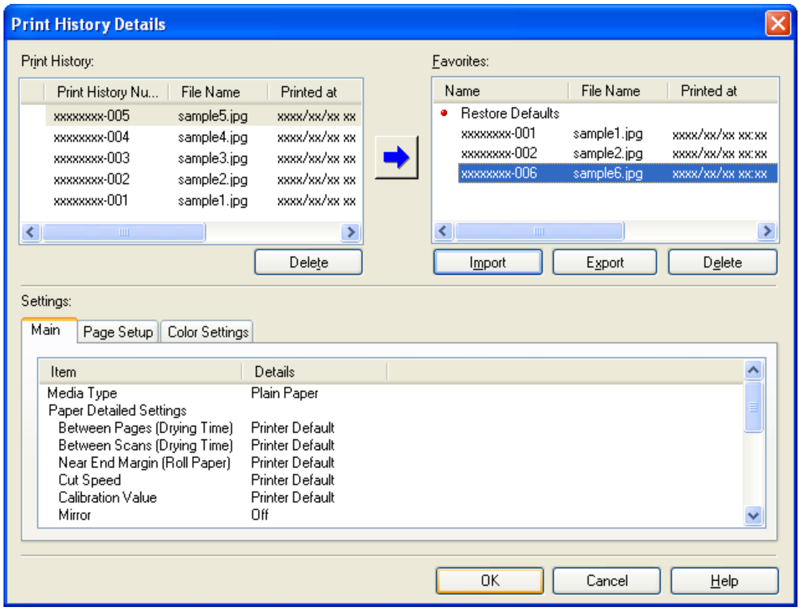
Files of type: Print History(*.pjb)

The print history is imported.

Note

- The print history file name suffix is *.pjb.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different OS in Print Plug-In.
- You cannot import a print history file exported from a different printer in Print Plug-In.

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History:

Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Favorites:

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-006	sample6.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

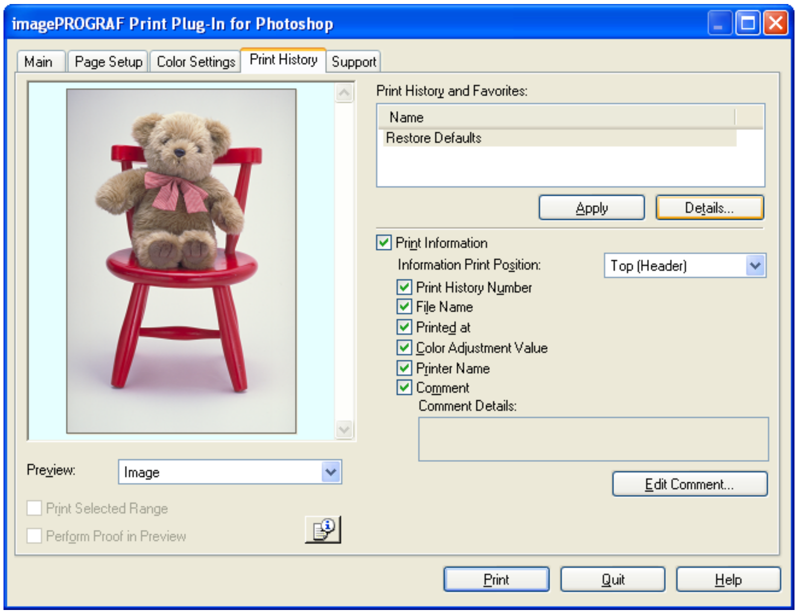
Settings: Main

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

Delete Print History from Print Preferences

You can delete print history store to print preferences. You cannot store more than 200 print history items in print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites:

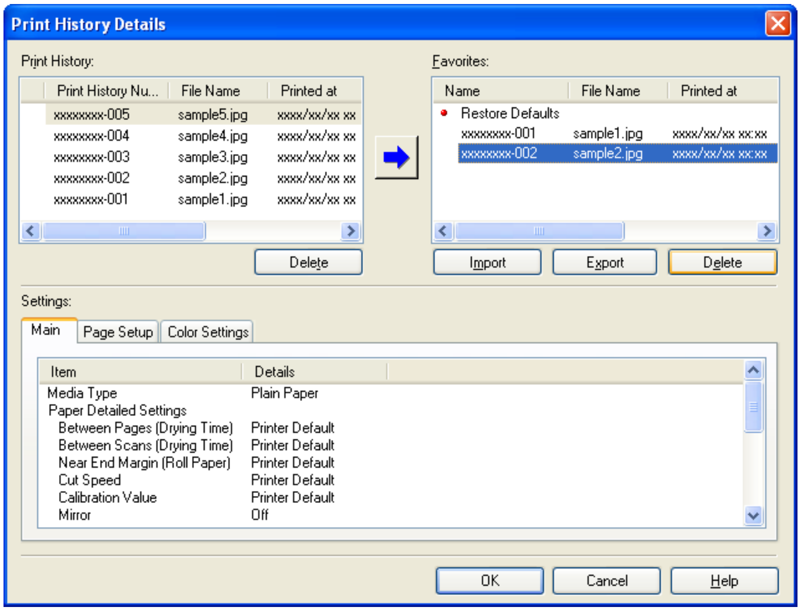
Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information
Information Print Position: Top (Header)
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment
Comment Details:

Preview: Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to delete from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.

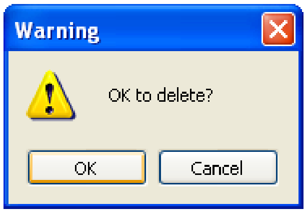


	Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
	xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

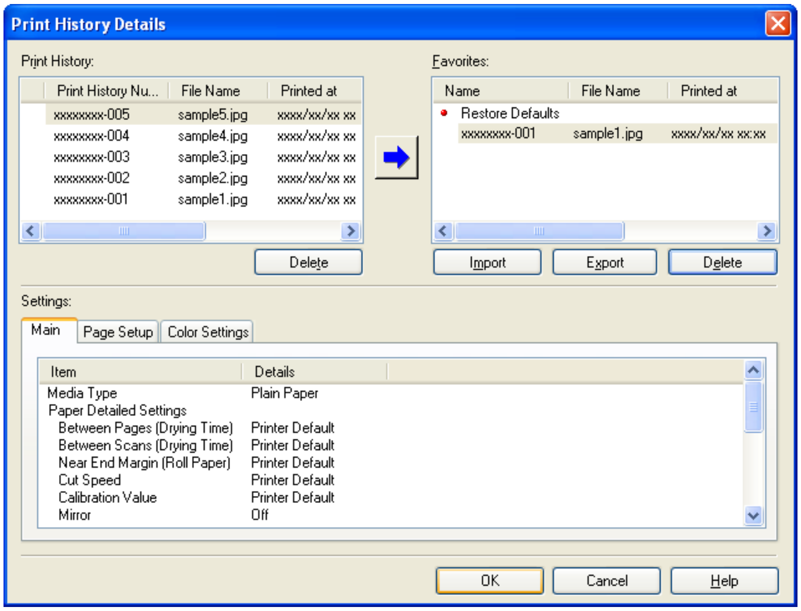
Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Click the **OK** button.



OK to delete?

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



	Print History Nu...	File Name	Printed at
	xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx
	xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

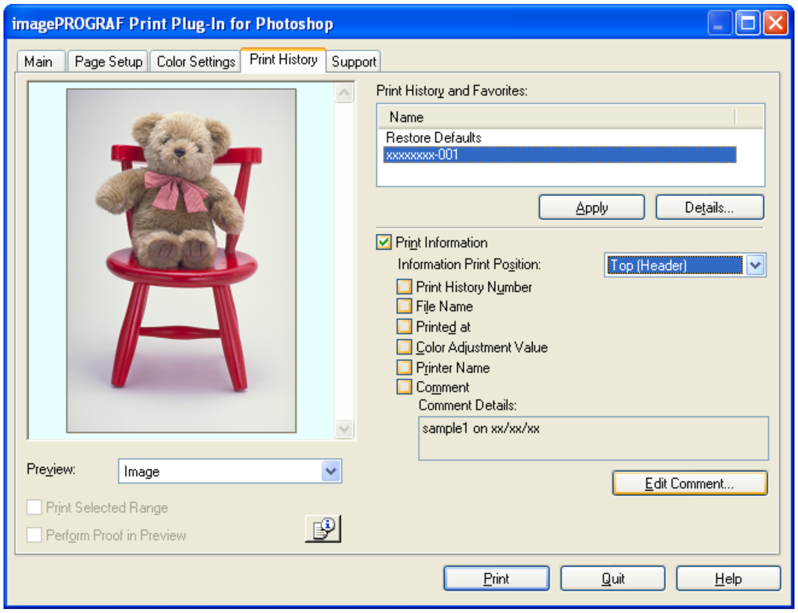
Set Information to Print with Image

You can print information with an image that is related, such as the file name and the time and date.

Note

- When you use the borderless printing function to print, the information will not be printed. (See "Print with No Borders.") →P.357
- When the printed information is too long as does not fit on the media, a break will appear in the printed information.
- The information may print on the image data with some media sizes, enlargement rates and print position values.
- When **Keep Media Size** is set to **On** on the printer, a portion of bottom of the print data is not printed.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☐ Print History Number
☐ File Name
☐ Printed at
☐ Color Adjustment Value
☐ Printer Name
☐ Comment

Comment Details: sample1 on xx/xx/xx

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Print Information** check box on.

3. Select the position where you wish to print the information in **Information Print Position**.

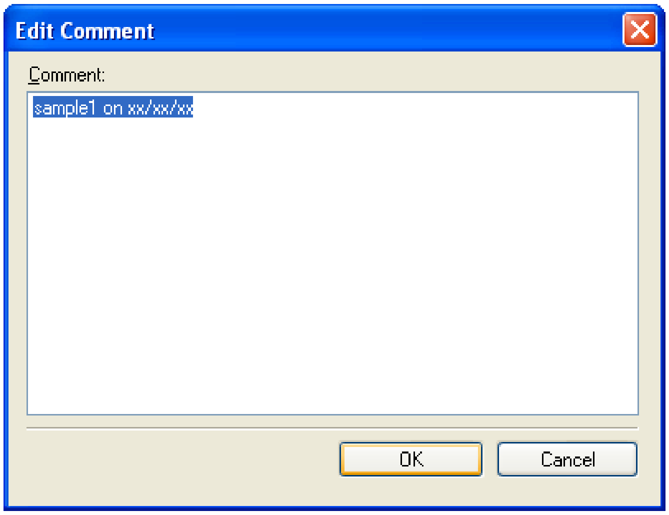
4. Click the information check box you wish to print on.

5. When you wish to edit the comment, click the **Edit Comment** button.

Note

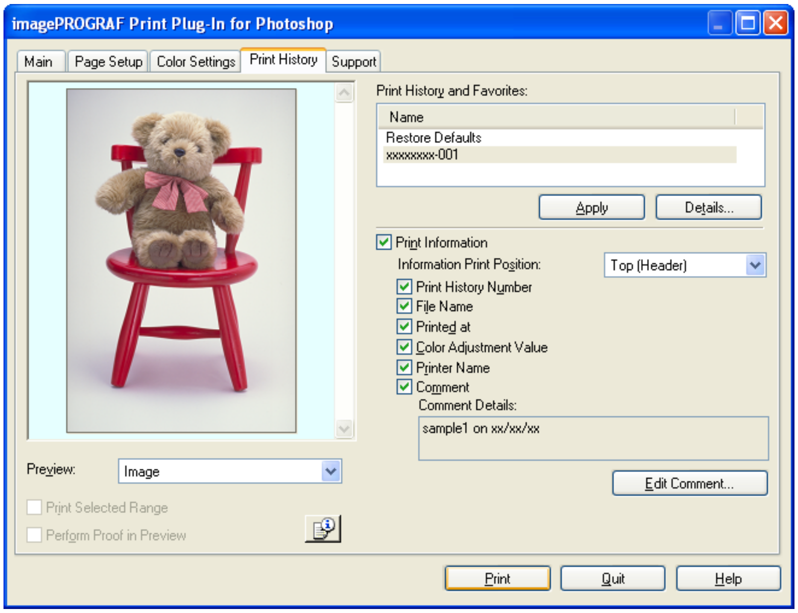
- When you do not wish to edit the comment, move to step 7.

6. Input the comment in the **Edit Comment** dialog box, and click **OK** button.



Comment: sample1 on xx/xx/xx

7. Click the **Print** button.



Print History and Favorites:
- Restore Defaults
- xxxxxxxx-001

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position: Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details: sample1 on xx/xx/xx

Preview: Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Comments are printed with images.

Print Plug-In for Office

Print Plug-In for Office features

Print Plug-In for Office is a Plug-In that enables easy printing from **Microsoft Office**.

- It is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, so it is easily accessible.
- It can be set by just selecting from the Wizard.
- **Large-Format Printing** custom size can also be set in the Wizard from **Microsoft Word** or **Microsoft PowerPoint**.
- Custom size can be set automatically from **Microsoft Excel**.
- The layout can be checked before printing by starting the preview screen.

Important

- The **Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in **Microsoft Office** after installing **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office**.
  Refer to the following topic for details on how to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon.
  - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.378

Operating Environment

Print Plug-In for Office 's operating environment is as below.

- Compatible Operating System
  - 32 bit edition Windows OS
    Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7
  - 64 bit edition Windows OS
    Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7

> Note
> - 64 bit edition Windows OS operates only on WOW64 (32 bit emulator).
> - For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.

- Software that requires installation
  Microsoft Office XP/2003/2007/2010
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Ver. 3.95 or later

- Hardware
  CPU 2.8 GHz Pentium 4 or better
  RAM 1GB or more(512MB or more for Windows XP and Windows Server 2003)
  HDD (free space) 20GB or more

> Important
> - If you opened the Office document from **Internet Explorer**, the software will not run correctly.
> - If you are editing an embedded object or link object, the software will not run correctly.
> - If you added the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** ribbon to the **Microsoft Office 2007/2010** Quick Access toolbar, the software will not run correctly.

Steps to install

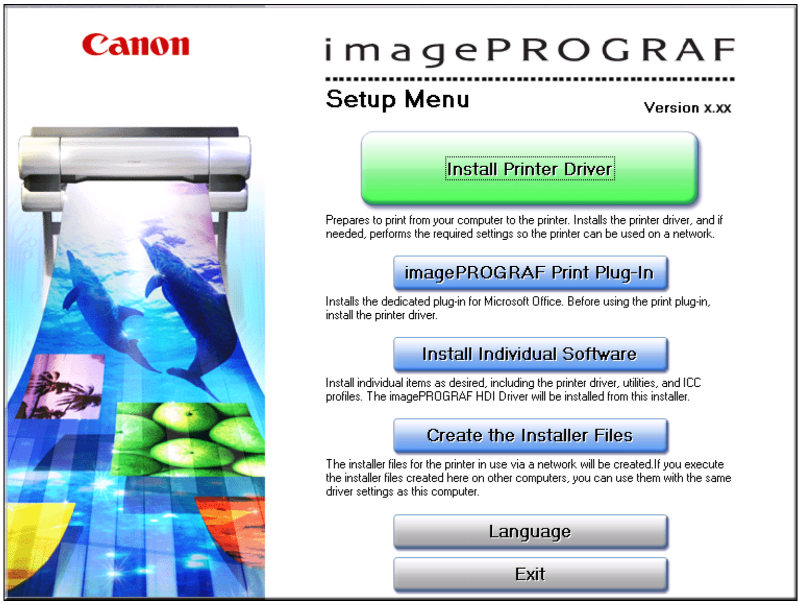
Below are the steps to install **Print Plug-In for Office**.

> Note
> - You must log into Windows as an Administrator before the installation.

1. Insert "User Software CD-ROM" into the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.

> Note
> - If the installer screen does not display, open the CD-ROM icon from **My Computer**, click **setup.exe**, and open the icon.

2. Click the **Install Individual Software** button.


Canon
imagePROGRAF
Setup Menu
Version x.xx
Install Printer Driver
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
Install Individual Software
Create the Installer Files
Language
Exit

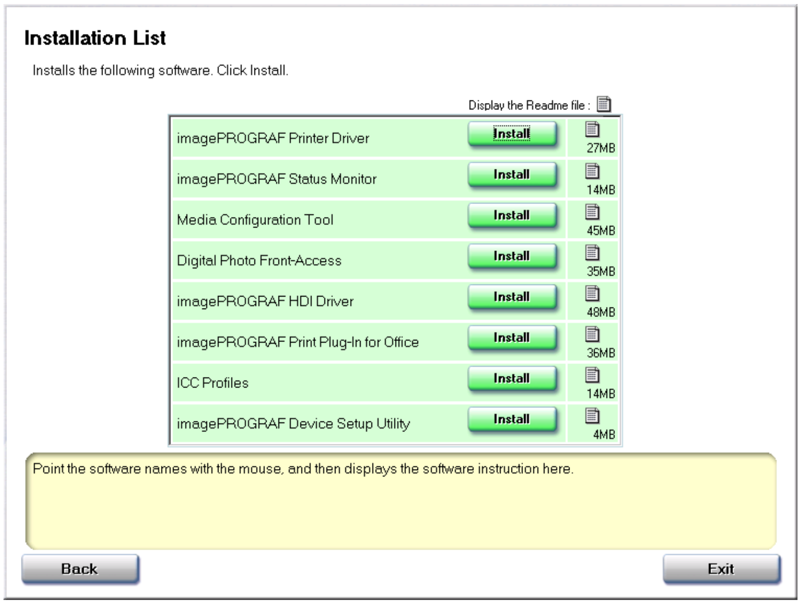
Prepares to print from your computer to the printer. Installs the printer driver, and if needed, performs the required settings so the printer can be used on a network.

Installs the dedicated plug-in for Microsoft Office. Before using the print plug-in, install the printer driver.

Install individual items as desired, including the printer driver, utilities, and ICC profiles. The imagePROGRAF HDI Driver will be installed from this installer.

The installer files for the printer in use via a network will be created.If you execute the installer files created here on other computers, you can use them with the same driver settings as this computer.

3. Click **Install** in **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office**.

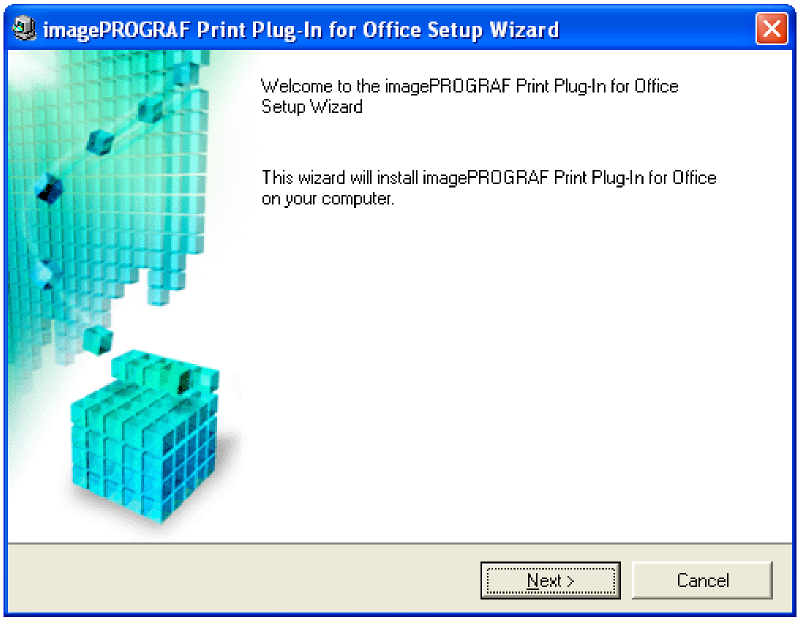


Installs the following software. Click Install.

imagePROGRAF Printer Driver	Install	27MB
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor	Install	14MB
Media Configuration Tool	Install	45MB
Digital Photo Front-Access	Install	35MB
imagePROGRAF HDI Driver	Install	48MB
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office	Install	36MB
ICC Profiles	Install	14MB
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	Install	4MB

Point the software names with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

4. Click the **Next** button.

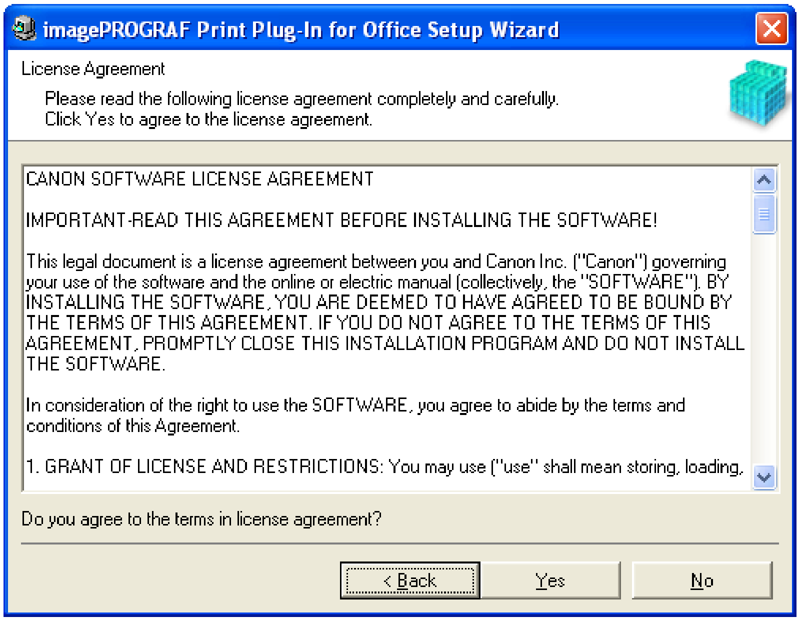


imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard

Welcome to the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard

This wizard will install imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office on your computer.

5. Read the **License Agreement**, and click the **Yes** button.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard

License Agreement

Please read the following license agreement completely and carefully.
Click Yes to agree to the license agreement.

CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

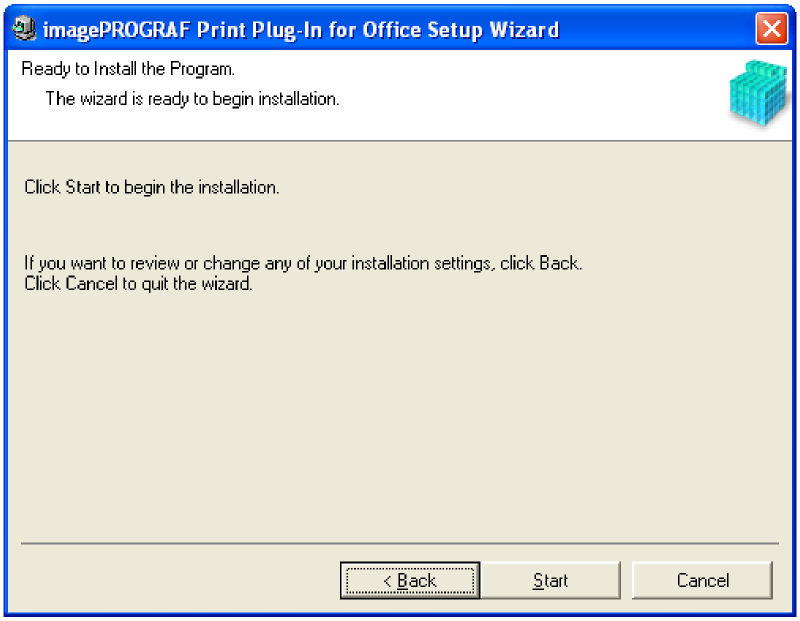
This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE AND RESTRICTIONS: You may use ("use" shall mean storing, loading,

Do you agree to the terms in license agreement?

6. Click the **Start** button.



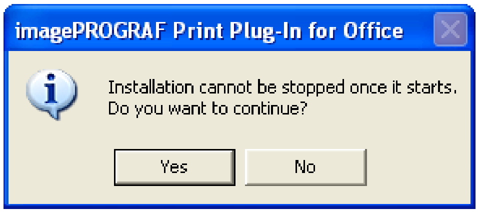
Ready to Install the Program.

The wizard is ready to begin installation.

Click Start to begin the installation.

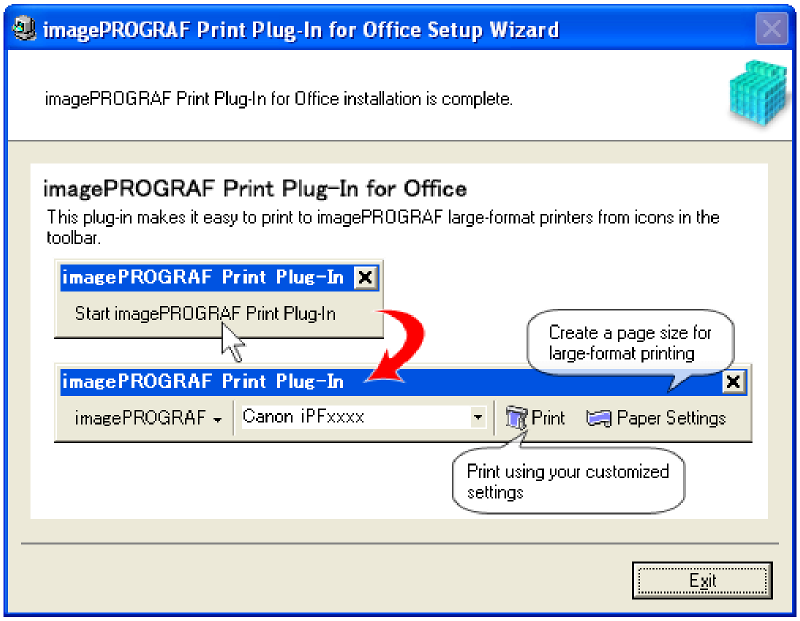
If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back.
Click Cancel to quit the wizard.

7. Click the **Yes** button.



Installation cannot be stopped once it starts.
Do you want to continue?

8. Click the **Exit** button.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office installation is complete.

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office

This plug-in makes it easy to print to imagePROGRAF large-format printers from icons in the toolbar.

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
Create a page size for large-format printing
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
imagePROGRAF
Canon iPFxxxx
Print
Paper Settings
Print using your customized settings
Exit

The installation for **Print Plug-In for Office** is complete.

Important

- When you install this software, the virtual printer **Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn** may be installed. If you want to use this software, do not uninstall the virtual printer **Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn**.
- The **Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in **Microsoft Office** after installing **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office**.
  Refer to the following topic for details on how to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office** toolbar/ribbon.
  - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.378

Steps to uninstall

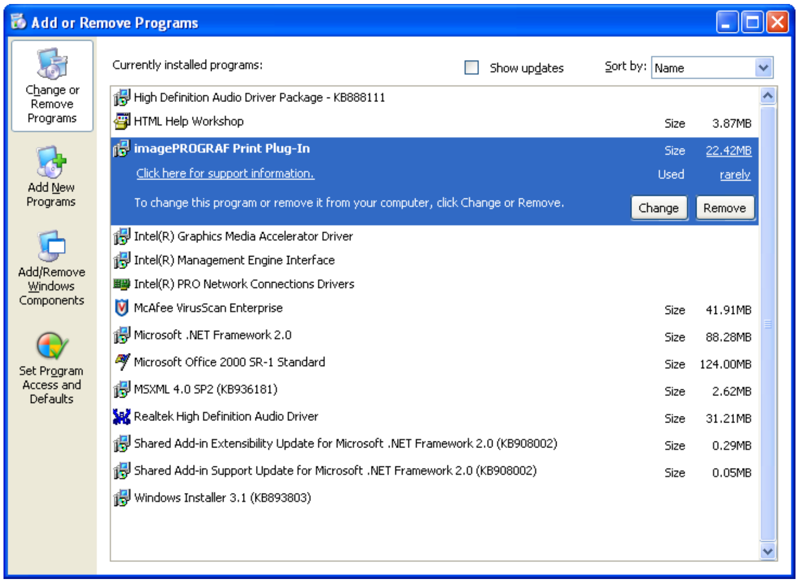
Below are the steps to uninstall **Print Plug-In for Office**.

1. If **Microsoft Office** is open, close it.

2. Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.

3. Open **Add or Remove Programs**.

4. Select **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In**, and click the **Remove** button.


Add or Remove Programs
Change or Remove Programs
Add New Programs
Add/Remove Windows Components
Set Program Access and Defaults
Change
Remove

Currently installed programs: ☐ Show updates Sort by: Name

High Definition Audio Driver Package - KB888111		
HTML Help Workshop	Size	3.87MB
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	Size	22.42MB
Click here for support information.	Used	rarely
To change this program or remove it from your computer, click Change or Remove.		
Intel(R) Graphics Media Accelerator Driver		
Intel(R) Management Engine Interface		
Intel(R) PRO Network Connections Drivers		
McAfee VirusScan Enterprise	Size	41.91MB
Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0	Size	88.28MB
Microsoft Office 2000 SR-1 Standard	Size	124.00MB
MSXML 4.0 SP2 (KB936181)	Size	2.62MB
Realtek High Definition Audio Driver	Size	31.21MB
Shared Add-in Extensibility Update for Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (KB908002)	Size	0.29MB
Shared Add-in Support Update for Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (KB908002)	Size	0.05MB
Windows Installer 3.1 (KB893803)		

Note

- You cannot uninstall **Print Plug-In for Office** if an Office application is running. When a message appears, select **Cancel** and close all Office applications that are running.

When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed

Buttons such as **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** sometimes do not appear in the **Word**, **PowerPoint** and **Excel** Office applications, and the **Print Plug-In for Office** functions are not available.
In this event, re-install **Print Plug-In for Office**.

If you are using **Microsoft Office 2003** or later, you can also enable add-ins to display **Print Plug-In for Office**.
See below for the procedure for re-installing the plug-in or enabling add-ins.

Re-installing **Print Plug-In for Office**

- If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the **Microsoft Office** application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.

In this event, you will need to re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ ribbon.

> Note
> - You cannot re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** once an Office application is running. When the message appears, select **Cancel** and close the active Office application.

Re-install **Print Plug-In for Office** as follows:

1. Close **Microsoft Office** if it is open.
2. Install **Print Plug-In for Office**.
   For information about instsalling, see "Steps to install." →P.374

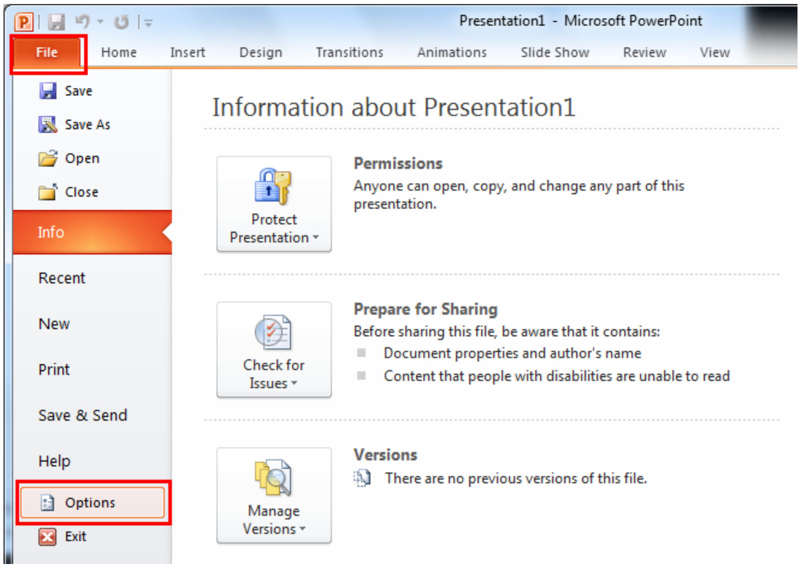
Enabling **Print Plug-In for Office** for items disabled in Office applications

- If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the **Microsoft Office** application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.

In this event, you will need to restore the disabled add-ins in order to display the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ ribbon.
Use the procedure below to restore the add-ins disabled by **Microsoft Office**.

For **Microsoft Office 2010**

1. Select **Options** from the **File** menu.



Information about Presentation1

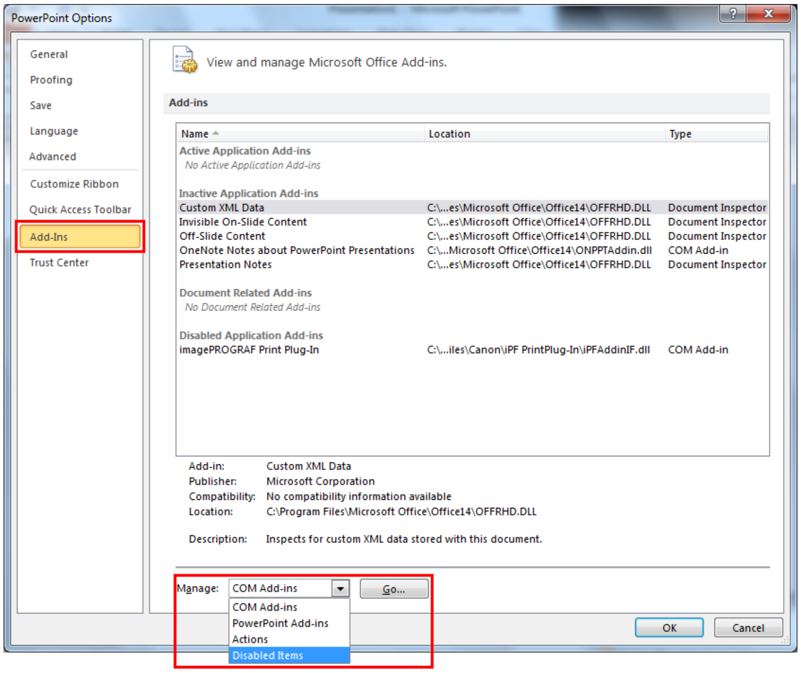
Permissions
Anyone can open, copy, and change any part of this presentation.

Prepare for Sharing
Before sharing this file, be aware that it contains:
- Document properties and author's name
- Content that people with disabilities are unable to read

Versions
There are no previous versions of this file.

2. From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.

3. Select **Disabled Items** in the **Manage** combo box and click the **Go** button.



View and manage Microsoft Office Add-ins.

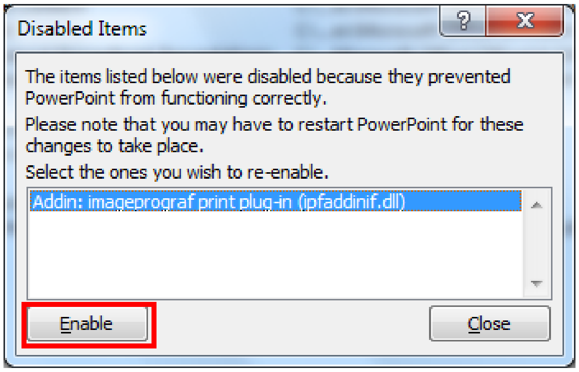
Add-ins

Name	Location	Type
Active Application Add-ins		
No Active Application Add-ins		
Inactive Application Add-ins		
Custom XML Data	C:\...es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Invisible On-Slide Content	C:\...es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Off-Slide Content	C:\...es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
OneNote Notes about PowerPoint Presentations	C:\...Microsoft Office\Office14\ONPPTAddin.dll	COM Add-in
Presentation Notes	C:\...es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Document Related Add-ins		
No Document Related Add-ins		
Disabled Application Add-ins		
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	C:\...iles\Canon\iPF PrintPlug-In\iPFAddinIF.dll	COM Add-in

Add-in: Custom XML Data
Publisher: Microsoft Corporation
Compatibility: No compatibility information available
Location: C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL

Description: Inspects for custom XML data stored with this document.

4. If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.



The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly.

Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.

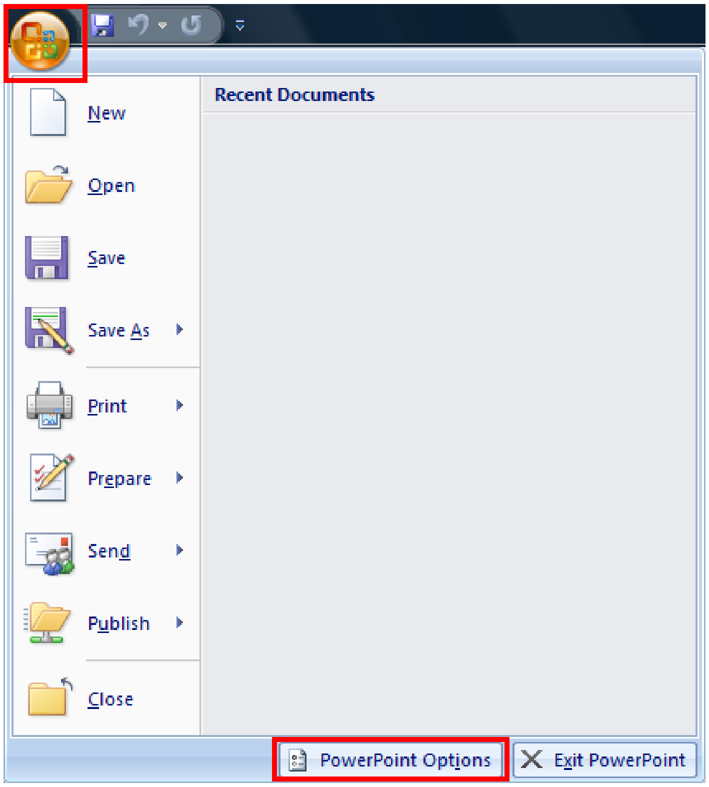
Select the ones you wish to re-enable.

Addin: imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)

5. Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

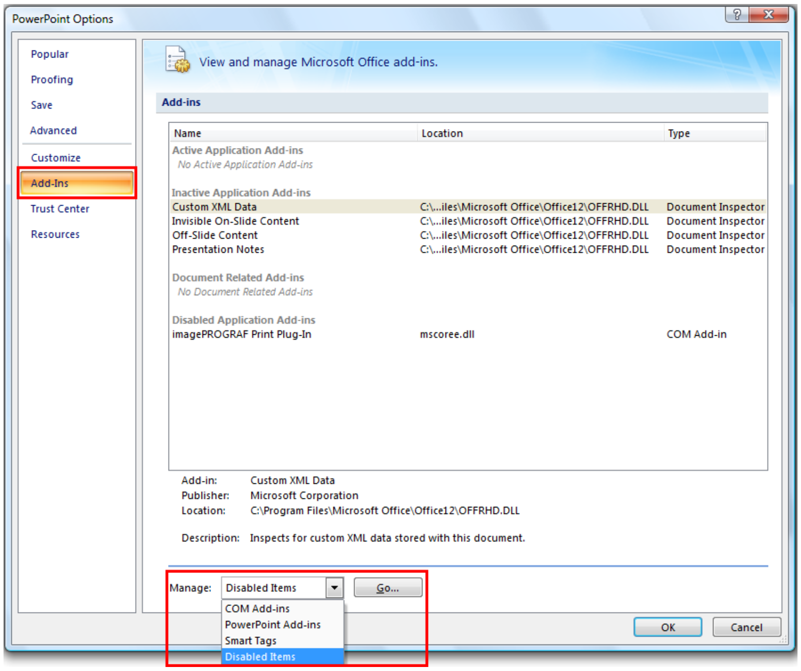
For **Microsoft Office 2007**

1. Click the **Office** button and then click the **<application name> options** button.



2. From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.

3. Select **Disabled Items** in the **Manage** combo box and click the **Go** button.



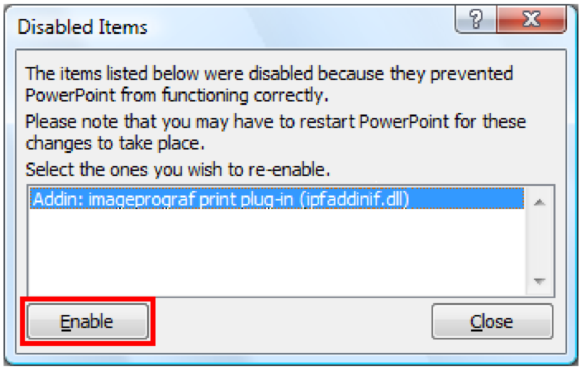
Name	Location	Type
Active Application Add-ins		
No Active Application Add-ins		
Inactive Application Add-ins		
Custom XML Data	C:\...iles\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Invisible On-Slide Content	C:\...iles\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Off-Slide Content	C:\...iles\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Presentation Notes	C:\...iles\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Document Related Add-ins		
No Document Related Add-ins		
Disabled Application Add-ins		
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	mscoree.dll	COM Add-in

Add-in: Custom XML Data
Publisher: Microsoft Corporation
Location: C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL

Description: Inspects for custom XML data stored with this document.

Manage: Disabled Items Go...

4. If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.



Disabled Items

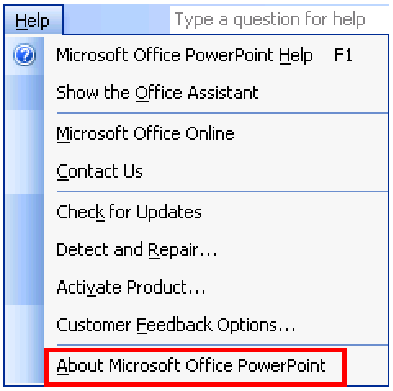
The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly.
Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.
Select the ones you wish to re-enable.

Addin: imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)

5. Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

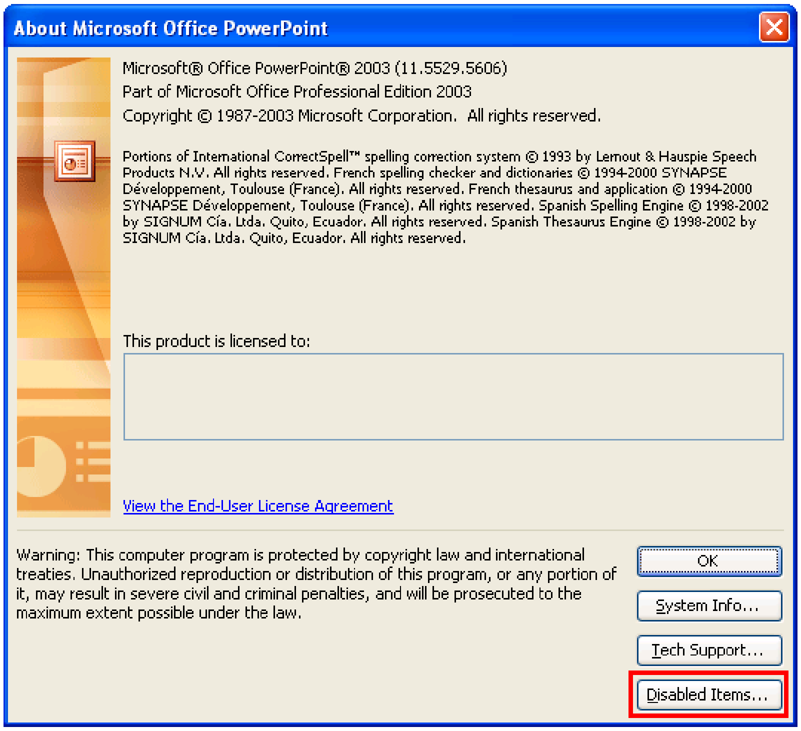
For **Microsoft Office 2003**

1. Click **About <application name>** in the **Help** menu of application.



Help
Type a question for help
Microsoft Office PowerPoint Help F1
Show the Office Assistant
Microsoft Office Online
Contact Us
Check for Updates
Detect and Repair...
Activate Product...
Customer Feedback Options...
About Microsoft Office PowerPoint

2. Click the **Disabled Items** button in the **About <application name>** dialog box.



Microsoft® Office PowerPoint® 2003 (11.5529.5606)
Part of Microsoft Office Professional Edition 2003
Copyright © 1987-2003 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

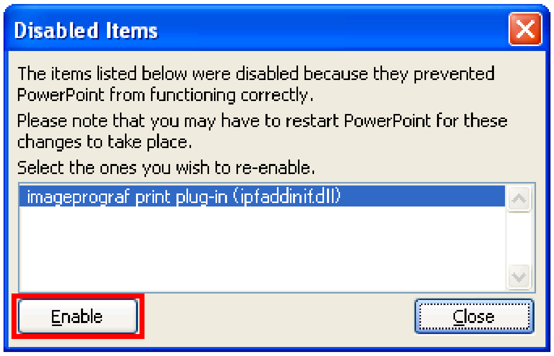
Portions of International CorrectSpell™ spelling correction system © 1993 by Lernout & Hauspie Speech Products N.V. All rights reserved. French spelling checker and dictionaries © 1994-2000 SYNAPSE Développement, Toulouse (France). All rights reserved. French thesaurus and application © 1994-2000 SYNAPSE Développement, Toulouse (France). All rights reserved. Spanish Spelling Engine © 1998-2002 by SIGNUM Cía. Ltda. Quito, Ecuador. All rights reserved. Spanish Thesaurus Engine © 1998-2002 by SIGNUM Cía. Ltda. Quito, Ecuador. All rights reserved.

This product is licensed to:

View the End-User License Agreement

Warning: This computer program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.

3. If **Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)** is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.



The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly.

Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.

Select the ones you wish to re-enable.

imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)

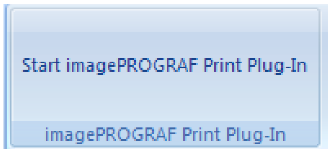
4. Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

To start from Microsoft Word

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft Word**.

1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

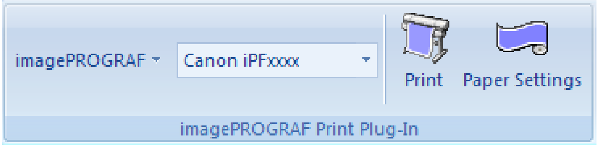
2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



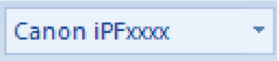
Important

- If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
  - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.378

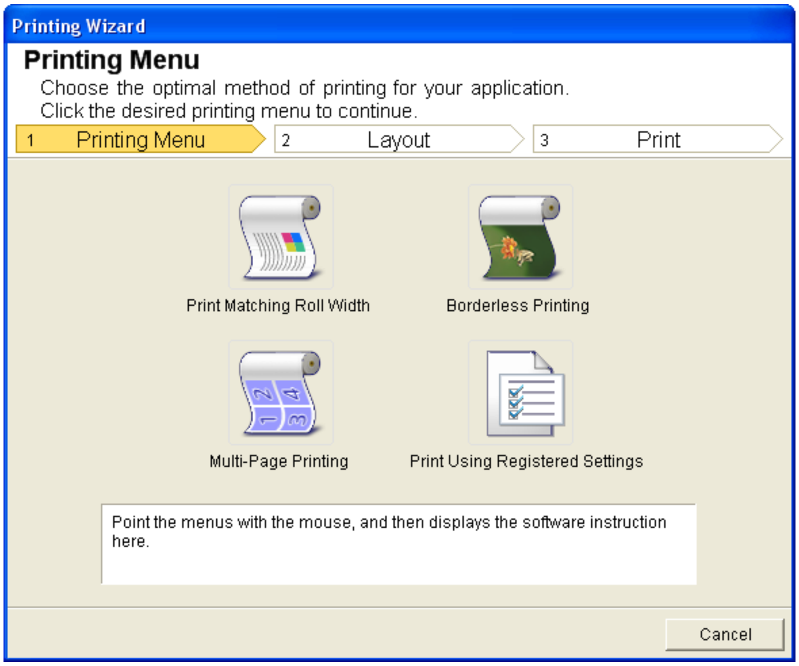
3. Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4. Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
 Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. You can change the settings using the **Special Settings** dialog box. Refer to Configuring Special Settings →P.424 for details.
 Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
 Print Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing**, **Multi-Page Printing**, and **Print Using Registered Settings** can be set.
 Paper Settings Button	Large-Format Wizard is displayed. Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box


Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

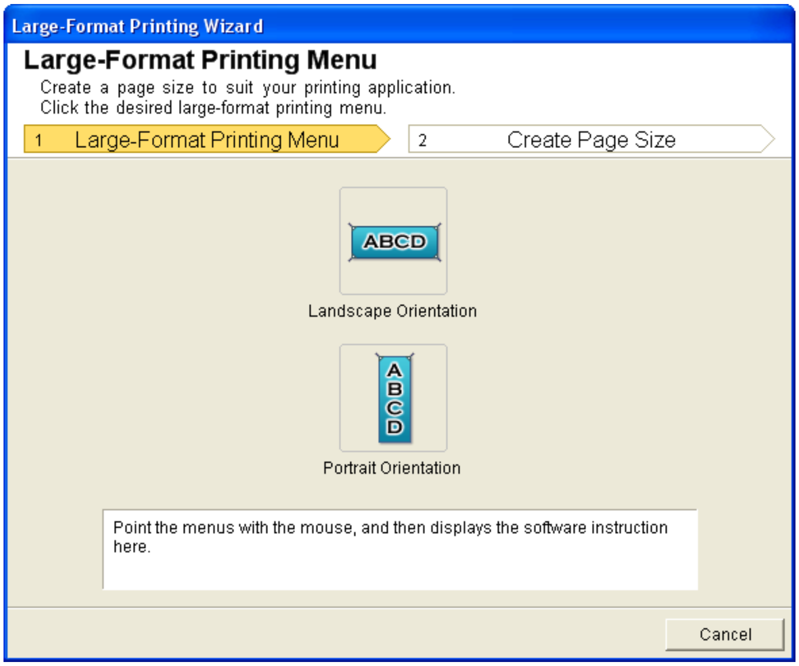
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box


Large-Format Printing Wizard

Large-Format Printing Menu

Create a page size to suit your printing application.
Click the desired large-format printing menu.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

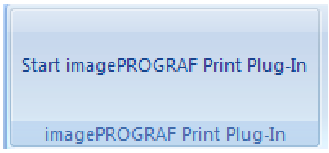
- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Print Matching Roll Width (Word)

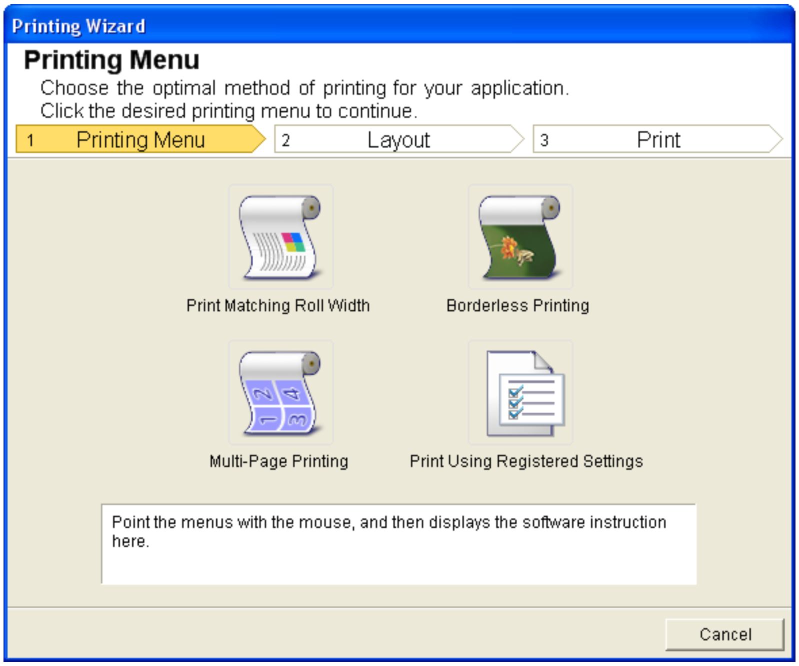
Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Printing Menu

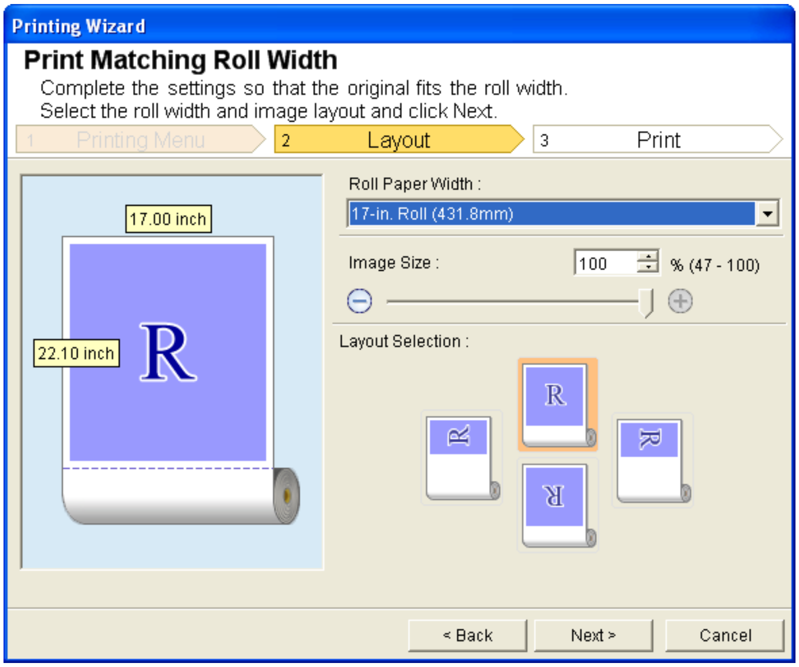
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Print Matching Roll Width**.



Printing Wizard

Print Matching Roll Width

Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

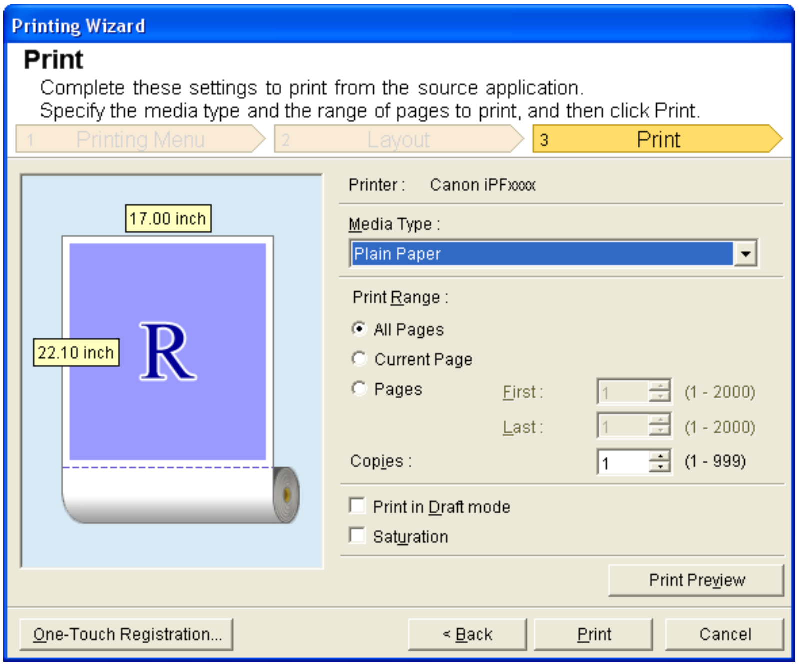
Image Size : 100 % (47 - 100)

5. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select image size.

7. Select layout.

8. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range :
● All Pages
○ Current Page
○ Pages First : 1 (1 - 2000) Last : 1 (1 - 2000)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode
☐ Saturation

9. Select **Media Type**.

10. Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

11. Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum length will be the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

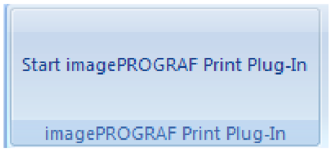
12. Press **Print** to start printing.

Borderless Printing (Word)

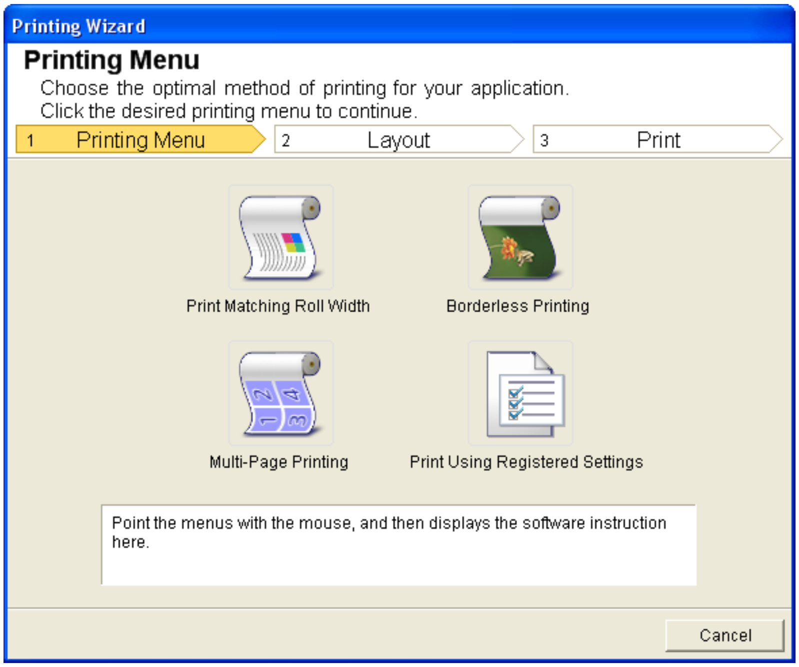
Prints up to the border of the media. Photos and posters can be printed without worrying about margins.

1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



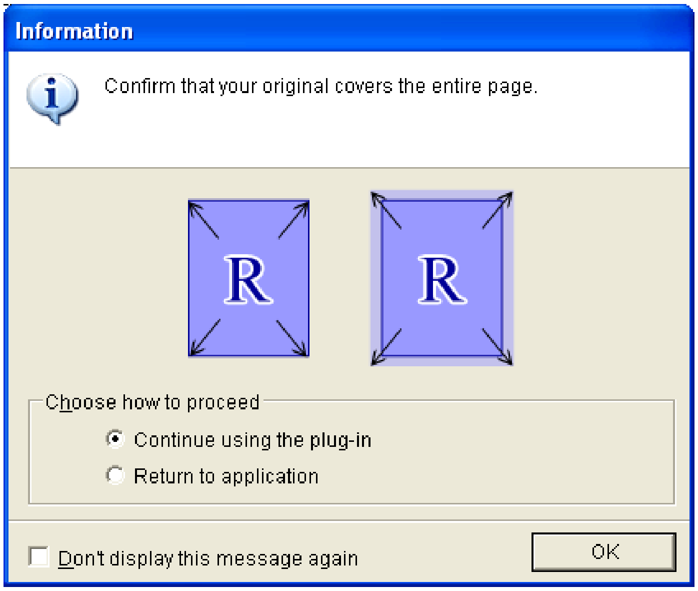
3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
   The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.


Printing Wizard
Printing Menu
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.
1 Printing Menu
2 Layout
3 Print
Print Matching Roll Width
Borderless Printing
Multi-Page Printing
Print Using Registered Settings
Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.
Cancel

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

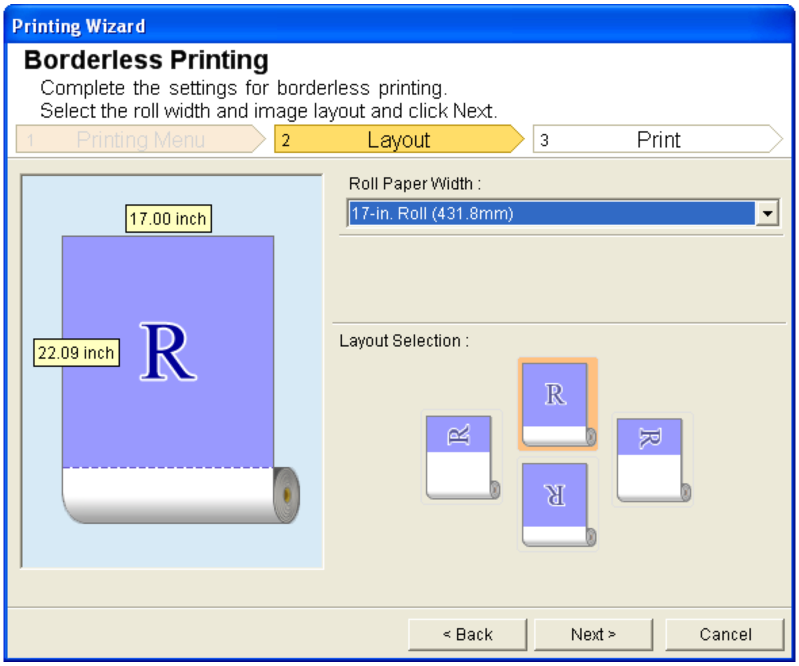
4. Click **Borderless Printing**.


Information
Confirm that your original covers the entire page.
R
R
Choose how to proceed
● Continue using the plug-in
○ Return to application
☐ Don't display this message again
OK

5. A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.

Note

- To adjust the data, select **Return to application** and press **OK**. Exit **Print Plug-In for Office** and return to the application.



Printing Wizard

Borderless Printing

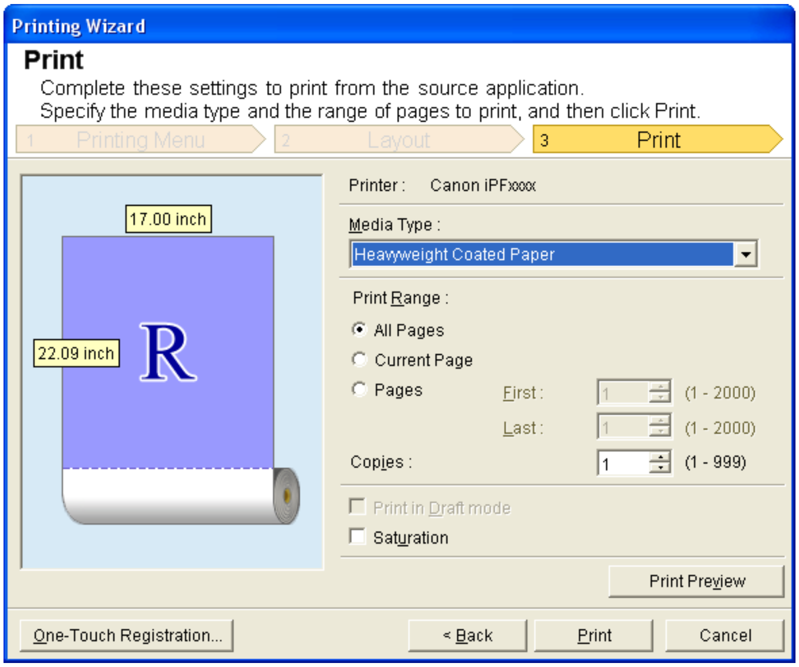
Complete the settings for borderless printing.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

6. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

7. Select Layout.

8. Select **Next**.



9. Select **Media Type**.

10. Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
For **Pages**, insert the page number.

11. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - Press the **One-Touch Registration** button to register the settings. This is useful for multiple printing using the same settings.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can confirm and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum length for Borderless Printing is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

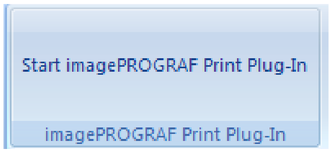
12. Press **Print** to start printing.

Multi-Page Printing (Word)

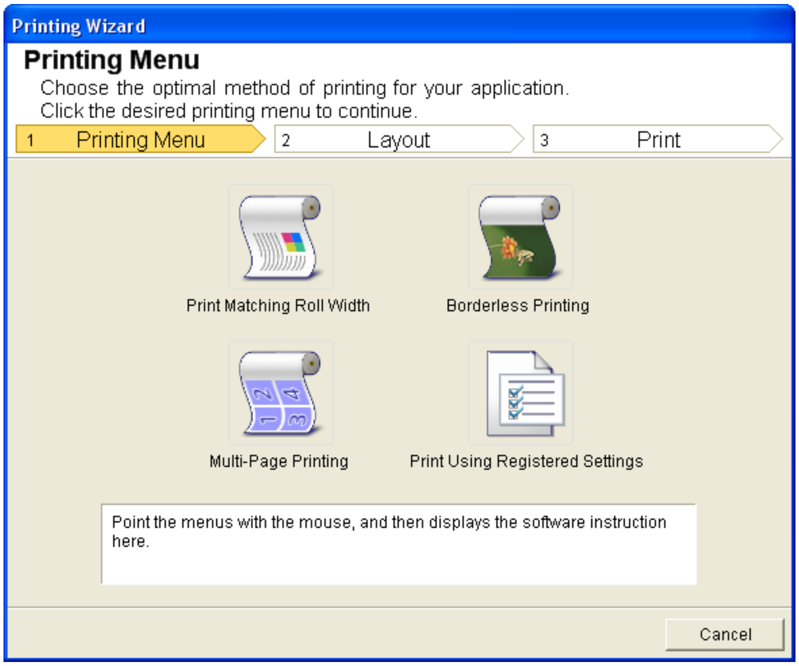
Prints multiple pages as one page. You can print handouts into a single page, or print matter with many pages.

1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Printing Menu

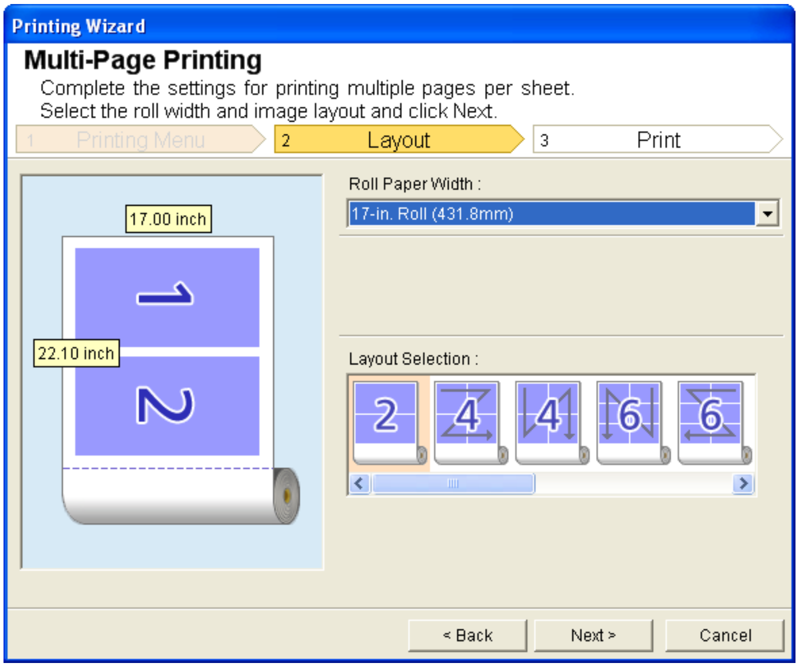
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Multi-Page Printing**.



Printing Wizard

Multi-Page Printing

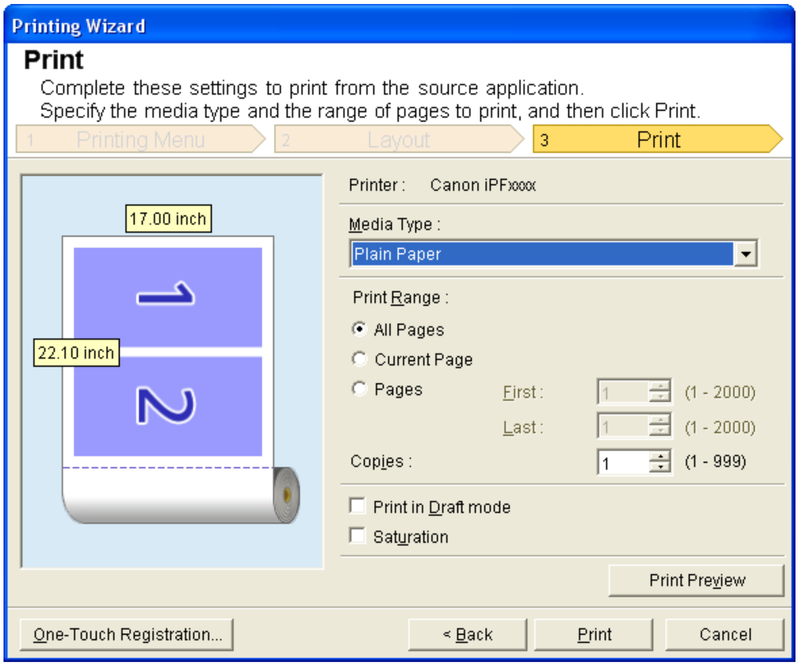
Complete the settings for printing multiple pages per sheet.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

5. Select the **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select layout from **Layout Selection**.

7. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range :

● All Pages

○ Current Page

○ Pages First : 1 (1 - 2000) Last : 1 (1 - 2000)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

8. Select **Media Type**.

9. Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**.
   If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

10. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

11. Press **Print** to start printing.

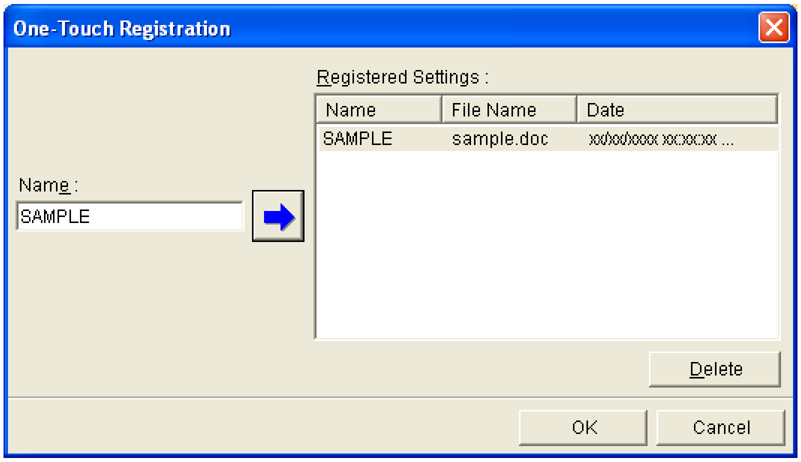
Register the settings(Word)

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

1. Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

> Note
> - Up to 20 items can be registered.
> - The available settings are as follows.
>   - Print Matching Roll Width (Word) →P.386
>   - Borderless Printing (Word) →P.388
>   - Multi-Page Printing (Word) →P.391

2. Click the **One-Touch Registration** button.



Name : SAMPLE

Name	File Name	Date
SAMPLE	sample.doc	xx/xx/xxxx xx:xx:xx ...

3. Enter name in **Name**.
   Up to 31 characters can be entered.

4. Click ➡. The name you entered is displayed in **Registered Settings**.

5. Click **OK**, and return to the **Print** screen.

6. Click **Print** to print, and click **Cancel** to cancel the print.

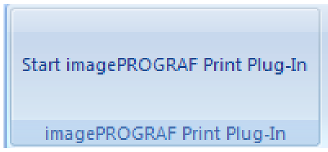
> Note
> - Clicking **Cancel** in the **Print** screen will not delete the registered settings.

Print Using Registered Settings (Word)

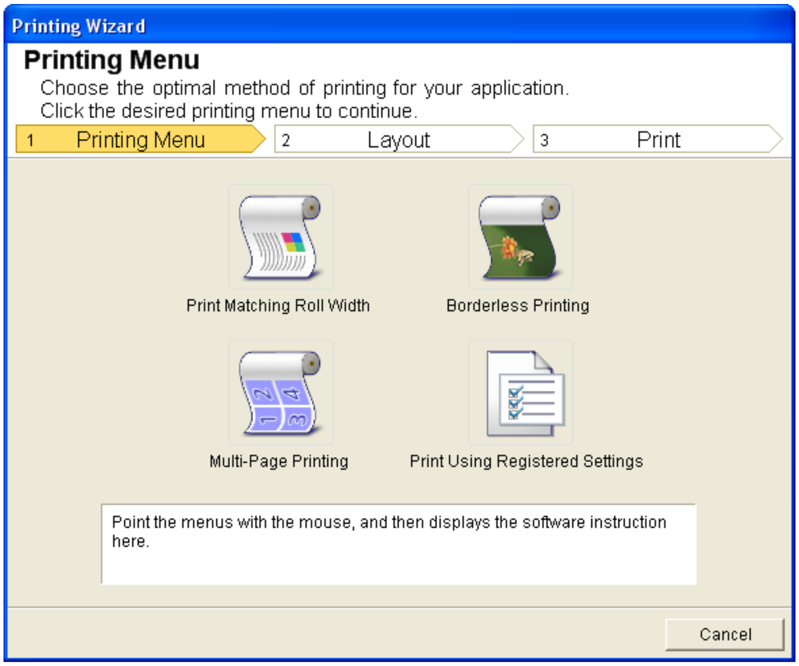
Prints using the registered settings.

1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
   The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.


Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

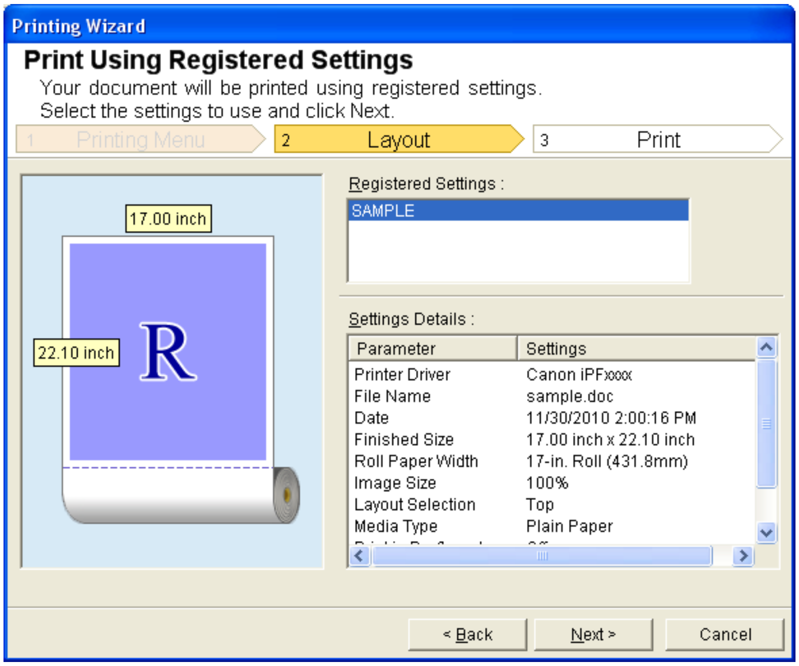
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Print Using Registered Settings**.



Printing Wizard

Print Using Registered Settings

Your document will be printed using registered settings.
Select the settings to use and click Next.

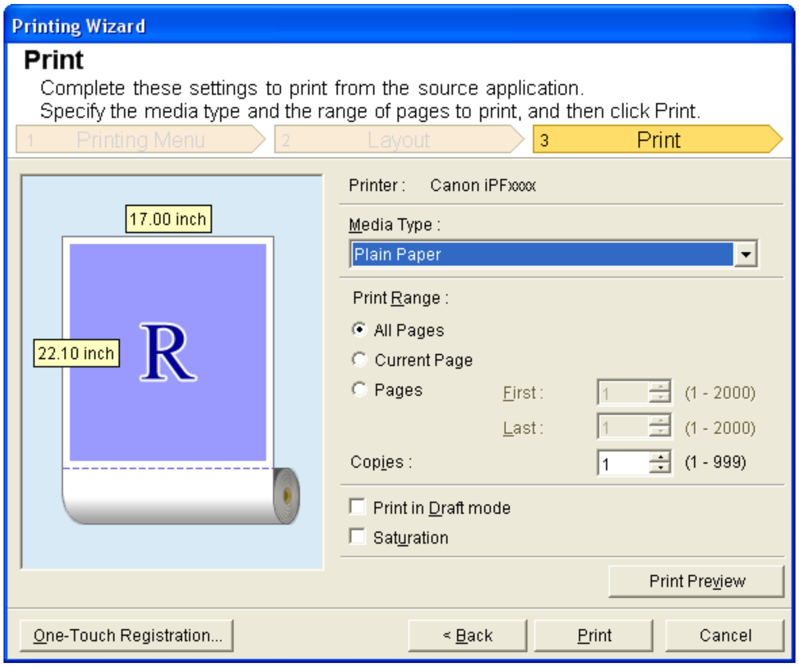
Registered Settings :

SAMPLE

Settings Details :

Parameter	Settings
Printer Driver	Canon iPFxxxx
File Name	sample.doc
Date	11/30/2010 2:00:16 PM
Finished Size	17.00 inch x 22.10 inch
Roll Paper Width	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Image Size	100%
Layout Selection	Top
Media Type	Plain Paper

5. Click the **Next** button.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range :

● All Pages
○ Current Page
○ Pages First : 1 (1 - 2000) Last : 1 (1 - 2000)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode
☐ Saturation

6. Select **Media Type**.

7. Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, or **Pages**.
   If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

8. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

9. Press **Print** to start printing.

Portrait Orientation / Landscape Orientation (Word)

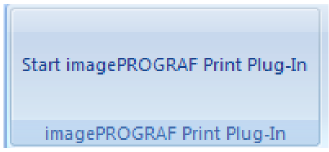
Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

Use the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

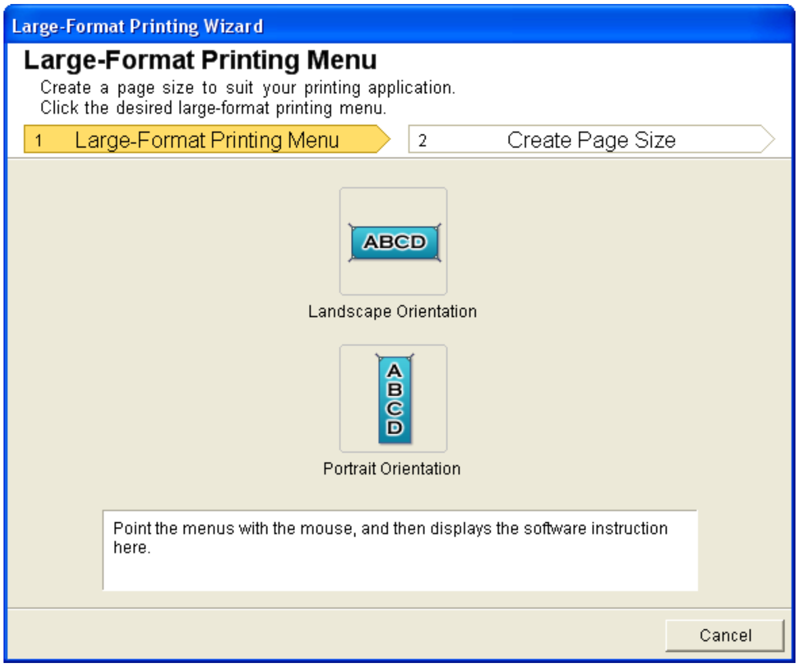
1. Start **Microsoft Word**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Paper Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
   The **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.

> Note
> - If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.



Large-Format Printing Wizard

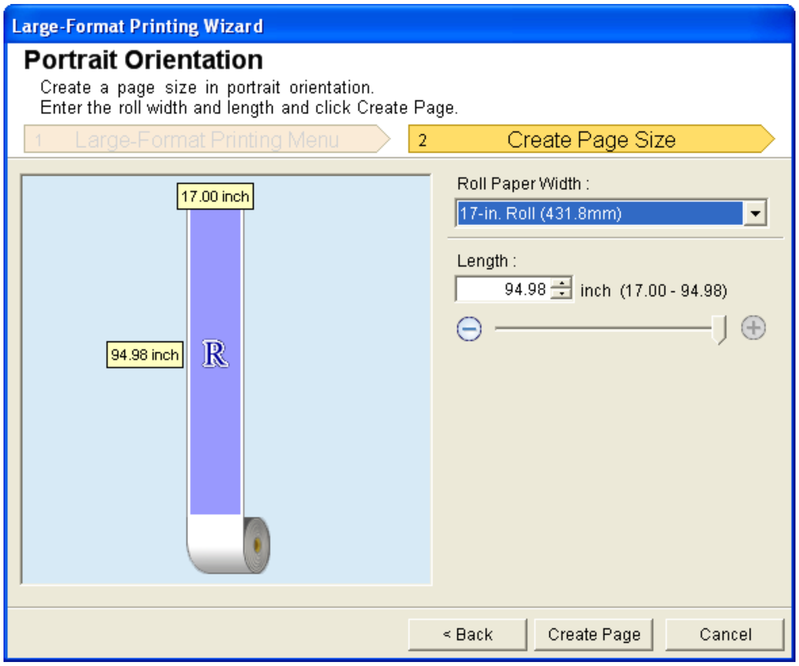
Large-Format Printing Menu

Create a page size to suit your printing application.
Click the desired large-format printing menu.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

4. Click **Portrait Orientation** or **Landscape Orientation**.

> Note
> - The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.



Large-Format Printing Wizard

Portrait Orientation

Create a page size in portrait orientation.
Enter the roll width and length and click Create Page.

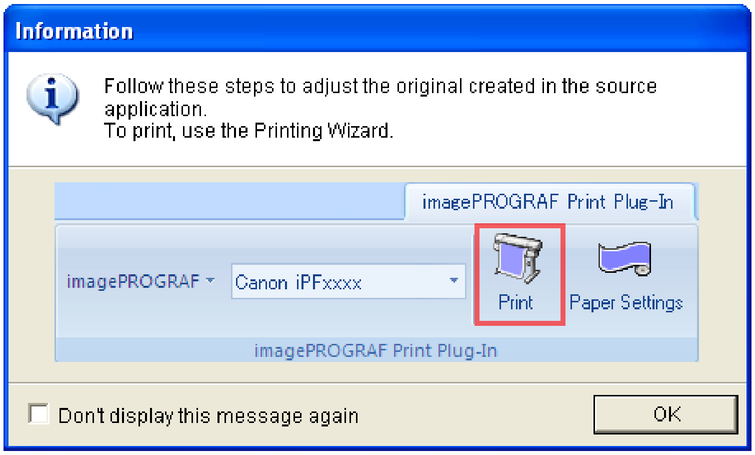
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Length : 94.98 inch (17.00 - 94.98)

5. Adjust **Length** from the list-box or slide-bar.

6. Click the **Create Page** button.

7. Click **OK** if the message is displayed.



Follow these steps to adjust the original created in the source application.
To print, use the Printing Wizard.

☐ Don't display this message again

8. Edit and create the document.

> Note
> - Printing is done in **Print Matching Roll Width** of the **Printing Wizard**. For details on **Print Matching Roll Width**, refer to see "Print Matching Roll Width (Word)." →P.386 .

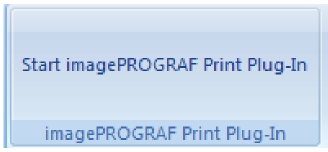
> Important
> - The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

To start from Microsoft PowerPoint

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

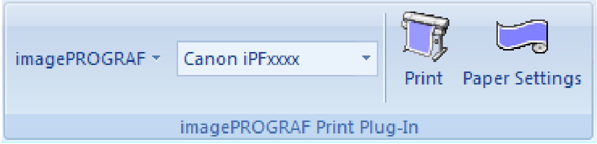
1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



> Important
> - If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
>   - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.378

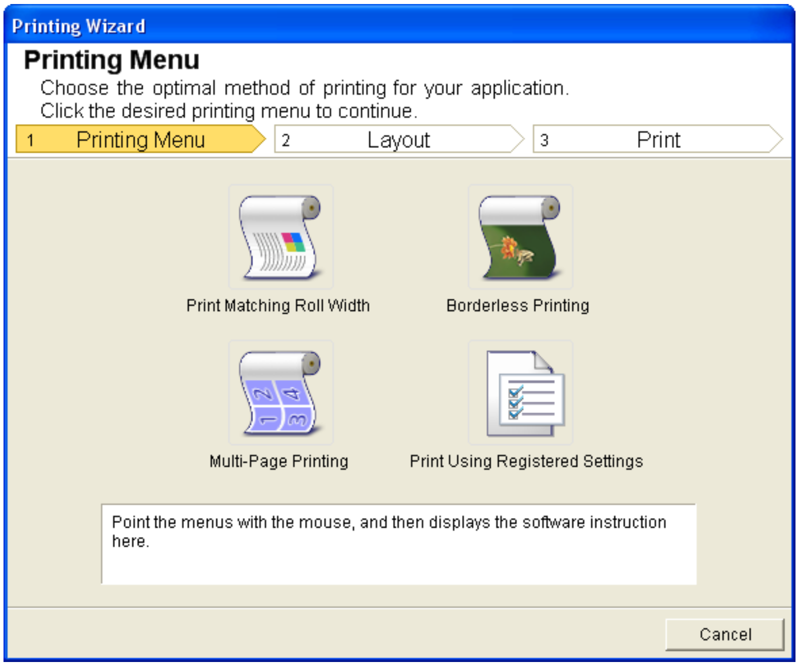
3. Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4. Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
imagePROGRAF ▾ Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. (See "Configuring Special Settings .") →P.424
Canon iPFxxxx ▾ Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
Print **Print** Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing**, **Multi-Page Printing**, and **Print Using Registered Settings** can be set.
Paper Settings **Paper Settings** Button	Large-Format Wizard is displayed. Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box



Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

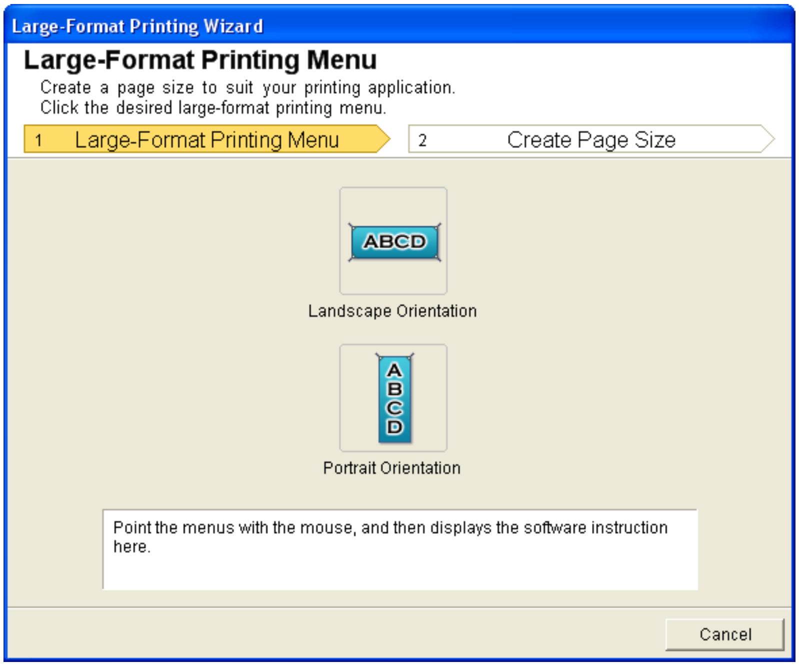
Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

Note

- If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box


Large-Format Printing Wizard
Large-Format Printing Menu
1 Large-Format Printing Menu
2 Create Page Size
ABCD
Landscape Orientation
A B C D
Portrait Orientation
Cancel

Create a page size to suit your printing application.
Click the desired large-format printing menu.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Note

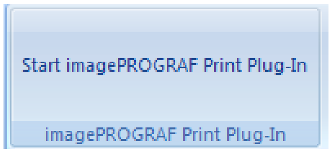
- If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Remove the password protection.

Print Matching Roll Width (PowerPoint)

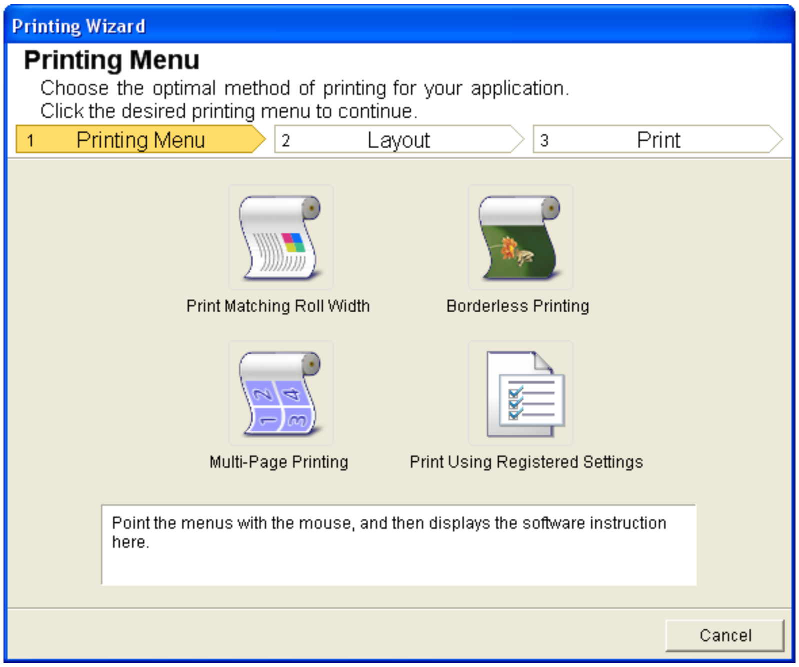
Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
   The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

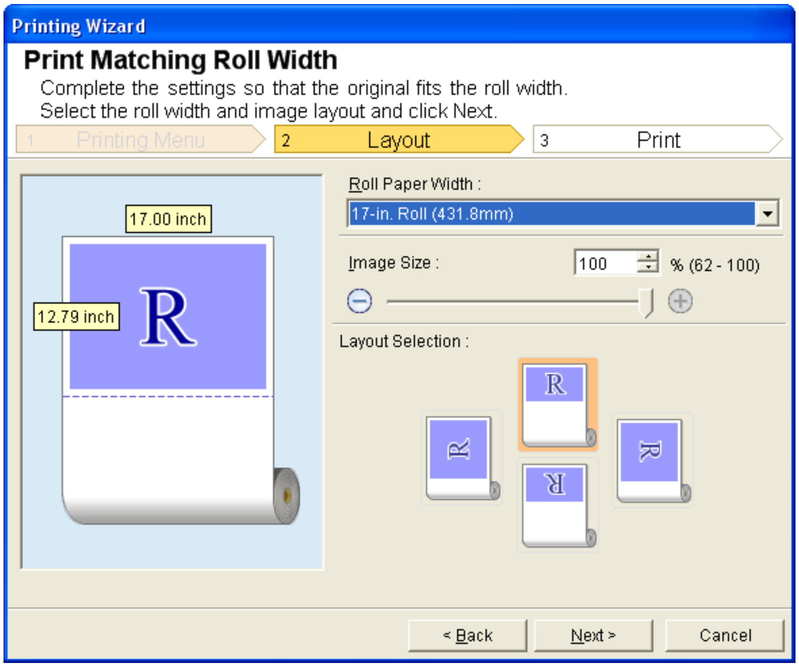
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Print Matching Roll Width**.



Printing Wizard

Print Matching Roll Width

Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

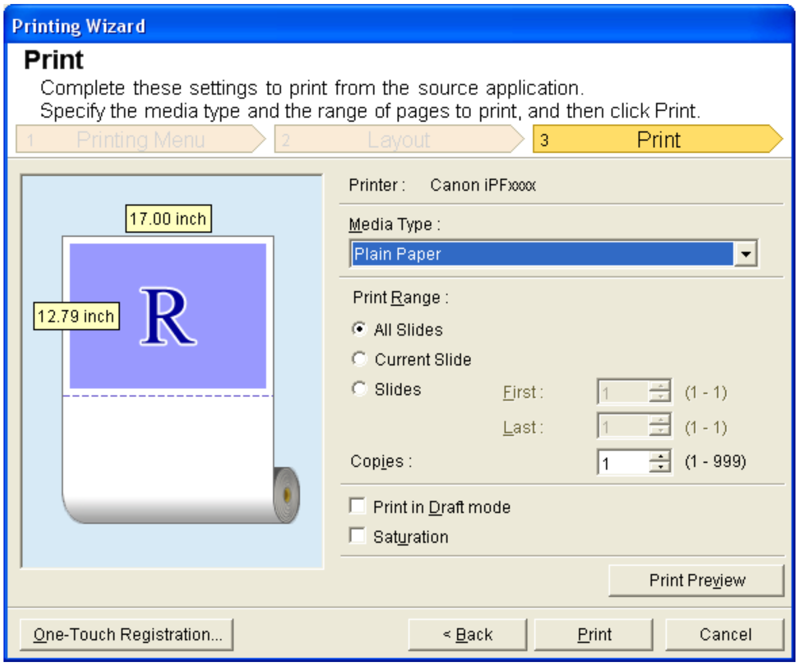
Image Size : 100 % (62 - 100)

5. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select image size.

7. Select layout.

8. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range : ● All Slides ○ Current Slide ○ Slides First : 1 (1 - 1) Last : 1 (1 - 1)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

9. Select **Media Type**.

10. Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

11. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum length will be the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

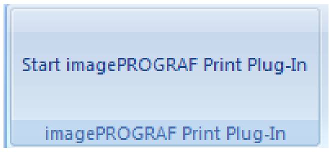
12. Press **Print** to start printing.

Borderless Printing (PowerPoint)

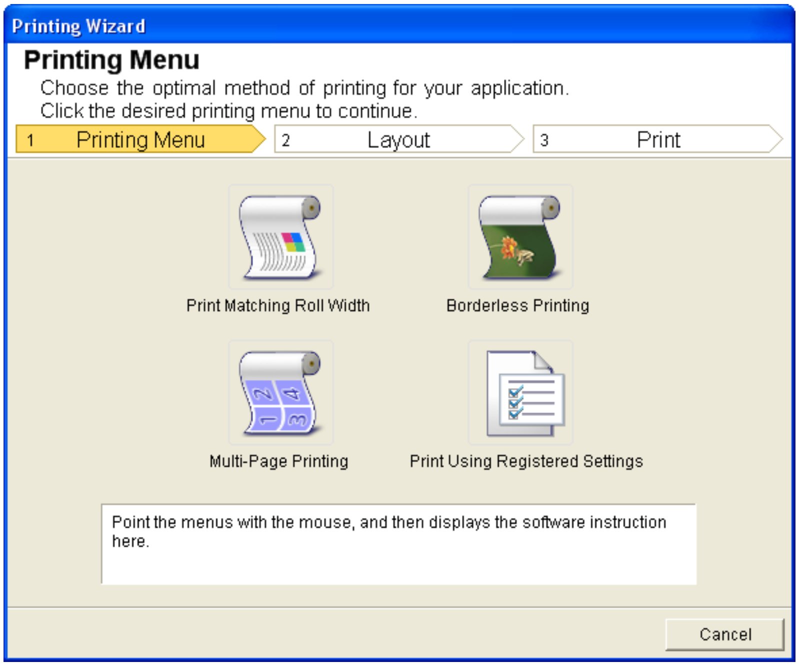
Prints up to the border of the media. Photos and posters can be printed without worrying about margins.

1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Printing Menu

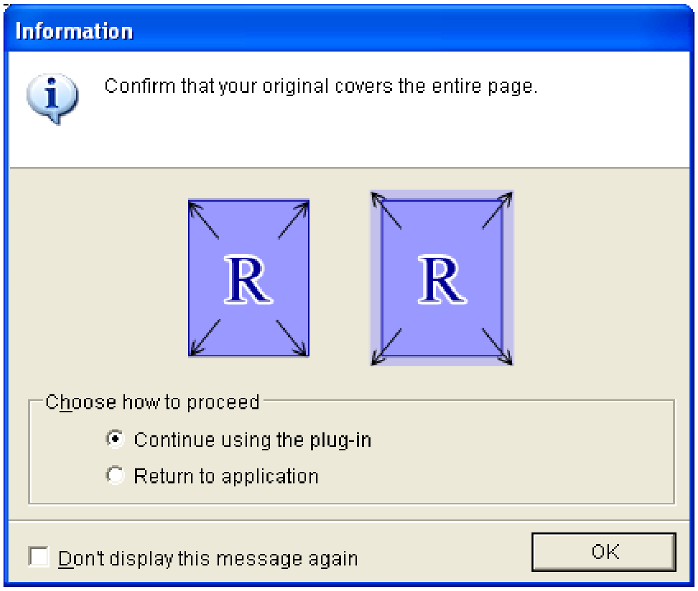
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Borderless Printing**.



Information

Confirm that your original covers the entire page.

Choose how to proceed

● Continue using the plug-in

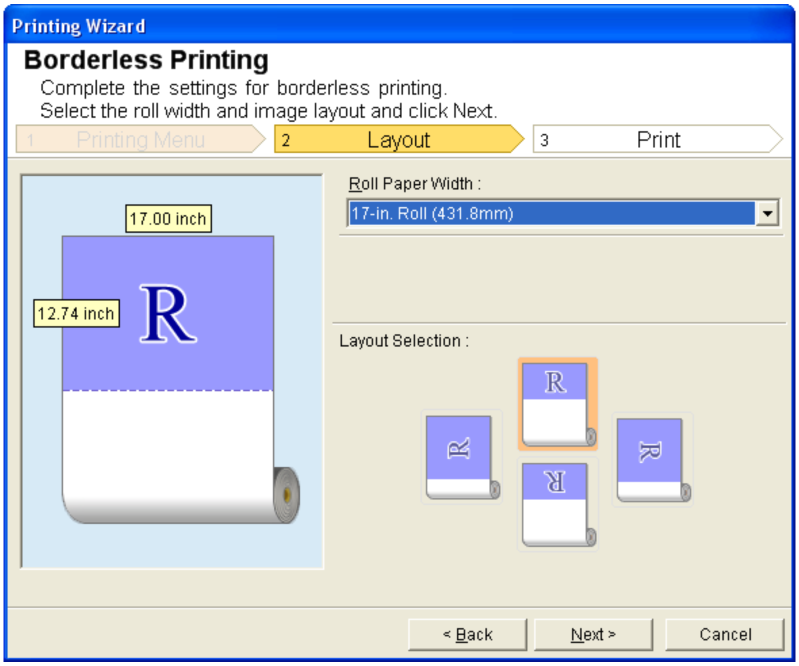
○ Return to application

☐ Don't display this message again

5. A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.

Note

- To adjust the data, select **Return to application** and press **OK**. Exit **Print Plug-In for Office** and return to the application.



Printing Wizard

Borderless Printing

Complete the settings for borderless printing.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

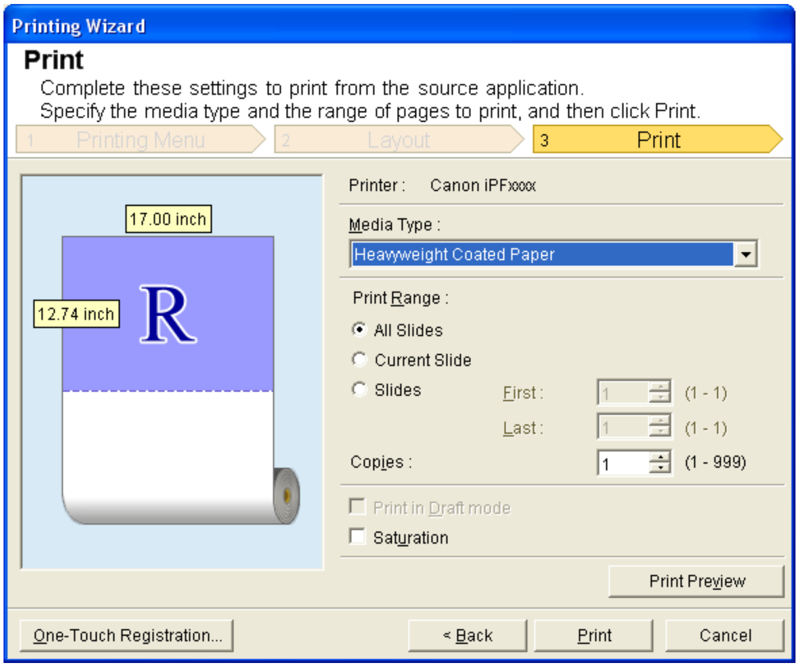
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Layout Selection :

6. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

7. Select Layout.

8. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Heavyweight Coated Paper

Print Range : ● All Slides ○ Current Slide ○ Slides First : 1 (1 - 1) Last : 1 (1 - 1)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

9. Select **Media Type**.

10. Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

11. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - Press the **One-Touch Registration** button to register the settings. This is useful for multiple printing using the same settings.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can confirm and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum length for Borderless Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

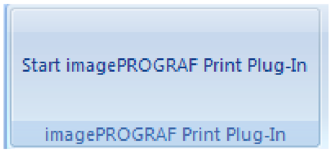
12. Press **Print** to start printing.

Multi-Page Printing (PowerPoint)

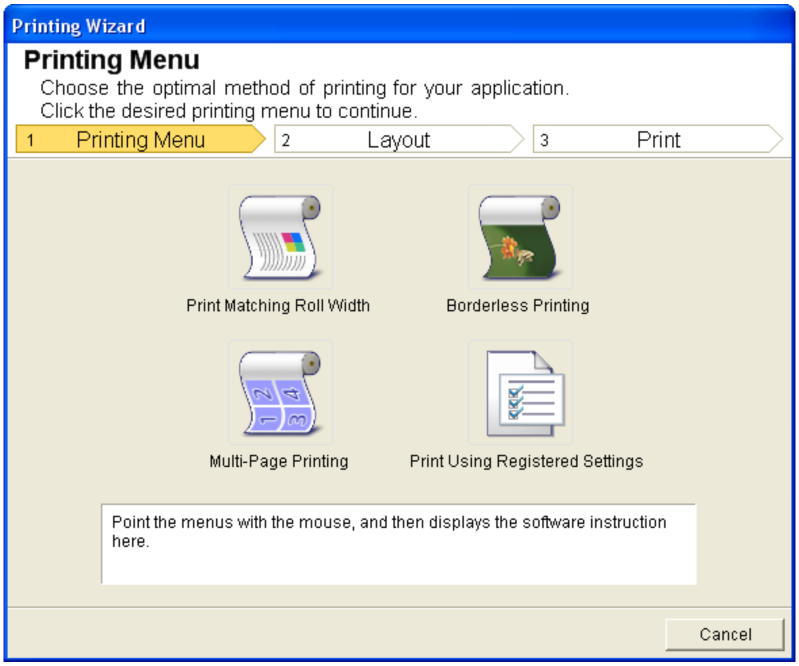
Prints multiple pages as one page. You can print handouts into a single page, or print matter with many pages.

1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



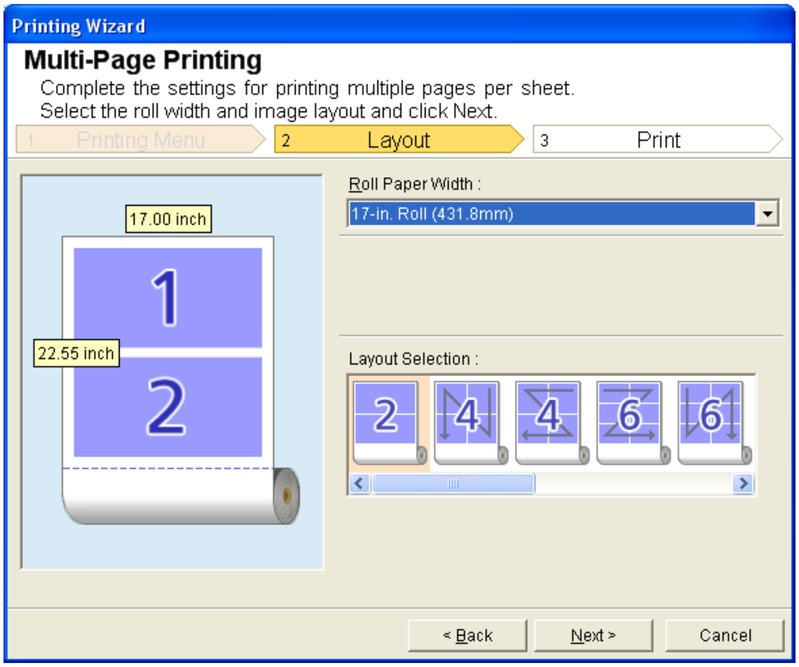
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Multi-Page Printing**.



Printing Wizard

Multi-Page Printing

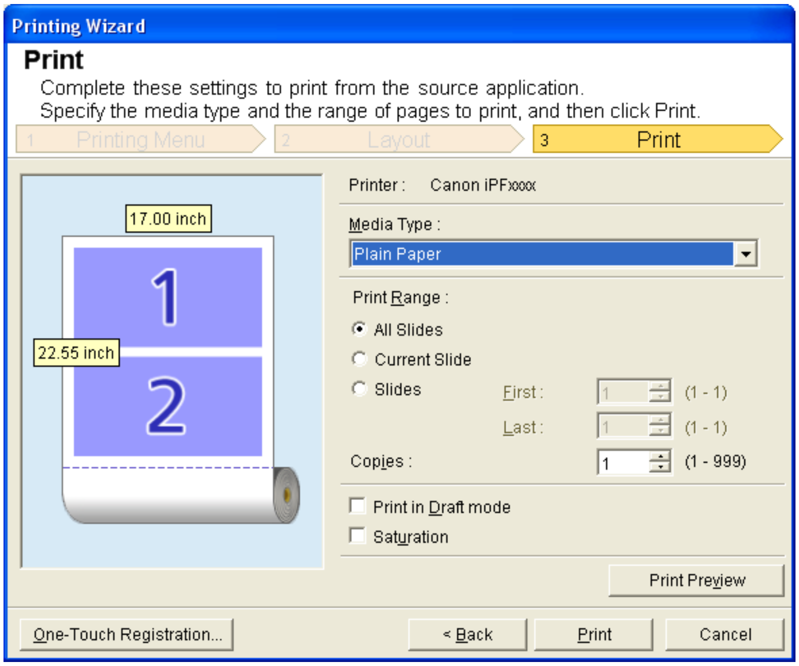
Complete the settings for printing multiple pages per sheet.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

5. Select the **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select layout from **Layout Selection**.

7. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range :

● All Slides

○ Current Slide

○ Slides First : 1 (1 - 1) Last : 1 (1 - 1)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

8. Select **Media Type**.

9. Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
   If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

10. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

11. Press **Print** to start printing.

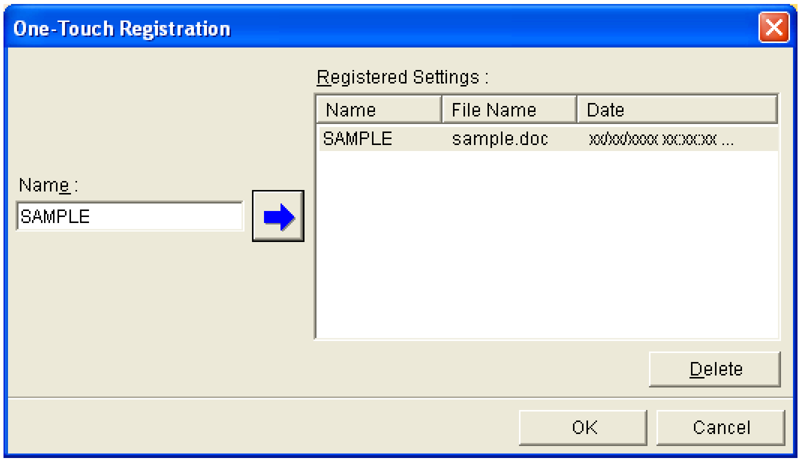
Register the settings(PowerPoint)

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

1. Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**, **Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

> Note
> - Up to 20 items can be registered.
> - The available settings are as follows.
>   - Print Matching Roll Width (PowerPoint) →P.401
>   - Borderless Printing (PowerPoint) →P.404
>   - Multi-Page Printing (PowerPoint) →P.406

2. Click the **One-Touch Registration** button.



Registered Settings :

Name	File Name	Date
SAMPLE	sample.doc	xx/xx/xxxx xx:xx:xx ...

Name : SAMPLE

3. Enter name in **Name**.
   Up to 31 characters can be entered.

4. Click ➡. The name you entered is displayed in **Registered Settings**.

5. Click **OK**, and return to the **Print** screen.

6. Click **Print** to print, and click **Cancel** to cancel the print.

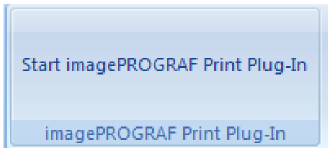
> **Note**
> - Clicking **Cancel** in the **Print** screen will not delete the registered settings.

Print Using Registered Settings (PowerPoint)

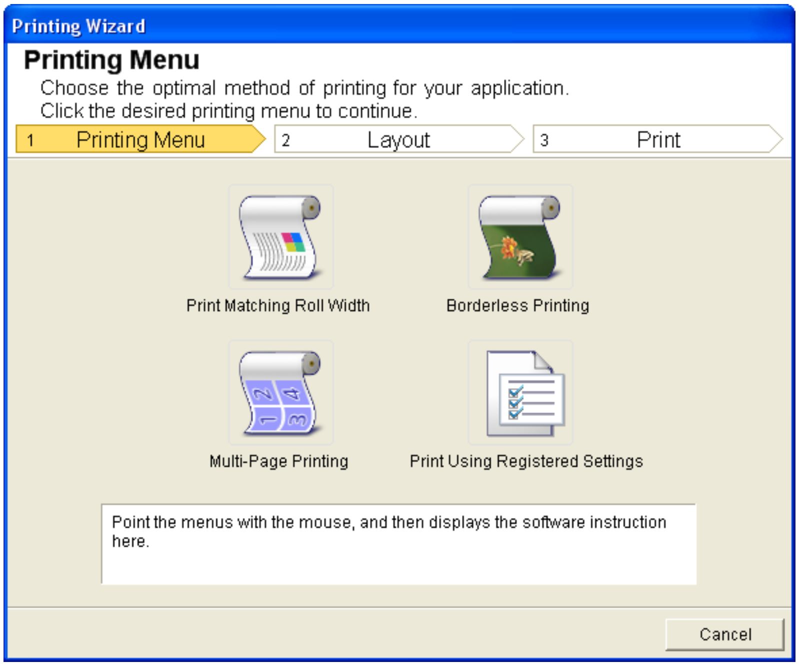
Prints using the registered settings.

1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
   The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



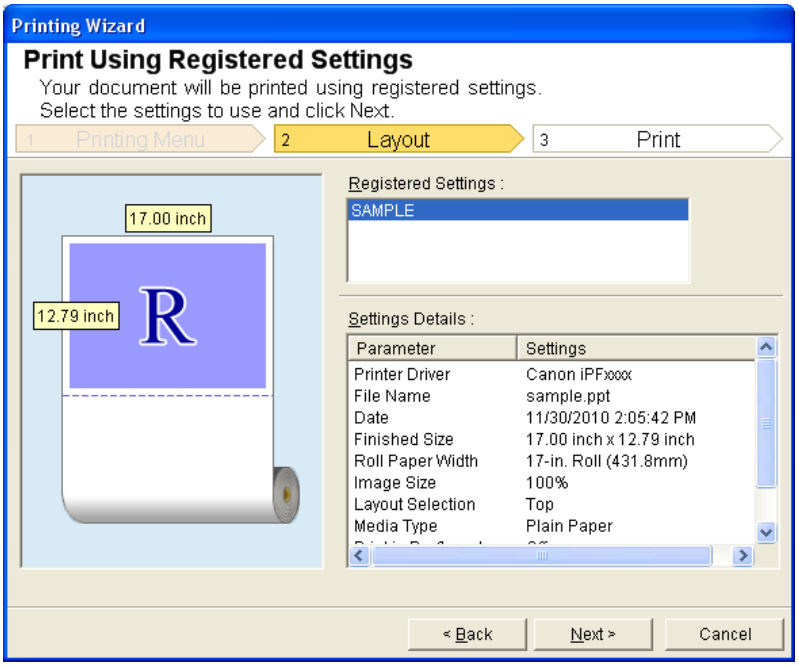
Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Print Using Registered Settings**.



Printing Wizard

Print Using Registered Settings

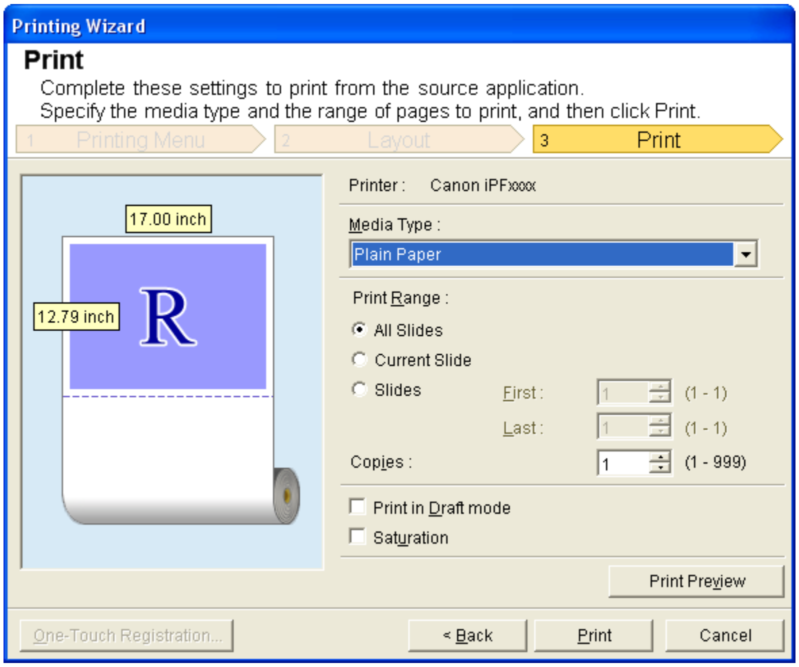
Your document will be printed using registered settings.
Select the settings to use and click Next.

Registered Settings : SAMPLE

Settings Details :

Parameter	Settings
Printer Driver	Canon iPFxxxx
File Name	sample.ppt
Date	11/30/2010 2:05:42 PM
Finished Size	17.00 inch x 12.79 inch
Roll Paper Width	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Image Size	100%
Layout Selection	Top
Media Type	Plain Paper

5. Click the **Next** button.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Range :

● All Slides
○ Current Slide
○ Slides First : 1 (1 - 1) Last : 1 (1 - 1)

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ Print in Draft mode
☐ Saturation

6. Select **Media Type**.

7. Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**.
If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

8. Enter **Copies**.

> Note
> - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
> - When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
> - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
> - The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

9. Press **Print** to start printing.

Portrait Orientation / Landscape Orientation (PowerPoint)

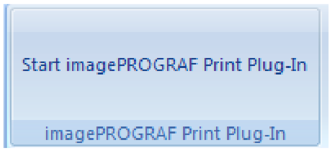
Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

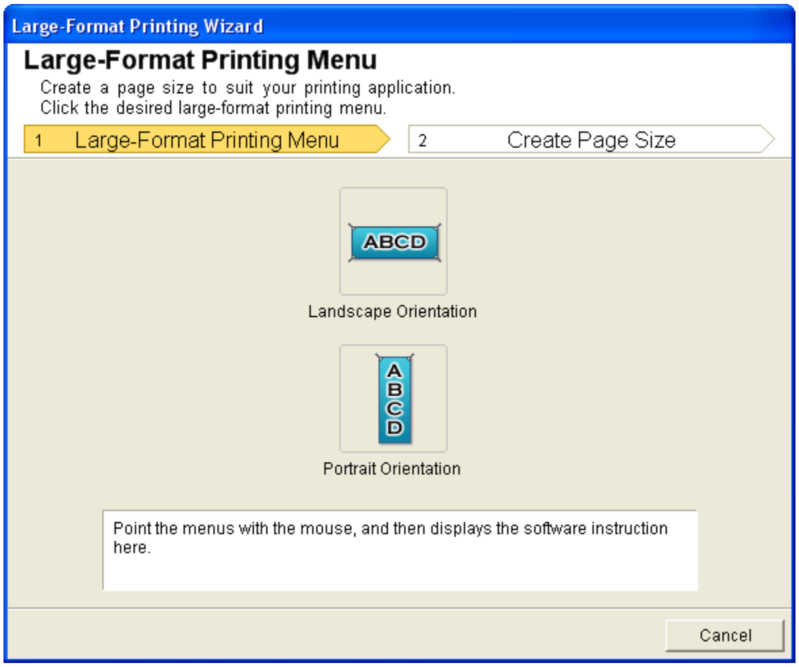
Use the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

1. Start **Microsoft PowerPoint**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Paper Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.
The **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Large-Format Printing Menu

Create a page size to suit your printing application.
Click the desired large-format printing menu.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

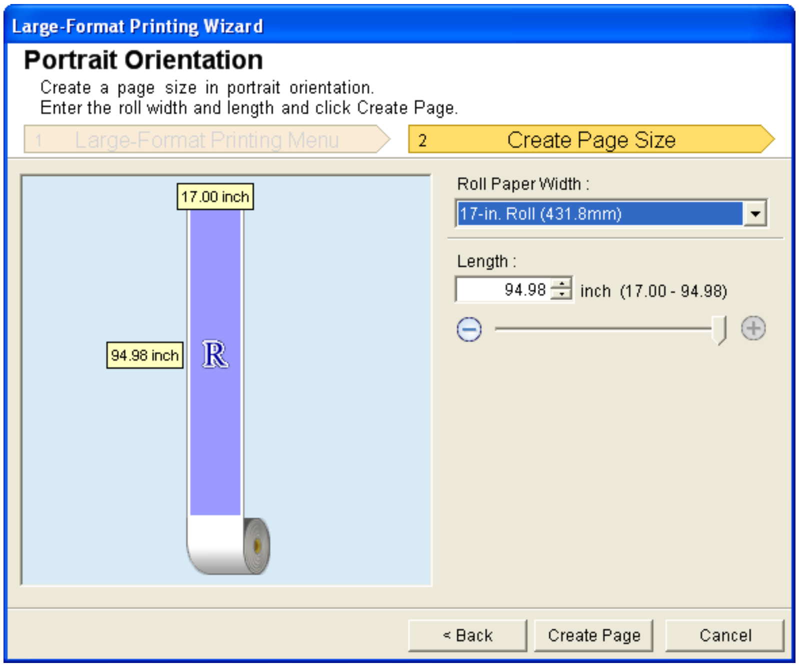
Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

4. Click **Portrait Orientation** or **Landscape Orientation**.

Note

- The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.


Large-Format Printing Wizard

Portrait Orientation

Create a page size in portrait orientation.
Enter the roll width and length and click Create Page.

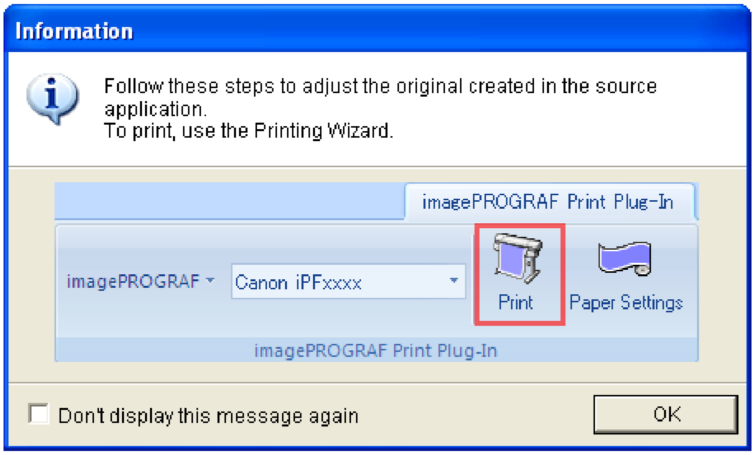
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Length : 94.98 inch (17.00 - 94.98)

5. Adjust **Length** from the list-box or slide-bar.

6. Click the **Create Page** button.

7. Click **OK** if the message is displayed.


Information

Follow these steps to adjust the original created in the source application.
To print, use the Printing Wizard.

☐ Don't display this message again

8. Edit and create the document.

Important

- The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Note

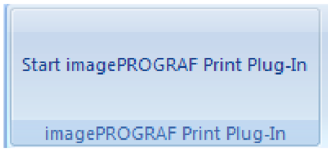
- Printing is done in **Print Matching Roll Width** of the **Printing Wizard**. For details on **Print Matching Roll Width**, refer to see "Print Matching Roll Width (PowerPoint)." →P.401 .

To start from Microsoft Excel

Below are the steps to start **Print Plug-In for Office** from **Microsoft Excel**.

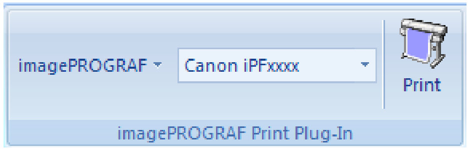
1. Start **Microsoft Excel**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, click it.



Important
- If the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.
  - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.378

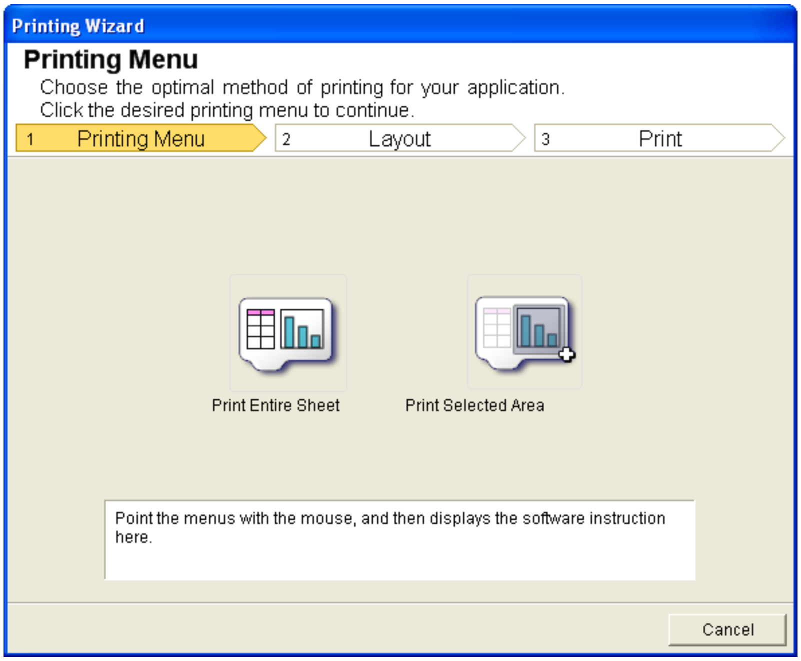
3. Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.



4. Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

Icon	Contents
 Menu	Displays the **About**, **Help**, and **Special Settings** dialog boxes. (See "Configuring Special Settings .") →P.424
 Printer list	Select Printer. If you select **Show All Printers**, the **imagePROGRAF** printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
 Print Button	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings **Print Entire Sheet** and **Print Selected Area** can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box



Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

Important

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
- The **Printing Wizard** will not start if you click the **Print** button on the toolbar/ribbon while editing a cell.
- When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.
- When an object is selected, the **Printing Wizard** is not started if you click the **Print** button on the toolbar/ribbon.
- If the paper size in Excel is blank, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. From the **File** menu in Excel, select **Page Setup** and check **Paper size**.

Note

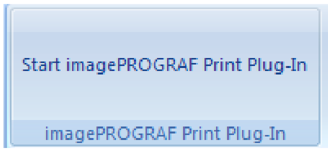
- If you click the **Print** button with a graph selected, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application.
- If you click the **Print** button with a page break set, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you do not use the set page break, check the page break preview and change the setting.
- If you click the **Print** button with a page range set, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you do not use the set page range, check the page break preview and change the setting.
- If you click the **Print** button with a worksheet or cell protected, a message dialog box will appear asking if you want to continue printing. If you click **No**, you will return to the application. If you want to change the setting, remove the protection from the worksheet or cell.

Print Entire Sheet (Excel)

For resizing the entire sheet to fit the roll width. Choose this option to enlarge the currently displayed sheet before printing.

1. Start **Microsoft Excel**.

2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.

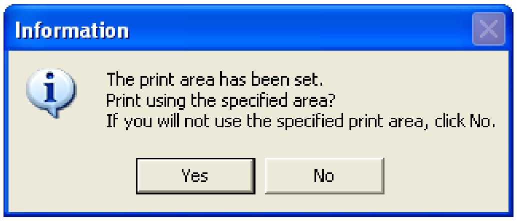


3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

Important

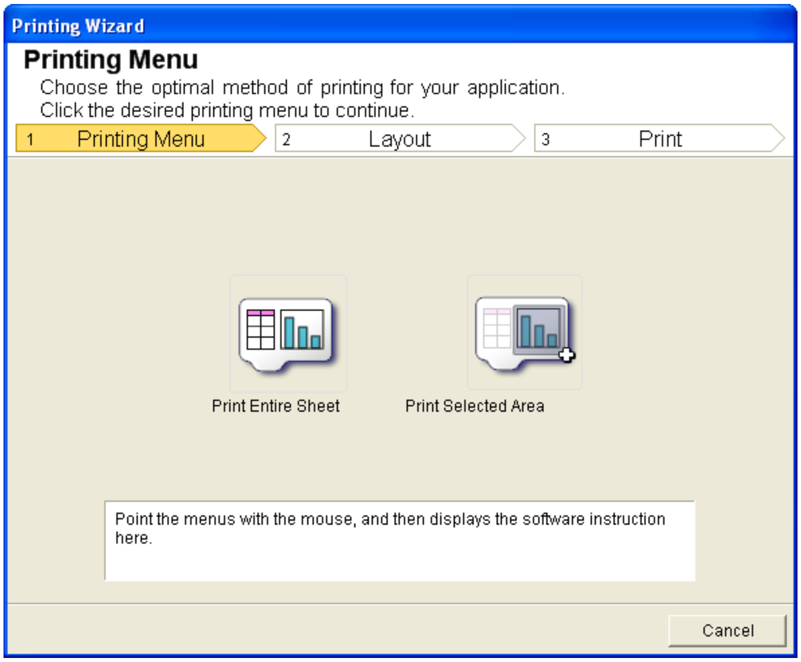
- When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.

If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.
To print the entire sheet, cancel the setting of the print area.



The print area has been set.
Print using the specified area?
If you will not use the specified print area, click No.

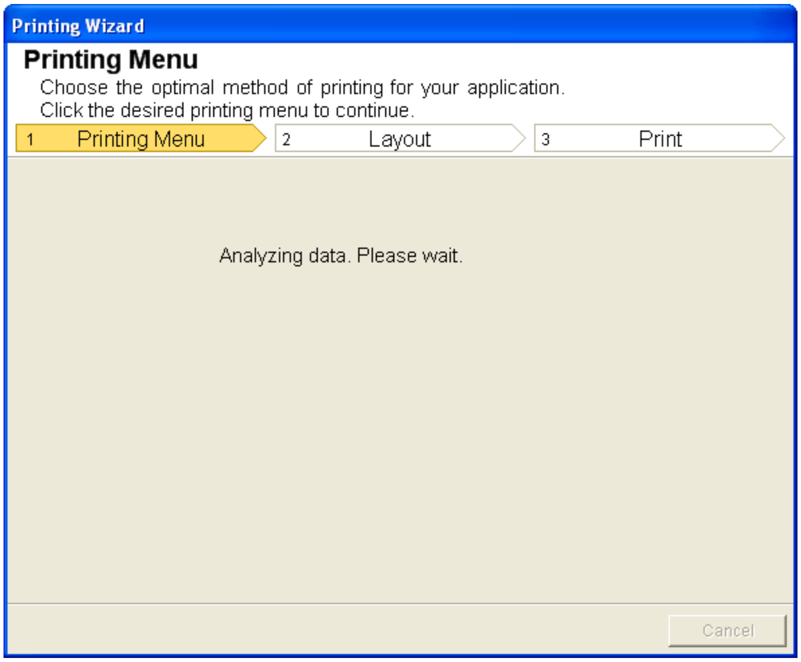
The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

4. Click **Print Entire Sheet**.
A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.



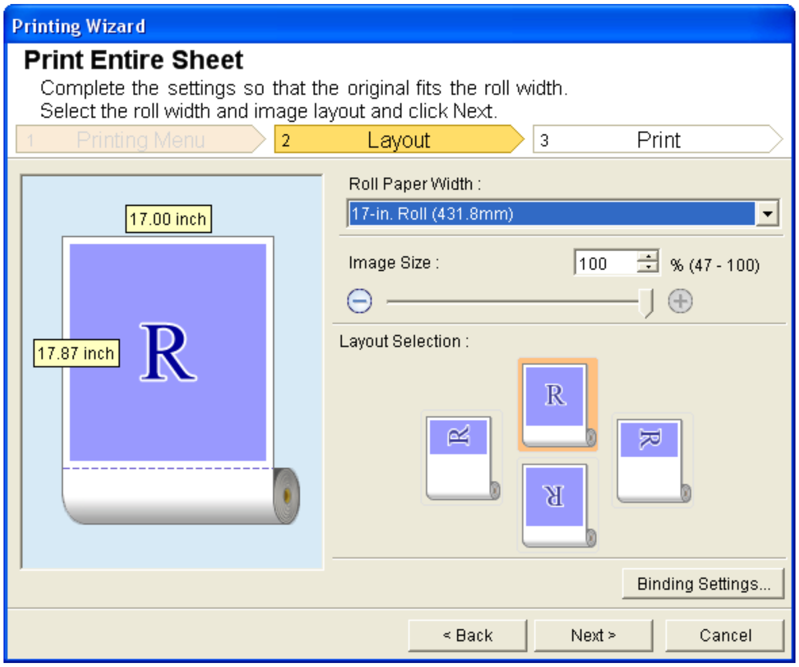
Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Analyzing data. Please wait.

The Layout menu will appear automatically.



Printing Wizard

Print Entire Sheet

Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Image Size : 100 % (47 - 100)

Note

- If data analysis requires time, a message dialog will appear. If you select **No**, you will return to the application.

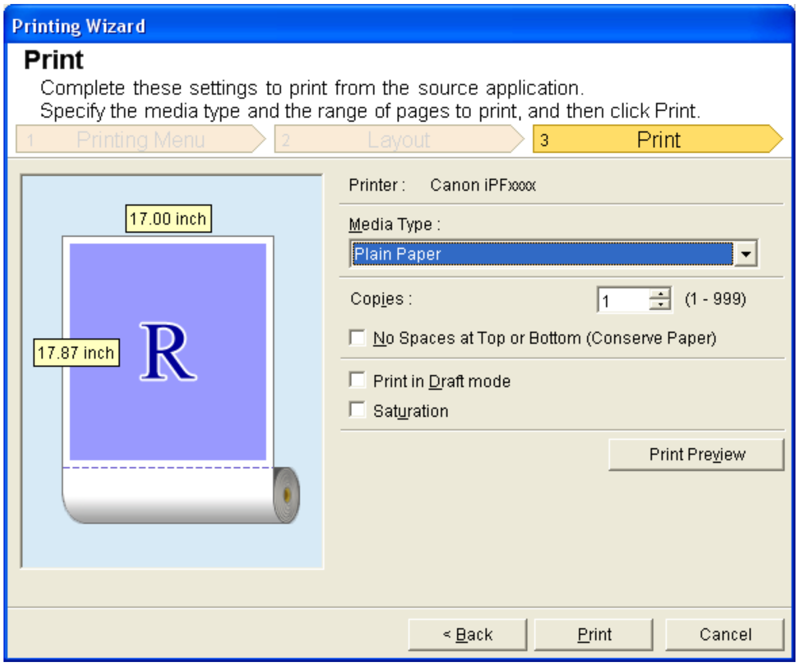
5. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select image size.

7. Select layout.

8. To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button.
Refer to Configuring Binding (Excel) →P.423 for details on the procedure for configuring **Binding**.

9. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

10. Select **Media Type**.

11. Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

12. If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**.
The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.

13. Press **Print** to start printing.

Important

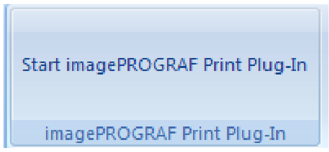
- If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
- You cannot run **Print** or **Print Preview** if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

Print Selected Area (Excel)

For resizing the selected range of cells to fit the roll width. Choose this option to enlarge a particular part of the sheet before printing.

1. Start **Microsoft Excel**.

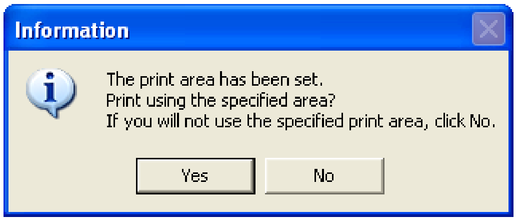
2. If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed, click it.



3. Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

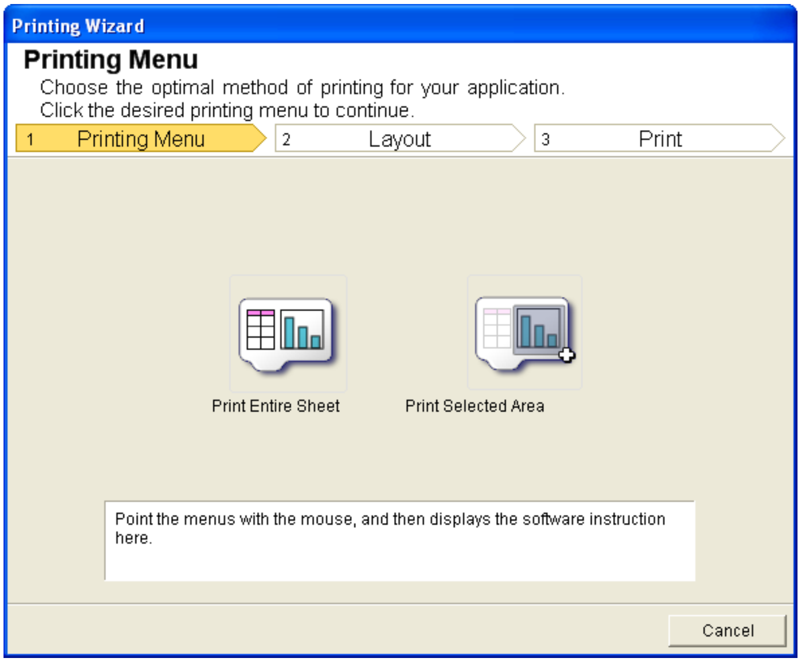
> Important
> - When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.

If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.
To print the selected area, cancel the setting of the print area.



The print area has been set.
Print using the specified area?
If you will not use the specified print area, click No.

The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Printing Menu

Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

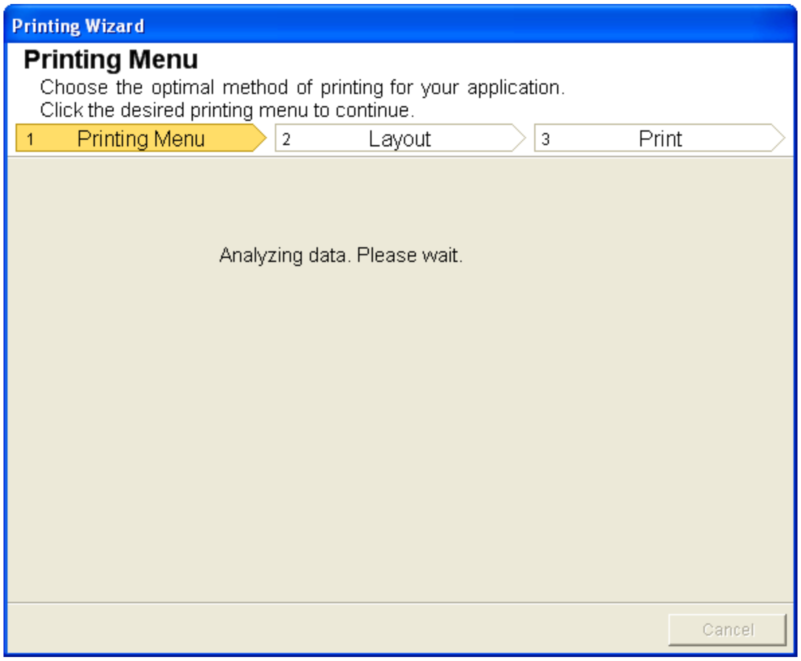
Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.

4. Click **Print Selected Area**.

Important

- If only one cell is selected, **Print Selected Area** cannot be selected.

A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.

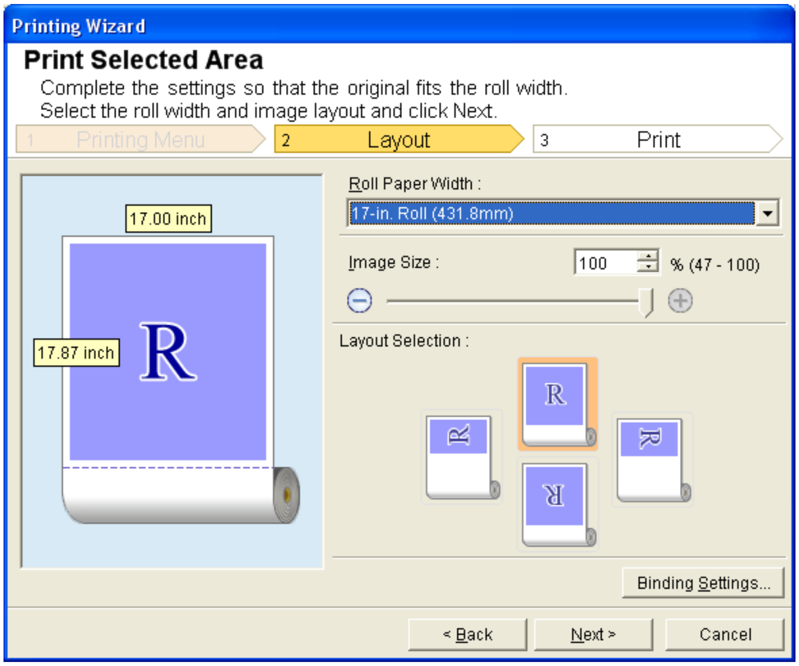

Printing Wizard

Printing Menu

Choose the optimal method of printing for your application.
Click the desired printing menu to continue.

Analyzing data. Please wait.

The Layout menu will appear automatically.


Printing Wizard

Print Selected Area

Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Image Size : 100 % (47 - 100)

Important

- If the range selected in **Excel 2007/2010** is too large, it will not be possible to analyze the data. Select a smaller range and then run the analysis.

Note

- If data analysis requires time, a message dialog will appear. If you select **No**, you will return to the application.

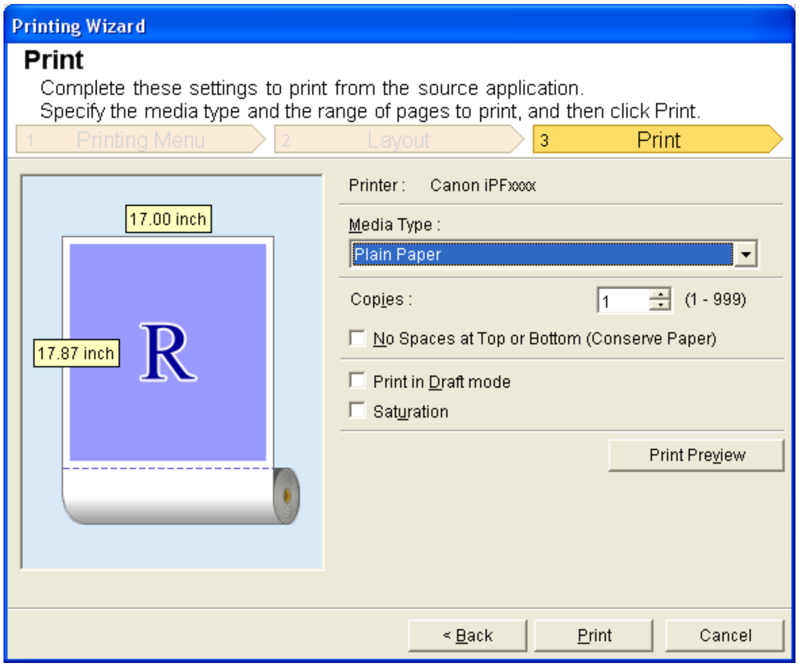
5. Select **Roll Paper Width** that is set in the printer.

6. Select image size.

7. Select layout.

8. To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button.
   Refer to Configuring Binding (Excel) →P.423 for details on the procedure for configuring **Binding**.

9. Select **Next**.



Printing Wizard

Print

Complete these settings to print from the source application.
Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print.

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Copies : 1 (1 - 999)

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

☐ Print in Draft mode

☐ Saturation

10. Select **Media Type**.

11. Enter **Copies**.

Note

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- When **Saturation** is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
- Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
- When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

12. If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**.
    The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.

13. Press **Print** to start printing.

> Important
> - If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
> - You cannot run **Print** or **Print Preview** if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

Configuring Binding (Excel)

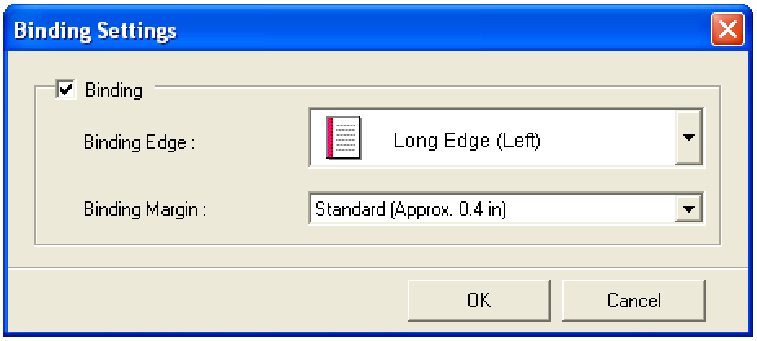
You can configure **Binding** margins for binding printouts.

1. Configure the settings up to **Layout Selection** in the **Layout** screen in **Print Entire Sheet** or **Print Selected Area**. Refer to Print Entire Sheet (Excel) →P.417 and Print Selected Area (Excel) →P.420 for the configuration methods.

2. Click the **Binding Settings** button.

> Important
> - You cannot click the **Binding Settings** button in the following situations.
>   - When the **Image Size** is set to **100%**
>   - When a graph is selected
>   - When page breaks have been set
>   - When a sheet or cell is protected

Open the **Binding Settings** dialog box.

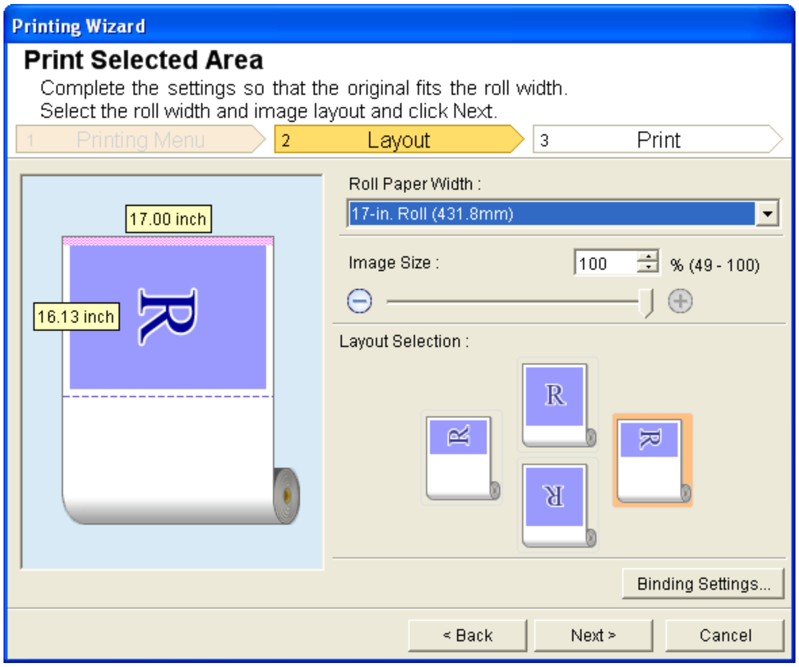


3. If the **Binding** checkbox is not checked, select it to turn binding on.

4. Select **Binding Edge**.

5. Select **Binding Margin**.

6. Click the **OK** button.
Return to the **Layout** screen.



Printing Wizard

Print Selected Area

Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width.
Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.

Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

Image Size : 100 % (49 - 100)

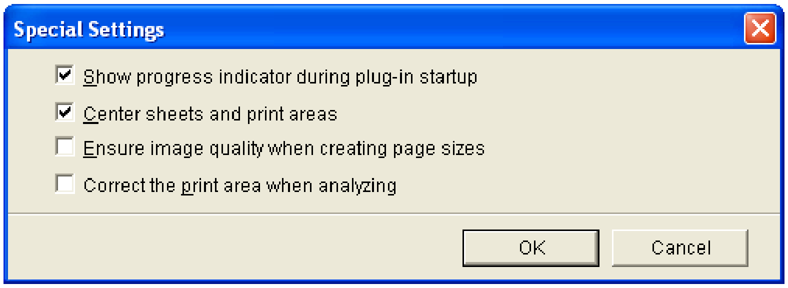
Check that the **Binding** settings are applied in the preview screen.

7. Configure the settings in the **Printing Wizard** dialog box.

Configuring Special Settings

You can configure **Special Settings** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar.

1. Click **imagePROGRAF** in the toolbar, and select **Special Settings**.



Special Settings

☑ Show progress indicator during plug-in startup
☑ Center sheets and print areas
☐ Ensure image quality when creating page sizes
☐ Correct the print area when analyzing

2. Turn the checkbox for the item you want to change on or off.

Item	Details
Show progress indicator during plug-in startup	When this setting is off, hides the progress indicator that appears while the plug-in is starting up.
Center sheets and print areas	When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position. When this setting is on, printing is performed with the top, bottom, left, and right margins layed out equally. When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position.

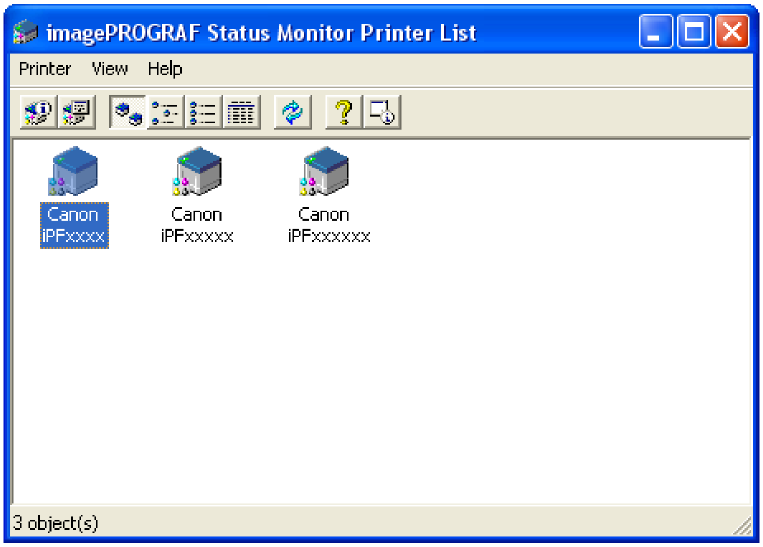
Item	Details
Center sheets and print areas	This function is only valid in **Microsoft Excel**.
Ensure image quality when creating page sizes	When this setting is on, documents are created at the maximum size. This reduces the enlargement ratio during actual printing, which minimizes degradation of the quality of photos, etc. This function is only valid in [**Microsoft PowerPoint**.
Correct the print area when analyzing	For data that cannot be processed with usual data analysis, the print area is corrected and then the data is processed. When data analysis fails, you may be able to print by turning on this checkbox. This function is only valid in **Microsoft Excel**.

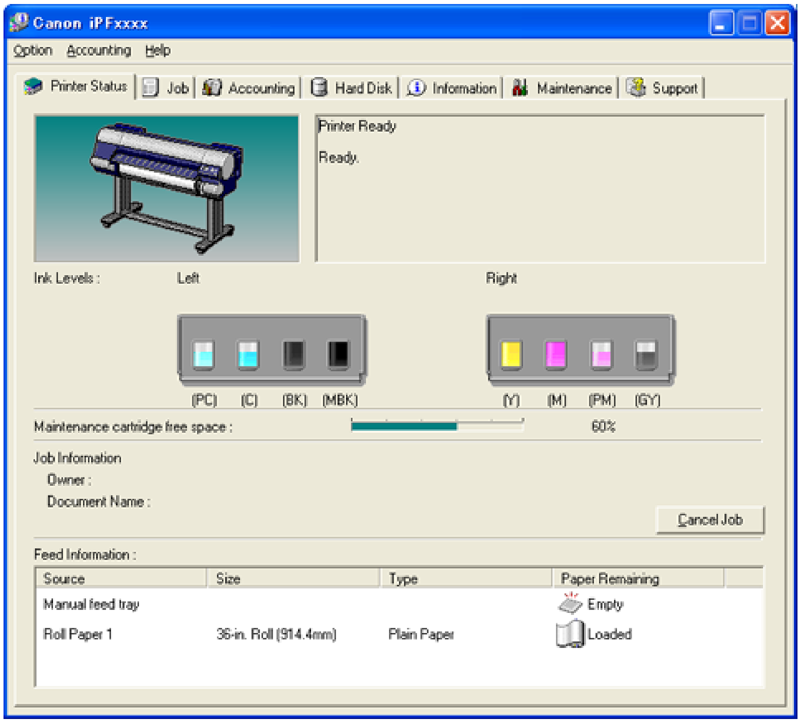
3. Click **OK** to close the **Special Settings** dialog box.

Status Monitor

The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : **Printer List** shows a list of printers, and **Status Monitor** shows details for each printer.





Printer Ready

Ready.

Maintenance cartridge free space : 60%

Job Information
Owner :
Document Name :

Feed Information :

Source	Size	Type	Paper Remaining
Manual feed tray			Empty
Roll Paper 1	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	Plain Paper	Loaded

- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.

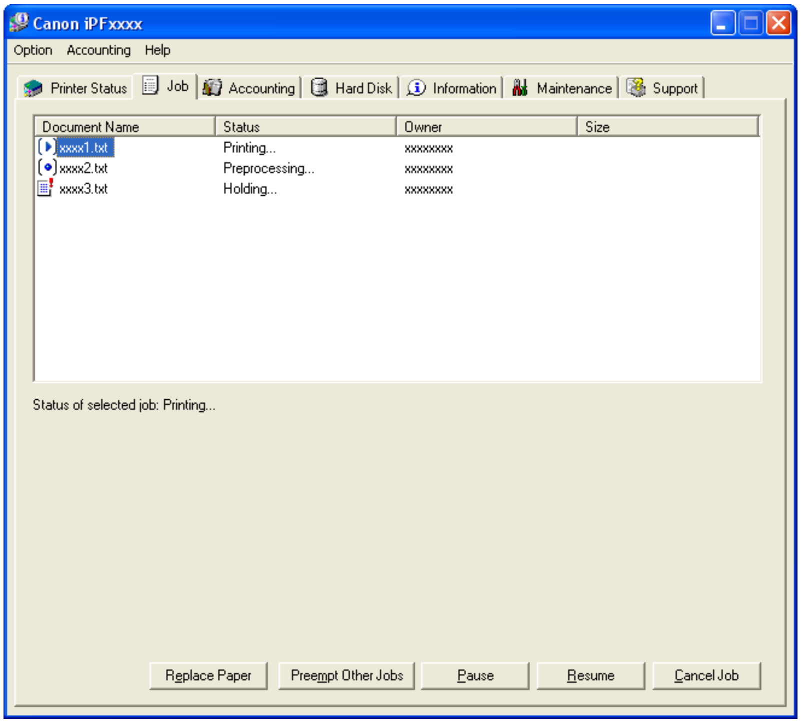
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- Displays the ink level of every color in the printer. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.
- You can use the Accounting Manager to collect the print job logs for the printers and check information such as the printing costs.
  For details of the Accounting Manager, see Accounting Manager →P.429 .

Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

You can use the **Job** sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.



Document Name	Status	Owner	Size
xxxx1.txt	Printing...	xxxxxxxx	
xxxx2.txt	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
xxxx3.txt	Holding...	xxxxxxxx	

Status of selected job: Printing...

- Preempting Other Jobs

  If you select a print job and click the **Preempt Other Jobs** button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

- Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

  Selecting a print job and clicking the **Pause** button pauses printing of the selected job.

  To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the **Resume** button.

Note

- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

- Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the **Cancel Job** button cancels printing of the selected job.

Note

- You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

- Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a **Status** of **Holding** is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the **Replace Paper** button.

2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.

Note

- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click **Continue to print** button.
- The printing behavior when the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer can be changed by using **Detect Mismatch** in the operation panel menu. Refer to Menu Settings →P.938 for details.

Accounting

Accounting Manager

The Accounting Manager stores the printer's print job logs so that you can use the information for checking printing costs, etc.
The benefits of using the Accounting Manager are outlined below.

- Print Job Log Collection
  This allows you to check which documents were printed from each printer, who printed them and when.
- Calculation of the Total Pages Used and the Total Cost
  This allows you to use the collected print job logs to calculate totals for items such as the number of pages printed, the amount of paper used and the printing costs incurred.
- Regular Data Acquisition for Print Jobs
  Job logs can be automatically collected periodically.
- Exporting Print Job Data
  This allows you to export collected print job data as a CSV file.

Important

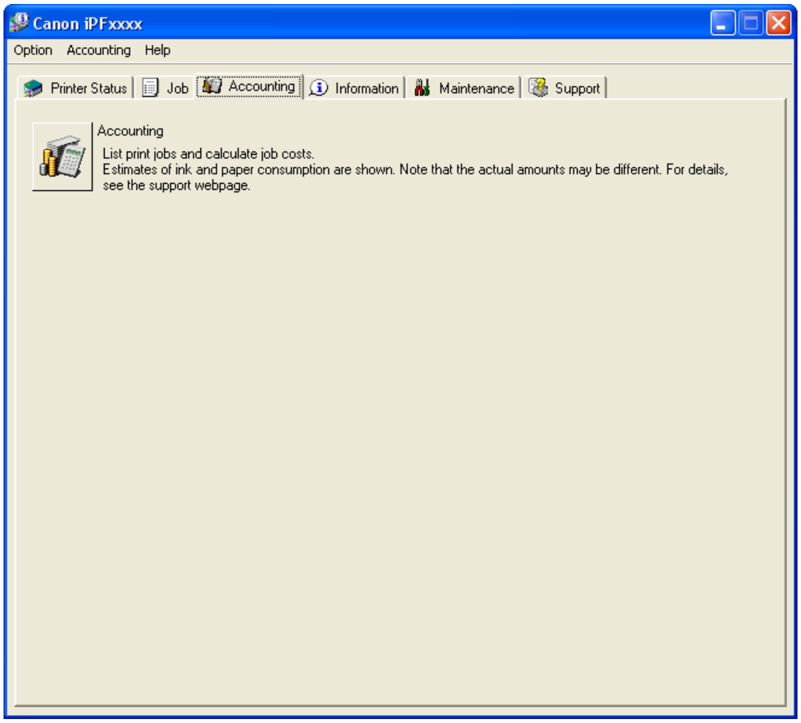
- The Accounting Manager in Status Monitor displays approximate estimates of the amount of paper consumed and the ink consumed per job. Canon cannot guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. These estimates will also vary depending on the conditions of printer use.
- Print job log collection is not performed when **Set./Adj. Menu** -> **Printer Info** -> **Show Job Log** of the control panel is **Off**. However,
  - even if **Show Job Log** is set to **Off**, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at that time are displayed.
  - When **Show Job Log** has been set to **On** again, all jobs within the printer at that time are displayed.

Launching the Accounting Manager

The procedure for launching the Accounting Manager is shown below.

1. Open the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor window.

2. Select **Accounting** in the **Accounting** menu.
   Or, open the **Accounting** sheet and click the **Accounting** button.

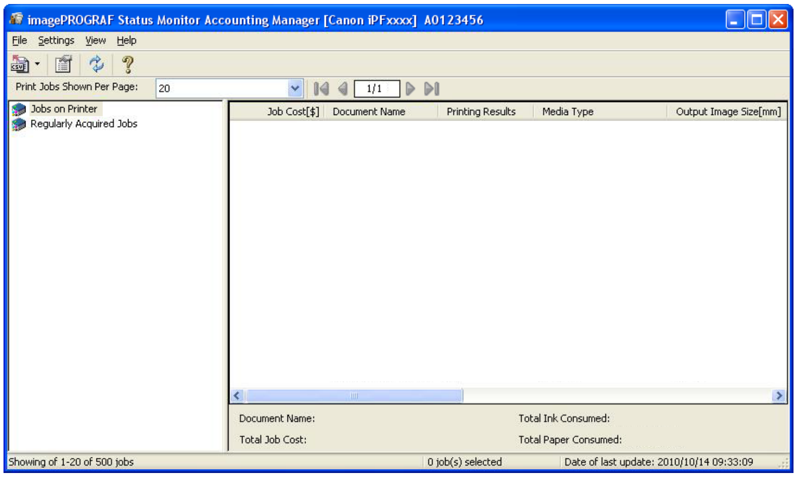


Accounting

List print jobs and calculate job costs.
Estimates of ink and paper consumption are shown. Note that the actual amounts may be different. For details, see the support webpage.

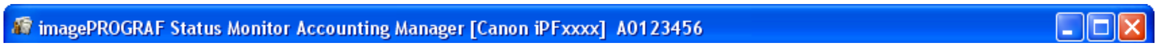
Accounting Manager Main Window

The Accounting Manager main window consists of a title bar, menu bar, toolbars, listed job selection area, job list area, totals area and status bar.



- **Title Bar**

This displays the printer model, its serial number and the port number it is using.

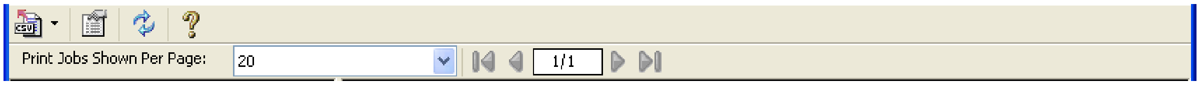

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager [Canon iPFxxxx] A0123456

- **Menu Bar**

Allows you to select the menu options required for operation.

- **Toolbars**

Provide tool buttons and pull-down menus for the main operations.



Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20

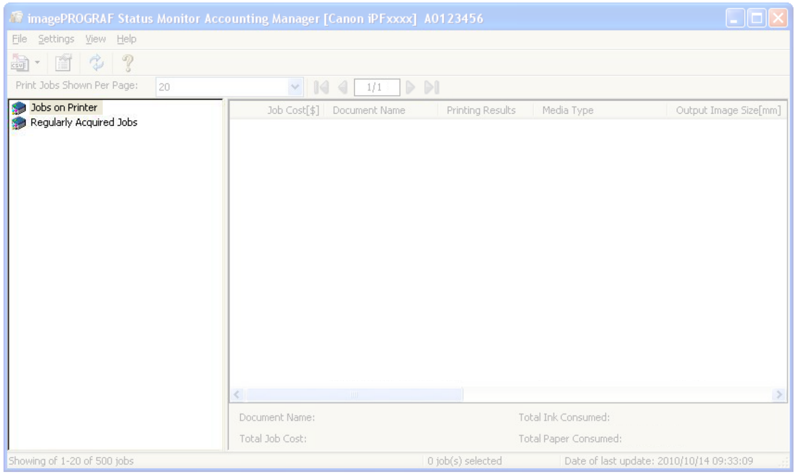
1/1

> **Note**
> - You can opt to either show or hide the toolbars in the **View** menu.

- **Listed Job Selection Area**

You can use this area to select which job log is displayed.

If you are using regular data acquisition, this area allows you to view the collective job logs for each specified period.



Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20

1/1

Document Name:

Total Job Cost:

Total Ink Consumed:

Total Paper Consumed:

Showing of 1-20 of 500 jobs

0 job(s) selected

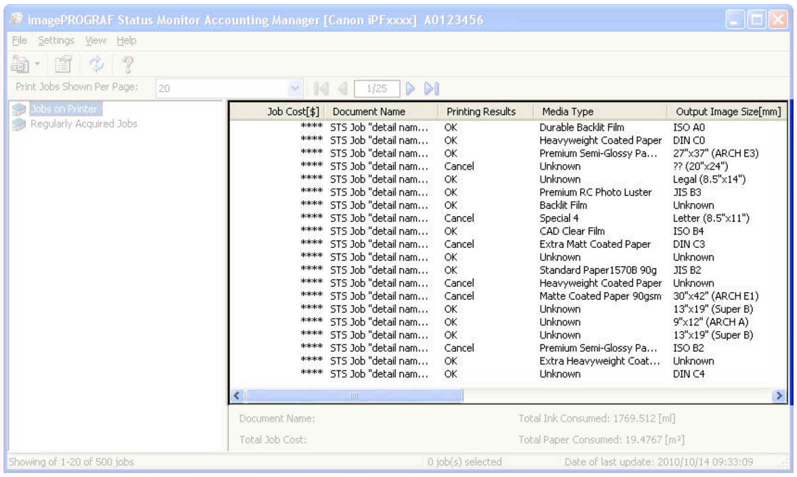
Date of last update: 2010/10/14 09:33:09

For more information on how to select the job logs displayed, see Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs →P.439 .

- **Job List Area**

This area lists the details of acquired jobs.

Display a list of jobs within the printer or of jobs collected periodically. For details, refer to Job List Area →P.433 .


imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager [Canon iPFxxxx] A0123456
File
Settings
View
Help
Print Jobs Shown Per Page:
1/25
Jobs on Printer
Regularly Acquired Jobs

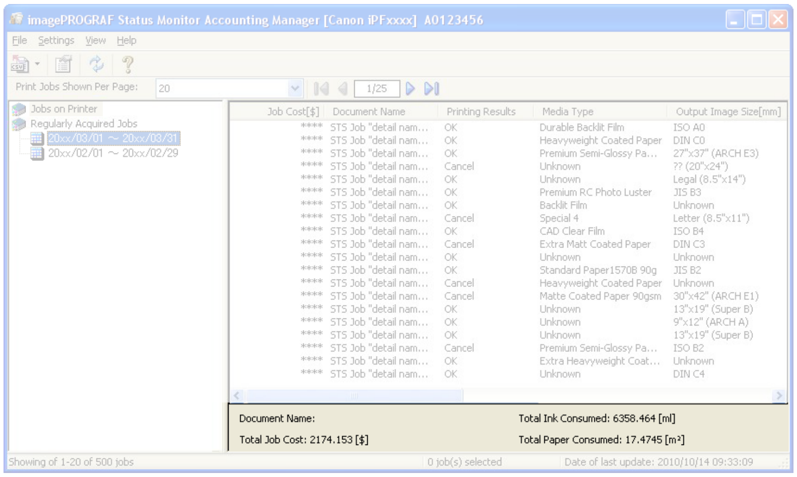
Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20

Job Cost[$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size[mm]
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Durable Backlit Film	ISO A0
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Heavyweight Coated Paper	DIN C0
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	27"x37" (ARCH E3)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Unknown	?? (20"x24")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	Legal (8.5"x14")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Premium RC Photo Luster	JIS B3
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Backlit Film	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Special 4	Letter (8.5"x11")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	CAD Clear Film	ISO B4
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Extra Matt Coated Paper	DIN C3
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Standard Paper1570B 90g	JIS B2
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	30"x42" (ARCH E1)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	9"x12" (ARCH A)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	ISO B2
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Extra Heavyweight Coat...	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	DIN C4

Document Name:
Total Job Cost:
Total Ink Consumed: 1769.512 [ml]
Total Paper Consumed: 19.4767 [m²]
Showing of 1-20 of 500 jobs
0 job(s) selected
Date of last update: 2010/10/14 09:33:09

- **Totals Area**

Displays the total costs for the selected job and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.



Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20

Job Cost[$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size[mm]
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Durable Backlit Film	ISO A0
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Heavyweight Coated Paper	DIN C0
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	27"x37" (ARCH E3)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Unknown	?? (20"x24")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	Legal (8.5"x14")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Premium RC Photo Luster	JIS B3
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Backlit Film	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Special 4	Letter (8.5"x11")
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	CAD Clear Film	ISO B4
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Extra Matt Coated Paper	DIN C3
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Standard Paper1570B 90g	JIS B2
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	30"x42" (ARCH E1)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	9"x12" (ARCH A)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam...	Cancel	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	ISO B2
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Extra Heavyweight Coat...	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam...	OK	Unknown	DIN C4

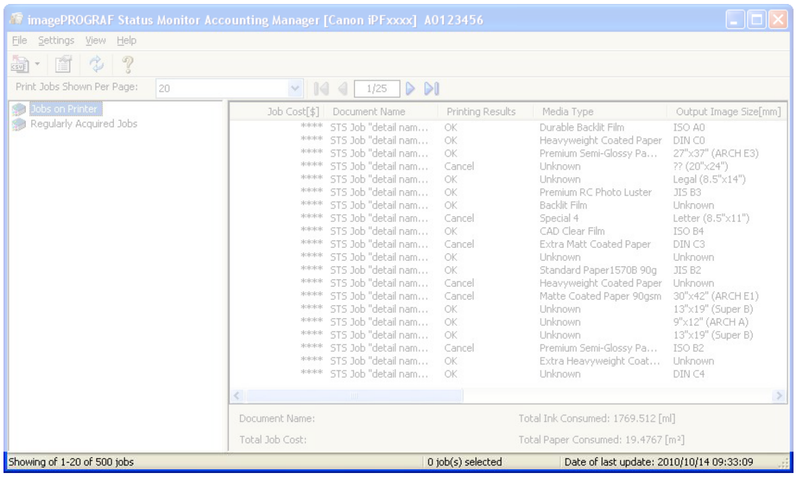
Document Name:
Total Job Cost: 2174.153 [$]
Total Ink Consumed: 6358.464 [ml]
Total Paper Consumed: 17.4745 [m²]
Showing of 1-20 of 500 jobs
0 job(s) selected
Date of last update: 2010/10/14 09:33:09

Note

- If you are viewing regularly acquired print jobs, selecting a period on the left side of the window displays the total costs for that period and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

- **Status Bar**

Displays messages and other information.


imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager [Canon iPFxxxx] A0123456
File
Settings
View
Help
Print Jobs Shown Per Page:
20
1/25
Jobs on Printer
Regularly Acquired Jobs

Job Cost[$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size[mm]
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Durable Backlit Film	ISO A0
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Heavyweight Coated Paper	DIN C0
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa…	27"x37" (ARCH E3)
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Unknown	?? (20"x24")
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	Legal (8.5"x14")
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Premium RC Photo Luster	JIS B3
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Backlit Film	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Special 4	Letter (8.5"x11")
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	CAD Clear Film	ISO B4
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Extra Matt Coated Paper	DIN C3
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Standard Paper1570B 90g	JIS B2
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	30"x42" (ARCH E1)
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	9"x12" (ARCH A)
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	13"x19" (Super B)
****	STS Job "detail nam…	Cancel	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa…	ISO B2
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Extra Heavyweight Coat…	Unknown
****	STS Job "detail nam…	OK	Unknown	DIN C4

Document Name:

Total Job Cost:

Total Ink Consumed: 1769.512 [ml]

Total Paper Consumed: 19.4767 [m²]

Showing of 1-20 of 500 jobs | 0 job(s) selected | Date of last update: 2010/10/14 09:33:09

Job List Area

The content and items of the jobs displayed in the job list area are as follows.

- **Job Cost**

This is the cost incurred in printing.

Note

- If the Unit Cost of Ink or Paper have not been set, **** is displayed in the Job Cost field.

- **Document Name**

This is the name of the printed document.

- **Printing Results**

Displays **OK** when printing is executed, and **Cancel** when it is not executed

- **Media Type**

This is the type of paper used in printing.

- **Paper Consumed**

This is the area of paper used in printing.

Note

- **Paper Consumed** may differ from the value derived by multiplying **Paper Width** by **Paper Length**.

- **Output Image Size**

This is the size of the document used in printing.

Note

- When the job is multiple pages, the size of the last page is displayed.

- **Paper Width**

  This is the width of paper used in printing.

  Note
  - When the job is multiple pages, the width of the last page is displayed.

- **Paper Length**

  This is the length of paper used in printing.

Accounting Manager Basic Procedures

The first time you use the Accounting Manager, use the following procedures to configure the settings.

1. Configure unit costs, including the costs of ink and paper.
   For details of the unit cost settings, see Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager →P.434 .

2. Set options such as the units displayed.
   For details of the unit settings, see Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager →P.438 .

3. If you are using Regular Data Acquisition, configure the Regular Data Acquisition settings.
   For details of the Regular Data Acquisition settings, see Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals →P.439 .

4. Specify the jobs to be listed.
   For details of how to select the job logs displayed, see Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs →P.439 .

This displays the required print job logs and lists the details.

Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager

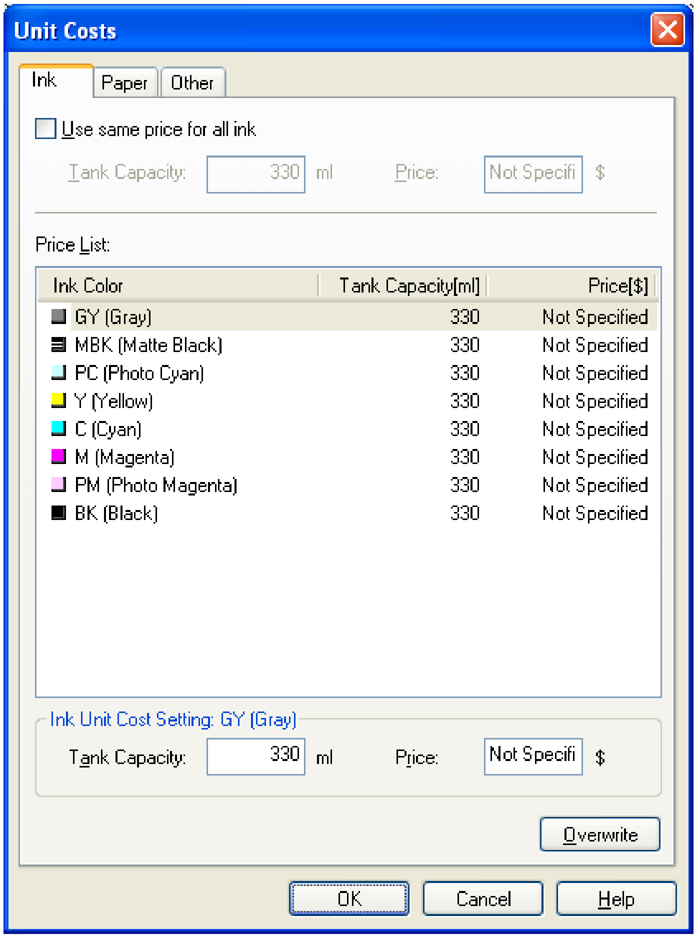
Select **Unit Costs** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Unit Costs** dialog box. Configure the unit cost settings in this dialog box.

Note
- When you select a job and then open the **Unit Costs** dialog box, items with unit costs that have not yet been configured for that job are shown highlighted.

- Setting the Unit Cost for Ink →P.435
- Setting the Unit Cost for Paper →P.436
- Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper →P.437

Setting the Unit Cost for Ink

Open the **Ink** sheet. Set the unit cost for ink in this sheet.



☐ Use same price for all ink

Tank Capacity: 330 ml Price: Not Specifi $

Price List:

Ink Color	Tank Capacity[ml]	Price[$]
GY (Gray)	330	Not Specified
MBK (Matte Black)	330	Not Specified
PC (Photo Cyan)	330	Not Specified
Y (Yellow)	330	Not Specified
C (Cyan)	330	Not Specified
M (Magenta)	330	Not Specified
PM (Photo Magenta)	330	Not Specified
BK (Black)	330	Not Specified

Ink Unit Cost Setting: GY (Gray)

Tank Capacity: 330 ml Price: Not Specifi $

To set the same unit cost for all the inks

1. Select the **Use same price for all ink** checkbox.
2. Enter the **Tank Capacity** and corresponding **Price**.
3. Click the **OK** button.

Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

To set different unit costs for each ink color

1. Select the ink color to be costed.
2. Enter the **Tank Capacity** and corresponding **Price**.

3. Click the **Overwrite** button.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for all the inks.

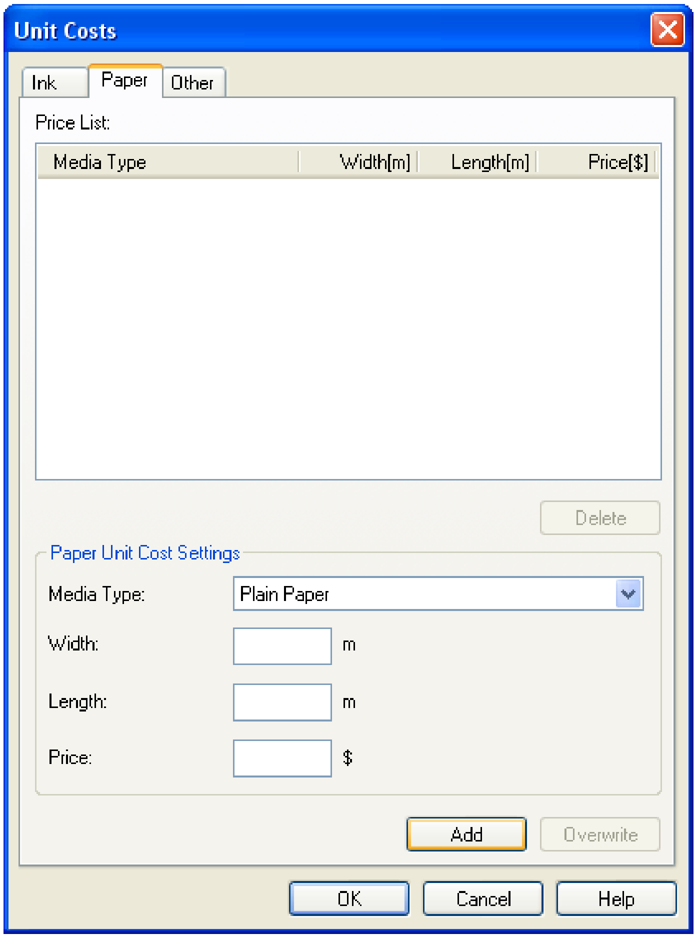
5. Click the **OK** button.

Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Paper

Open the **Paper** sheet. Set the unit cost for paper in this sheet.



Media Type: Plain Paper

1. Select a media type from the **Media Type** list.

2. Enter the **Width** and **Length** of the paper, and the **Price** per area for the configured width x height.

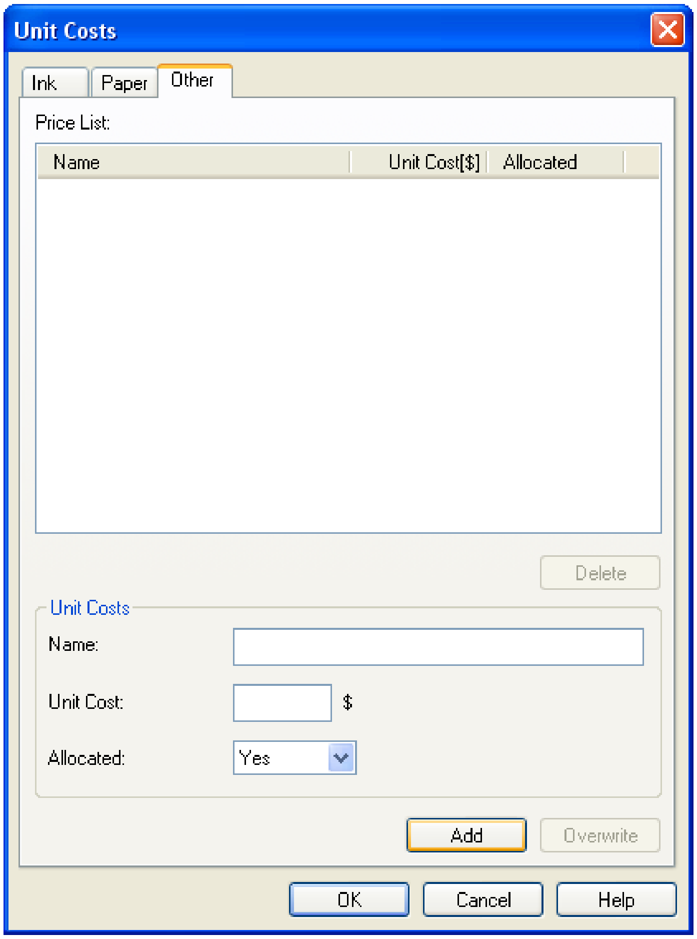
3. Click the **Add** button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the **Overwrite** button.

4. Click the **OK** button.

Important
- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper

Open the **Other** sheet. Use this sheet to set any price for items other than inks and paper.



1. Enter any name in the **Name** field.

2. Enter a value in **Unit Cost**.

3. Use **Allocated** to specify whether the costs are allocated as being incurred by the print job.

4. Click the **Add** button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the **Overwrite** button.

5. Click the **OK** button.

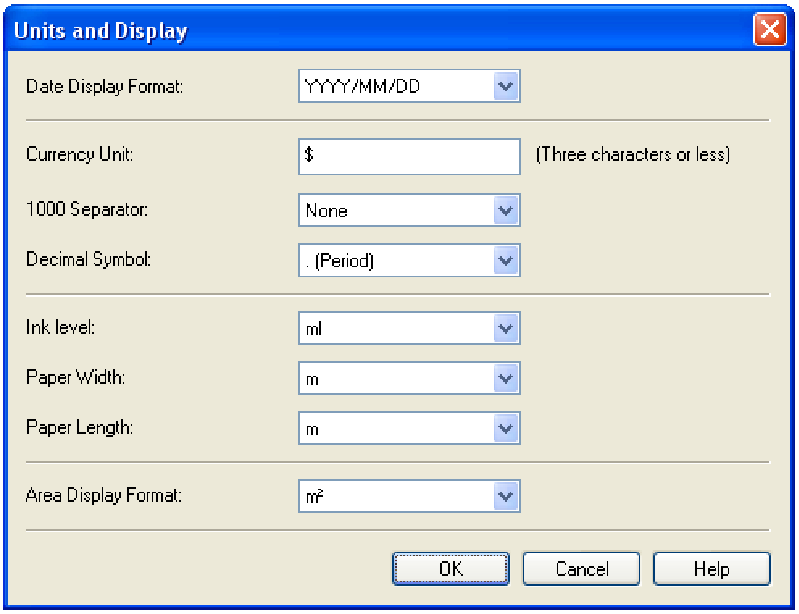
Important
- Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Note

- You can set unit costs for up to 5 items.

Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager

Select **Units and Display** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Units and Display** dialog box. Use this dialog box to configure the display settings.



Date Display Format: YYYY/MM/DD

Currency Unit: $ (Three characters or less)

1000 Separator: None

Decimal Symbol: . (Period)

Ink level: ml

Paper Width: m

Paper Length: m

Area Display Format: m²

- **Date Display Format**

  Use this option to select the display format for dates. "YYYY" indicates the year, "MM" the month and "DD" the day.

- **Currency Unit**

  Enter the currency unit. Enter a text string up to 3 characters long.

- **1000 Separator**

  Use this option to select the symbol used as a separator in numbers. The symbol is inserted every 3 digits.

- **Decimal Symbol**

  Use this option to select the symbol used as a decimal point.

- **Ink Consumed**

  Use this option to select the unit used for ink consumption.

- **Paper Width**

  Use this to select the unit used for paper width.

- **Paper Length**

  Use this to select the unit used for paper length.

- **Area Display Format**

  Use this to select the unit used for paper area.

Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals

This feature collects print job logs from the printer at regular intervals and saves the logs on your computer.

1. Select **Regular Data Acquisition** in the **Settings** menu.
2. Select **Acquire print job logs regularly**.
3. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Important

- Print job log collection is not performed when **Set./Adj. Menu** -> **Printer Info** -> **Show Job Log** of the control panel is **Off**. However, even if **Show Job Log** is set to **Off**, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at that time are displayed.

Note

- Immediately after you configure Regular Data Acquisition, no print jobs are displayed. Wait a few moments and then select **Refresh** in the **View** menu to display the print jobs.
- A maximum of 10,000 records are saved in a print job log. If this number is exceeded, jobs are deleted from the log starting from the oldest record. To save old data, it is recommended that you export the data as a CSV file.
  For details of how to export print job logs as CSV files, see Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File →P.440 .

Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition

You can use this procedure to cancel the regular acquisition of print job logs from printers.

1. Select **Regular Data Acquisition** in the **Settings** menu.
2. Uncheck the **Acquire print job logs regularly** option.
3. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs

The print job logs displayed by the Status Monitor Accounting Manager contain two types of job: Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs.
You can select whether to display Jobs on Printer or Regularly Acquired Jobs in the Listed Job Selection Area on the left side of the window.

• Jobs on Printer

This shows a list of the print jobs currently held on printers.

You can change the number of jobs displayed per page using the **Print Jobs Shown Per Page** setting in the **View** menu or the toolbar.

You can skip to a particular page using the **Go to** option in the **View** menu or the toolbar.

Note

- For printers with built-in hard disks, you can view up to 500 print jobs per printer.
- For printers without built-in hard disks, you can view up to 32 print jobs per printer. However, only 10 jobs can be displayed if the printer is switched off.

- **Regularly Acquired Jobs**

This shows a list of regularly acquired print jobs.

To view all the jobs in a set period, specify the period using **Period** and then **Starting Date** (or **Starting Day of Week** or **Starting Month**) in the **View** menu or the toolbar.

For example, to view monthly job logs starting on the 1st of each month, set **Period** to **Monthly** and set **Starting Date** to **1**.

Note

- Up to 10,000 regularly acquired jobs are displayed for each printer.

Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File

You can export the collected print job data in the form of a CSV file by selecting **Export Job Cost Data** in the **File** menu.

Note

- You can also select **Export Job Cost Data** using the icon in the toolbar.

- **Selected Jobs**

Exports the data for the selected print jobs in the job list as a CSV file.

Note

- You can select multiple jobs by holding down the Shift key or Ctrl key as you click the job names.

- **Listed Jobs**

Exports the data for the print jobs currently displayed in the list as a CSV file.

Showing Job Properties

If you select a job in the job list and then select **Show Job Properties** in the **File** menu, the **Job Properties** dialog box appears, allowing you to check information such as detailed cost data.
You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.

Note

- You can also open this dialog box by right-clicking the selected job and selecting **Show Job Properties**. Or you can also use the toolbar icon to open the dialog box.
- If you select multiple jobs and open the **Job Properties** dialog box, the total costs for the selected jobs are displayed.

Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data

• Show Unit Cost Data

Select **Show Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu to open the **Unit Cost Data** dialog box. This lists the unit costs for items such as the selected ink and paper.

You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.

• Save Unit Cost Data

Select a destination folder using **Save Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu. The unit cost data for items such as the selected ink and paper is saved as a file.

• Load Unit Cost Data

Selecting **Load Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu loads saved unit cost data.

Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed

Select **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** in the **File** menu to open the **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** dialog box.
This lists the total amounts of ink and paper consumed by the printer so far.
You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.

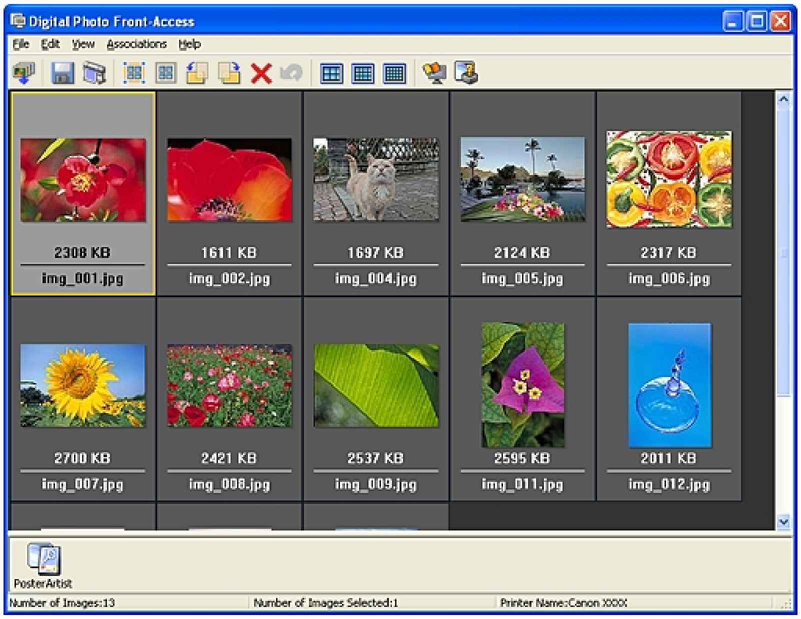
Note

- Up to 7 types of media are listed in order of the amount consumed. The total consumption for other media types is shown as **Other**.

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.

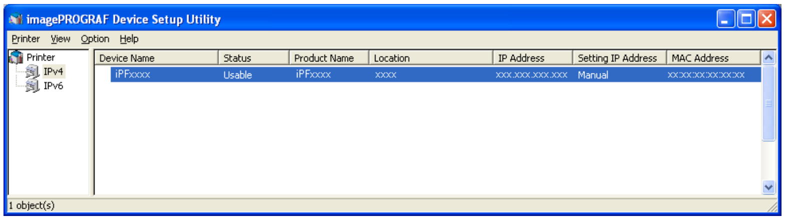
Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address
iPFxxxx	Usable	iPFxxxx	xxxx	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Manual	xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

On a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

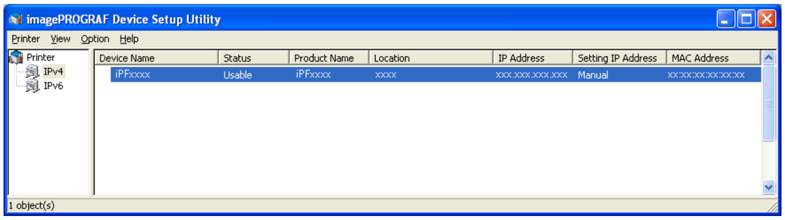
- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as **Administrator** account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

Note

- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility." →P.443

When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.

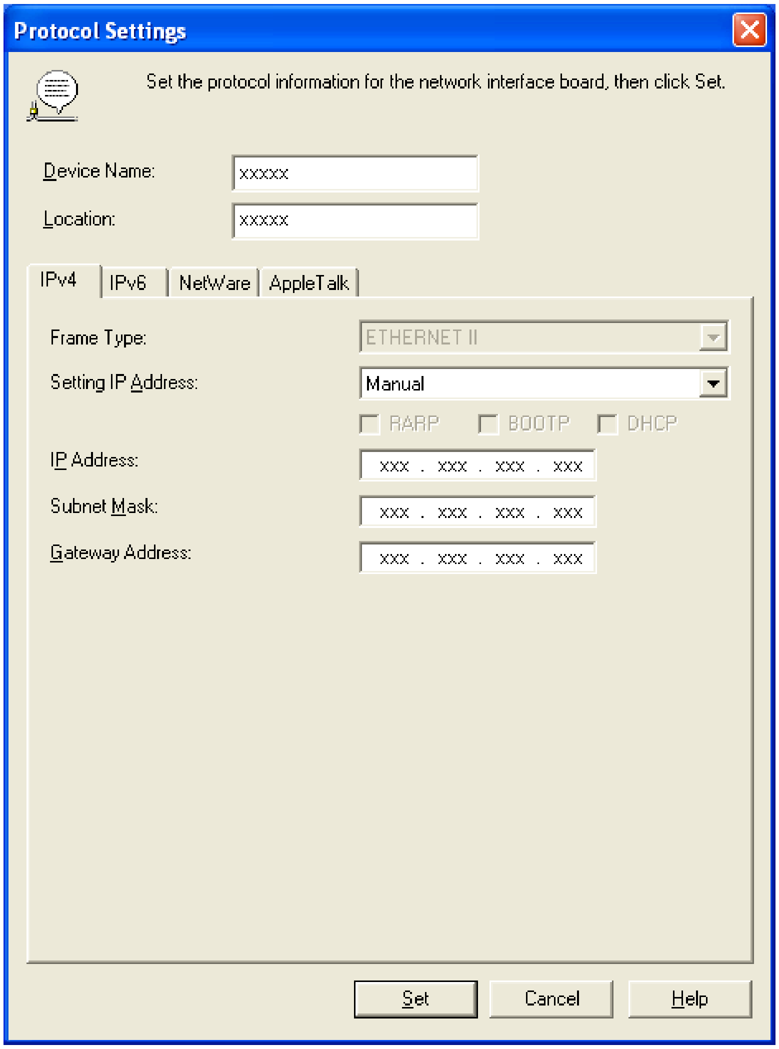


Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address
iPFxxxx	Usable	iPFxxxx	xxxx	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Manual	xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.

3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.

4. Select the **IPv4** tab.



Protocol Settings

Set the protocol information for the network interface board, then click Set.

Device Name: xxxxx

Location: xxxxx

Frame Type: ETHERNET II

Setting IP Address: Manual

☐ RARP ☐ BOOTP ☐ DHCP

IP Address: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

Subnet Mask: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

Gateway Address: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

5. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.

6. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.

7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.

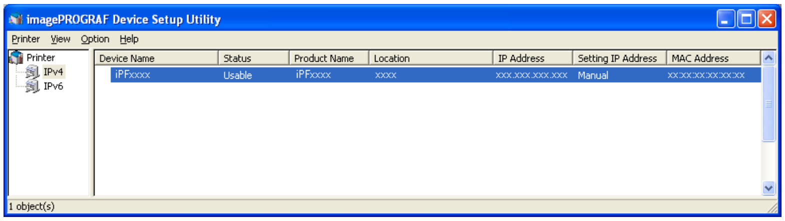
8. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.



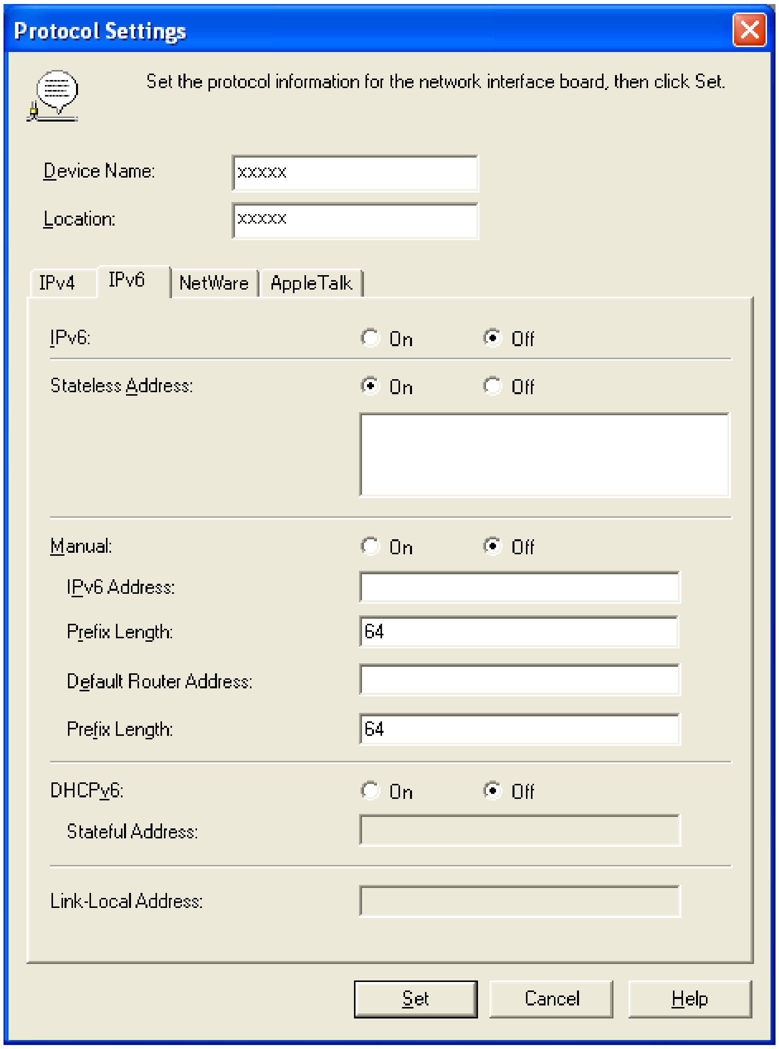
Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address
iPFxxxx	Usable	iPFxxxx	xxxx	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Manual	xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

1 object(s)

2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.

3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.

4. Select the **IPv6** tab.



Set the protocol information for the network interface board, then click Set.

Device Name: xxxxx

Location: xxxxx

IPv6: ○ On ● Off

Stateless Address: ● On ○ Off

Manual: ○ On ● Off

IPv6 Address:

Prefix Length: 64

Default Router Address:

Prefix Length: 64

DHCPv6: ○ On ● Off

Stateful Address:

Link-Local Address:

5. In **IPv6**, select **On**.

6. When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select **On** in **Stateless Address**. Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select **On** in **DHCPv6**.

> Note
> - When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select **On** in **Manual** and enter the **IPv6 Address** and **Prefix Length**.

7. Click **Set**.

8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.

9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Media Configuration Tool

The Features of Media Configuration Tool

The Media Configuration Tool offers the following features.

- Enables information about additional media (types of paper) supported by the printer to be added to the printer control panel and to the printer driver, through the use of relevant media information files.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.
- You can add custom paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper) to the printer control panel and printer driver.

Important

- Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.
- Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon output confirmed paper).
- The paper feed properties cannot be guaranteed if **Add Custom Paper** is used on Canon genuine paper in the Media Configuration Tool.
- The print quality and paper feed properties cannot be guaranteed if **Add Custom Paper** is used on Canon feed confirmed paper in the Media Configuration Tool. Furthermore, Canon does not guarantee the print quality of Canon feed confirmed paper.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide. Any other paper is called custom paper.

Operating Environment

You can use Media Configuration Tool in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
    - 32 bit edition Windows OS
      Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7
    - 64 bit edition Windows OS
      Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7

  Note

  - For the Windows OS, use the latest version of Service Pack.

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

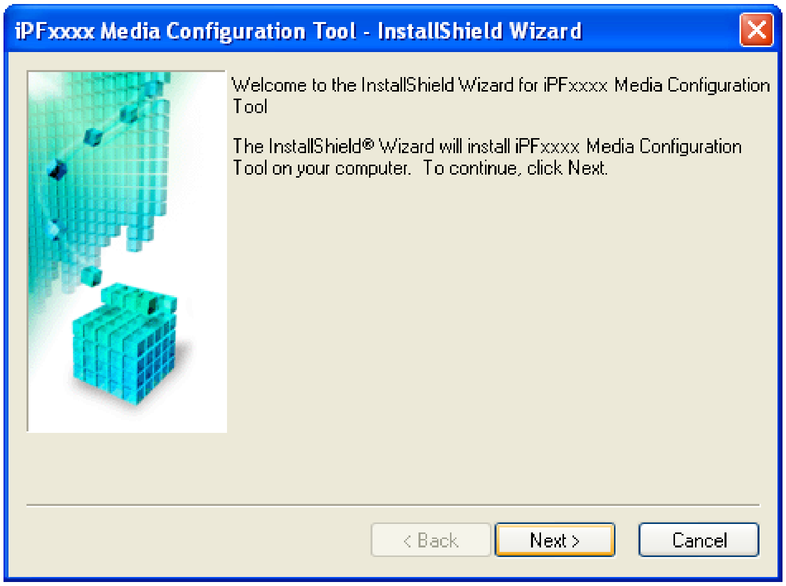
Installation Procedures

The Media Configuration Tool installation screen appears when you start the installation of a new version of the Media Configuration Tool. The installation procedure started from this screen is described below.

Important

- If the printer driver is installed from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. Therefore, the following procedure does not normally need to be performed. To install the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as when you have downloaded a new version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website, use the following procedure.
- You must be logged in as Administrator when installing software in Windows.

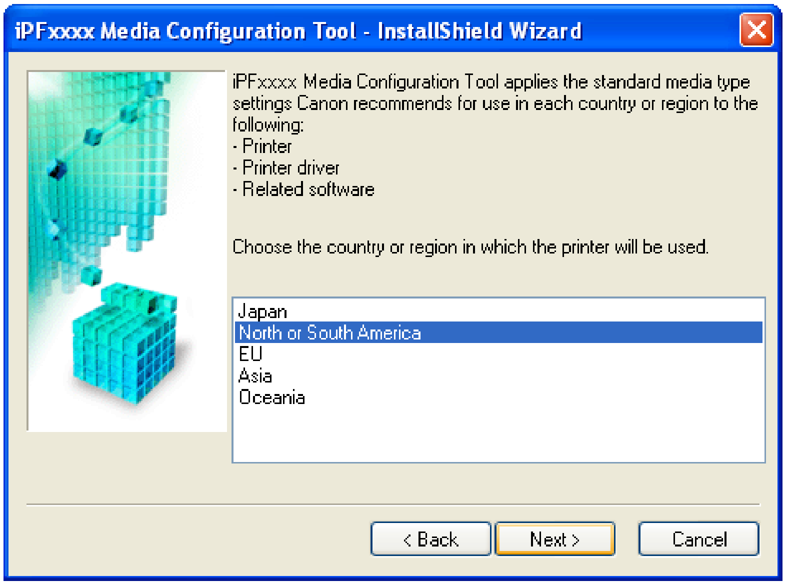
1. Start the Media Configuration Tool installer.
   Click the **Next** button.



Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool

The InstallShield® Wizard will install iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool on your computer. To continue, click Next.

2. The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used.
   Select a country or territory then click the **Next** button.

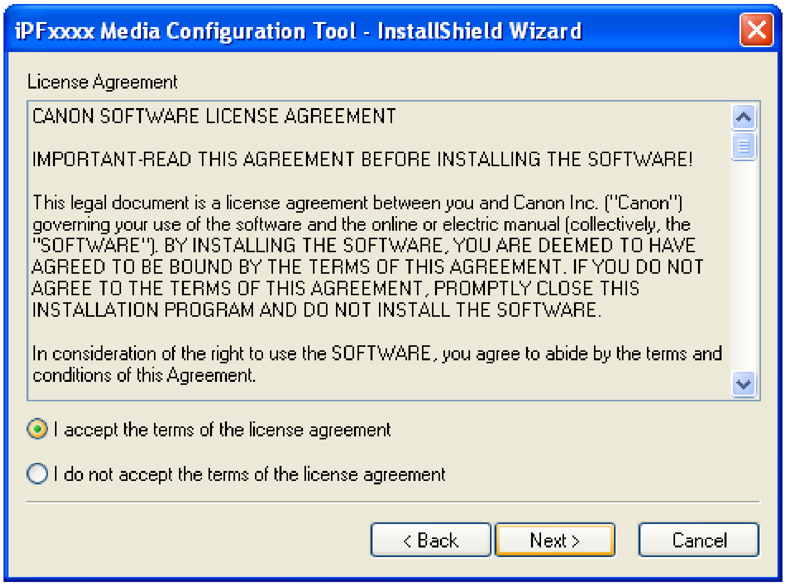


iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool applies the standard media type settings Canon recommends for use in each country or region to the following:
- Printer
- Printer driver
- Related software

Choose the country or region in which the printer will be used.

Japan
North or South America
EU
Asia
Oceania

3. The **License Agreement** is displayed.
   Select **I accept the terms of the license agreement** and click the **Next** button.



CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

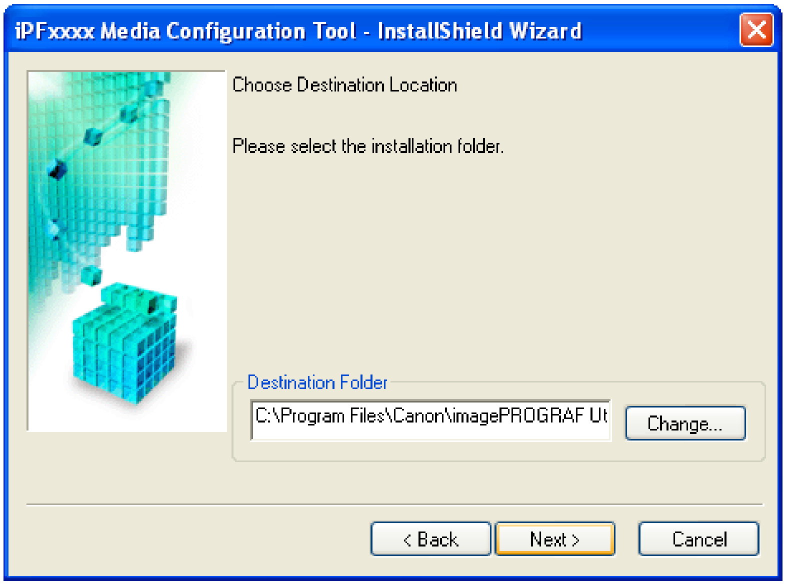
This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

● I accept the terms of the license agreement

○ I do not accept the terms of the license agreement

4. The **Choose Destination Location** screen appears.
   Select the destination folder then click the **Next** button.



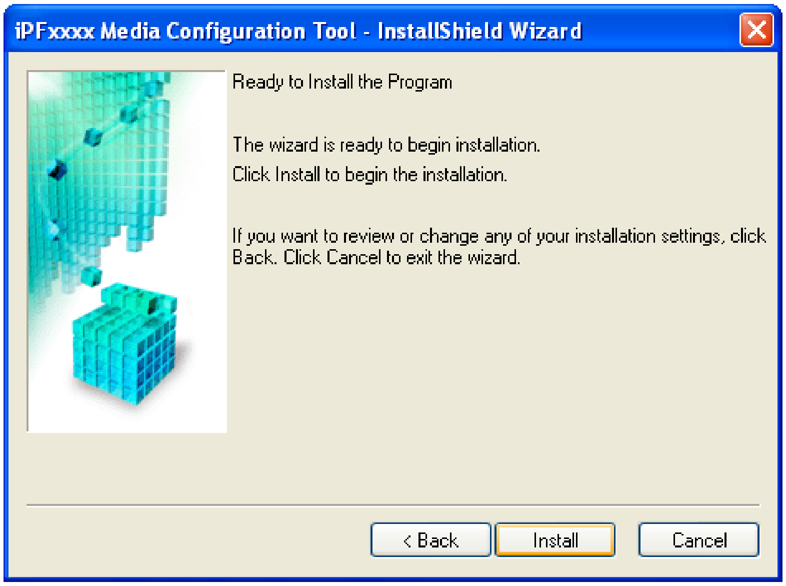
iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool - InstallShield Wizard
Choose Destination Location

Please select the installation folder.

Destination Folder: C:\Program Files\Canon\imagePROGRAF Ut

Change...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

5. The **Ready to Install the Program** screen appears.
Click the **Install** button.



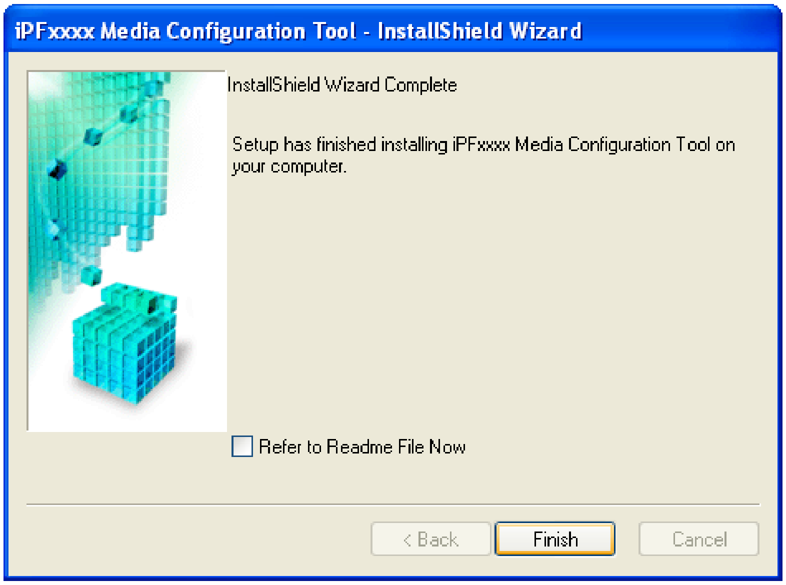
Ready to Install the Program

The wizard is ready to begin installation.

Click Install to begin the installation.

If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.

6. All the required files are copied to your computer and **InstallShield Wizard Complete** screen appears.
Click the **Finish** button.



InstallShield Wizard Complete

Setup has finished installing iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool on your computer.

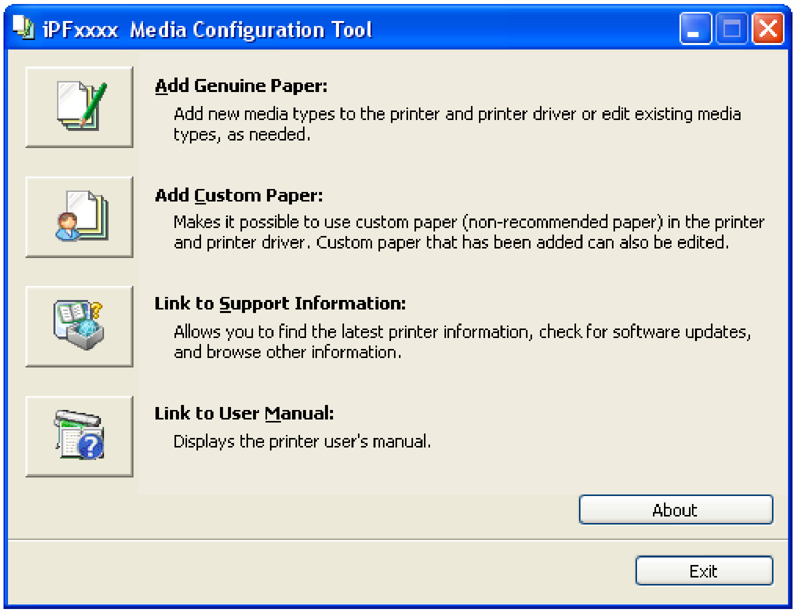
☐ Refer to Readme File Now

This completes the installation of Media Configuration Tool.

Starting the Media Configuration Tool

Follow the procedure below to start Media Configuration Tool.
From the **start** menu go to **All Programs** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool**.

Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.



Add Genuine Paper:
Add new media types to the printer and printer driver or edit existing media types, as needed.

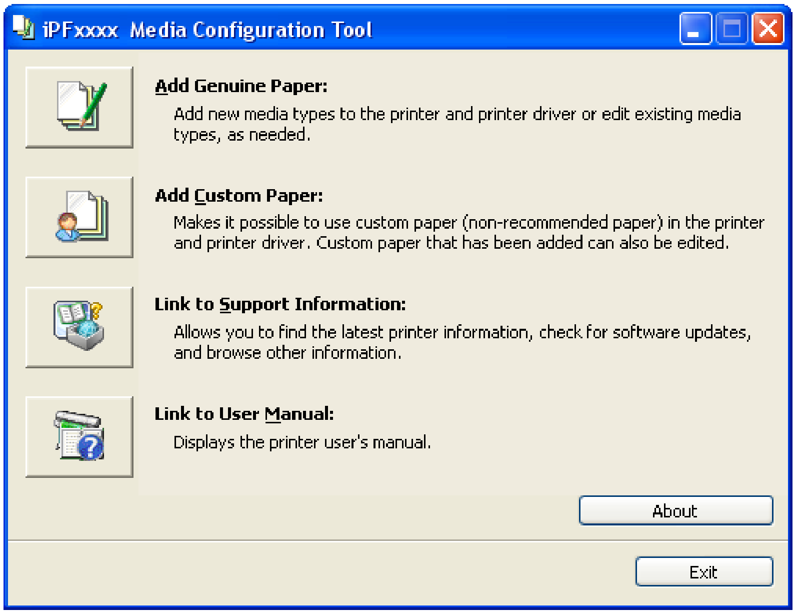
Add Custom Paper:
Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has been added can also be edited.

Link to Support Information:
Allows you to find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

Link to User Manual:
Displays the printer user's manual.

Media Configuration Tool Main Window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.



Add Genuine Paper:
Add new media types to the printer and printer driver or edit existing media types, as needed.

Add Custom Paper:
Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has been added can also be edited.

Link to Support Information:
Allows you to find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

Link to User Manual:
Displays the printer user's manual.

Note

- For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "Starting the Media Configuration Tool." →P.452

- **Add Genuine Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

  You can also change the display order of Canon genuine paper and custom paper.

  Refer to Editing Media Type Information →P.454 for details on **Add Genuine Paper**.

- **Add Custom Paper** button

  When this button is clicked, the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to added custom paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper) to the printer control panel and printer driver.

  Refer to Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper →P.467 for details on **Add Custom Paper**.

- **Link to Support Information** button

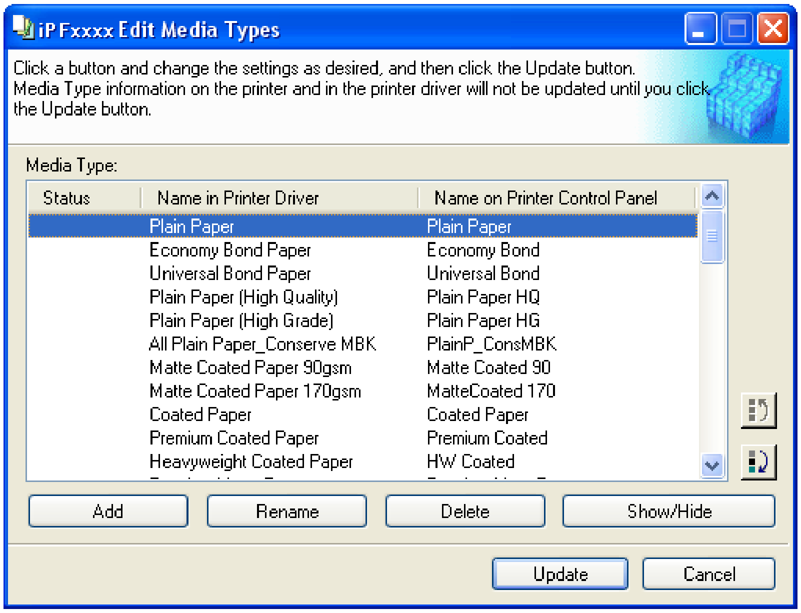
  Opens **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

- **Link to User Manual** Button

  Click this button to display the User's Guide. This function requires that the User's Guide be installed on your computer.

Editing Media Type Information

Click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window to display the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button. Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

This dialog box presents functions for the following tasks.

- Adding Media Types →P.455
- Changing Media Names →P.458
- Deleting Media Types You Have Added →P.460
- Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide →P.461
- Changing the Display Order of Media Types →P.463

Important

- When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.
- Adding, deleting, toggling display/non-display, and changing the paper name of a media type can only be performed for Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper. Refer to "Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper →P.467 " for details on adding, editing, and deleting custom paper. Custom paper displays **Custom** as the **Status** in the **Media Type** list.
- To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

Note

- It may not be possible to deleting, showing/hiding, and changing the display order under some conditions.

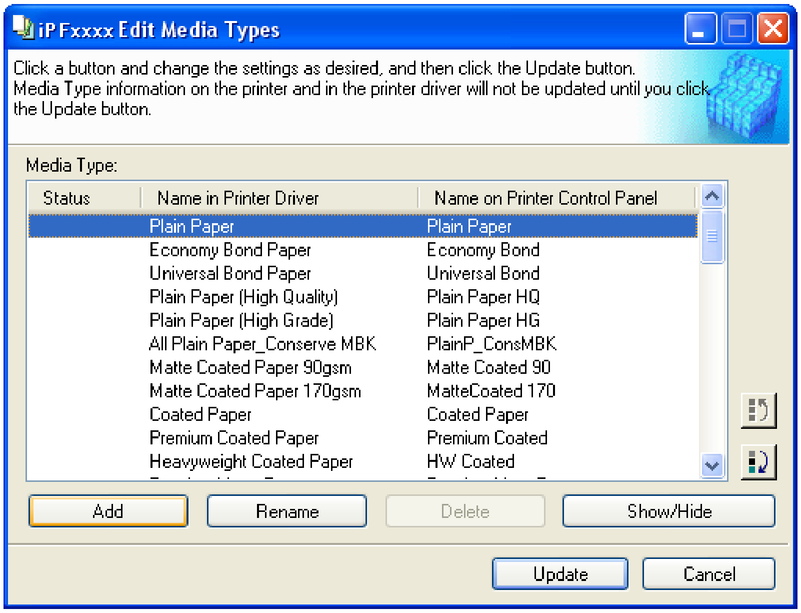
Adding Media Types

Media information files (.amf files) released by Canon are registered in the printer control panel and printer driver.

Important

- Do not perform printing on the target printer while adding the media types.
- Reinstalling Media Configuration Tool after registering a media information file may delete the registered media information file.In this case, first download and install latest Media Configuration Tool, then download and register the required media information file.

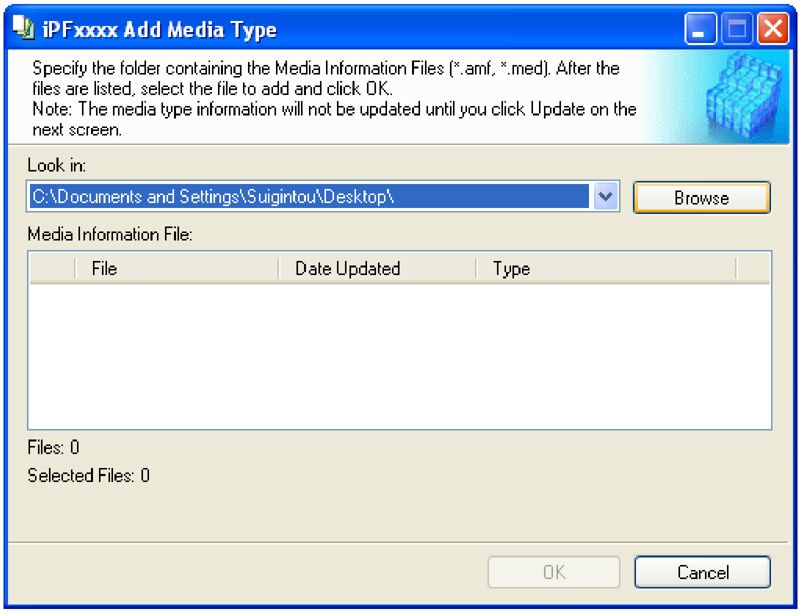
1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

2. The **Add Media Type** dialog box displays.
   Click the **Browse** button.



Specify the folder containing the Media Information Files (*.amf, *.med). After the files are listed, select the file to add and click OK.
Note: The media type information will not be updated until you click Update on the next screen.

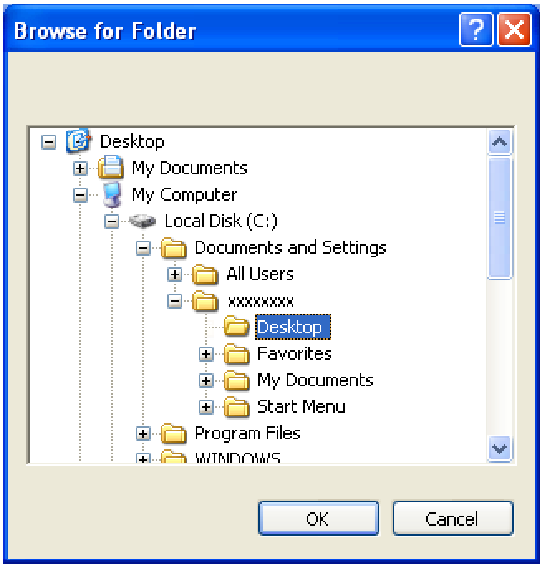
Look in: C:\Documents and Settings\Suigintou\Desktop\

Media Information File:

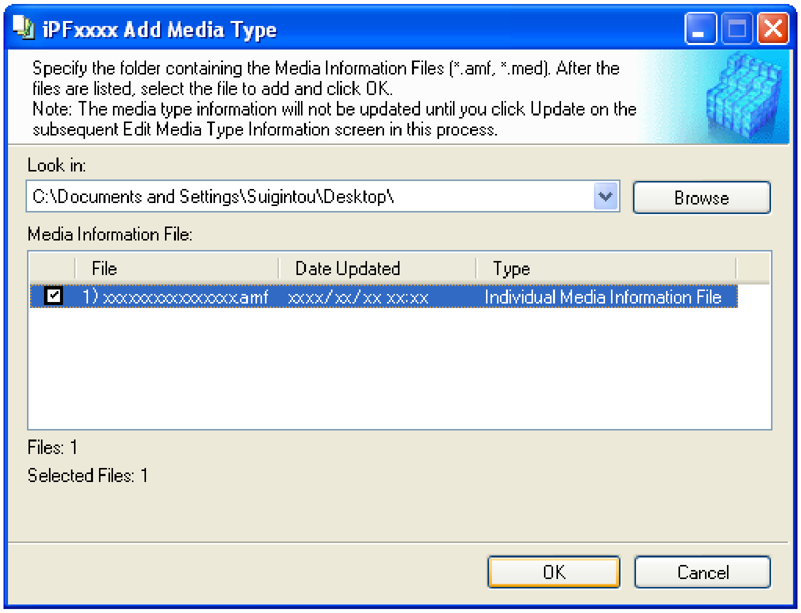
File	Date Updated	Type

Files: 0
Selected Files: 0

3. The **Browse for Folder** dialog box opens.
   Select the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files), and then click the **OK** button.



4. The names of media information files in the folder you selected in the **Browse for Folder** dialog box are displayed under **Media Information File** in the **Add Media Type** dialog box. Select the check boxes of paper to add and click the **OK** button.



Specify the folder containing the Media Information Files (*.amf, *.med). After the files are listed, select the file to add and click OK.
Note: The media type information will not be updated until you click Update on the subsequent Edit Media Type Information screen in this process.

Look in: C:\Documents and Settings\Suigintou\Desktop\

Media Information File:

	File	Date Updated	Type
☑	1) xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx.amf	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx	Individual Media Information File

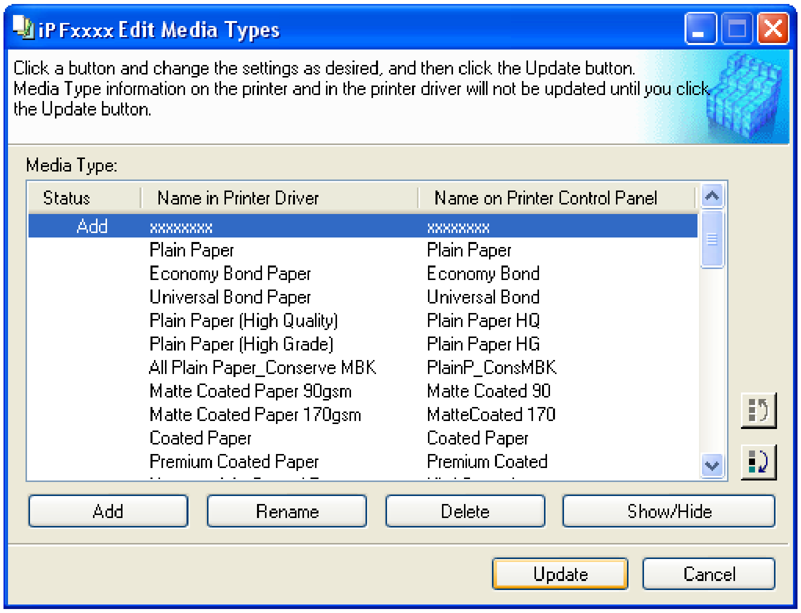
Files: 1
Selected Files: 1

Important

- If **Master Media Information File** is displayed as the **Type** of the **Media Information File**, the media type display order and media type display/non-display settings are initialized. Reconfigure these after added the master media information file.

5. Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

6. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated

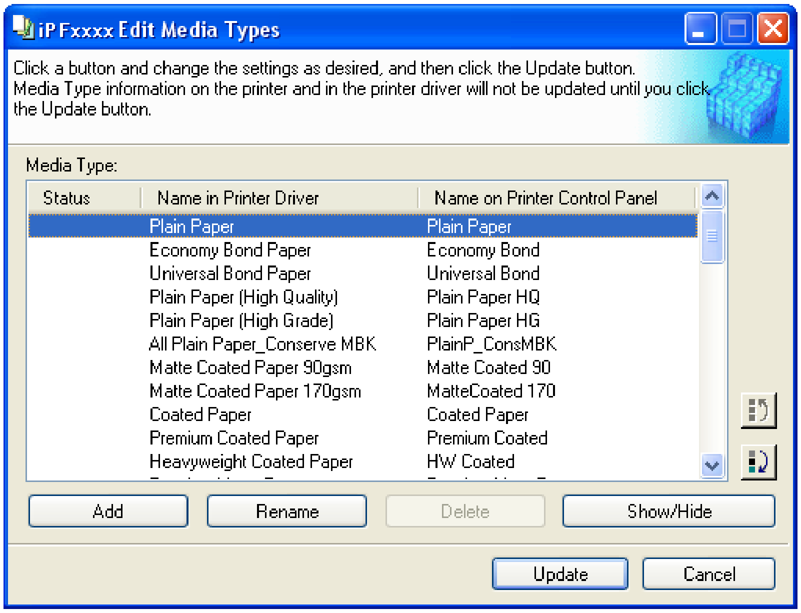
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.465

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Changing Media Names

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.

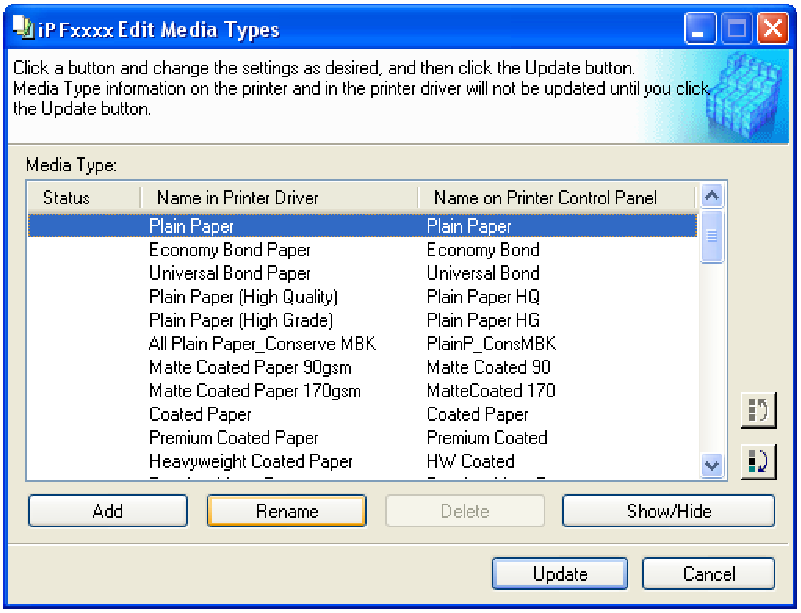


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name to change.
Click the **Rename** button.

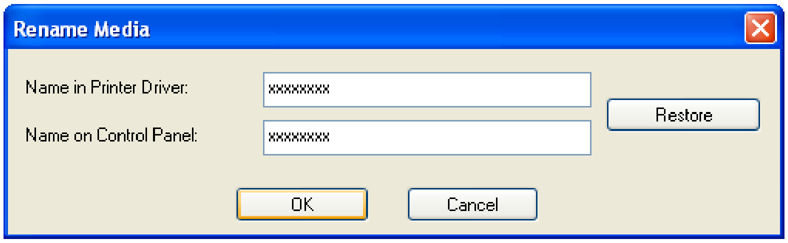


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

3. The **Rename Media** dialog box is displayed.
Edit the names in **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** and click the **OK** button.



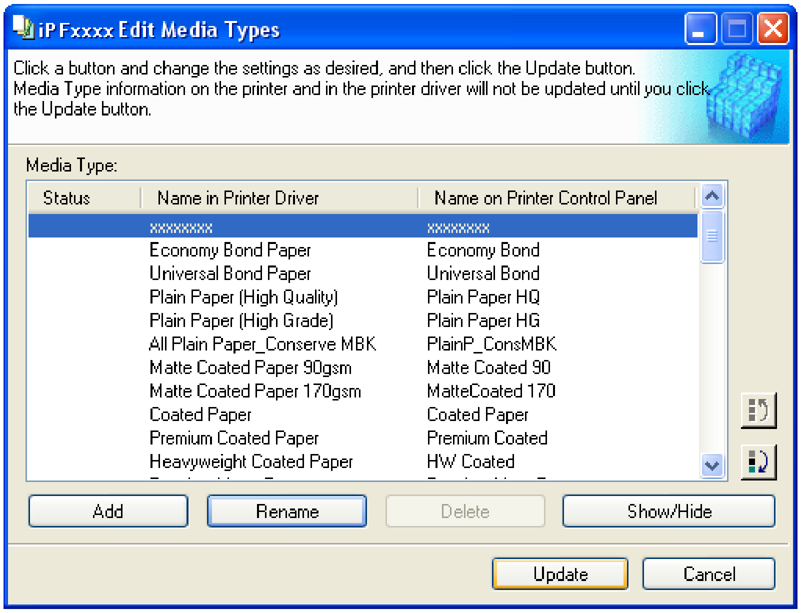
Name in Printer Driver: xxxxxxxx

Name on Control Panel: xxxxxxxx

Note

- To restore the original names, click the **Restore** button.

4. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

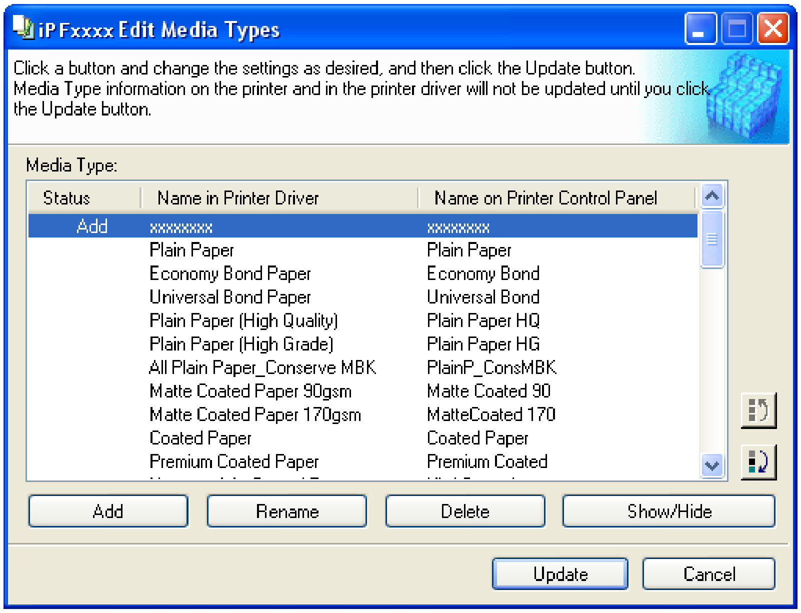
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.465

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Deleting Media Types You Have Added

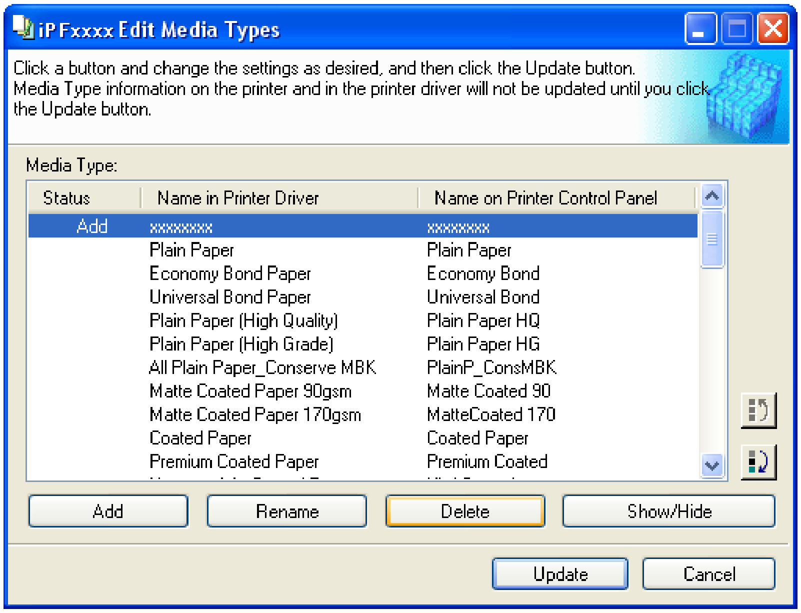
1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to delete.
Click the **Delete** button.



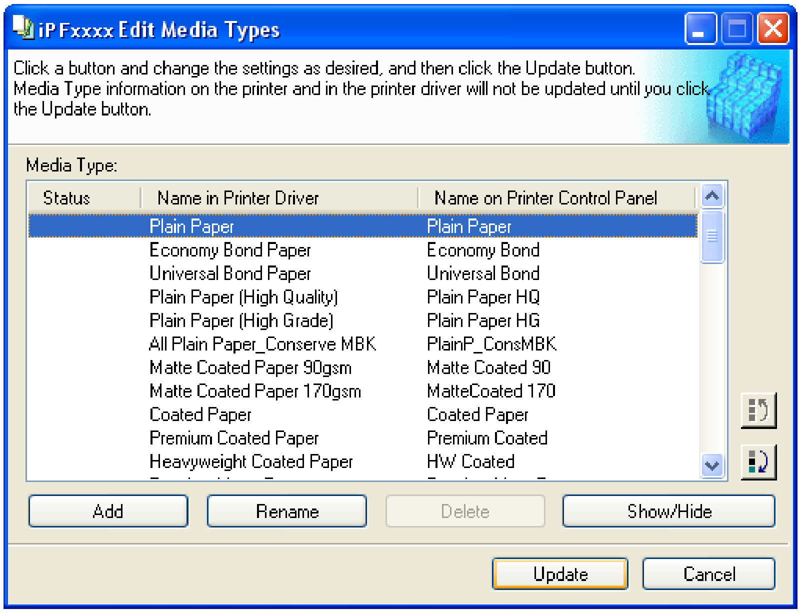
Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated

Note

- Only paper for which **Status** in the **Media Type** is **Add** can be deleted.

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

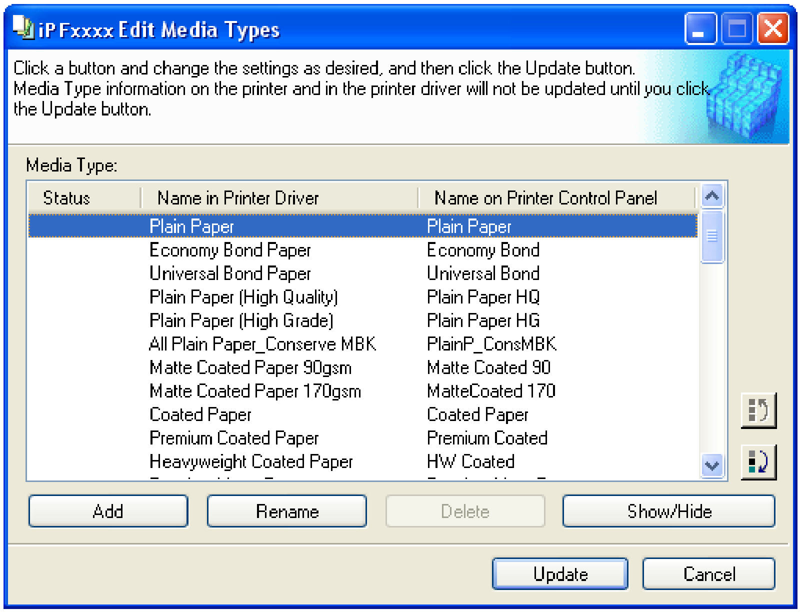
Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.465

Important
- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.

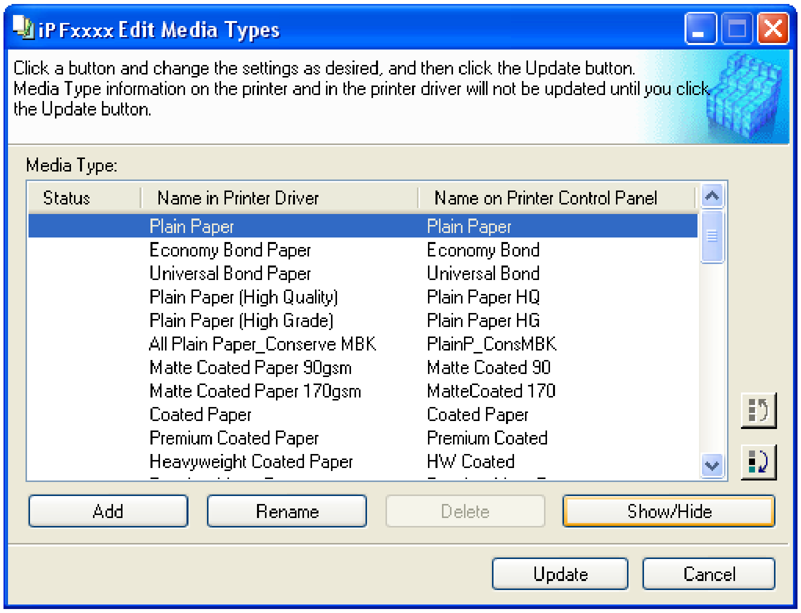


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to switch off or on for display.
   Click the **Show/Hide** button.
   The selected paper is alternately shown or hidden.



iP Fxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

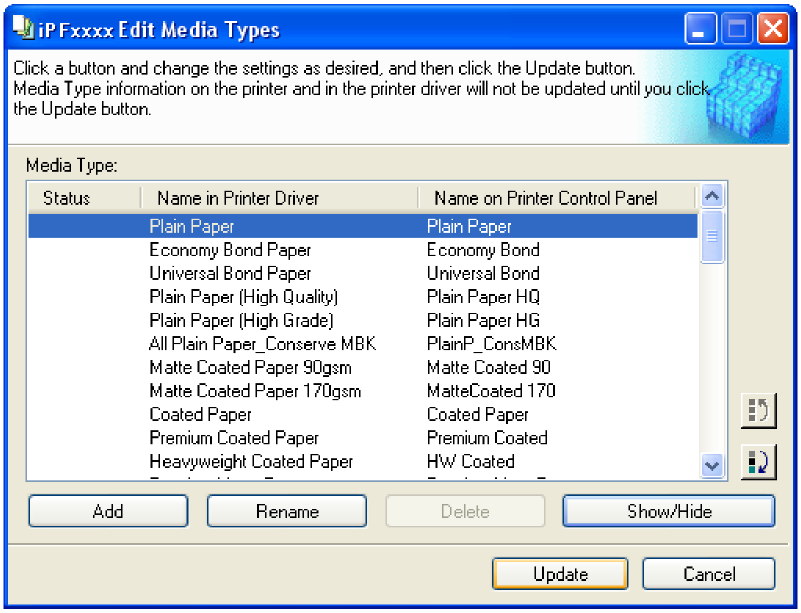
Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

Note

- The names of media switched for non-display appear grayed out in the **Media Type** list.
- Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



iP Fxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

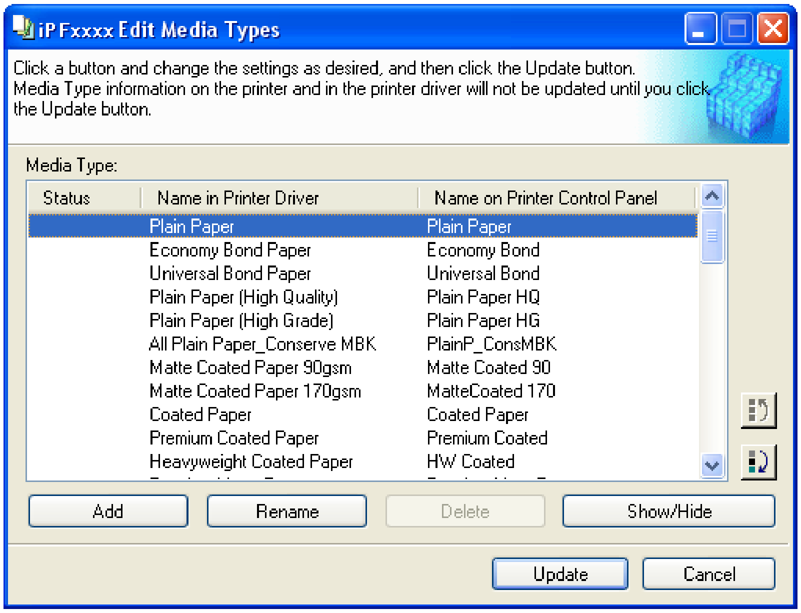
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.465

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Changing the Display Order of Media Types

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



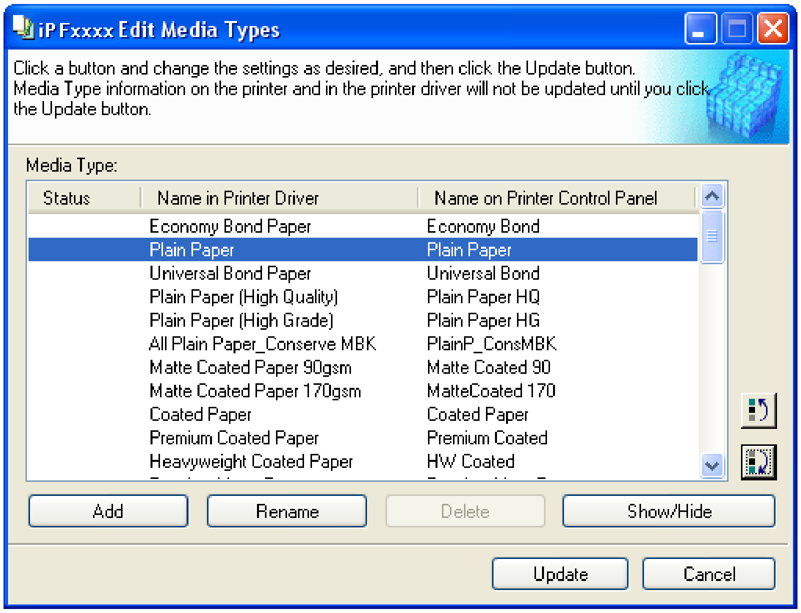
iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

2. Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to move the item (⤴ or ⤵).
The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.

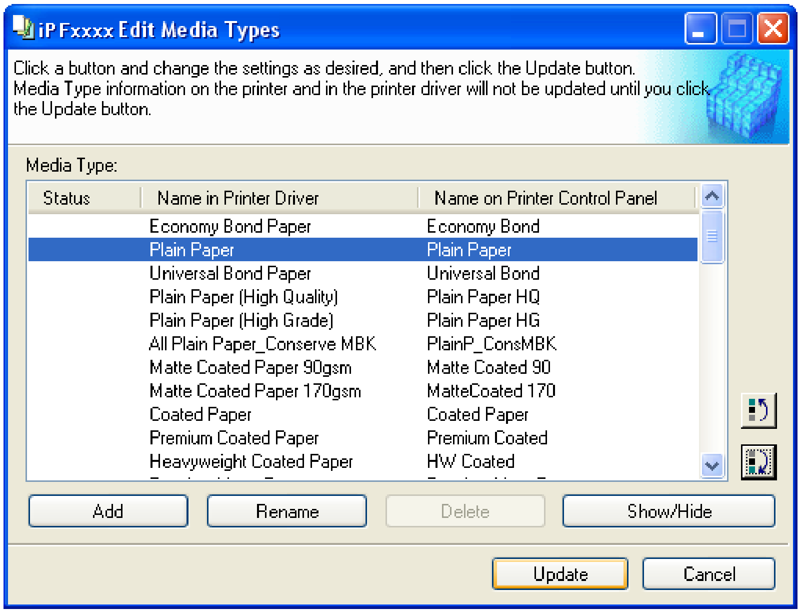


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated

The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.465

Important

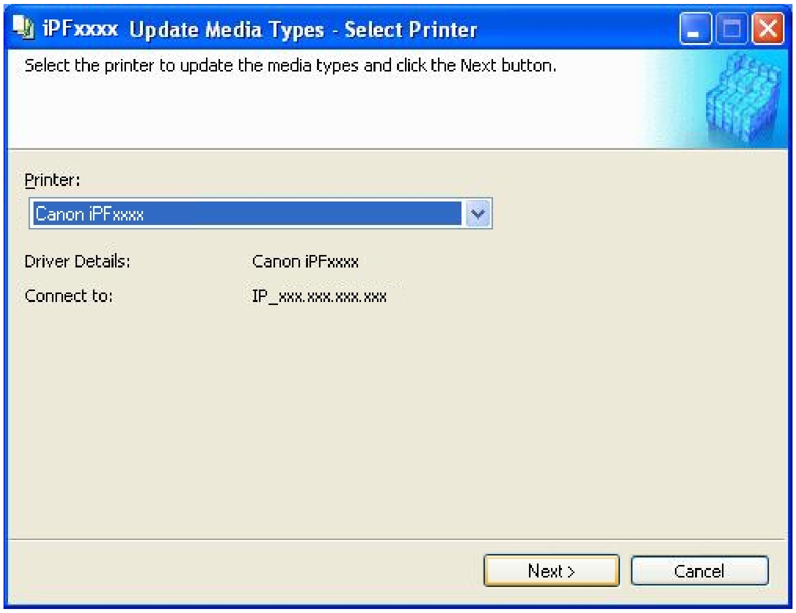
- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Updating Media Types

Clicking the **Update** button on the **Edit Media Types** dialog box opens the **Update Media Types** wizard. You can use this wizard to apply new information about print media in the printer and in the printer driver.
The procedures for updating the media information with the **Update Media Types** wizard are as follows.

> Important
> - When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.

1. Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.



iPFxxxx Update Media Types - Select Printer

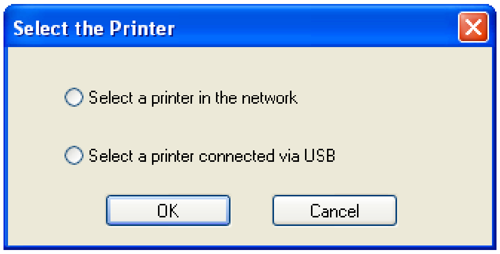
Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: Canon iPFxxxx

Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

> Note
> - If the printer driver is not installed, the following dialog box is displayed. Select how the printer to update is connected.

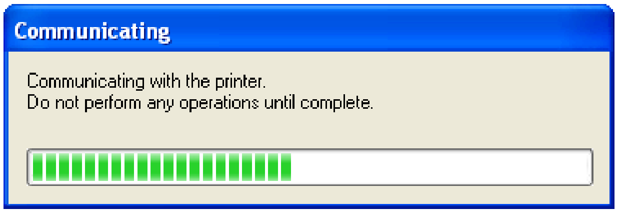


Select the Printer

○ Select a printer in the network

○ Select a printer connected via USB

2. Communication with the printer starts and the following dialog box is displayed.

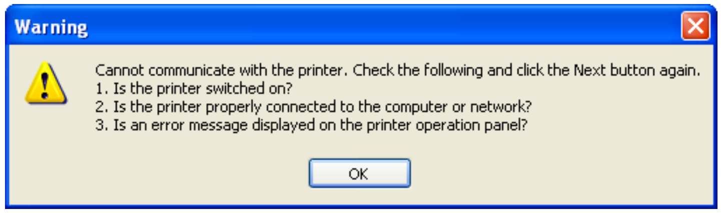


Communicating

Communicating with the printer.
Do not perform any operations until complete.

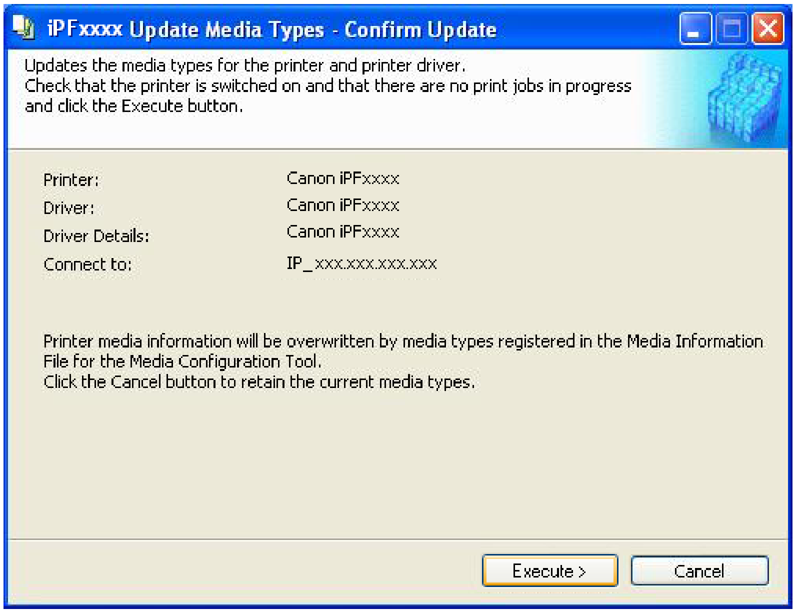
Important

- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.
- When the program cannot communicate with the printer, the following warning message is displayed.



Cannot communicate with the printer. Check the following and click the Next button again.
1. Is the printer switched on?
2. Is the printer properly connected to the computer or network?
3. Is an error message displayed on the printer operation panel?

3. When the program has finished communicating with the printer, the screen moves to display **Update Media Types - Confirm Update**. Confirm the information received from the printer.
To update click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver.
Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

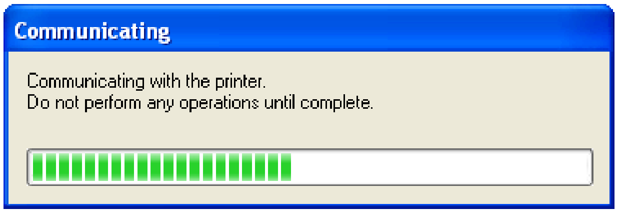
Printer: Canon iPFxxxx
Driver: Canon iPFxxxx
Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

Important

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.

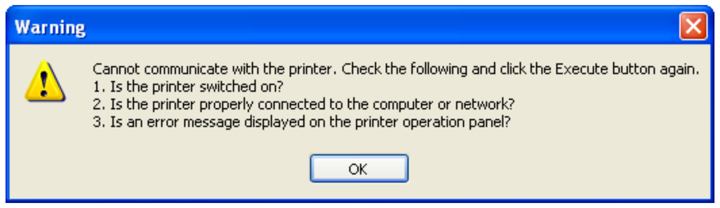
4. Communication with the printer starts and the following dialog box is displayed.



Communicating with the printer.
Do not perform any operations until complete.

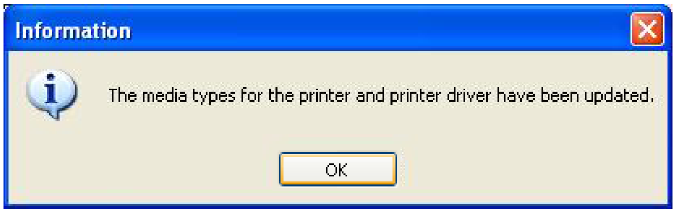
Important

- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.
- When the program cannot communicate with the printer, the following warning message is displayed.


Warning

Cannot communicate with the printer. Check the following and click the Execute button again.
1. Is the printer switched on?
2. Is the printer properly connected to the computer or network?
3. Is an error message displayed on the printer operation panel?

5. Click the **OK** button.


Information

The media types for the printer and printer driver have been updated.

Note

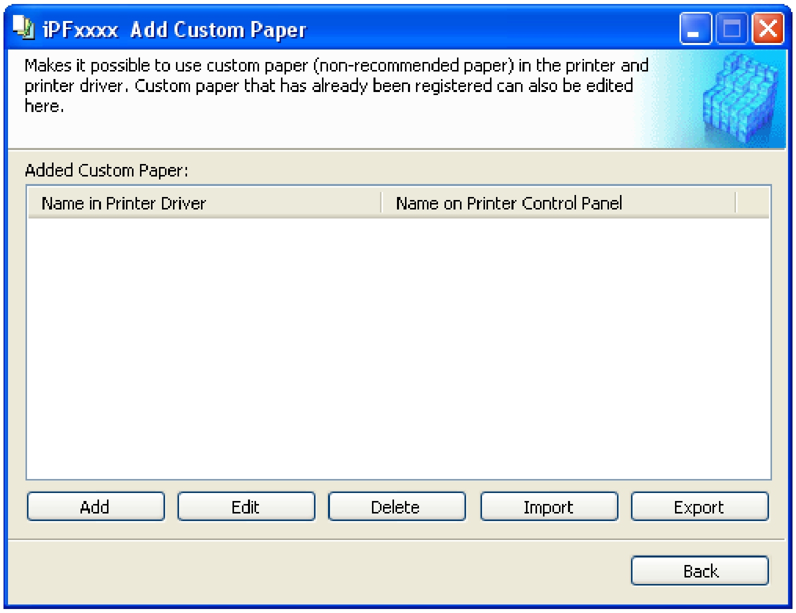
- To apply the same updates to other printers of the same model, click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the main window to open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box and then click the **Update** button. Select the printer that you want to update in Step 1, and update the media information by following the **Update Media Types** wizard.

Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper

When the **Add Custom Paper** button is clicked in the Media Configuration Tool main window, the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed.
Adding custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from this screen.

Note

- Custom paper is paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper (paper that is detailed in the Paper Reference Guide).



iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

The following operations can be performed from this screen.

- Add Custom Paper →P.469
- Edit Custom Paper →P.479
- Delete Custom Paper →P.478
- Export Custom Media Information →P.480
- Import Custom Media Information →P.481

Important

- When adding, editing, or deleting custom paper, make the same changes on all of the other PCs that use the target printer. The changes can be made easily by creating a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) using the custom paper export function and importing the file on the other PCs.
- When using custom paper in another printer, always add the custom paper to that printer before use.
- Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper cannot be changed from this dialog box. Refer to "Editing Media Type Information →P.454 ".
- Changing the display order of media types displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from the **Edit Media Types** dialog box regardless of whether it is Canon genuine paper or custom paper. Refer to "Editing Media Type Information →P.454 ".

Compatible Paper

Paper specifications

Refer to "Specifications" and "Paper" for specifications such as thickness and size of paper that can be added as custom paper (See "Specifications.") →P.1123

Notes on the operating environment

In low humidity environments (below 40%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Paper becomes curled or wrinkled.

- Paper and the printhead are more likely to touch each other, resulting in a scratched print surface or damaged printhead.
- The cut printed matter sticks to the printer and will not fall down (film media).
- Paper sticks to the printer, making its transfer impossible and preventing its normal ejection (film media).
- Uneven printing (film media)

In high humidity environments (over 60%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Printed matter will not dry.
- Wavy paper surface
- Cut edges are ragged (fabric media).
- Margins remain due to borderless printing.

Important

- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper).

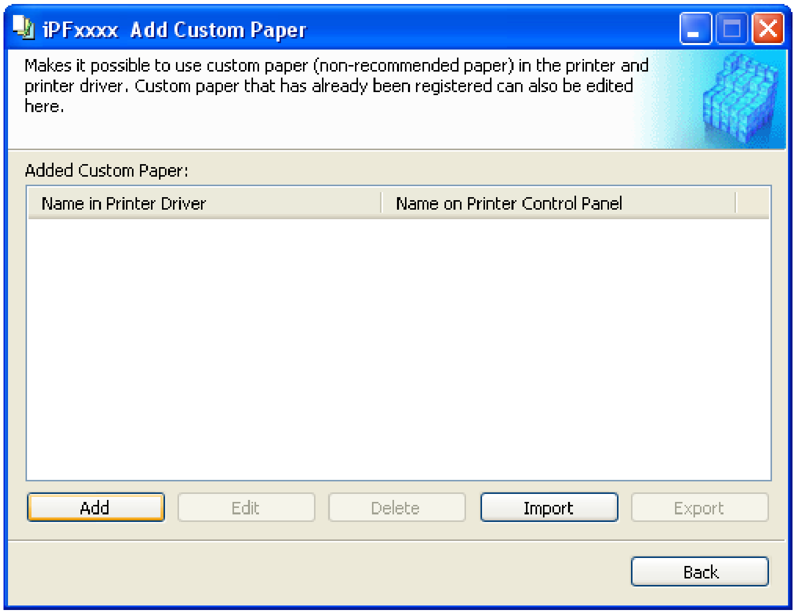
Add Custom Paper

In order to add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, first select the media type to use as the basis from among the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper.. Add this as custom paper after making various changes to the standard paper as necessary.

Important

- Do not execute printing on the target printer while adding custom paper.
- When adding custom paper, check the specifications of paper that can be added using "Compatible Paper →P.468 ".
- Custom paper added using the add custom paper function can only be used by the printer driver. It cannot be used by other software.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box and click the **Add** button.



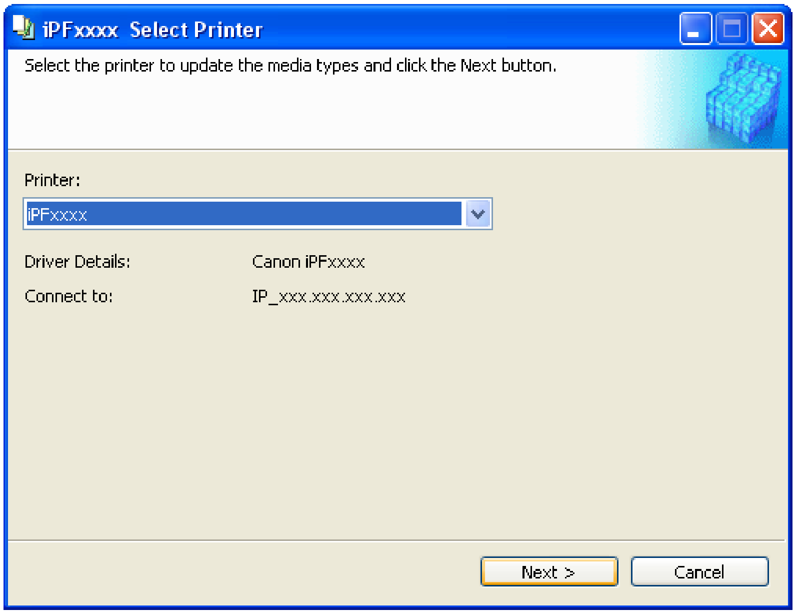
iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

2. Check that the printer on which you are updating the media information is displayed in **Printer** in the **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box and click the **Next** button.



Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: iPFxxxx

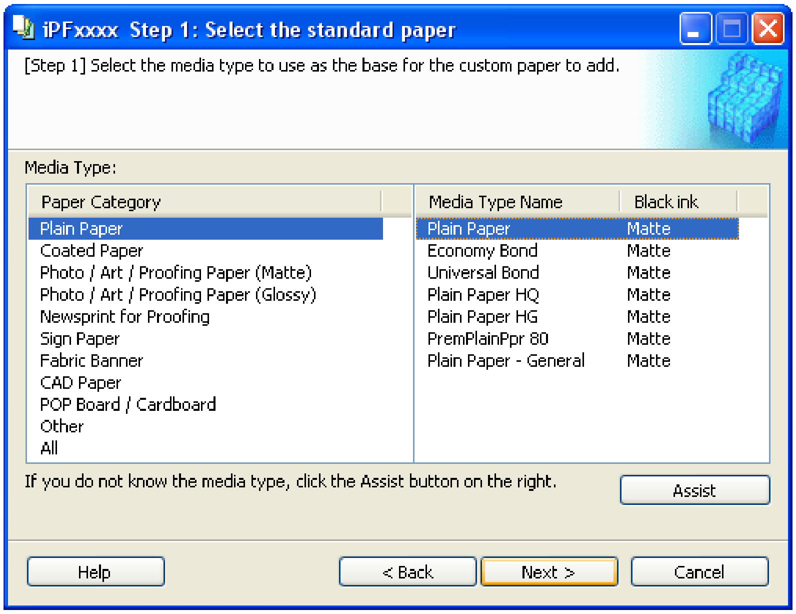
Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

3. The **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box is displayed. In **Paper Category**, select the category of media type to use as the basis of the custom paper you are adding.

Important

- Select the category that you think is the closest to the custom paper you are adding.



[Step 1] Select the media type to use as the base for the custom paper to add.

Media Type:

Paper Category
Plain Paper
Coated Paper
Photo / Art / Proofing Paper (Matte)
Photo / Art / Proofing Paper (Glossy)
Newsprint for Proofing
Sign Paper
Fabric Banner
CAD Paper
POP Board / Cardboard
Other
All

Media Type Name	Black ink
Plain Paper	Matte
Economy Bond	Matte
Universal Bond	Matte
Plain Paper HQ	Matte
Plain Paper HG	Matte
PremPlainPpr 80	Matte
Plain Paper - General	Matte

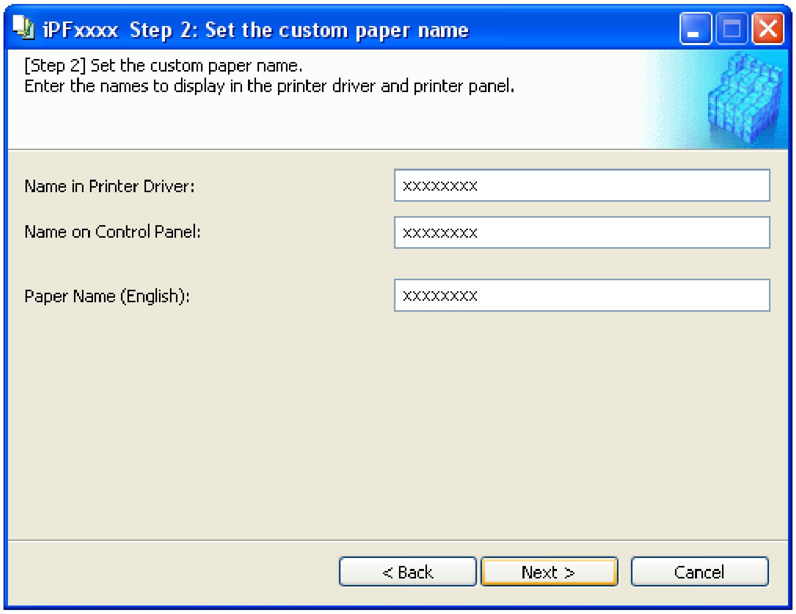
If you do not know the media type, click the Assist button on the right.

4. The media type names of the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper within the selected category are shown in **Media Type Name**. Select the media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, and click the **Next** button.

Note

- If you do not know which media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, click the **Assist** button to open the **Media Type Selection Assistance** dialog box, and then set either the **Weight (grammage)** or the **Thickness**. The Media Configuration Tool automatically selects the appropriate paper from the selected paper category. Alternatively, select the media type called **General** from among the displayed **Media Type Name**.
- Depending on the selected category, there might not be a media type called **General**.
- Depending on the selected category, the **Assist** button may be disabled.

5. The **Step 2: Set the custom paper name** dialog box is displayed.
Enter an arbitrary name to display in the printer control panel and printer driver, and then click the **Next** button.



[Step 2] Set the custom paper name.
Enter the names to display in the printer driver and printer panel.

Name in Printer Driver: xxxxxxxx

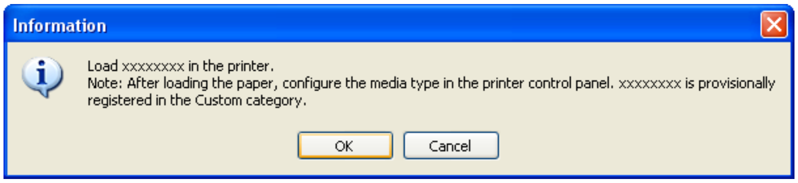
Name on Control Panel: xxxxxxxx

Paper Name (English): xxxxxxxx

Note

- **Paper Name (English)** is used in keeping track of the amount of roll paper left, in status print, etc.

6. Load the custom paper in the printer and then click the **OK** button.

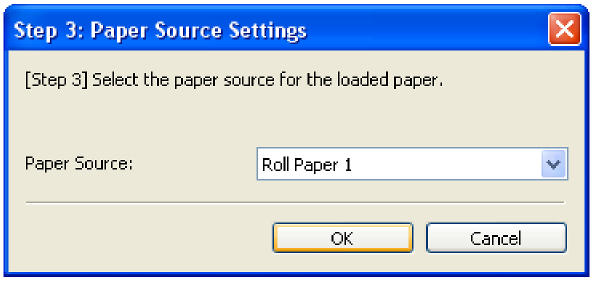


Load xxxxxxxx in the printer.
Note: After loading the paper, configure the media type in the printer control panel. xxxxxxxx is provisionally registered in the Custom category.

Important

- Do not load paper that is curled or that has already been printed on.

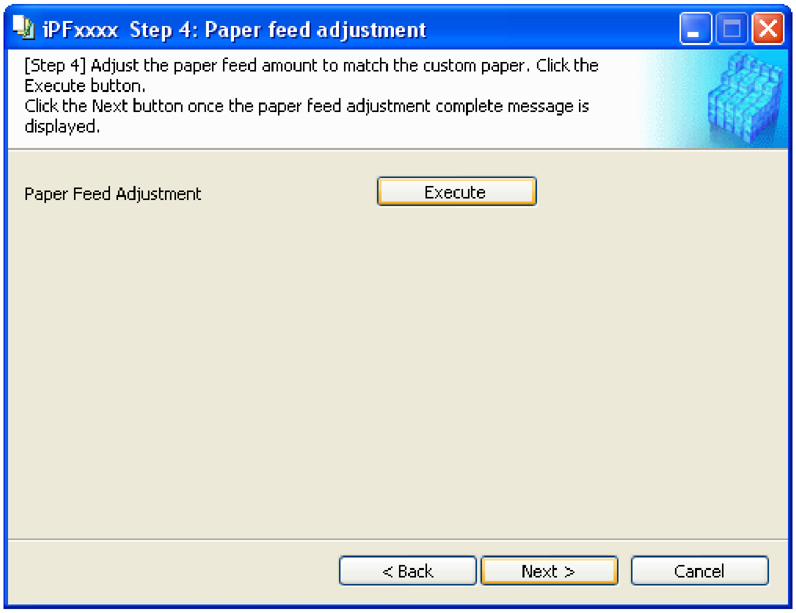
7. The **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box is displayed. Select the paper source where the custom paper is loaded and then click the **OK** button.



[Step 3] Select the paper source for the loaded paper.

Paper Source: Roll Paper 1

8. The **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box is displayed. Click the **Execute** button to execute paper feed adjustment.
The adjustment pattern is printed, and the paper feed is automatically adjusted based on the printing result.
Once the paper feed adjustment is complete, click the **Next** button.



[Step 4] Adjust the paper feed amount to match the custom paper. Click the Execute button.
Click the Next button once the paper feed adjustment complete message is displayed.

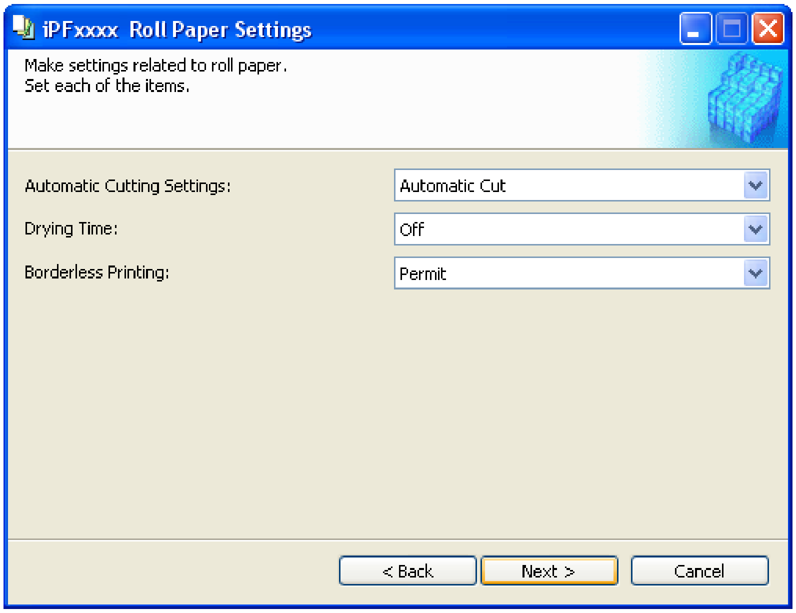
Important

- Check that there is no paper left on the ejection guide.
- If **Paper Feed Adjustment** is not executed, horizontal stripes with different color tones may appear in the printed material. Paper feed adjustment does not need to be executed more than once. Execute paper feed adjustment only once each time you add a custom paper.

9. The **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box is displayed.

Note

- If a paper source other than **Roll Paper** is selected in the **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box, this screen is not displayed.



Make settings related to roll paper.
Set each of the items.

Automatic Cutting Settings: Automatic Cut

Drying Time: Off

Borderless Printing: Permit

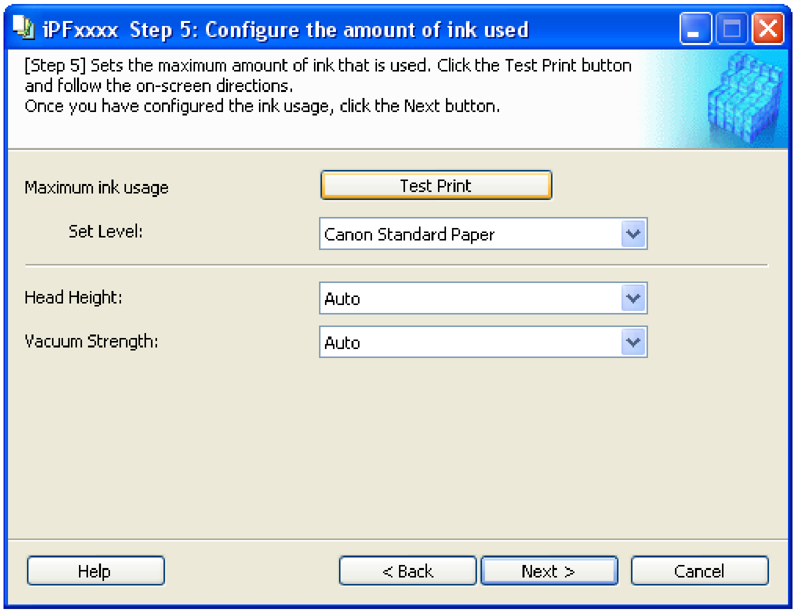
Configure the following settings as necessary, and then click the **Next** button.

Setting	Details
Automatic Cutting Settings	Configures the method for cutting roll paper when it is ejected after printing. • **Automatic Cut** :Roll paper is automatically cut by the cutter unit. • **Eject Cut** :When the **Cut** key is pressed on the printer control panel, the roll paper is cut by the cutter unit. Select this if you do not want the printed material to drop immediately after printing, such as to wait for the ink to dry. • **User Cut** :Cutting is not performed by the cutter unit. Cut the roll paper using scissors after each sheet. Select this for paper that cannot be cut by the cutter unit.
Drying Time	Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. • **Off** :Ejects immediately after printing finishes. • **30 sec./1 min./3 min./5 min./10 min./30 min./60 min.** :Ejects after the specified time has elapsed after printing finishes.
Borderless Printing	Configures whether or not to permit borderless printing. • **Permit** : Borderless printing is permitted. • **Deny** : Borderless printing is denied.

Important

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings**.
- If borderless printing is performed on paper where the ink drying is poor, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time**. Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.
- Paper where borderless printing can be performed is limited by the media type and roll paper width. Refer to "Compatible Paper →P.468 ".
- For custom paper where there is a need to set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut**, set the **Borderless Printing** to **Deny**.

10. The **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box is displayed.
The upper limit on the amount of ink used to print to the custom paper is set on this screen by selecting from among several levels.
First, click the **Test Print** button to perform a test print of each level.



iPFxxxx Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used

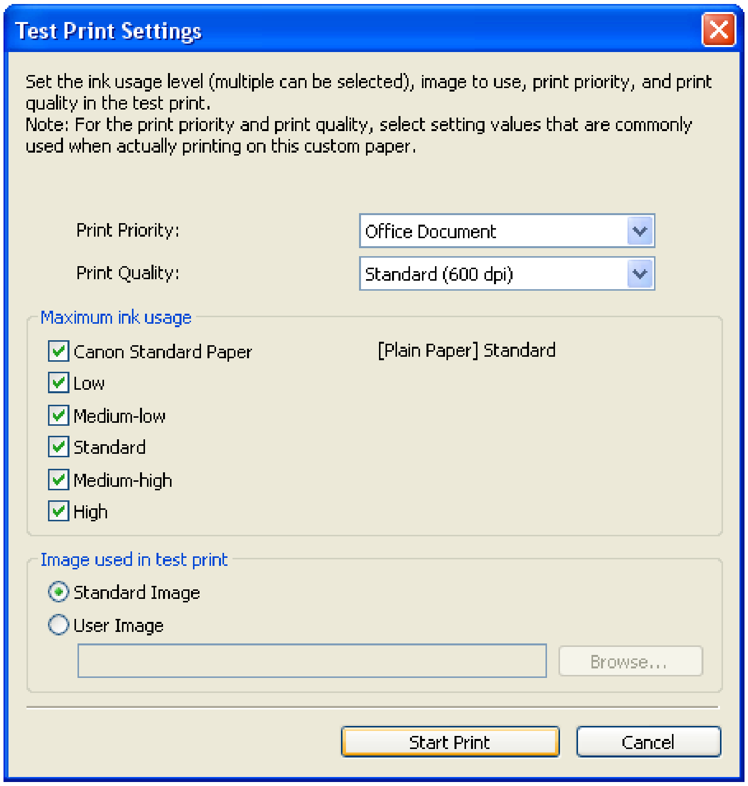
[Step 5] Sets the maximum amount of ink that is used. Click the Test Print button and follow the on-screen directions.
Once you have configured the ink usage, click the Next button.

Maximum ink usage
Set Level: Canon Standard Paper
Head Height: Auto
Vacuum Strength: Auto

Important

- If **Newsprint for Proofing** was selected as the standard paper for the custom paper, you cannot perform the test print or configure the maximum ink usage.

11. The **Test Print Settings** dialog box is displayed.
Select the print priority and print quality of the test print using **Print Priority** and **Print Quality**.
Set the level to test print using **Maximum ink usage** and the image to use using **Image used in test print**, and then click the **Start Print** button.



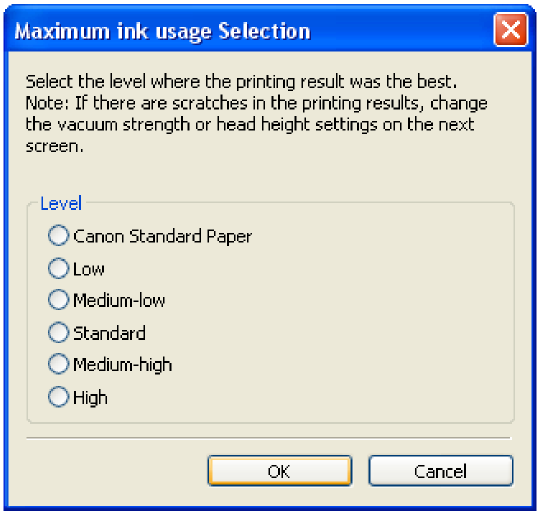
Set the ink usage level (multiple can be selected), image to use, print priority, and print quality in the test print.
Note: For the print priority and print quality, select setting values that are commonly used when actually printing on this custom paper.

Print Priority: Office Document
Print Quality: Standard (600 dpi)

Maximum ink usage
- ☑ Canon Standard Paper [Plain Paper] Standard
- ☑ Low
- ☑ Medium-low
- ☑ Standard
- ☑ Medium-high
- ☑ High

Image used in test print
- ● Standard Image
- ○ User Image

12. Determine and set the ink level that is thought to give the best visual test print results with no bleeding or scraping of ink.



Select the level where the printing result was the best.
Note: If there are scratches in the printing results, change the vacuum strength or head height settings on the next screen.

Level
- ○ Canon Standard Paper
- ○ Low
- ○ Medium-low
- ○ Standard
- ○ Medium-high
- ○ High

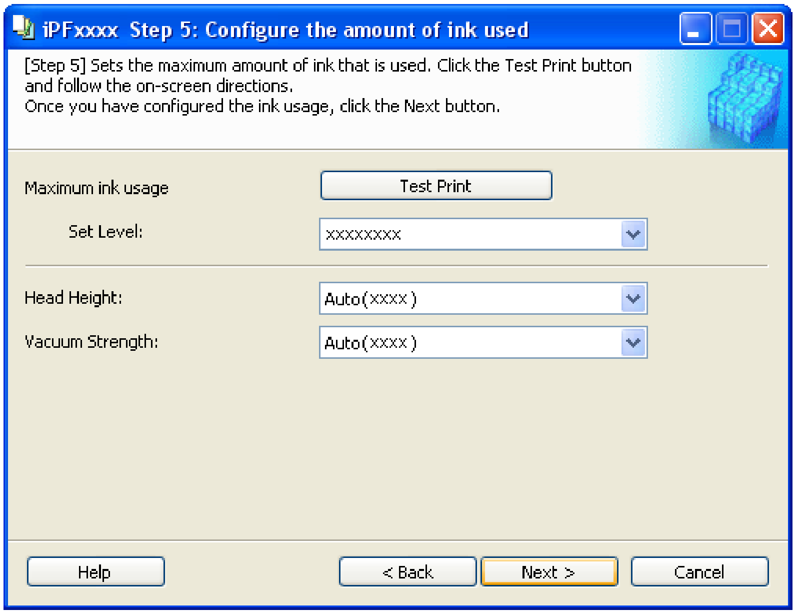
Note

- Select the optimal ink level by referring to the help.
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high quality printing no matter which maximum ink usage level you select, use the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box to change the paper that is the basis of the custom paper to another paper.

Important

- Because this settings imposes an upper limit on the amount of ink used during printing, the printing result might not change even if the level is changed depending on the image.
- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. Although the color tone may change when the maximum ink usage is changed, at this point you should select the optimal level by only focusing on bleeding and scraping of ink. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software.
- Depending on the maximum ink usage setting, some of the print qualities in the printer driver may become unselectable.

13. Configure **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength** as required and click the **Next** button.
Usually, these do not need to be set.



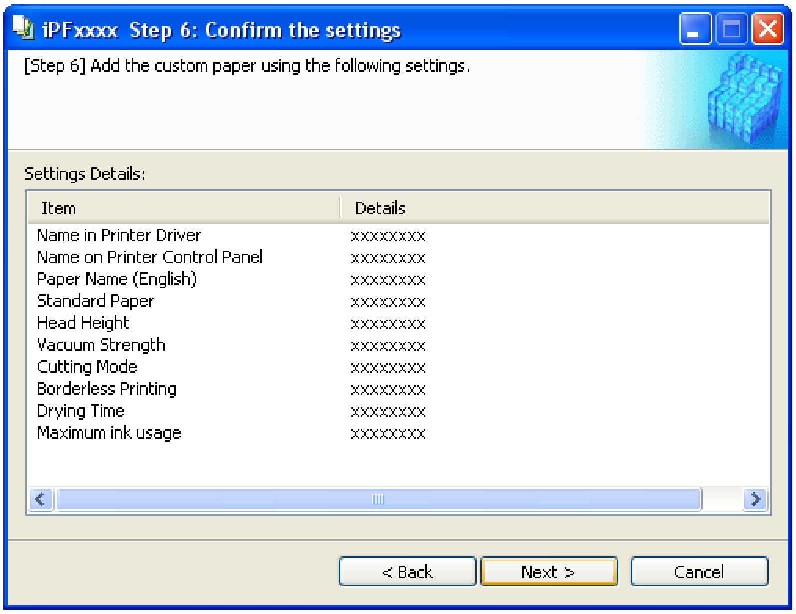
[Step 5] Sets the maximum amount of ink that is used. Click the Test Print button and follow the on-screen directions.
Once you have configured the ink usage, click the Next button.

Maximum ink usage
Set Level: xxxxxxxx
Head Height: Auto(xxxx)
Vacuum Strength: Auto(xxxx)

Important

- If you set the **Head Height** lower than the automatically set height in parentheses ( ), check that the printhead does not rub against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- If you change the **Vacuum Strength**, check that the printhead is not rubbing against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- For details on the **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength**, refer to the help.

14. The **Step 6: Confirm the settings** dialog box is displayed.
Configure the settings of the custom paper, and then click the **Next** button.

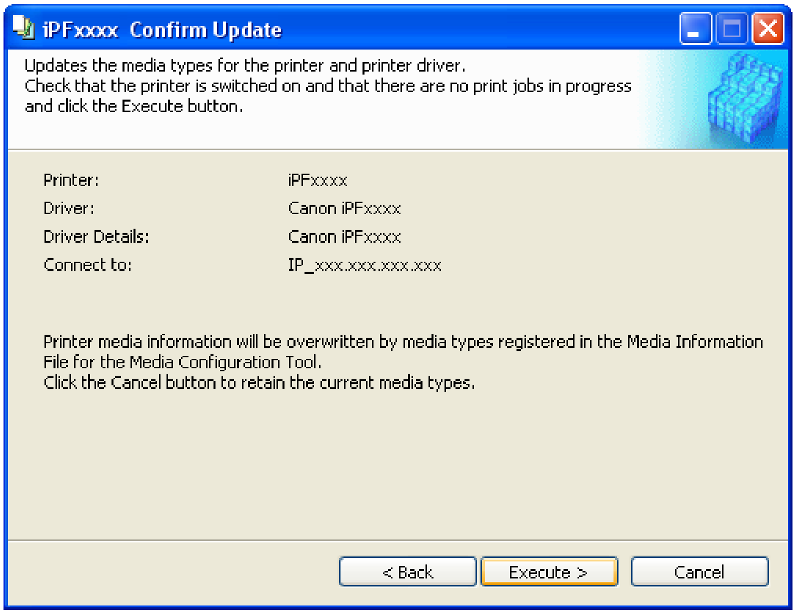


[Step 6] Add the custom paper using the following settings.

Settings Details:

Item	Details
Name in Printer Driver	xxxxxxxx
Name on Printer Control Panel	xxxxxxxx
Paper Name (English)	xxxxxxxx
Standard Paper	xxxxxxxx
Head Height	xxxxxxxx
Vacuum Strength	xxxxxxxx
Cutting Mode	xxxxxxxx
Borderless Printing	xxxxxxxx
Drying Time	xxxxxxxx
Maximum ink usage	xxxxxxxx

15. The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver.
Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: iPFxxxx
Driver: Canon iPFxxxx
Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Important

- If you have added custom paper with the **POP Board / Cardboard** category as the Standard Paper, remove the loaded custom paper from the printer.

Note

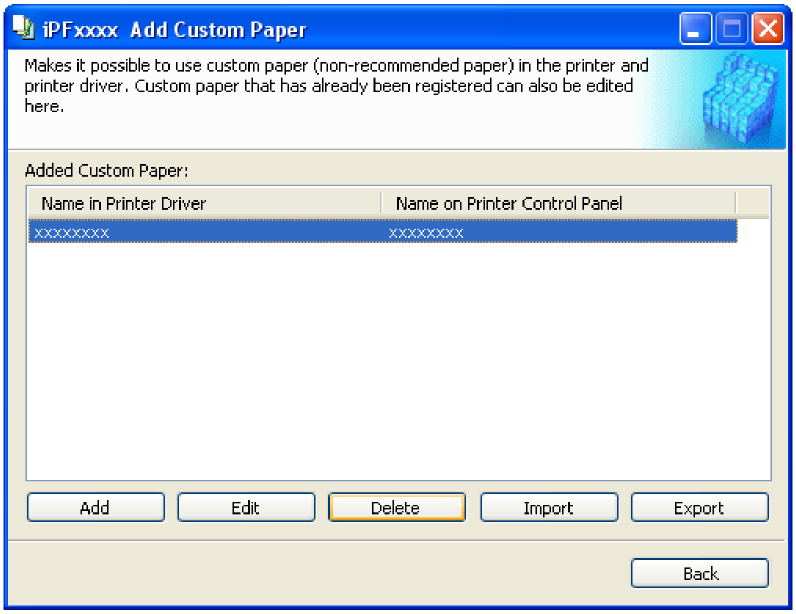
- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

Delete Custom Paper

You can delete custom paper that you have already added from printer control panel and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to delete from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Delete** button.

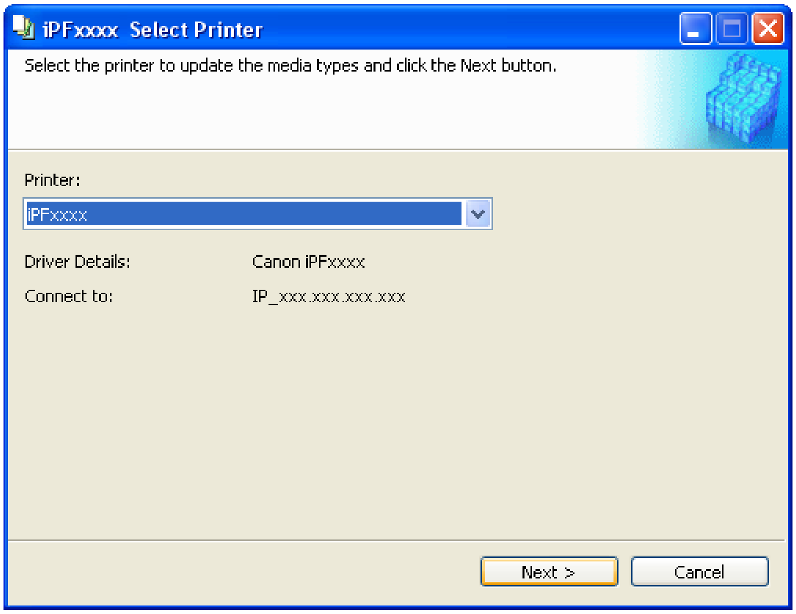


Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx

3. Select the custom paper you want to delete, and then click the **Next** button.



iPFxxxx Select Printer

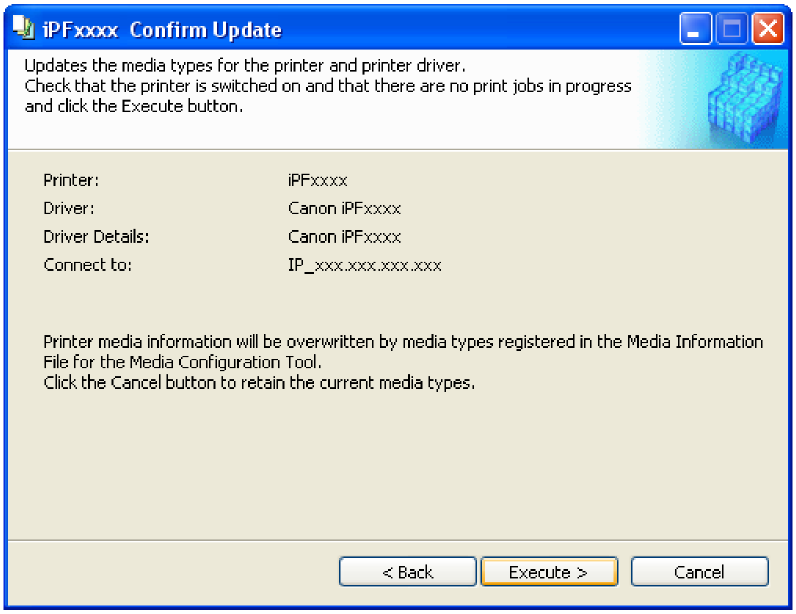
Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: iPFxxxx

Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

4. The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.



iPFxxxx Confirm Update

Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver.
Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: iPFxxxx

Driver: Canon iPFxxxx

Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

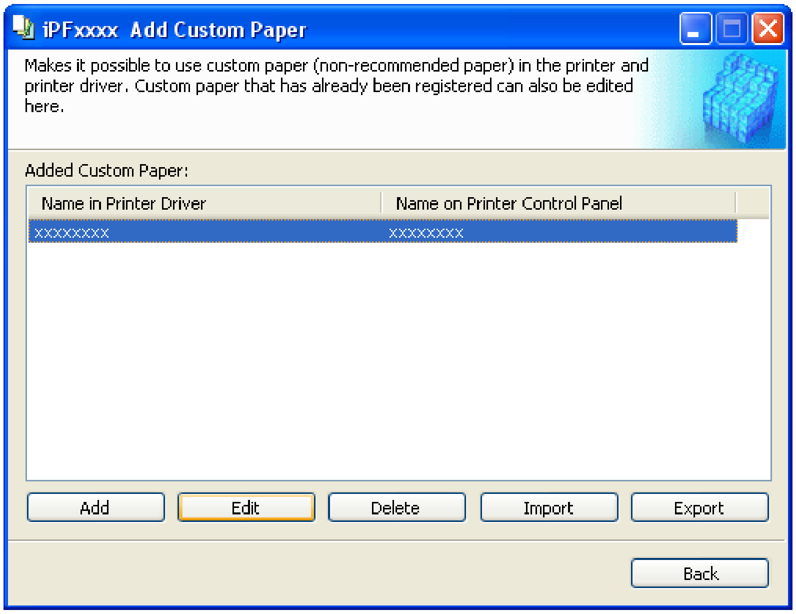
The custom paper is deleted from the control panel of the printer and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Edit Custom Paper

You can change the settings of custom paper you have already added.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to edit from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Edit** button.



iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx

3. The **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box is displayed.
Follow the on-screen directions and change the settings as required.

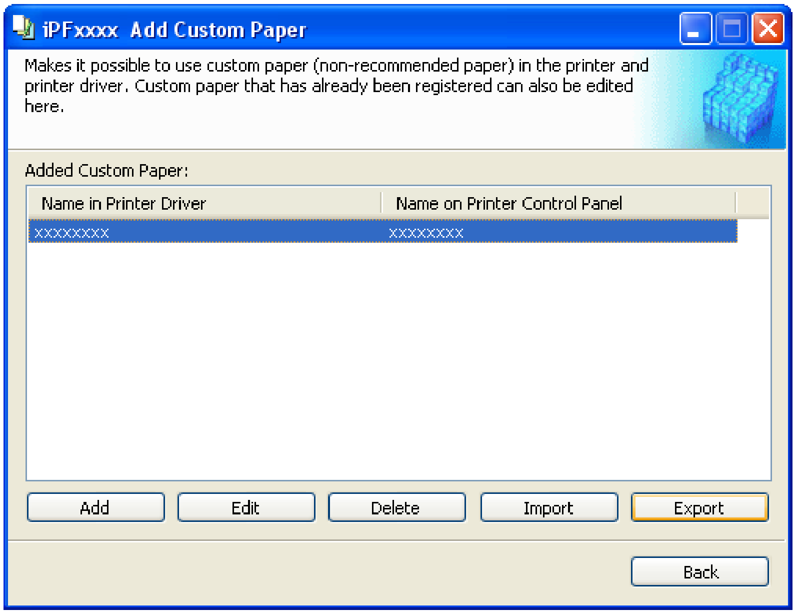
> Note
>
> - Refer to Steps 5 to 15 of the "Add Custom Paper →P.469 " for details on how to configure each setting.

Export Custom Media Information

You can export to file and save media information about custom paper that you have added.
The saved Custom Media Information File can be used by importing it into another printer or PC. Refer to "Import Custom Media Information →P.481 " for details on "importing custom media information".

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to export to media information file from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Export** button.

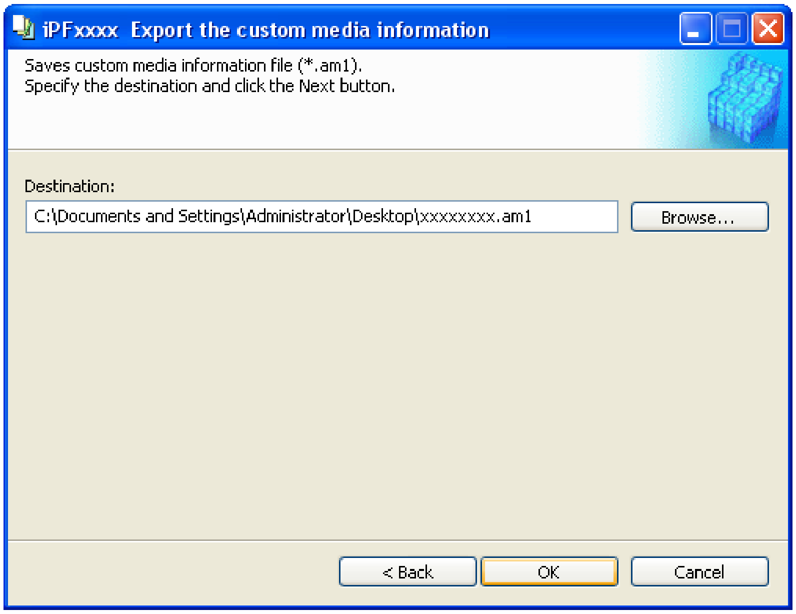


Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx

3. Specify the location to save the Custom Media Information File.



Saves custom media information file (*.am1).
Specify the destination and click the Next button.

Destination: C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Desktop\xxxxxxxx.am1

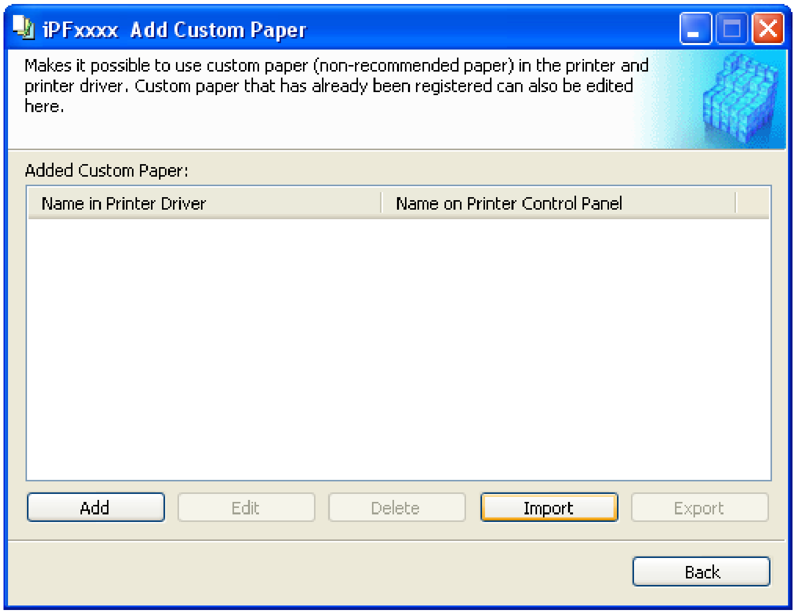
A Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) is saved.

Import Custom Media Information

You can import a Custom Media Information File that has been saved in a folder, and add the file to the printer control panel and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Click the **Import** button.

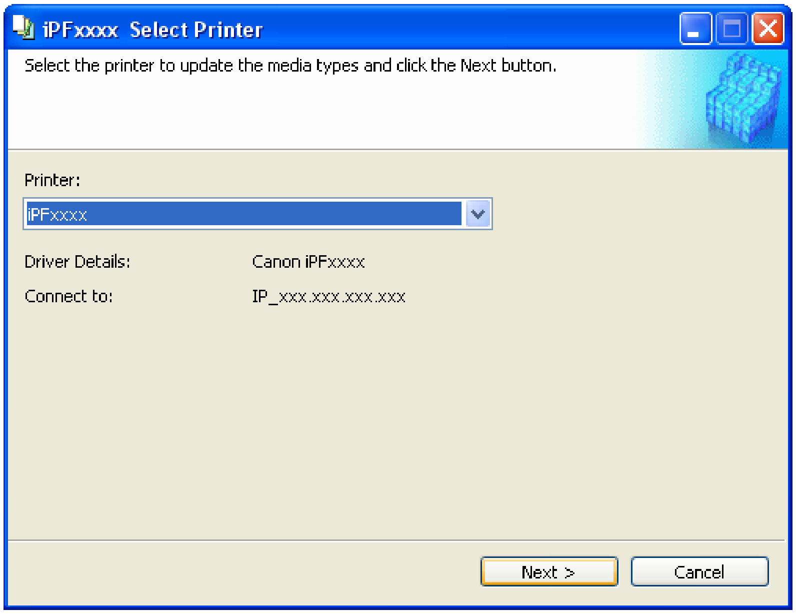


Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

3. Select the printer to add the custom paper to.



Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: iPFxxxx

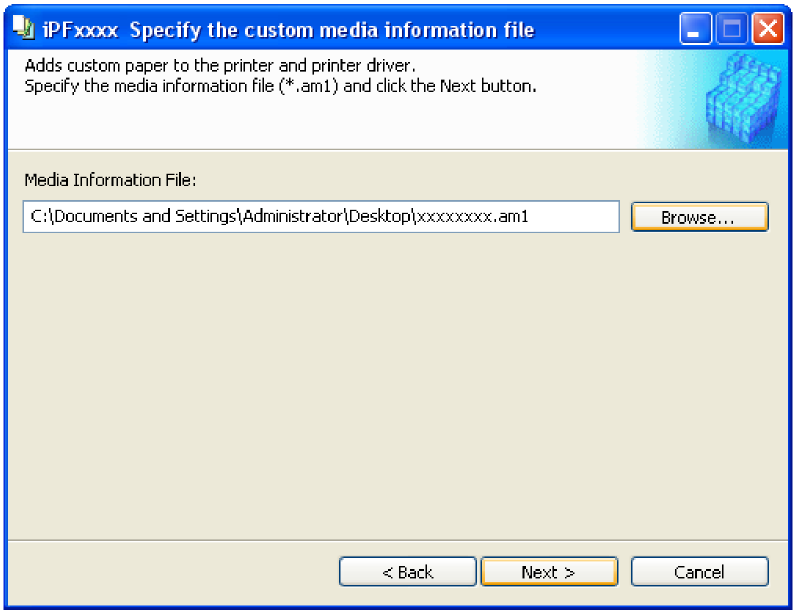
Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Note

- Double-click Custom Media Information File to start the Media Configuration Tool and display this screen.

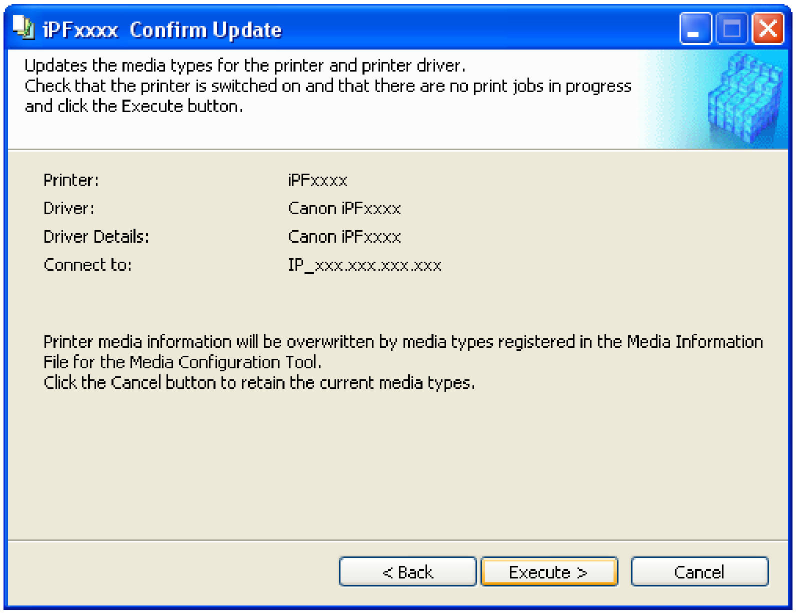
4. Select the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) to import.



Adds custom paper to the printer and printer driver.
Specify the media information file (*.am1) and click the Next button.

Media Information File: C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\Desktop\xxxxxxxx.am1

5. The **Confirm Update** dialog box opens.
Click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver.
Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: iPFxxxx
Driver: Canon iPFxxxx
Driver Details: Canon iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Note

- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

Warnings

Take note of the following warnings when added custom paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer driver and the printer itself.

About the Cutter

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.

Note

- If the cutter is damaged, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- Refer to "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls" for details on the methods for cutting roll paper. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

About the Printhead

- If the printhead rubs against the paper during printing, this may cause damage to the printhead. If the printhead is rubbing against the paper, configure the **Vacuum Strength** in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box as follows.
  - For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper: Set to **Strong** or **Strongest**
  - For film-based media such as CAD Tracing Paper: Set to **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**
  - For thin paper of thickness 0.1mm or less: Set to **Weakest**

Note

- If the printhead still rubs even after changing the **Vacuum Strength**, set the **Head Height** to be higher in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- Refer to "Paper rubs against the Printhead" for details on how to handle the printhead rubbing against the paper. (See "Paper rubs against the printhead.") →P.1072

About Borderless Printing

- When performing borderless printing on paper where the ink does not dry well, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.
  Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box, and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.

About the Print Quality

- If the edges of images are blurry, set the **Vacuum Strength** to be weaker in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- If lines are warped or scratched, set the **Head Height** to be lower in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- If the amount of ink used is too much, wrinkles may appear and the ink may bleed in the printed material. Furthermore, if the amount of ink used is too little, color production may be poor and lines may become scratched. In this kind of situation, change the amount of ink used in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.

- If horizontal bands with different color tone appear in the printed material, execute **Paper Feed Adjustment** in the **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box. If you have already executed **Paper Feed Adjustment**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** from the printer control panel and fine tune the amount of paper feed.

> Note
>
> - Refer to "Fine tuning the amount of paper feed (paper feed fine adjustment)" for details on **Adj. Fine Feed**. (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).") →P.861
> - If horizontal bands appear even after executing **Adj. Fine Feed**, refer to "Banding in different colors occurs" in "Troubleshooting". (See "Banding in different colors occurs.") →P.1075

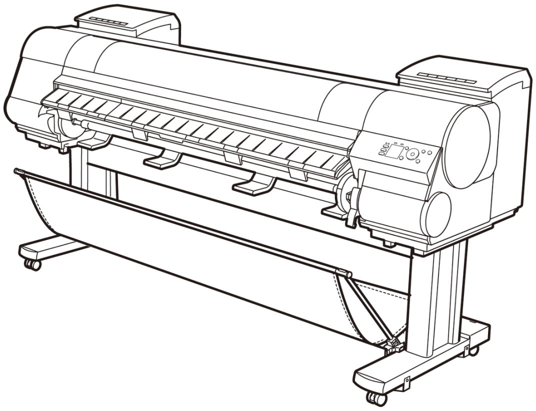
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high print quality, change the maximum ink usage, or change the media type used as the basis for the custom paper in the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box.
- If there is no luster in printed material, set the paper used as the basis for the custom paper to a paper that uses photo ink as the Black ink.
  The types of Black ink used are displayed on the right side of each media type in the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box.

> Note
>
> - Refer to "Problems with the printing quality" for details on problems with printing quality. (Refer to " Problems with the printing quality →P.1071 ")

About the Color Tone

- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software.
- Custom paper cannot be used with the ambient light adjustment function or Monitor Matching in Color-Matching Method.

Mac OS X Software

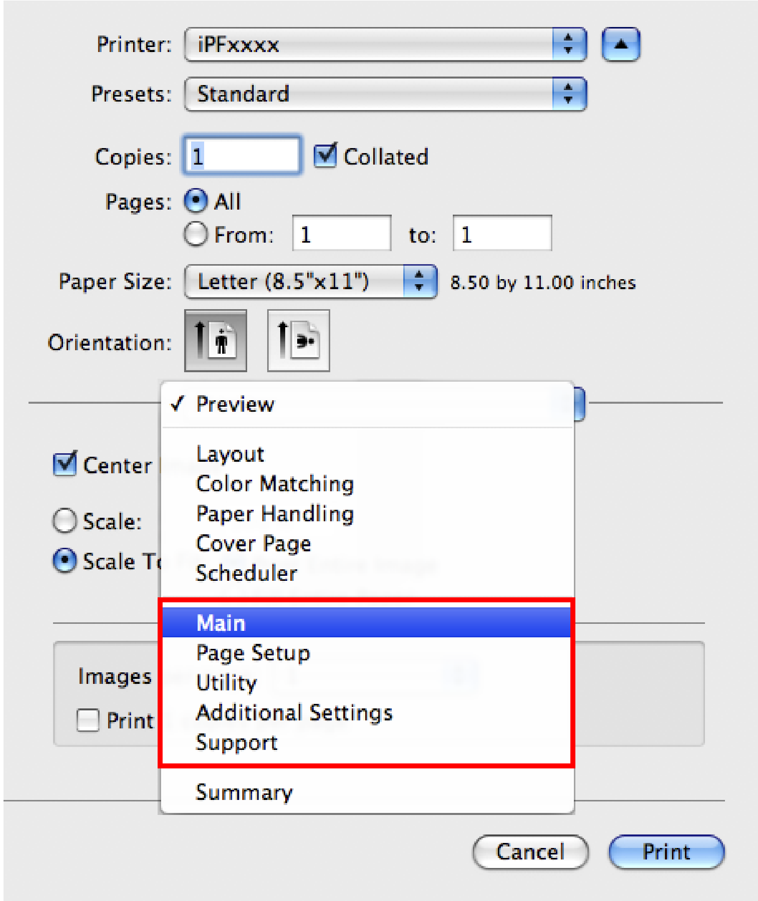


Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications →P.494



Printer: iPFxxxx

Presets: Standard

Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

Pages: ● All

○ From: 1 to: 1

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane →P.495
  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.
  - Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.500
  - View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.503
  - Color Settings Pane: Color →P.509
  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.510
  - Matching pane →P.503
  - Ambient Light Adjust dialog box →P.506
  - Light Source Check Tool →P.508
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome →P.511
  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.512
  - Gray Adjustment Pane →P.513
- Page Setup Pane →P.514
  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane →P.516
  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

- Additional Settings Pane →P.517
  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane →P.518
  You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see Free Layout →P.550 .
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see Preview →P.519 .
With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.584 .

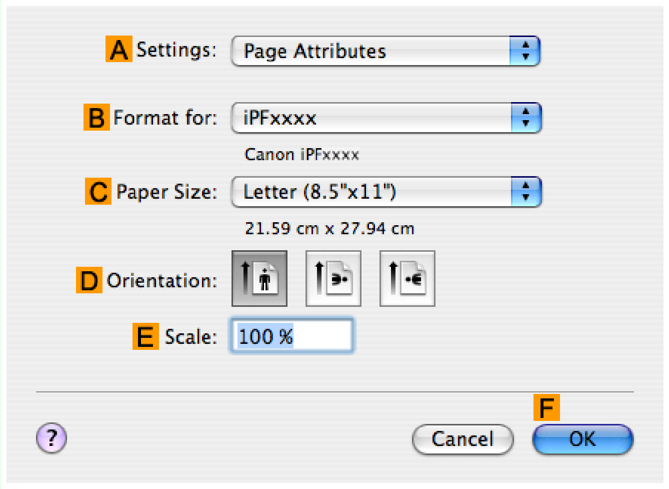
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

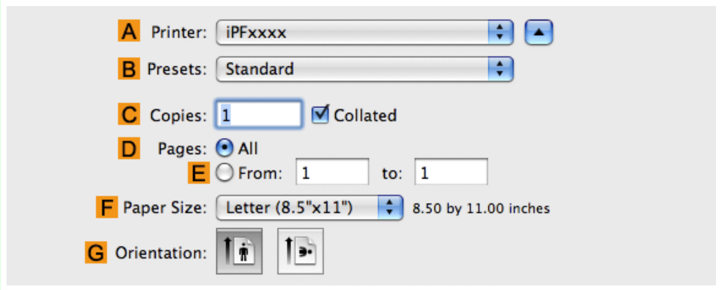
Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
  If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



A Settings: Page Attributes
B Format for: iPFxxxx
Canon iPFxxxx
C Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11")
21.59 cm x 27.94 cm
D Orientation:
E Scale: 100 %

If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



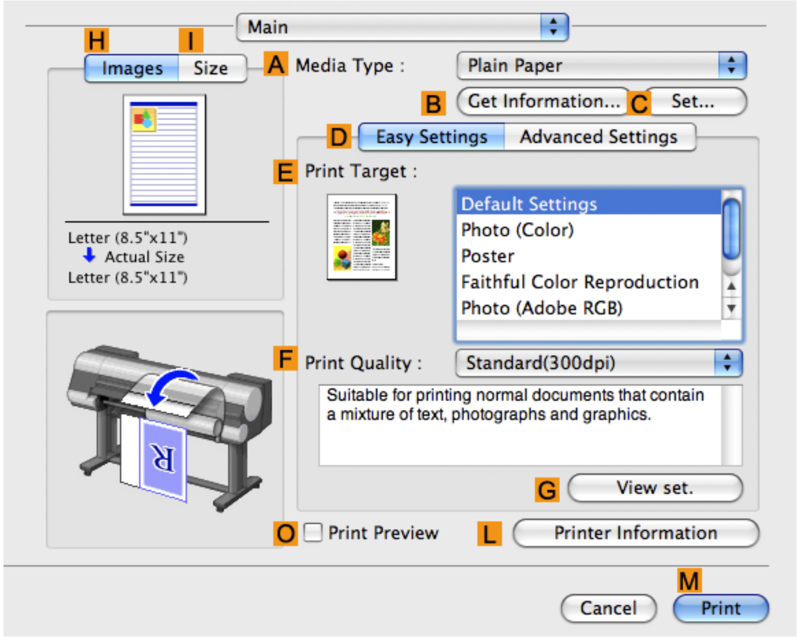
A Printer: iPFxxxx
B Presets: Standard
C Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
D Pages: ● All
E ○ From: 1 to: 1
F Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
G Orientation:

2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. Choose the original size in the **F** **Paper Size** list.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F** **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

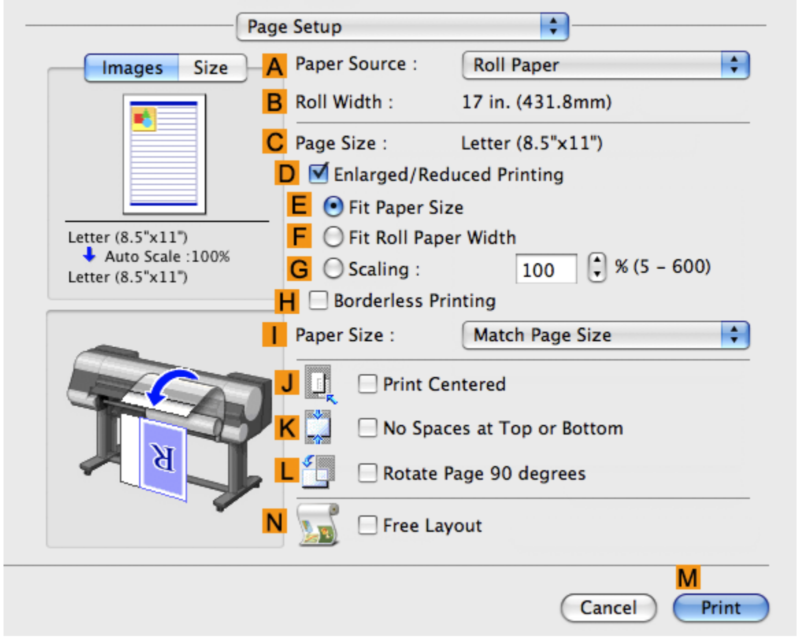
5. Access the **Main** pane.



Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

6. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

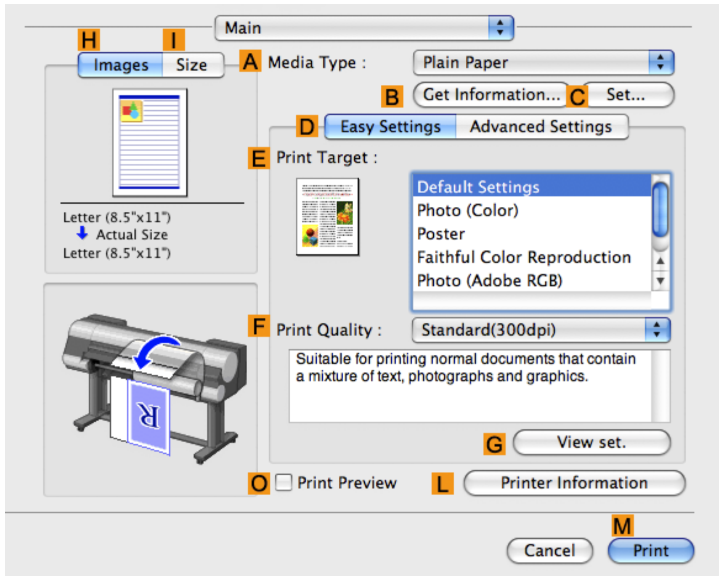

Page Setup
Images
Size
A Paper Source : Roll Paper
B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)
C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")
D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
E ● Fit Paper Size
F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width
G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 - 600)
H ☐ Borderless Printing
I Paper Size : Match Page Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
Auto Scale :100%
Letter (8.5"x11")
J ☐ Print Centered
K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees
N ☐ Free Layout
M
Cancel
Print

8. In the A **Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

9. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** in A **Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in C **Page Size**. If you have selected roll paper in A **Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Note

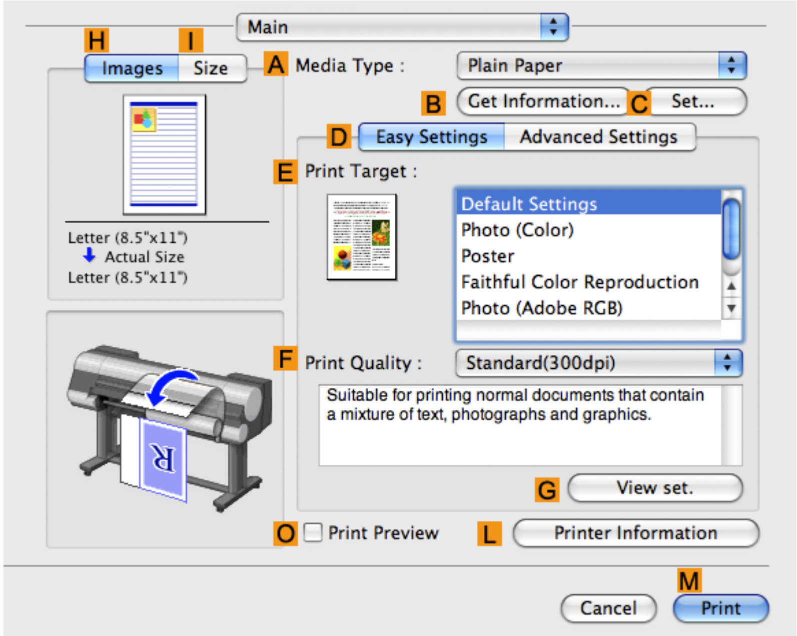
- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings →P.487 "

Confirming Print Settings

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings

  A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes.By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, and so on.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the **H** **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the **I** **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the paper source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

> Note
>
> - To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G** **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.

- Checking a print preview

  You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

  Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.

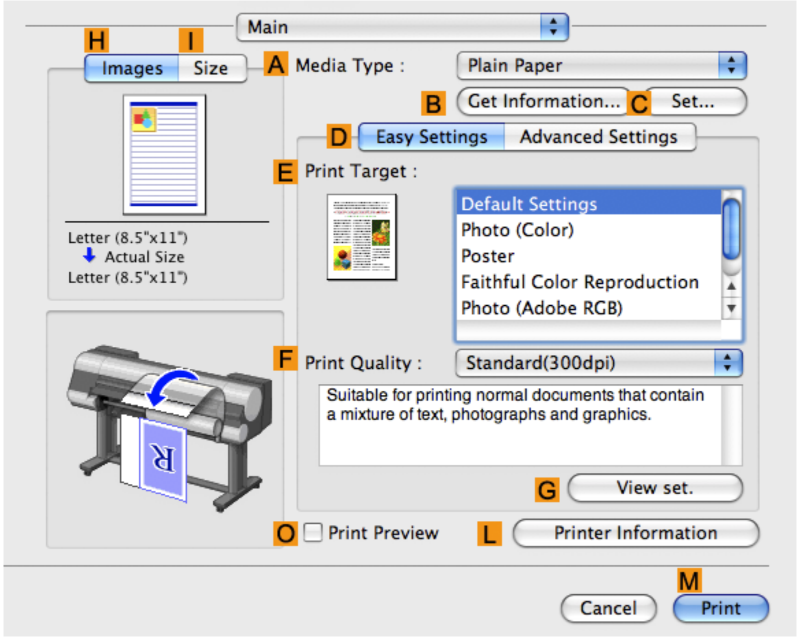
  For details on print previews, see "Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.184 "

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Access the **Main** pane.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

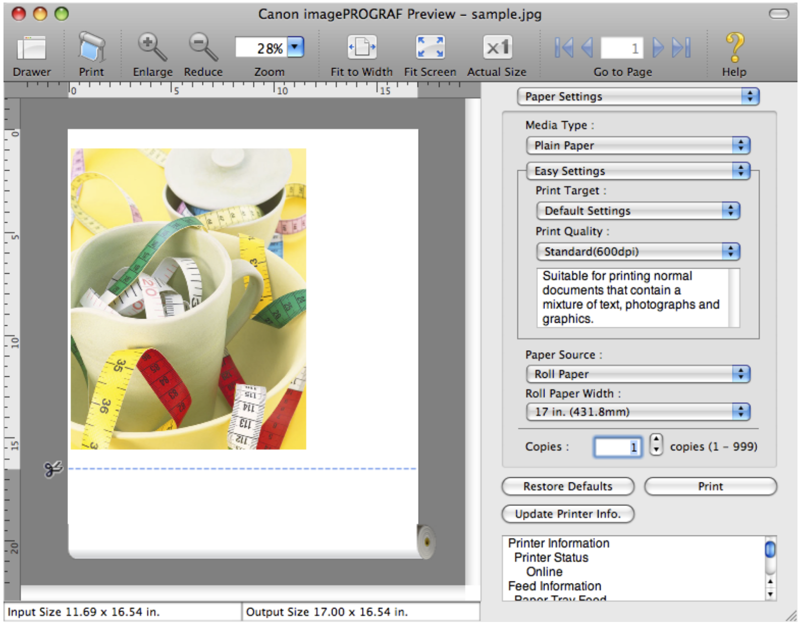
Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

3. Select the O **Print Preview** check box.

4. Click M **Print**.

5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

Input Size 11.69 x 16.54 in.

Output Size 17.00 x 16.54 in.

6. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.

7. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to Preview →P.519 .

Using Favorites

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

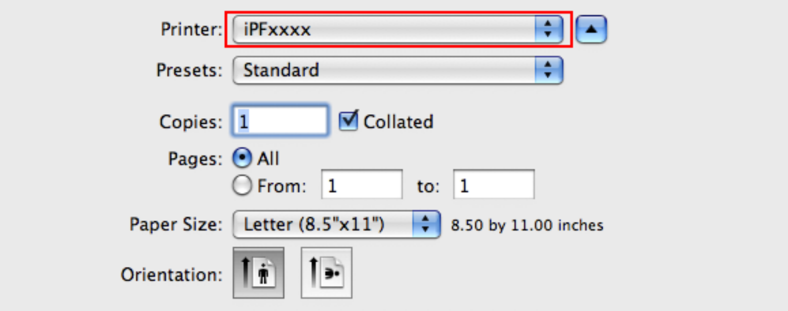
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

Note

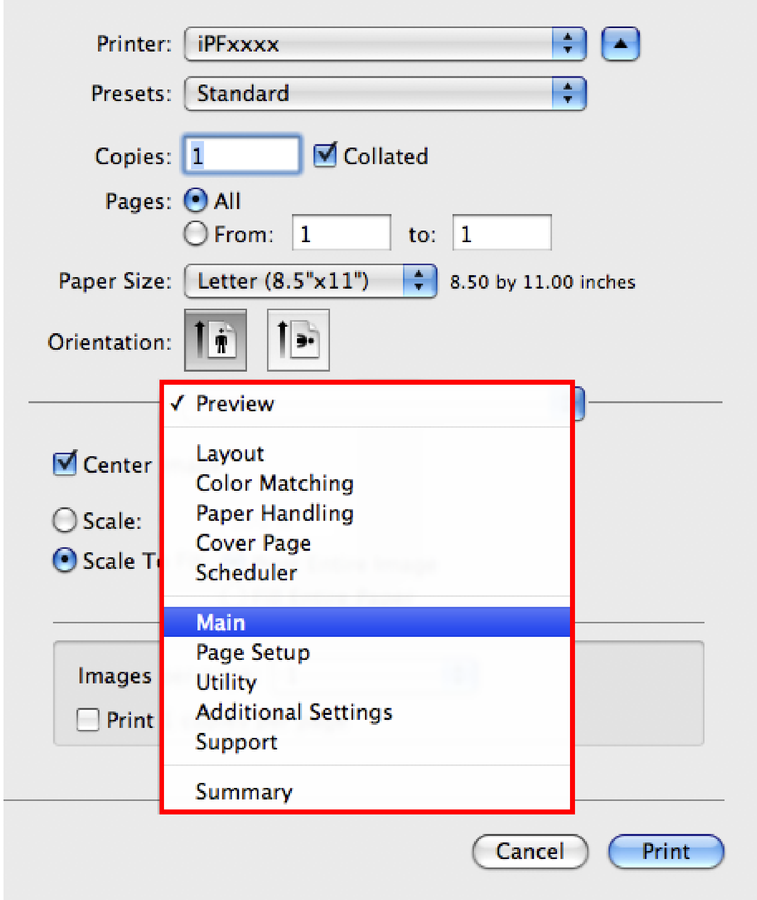
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



Printer: iPFxxxx
Presets: Standard
Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
Pages: ● All
○ From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:

3. Click **Print** to start printing.
As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Printer: iPFxxxx
Presets: Standard
Copies: 1 ☑ Collated
Pages: ● All
○ From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches
Orientation:

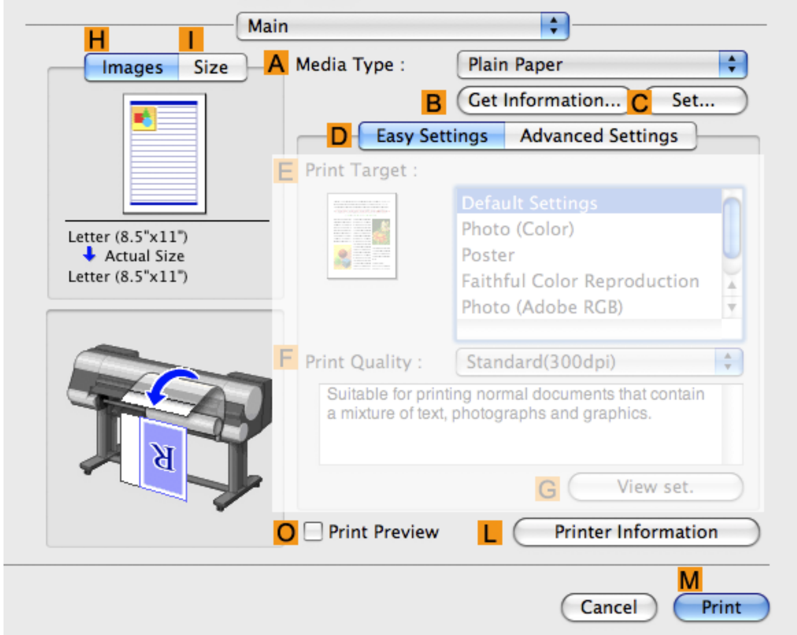
Main Pane

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



- **A Media Type**

Select the paper type.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See " Paper Reference Guide ".)

- **B Get Information**

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

  - Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box →P.499

- **C Set**

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

  - Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.500

- **O Print Preview**

If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.

This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

Important

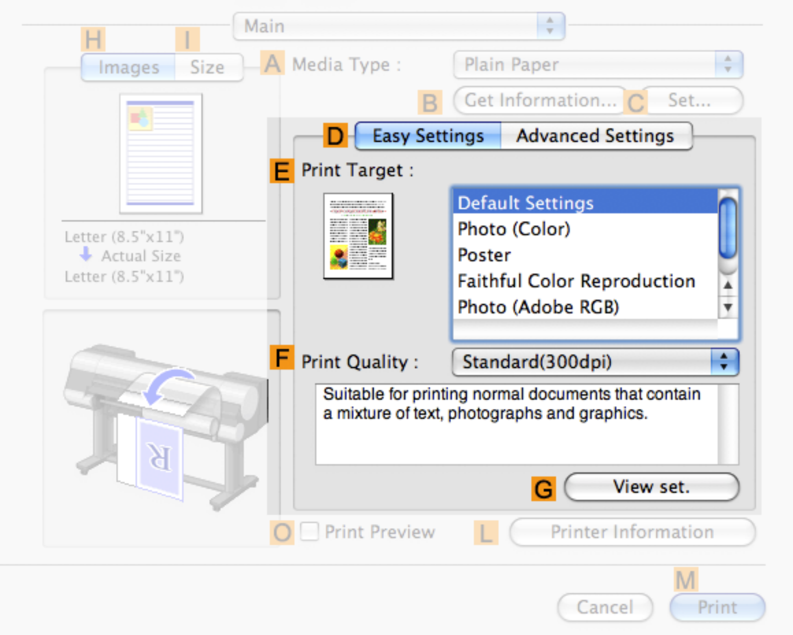
- When **Free Layout** is selected on the **Page Setup** panel, **Free Layout** is disabled.

  - Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.184

- **L Printer Information**

Display the **Printer Information** dialog box. You can display information of the printer such as the remaining ink.

Configuration using **Easy Settings**


Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target :

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

- **E Print Target**

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

  - Printing Photos and Images →P.22
  - Printing Office Documents →P.38
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text →P.47

- **F Print Quality**

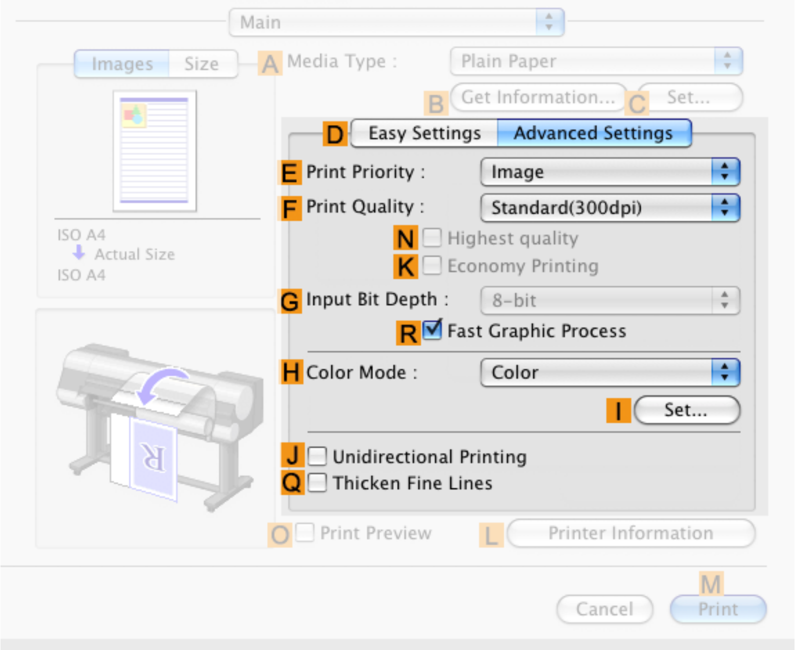
Choose the level of print quality.

- **G View set.**

Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the E **Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in E **Print Target**.

  - View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.503

Configuration using **Advanced Settings**



- **E Print Priority**

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

- **F Print Quality**

Choose the level of print quality.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

- **N Highest quality**

If you select this option, the document will be printed with enhanced quality at the highest resolution. Compared to the other options, more time and ink are consumed in printing, however you will attain print results with the highest quality.

> Note
>
> - If you set F **Print Quality** to **High**, you can select N **Highest quality**. However, depending on A **Media Type**, you may not be able to select N **Highest quality**.

- **K Economy Printing**

When this mode is selected, you can print with less ink consumed. However, print quality is lower than in regular printing. Select this option to save ink, such as when printing to check drawings. Depending on the A **Media Type** and F **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

> Note
>
> - If you set F **Print Quality** to **Fast**, you can select K **Economy Printing**. However, depending on A **Media Type**, you may not be able to select K **Economy Printing**.

- **G Input Bit Depth**

Choose the levels of gradation in print data, either **8-bit** or **16-bit**. Optimal results when printing data with rich gradation are possible by choosing **16-bit**. For example, this option is particularly suited to printing images created after specifying 16 bits per channel in Photoshop.

(Mac OS X 10.4 or later)

- **R Fast Graphic Process**

Select this option to print faster than usual, when possible.

- **H Color Mode**

Choose the color mode.

  - Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.64

- **I Set**

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

  - Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55

- **J Unidirectional Printing**

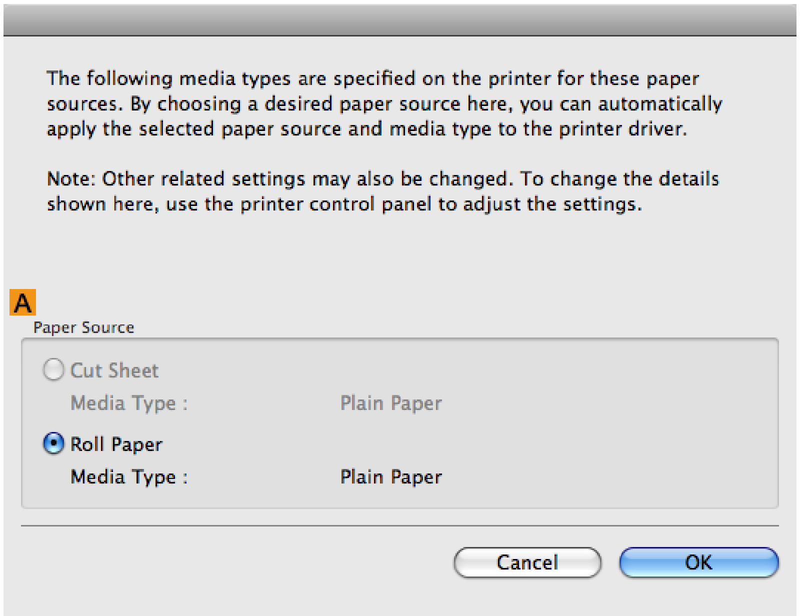
Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **Q Thicken Fine Lines**

Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.



The following media types are specified on the printer for these paper sources. By choosing a desired paper source here, you can automatically apply the selected paper source and media type to the printer driver.

Note: Other related settings may also be changed. To change the details shown here, use the printer control panel to adjust the settings.

Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.(See "Main Pane →P.495 ")

- **A Paper Source**

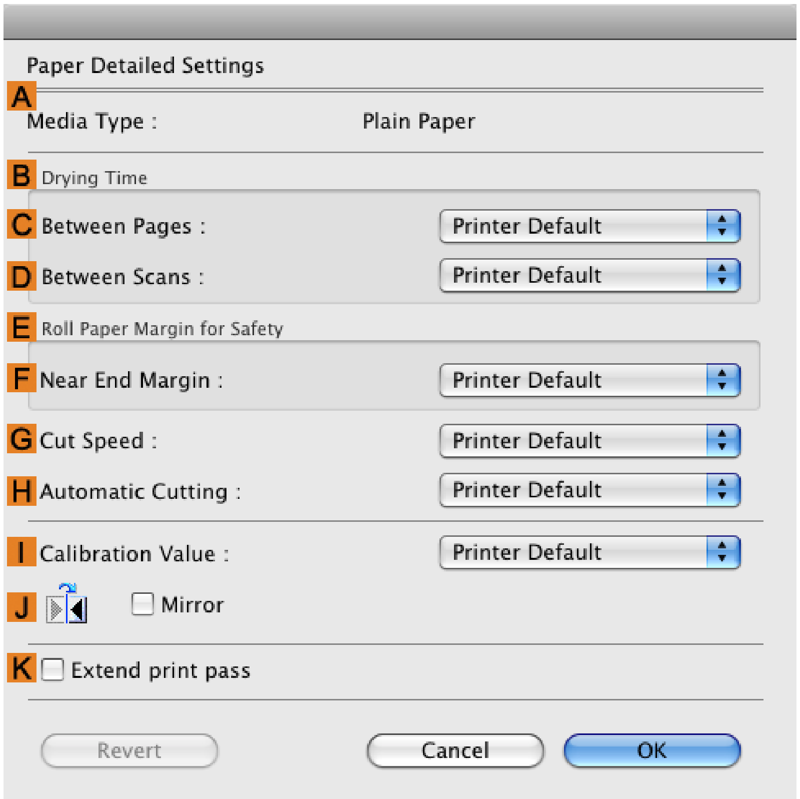
Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, you can set **Drying Time** for the paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** panel, etc.

You can display this dialog box by clicking **Set** of **Media Type** on the **Main** panel. (Refer to "Main Pane →P.495 ".)

You also can select from the control panel of the printer the items for which you can select **Printer Default** in this dialog box. (Refer to "Menu Settings →P.938 ".)



Paper Detailed Settings

A Media Type : Plain Paper

B Drying Time

C Between Pages : Printer Default

D Between Scans : Printer Default

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

F Near End Margin : Printer Default

G Cut Speed : Printer Default

H Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

I Calibration Value : Printer Default

J ☐ Mirror

K ☐ Extend print pass

A Media Type

The paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** panel is displayed.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See " Paper Reference Guide ".)

B Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls.

• C Between Pages

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / **1 min.** / **3 min.** / **5 min.** / **10 min.** / **30 min.** / **60 min.**	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

• D Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
1 sec. / **3 sec.** / **5 sec.** / **7 sec.** / **9 sec.**	The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed. * Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

• F Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
5 mm (0.2 in)	The document is printed in the standard size. * Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

G Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
High Speed	When the **Standard** setting does not result in a clean cut surface, select this.
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

H Automatic Cutting

Set whether to perform roll cutting automatically or print a cut line.
The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	After printing completes, the roll is not cut per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.
Print Cut Guideline	After printing completes, a line is printed per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.

I Calibration Value

You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Enabled	Print using the calibration results.
Disabled	Print without using the calibration results. Select this to avoid the changing of the color of images during printing by color calibration.

J Mirror

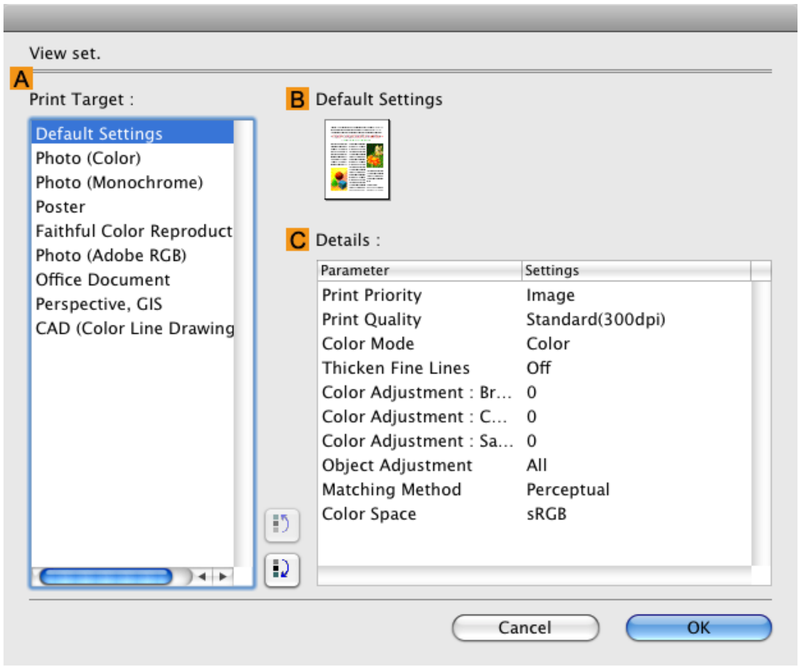
Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

K Extend print pass

If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the **View settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Print Target :

- Default Settings
- Photo (Color)
- Photo (Monochrome)
- Poster
- Faithful Color Reproduct
- Photo (Adobe RGB)
- Office Document
- Perspective, GIS
- CAD (Color Line Drawing

Default Settings

Details :

Parameter	Settings
Print Priority	Image
Print Quality	Standard(300dpi)
Color Mode	Color
Thicken Fine Lines	Off
Color Adjustment : Br...	0
Color Adjustment : C...	0
Color Adjustment : Sa...	0
Object Adjustment	All
Matching Method	Perceptual
Color Space	sRGB

Note

- To display the **View settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View settings** by **Print Target**.(See "Main Pane →P.495 ")

• A Print Target

Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

• B Name

Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

• C Details

Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Important

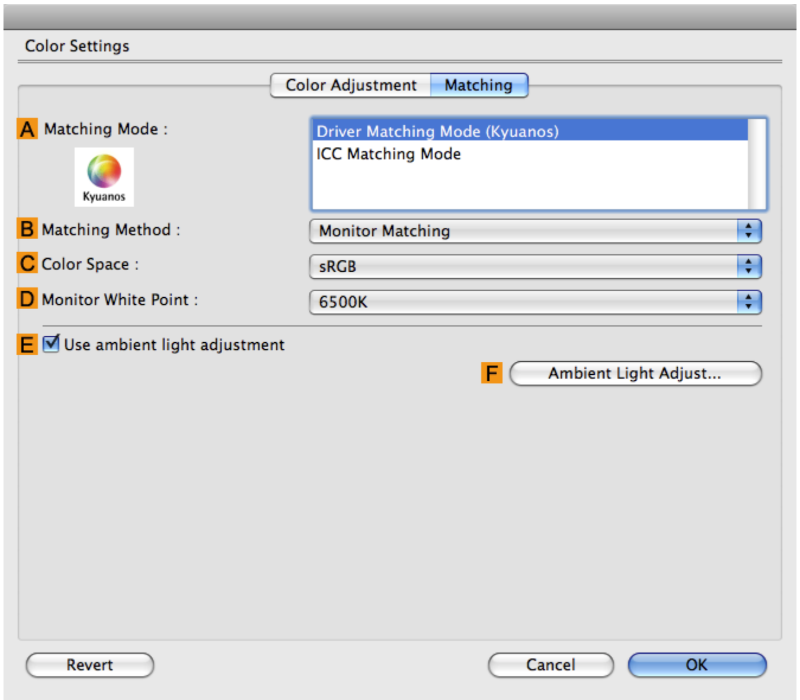
- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** pane is not displayed.

Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** tab. (Refer to "Main Pane →P.495 ")

• Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A** **Matching Mode** list.



Color Settings

A Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos)

ICC Matching Mode

B Matching Method : Monitor Matching

C Color Space : sRGB

D Monitor White Point : 6500K

E ☑ Use ambient light adjustment

• A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** depending on your color matching system.

• B Matching Method

Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **B** **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **A** **Matching Mode**.

• C Color Space

Select the applicable color space as desired.

• D Monitor White Point

Enter the color temperature set on the monitor.

Displayed when the **B** **Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching**.

• E Use ambient light adjustment

Select this option for adjustment of colors to suit the ambient light in the viewing environment.

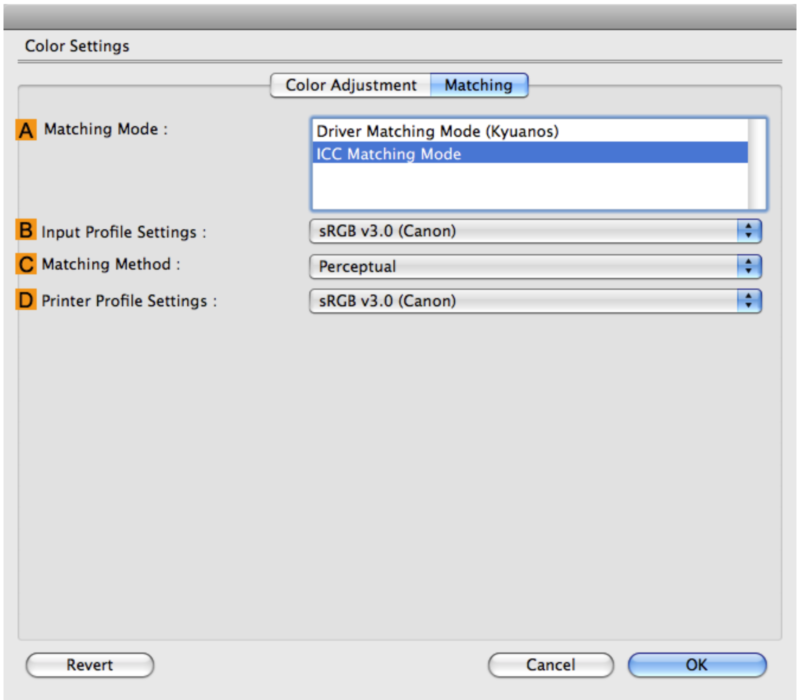
• F Ambient Light Adjust

Click to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing to match the ambient light.

- Ambient Light Adjust dialog box →P.506

ICC Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, in the **A** **Matching Mode** list.



Color Settings

Color Adjustment | Matching

A Matching Mode : ICC Matching Mode (options: Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos), ICC Matching Mode)

B Input Profile Settings : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

C Matching Method : Perceptual

D Printer Profile Settings : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** tab.(See "Main Pane →P.495 ")

- **A** **Matching Mode**

  Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

- **B** **Input Profile Settings**

  You can choose **Input Profile**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **A** **Matching Mode**.

- **C** **Matching Method**

  You can choose **C** **Matching Method**.

  Various options are available depending on your selected **A** **Matching Mode**.

- **D** **Printer Profile Settings**

  Specify the printer profile as desired.

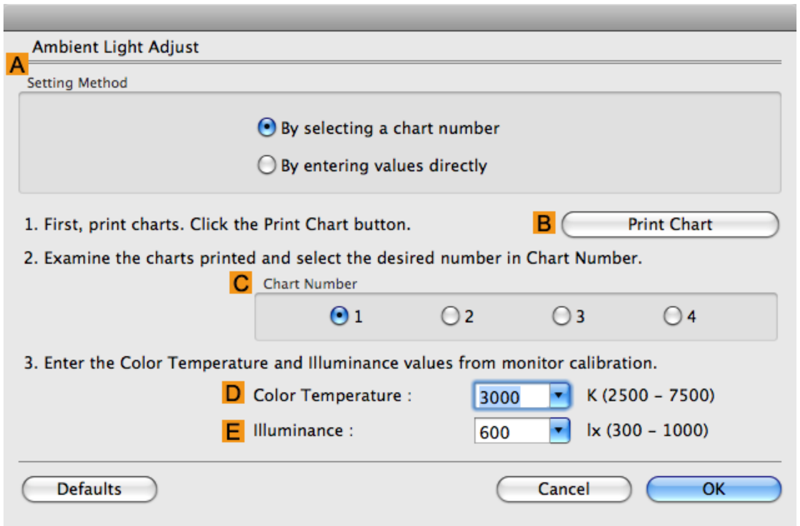
  Note

  - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Ambient Light Adjust dialog box

The **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box is used to select the setting method and to enter and select the information required for the settings.

When you select **By selecting a chart number** in **Setting Method**



● By selecting a chart number
○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button.

2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 – 7500)

Illuminance : 600 lx (300 – 1000)

- **A Setting Method**

  You can choose configuration based on the printed **Chart** or based on using the i1 colorimeter.

- **B Print Chart**

  Click to start the **Light Source Check Tool**, for printing **Chart**.

  - Light Source Check Tool →P.508

- **C Chart Number**

  In **Chart**, select the number of the pattern with your desired colors.

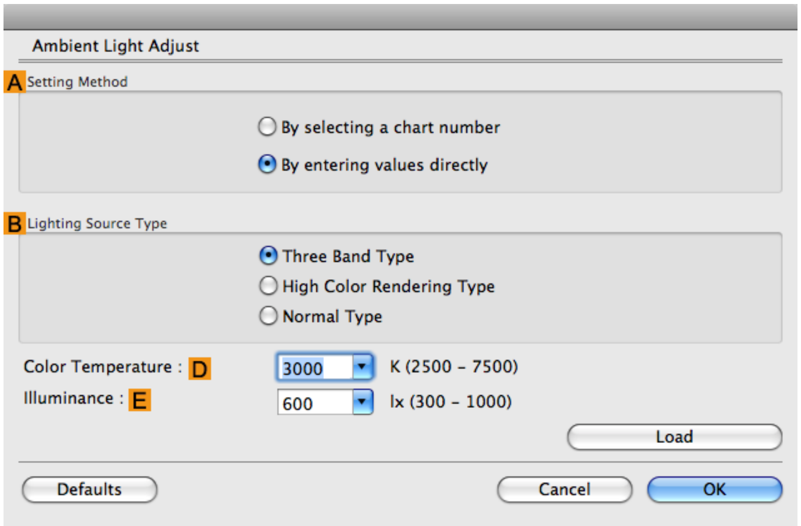
- **D Color Temperature**

  Enter the **D Color Temperature** measured during monitor calibration. Displayed when the **B Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** pane.

- **E Illuminance**

  Enter the **E Illuminance** measured during monitor calibration. Displayed when the **B Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** pane.

When you select **By entering values directly** in **Setting Method**



- **A Setting Method**

  You can choose configuration based on the printed **Chart** or based on using the i1 colorimeter.

- **B Lighting Source Type**

  Select the light source measured using the i1 colorimeter.

- **D Color Temperature**

  Enter the **D Color Temperature** measured using the i1 colorimeter.

- **E Illuminance**

  Enter the **E Illuminance** measured using the i1 colorimeter.

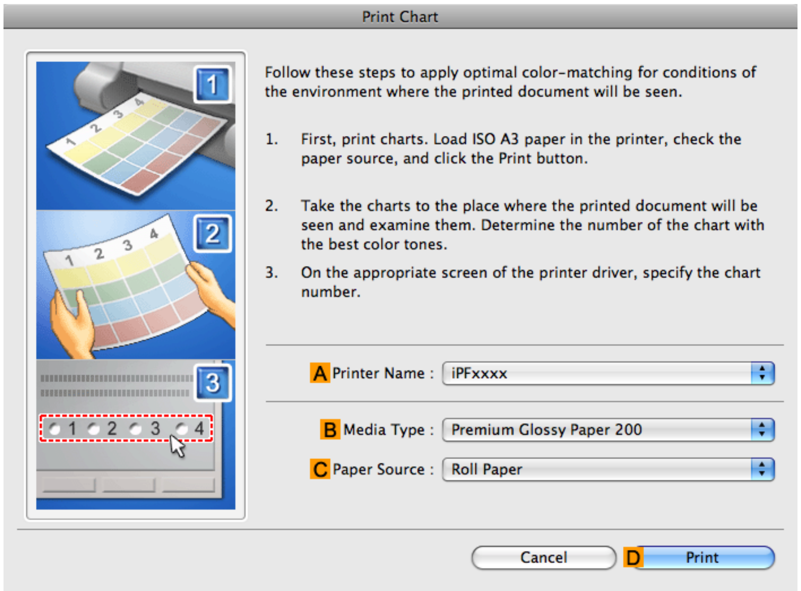
  Displayed when the **B Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** pane.

Note

- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

Light Source Check Tool

The **Light Source Check Tool** enables you to print **Chart**.



Print Chart

Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.

1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the paper source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver, specify the chart number.

A Printer Name : iPFxxxx

B Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

C Paper Source : Roll Paper

- **A Printer Name**

  The printer name is displayed here.

- **B Media Type**

  Select the type of paper. For details on paper types supported by **Driver Matching Mode**, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See " Paper Reference Guide ".)

- **C Paper Source**

  Choose the paper source, as desired.

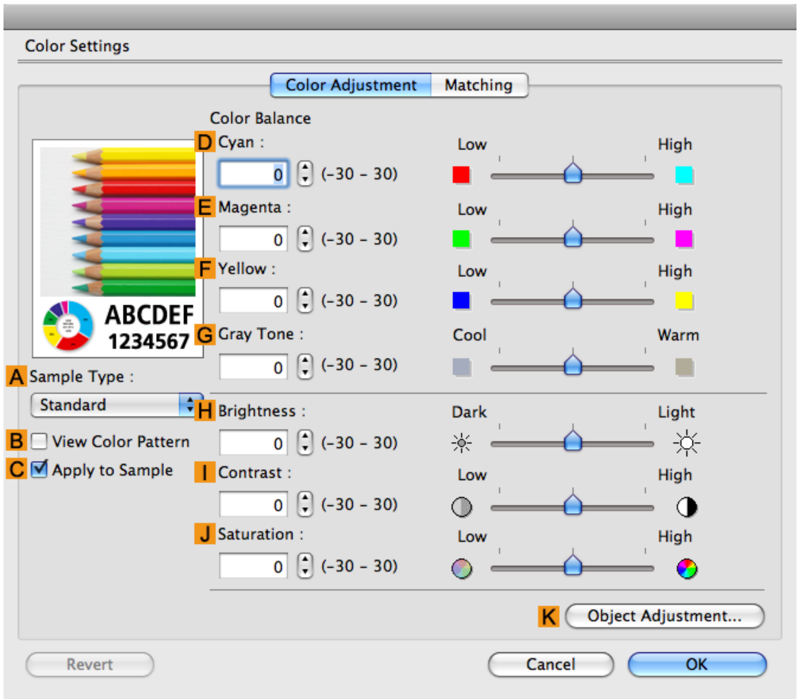
  Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **B Media Type** in the **Main** pane.

- **D Print**

  Click to print the **Chart**.

Color Settings Pane: Color

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.
If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Sample Type : Standard
☐ View Color Pattern
☑ Apply to Sample
Cyan : 0 (-30 - 30)
Magenta : 0 (-30 - 30)
Yellow : 0 (-30 - 30)
Gray Tone : 0 (-30 - 30)
Brightness : 0 (-30 - 30)
Contrast : 0 (-30 - 30)
Saturation : 0 (-30 - 30)

Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.(See "Main Pane →P.495 ")

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow**

  Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool** (tinged with blue) or **Warm** (tinged with red).

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

> Note
>
> - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

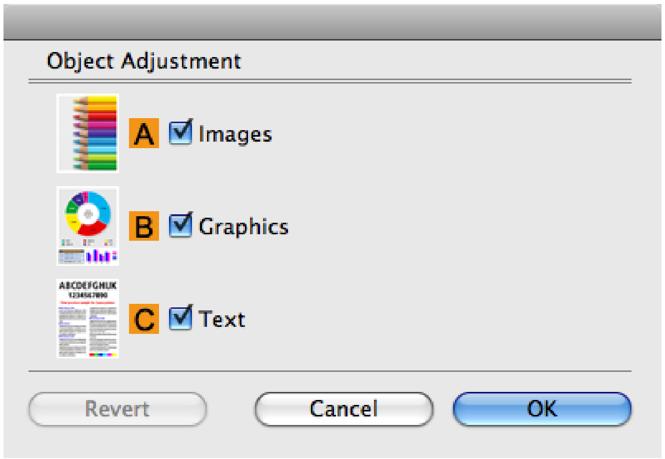
- **K Object Adjustment**

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

  - Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.510

Object Adjustment dialog box: Color

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Object Adjustment

A ☑ Images

B ☑ Graphics

C ☑ Text

> Note
>
> - To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** panel.

- **A Images**

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

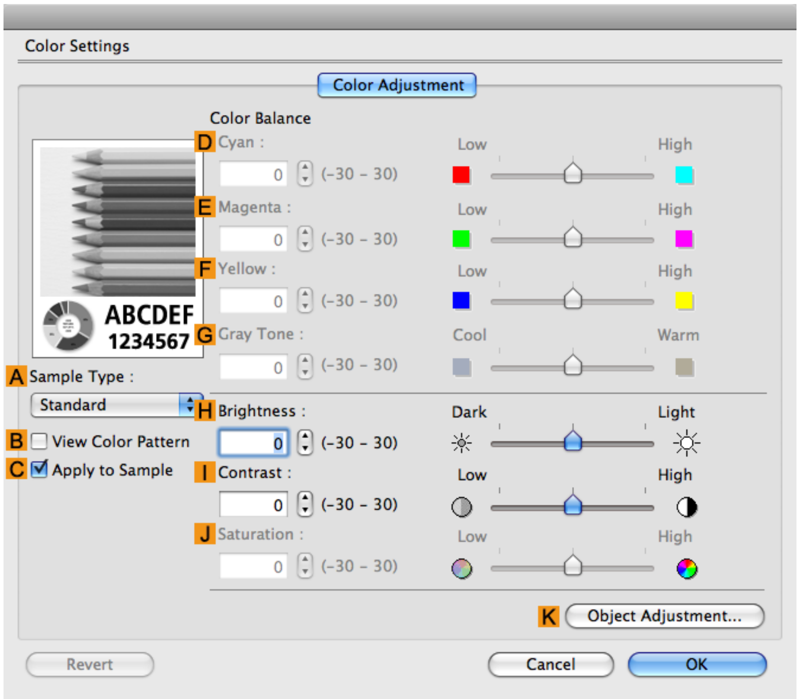
Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**.(See "Main Pane →P.495 ")

- **A Sample Type**

  Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

- **B View Color Pattern**

  Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

- **C Apply to Sample**

  Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

- **D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow**

  Not available.

- **G Gray Tone**

  Not available.

- **H Brightness**

  Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **I Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **I Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **I Contrast** softens images.

- **J Saturation**

Not available.

Note
- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.55 "

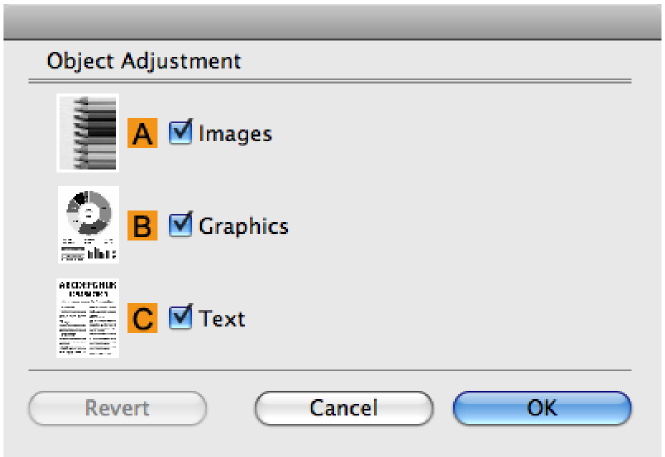
- **K Object Adjustment**

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

- Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.512

Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Object Adjustment

A ☑ Images

B ☑ Graphics

C ☑ Text

Note
- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** panel.

- **A Images**

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

- **B Graphics**

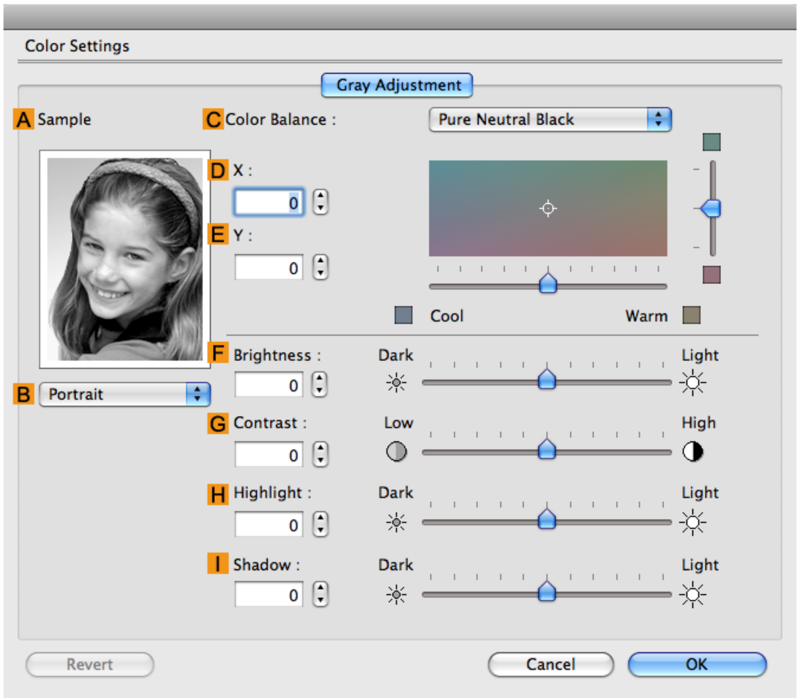
Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

- **C Text**

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Gray Adjustment Pane

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



X: 0

Y: 0

Brightness: 0

Contrast: 0

Highlight: 0

Shadow: 0

> **Note**
> - To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on theMain Pane →P.495 , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
> - **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

• A Sample

The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.

• B Sample List

Select a sample image, as desired.

• C Color Balance

Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.

• D X / E Y

Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area.

You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it.

Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired.

You can click the arrows by the D **X** (horizontal) and E **Y** (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.

• F Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

- **G Contrast**

  Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **G Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **G Contrast** softens images.

- **H Highlight**

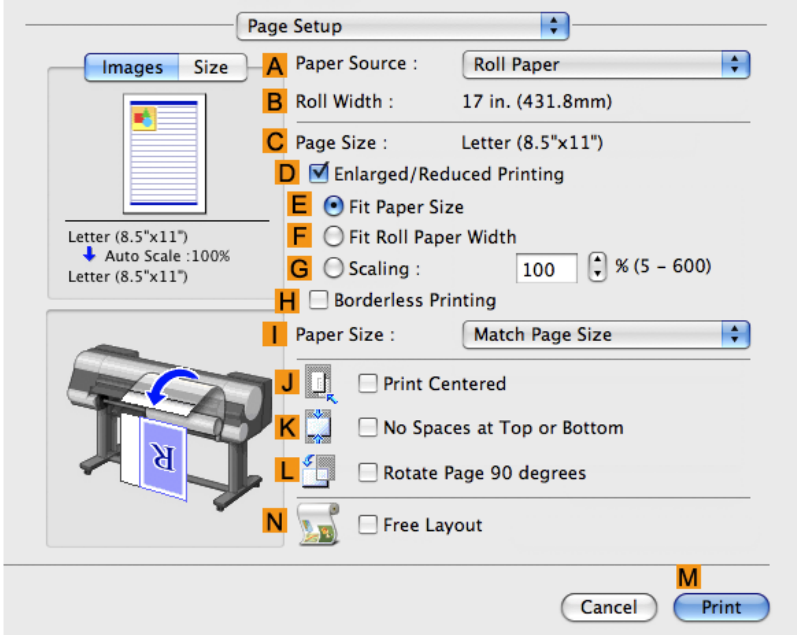
  Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.

- **I Shadow**

  Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Page Setup Pane

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



A Paper Source : Roll Paper
B Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)
C Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")
D ☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
E ● Fit Paper Size
F ○ Fit Roll Paper Width
G ○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)
H ☐ Borderless Printing
I Paper Size : Match Page Size
J ☐ Print Centered
K ☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
L ☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees
N ☐ Free Layout

- **A Paper Source**

  Choose how paper is supplied.

  Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **A Media Type** in the **Main** pane.

- **B Roll Width**

  Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.

- **C Page Size**

  Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application.

  For details on page sizes available in the application. see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "

- **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

  Select this checkbox to choose the following options.

  - Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size →P.73
  - Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.79
  - Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value →P.85

- **E Fit Paper Size**

Resizes the document image to match the paper size.

- **F Fit Roll Paper Width**

Resizes the document image to match the roll width.

- **G Scaling**

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of **5–600.**

- **H Borderless Printing**

Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the A **Paper Source** list.

Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper.

- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size →P.107
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.114
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size →P.100

- **I Paper Size**

Choose the size of the paper you will print on.

Click **Display all selections for Paper Size** to list available sizes.

For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes →P.775 "

- **J Print Centered**

Select this checkbox to print document images in the center of the paper.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls →P.160
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets →P.166

- **K No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

Select this checkbox to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins →P.178

- **L Rotate Page 90 degrees**

Select this checkbox to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees →P.172

- **N Free Layout**

Select this checkbox to start **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** before printing.

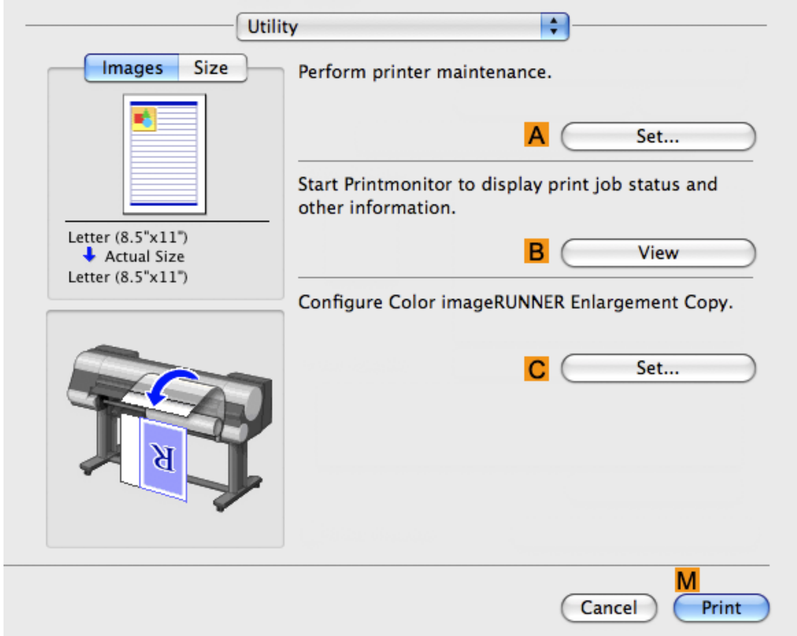
This allows you to print multiple documents next to each other.

> Important
> - When **Print Preview** is selected on the **Main** panel, **Print Preview** is disabled.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other →P.139

Utility Pane

The following settings are available on the **Utility** pane.


Utility
Images
Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
Perform printer maintenance.
A
Set...
Start Printmonitor to display print job status and other information.
B
View
Configure Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.
C
Set...
M
Cancel
Print

- **A Set**

Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
- Head alignment adjustment
- Feed amount adjustment

- **B View**

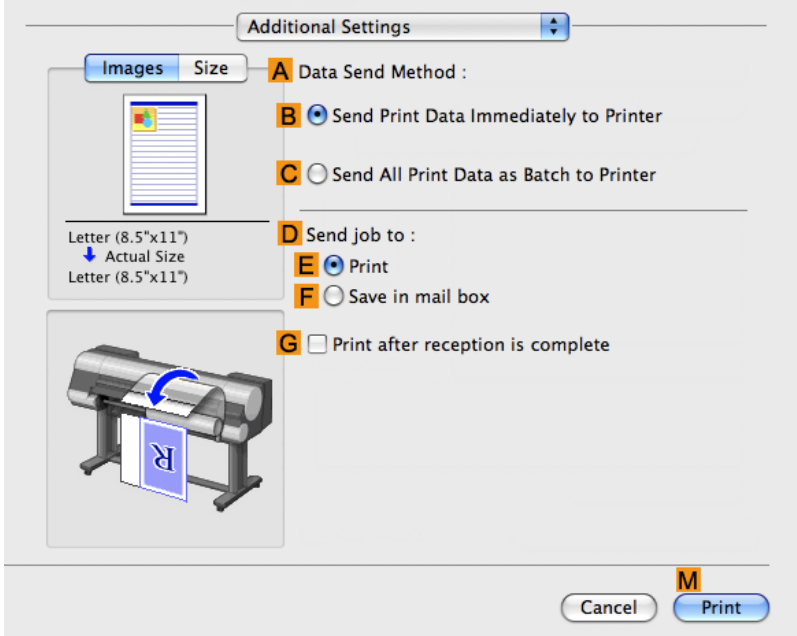
Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, which enables you to view the status of print jobs.

- **C Set**

Click to complete the settings for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).
For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.584 .

Additional Settings Pane

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.



- **D Send job to**

  You can configure the method for saving print jobs to the printer hard disk.

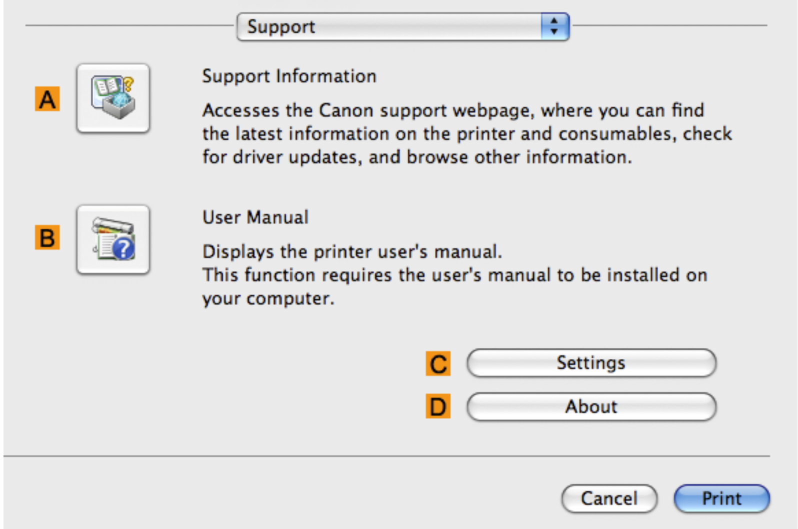
  - **E Print**
  - **F Save in mail box**

- **G Print after reception is complete**

  Jobs are printed after they are saved on the hard disk.

Support Pane

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Support
A
Support Information
Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for driver updates, and browse other information.
B
User Manual
Displays the printer user's manual.
This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C
Settings
D
About
Cancel
Print

- **A Support Information**

  Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

- **B User Manual**

  Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

- **C Settings**

  The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.

- **D About**

  You can display version information for the printer driver.

Preview

The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.

> Note
> - The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Preview in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  Mac OS X (10.4.11 to 10.6)

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Preview

Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

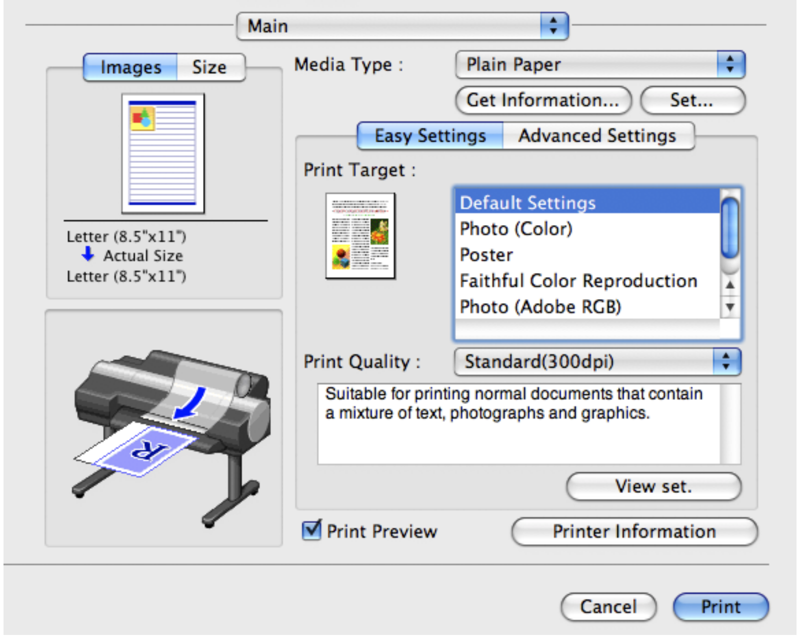
1. Start the apllication software which you use.

2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

> Note
> - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. Click **Print Preview** in the **Main** panel to attach a checkmark.

4. Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.



Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

Letter (8.5"x11") → Actual Size → Letter (8.5"x11")

Print Target : Default Settings

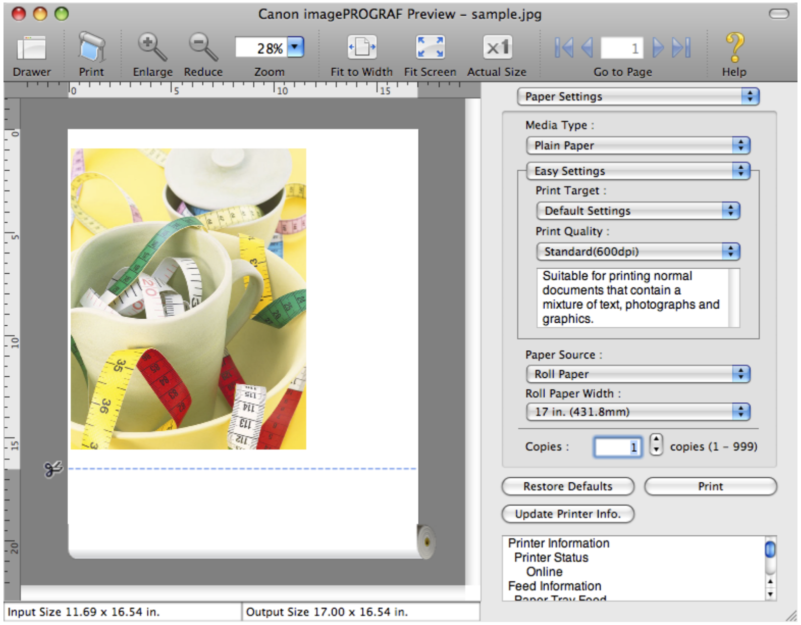
Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☑ Print Preview

> Note
> - Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

5. Preview main window is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

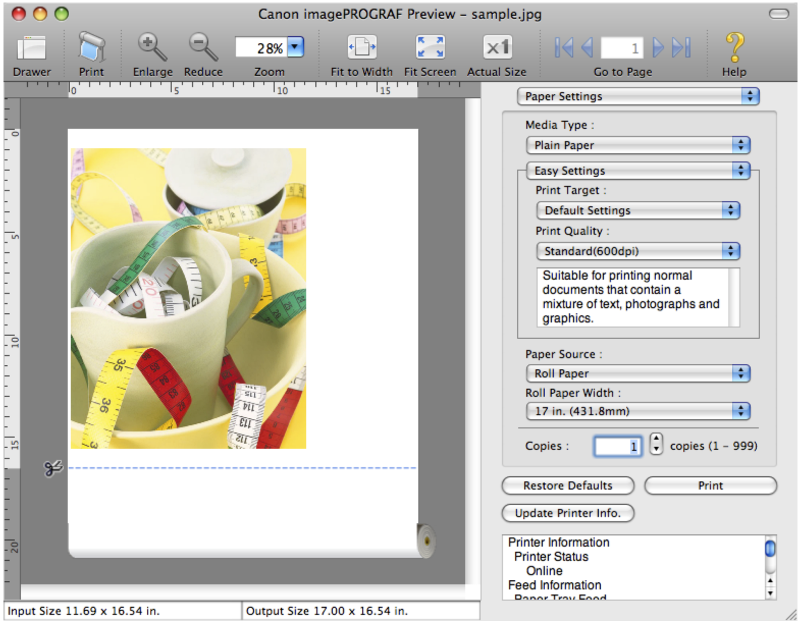
Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 11.69 x 16.54 in.

Output Size 17.00 x 16.54 in.

Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, and preview, dialog , drawer and status area.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 11.69 x 16.54 in.

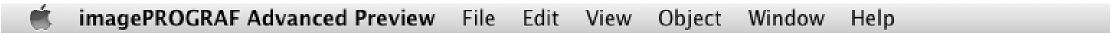
Output Size 17.00 x 16.54 in.

Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

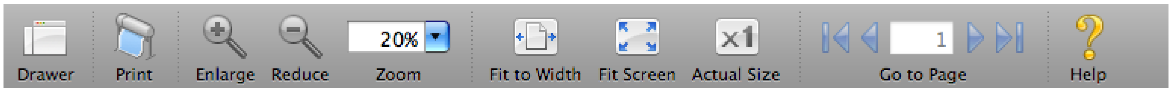
Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



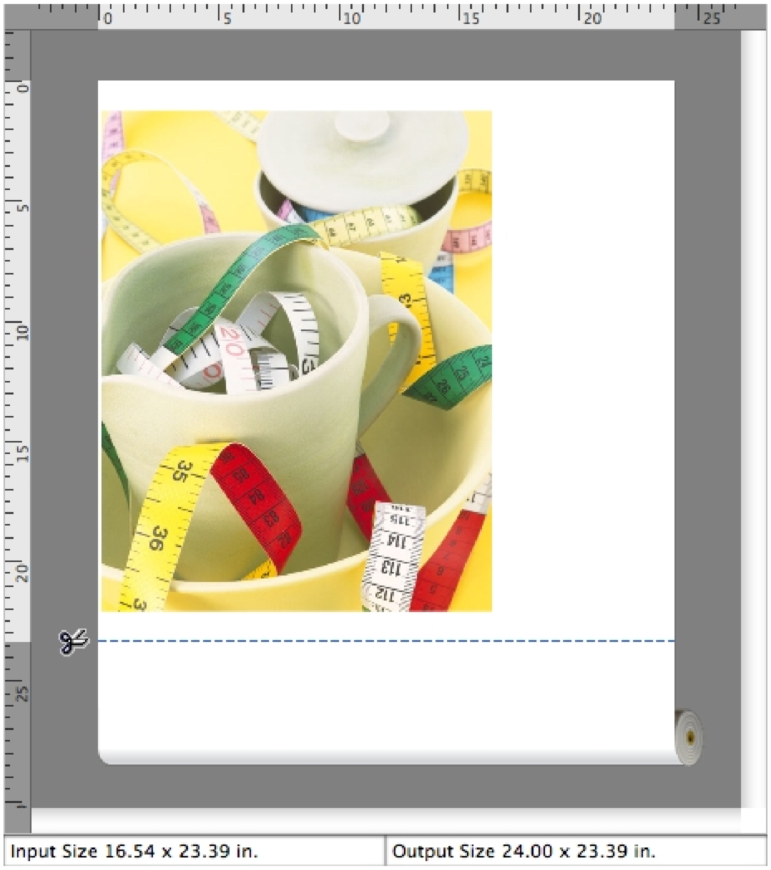
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.

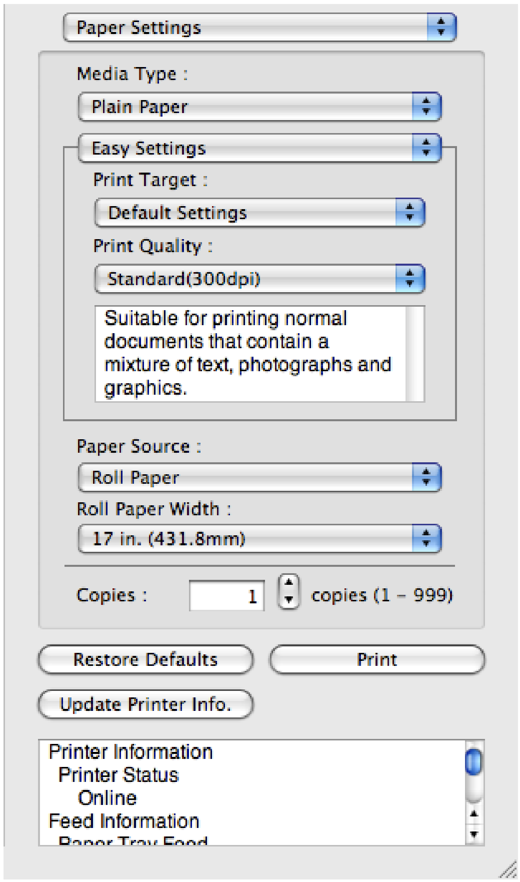


Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.

Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

- Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.


Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

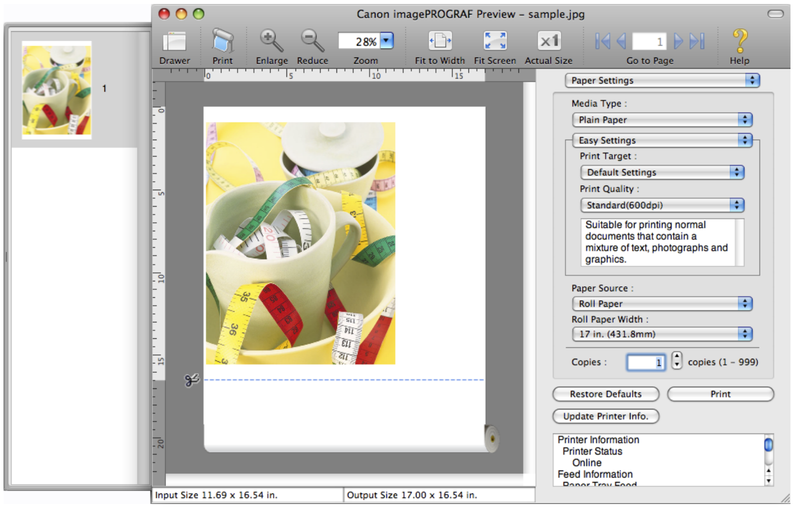
Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

- Drawer Area

This allows you to display the thumbnails of a document.

This area appears when you click **Drawer** from the tool bar.
Alternatively, you may select **Drawer** from the **View** menu.


Canon imagePROGRAF Preview – sample.jpg

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

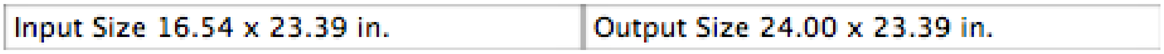
Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 11.69 x 16.54 in.
Output Size 17.00 x 16.54 in.

- **Status Area**

This shows **Input Size** and **Output Size**.

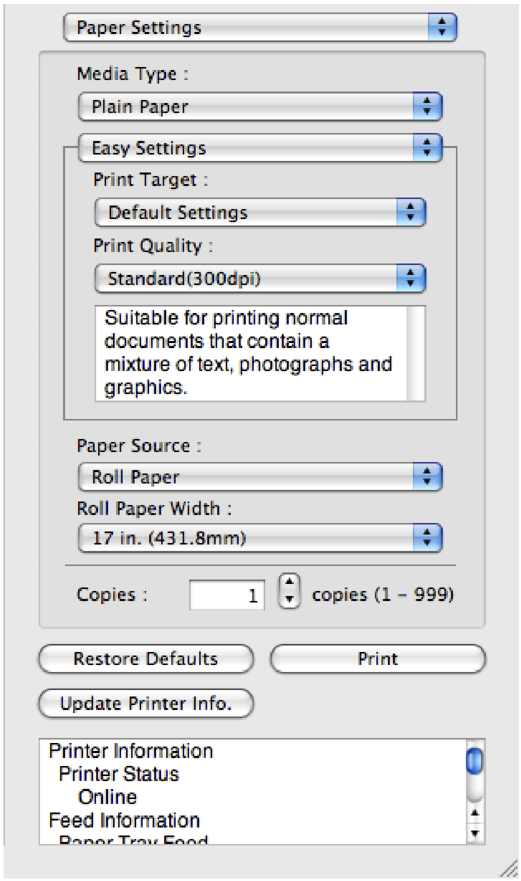


Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.

Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 - 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

- **Media Type**

This allows you to select the media type.

> Note
>
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Easy Settings / Advanced Settings**

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings →P.526
- Advanced Settings →P.528

- **Paper Source**

You can select the paper source.
The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Cut Sheet	Select to print on the cut sheet.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

- **Roll Paper Width**

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

> Note
> - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

> Note
> - The maximum value is 999.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

- **Print** Button

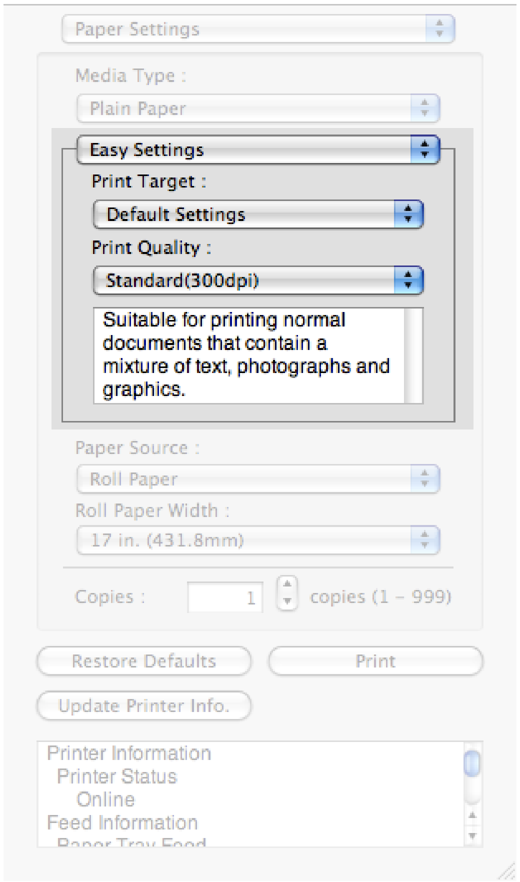
Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

- **Print Target**

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
Photo (Adobe RGB)	Achieves the best color when printing an image created with the Adobe RGB color space feature.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.

Setting	Details
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note
- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

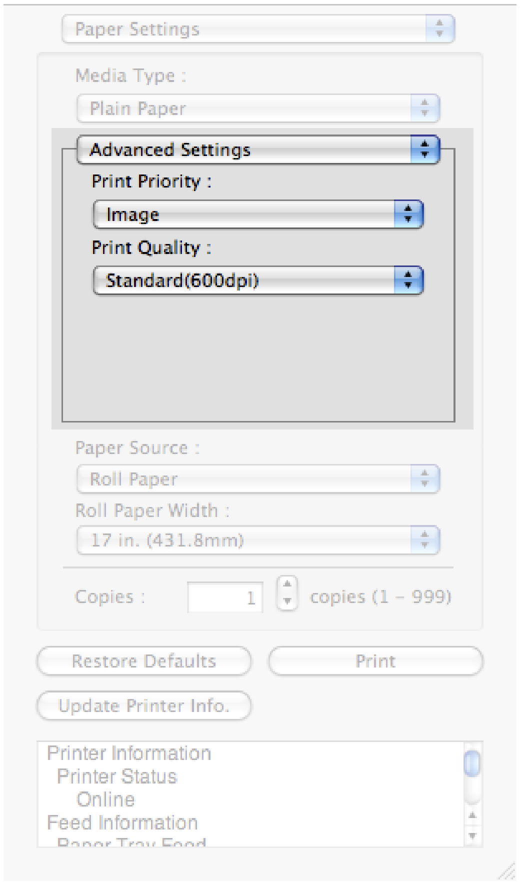
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print quality, the color mode, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

- **Print Priority**

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

- **Print Quality**

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

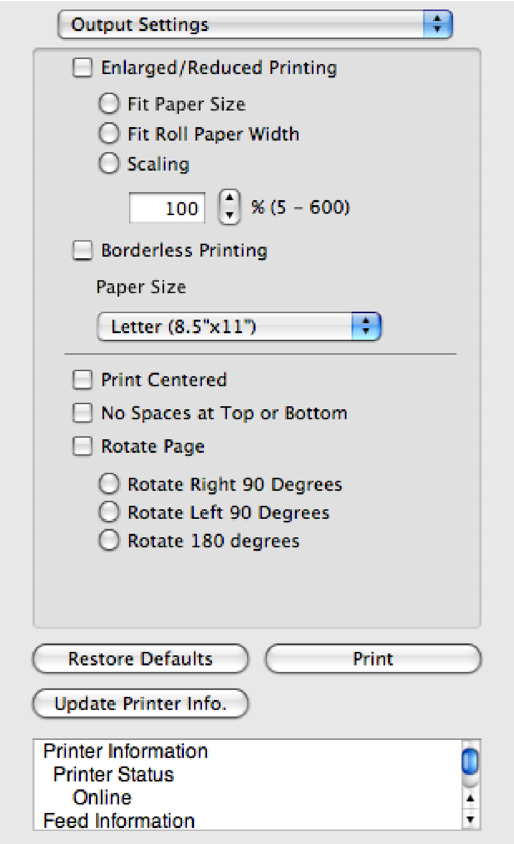
Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Output Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Output Settings** in the dialog area.



- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from **Paper Size**.
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for **Roll Paper Width** in the **Paper Settings** panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **Borderless Printing**

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." →P.543

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Print Centered**.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Print Centered**

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

For more information about **Print Centered**, see "Print on the Center." →P.543

Note
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**, see "Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom." →P.544

Note
- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Rotate Page**

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

- **Print** Button

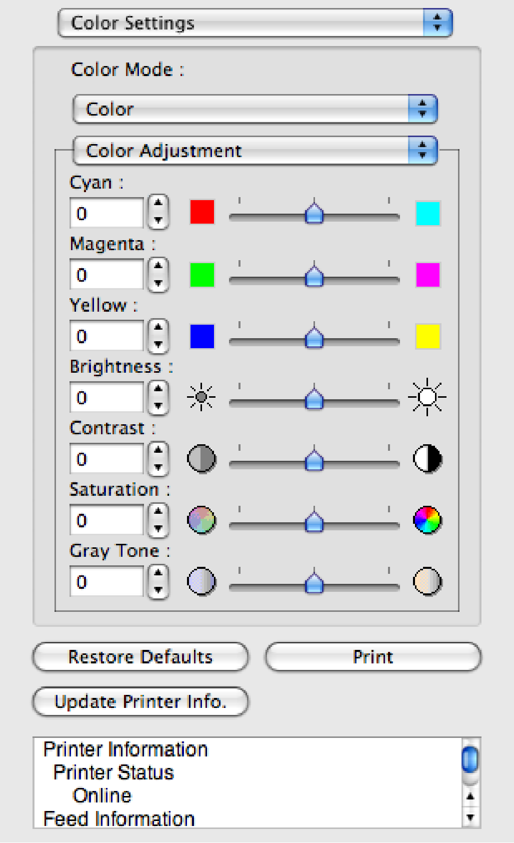
Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

- **Color Mode**

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.

Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

- **Color Adjustment / Gray Adjustment / Matching**

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment →P.532
- Gray Adjustment →P.535
- Matching →P.536

Note

- You can select **Gray Adjustment** only after **Monochrome (Photo)** has been selected in **Color Mode**.
- **Matching** is not displayed if **No color correction** has been selected in **Color Mode**.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

- **Print** Button

Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Color Adjustment

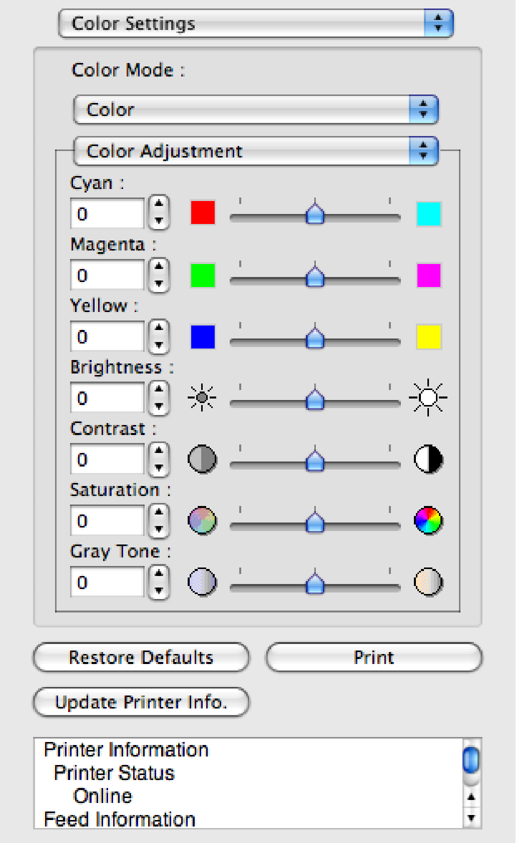
You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1. Select **Color** or **Color (Economy)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



Color Mode : Color

Color Adjustment

Cyan : 0

Magenta : 0

Yellow : 0

Brightness : 0

Contrast : 0

Saturation : 0

Gray Tone : 0

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Adjustment	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).

Note

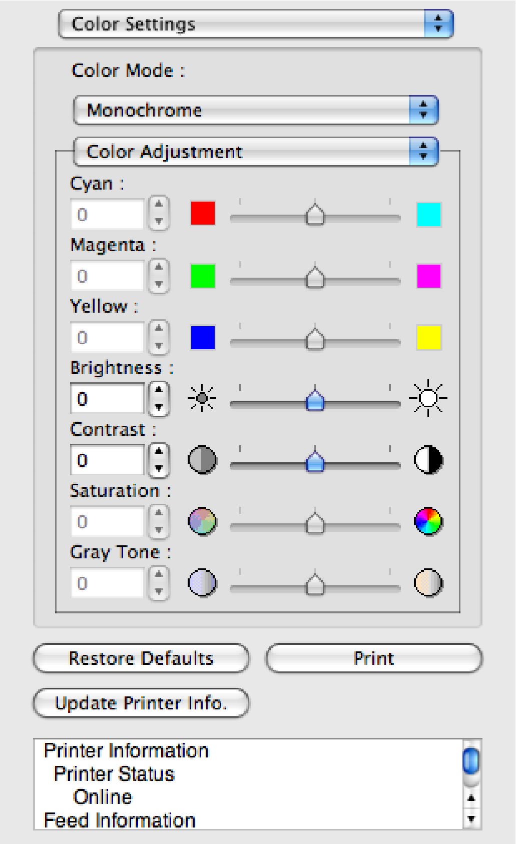
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select **Monochrome** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Gray Adjustment

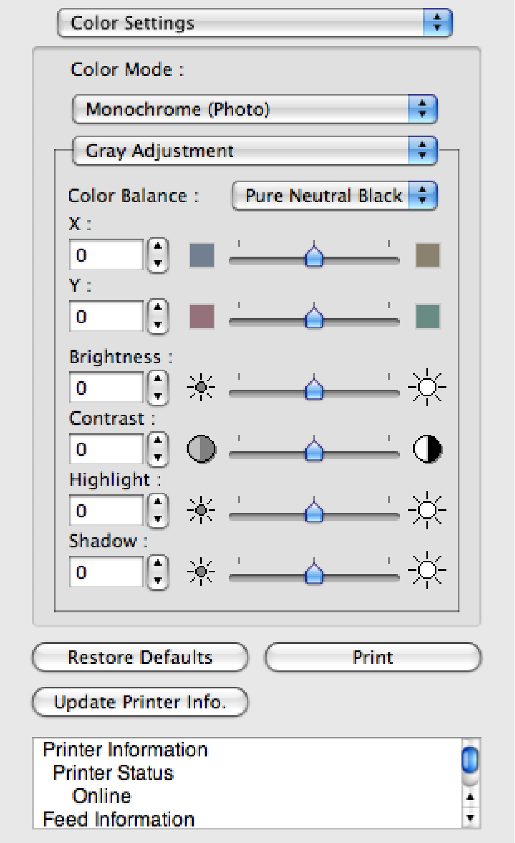
You can set the gray adjustment.

Adjusting Monochrome (Photo)

Sets monochrome printing for black-and-white photo image data captured with a scanner or digital camera.

1. Select **Monochrome (Photo)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Gray Adjustment**.



3. Click the **Color Balance** list and select the color settings.

Setting	Details
Cool Black	Adjusts cool black (blue tones) to gray.
Pure Neutral Black	Adjusts to neutral gray.
Warm Black	Adjusts warm black (red tones) to gray.

Note

- To perform the adjustments, drag the **X** or **Y** slide bar left and right.
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value by **X** and **Y**.

4. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjusts the brightness of the brightest areas.
Shadow	Adjusts the brightness of the darkest areas.

Note

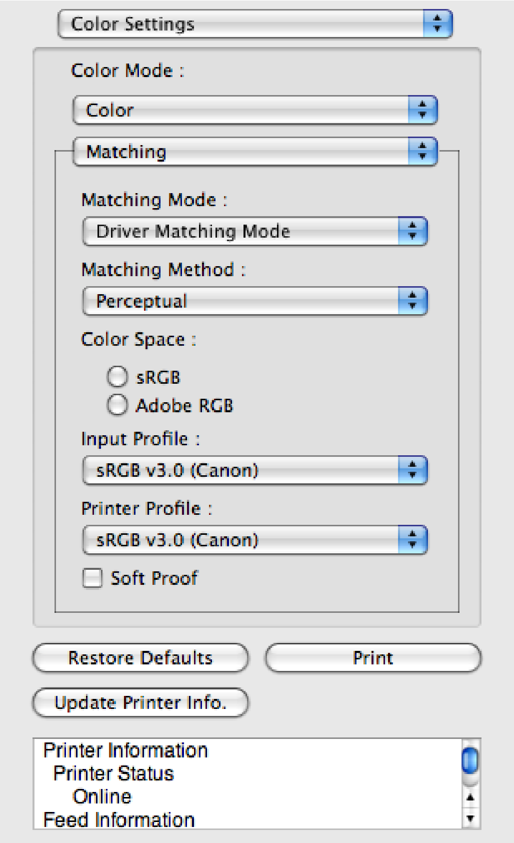
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.
- The availability of settings depends on the selected the media type.

Matching

You can set the matching.

Important

- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** is not displayed.



• Matching Mode

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.539	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.540	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
ColorSync →P.541	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.

Note

- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.
- Using Mac OS X 10.5 or later, **ColorSync** needs to be selected in the **Color Matching** panel of the driver in order to select **ColorSync**.

• Matching Method

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

• Color Space

Select the color space.

Note

- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Input Profile**

Select the input profile.

Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Printer Profile**

Select the printer profile.

Note

- (Using Mac OS X 10.4)You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** or **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.
- (Using Mac OS X 10.5 or later)You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Soft Proof**

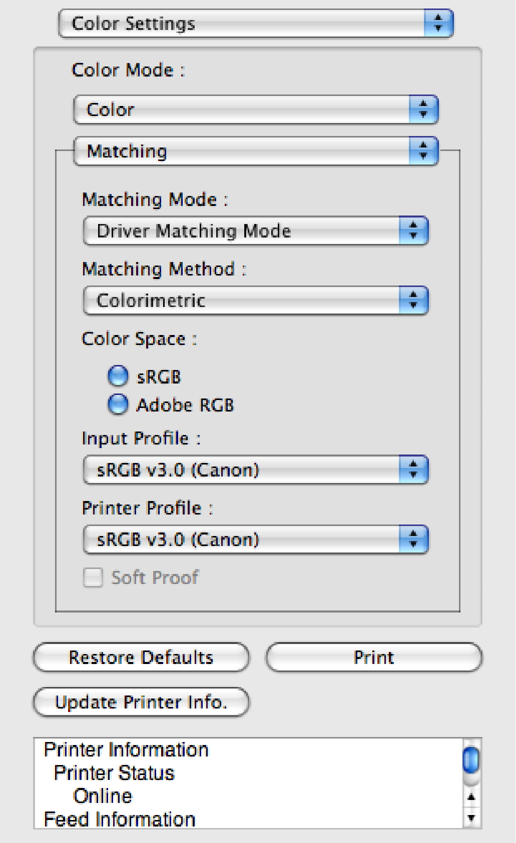
When you place a checkmark here, **ColorSync** applies to the preview area.

Note

- You can select only after **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



2. Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

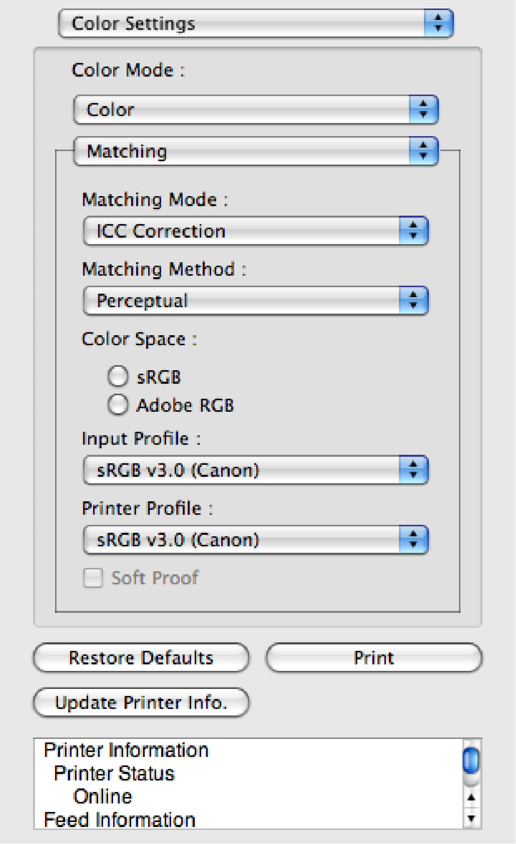
3. Select **Color Space** for the print output.

Setting	Details
sRGB	Uses color space for a standard monitor. This selection is ideal for most software applications.

Setting	Details
Adobe RGB	Uses wide color space. Use this setting to print images created with Adobe RGB color space.

ICC Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2. Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

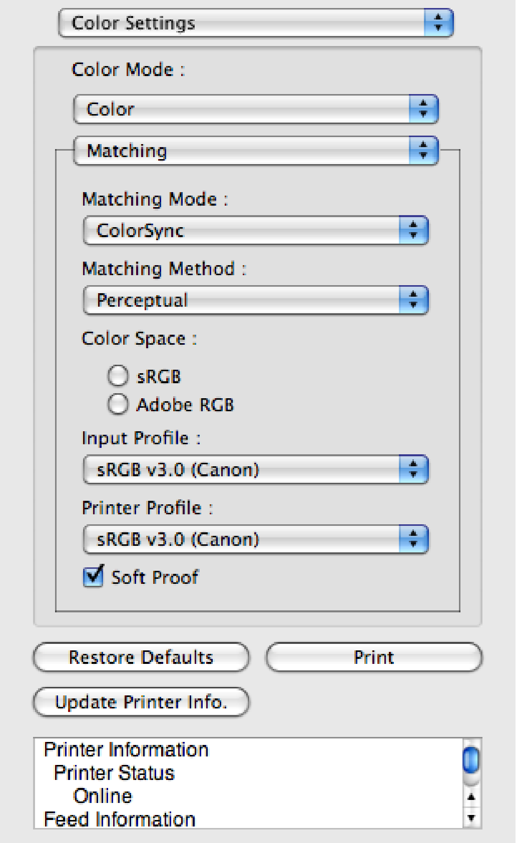
Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3. Click the **Input Profile** list and select an input profile.

4. Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

ColorSync

1. Check that **ColorSync** is selected in **Matching Mode**.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Matching

Matching Mode : ColorSync

Matching Method : Perceptual

Color Space :
○ sRGB
○ Adobe RGB

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

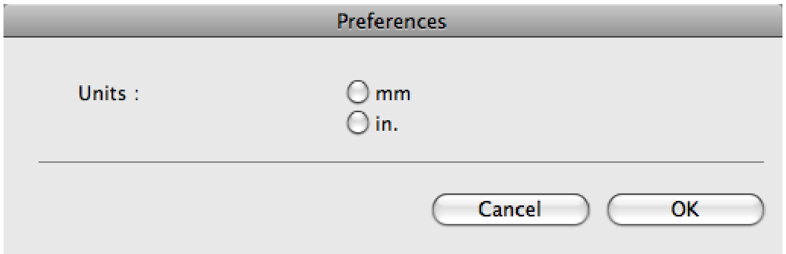
☑ Soft Proof

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

2. To apply **ColorSync** to previews, check the **Soft Proof** check box.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the **imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview** menu. You can set the preferences for Preview.



Preferences

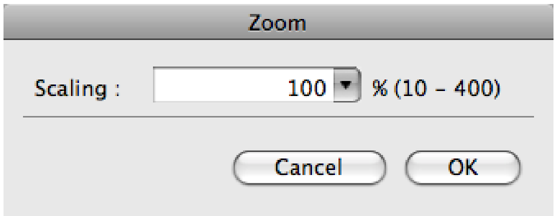
Units :
○ mm
○ in.

- **Units**

  Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



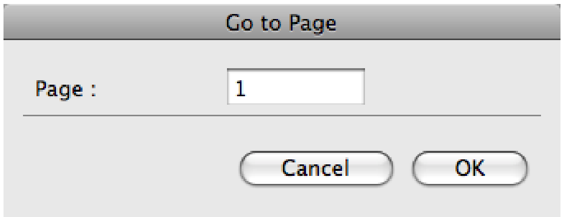
- **Scaling**

  Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

> Note
> - You can input between 10 and 400.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Go to Page Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.



> Note
> - You can not select **Go to Page** if the document is only one page.

- **Page**

  Input the page number in numerical characters to display in the preview area.

> Note
> - You can change the numbers in the range of the page of the documents.

Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

Note

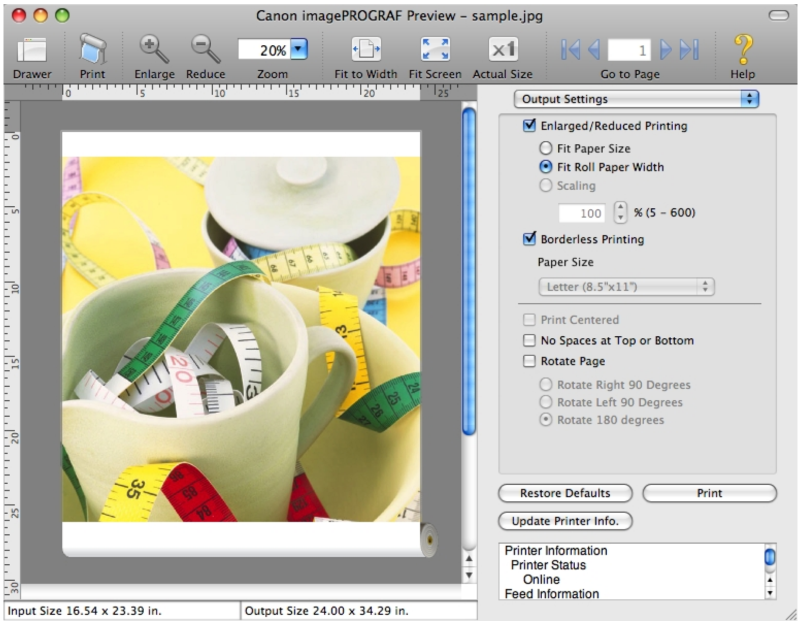
- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1. On the Paper Settings Panel →P.524 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

3. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

4. Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.



Canon imagePROGRAF Preview - sample.jpg

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
○ Fit Paper Size
● Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling
100 % (5 - 600)
☑ Borderless Printing
Paper Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
☐ Print Centered
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
☐ Rotate Page
○ Rotate Right 90 Degrees
○ Rotate Left 90 Degrees
● Rotate 180 degrees

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.
Output Size 24.00 x 34.29 in.

5. Click the **Print** button.

   Borderless printing begins.

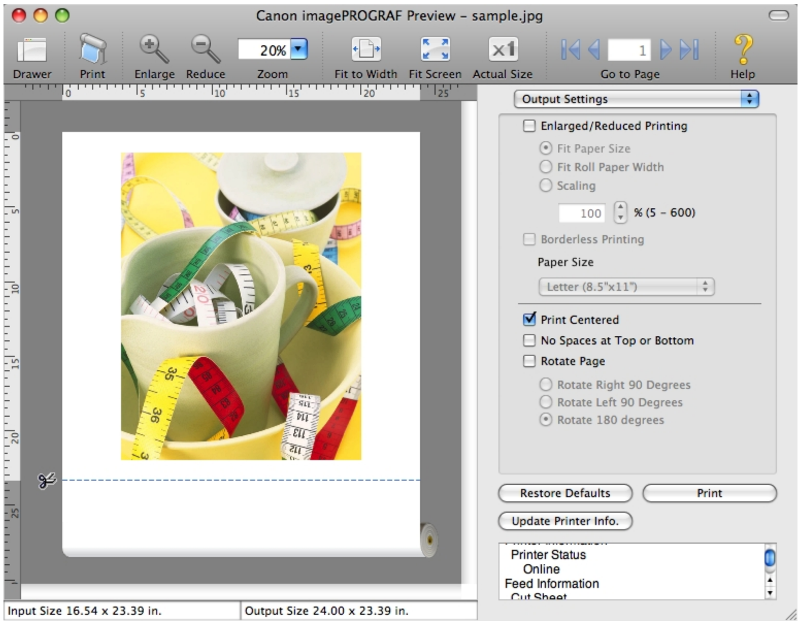
Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

1. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the **Print Centered** check box on.



☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling
100 % (5 - 600)
☐ Borderless Printing
Paper Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
☑ Print Centered
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
☐ Rotate Page
○ Rotate Right 90 Degrees
○ Rotate Left 90 Degrees
● Rotate 180 degrees

Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Cut Sheet

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.
Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

2. Click the **Print** button.

   Printing on the center begins.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

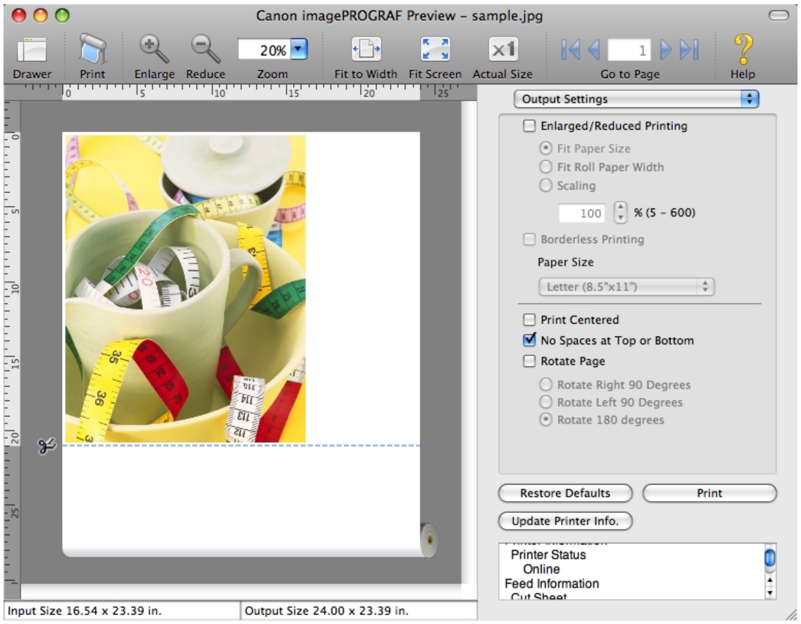
You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

1. On the Paper Settings Panel →P.524 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box on.



Output Settings

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling

100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size

Letter (8.5"x11")

☐ Print Centered

☑ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

☐ Rotate Page

○ Rotate Right 90 Degrees

○ Rotate Left 90 Degrees

● Rotate 180 degrees

Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Cut Sheet

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.

Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

3. Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

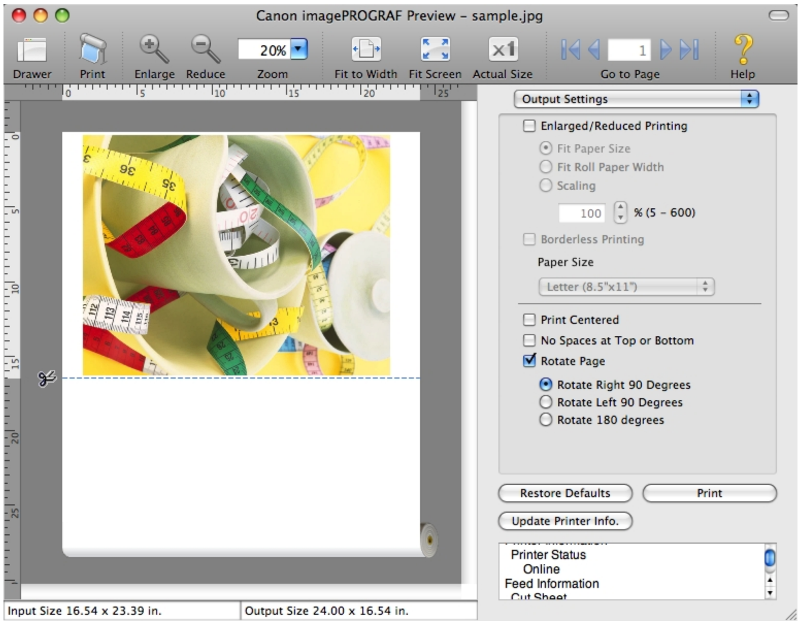
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees

You can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.

1. On the Paper Settings Panel →P.524 , select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the **Rotate Page** check box on.

3. Select **Rotate Right 90 Degrees** or **Rotate Left 90 Degrees**.



☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling
100 % (5 – 600)
☐ Borderless Printing
Paper Size
Letter (8.5"x11")
☐ Print Centered
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
☑ Rotate Page
● Rotate Right 90 Degrees
○ Rotate Left 90 Degrees
○ Rotate 180 degrees

Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Cut Sheet

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.
Output Size 24.00 x 16.54 in.

4. Click the **Print** button.

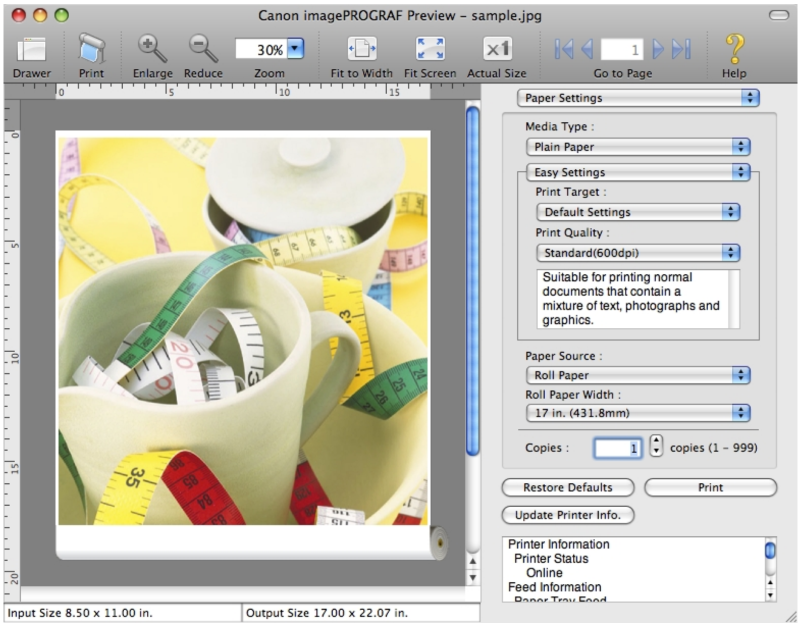
Printing on rotating 90 degrees begins.

Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper

In the preview area, you can display to the width of the paper.

1. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width** from the tool bar.

2. Fitting to the width of the paper, it is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 8.50 x 11.00 in.

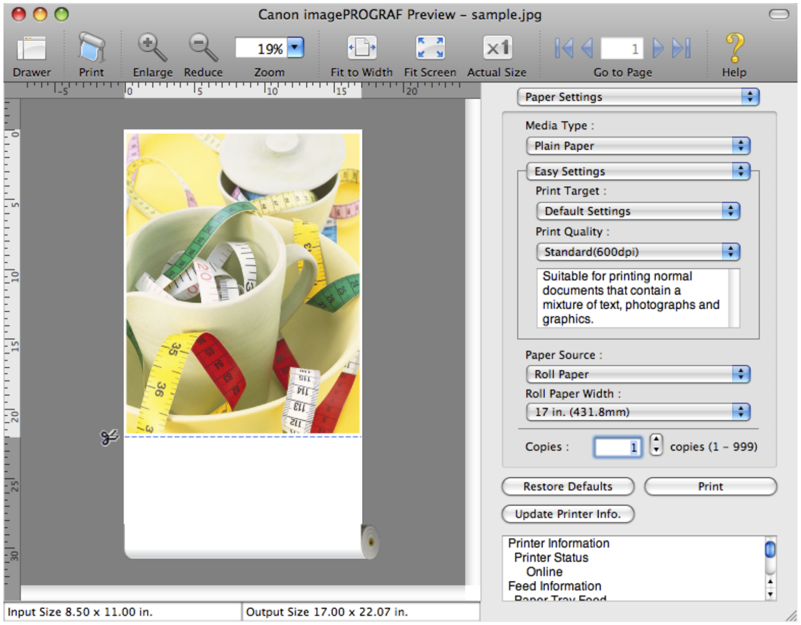
Output Size 17.00 x 22.07 in.

Display with All

In the preview area, you can display all.

1. Select **Fit Screen** from the tool bar.

2. All is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information
Paper Tray Feed

Input Size 8.50 x 11.00 in.

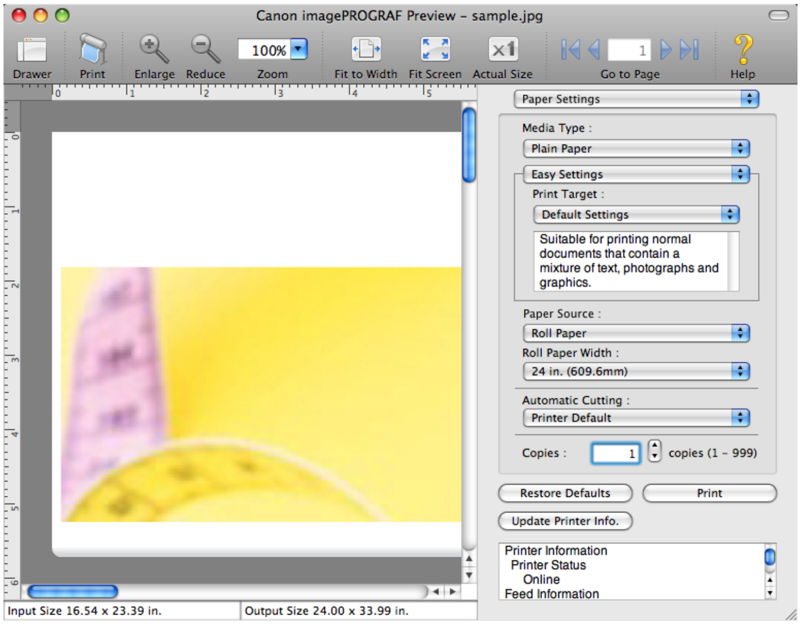
Output Size 17.00 x 22.07 in.

Display with Actual Size

In the preview area, you can display the actual size.

1. Select x1 **Actual Size** from the tool bar.

2. Actual size is displayed.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 24 in. (609.6mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.

Output Size 24.00 x 33.99 in.

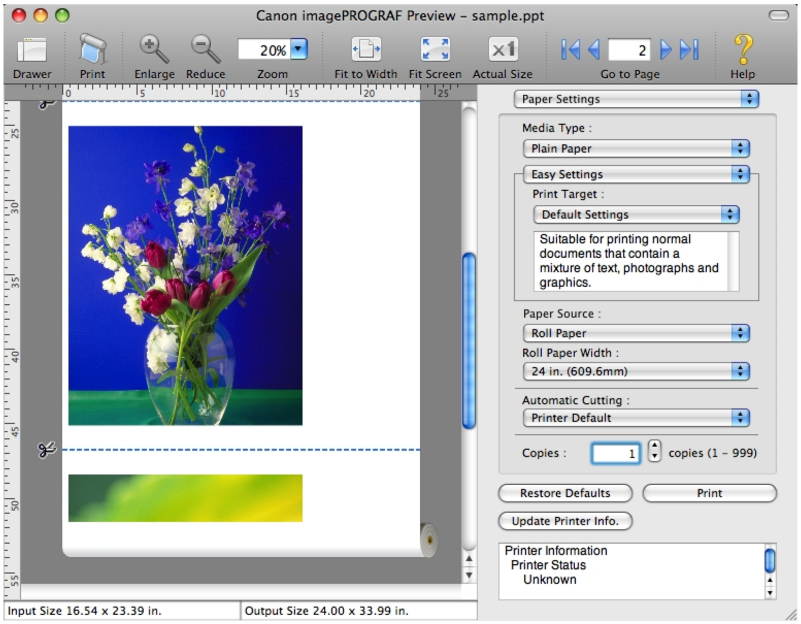
Moving a Page

You can move a page to display in the preview area.

1. Select each button in **Go to Page** on the tool bar.

Setting	Details
⏮	Go to the first page.
◀	Go to the previous page.
▶	Go to the next page.
⏭	Go to the last page.

2. The target page appears.



Zoom: 20%

Go to Page: 2

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 24 in. (609.6mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies : 1 copies (1 - 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Unknown

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.

Output Size 24.00 x 33.99 in.

Note

- You can also move a page by clicking the page on the thumbnails.

Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Free Layout in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  Mac OS X (10.4.11 to 10.6)
- Software that requires installation

Starting Free Layout

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

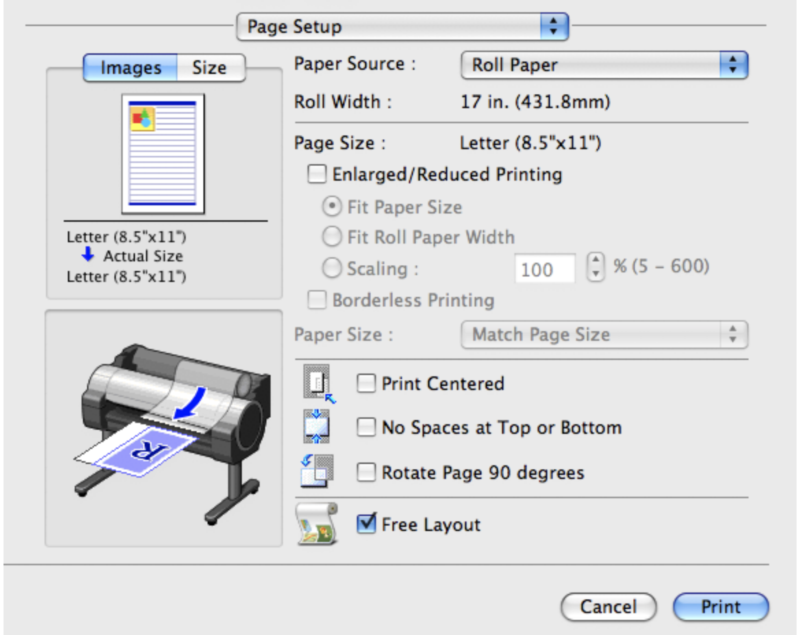
1. Start the apllication software which you use.

2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

> Note
> - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

4. Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.



Page Setup

Images | Size

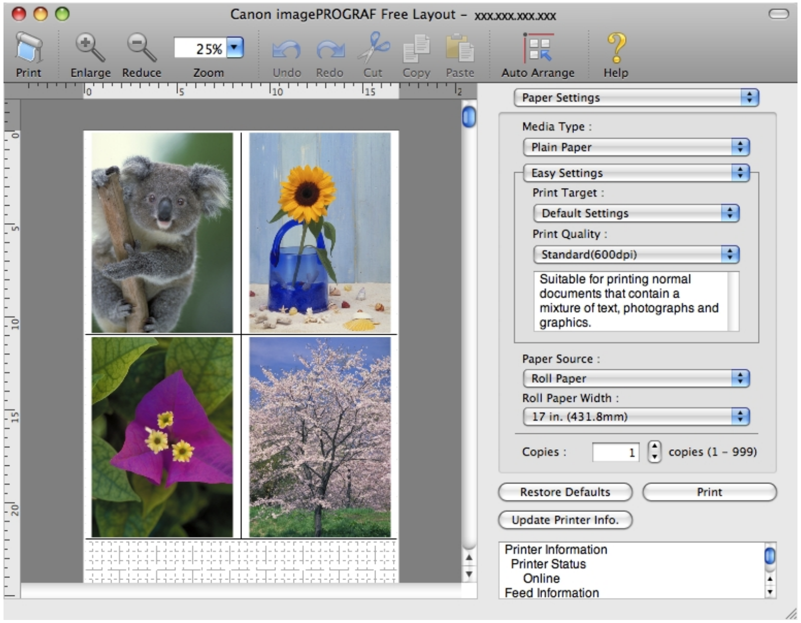
Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

Paper Source : Roll Paper
Roll Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)
Page Size : Letter (8.5"x11")
☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Paper Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling : 100 % (5 – 600)
☐ Borderless Printing
Paper Size : Match Page Size
☐ Print Centered
☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees
☑ Free Layout

Cancel | Print

> Note
> - Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

5. Free Layout main window is displayed.



Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout – xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

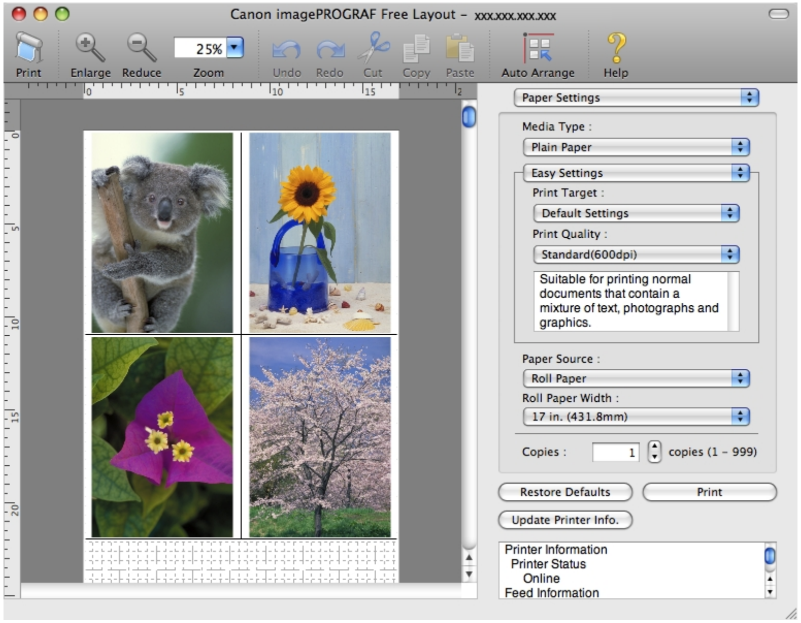
Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and dialog areas.



Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout – xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

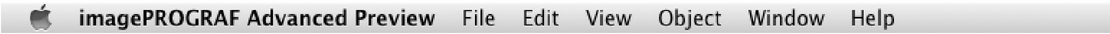
Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool.

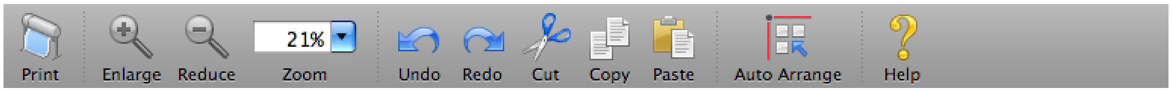
- **Menu Bar**

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



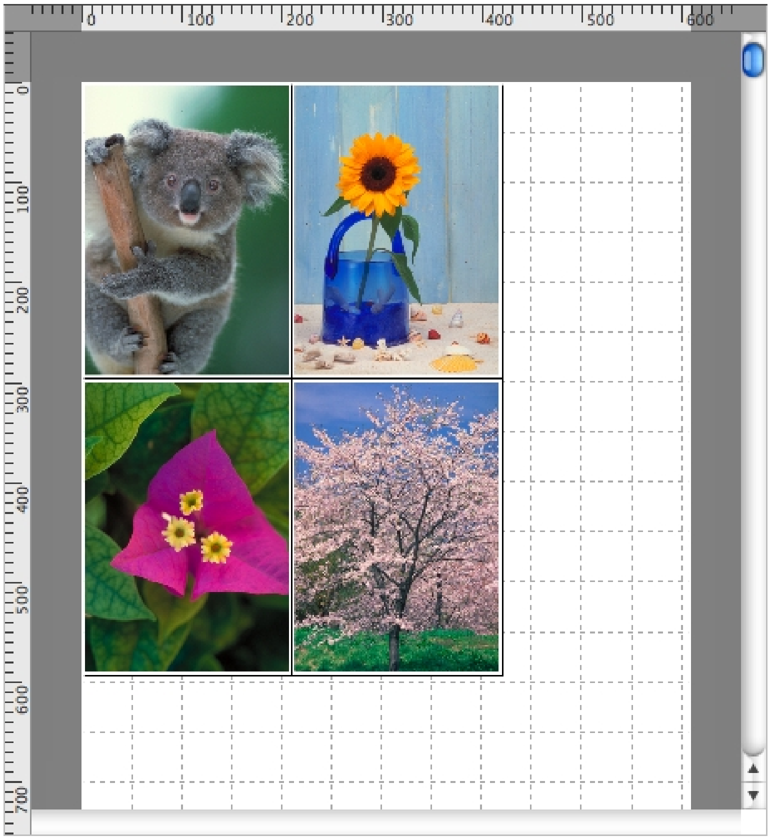
- **Tool Bar**

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



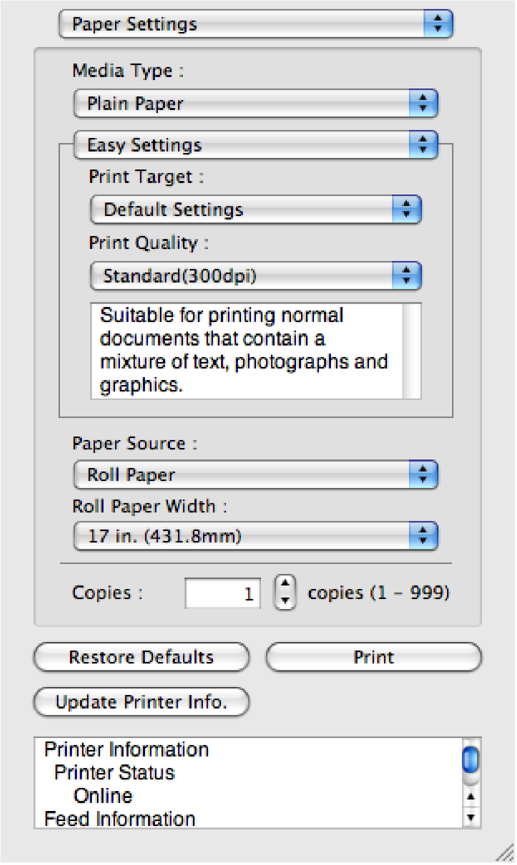
- **Layout Area**

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



- **Dialog Area**

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

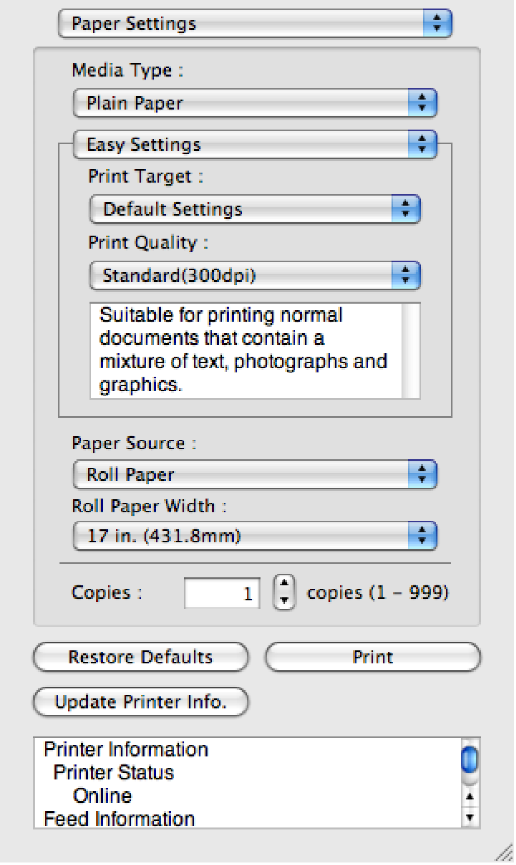
Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
  Printer Status
    Online
Feed Information

Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



Paper Settings

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

• Media Type

This allows you to select the media type.

Note

- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

• Easy Settings / Advanced Settings

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings →P.557
- Advanced Settings →P.559

• Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Cut Sheet	Select to print on the cut sheet.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

- **Roll Paper Width**

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

> Note
> - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Copies**

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

> Note
> - The maximum value is 999.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

- **Print** Button

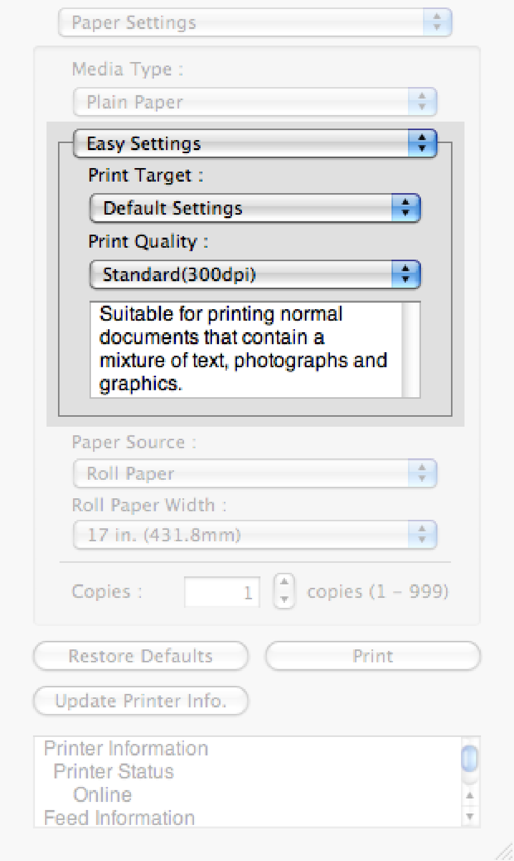
Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Copies : 1 copies (1 – 999)

• Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
Photo (Adobe RGB)	Achieves the best color when printing an image created with the Adobe RGB color space feature.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.

Setting	Details
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note
- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

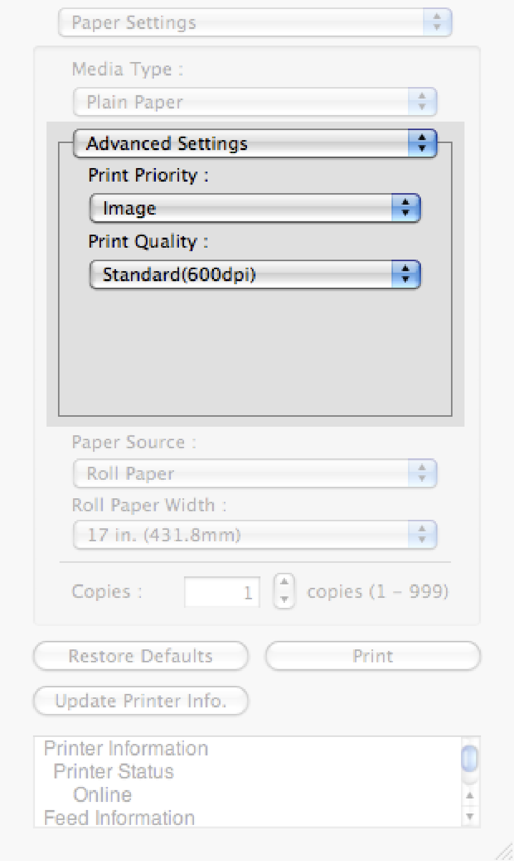
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note
- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



• Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

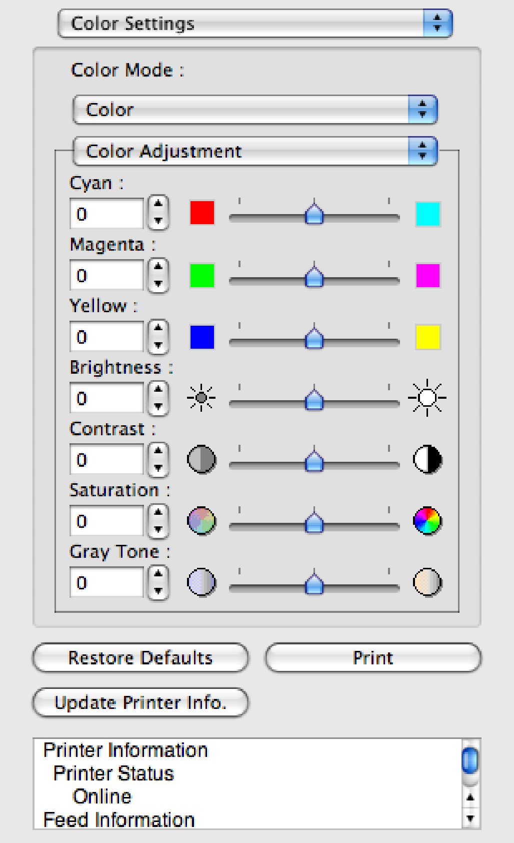
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**Highest quality** / **High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

> Note
>
> - The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
> - Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
> - Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.
> - For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Color Adjustment

Cyan : 0

Magenta : 0

Yellow : 0

Brightness : 0

Contrast : 0

Saturation : 0

Gray Tone : 0

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

• Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.

Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

- **Color Adjustment / Gray Adjustment / Matching**

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment →P.561
- Gray Adjustment →P.564
- Matching →P.565

Note

- You can select **Gray Adjustment** only after **Monochrome (Photo)** has been selected in **Color Mode**.
- **Matching** is not displayed if **No color correction** has been selected in **Color Mode**.

- **Restore Defaults** Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

- **Print** Button

Click the button to begin printing.

- **Update Printer Info.** Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Color Adjustment

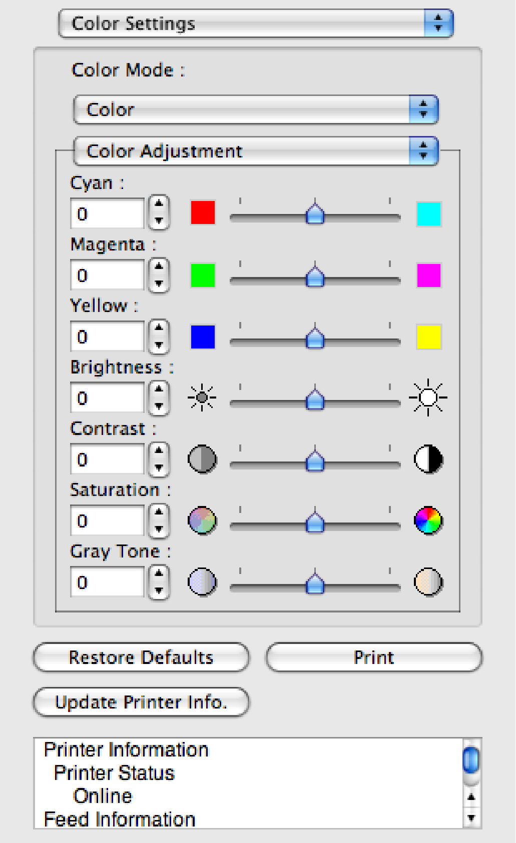
You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1. Select **Color** or **Color (Economy)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Tone	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).

Note

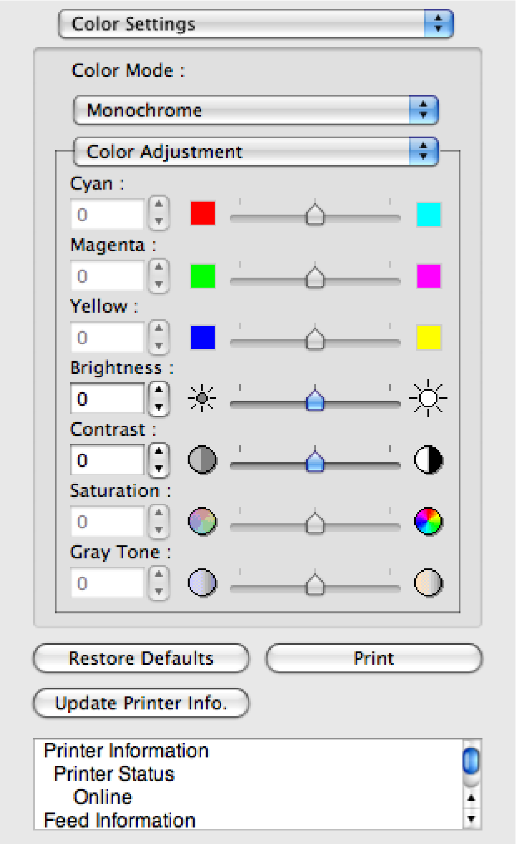
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select **Monochrome** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Color Adjustment**.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Gray Adjustment

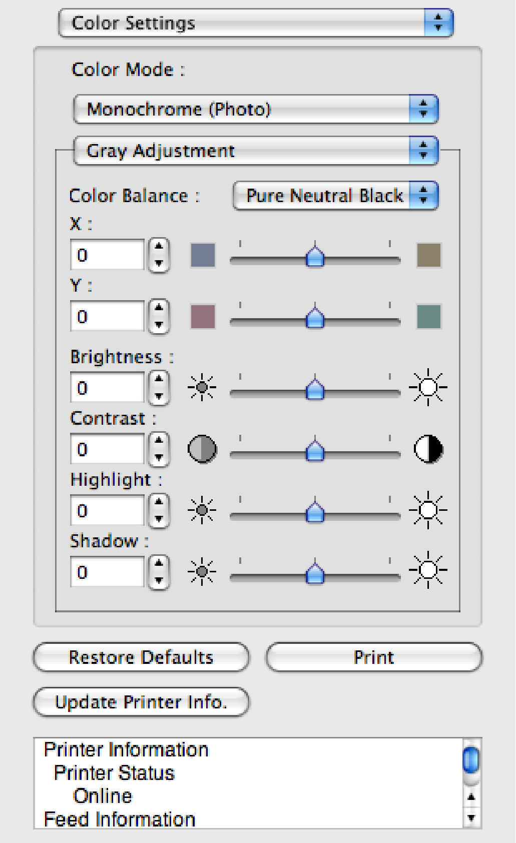
You can set the gray adjustment.

Adjusting Monochrome (Photo)

Sets monochrome printing for black-and-white photo image data captured with a scanner or digital camera.

1. Select **Monochrome (Photo)** on **Color Mode** in the **Color Settings** panel.

2. Select **Gray Adjustment**.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Monochrome (Photo)

Gray Adjustment

Color Balance : Pure Neutral Black

X : 0

Y : 0

Brightness : 0

Contrast : 0

Highlight : 0

Shadow : 0

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

3. Click the **Color Balance** list and select the color settings.

Setting	Details
Cool Black	Adjusts cool black (blue tones) to gray.
Pure Neutral Black	Adjusts to neutral gray.
Warm Black	Adjusts warm black (red tones) to gray.

Note

- To perform the adjustments, drag the X or Y slide bar left and right.
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value by X and Y.

4. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjusts the brightness of the brightest areas.
Shadow	Adjusts the brightness of the darkest areas.

Note

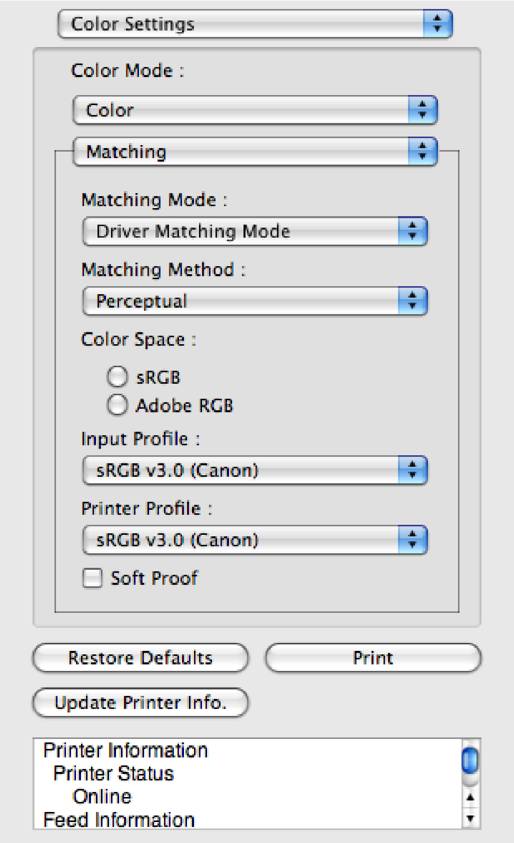
- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.
- The availability of settings depends on the selected the media type.

Matching

You can set the matching.

Important

- If **No color correction** is selected under **Color Mode**, the **Matching** is not displayed.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Matching

Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode

Matching Method : Perceptual

Color Space :

○ sRGB
○ Adobe RGB

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

☐ Soft Proof

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

• Matching Mode

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.568	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.569	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
ColorSync →P.570	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.

Note

- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.
- Using Mac OS X 10.5 or later, **ColorSync** needs to be selected in the **Color Matching** panel of the driver in order to select **ColorSync**.

• Matching Method

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

• Color Space

Select the color space.

Note

- You can select only after **Driver Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Input Profile**

Select the input profile.

Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Printer Profile**

Select the printer profile.

Note

- (Using Mac OS X 10.4)You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** or **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.
- (Using Mac OS X 10.5 or later)You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

- **Soft Proof**

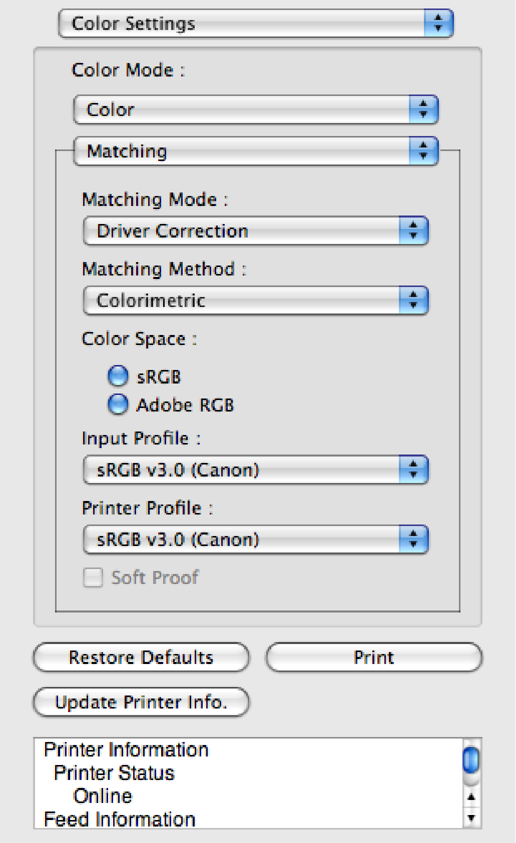
When you place a checkmark here, **ColorSync** applies to the layout area.

Note

- You can select only after **ColorSync** has been selected in **Matching Mode**.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Matching

Matching Mode : Driver Correction

Matching Method : Colorimetric

Color Space :
○ sRGB
○ Adobe RGB

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

☐ Soft Proof

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

2. Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

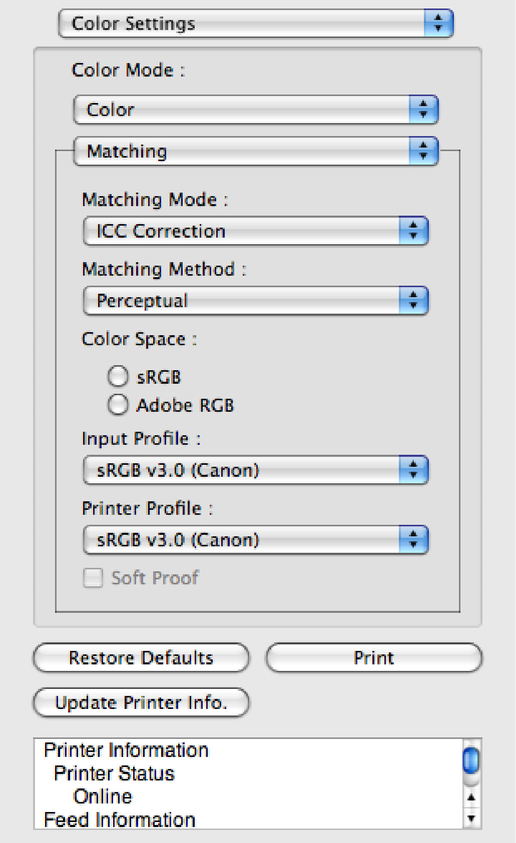
3. Select **Color Space** for the print output.

Setting	Details
sRGB	Uses color space for a standard monitor. This selection is ideal for most software applications.

Setting	Details
Adobe RGB	Uses wide color space. Use this setting to print images created with Adobe RGB color space.

ICC Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Matching

Matching Mode : ICC Correction

Matching Method : Perceptual

Color Space :

○ sRGB

○ Adobe RGB

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

☐ Soft Proof

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

2. Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

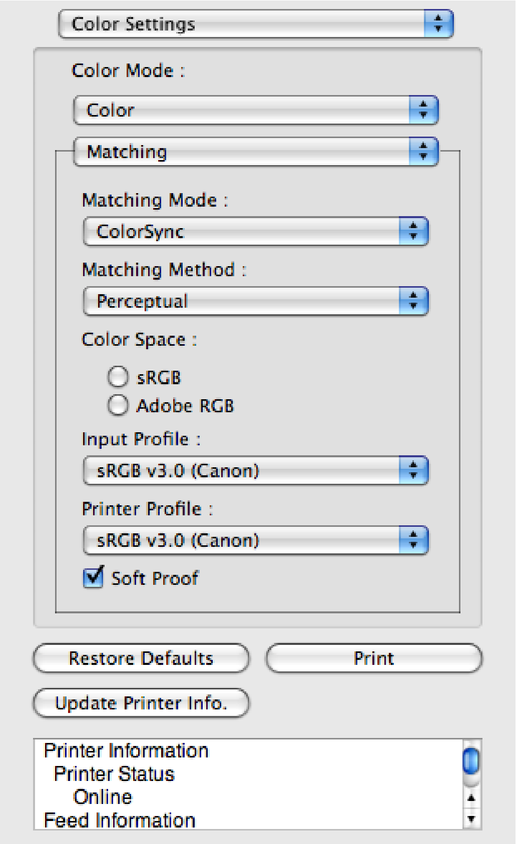
Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3. Click the **Input Profile** list and select an input profile.

4. Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

ColorSync

1. Check that **ColorSync** is selected in **Matching Mode**.



Color Settings

Color Mode : Color

Matching

Matching Mode : ColorSync

Matching Method : Perceptual

Color Space :
○ sRGB
○ Adobe RGB

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

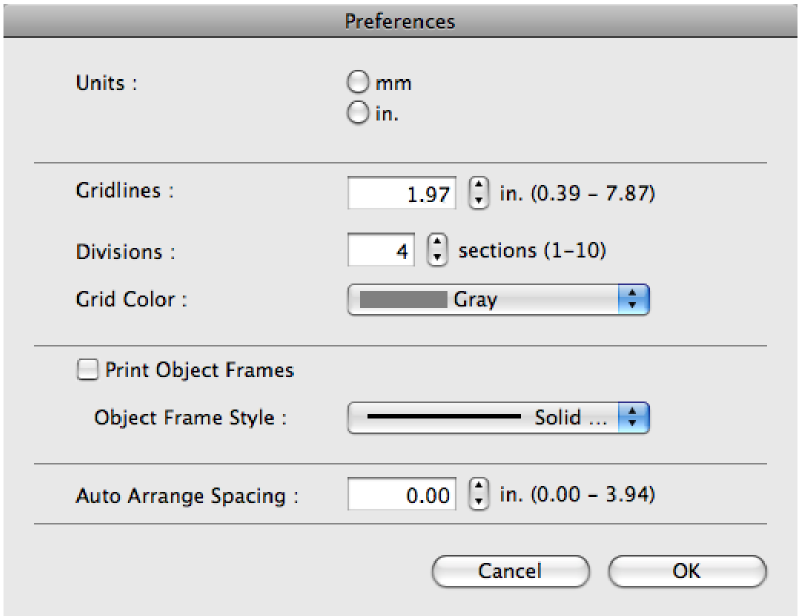
☑ Soft Proof

Printer Information
Printer Status
Online
Feed Information

2. Place a checkmark on **Soft Proof** to simulate the output product in Layout Area.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview menu. You can set the preferences for Free Layout.



Preferences

Units : ○ mm ○ in.

Gridlines : 1.97 in. (0.39 – 7.87)

Divisions : 4 sections (1–10)

Grid Color : Gray

☐ Print Object Frames

Object Frame Style : Solid ...

Auto Arrange Spacing : 0.00 in. (0.00 – 3.94)

- **Units**

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

- **Gridlines**

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

> Note
> - You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.87(inch)).
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Divisions**

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.

> Note
> - You can input between 1 and 10.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Grid Color**

Select the grid line color.

- **Print Object Frames**

You can print the object border.

> Note
> - If you do not want to print the object border, deselect the **Print Object Frames** check box.

- **Object Frame Style**

You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

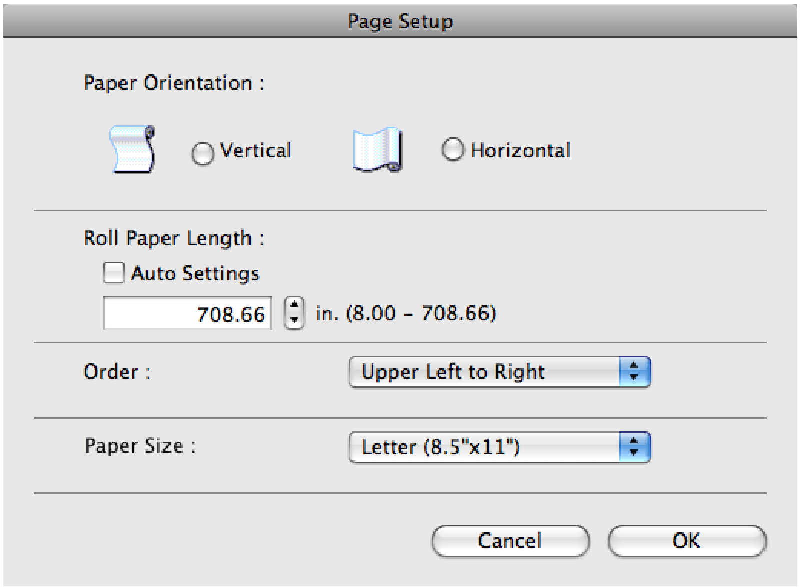
- **Auto Arrange Spacing**

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.

> Note
> - You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Page Setup Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu.This dialog box provides selections for setting the media size, orientation and other important features.



- **Paper Orientation**

This selects the paper orientation.

The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Vertical	Prints the image and text created with the application software in the orientation as it is.
Horizontal	Prints the image and text by rotating sideways 90 degrees from the orientation as specified in the application.

• Roll Paper Length

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

When you place a checkmark on **Auto Settings**, the one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.

> Note
> - Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
> - You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

• Order

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
Upper Left to Right	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
Upper Left to Bottom	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.

> Note
> - When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Vertical**, you can choose only **Upper Left to Right**.
> - When you have selected **Roll Paper Length** > **Auto Settings** and **Paper Orientation** > **Horizontal**, you can choose only **Upper Left to Bottom**.

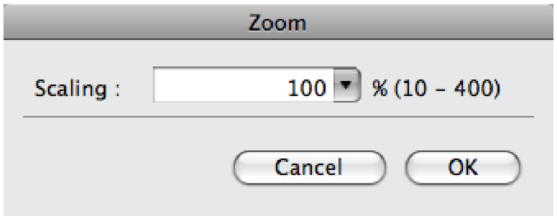
• Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.

> Note
> - You cannot display this if **Roll Paper** is selected in **Paper Source**.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



Zoom

Scaling : 100 % (10 - 400)

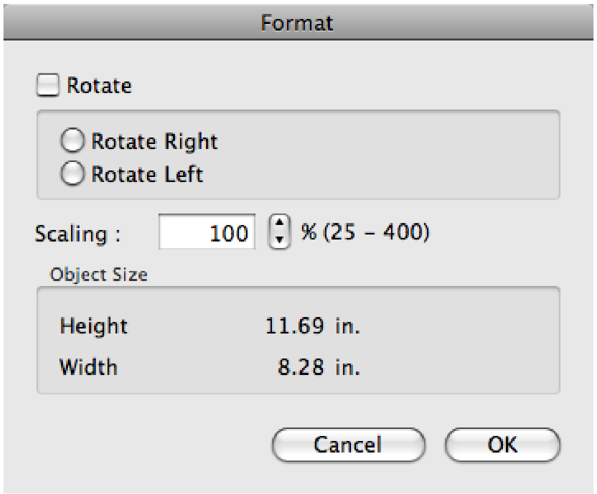
• Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

> Note
> - You can input between 10 and 400.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Format** from the **Object** menu after you select an object. You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note

- When the objects are not selected, you can not select **Format**.

• Rotate

When you place a checkmark here, you can select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
Rotate Left	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.

Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

• Scaling

You can input the value for enlargement or reduction of the obeject in numerical characters.

Note

- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

• Object Size

You can confirm the object size.

Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot display **Object Size**.

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

1. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

   Note
   - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2. Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

3. In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button.
   Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.

4. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

1. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

   Note
   - Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

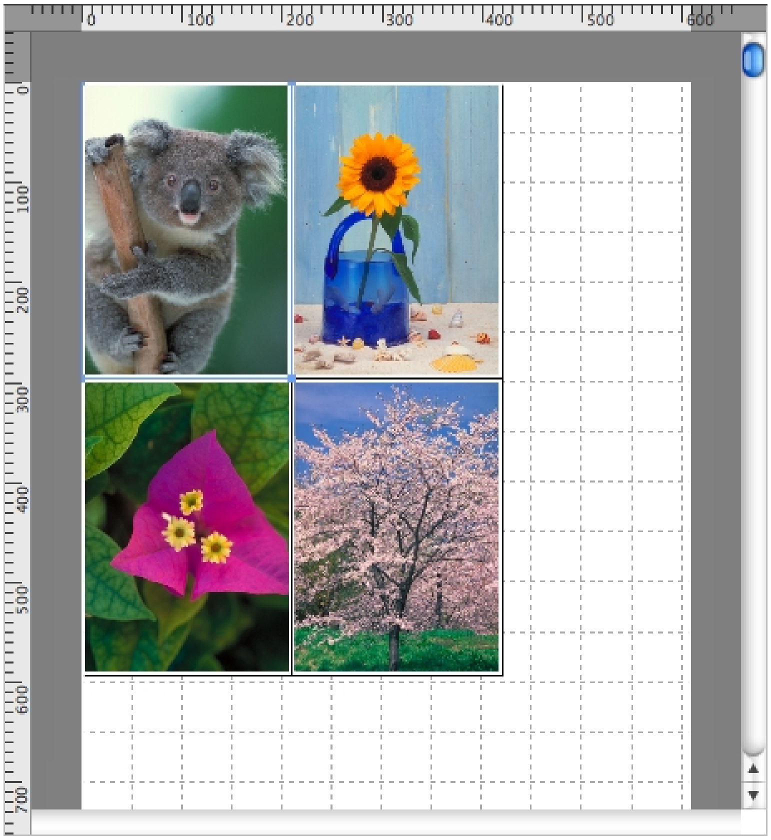
2. Click on **Free Layout** in the **Page Setup** panel to attach a checkmark.

3. In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button.
   Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.

4. Leaving Free Layout running, open the files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note

- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the command key.
- To select all objects, select **Select All** from the **Edit** menu.

Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

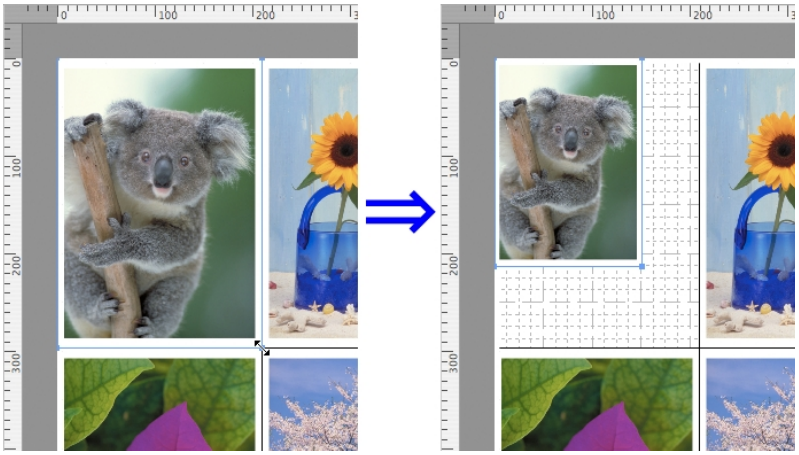
Note

- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1. Select an object.

2. Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1. Select an object.

2. Open the Format Dialog Box →P.574 .

3. Use **Scaling** to set the magnification for enlargement or reduction. You either enter numbers directly.

> Note
> - You can input between 25 and 400.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

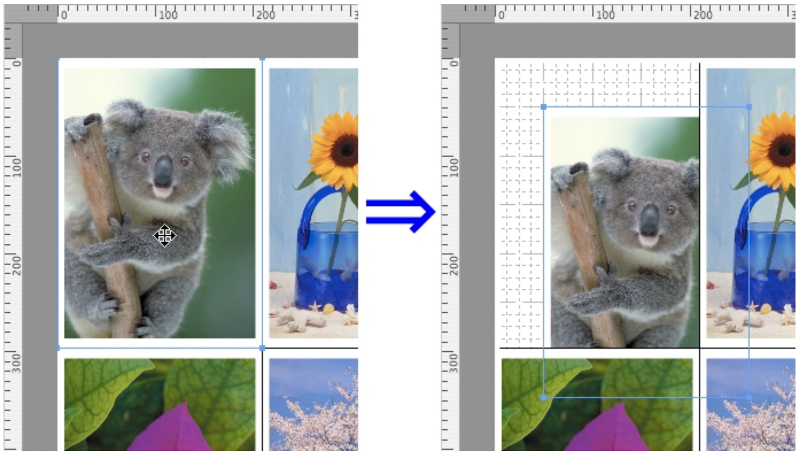
4. Click the **OK** button.

Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

1. Select an object.

2. Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.

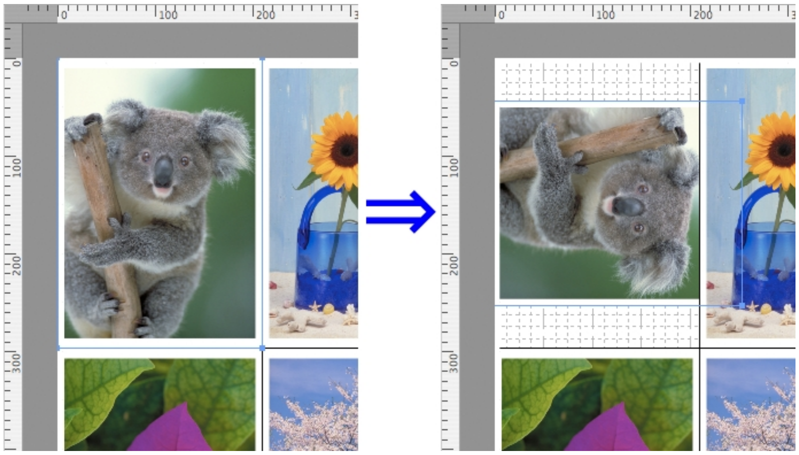


Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

1. Select an object.

2. Select **Rotate Left** or **Rotate Right** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may click on the **Rotate** check box in the Format Dialog Box →P.574 then select **Rotate Right** or **Rotate Left**, and click the **OK** button.

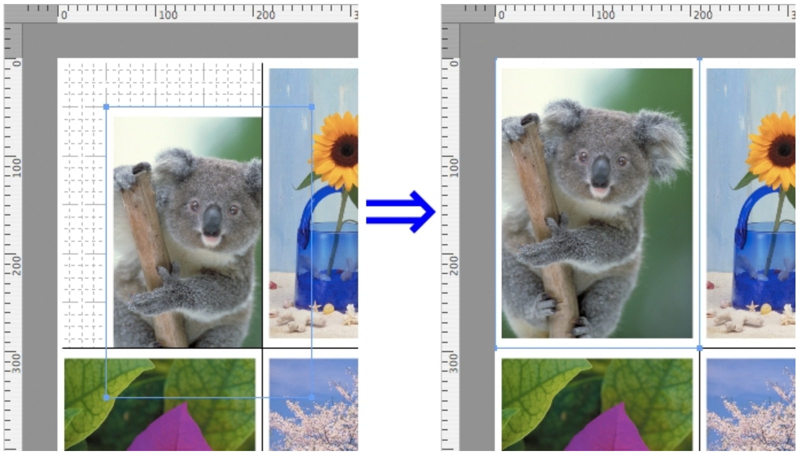


Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select **Rotate**.

Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting on the Page Setup Dialog Box →P.572 .

Aligning Objects

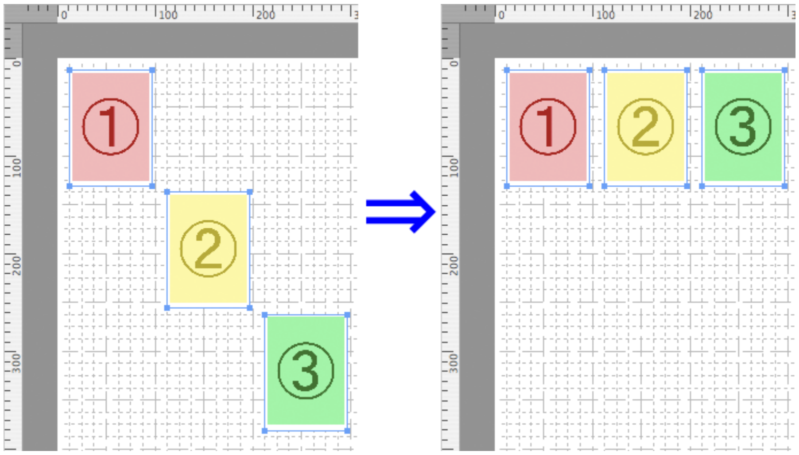
You can align objects systematically.

1. Select multiple objects.

2. Select the align menu from the **Object** menu.

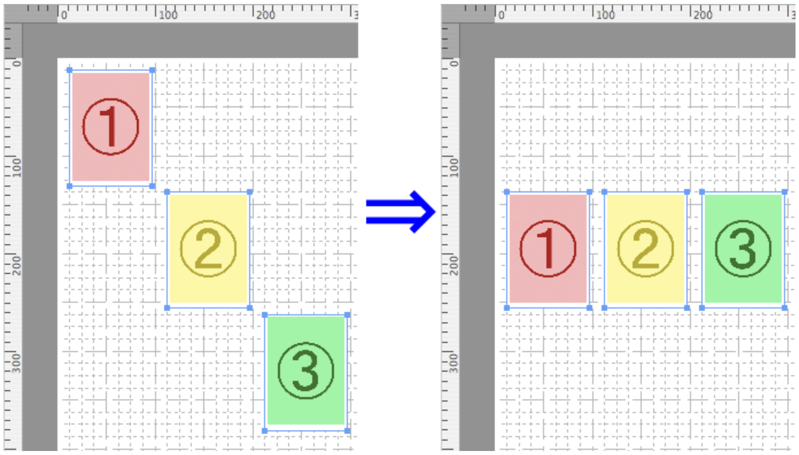
Align Top

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



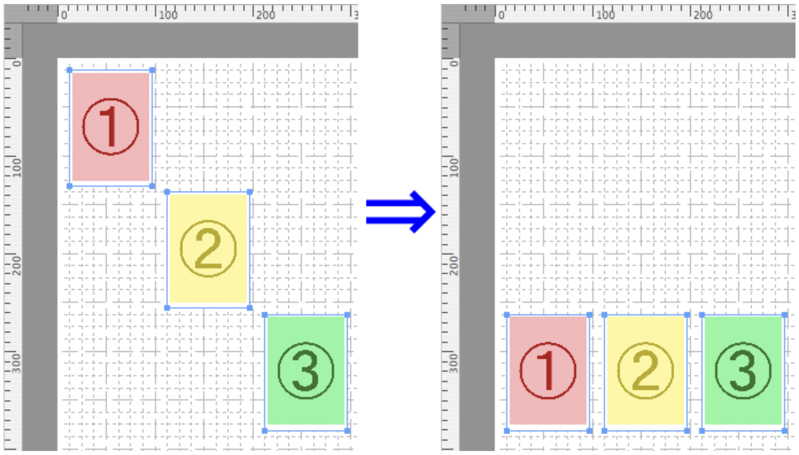
Center Vertically

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



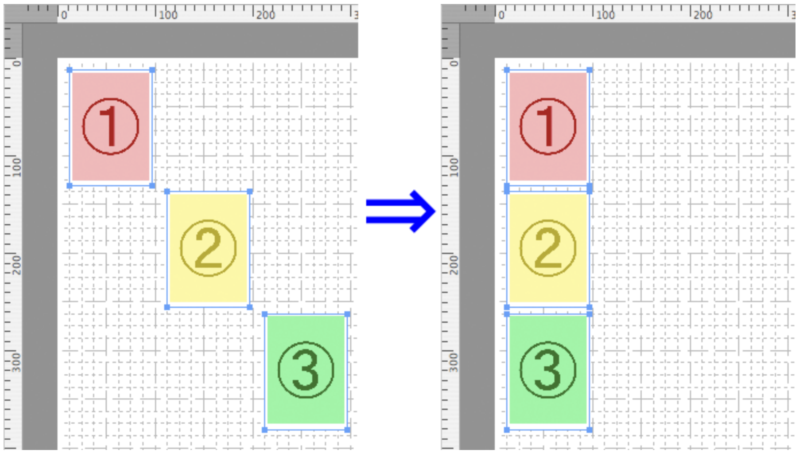
Align Bottom

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



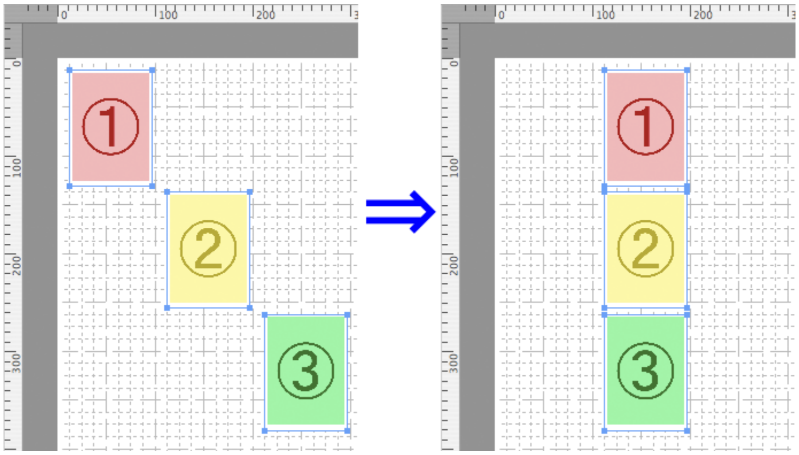
Align Left

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



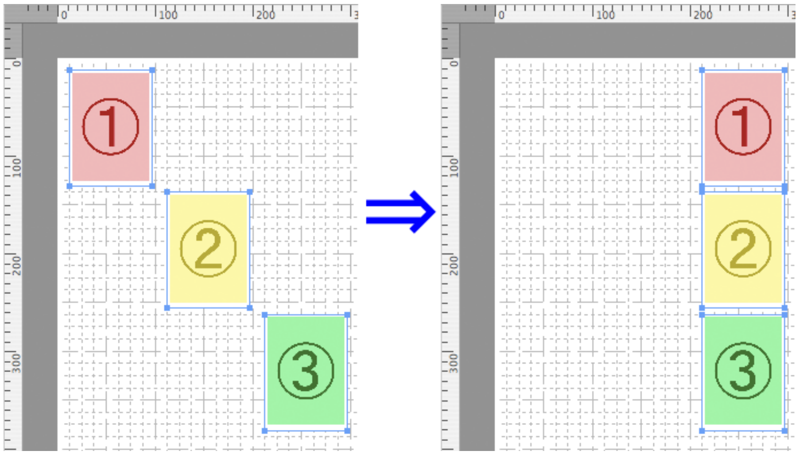
Center Horizontally

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



Align Right

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



Changing the Object Overlapping Order

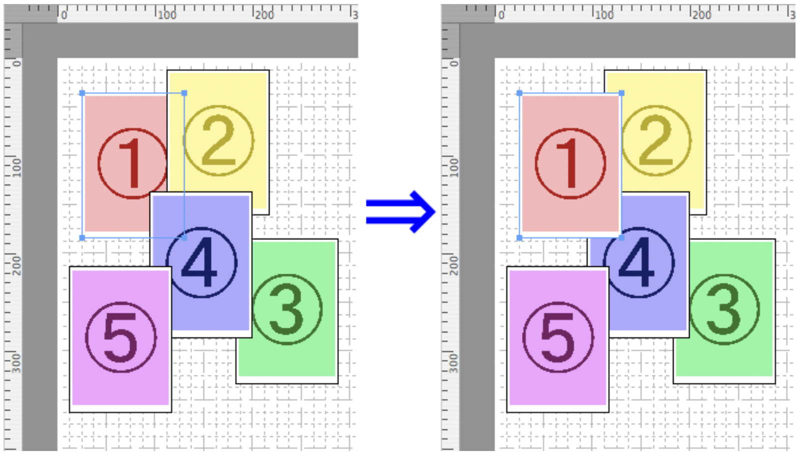
You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.

2. Select the overlapping order menu from the **Object** menu.

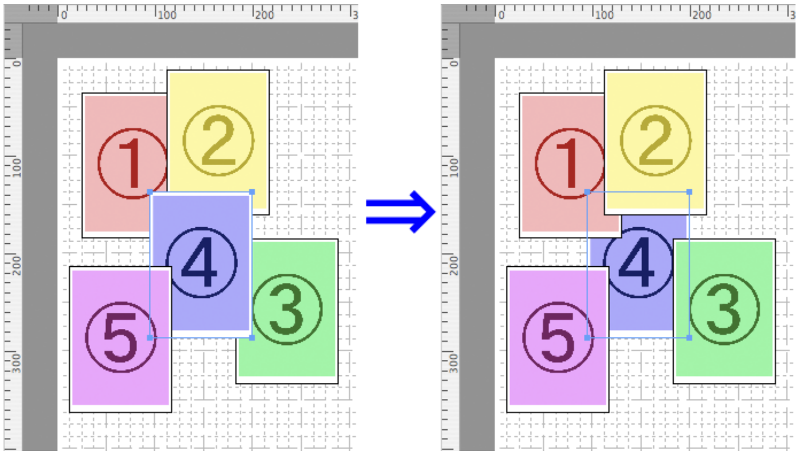
Bring to Front

Moves the object to the frontmost position.



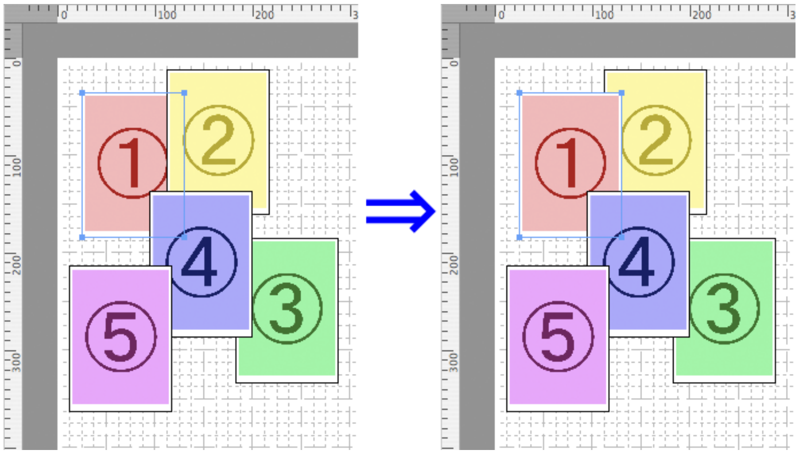
Send to Back

Moves the object to the backmost position.



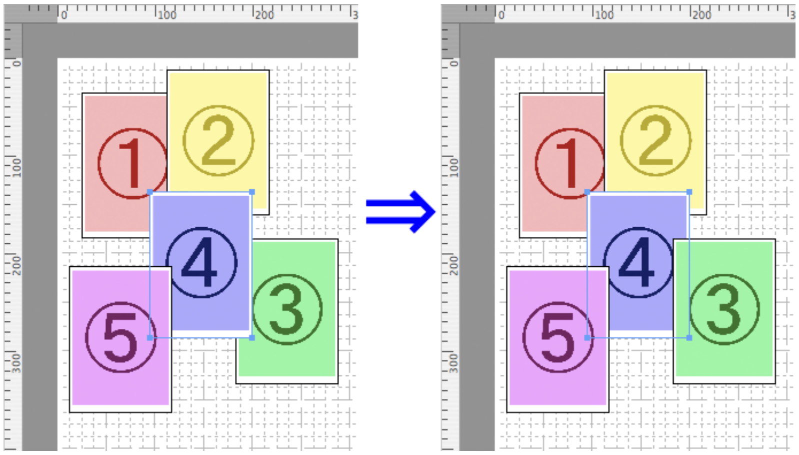
Bring Forward

Moves the object one position to the front.



Send Backward

Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click **Copy** or **Cut** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Copy** or **Cut** from the **Edit** menu.

2. Click **Paste** from the toolbar.
   Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.

Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

Operating Environment

You can use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy in the following environments.

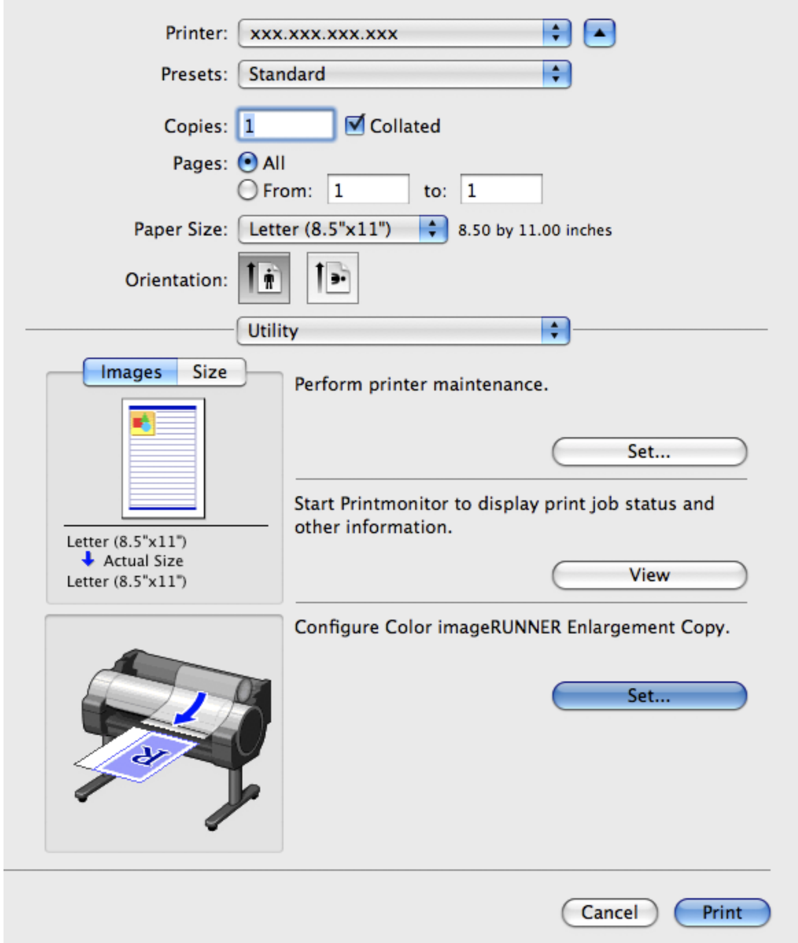
- Compatible Operating System
  Mac OS X (10.4.11 to 10.6)

- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

1. Open the **Utility** panel of the **Print** dialog box.



Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Presets: Standard

Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

Pages: ● All

○ From: 1 to: 1

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

Orientation:

Utility

Letter (8.5"x11")

Actual Size

Letter (8.5"x11")

Perform printer maintenance.

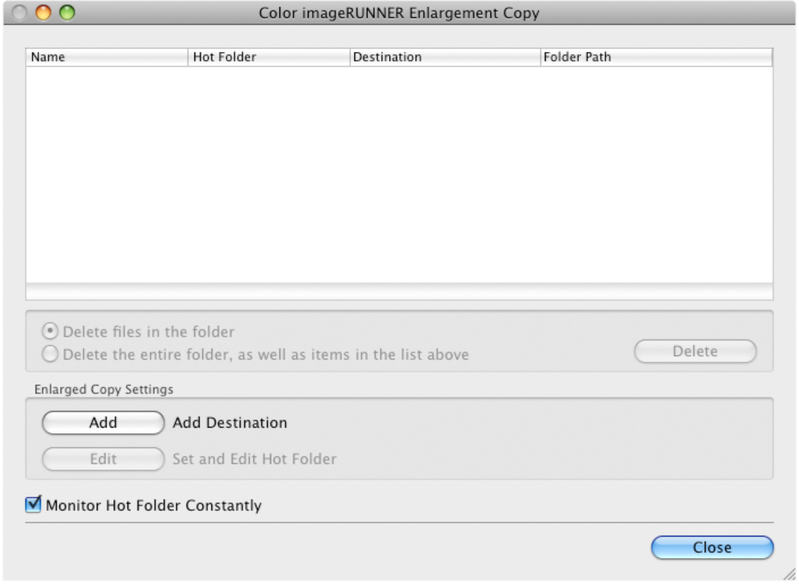
Start Printmonitor to display print job status and other information.

Configure Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

2. Click the **Set** button in **Configure Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.** to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.

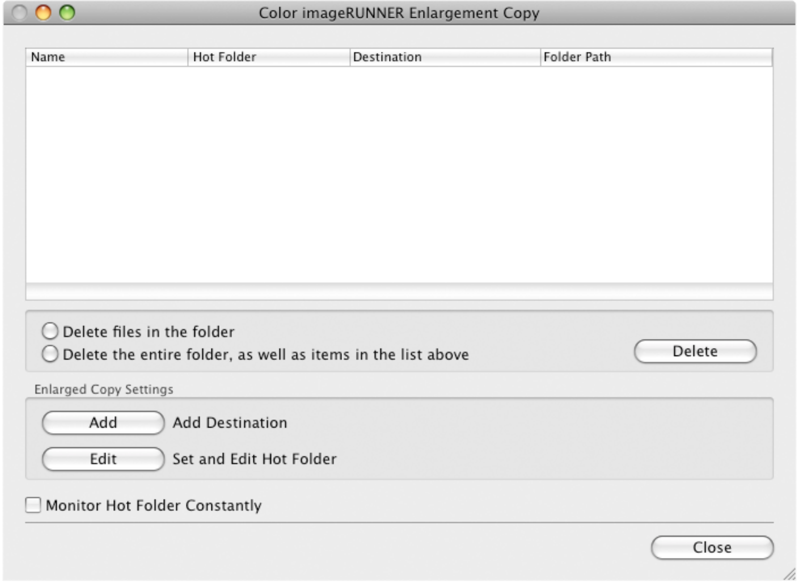

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
Name
Hot Folder
Destination
Folder Path
● Delete files in the folder
○ Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above
Delete
Enlarged Copy Settings
Add
Add Destination
Edit
Set and Edit Hot Folder
☑ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly
Close

Note

- You can also start the utility directly by clicking on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon in **Applications** > **Canon Utilities** > **iR Enlargement Copy**.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.


Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
Name
Hot Folder
Destination
Folder Path
○ Delete files in the folder
○ Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above
Delete
Enlarged Copy Settings
Add
Add Destination
Edit
Set and Edit Hot Folder
☐ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly
Close

Note

- For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.585

- **Delete files in the folder**

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete only files in the hot folder.

- **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above**

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete the hot folder.

- **Delete** Button

  Select **Delete files in the folder** or **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above** and click this button to delete the hot folder or only files in the hot folder.

- **Add** Button

  Click the button to open the **Destination Selection** dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

- **Edit** Button

  From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click this button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

- **Monitor Hot Folder Constantly**

  If you click on the check box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the Dock when starting OS X thereafter.

Hot Folder

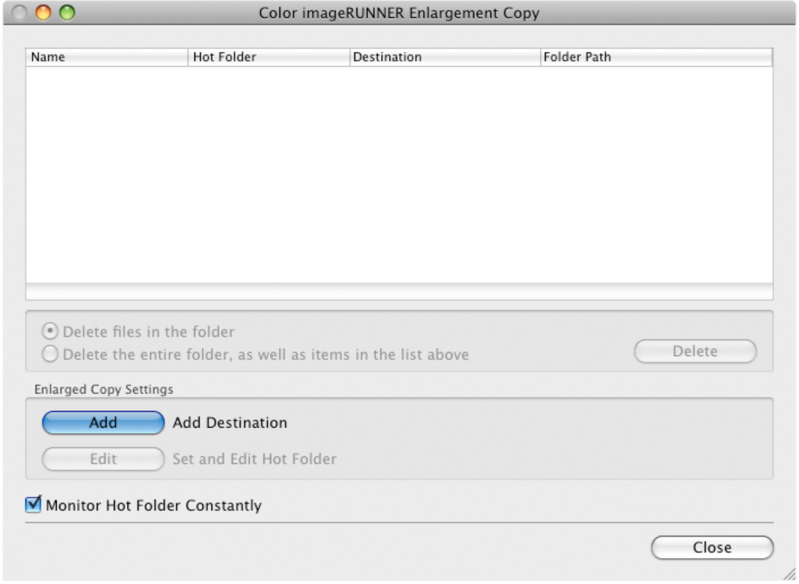
Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

> Note
> - You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Creating a New Hot Folder

1. Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.

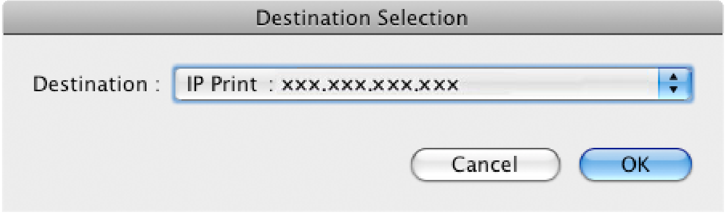


● Delete files in the folder
○ Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above

☑ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly

> **Note**
> - For the step to open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.585

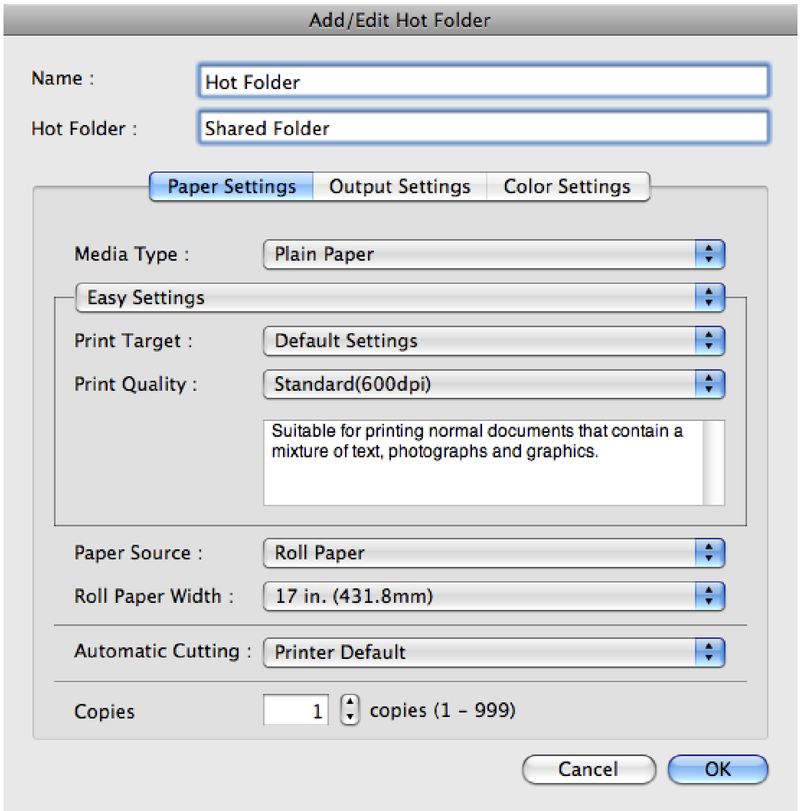
2. Click the **Add** button in **Enlarged Copy Settings** to open the **Destination Selection** dialog box.



Destination : IP Print : xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

3. From the printer list in **Destination**, select the printer of destination.

4. Click the **OK** button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.



Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

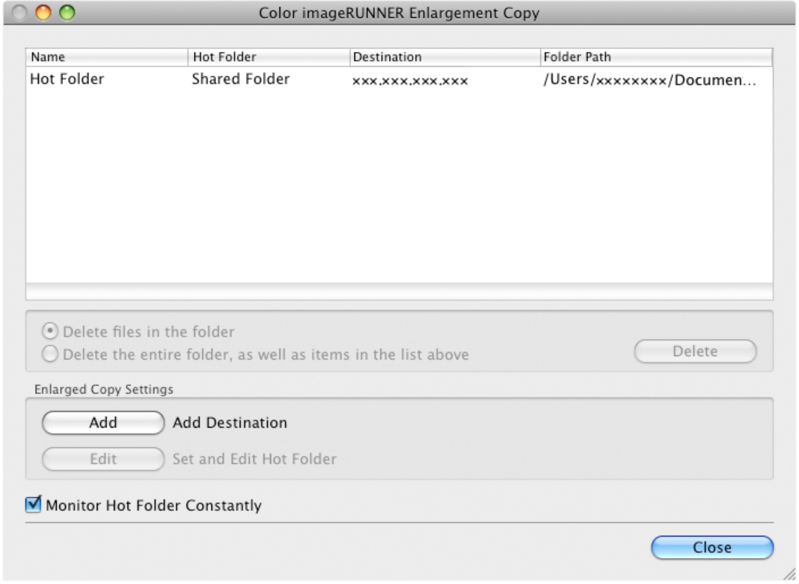
Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies 1 copies (1 - 999)

5. In **Name**, enter the name to display in the Hot Folder list.

6. In **Hot Folder**, enter the Hot Folder name.

7. Click the **OK** button. The created Hot Folder is listed in the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Name	Hot Folder	Destination	Folder Path
Hot Folder	Shared Folder	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	/Users/xxxxxxxx/Documen...

○ Delete files in the folder
○ Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above

Add Destination

Set and Edit Hot Folder

☑ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly

8. Click the **Close** button to close the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.

9. From the **Apple** Menu, open the **Sharing** dialog box for **System Preferences**.

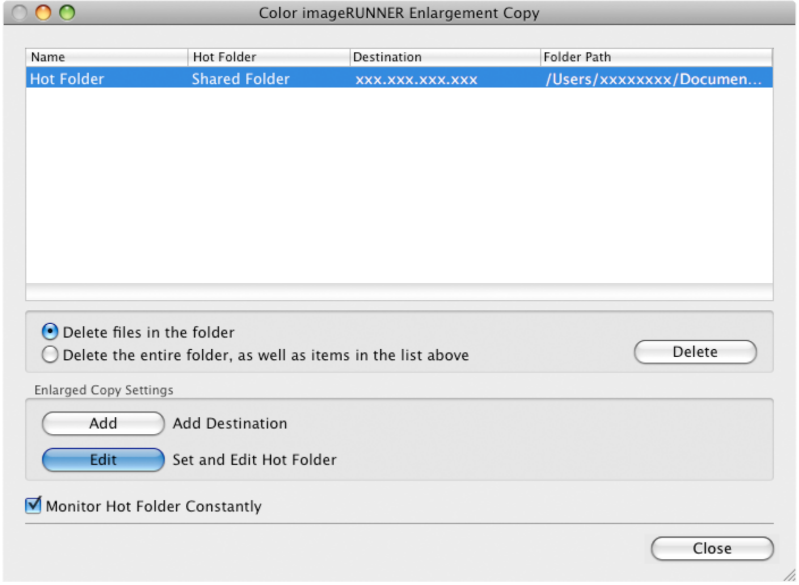
10. Select the check box labeled **File Sharing**, and click the **Options** button.

11. Select the check box labeled **Share files and folders using FTP** and **Share files and folders using SMB** to make shared settings.

> Note
> - You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions)

1. Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Name	Hot Folder	Destination	Folder Path
Hot Folder	Shared Folder	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	/Users/xxxxxxxx/Documen...

● Delete files in the folder
○ Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above

Enlarged Copy Settings

Add Destination

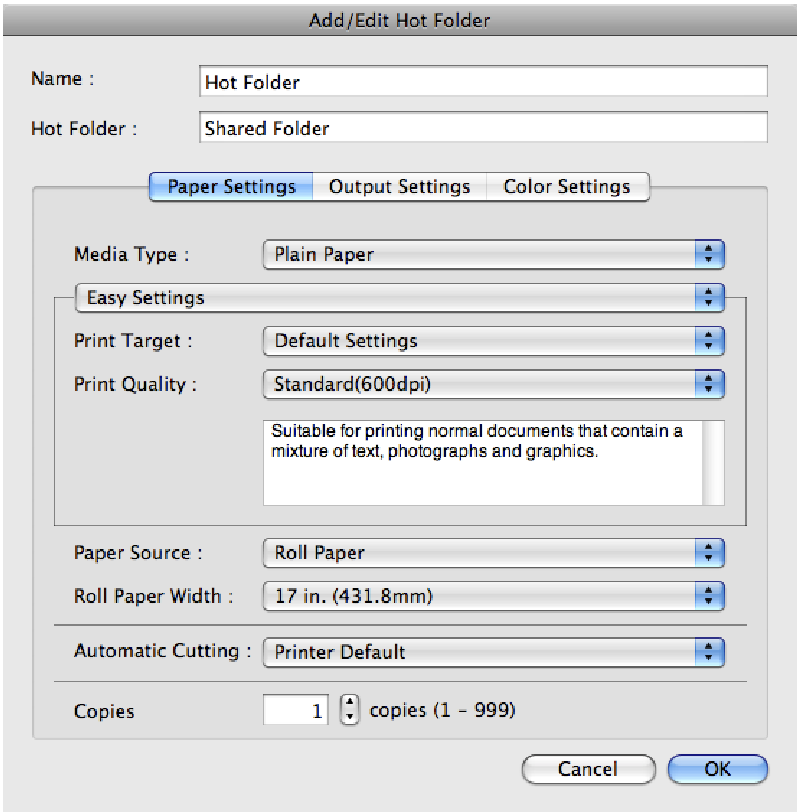
Set and Edit Hot Folder

☑ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly

2. Select the Hot Folder from the Hot Folder list.

3. From **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Edit** button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

4. Make the necessary settings in the Paper Settings Panel →P.595 .



Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

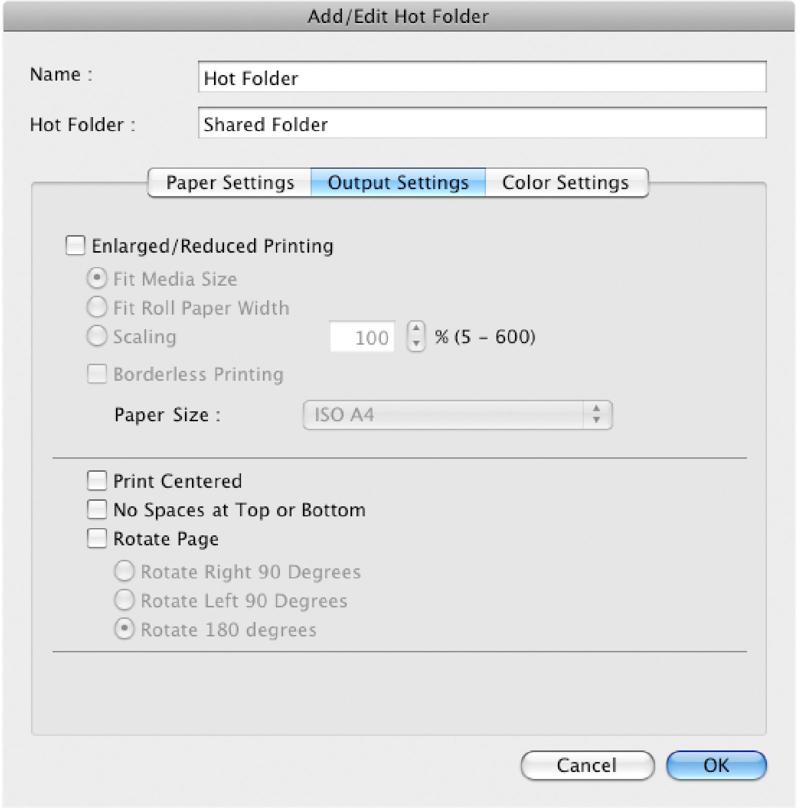
Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies 1 copies (1 – 999)

5. Make the necessary settings in the Output Settings Panel →P.600 .



Add/Edit Hot Folder

Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Media Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling 100 % (5 – 600)

☐ Borderless Printing

Paper Size : ISO A4

☐ Print Centered

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom

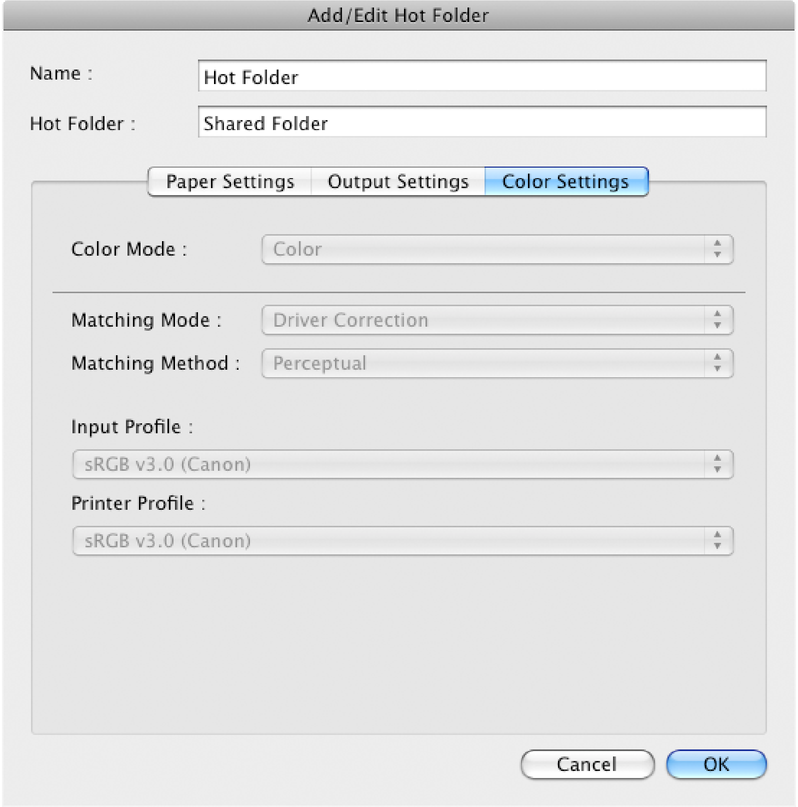
☐ Rotate Page

○ Rotate Right 90 Degrees

○ Rotate Left 90 Degrees

● Rotate 180 degrees

6. Make the necessary settings in the Color Settings Panel →P.602 .



7. Click the **OK** button to close the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

8. From the **Apple** Menu, open the **Sharing** dialog box for **System Preferences**.

9. Select the check box labeled **File Sharing**, and click the **Options** button.

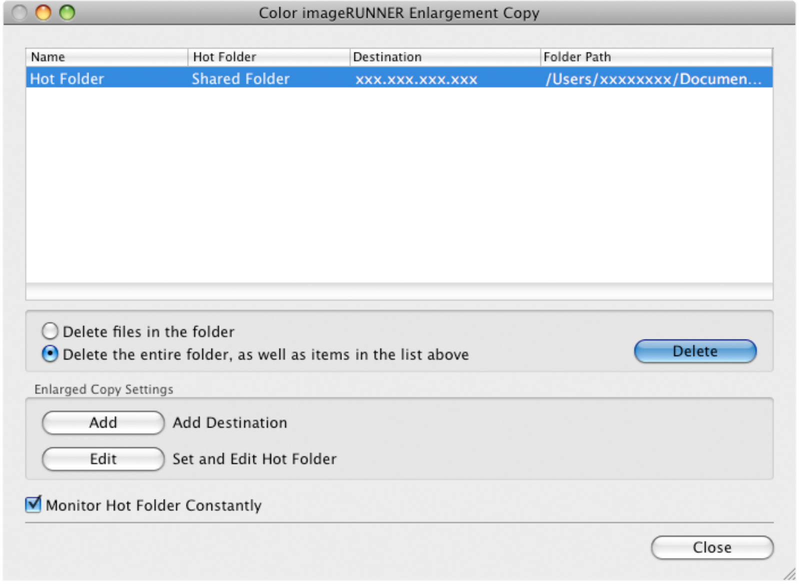
10. Select the check box labeled **Share files and folders using FTP** and **Share files and folders using SMB** to make shared settings.

Note

- If you've made shared settings when you created a new Hot Folder, you do not need to execute steps 8 to 10.

Deleting a Hot Folder

1. Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

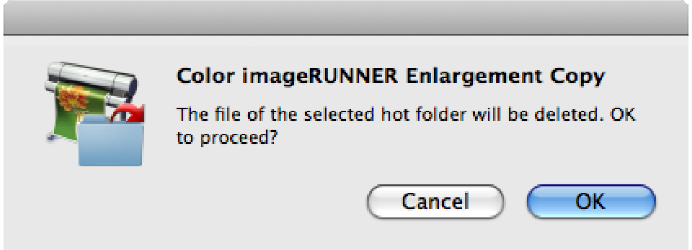
Name	Hot Folder	Destination	Folder Path
Hot Folder	Shared Folder	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	/Users/xxxxxxxx/Documen...

○ Delete files in the folder
● Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above

☑ Monitor Hot Folder Constantly

2. Select the Hot Folder you want to delete from the Hot Folder list.

3. Select **Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above**, and then click the **Delete** button.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The file of the selected hot folder will be deleted. OK to proceed?

4. Read the messag,e and then click the **OK** button.

Note

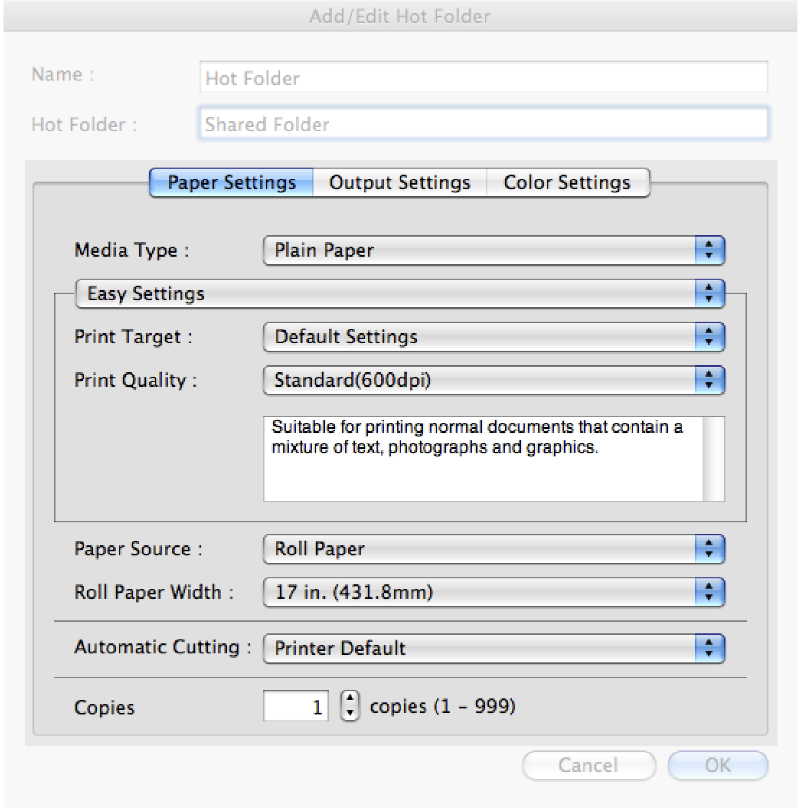
- Select **Delete files in the folder** to delete only files in the hot folder.

Setting the Print Parameters

You can set the print conditions in the setting panels within the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.
The settings available on each panel are as follows.

- Paper Settings Panel →P.595
- Output Settings Panel →P.600
- Color Settings Panel →P.602

Paper Settings Panel



Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies 1 copies (1 – 999)

Easy Settings / Advanced Settings

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings →P.597
- Advanced Settings →P.598

Media Type

This allows you to select the media type.

> **Note**
>
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Cut Sheet	Select to print on the cut sheet.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Automatic Cutting**

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The value set on the printer operation panel takes priority.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Copies**

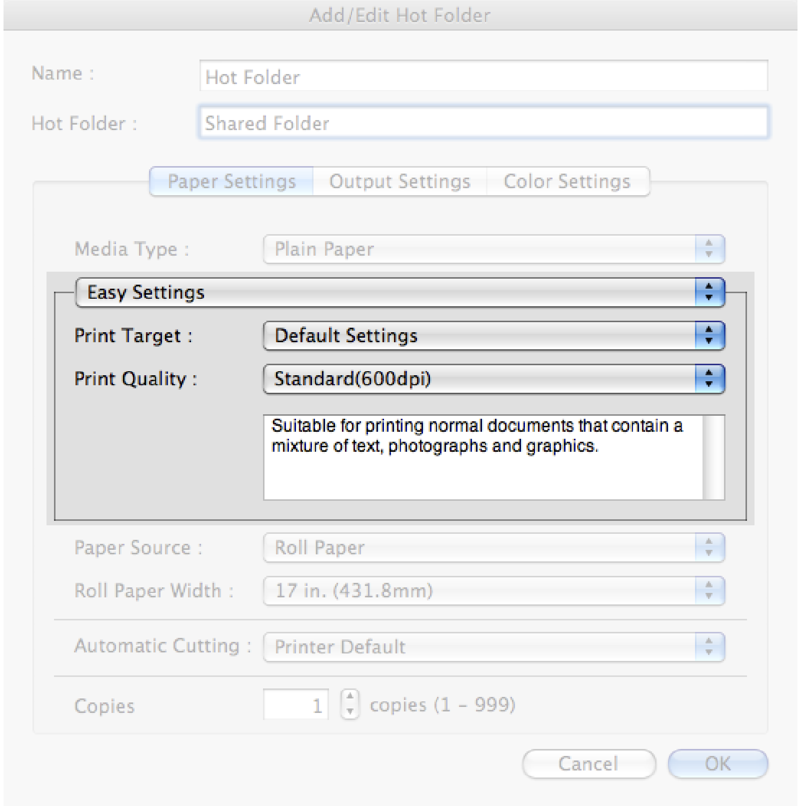
You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note

- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



Add/Edit Hot Folder

Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies 1 copies (1 - 999)

• Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each **Print Target** item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Photo (Monochrome)	Suitable for optimized printing of monochrome photos.
Poster	The best setting for posters.Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
Photo (Adobe RGB)	Achieves the best color when printing an image created with the Adobe RGB color space feature.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

• Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

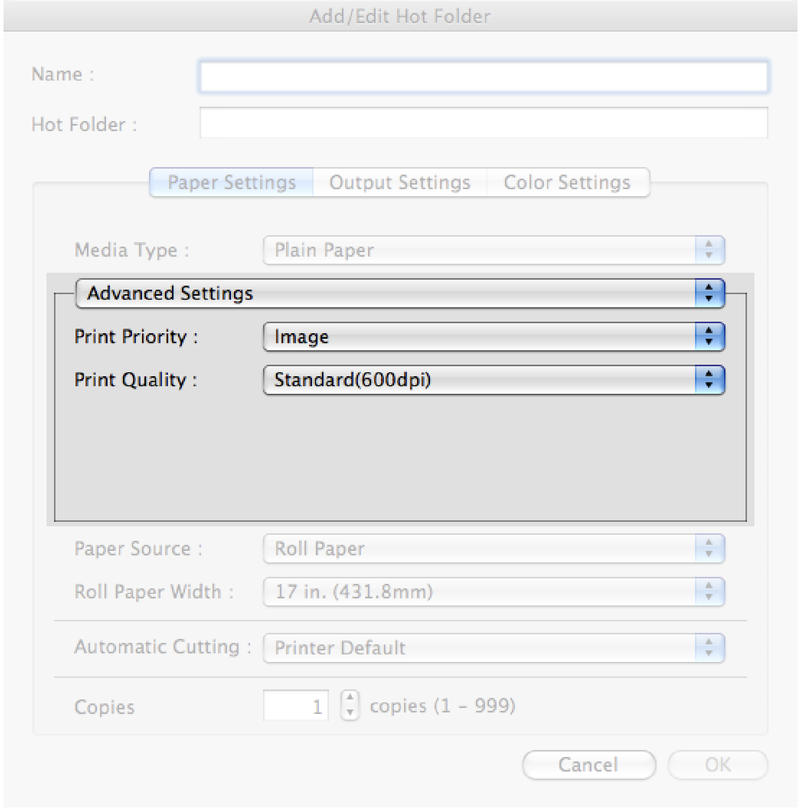
Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



Add/Edit Hot Folder

Name :

Hot Folder :

Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard(600dpi)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm)

Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

Copies 1 copies (1 – 999)

- **Print Priority**

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select **Image**.
Proof	This is a setting for enhancing the reproducibility of characters, illustrations, and photos with print proofing.However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.

Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

- **Print Quality**

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

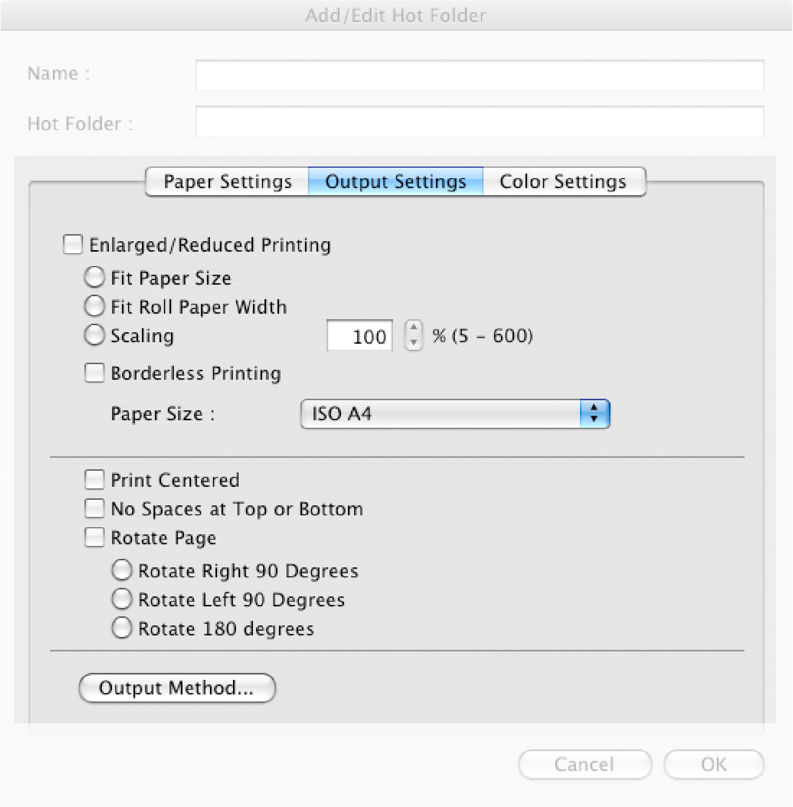
The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	**High** / **Standard** / **Fast**
Resolution	**600dpi** / **300dpi**

Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Fast** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Output Settings Panel



- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from **Paper Size**.
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for **Roll Paper Width** in the **Paper Settings** panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

- **Borderless Printing**

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Paper Size**

You can select the size of the print media.

Note

- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

- **Print Centered**

Select this feature to print the image in the center of a cut sheet or to print left and right margins evenly from the edges of roll paper.

Note

- This feature is useful when you print the document enlarged or reduced with **Scaling** as well. When an image is scaled, it is always enlarged or reduced in reference to a starting point in the upper left corner of the page. If the image is reduced, the bottom and right margins are enlarged and the top and left margins remain unchanged. At that point, you can set all margins evenly with this feature.

- **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**

You can set the printer to print without any empty area when the print data contains empty area at the top or bottom. Since the printer does not feed paper over the empty area, you can save paper.

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Rotate Page**

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

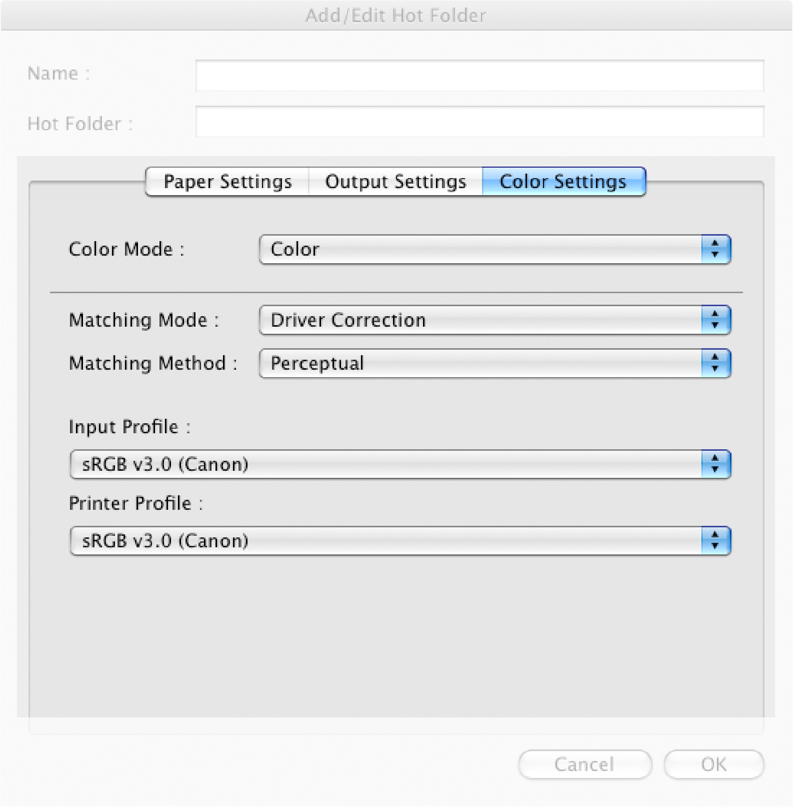
- **Output Method** Button

Click the button to open the **Output Method** dialog box.

In this dialog box, you can specify the object output method.

Note
- To print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space, select **Save data before printing**.

Color Settings Panel



Color Mode : Color

Matching Mode : Driver Correction

Matching Method : Perceptual

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

• Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome (Photo)	Prints monochrome photo image data in a gray scale that is free of color casting (phenomenon of grays that appear tinted).
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.

Note
- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

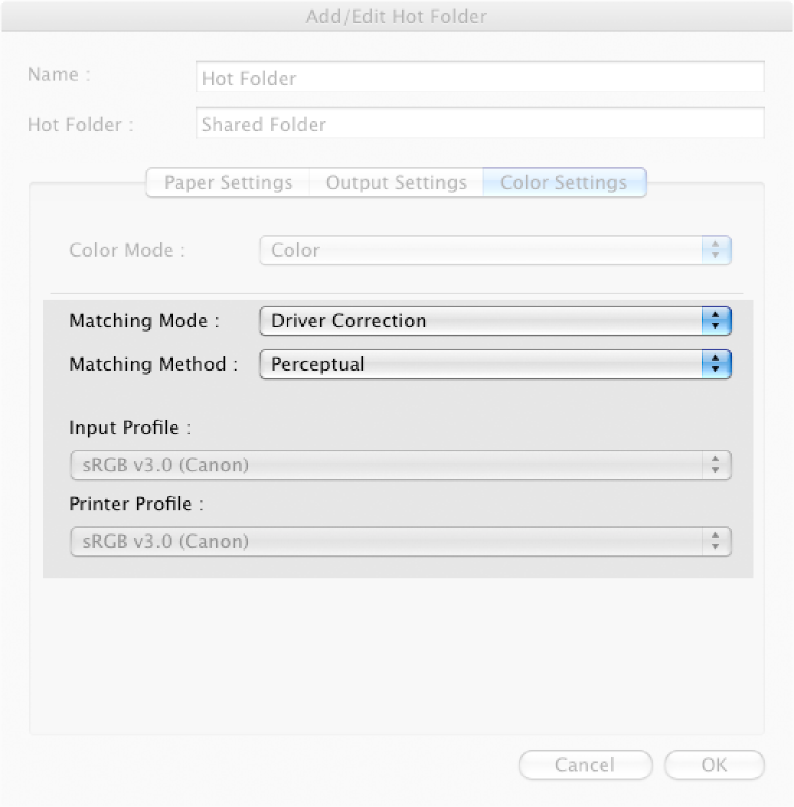
• Matching Mode

Under **Matching Mode**, select the matching mode.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.603	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should normally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.604	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
ColorSync →P.605	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.
No Correction	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



Name : Hot Folder

Hot Folder : Shared Folder

Color Mode : Color

Matching Mode : Driver Correction

Matching Method : Perceptual

Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

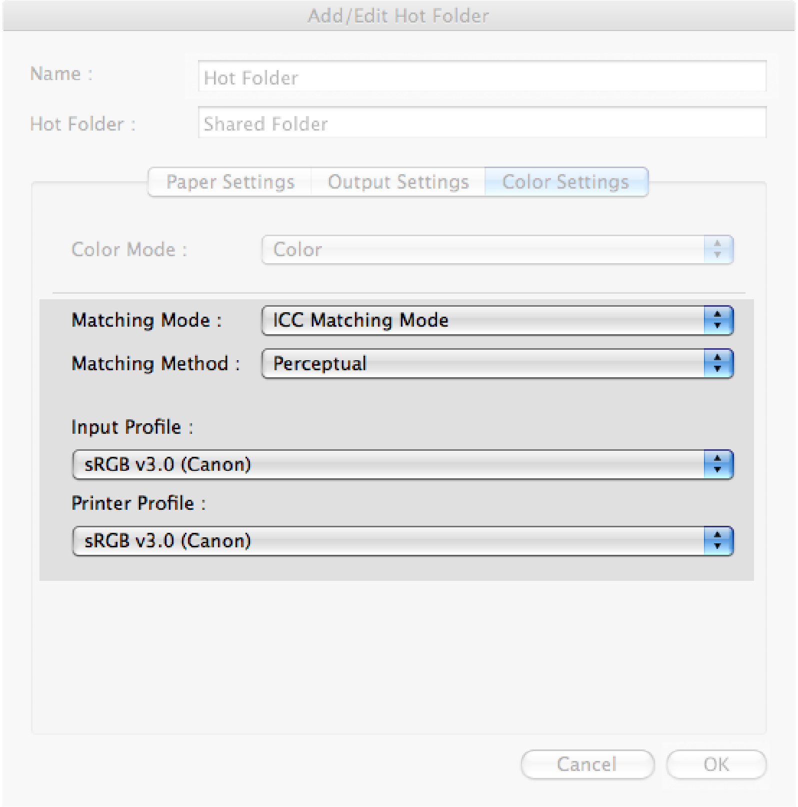
2. Click **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.

Setting	Details
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

ICC Matching Mode

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



Name : Hot Folder
Hot Folder : Shared Folder
Color Mode : Color
Matching Mode : ICC Matching Mode
Matching Method : Perceptual
Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

2. Click **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

Setting	Details
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to **Colorimetric**. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3. Click the **Input Profile** list, and then select an input profile.

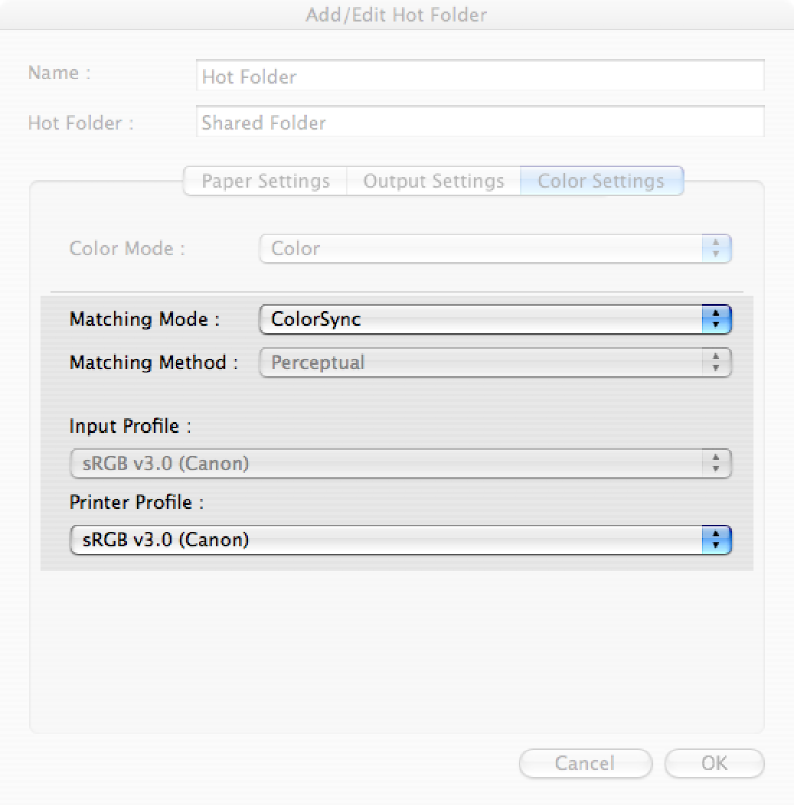
Note

- To match the color on the printing, select the input profile for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy of the Color imageRUNNER type in use.

4. Click the **Printer Profile** list, and then select a printer profile.

ColorSync

1. Under **Matching Mode**, select **ColorSync**.



Name : Hot Folder
Hot Folder : Shared Folder
Color Mode : Color
Matching Mode : ColorSync
Matching Method : Perceptual
Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)

2. Click the **Printer Profile** list, and then select a printer profile.

Note

- Available when using Mac OS X 10.4.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

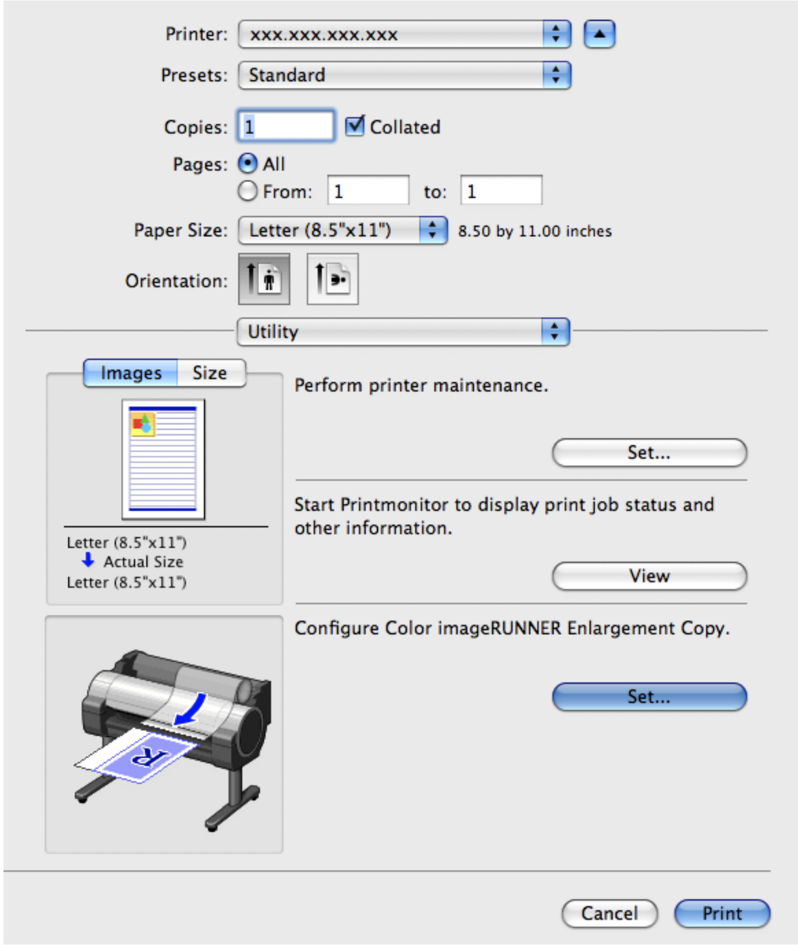
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities — iR Enlargement Copy** in the **Applications** folder or click **Set** in the **Utility** pane



Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Presets: Standard

Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

Pages: ● All

○ From: 1 to: 1

Paper Size: Letter (8.5"x11") 8.50 by 11.00 inches

Orientation:

Utility

Perform printer maintenance.

Start Printmonitor to display print job status and other information.

Configure Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Letter (8.5"x11")
Actual Size
Letter (8.5"x11")

Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.

2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.

3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.

4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional

The Features of Print Plug-In

The main features of Print Plug-In are as follows.

- You can automatically detect the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB-use images, etc., and automatically set optimal profiles. Thus, you can print without the trouble of configuring settings.
- You can directly process image data on Photoshop, and forward the image data to a printer. In this way, you can process 16-bit image data in addition to 8-bit image data.
- By using the preview function for images based on real images, and the preview function for layouts based on image positioning by media size, you can use this software to make color adjustments and confirm print layout.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.
- By using the print history management function, you can import past print settings parameters. Additionally, you can save preferences as a file.

Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Print Plug-In settings (the arrangement of the image in the layout preview, the print start position, and the media size).

- Loss of gradation in dark areas can be reduced by performing black point compensation.

Note

- Adobe CMM is required in order to use the black point compensation function.

- You can perform printing press simulation printing by specifying the printing press profile.

Operating Environment

The Print Plug-In operating environment is as follows.

- Compatible Operating System
  Mac OS X (10.4.8 or later)
- Compatible Photoshop Version
  Photoshop CS5, Photoshop CS4, Photoshop CS3
- Compatible Digital Photo Professional Version
  Digital Photo Professional Version 3.8x or later
- Software needed for Print Plug-In Installation
  Photoshop or Digital Photo Professional, imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Note

- The supported OS version differs for each version of Photoshop. Check with Adobe for details.
- The supported OS version differs for each version of Digital Photo Professional.
- Operation in Mac OS X Classic is not guaranteed.

Installation Procedures

The procedures to install Print Plug-In are as follows.

Note

- Always install the printer driver before installing the Print Plug-In.

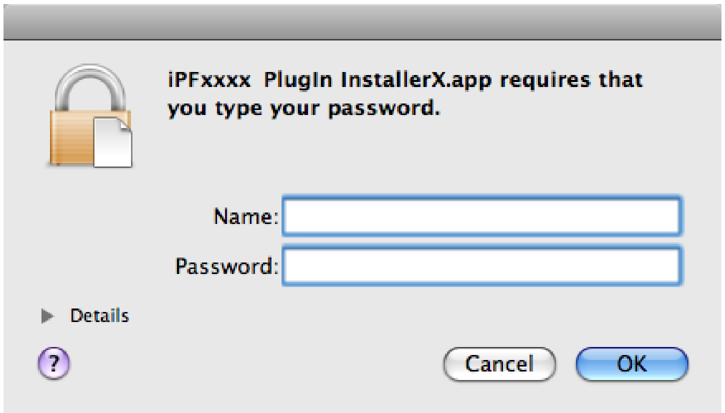
1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive to start the installer.

2. Click on the **iPFxxxx PlugIn InstallerX** icon in the **Plug-in** folder in the User Software CD-ROM.

Note

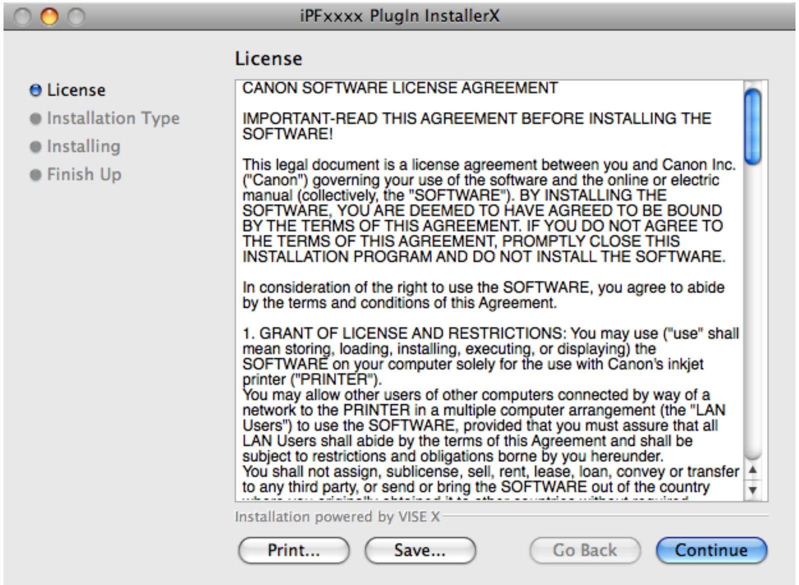
- The iPFxxxx icon is the name of the printer you are using.

3. Input the Administrator name and password and click the **OK** button.



iPFxxxx PlugIn InstallerX.app requires that you type your password.

4. After you have read the software User's Licensing Agreement, click the **Continue** button.



CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

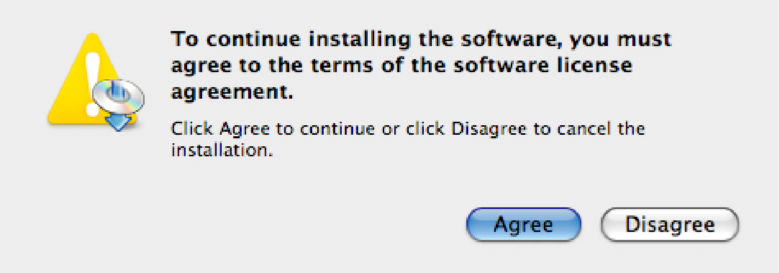
This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE AND RESTRICTIONS: You may use ("use" shall mean storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying) the SOFTWARE on your computer solely for the use with Canon's inkjet printer ("PRINTER").
You may allow other users of other computers connected by way of a network to the PRINTER in a multiple computer arrangement (the "LAN Users") to use the SOFTWARE, provided that you must assure that all LAN Users shall abide by the terms of this Agreement and shall be subject to restrictions and obligations borne by you hereunder.
You shall not assign, sublicense, sell, rent, lease, loan, convey or transfer to any third party, or send or bring the SOFTWARE out of the country

Installation powered by VISE X

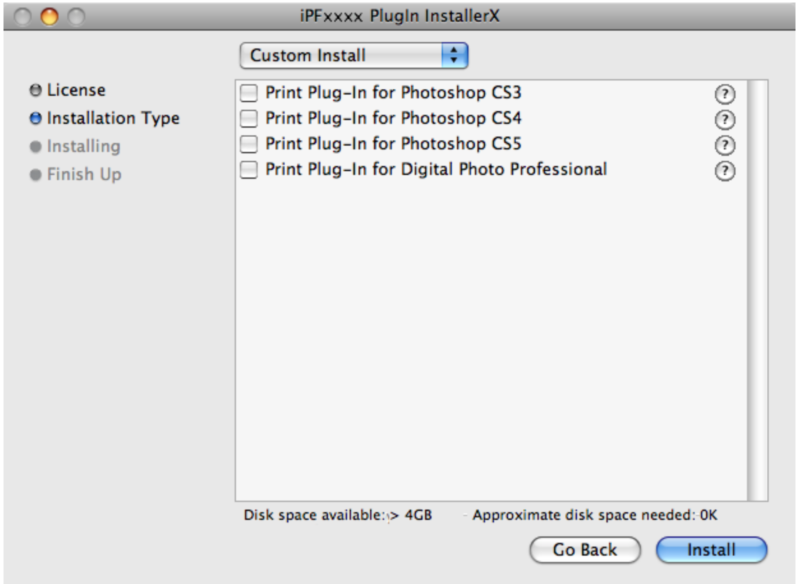
5. Click the **Agree** button.



To continue installing the software, you must agree to the terms of the software license agreement.

Click Agree to continue or click Disagree to cancel the installation.

6. Select **Custom Install** to put a checkmark on your Print Plug-In, then click the **Install** button.

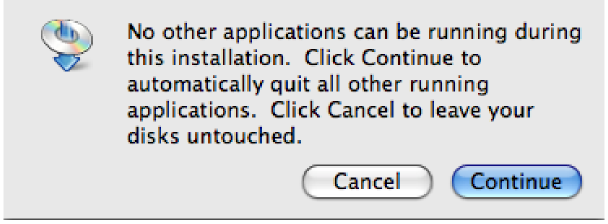


Custom Install

☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS3
☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS4
☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS5
☐ Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional

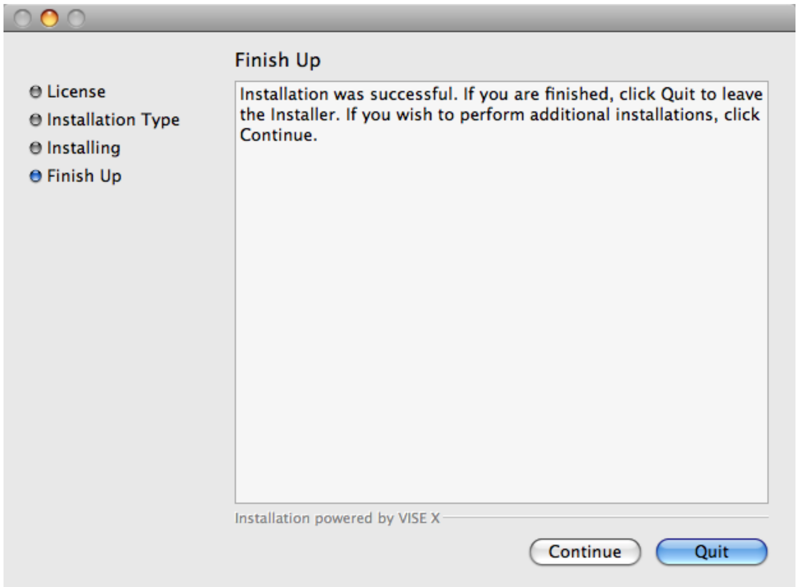
Disk space available: > 4GB
Approximate disk space needed: 0K

7. To quit another application, click the **Continue** button.



No other applications can be running during this installation. Click Continue to automatically quit all other running applications. Click Cancel to leave your disks untouched.

8. Click the **Quit** button.



Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue.

The Print Plug-In installation is complete.

Uninstall Procedures

The procedures for uninstalling the Print Plug-In are as follows.

- Uninstall Print Plug-In for Photoshop

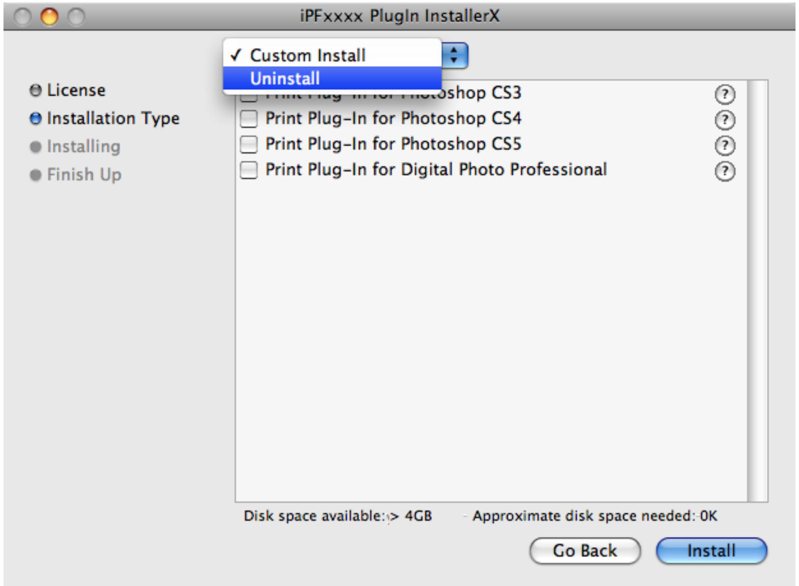
1. Close Photoshop.
2. In Finder, display the **Print Plugin for iPFxxxx** folder.
3. Delete the **Print Plugin for iPFxxxx** folder.

Note
- iPFxxxx is the name of your printer.

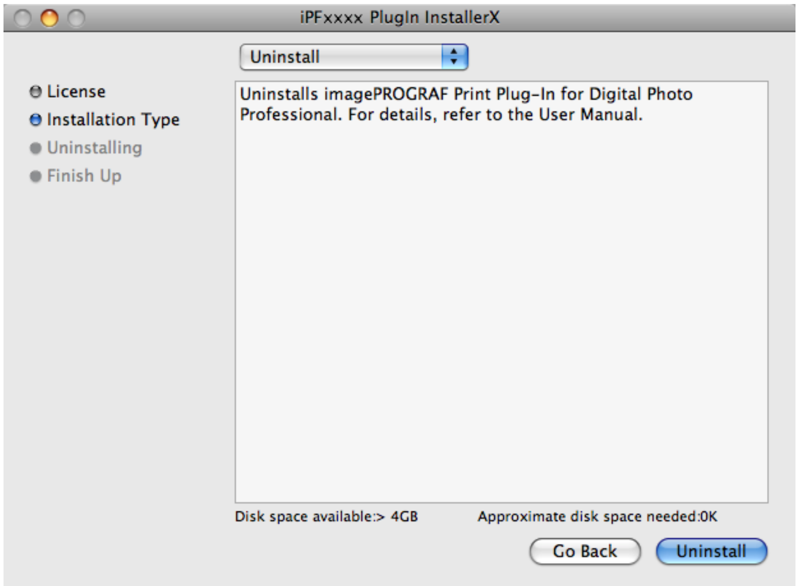
- Uninstall Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional

1. Perform the installation procedures 1 through 5.

2. Select **Uninstall**.

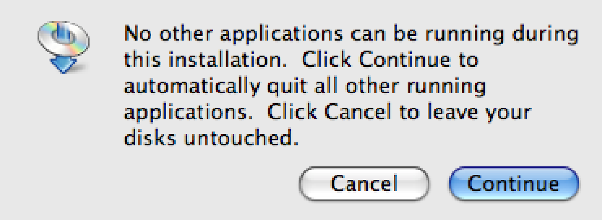

iPFxxxx PlugIn InstallerX
✓ Custom Install
Uninstall
License
Installation Type
Installing
Finish Up
☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS3
☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS4
☐ Print Plug-In for Photoshop CS5
☐ Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional
Disk space available:> 4GB
Approximate disk space needed: 0K
Go Back
Install

3. Click the **Uninstall** button.


iPFxxxx PlugIn InstallerX
Uninstall
License
Installation Type
Uninstalling
Finish Up
Disk space available:> 4GB
Approximate disk space needed:0K
Go Back
Uninstall

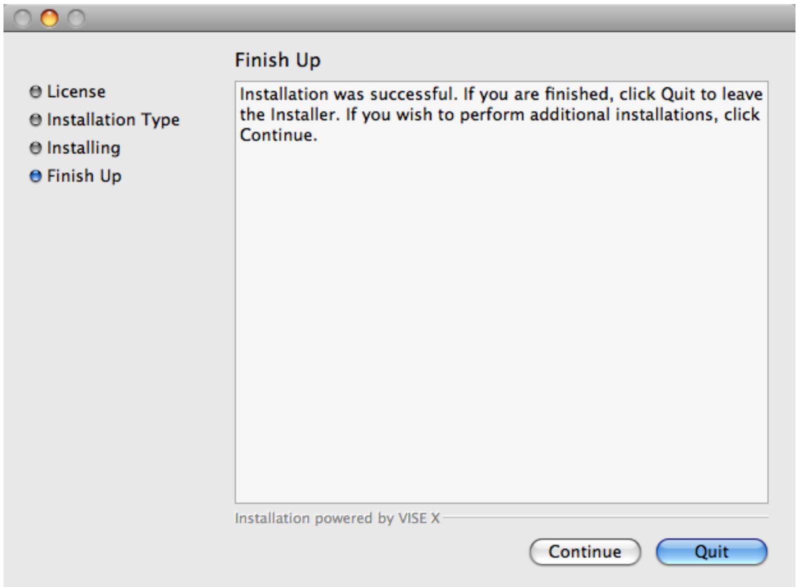
Uninstalls imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional. For details, refer to the User Manual.

4. To quit another application, click on the **Continue** button.



No other applications can be running during this installation. Click Continue to automatically quit all other running applications. Click Cancel to leave your disks untouched.

5. Click the **Quit** button.



Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue.

Starting from Photoshop

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In from Photoshop.

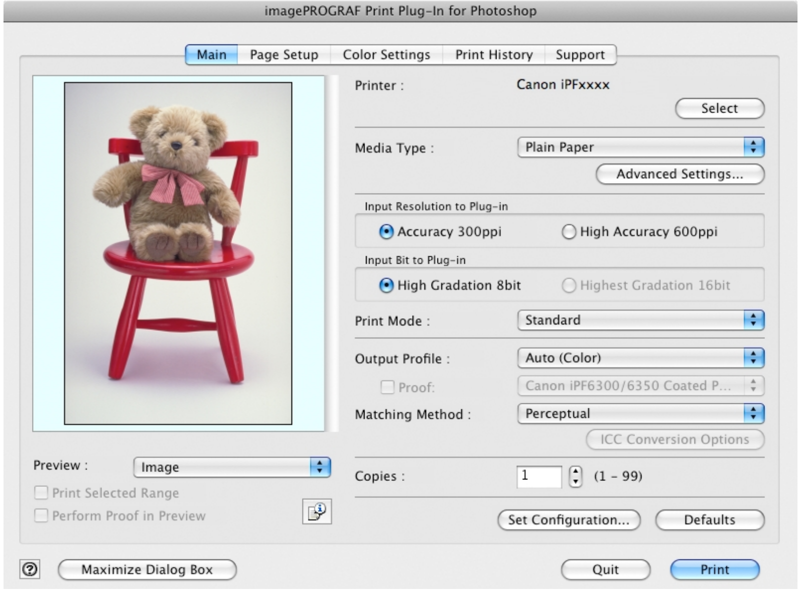
1. Start Photoshop.

2. Open the image that you wish to print.

3. If required, select the print range.

> Note
>
> - Images for use with Print Plug-In are less than 60,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 60,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **Export** (or **Data Export**) from the **File** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer. The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop window (known below as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in

● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 – 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Note

- When the color space of the input image is CMYK, it is changed to AdobeRGB for processing with Print Plug-In. Also, **Relative Colorimetric** is used for the matching method.
- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, install the newest imagePROGRAF printer driver and then attempt step 3.
  To install imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In, the latest version of the imagePROGRAF printer driver must be installed.
- If the following message is displayed, but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, open only one Photoshop.
  When Photoshop is running in multiple windows, the plug-in may not start.
- If the message below is displayed but the Print Plug-In window is not displayed, convert the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color and then attempt step 3.
  Set the color space of the image to either RGB color, grayscale, or CMYK color.

Starting from Digital Photo Professional

Follow the procedure below to start the Print Plug-In from Digital Photo Professional.

1. Start Digital Photo Professional.

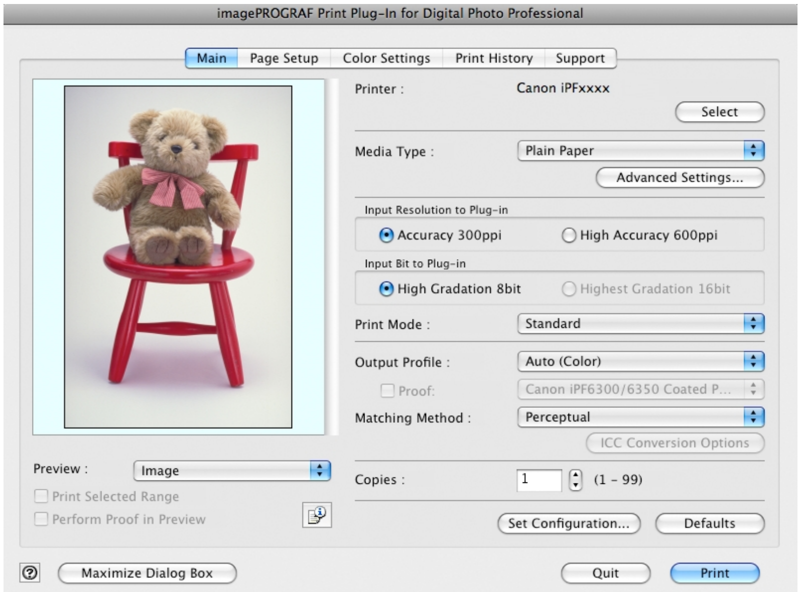
2. Open the RGB color image that you want to print.

3. If required, select the print range.

Note

- Images for use with Print Plug-In are less than 6,000 pixels in width and height. Reduce the selection range or reduce the image with processing for images more than 6,000 pixels in width and height, and then attempt step 3.

4. Select **File** from the **Plug-in printing** menu and then select the output plug-in that matches your printer.
The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional window (hereinafter referred to as the Print Plug-In window) is displayed.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

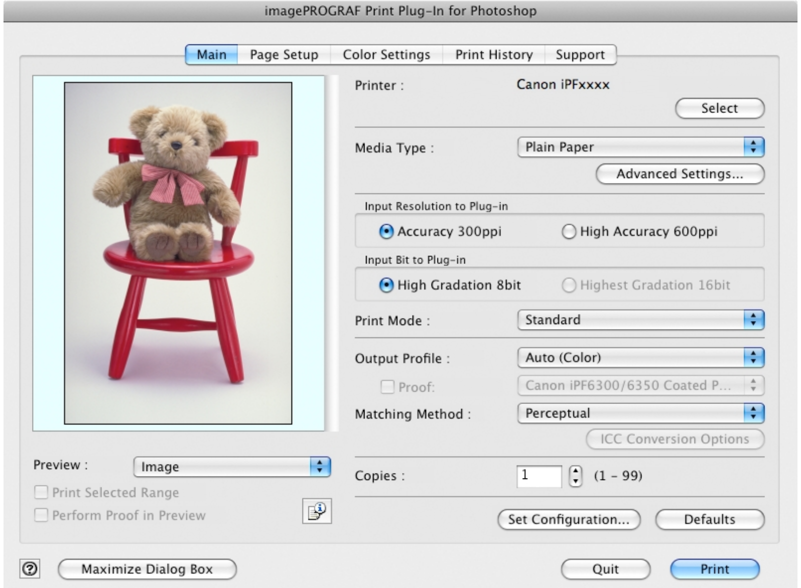
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Print Plug-In Main Window

The Print Plug-In main window consists of the sheet selection area, and the preview and button area.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

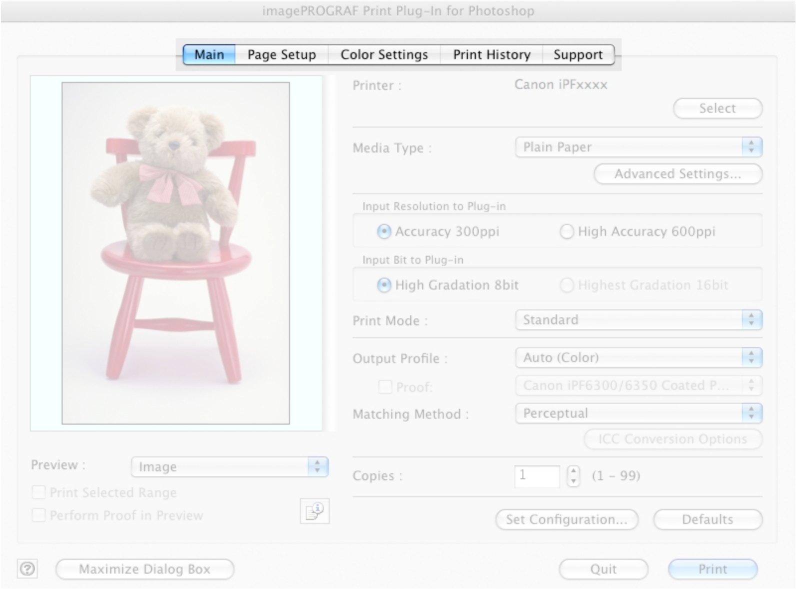
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Sheet Selection Area**

The tabs used to switch between each sheet on the Print Plug-In window are displayed.



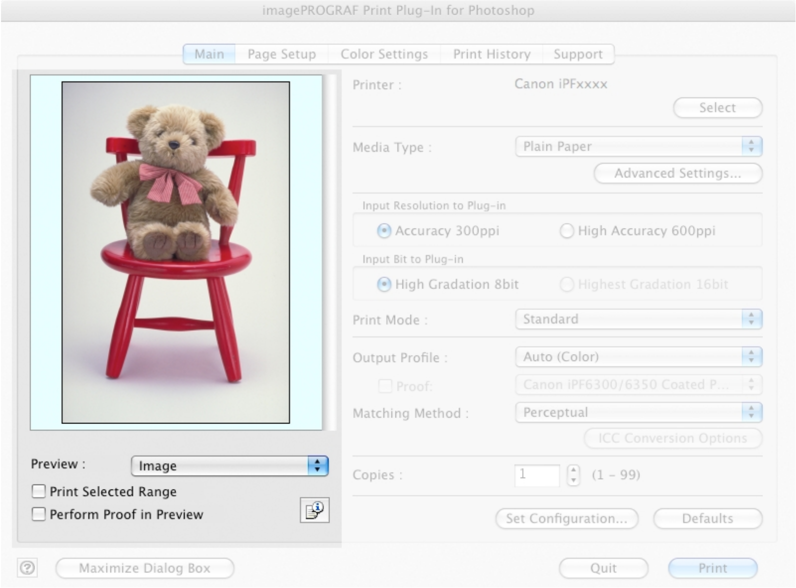
Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type : Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode : Standard
Output Profile : Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...
Matching Method : Perceptual
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

When you select a tab, a sheet is displayed. The settings available on each sheet are as follows.

- Main Sheet →P.621
- Page Setup Sheet →P.624
- Color Settings Sheet →P.627
- Print History Sheet →P.628
- Support Sheet →P.629

- **Preview Area**

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.

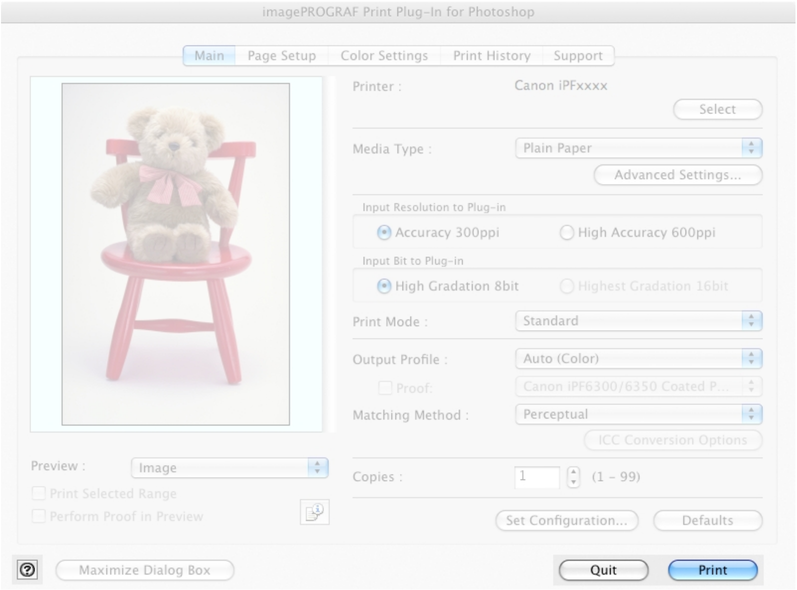


Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type : Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode : Standard
Output Profile : Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...
Matching Method : Perceptual
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

About the settings available on the preview area, see "Preview Area." →P.619

• Button Area

This contains the buttons **Print**, **Quit** and **Help**



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

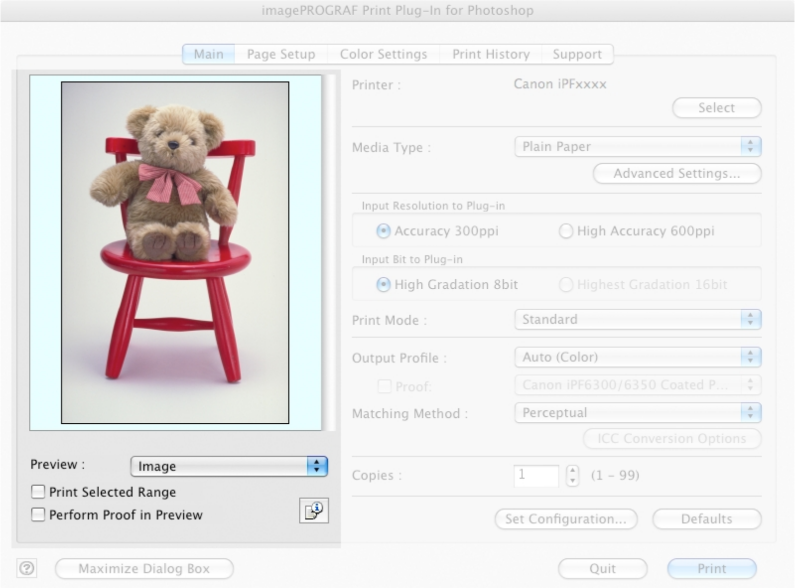
- **Print**Button
  Click this button to begin printing.

- **Quit**Button
  Click this button to close the Print Plug-In window and return to application software.

- ? Button
  Click this button to display the Print Plug-In Help file.

Preview Area

You can check the settings you made on the image in this area.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

4

- **Preview**

Select the preview display method.

For more information about preview, see "Utilize Three Types of Previews." →P.638

Setting	Details
Print Area Layout	Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the **Paper Size** set. *You can change the image print position when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as ✋.
Image	The entire image is displayed. *You can select the print range when you drag the image while the cursor is displayed as +. *When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as 🔍, the selected area is deselected.
Roll Paper Preview	Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper. *To select **Roll Paper Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

- **Print Selected Range**

Place a checkmark here to only print the selected range.

> Note
>
> - When you select **Preview** in the **Image**, then select a portion of the image on the preview display, this becomes valid.

- **Perform Proof in Preview**

Place a checkmark here to simulate the colors of the output product in the preview.

> Note
>
> - If **Auto (Color)** is selected under **Output Profile**, some media types are enabled.
> - If ICC profile is selected under **Output Profile**, this is always enabled.
> - The actual color balance of the print product and the simulation product may differ with some environments and conditions. In addition, when you have selected an ICC Profile with **Output Profile** and it is not compatible with the printer or media that you are using, the color balance of the actual print product will differ.

- **Image Properties** button

When you click the ⓘ button to open the **Image Properties** dialog box, where **Image Size**, **Resolution**, **Bit** and **Color Space** information of the image imported to Print Plug-In are displayed.

Click the **Close** button to return to Print Plug-In.

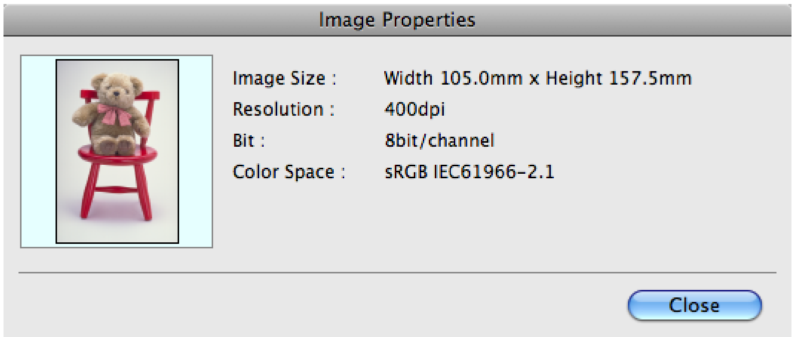
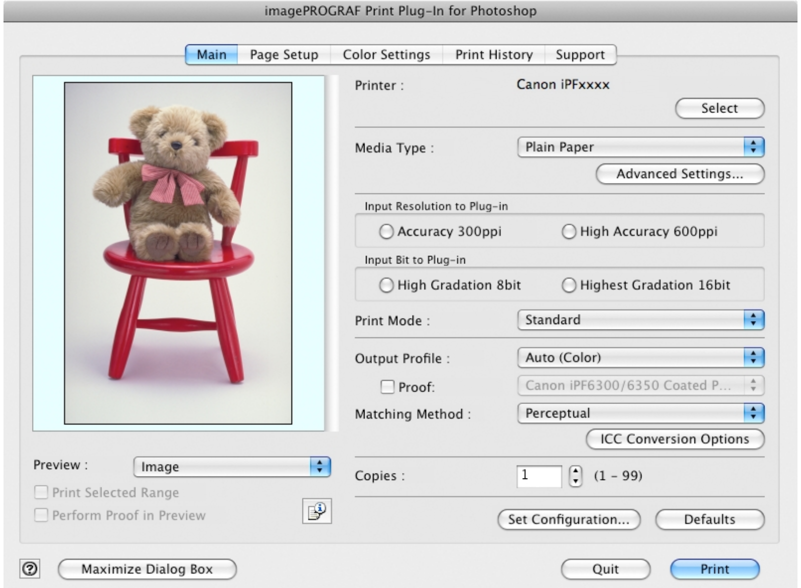


Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm
Resolution : 400dpi
Bit : 8bit/channel
Color Space : sRGB IEC61966-2.1

Main Sheet

You can use this sheet to perform basic settings such as selecting a printer, setting the media type, or adjusting image quality.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
Media Type : Plain Paper
Input Resolution to Plug-in
○ Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi
Input Bit to Plug-in
○ High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit
Print Mode : Standard
Output Profile : Auto (Color)
☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...
Matching Method : Perceptual
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Printer**

The printer types are displayed.

- **Select button**

Click this button to display the **Select Printer** dialog box.

When you click the **OK** button after selecting the printer in the **Select Printer** dialog box, you can change the printer that corresponds with Print Plug-In.

- **Media Type**

This allows you to select the media type.

For more information about **Media Type**, see "Customize Media Settings." →P.660

> Note
>
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

- **Advanced Settings** button

Click the button to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.
For more information about the media detailed settings, see "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box." →P.630

- **Input Resolution to Plug-in**

You can select the resolution to process the image with Print Plug-In.
The following settings are available for resolution.

Setting	Details
Accuracy 300ppi	This processes images at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
High Accuracy 600ppi	This processes images at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity. *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**

- **Input Bit to Plug-in**

You can select the bit number to process with Print Plug-In.
The following settings are available for the input bit number.

Setting	Details
High Gradation 8bit	This processes images with at 8bit/channel (24 bit).
Highest Gradation 16bit	This processes images with at 16bit/channel (48 bit). *This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type** and **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

- **Print Mode**

Selecting the printing mode strikes the balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.
The following settings are available for the print mode.

Setting	Details
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in **Standard** or **Fast** modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in **Highest** or **High** mode.
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in fast mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.
Highest (Max. No. of Passes)	If you are concerned about uneven colors in the print result of **Highest quality**, selecting this option may improve printing results. However, printing may take longer.

Note

- The selectable fields may vary according to the **Media Type**, **Input Resolution to Plug-in** and **Input Bit to Plug-in** settings.

• Output Profile

You can select the output profile.

The following settings are available for the output profile.

Setting	Details
Auto (Color)	Performs the optimum color conversion from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc. You should normally select these settings.
Auto (Monochrome Photo)	Performs the best color conversion to monochrome from the input image data color space information (sRGB, Adobe RGB), media settings etc.
None (No Color Correction)	You cannot perform color conversion with a plug-in. This is useful for creating an original ICC profile.
External ICC Profiles	This selects printer ICC profiles to be output to ICC profiles saved in the OS standard folder. Use the color space of the input data as well as the select ICC profile to perform color conversion.

Note

- **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can only be selected for the corresponding media types.

• Proof

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.

When this is checked, you can perform printing press simulation prints.

Refer to Perform Printing Press Simulation Print →P.654 for details on printing press simulation prints.

• Matching Method

You can select the processing method when performing color conversion.

The following settings are available for the matching method.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	This converts the image to an image with natural color balance and gradation. This is useful for pictures.
Saturation	This converts the image to an image with heightened color saturation. The color balance of pictures and drawings may change.
Relative Colorimetric	This converts the image with emphasis on color balance before the conversion or on visual color balance. This is useful for pictures and drawings.

Note

- When the **Output Profile** you have set is **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** or **None (No Color Correction)**, you cannot select a matching method.

• ICC Conversion Options button

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**.

When this button is clicked, the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box is displayed allowing you to configure color conversion related settings.

Refer to ICC Conversion Options dialog box →P.633 for details on ICC Conversion Options.

• Copies

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

Note

- The maximum value is 99.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

- **Set Configuration** button

Clicking the button opens the **Set Configuration** dialog box that provides settings for the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.

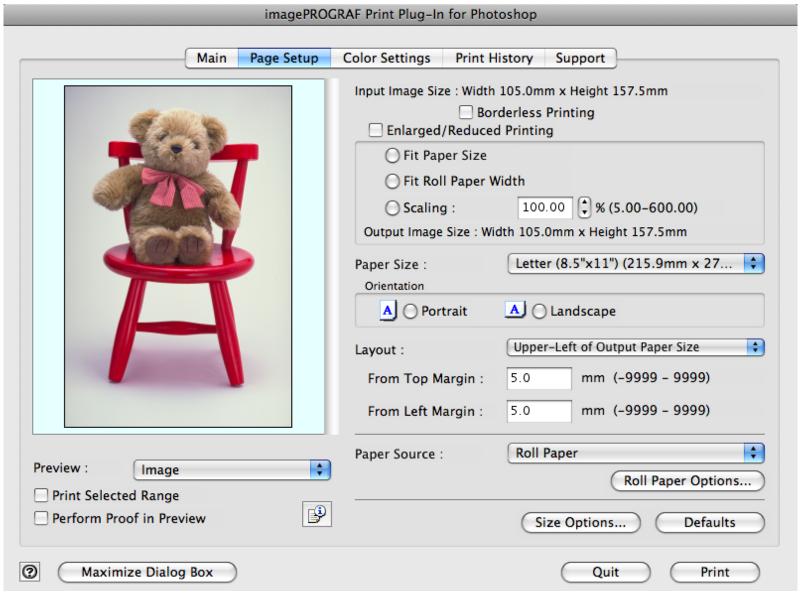
For more information about **Set Configuration**, see "Set Configuration Dialog Box." →P.632

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Main** sheet to their defaults.

Page Setup Sheet

You can use this sheet to set the size of the image to be printed, the media size, and whether to enlarge/reduce the image.



Input Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

☐ Borderless Printing

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

○ Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)

Output Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

Paper Size : Letter (8.5"x11") (215.9mm x 27...

Orientation

○ Portrait ○ Landscape

Layout : Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

From Left Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Input Image Size**

The size of the image imported to Print Plug-In is displayed.

- **Borderless Printing**

When you place a checkmark here, the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box is displayed and you can print an image without borders.

For more information about **Borderless Printing**, see "Print with No Borders." →P.659

Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

- **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**

When you place a checkmark here, you can print enlarged/reduced images.

When printing an enlarged/reduced image, select the method for enlargement/reduction. The image size sent to the printer is displayed matching the selected method in **Output Image Size**.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the export media size when printing.
Fit Roll Paper Width	This automatically enlarges/reduces the entire image imported to Print Plug-In to match the width of the roll paper with the width of the image when printing. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
Scaling	This enlarges/reduces the entire image by the specified scaling value. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5-600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ or ▼.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

• Output Image Size

The output image size is displayed up to one place after the decimal point in millimeters.

Note

- When **Paper Size** is smaller than **Output Image Size**, part of the image may not print.

• Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
- This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

• Orientation

This selects the print orientation.

The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
Portrait	Prints the image on the media as it appears on the screen.
Landscape	Prints the image on the media rotated 90 degrees.

• Layout

You can select the print position of an image on the media.

The following settings are available for layout.

Layout

Setting	Details
Upper-Left of Output Paper Size	Prints the image with fitting the top left of the active print area for **Paper Size**.

<table>
<tr><th>Setting</th><th colspan="2">Details</th></tr>
<tr><td><b>Center of Output Paper Size</b></td><td colspan="2">Prints the center of the image on the center of the selected <b>Paper Size</b>.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3"><b>Specify Print Start Position</b></td><td colspan="2">You can print with specifying the top and left printing start positions in <b>From Top Margin</b> and <b>From Left Margin</b> for <b>Paper Size</b>.</td></tr>
<tr><td><b>From Top Margin</b></td><td>Input the margin from the top of the media in numbers.
*You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.</td></tr>
<tr><td><b>From Left Margin</b></td><td>Input the margin from the left of the media in numbers.
*You can input between -9999 and 9999 mm.</td></tr>
</table>

Note

- Select **Print Area Layout** or **Image** in **Preview** when you select **Layout**.

Roll Paper Layout

Setting	Details
Upper-Left of Roll Paper	Prints the top left of Media Size on the top left of the selected roll paper.
Center of Roll Paper	Prints the center of Media Size on the center of the selected roll paper.

Note

- Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview** when you select **Roll Paper Layout**.

- **Paper Source**

You can select the media source.

The following settings are available for media source.

Setting	Details
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.
Cut Sheet	Select to print on the cut sheet.

- **Roll Paper Options** button

Click this button to open the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, where you can set roll paper width and perform auto cut settings.

For more information about the roll paper options, see "Roll Paper Options Dialog Box." →P.634

- **Size Options**

Click the Size Options button to open the **Size Options** dialog box and you can select a media name, size and other settings.

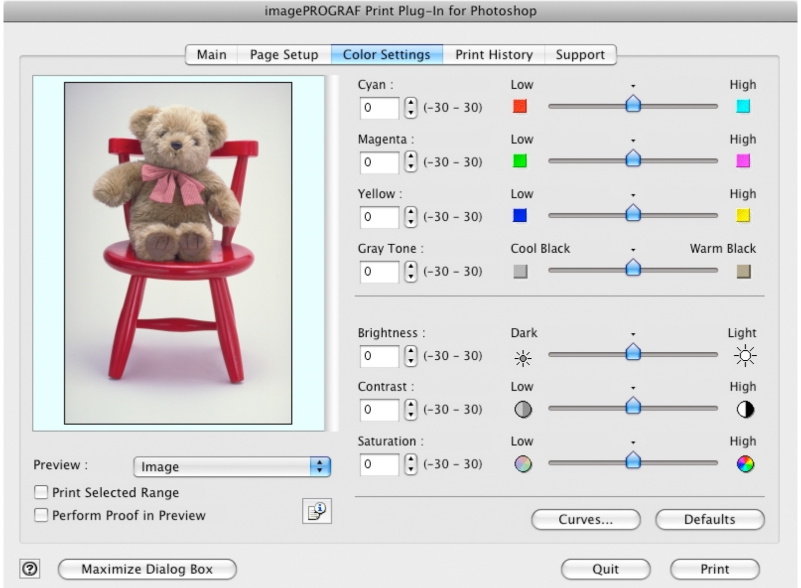
For more information about the size options, see "Size Options Dialog Box." →P.635

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Page Setup** sheet to their defaults.

Color Settings Sheet

You can use this sheet to adjust image Color, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Saturation**, and you can set the color balance of print product more to your liking.



Cyan : 0 (-30 – 30)
Magenta : 0 (-30 – 30)
Yellow : 0 (-30 – 30)
Gray Tone : 0 (-30 – 30)
Brightness : 0 (-30 – 30)
Contrast : 0 (-30 – 30)
Saturation : 0 (-30 – 30)
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

- **Cyan / Magenta / Yellow**

You can adjust the strength or weakness of a color by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Gray Tone**

You can adjust gray tone from cool black (cool tones) to warm black (red tones) by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Brightness**

You can adjust the brightness of the printed image without losing the brightest and darkest areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Contrast**

You can relatively adjust the brightness of the brightest and darkness areas by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Saturation**

You can adjust the saturation of vivid color balance to dark color balance by either inputting a numerical value or dragging the slide bar.

> Note
> - You can check the adjustments in the preview display.

- **Curves** button

Click the button to open the **Curves** dialog box then set the **Channel** and other settings.

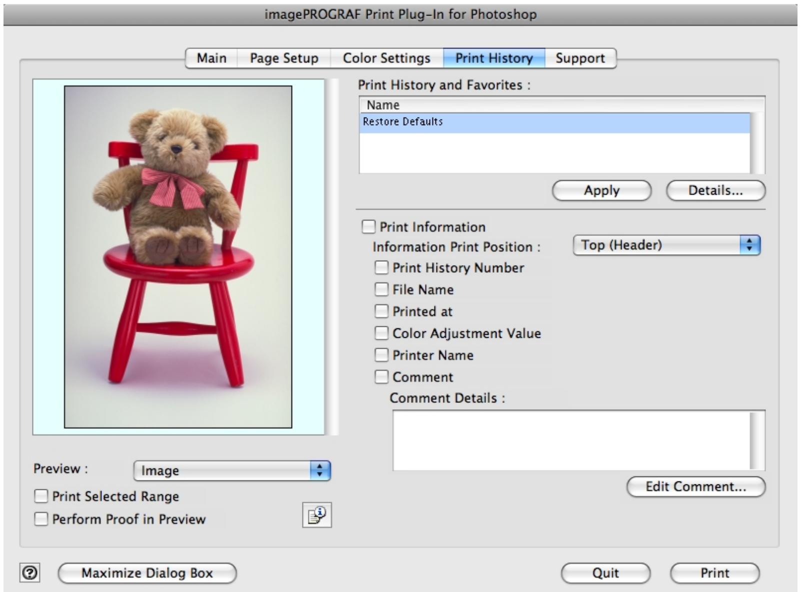
For more information about **Curves**, see "Curves Dialog Box." →P.636

- **Defaults** button

Click the button to return all of the settings on the **Color Settings** sheet to their defaults.

Print History Sheet

You can use this sheet to apply settings history used in printing, and to print information, such as the image file name, with the image.



Information Print Position : Top (Header)

Preview : Image

- **Print History and Favorites**

This displays a list of print preferences.

Select **Restore Defaults** and click the **Apply** button to restore all settings to their initial settings.

> Note
> - You can check the 3 print preferences in the preview display.

- **Apply** button

When you click the button, the print setting content applies to the current image selected with **Print History and Favorites**.

- **Details** button

Click the Details button to open the **Print History Details** dialog box, where you can manage print history.

For more information about the print history details, see "Print History Details Dialog Box." →P.637

- **Print Information**

When you place a checkmark here, you can print the file name and print time and date on the image. The following settings are available for the print position and content.

For more information about **Print Information**, see "Set Information to Print with Image." →P.672

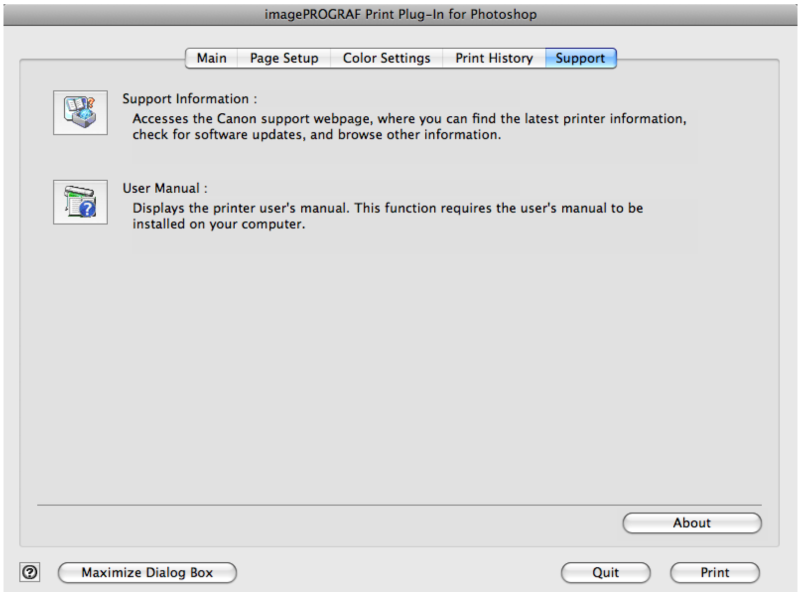
Setting	Details	
Information Print Position	Selects the information print position.	
	Top (Header)	Information is printed on the top of the image.
	Bottom (Footer)	Information is printed on the bottom of the image.
Print History Number	Place a checkmark here to print the print history number.	
File Name	Place a checkmark here to print the file name.	
Printed at	Place a checkmark here to print the time and date.	
Color Adjustment Value	Place a checkmark here to print the color adjustment value.	
Printer Name	Place a checkmark here to print the printer name.	
Comment	Place a checkmark here to print the comment details.	
Comment Details	Place a checkmark here to display the comment details.	

- **Edit Comment** button

Click the button to display the **Edit Comment** dialog box, where you can edit the comment.

Support Sheet

You can display product support information and the electronic manual.



Support Information :

Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

User Manual :

Displays the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

- **Support Information** button

Click the button to display websites that contain the latest product information.

Note

- An Internet connection is needed to view the websites.

- **User Manual** button

Click the button to display the printer manuals installed on the computer.

Note

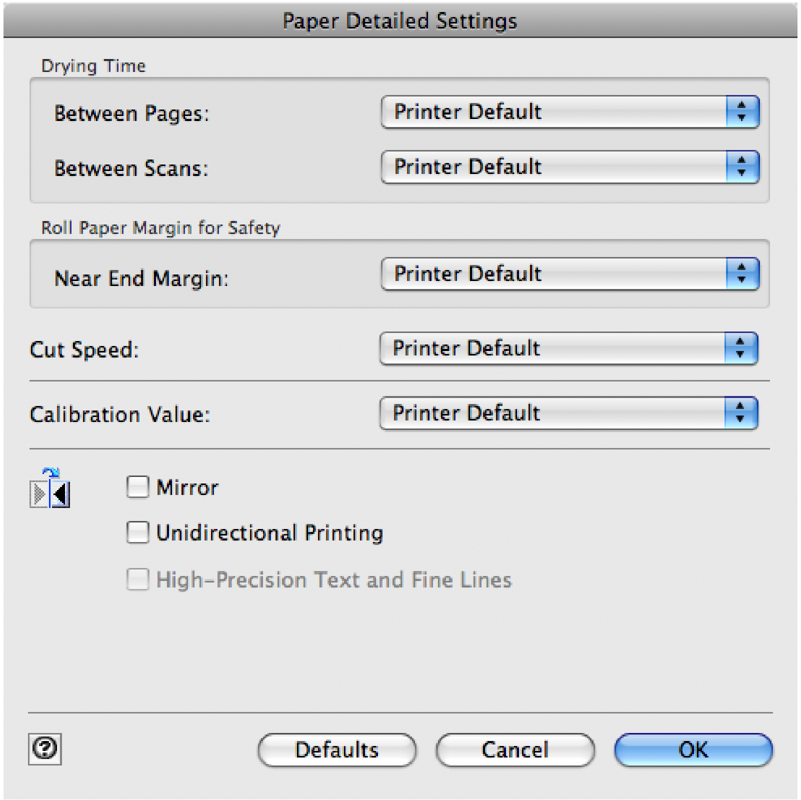
- You must have User Manual installed on your computer.

- **About** button

Click the button to open the version information window of the Print Plug-In. Click the **OK** button in the version information window to return to the Print Plug-In window.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Advanced Settings** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set **Drying Time** and **Roll Paper Margin for Safety** by media type.



Paper Detailed Settings

Drying Time

Between Pages: Printer Default

Between Scans: Printer Default

Roll Paper Margin for Safety

Near End Margin: Printer Default

Cut Speed: Printer Default

Calibration Value: Printer Default

☐ Mirror

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

- **Drying Time**

Between Pages

This sets the wait time for the ink to dry between each completely printed sheet and the output of the sheet.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The paper is ejected immediately after printing.
30sec. / 1min. / 3min. / 5min. / 10min. / 30min. / 60min.	The sheet is ejected when the specified time after printing has elapsed.

Between Scans

This sets the wait time between line scans during printing.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
None	The printing continues to the next line immediately after the last line.
1sec. / 3sec. / 5sec. / 7sec. / 9sec.	The printing continues to the next line after the set time. *For the media type that has problems, such as ink smears on the page or colors that seem uneven during borderless printing etc., increase the value for this setting.

• Roll Paper Margin for Safety

Near End Margin

This sets the length of the near end margin of the roll paper.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
5mm	Print at a standard size. *Select for Media Type that has no problem when printing with a standard size margin.
20mm	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

• Cut Speed

This selects the auto cut speed.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Fast	Select this setting if cutting with the **Standard** setting is not clean.
Standard	Select this setting when you are not experiencing problems.
Slow	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.

• Calibration Value

When calibration has been carried out on the printer, use this setting to choose whether or not to use the results.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The settings of the printer operating panel are applied.
Use Value	The calibration results are used for printing.
Disregard Value	The calibration results are not used for printing. Select this option to avoid changes to image color tones during printing due to color calibration.

- **Mirror**

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

- **Unidirectional Printing**

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

- **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines**

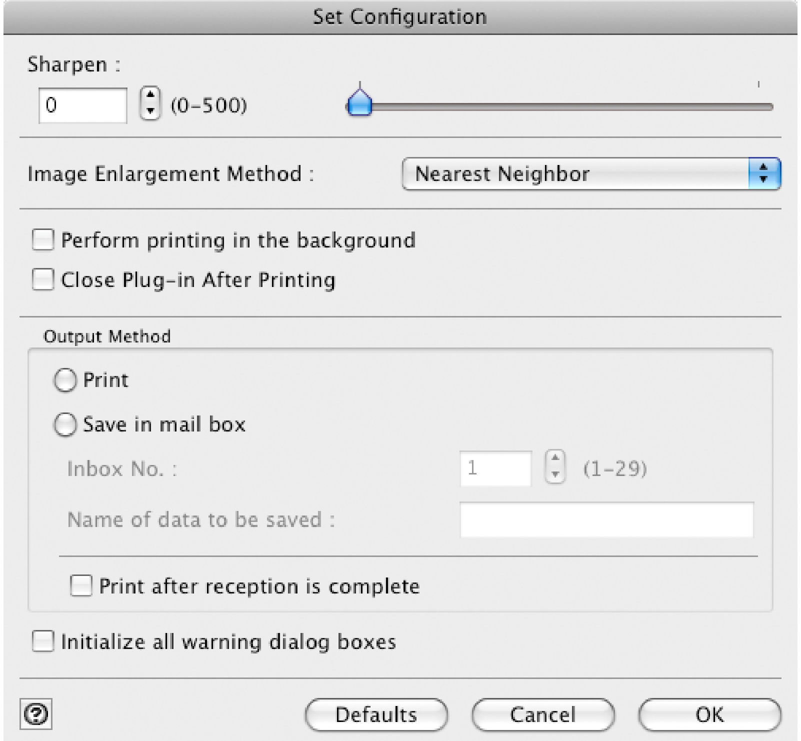
Print increasing ink impact accuracy, particularly for sharper text and fine lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.

Note

- When **Highest (Max. No. of Passes)** is selected as the print mode, **High-Precision Text and Fine Lines** cannot be selected.

Set Configuration Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Set Configuration** button on the **Main** Sheet. You can set the adjustment of image sharpness and image enlargement method.


Set Configuration
Sharpen :
0
(0-500)
Image Enlargement Method :
Nearest Neighbor
☐ Perform printing in the background
☐ Close Plug-in After Printing
Output Method
○ Print
○ Save in mail box
Inbox No. :
1
(1-29)
Name of data to be saved :
☐ Print after reception is complete
☐ Initialize all warning dialog boxes
?
Defaults
Cancel
OK

- **Sharpen**

Performs adjustment of the sharpness (outline) settings.

- **Image Enlargement Method**

You can select the image enlargement method.

The following settings are available for the image enlargement method.

Setting	Details
Nearest Neighbor	Performs simple enlargement.
Bilinear	Performs line vector enlargement.
Bicubic	Adjust pixels with calculation of elements such as a color or brightness of neighboring pixels.

- **Perform printing in the background**

When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in performs printing with the Plug-In in the background.

- **Close Plug-in After Printing**

When you place a checkmark here, the plug-in closes after printing finishes.

Note

- If printing does not finish correctly because it was canceled or an error occurred, the plug-in does not close.

- **Output Method**

You can select the output method.

The following settings are available for the output method.

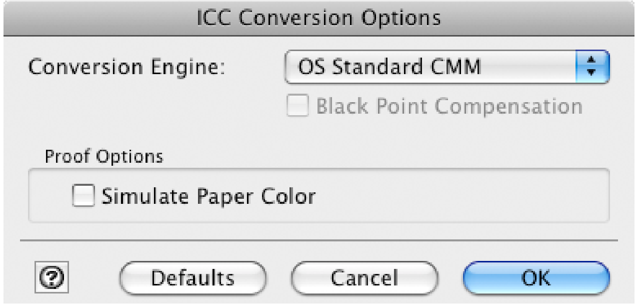
Setting	Details
Print	Normal printing. The print job data is stored temporarily in the box as the job prints.
Save in mail box	Saves the print data in the mail box. If you select **Save in mail box**, you must specify **Name of data to be saved**.
Print after reception is complete	When you place a checkmark here, you can print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space. This cannot be used when **Save in mail box** is selected.

- **Initialize all warning dialog boxes**

When this is checked, all of the warning dialog boxes that have been set to "Do not show this screen again" become displayed.

ICC Conversion Options dialog box

This is displayed when an ICC profile is selected in the **Output Profile** list in the **Main** sheet and the **ICC Conversion Options** button is clicked. This allows you to configure detailed color matching related settings.


ICC Conversion Options

Conversion Engine: OS Standard CMM

☐ Black Point Compensation

Proof Options

☐ Simulate Paper Color

- **Conversion Engine**

Selects the conversion engine to use when converting colors.

Note

- Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use **Adobe CMM**. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.651 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

• Black Point Compensation

Check this check box to perform black point compensation. Loss of gradation in dark areas can be improved by performing black point compensation.

Note

- This can be used if **Adobe CMM** is selected as the **Conversion Engine**.

• Proof Options

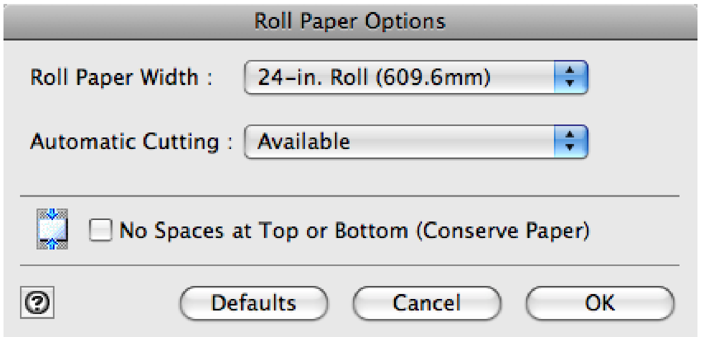
Configures settings related to printing press simulation.

The proof options consist of the following settings.

Setting	Details
Simulate Paper Color	Select this when performing paper color simulation.

Roll Paper Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Roll Paper Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can set the roll paper width and perform the auto cut settings.



Roll Paper Options

Roll Paper Width : 24-in. Roll (609.6mm)

Automatic Cutting : Available

☐ No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

• Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.

• Automatic Cutting

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

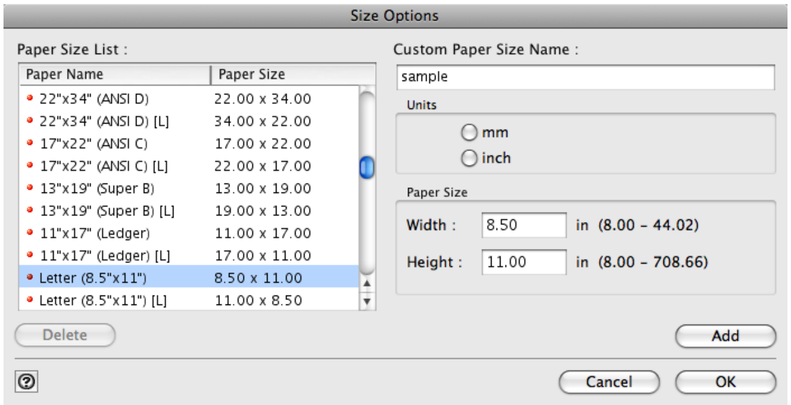
Setting	Details
Available	Each page is automatically cut after it is printed.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.

• No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

When you place a checkmark here, the print data is printed without margins.

Size Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** Sheet. You can select a media name, size and other settings.



Paper Size List :

Paper Name	Paper Size
22"x34" (ANSI D)	22.00 x 34.00
22"x34" (ANSI D) [L]	34.00 x 22.00
17"x22" (ANSI C)	17.00 x 22.00
17"x22" (ANSI C) [L]	22.00 x 17.00
13"x19" (Super B)	13.00 x 19.00
13"x19" (Super B) [L]	19.00 x 13.00
11"x17" (Ledger)	11.00 x 17.00
11"x17" (Ledger) [L]	17.00 x 11.00
Letter (8.5"x11")	8.50 x 11.00
Letter (8.5"x11") [L]	11.00 x 8.50

Custom Paper Size Name : sample

Units
○ mm
○ inch

Paper Size
Width : 8.50 in (8.00 - 44.02)
Height : 11.00 in (8.00 - 708.66)

• Paper Size List

Displays all the standard sizes and custom media sizes.

• Custom Paper Size Name

You can enter any name up to 63 characters.

• Units

You can select the units of measure to use when you define custom media size. Switching this setting resets the units of measure for the entire Plug-In.

• Paper Size

Width

Enter the width of the media size.

Height

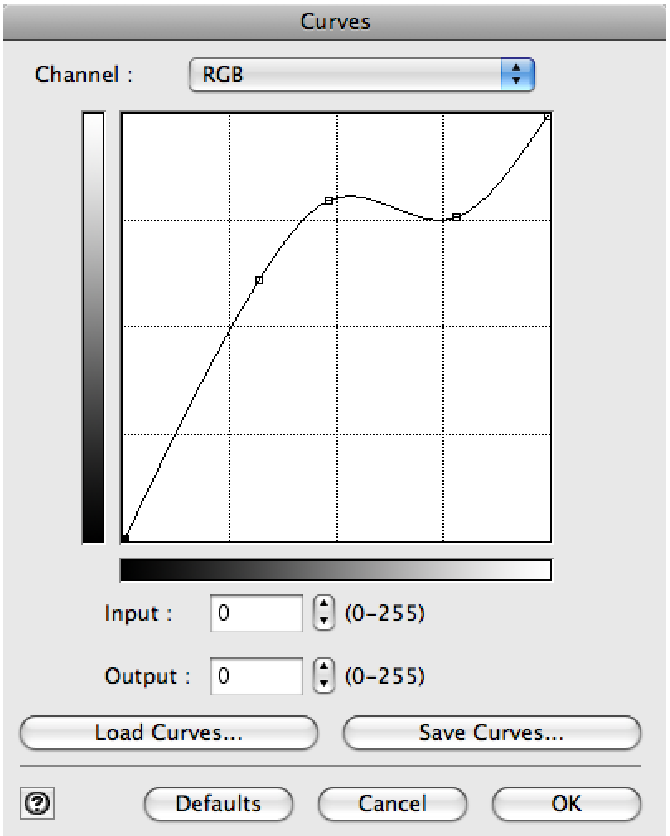
Enter the height of the media size.

• Add button

Click the button to register the contents of the settings.

Curves Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Curves** button on the **Color Settings** Sheet. You can set **Channel** and other settings.



- **Channel**

Select from among **RGB**, **Red**, **Green**, or **Blue**.

Note

- **Gray** is displayed for monochrome printing and this selection cannot be changed.

- **Input**

Enter an input value.

Note

- The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

- **Output**

Enter an output value.

Note

- The allowed entry range is 0 to 255.

- **Load Curves** button

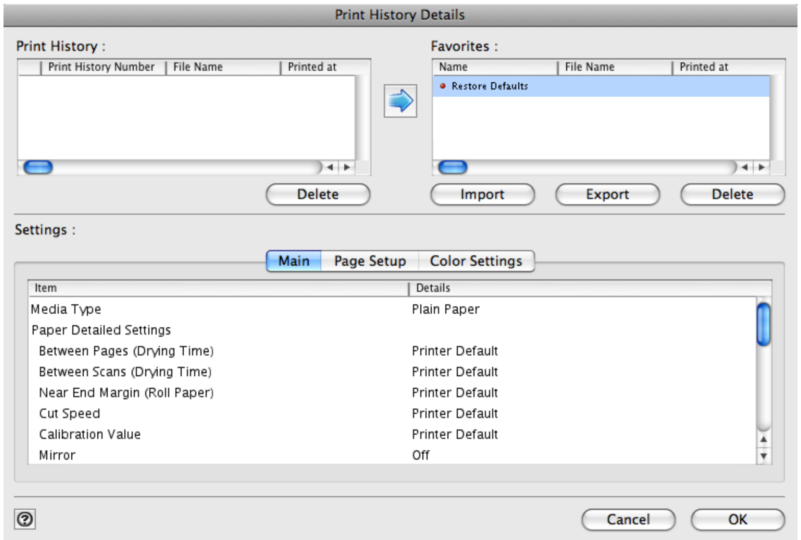
Click the button to load stored data for a tone curve.

- **Save Curves** button

Click the button to stores the current tone curve settings.

Print History Details Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you click the **Details** button on the **Print History** Sheet. This controls print history. For more information about **Print History Details**, see "Utilize Print History." →P.661



Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

- **Print History**

Print History appears in list format.

Display Items	Details
Print History Number	Displays the print history number.
File Name	Displays image file name.
Printed at	Displays time and date of printing.
Comment	Displays comment details.

Note

- Up to 200 print history items can be displayed. All items above 200 are deleted.
- When you cannot print properly because you canceled the printing or an error occurred, appears ✖ to the left of the print history number.

- **Delete** button

Click the button to delete the selected print history.

- **Add** button

Click the ➡ button to add the selected print history to preferences.

Note
- Up to 200 print preference items can be added.

- **Favorites**

The print history stored in print preferences displays in list format.

Note
- You can change the order by selecting an item and dragging it to another place.

- **Import** button

Click the button to import print history saved as a file.

- **Export** button

Click the button to save print history as a file that is stored in print preferences.

- **Delete** button

Click the button to delete print history stored in print preferences.

- **Settings**

Displays the print history settings selected from the **Print History** or **Favorites**.

Setting	Details
Main	When you select this the **Main** sheet settings are displayed.
Page Setup	When you select this the **Page Setup** sheet settings are displayed.
Color Settings	When you select this the **Color Settings** sheet settings are displayed.

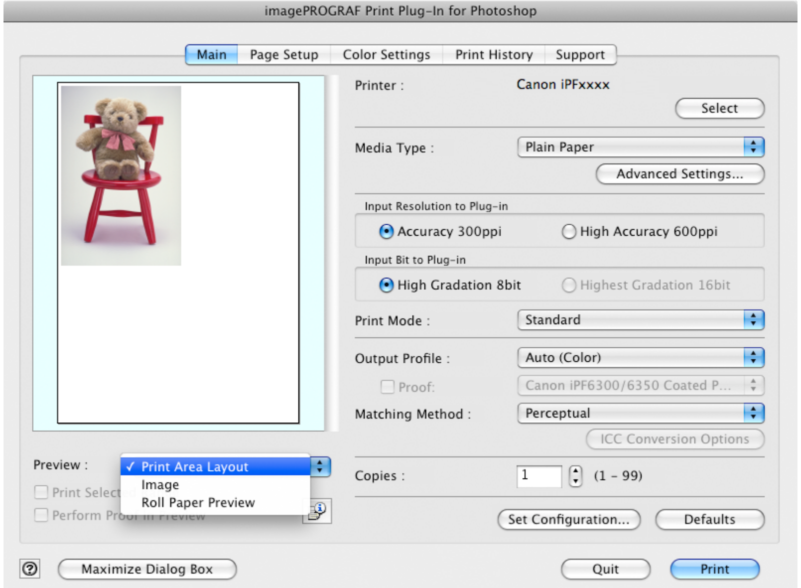
Utilize Three Types of Previews

You can use Print Plug-In to check an image in three types of previews.
The preview types are as follows.

- Check Image with Print Area Layout →P.639
- Check the original image with Image →P.640
- Check Image with Roll Paper Preview →P.641

Check Image with Print Area Layout

Displays the print range and the area out of the print range in the layout matching the media size set in the print area layout. Select **Print Area Layout** in **Preview**.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Preview : Print Area Layout

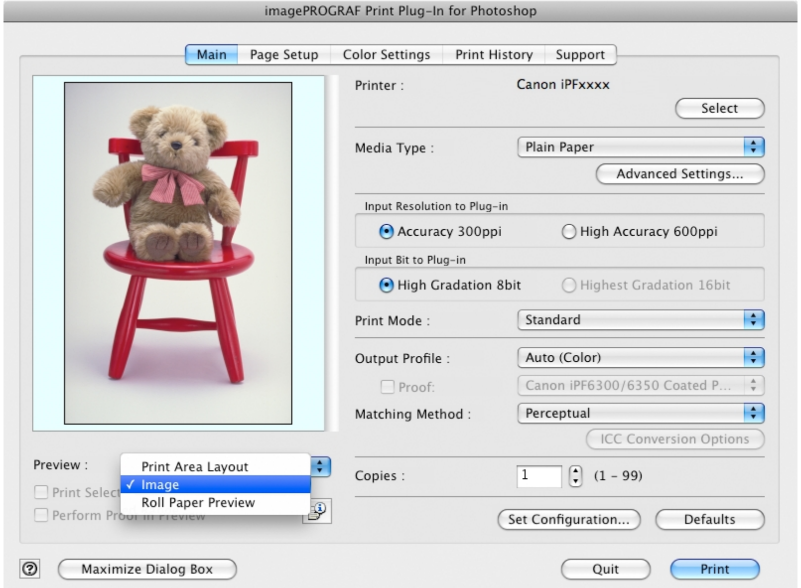
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Note

- When the cursor on the preview is displayed as ✋ on the preview, you can specify the print position by dragging the image.
- When the cursor is displayed as ✋ on the preview, the below conditions on the **Page Setup** sheet have all been met.
  - There is no checkmark in **Borderless Printing**.
  - There is no checkmark in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** or **Scaling** has been selected.

Check the original image with Image

In the image preview you can check the entire image that you have input.
Select **Image** in **Preview**.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Preview : Image

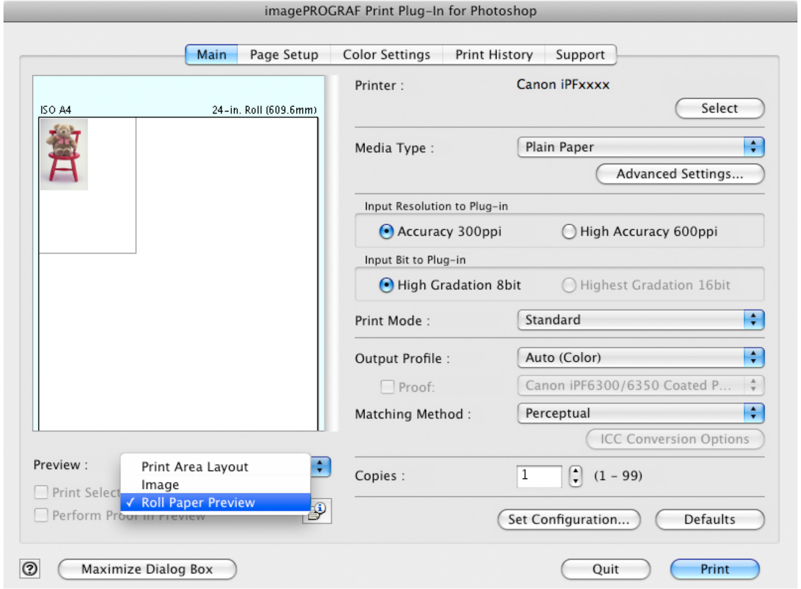
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Note

- When the cursor appears as a small magnifying glass + while there is an **Image** in the **Preview** area, the **Selected Range** feature is enabled and you an drag the cursor on the image and select an area for printing.
- When you click the image while the cursor is displayed as 🔍 on the preview, the selected area is deselected.

Check Image with Roll Paper Preview

Display the media size and roll paper information on the top in the layout printing on roll paper in Roll Paper Preview Select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Roll Paper Preview

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

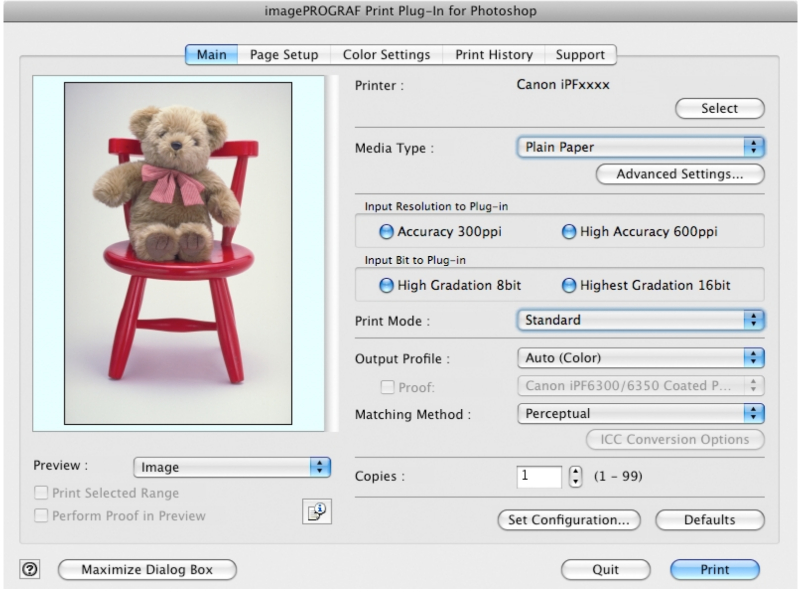
Note

- To select **Roll Paper Preview** in **Preview**, select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

Print with a Desired Picture Quality

You can specify and print at the resolution you desire.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ● Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the media set to the printer in **Media Type**.

> Note
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3. Choose either **Accuracy 300ppi** or **High Accuracy 600ppi** for the resolution to process images in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

> Note
> - When you select **Accuracy 300ppi** images are processed at an accurate resolution. This can control print speed and memory capacity.
> - When you select **High Accuracy 600ppi** images are processed at a more accurate resolution. This setting results in the best print quality, but this takes more time to print than **Accuracy 300ppi** while also requiring more memory capacity.
> - **High Accuracy 600ppi** will not display with some **Media Type** settings.

4. Choose either **High Gradation 8bit** or **Highest Gradation 16bit** for the bit number when processing images in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

> Note
> - When you select **High Gradation 8bit**, images are processed at 8 bit/channel (24 bit).
> - When you select **Highest Gradation 16bit**, images are processed at 16bit/channel (48 bit).
> - **Highest Gradation 16bit** will not display with some **Media Type** or **Input Resolution to Plug-in** settings.

5. Select the mode to be printed when processing images in **Print Mode**.

> Note
> - The settings that can be selected differ by **Media Type**,**Input Resolution to Plug-in**, and **Input Bit to Plug-in** selected.

6. Click the **Print** button.

   Printing begins.

Adjust the Colors and Print

You can adjust the colors to your liking and print images.
The explanation below is on 5 ways to adjust the colors using Print Plug-In.

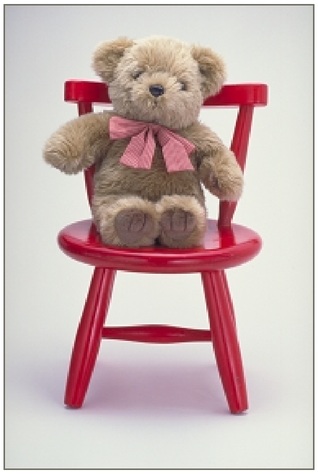
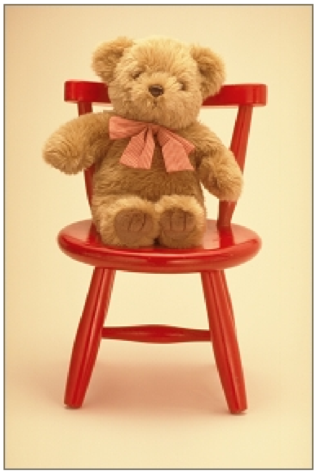
- Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color) →P.643
- Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome) →P.644
- Adjust the Colors by Color Matching →P.648
- Print High-Quality Adobe RGB16bit Images →P.649
- Prints monochrome photographs with high quality →P.651
- Using Adobe CMM →P.651

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Color)

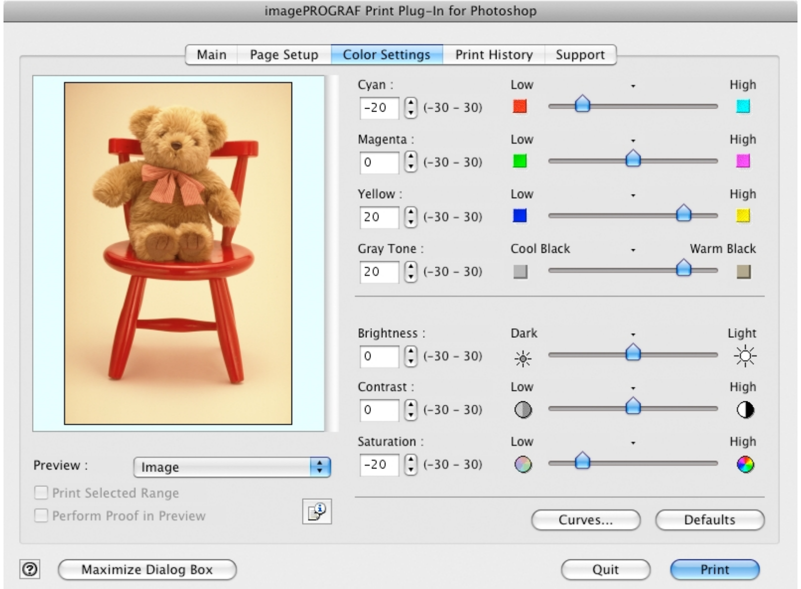
You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is on the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Cyan**
- **High** for **Yellow**
- **Low** for **Saturation**
- **Warm Black** for **Gray Tone**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The above image adjustments are reflected in the before and after images below.

Before Application	After Application
	

1. Display the **Color Settings** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Cyan : -20 (-30 - 30) Low - High

Magenta : 0 (-30 - 30) Low - High

Yellow : 20 (-30 - 30) Low - High

Gray Tone : 20 (-30 - 30) Cool Black - Warm Black

Brightness : 0 (-30 - 30) Dark - Light

Contrast : 0 (-30 - 30) Low - High

Saturation : -20 (-30 - 30) Low - High

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Cyan**.

3. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **High** in **Yellow**.

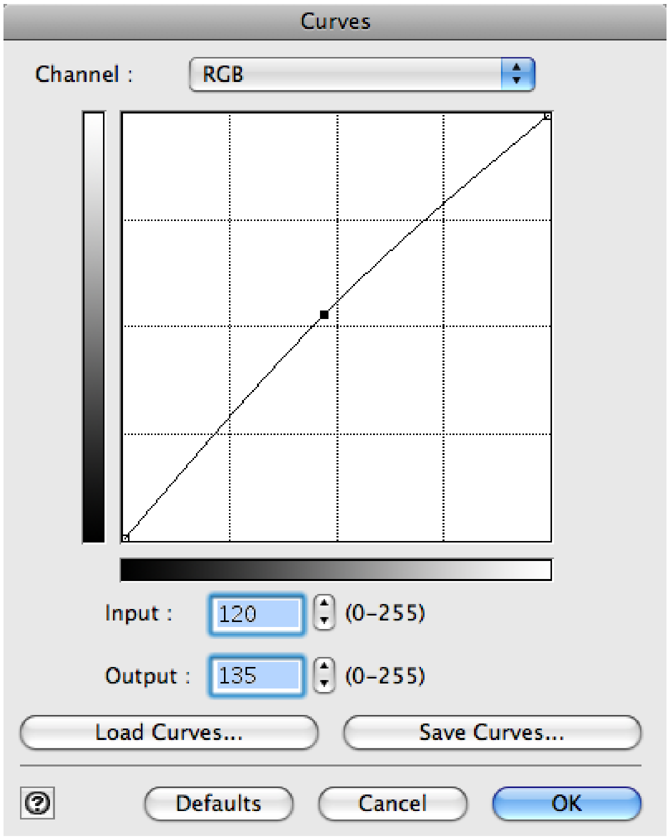
4. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Low** in **Saturation**.

5. Drag the slide bar in the direction of **Warm Black** in **Gray Tone**.

> Note
> - You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
> - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

6. Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

7. Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



Input : 120 (0–255)

Output : 135 (0–255)

8. Click the **Print** button.

The adjustments are reflected in the image and printing begins.

Adjust the Colors while Checking the Preview (for Monochrome)

You can adjust the colors while checking the adjustments in the preview.
The following explanation is about the procedures for adjusting example image below.

- **Low** for **Contrast**

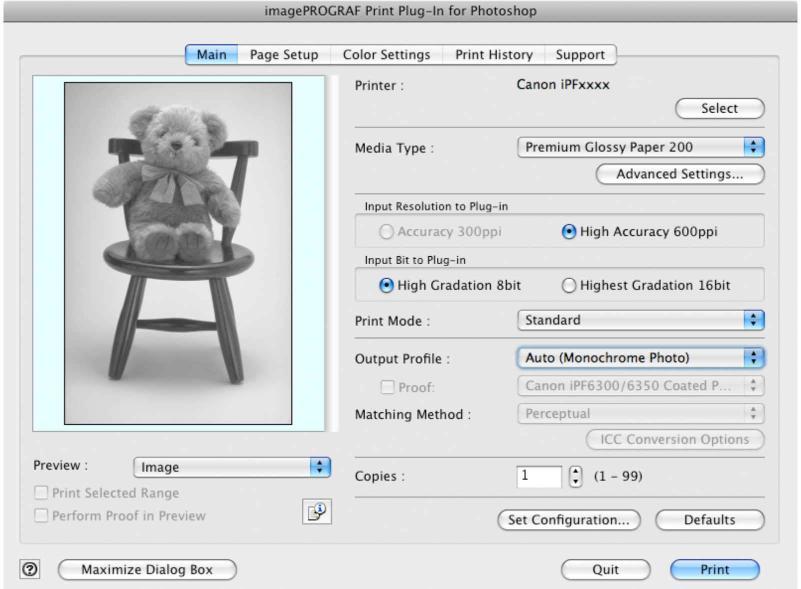
- **Light** for **Highlight**
- **Light** for **Shadow**
- Enhance brightness for the curves

The unapplied and the applied images of the above image adjustments are as below.

Before Application	After Application

1. Open the **Main** sheet.

2. Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in

○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Monochrome Photo)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

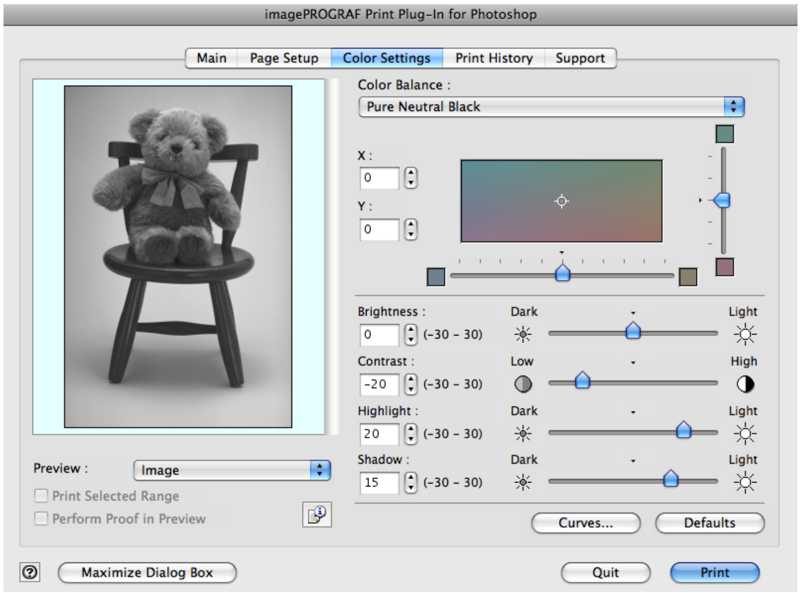
Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

3. Open the **Color Settings** sheet.



Color Balance : Pure Neutral Black

X : 0

Y : 0

Brightness : 0 (-30 - 30)

Contrast : -20 (-30 - 30)

Highlight : 20 (-30 - 30)

Shadow : 15 (-30 - 30)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

4. In **Contrast**, drag the slide bar toward **Low**.

5. In **Highlight**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

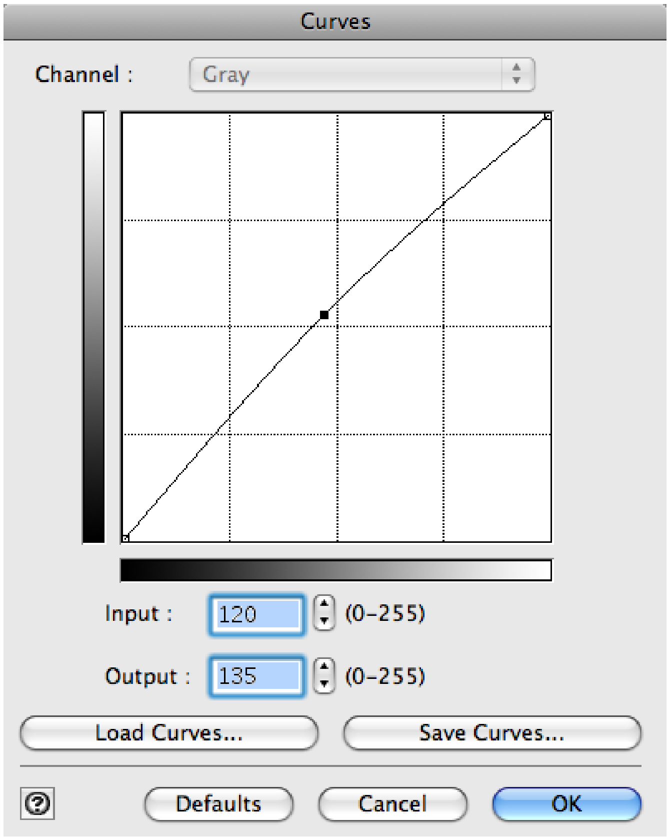
6. In **Shadow**, drag the slide bar toward **Light**.

Note

- You can change the numbers by inputting in numerical characters.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

7. Click the **Curves** button then click near the center of the curve.

8. Enter 120 in **Input** and 135 in **Output** then click the **OK** button.



Channel : Gray

Input : 120 (0–255)

Output : 135 (0–255)

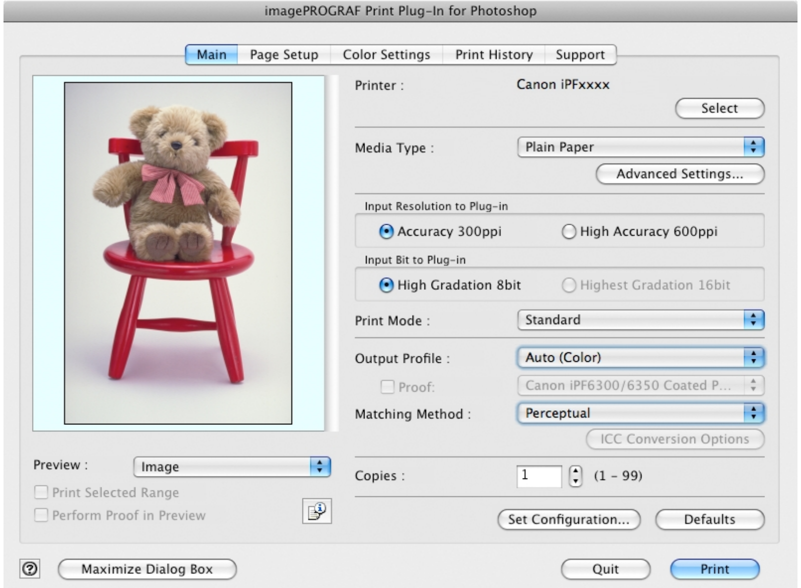
9. Click the **Print** button.

This applies the image adjustments and starts the print job.

Adjust the Colors by Color Matching

When you print a color image imported from a scanner or a digital camera, the image may appear different from the image on the screen. That is due to the differences in color on the screen and in the printer. In Print Plug-In, you can get the color balance of the print product closer to the color balance displayed on the screen through performing ICC (International Color Consortium) color profile settings, matching method settings, and settings for the internal profile, which performs optimum color conversion in response to media and resolution settings.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the profile in **Output Profile**.

> Note
>
> - When you place a checkmark in **Perform Proof in Preview**, you can check the color matching in the preview. This may not be displayed depending on how you set **Media Type**.
> - The details of **Output Profile** you have set is saved even when you close the Print Plug-In, but when the specified profile cannot be located it is set to **Auto (Color)**.
> - If an ICC profile is selected as the **Output Profile**, Adobe CMM can be selected as the color conversion engine. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.651 for details.

3. Select the profile matching method in **Matching Method**.

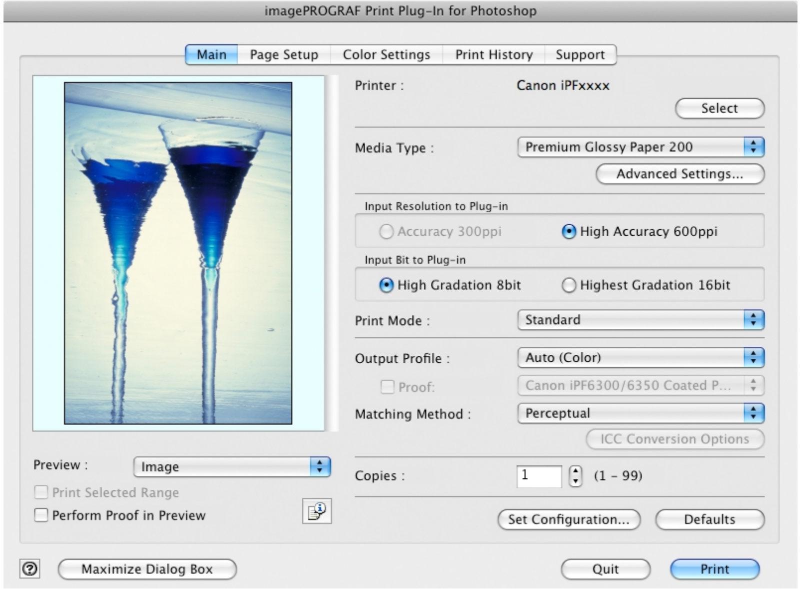
4. Click the **Print** button.

Printing begins with the output profile and matching method that you have set.

Print High-Quality Adobe RGB16bit Images

This prints a high-quality Adobe RGB16bit image taken with a high-end digital camera. Print Plug-In allows you to print high color gamut and high tone images, when the Adobe RGB16bit image data has been retouched in Photoshop, without compromising the level of tone in the image.

1. Select the Adobe RGB16bit image data in Photoshop and start Print Plug-In. (See "Starting from Photoshop.") →P.615



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in

○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click button.

3. Check that **Adobe RGB** is displayed in **Color Space**, and **16bit/channel** is displayed in **Bit** in the **Image Properties** dialog box, and click the **Close** button.

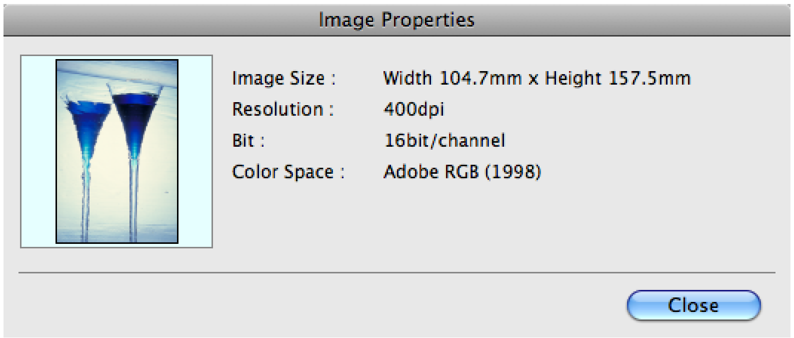


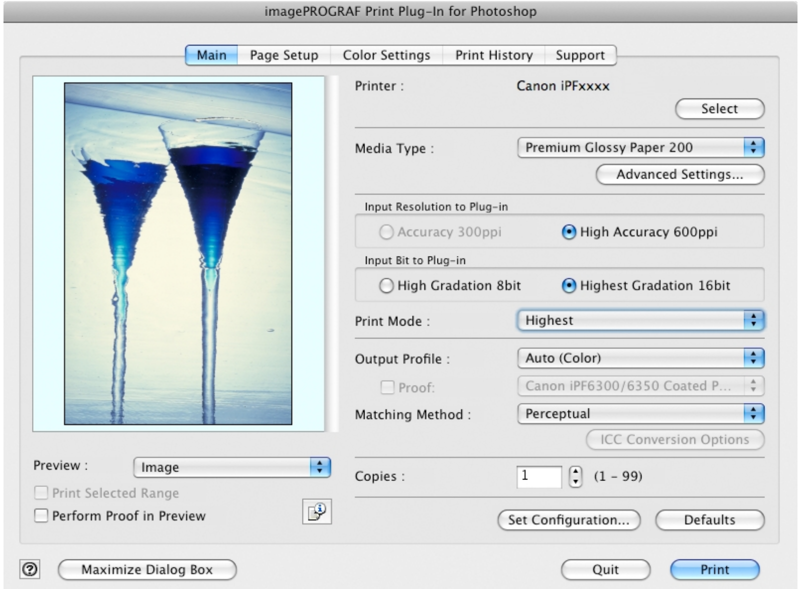
Image Size : Width 104.7mm x Height 157.5mm

Resolution : 400dpi

Bit : 16bit/channel

Color Space : Adobe RGB (1998)

4. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in
○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
○ High Gradation 8bit ● Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Highest

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

5. Select **High Accuracy 600ppi** in **Input Resolution to Plug-in**.

6. Select **Highest Gradation 16bit** in **Input Bit to Plug-in**.

7. Select the highest quality possible in **Print Mode**.

8. If required, adjust the colors using color matching.

Note

- For more information about the color matching, see "Adjust the Colors by Color Matching." →P.648

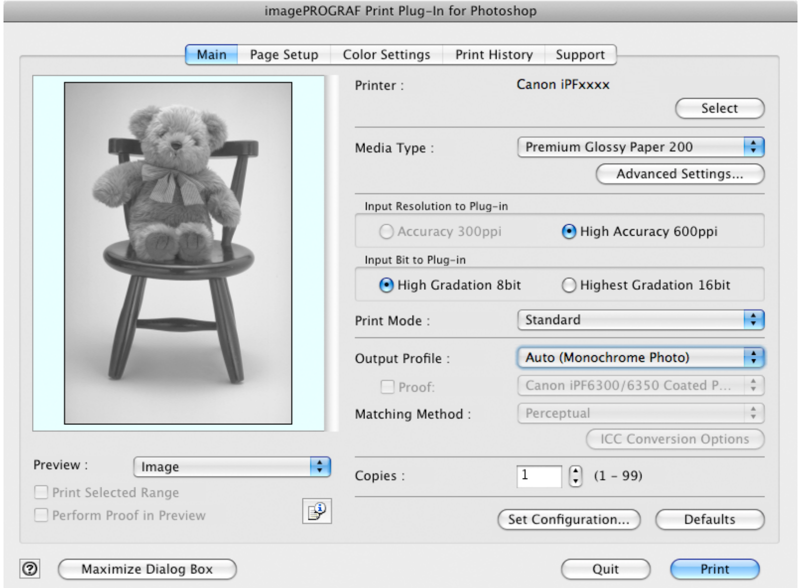
9. Click the **Print** button.

Printing of the Adobe RGB16bit image begins.

Prints monochrome photographs with high quality

Prints images captured with a scanner or digital camera in monochrome with high quality. Provides stable monochrome photo images without color casts and minimizes the influences of the difference of the light source.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ○ Accuracy 300ppi ● High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Monochrome Photo)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** in **Output Profile**.

> Note
> - **Auto (Monochrome Photo)** can be selected only after a compatible **Media Type** has been selected.

3. Click the **Print** button.

   Performs conversion to the most suitable monochrome and printing begins.

Using Adobe CMM

Adobe CMM is a color conversion engine made by Adobe. Using Adobe CMM makes it possible to obtain uniform color conversion results and to use the black point compensation function.

> Important
> - Use version 1.1 or higher of Adobe CMM.

- How to Obtain Adobe CMM

  Adobe CMM can be obtained using the following procedure.

1. Open the Adobe website (http://www.adobe.com).

2. Enter "Adobe CMM" in the search input box on the screen.

3. Search for the "Adobe Color Management Module (CMM)" item and select the Macintosh version.

4. Download the file by following the on-screen directions.

5. Start the installer in the downloaded file to perform the installation.

• Adobe CMM System Requirements

The system requirements for Adobe CMM are as follows.

- Supported OS
  Mac OS X 10.4.8 or later

- Supported CPU
  PowerPC G4 or G5
  Intel Core Duo, Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Xeon processor

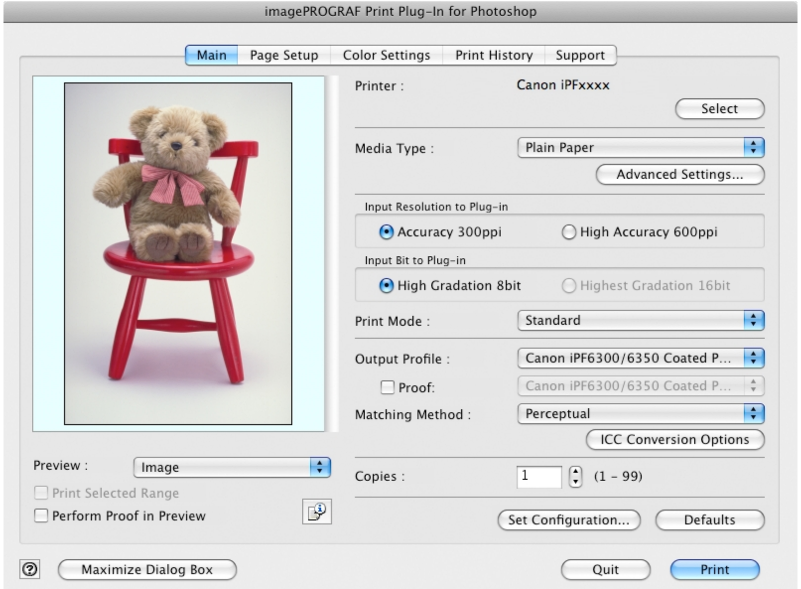
Note

- Check with Adobe for details.

• How to Use Adobe CMM

The procedure for using Adobe CMM is as follows.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

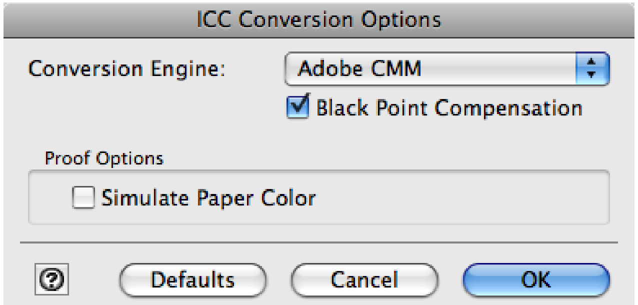
☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button.

4. In the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box, select **Adobe CMM** from **Conversion Engine**.


ICC Conversion Options

Conversion Engine: Adobe CMM

☑ Black Point Compensation

Proof Options

☐ Simulate Paper Color

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

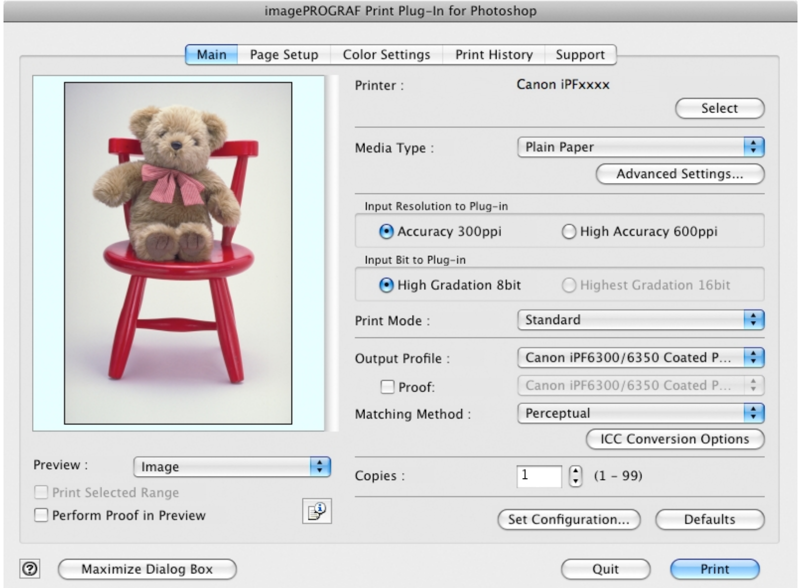
Perform Black Point Compensation

Black point compensation that is equivalent to Photoshop can be performed using the following procedure. Use this to avoid saturation in the black areas of images.

Important

- In order to make the black point compensation settings effective, close down and restart Photoshop or Digital Photo Professional.
- Adobe CMM needs to be installed in order to use black point compensation. Refer to Using Adobe CMM →P.651 for details on how to install Adobe CMM.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.


imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in

● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in

● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

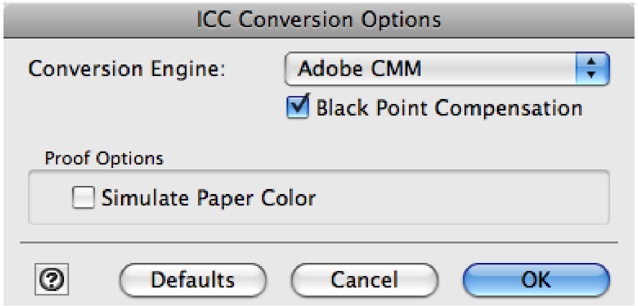
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

4. Select **Adobe CMM** as the **Conversion Engine**.

5. Check the **Black Point Compensation** check box.



ICC Conversion Options

Conversion Engine: Adobe CMM

☑ Black Point Compensation

Proof Options

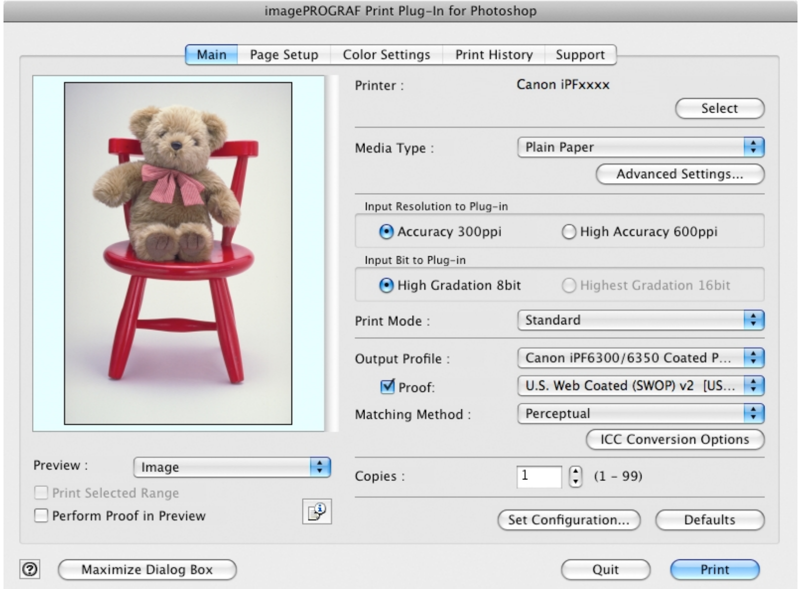
☐ Simulate Paper Color

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

Perform Printing Press Simulation Print

You can perform printing press simulation prints by specifying ICC profiles such as Japan Color or SWOP, and specifying an ICC profile for the printing press.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in: ● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in: ● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

☑ Proof: U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2 [US...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

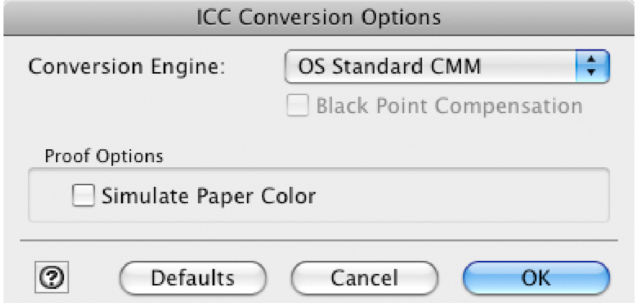
☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select one of the ICC profiles as the **Output Profile**.

3. Check the **Proof** check box and select the profile for the printing press you want to target from the list on the right.

4. Click the **ICC Conversion Options** button to open the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.



5. Configure the **Proof Options** as needed.

Note

- The proof option is **Simulate Paper Color**.

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **ICC Conversion Options** dialog box.

7. Click the **Print** button.
Printing begins.

Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can enlarge or reduce an image in Print Plug-In.
Three methods to enlarge/reduce and print are as follows.

- Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size →P.655
- Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper →P.657
- Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print →P.658

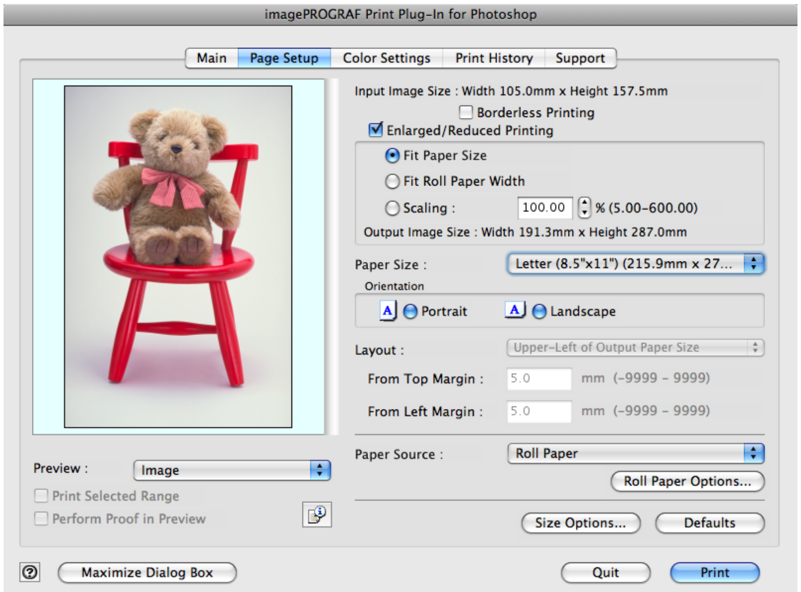
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Output Media Size

By specifying the media type loaded in the printer, the image can be enlarged or reduced to fit the size of the image area of the media. This feature is useful when you need to print on the full width of Media that you have selected.

Note

- When you need to print on the full width of roll media, see "Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper." →P.657
- When you do the procedure below to print on roll media, the print job will match the size of the output with the media selected with the **Paper Size** setting.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Input Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)

Output Image Size : Width 191.3mm x Height 287.0mm

Paper Size : Letter (8.5"x11") (215.9mm x 27...

Layout : Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

From Left Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
> - This is not displayed when **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

> Note
> - When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
> - When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5. Select **Fit Paper Size**.

6. Click the **Print** button.

   The image prints filling the entire output media surface.

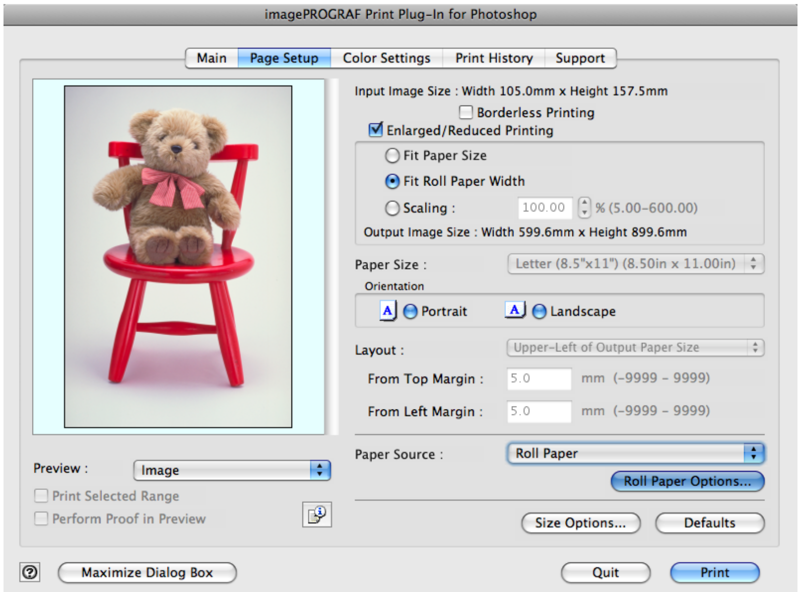
Enlarge/Reduce and Print Matching Width of Roll Paper

You can enlarge/reduce and print an image matching the width of the roll paper set in the printer. This is useful when you wish to print an image that covers the entire width of the roll paper.

Note

- Printing will not occur properly when a print roll is not set to the printer.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



Input Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

○ Fit Paper Size

● Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100.00 % (5.00–600.00)

Output Image Size : Width 599.6mm x Height 899.6mm

Paper Size : Letter (8.5"x11") (8.50in x 11.00in)

Orientation

Portrait

Landscape

Layout : Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 – 9999)

From Left Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 – 9999)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3. Click the **Roll Paper Options** button.

4. Set the roll paper options and click the **OK** button.

Note

- For more information about the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box, see "Roll Paper Options Dialog Box." →P.634
- Click the **Defaults** button to return all of the roll paper option settings to their defaults.

5. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

Note

- When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
- When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

6. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

7. Select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

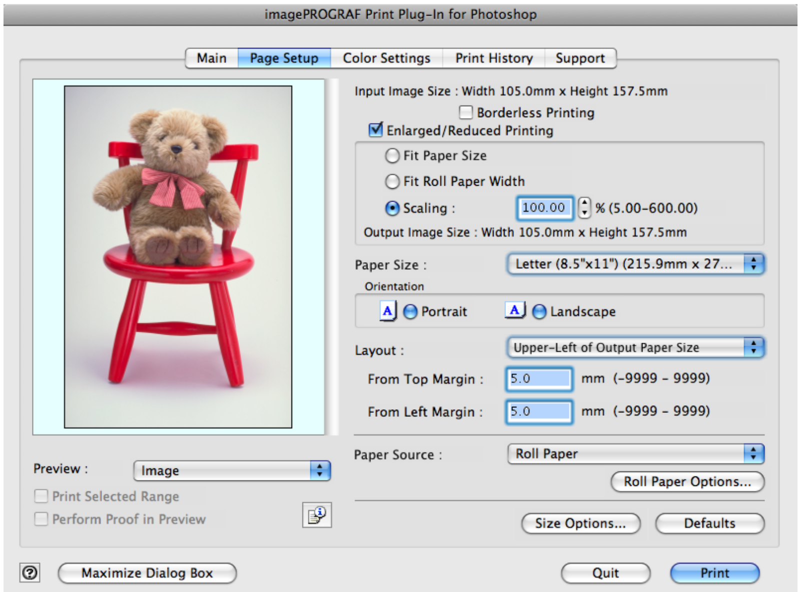
8. Click the **Print** button.

   The image prints covering the entire width of the roll paper.

Specify Scaling, Enlarge/Reduce and Print

You can specify scaling to enlarge/reduce an image and print. This is useful when you wish to print an image at a specific size.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Input Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

☐ Borderless Printing

☑ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

○ Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

● Scaling : 100.00 % (5.00-600.00)

Output Image Size : Width 105.0mm x Height 157.5mm

Paper Size : Letter (8.5"x11") (215.9mm x 27...

Orientation

● Portrait ○ Landscape

Layout : Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

From Left Margin : 5.0 mm (-9999 - 9999)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the size of the media that you want to print in **Paper Size**.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.
> - **Fit Roll Paper Width**is set in **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

3. Select either **Portrait** or **Landscape** as the media orientation for the image in **Orientation**.

> Note
> - When you select **Portrait**, the image on the media prints as it appears on the screen.
> - When you select **Landscape**, the image on the media prints rotated 90 degrees.

4. Click the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box on.

> Note
> - This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

5. Select **Scaling** and input the scaling factor or drag the four corners of the image in the Preview display.

> Note
> - You can specify scaling rate in intervals of 0.01%.
> - You can specify a range between 5.00-600.00%.
> - The size of the width and height proportionally grow when the image is enlarged/reduced.

6. Either drag the image on the **Print Area Layout** preview, or set the print position **Layout**.

7. Click the **Print** button.

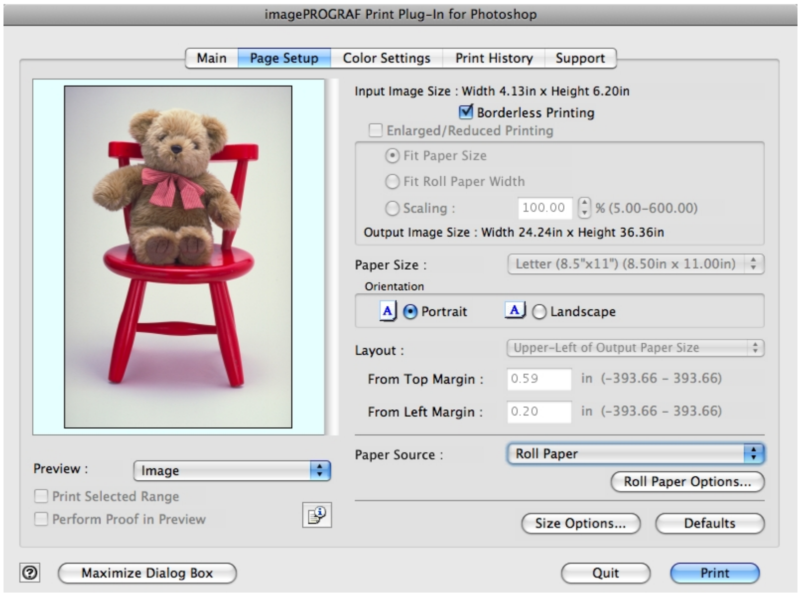
   Printing begins at the set scaling rate.

Print with No Borders

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

> Note
> - With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
> - To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1. Display the **Page Setup** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Input Image Size : Width 4.13in x Height 6.20in

☑ Borderless Printing

☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing

● Fit Paper Size

○ Fit Roll Paper Width

○ Scaling : 100.00 % (5.00–600.00)

Output Image Size : Width 24.24in x Height 36.36in

Paper Size : Letter (8.5"x11") (8.50in x 11.00in)

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

Layout : Upper-Left of Output Paper Size

From Top Margin : 0.59 in (-393.66 – 393.66)

From Left Margin : 0.20 in (-393.66 – 393.66)

Paper Source : Roll Paper

Preview : Image

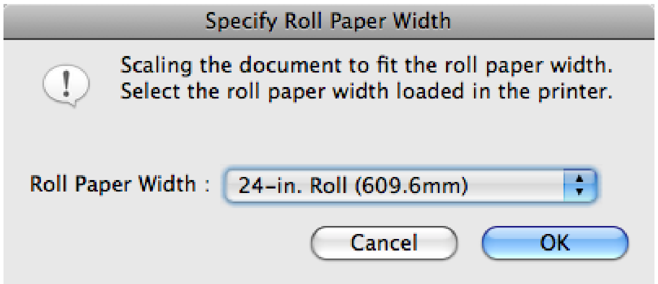
☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select **Roll Paper** in **Paper Source**.

3. Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.

> Note
> - Select the width for roll paper set in the printer in **Roll Paper Width** in the **Specify Roll Paper Width** dialog box, and click **OK**.



Specify Roll Paper Width

Scaling the document to fit the roll paper width.
Select the roll paper width loaded in the printer.

Roll Paper Width : 24-in. Roll (609.6mm)

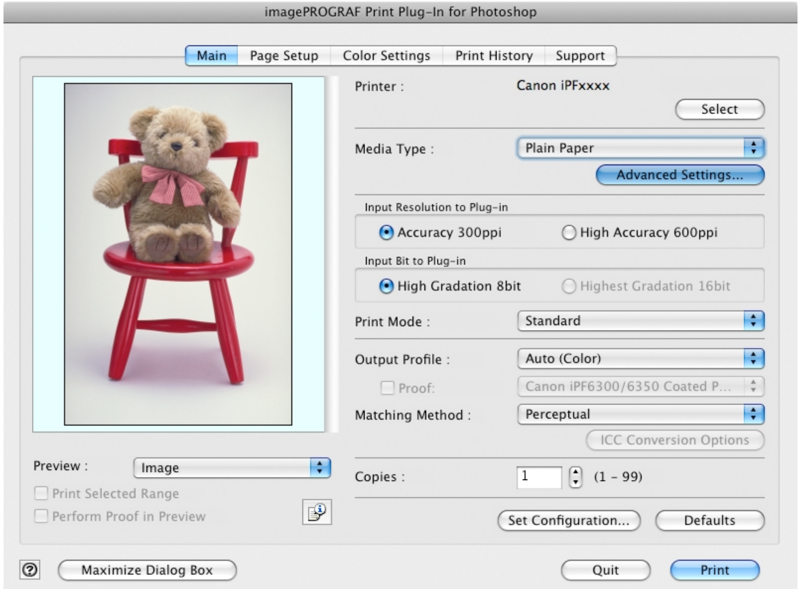
4. Click the **Print** button.

   Borderless printing begins.

Customize Media Settings

You can customize media settings.

1. Display the **Main** sheet.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

Printer : Canon iPFxxxx

Media Type : Plain Paper

Input Resolution to Plug-in
● Accuracy 300ppi ○ High Accuracy 600ppi

Input Bit to Plug-in
● High Gradation 8bit ○ Highest Gradation 16bit

Print Mode : Standard

Output Profile : Auto (Color)

☐ Proof: Canon iPF6300/6350 Coated P...

Matching Method : Perceptual

Copies : 1 (1 - 99)

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Select the media type that you wish to customize in **Media Type**.

> Note
>
> - Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

3. Click the **Advanced Settings** button.

4. Perform the settings in the Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.630 and click the **OK** button.

Utilize Print History

When you perform various settings and print in Print Plug-In, those settings are saved as print history. Also, you can export and import as files. You can store often-used print history under a specified name in print preferences.

> **Note**
> - You can save up to 200 print history items. All items over 200 are deleted in chronological order.

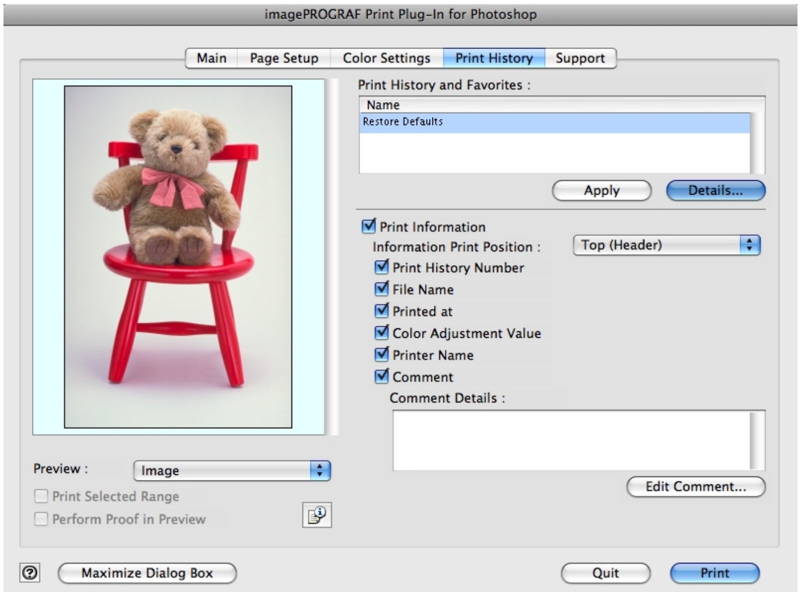
You can do the following things using print history.

- Confirm Print History Details →P.661
- Apply Print History to an Image →P.662
- Store Print History to Print Preferences →P.663
- Delete Print History →P.665
- Export Print History from Print Preferences →P.667
- Import Print History to Print Preferences →P.668
- Delete Print History from Print Preferences →P.670
- Set Information to Print with Image →P.672

Confirm Print History Details

You can confirm the print history details.

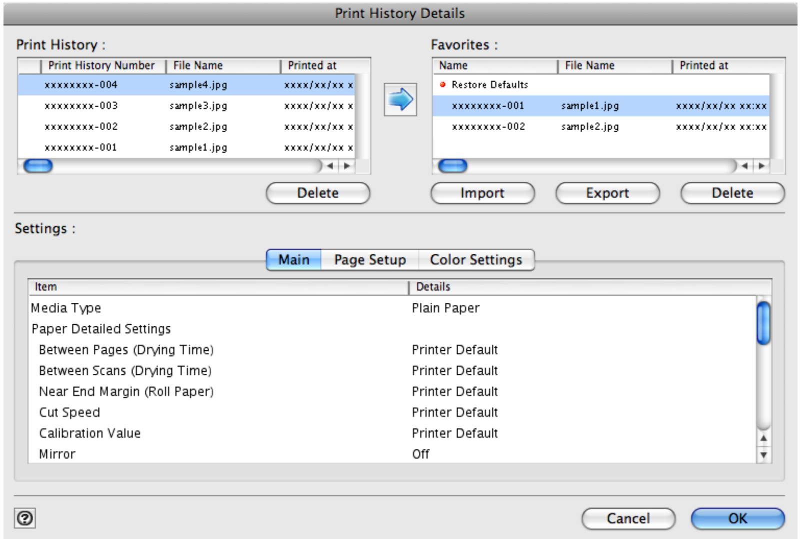
1. Display **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :
Name
Restore Defaults
☑ Print Information
Information Print Position : Top (Header)
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment
Comment Details :
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

> **Note**
> - Select the print history you wish to check the details of, from either **Print History** or **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History :

Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Favorites :

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

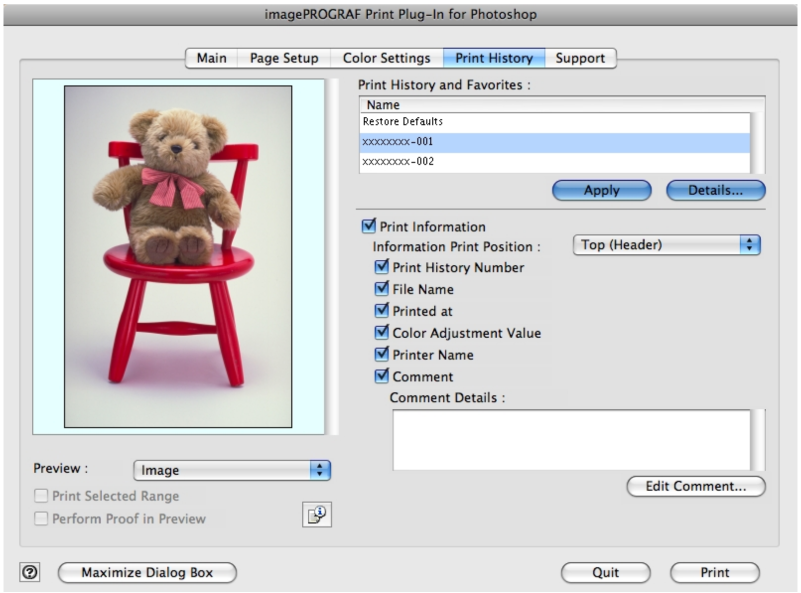
3. Check the print history details in **Settings**, and click the **OK** button.

> **Note**
> - You can display the print history details by switching the sheets.

Apply Print History to an Image

You can use previous print history, and apply it to an image.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Name
Restore Defaults
xxxxxxxx-001
xxxxxxxx-002

☑ Print Information
Information Print Position : Top (Header)
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment
Comment Details :

Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. If required, check the print history details. (See "Confirm Print History Details.") →P.661

3. Select the print history you wish to apply from **Print History and Favorites**, and click the **Apply** button.

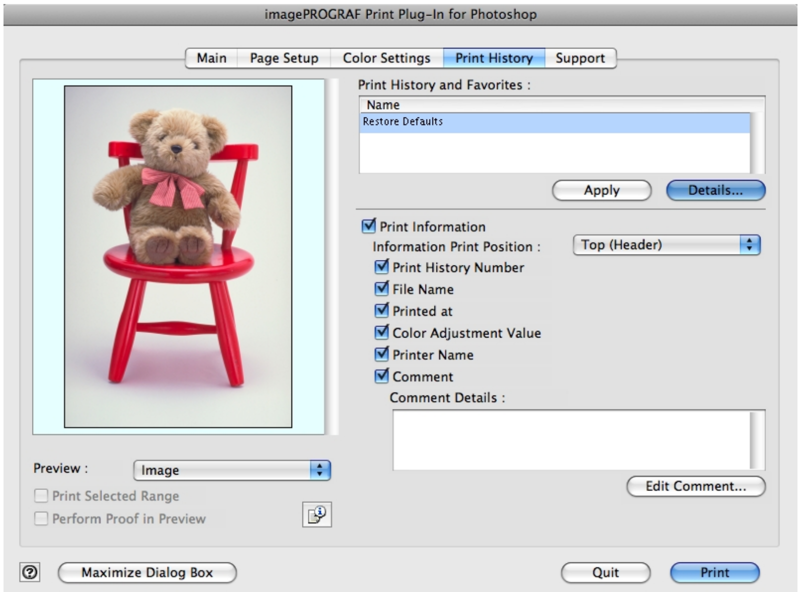
Store Print History to Print Preferences

You can store often-used print history to print preferences. Not only can you store the print history stored under a different name in print preferences, you can also find it with ease.

Note

- You can store up to 200 print history items to print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position : Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details :

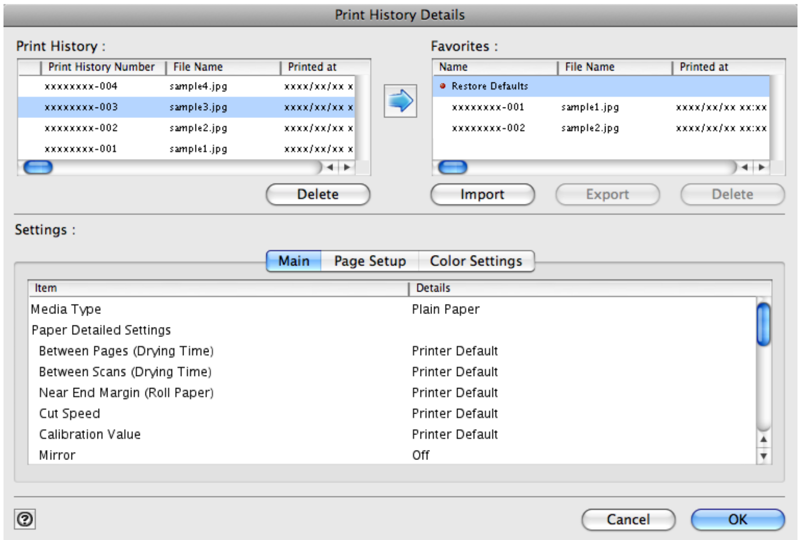
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and check the print history details in **Settings**.



Print History :

Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

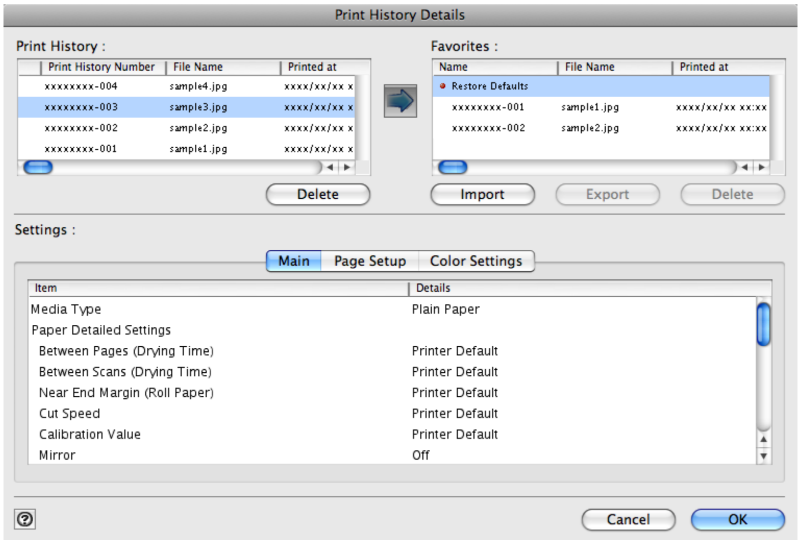
Favorites :

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings :

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Select the print history you wish to store in print preferences from **Print History** and click the button.



Print History :

Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Favorites :

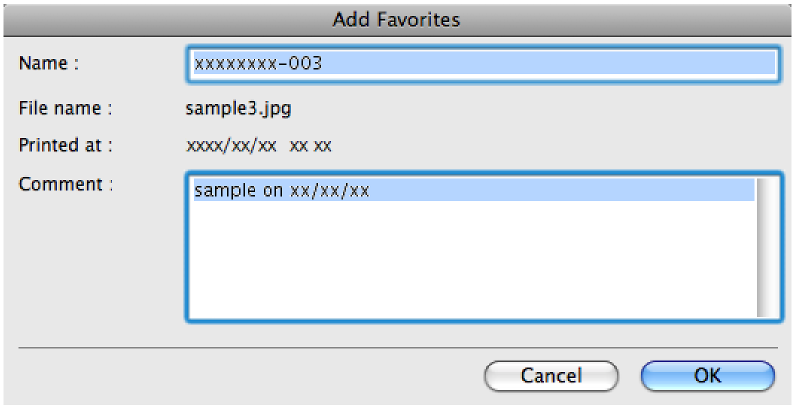
Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings :

Main | Page Setup | Color Settings

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

5. In the **Add Favorites** dialog box input the name of the print history in **Name**, input a comment in **Comment**, and click the **OK** button.



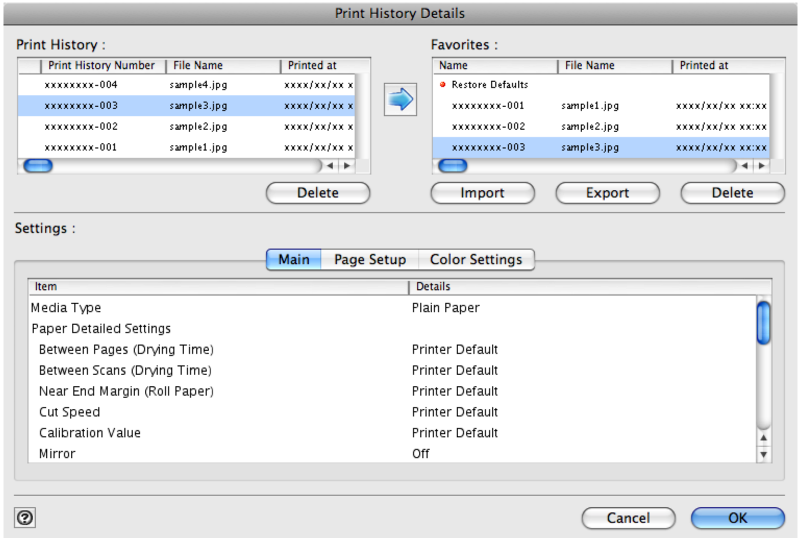
Name : xxxxxxxx-003

File name : sample3.jpg

Printed at : xxxx/xx/xx xx xx

Comment : sample on xx/xx/xx

6. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History :

Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Favorites :

Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings :

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

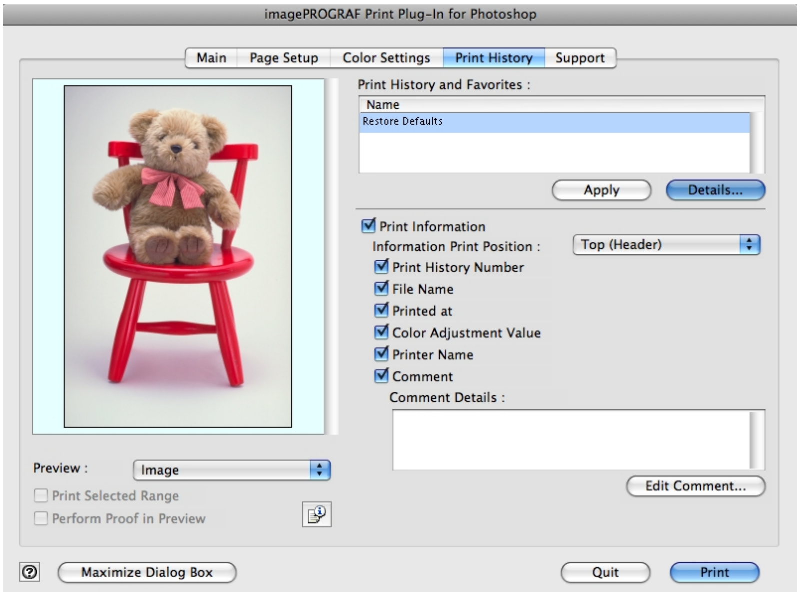
Delete Print History

You can delete print history.

Important

- Be aware that you cannot undo deletions of print history.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position : Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details :

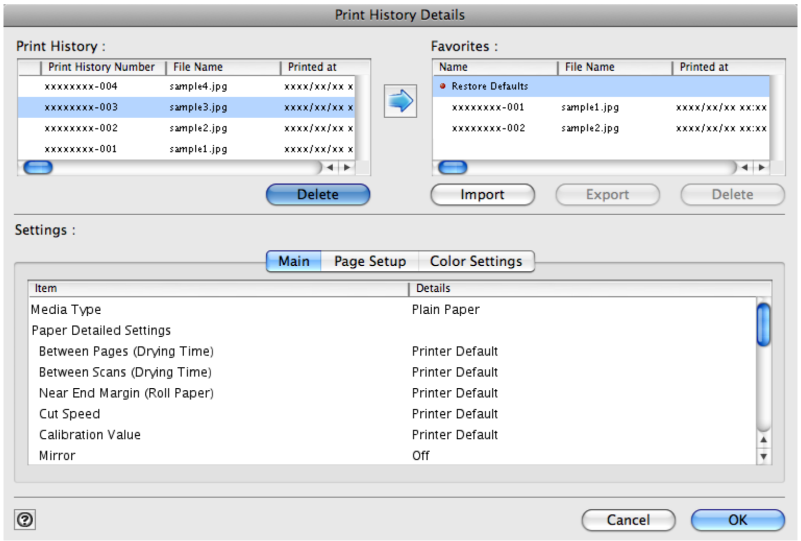
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to delete from **Print History** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.

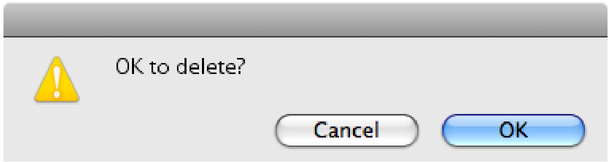


Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

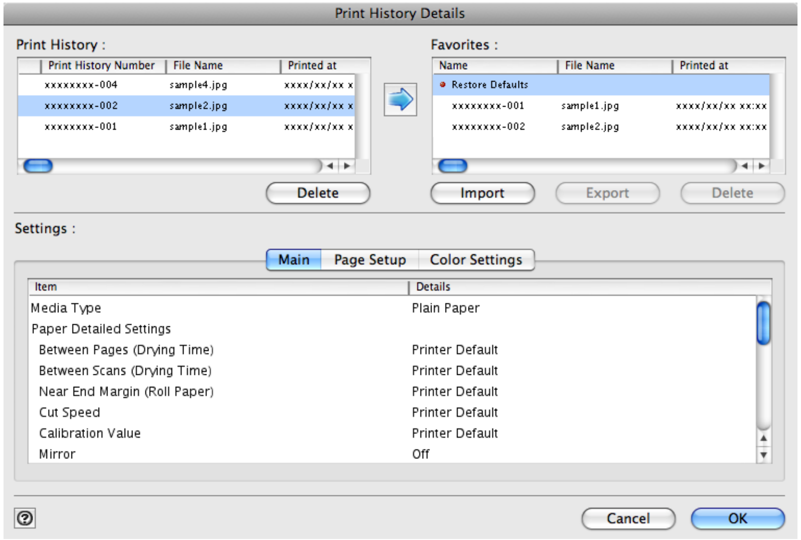
Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Click the **OK** button.



OK to delete?

5. Click the **OK**button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

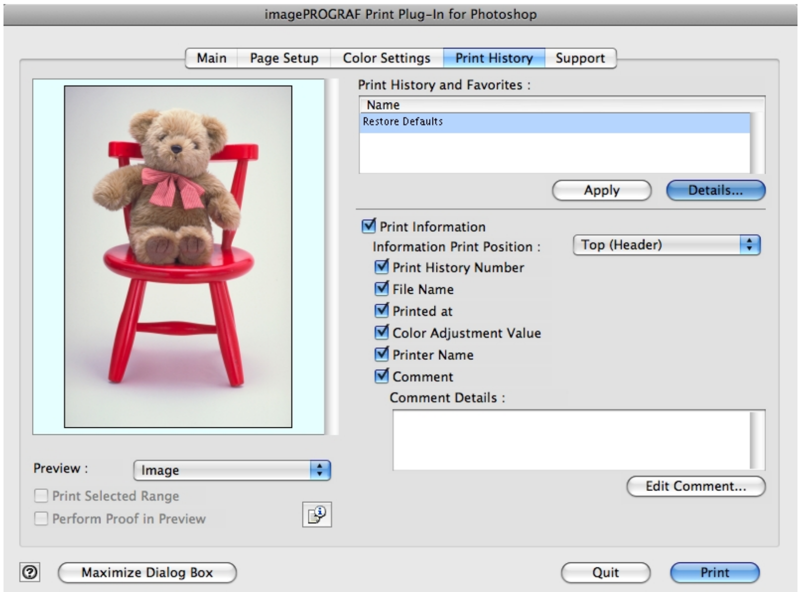
Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

Export Print History from Print Preferences

You can export print history stored in print preferences as a file.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Name
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position : Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details :

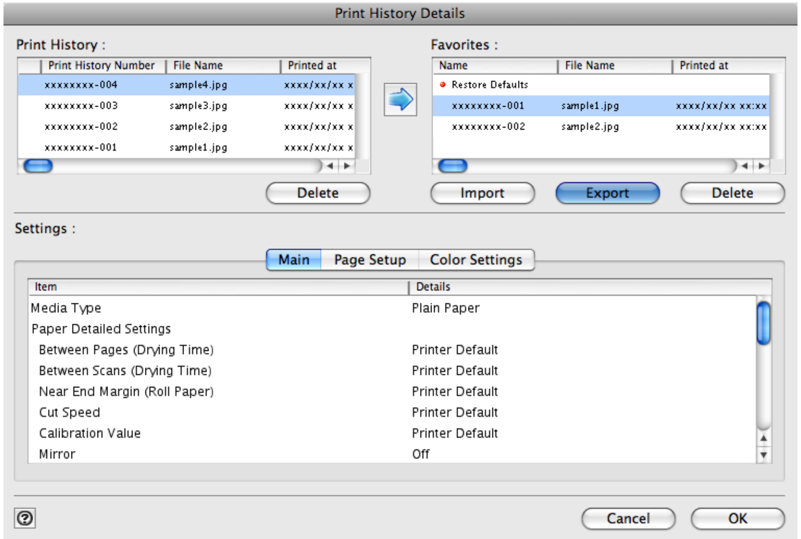
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to export from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Export** button.



Print History :

Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

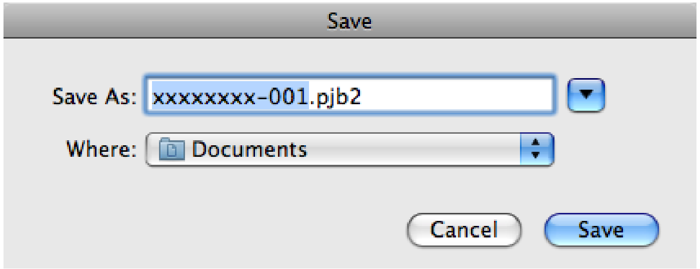
Favorites :

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Settings :

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Input the name of the print history in **Save As** in the **Save** dialog box, and click the **Save** button.



Save As: xxxxxxxx-001.pjb2

Where: Documents

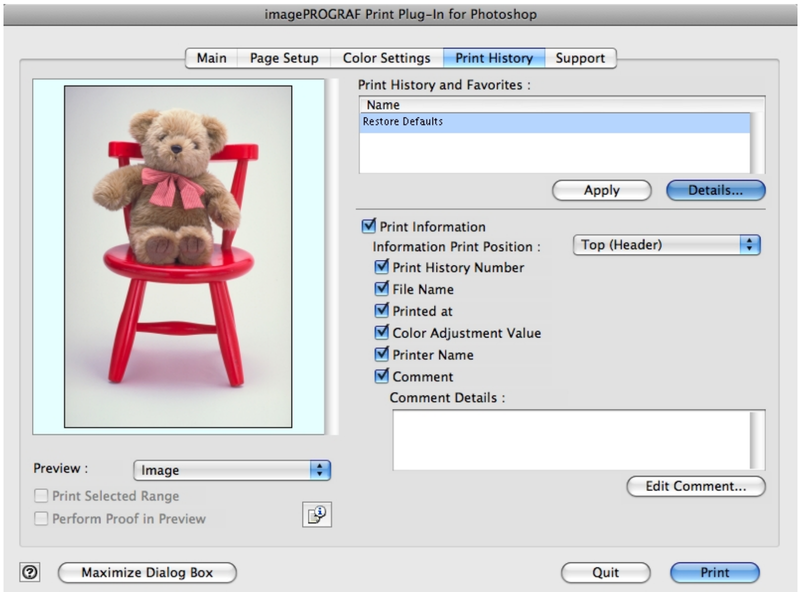
The print history is exported under the specified file name.

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.

Import Print History to Print Preferences

You can import print history in file format and store it to print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position : Top (Header)

☑ Print History Number

☑ File Name

☑ Printed at

☑ Color Adjustment Value

☑ Printer Name

☑ Comment

Comment Details :

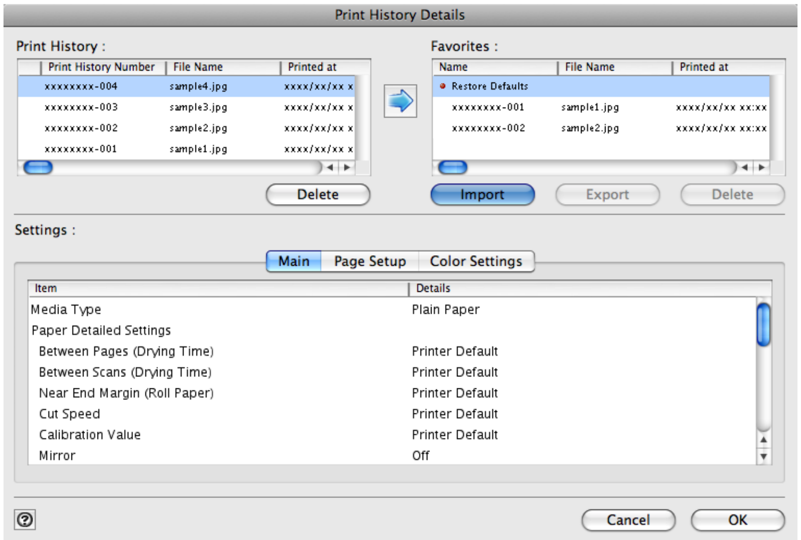
Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range

☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Click the **Import** button in the **Print History Details** dialog box.

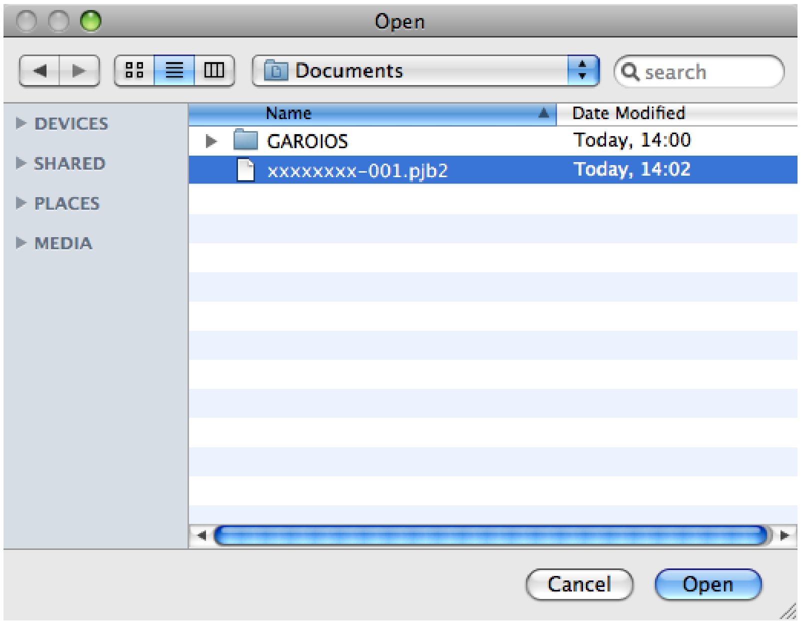


Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Select the print history you wish to import in the **Open** dialog box, and click the **Open** button.

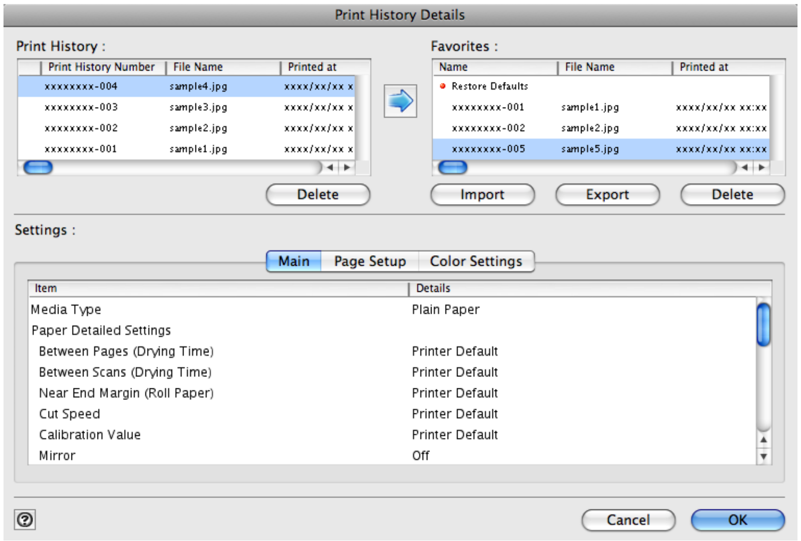


Name	Date Modified
GAROIOS	Today, 14:00
xxxxxxxx-001.pjb2	Today, 14:02

The print history is imported.

> Note
> - The print history file name suffix is *.pjb/*.pjb2.
> - You cannot import a print history file exported from a different OS in Print Plug-In.
> - You cannot import a print history file exported from a different printer in Print Plug-In.

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

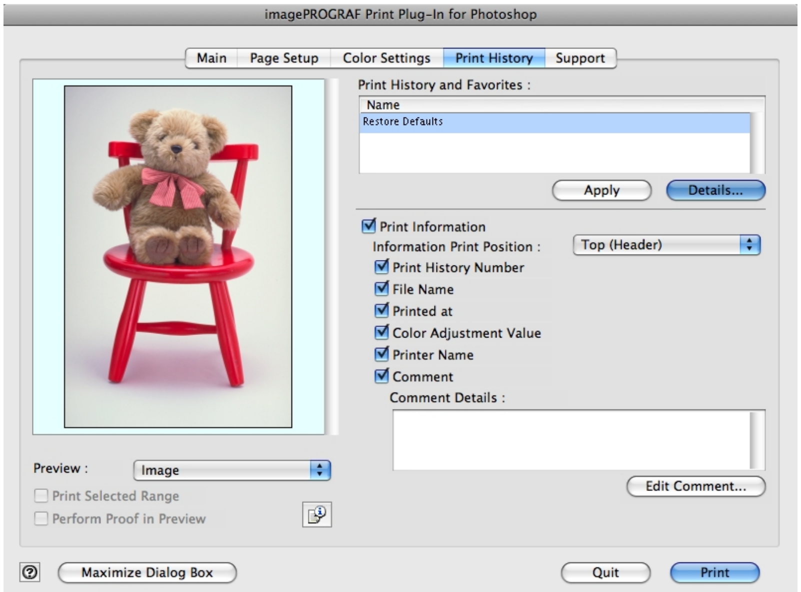
Name	File Name	Printed at
● Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-005	sample5.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

Delete Print History from Print Preferences

You can delete print history store to print preferences. You cannot store more than 200 print history items in print preferences.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



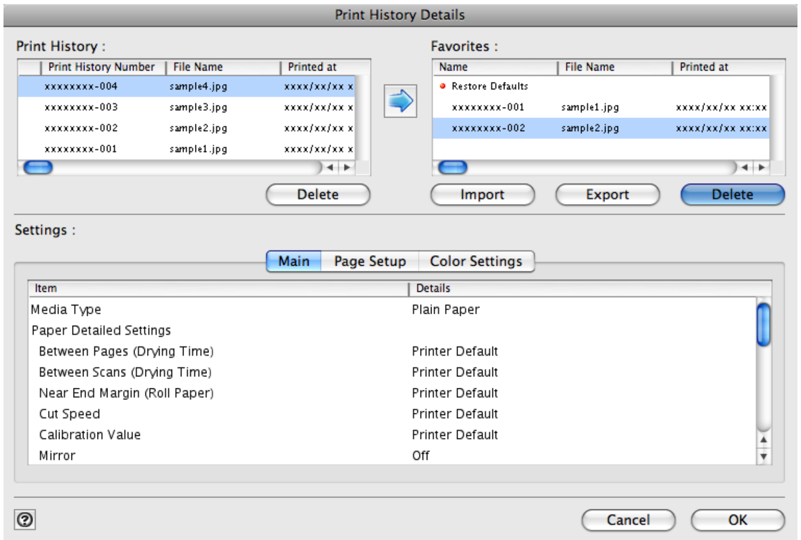
Restore Defaults

☑ Print Information
Information Print Position : Top (Header)
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment
Comment Details :

Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Details** button.

3. Select the print history you wish to delete from **Favorites** in the **Print History Details** dialog box, and click the **Delete** button.

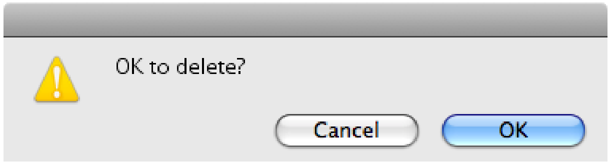


Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

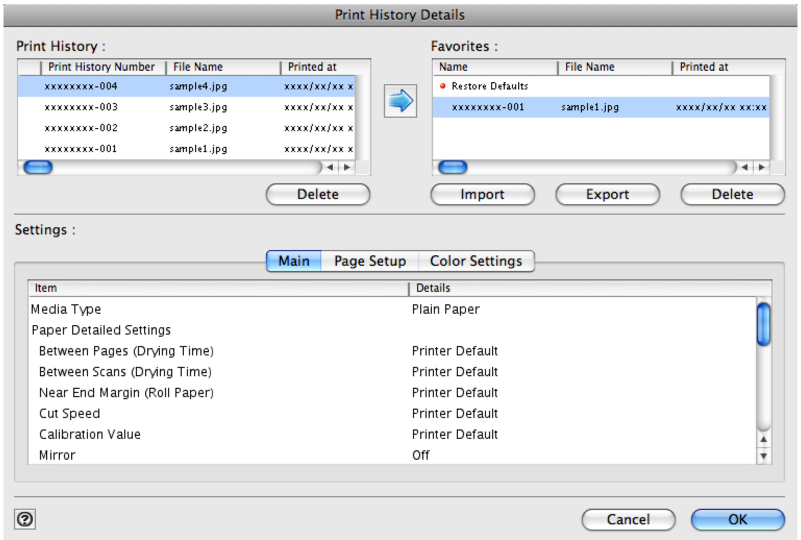
Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

4. Click the **OK** button.


OK to delete?

5. Click the **OK** button to close the **Print History Details** dialog box.



Print History Number	File Name	Printed at
xxxxxxxx-004	sample4.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-003	sample3.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-002	sample2.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx x

Name	File Name	Printed at
Restore Defaults		
xxxxxxxx-001	sample1.jpg	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

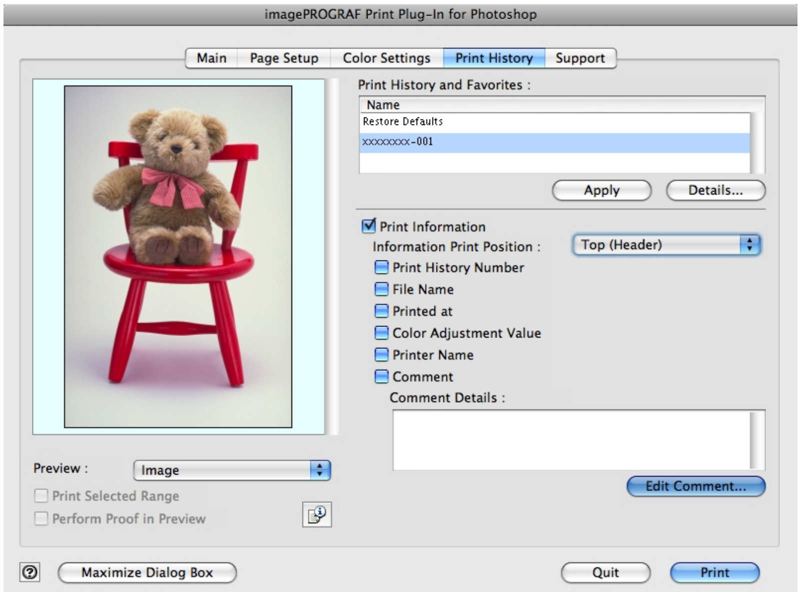
Item	Details
Media Type	Plain Paper
Paper Detailed Settings	
Between Pages (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Between Scans (Drying Time)	Printer Default
Near End Margin (Roll Paper)	Printer Default
Cut Speed	Printer Default
Calibration Value	Printer Default
Mirror	Off

Set Information to Print with Image

You can print information with an image that is related, such as the file name and the time and date.

> **Note**
>
> - When you use the borderless printing function to print, the information will not be printed. (See "Print with No Borders.") →P.659
> - When the printed information is too long as does not fit on the media, a break will appear in the printed information.
> - The information may print on the image data with some media sizes, enlargement rates and print position values.
> - When **Keep Media Size** is set to **On** on the printer, a portion of bottom of the print data is not printed.

1. Display the **Print History** sheet.



Print History and Favorites :

Restore Defaults
xxxxxxxx-001

☑ Print Information

Information Print Position : Top (Header)

☐ Print History Number
☐ File Name
☐ Printed at
☐ Color Adjustment Value
☐ Printer Name
☐ Comment

Comment Details :

Preview : Image

☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

2. Click the **Print Information** check box on.

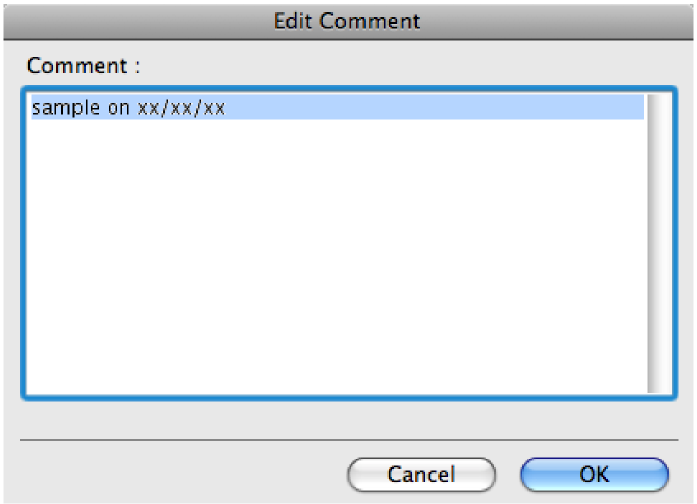
3. Select the position where you wish to print the information in **Information Print Position**.

4. Click the information check box you wish to print on.

5. When you wish to edit the comment, click the **Edit Comment** button.

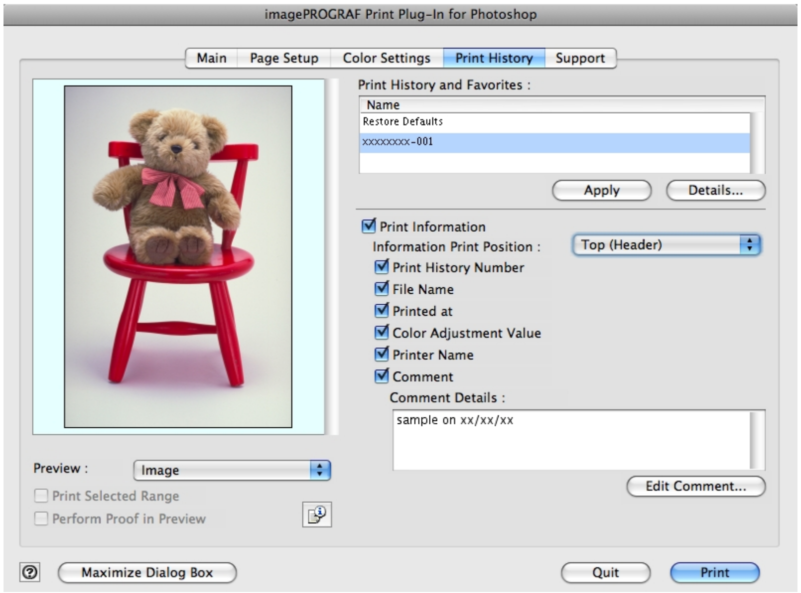
> **Note**
>
> - When you do not wish to edit the comment, move to step 7.

6. Input the comment in the **Edit Comment** dialog box, and click **OK** button.



Comment : sample on xx/xx/xx

7. Click the **Print** button.



Print History and Favorites :

Name
Restore Defaults
xxxxxxxx-001

☑ Print Information
Information Print Position : Top (Header)
☑ Print History Number
☑ File Name
☑ Printed at
☑ Color Adjustment Value
☑ Printer Name
☑ Comment
Comment Details : sample on xx/xx/xx

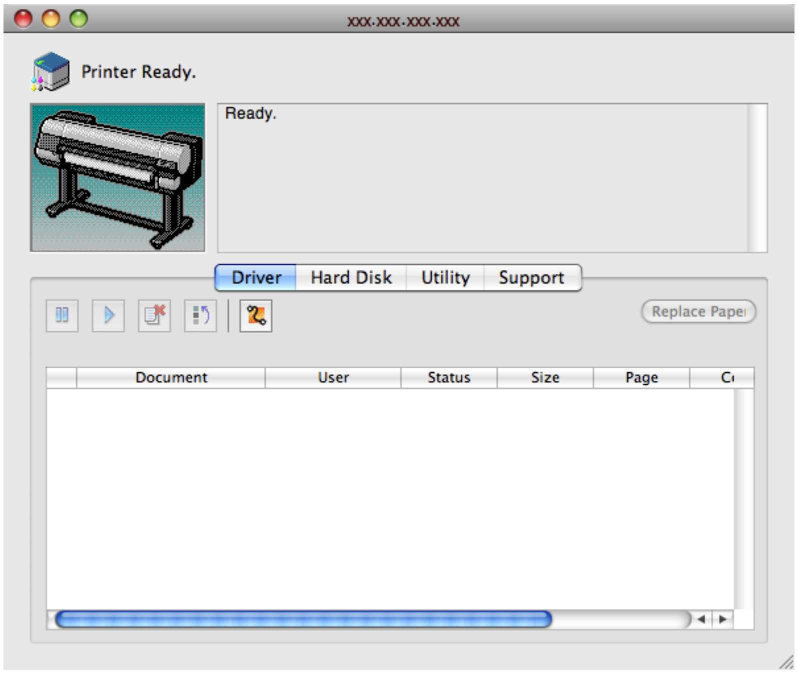
Preview : Image
☐ Print Selected Range
☐ Perform Proof in Preview

Comments are printed with images.

Printmonitor

The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



Printer Ready.

Ready.

- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.

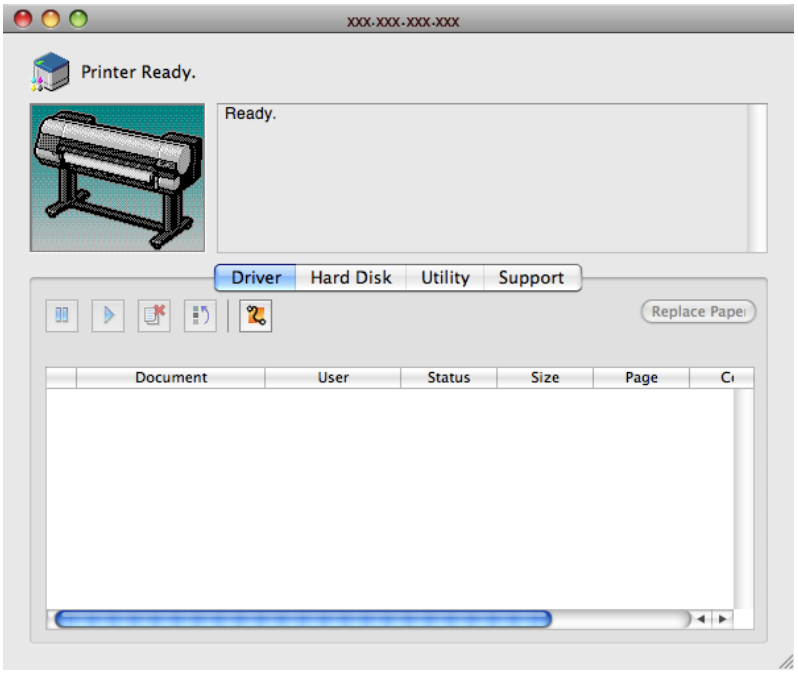
Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, select the printer again as follows.

  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu. Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  4. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

You can use the **Driver** Panel in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.



Printer Ready.

Ready.

- Preempting Other Jobs

If you select a print job and click the ⤺ button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

- Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the ⏸ button pauses printing of the selected job.

To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the ▶ button.

Note
- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

- Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the ✖ button cancels printing of the selected job.

Note
- You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

- Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a **Status** of **Holding** is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the **Replace Paper** button.

2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.

Note

- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click **Continue to print** button.

Media Configuration Tool

The Features of Media Configuration Tool

The Media Configuration Tool offers the following features.

- Enables information about additional media (types of paper) supported by the printer to be added to the printer control panel and to the printer driver, through the use of relevant media information files.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.
- You can add custom paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper) to the printer control panel and printer driver.

Important

- Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.
- Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.
- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon output confirmed paper).
- The paper feed properties cannot be guaranteed if **Add Custom Paper** is used on Canon genuine paper in the Media Configuration Tool.
- The print quality and paper feed properties cannot be guaranteed if **Add Custom Paper** is used on Canon feed confirmed paper in the Media Configuration Tool. Furthermore, Canon does not guarantee the print quality of Canon feed confirmed paper.

Note

- Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide. Any other paper is called custom paper.

Operating Environment

You can use Media Configuration Tool in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
  Mac OS X (10.4.11 to 10.6)
- Software that requires installation
  imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Procedures for Installing

Start the installer in the new version of Media Configuration Tool, and follow procedures below to install the Media Configuration Tool.

Important

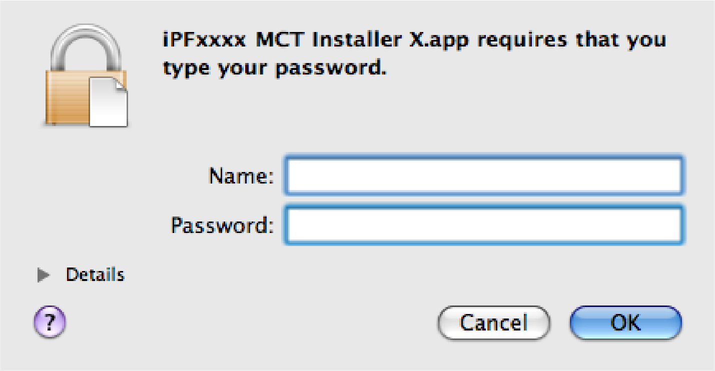
- If the printer driver is installed from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. Therefore, the following procedure does not normally need to be performed. To install the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as when you have downloaded a new version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website, use the following procedure.

1. Double click the **MCT Installer iPFxxxx for X** icon to start the Media Configuration Tool installer.

Note

- The **iPFxxxx** in the icon will be the printer name in use.

2. Input the administrator name and password, and click the **OK** button.

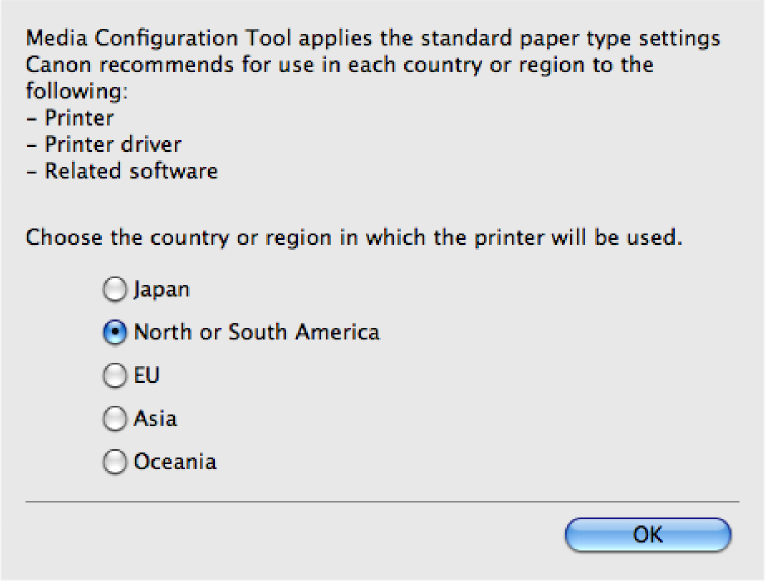


iPFxxxx MCT Installer X.app requires that you type your password.

Name:

Password:

3. The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used.
   Select a country or territory then click the **OK** button.

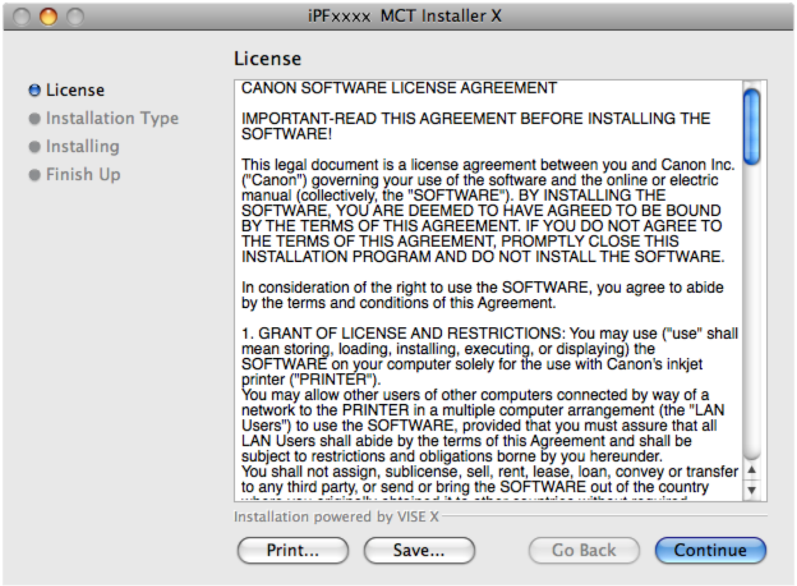


Media Configuration Tool applies the standard paper type settings Canon recommends for use in each country or region to the following:
- Printer
- Printer driver
- Related software

Choose the country or region in which the printer will be used.

○ Japan
● North or South America
○ EU
○ Asia
○ Oceania

4. The **License** is displayed.
   After you have read Canon Software License Agreement, click the **Continue** button.



License

CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

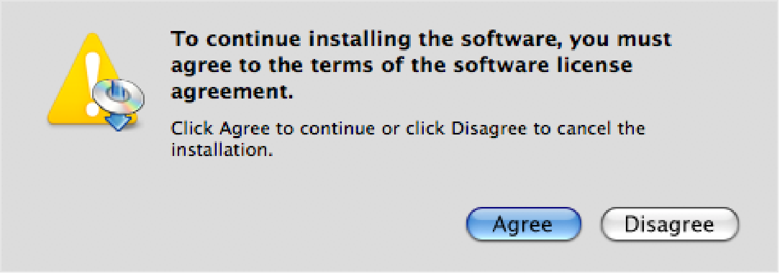
IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE AND RESTRICTIONS: You may use ("use" shall mean storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying) the SOFTWARE on your computer solely for the use with Canon's inkjet printer ("PRINTER").
You may allow other users of other computers connected by way of a network to the PRINTER in a multiple computer arrangement (the "LAN Users") to use the SOFTWARE, provided that you must assure that all LAN Users shall abide by the terms of this Agreement and shall be subject to restrictions and obligations borne by you hereunder.
You shall not assign, sublicense, sell, rent, lease, loan, convey or transfer to any third party, or send or bring the SOFTWARE out of the country

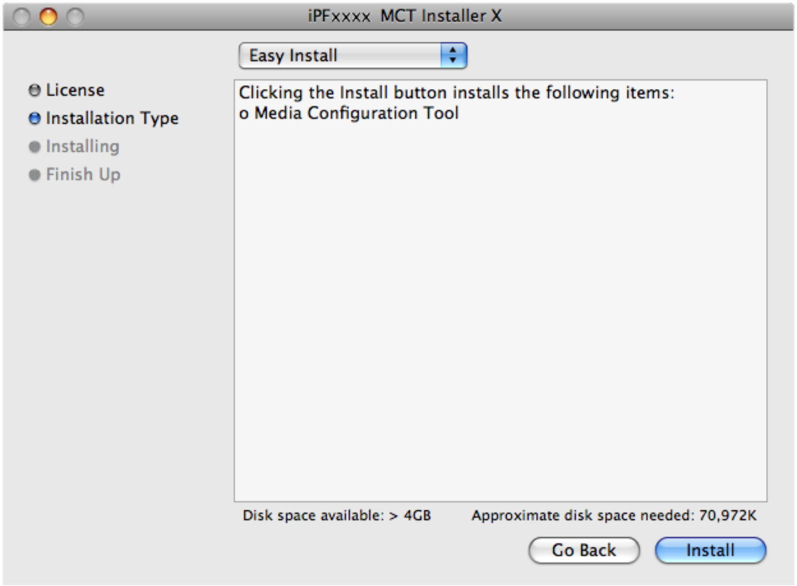
5. Click the **Agree** button.



To continue installing the software, you must agree to the terms of the software license agreement.

Click Agree to continue or click Disagree to cancel the installation.

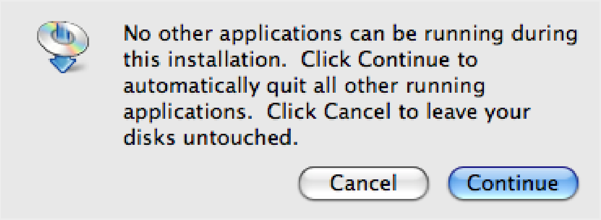
6. Select **Easy Install** then click the **Install** button.



Clicking the Install button installs the following items:
o Media Configuration Tool

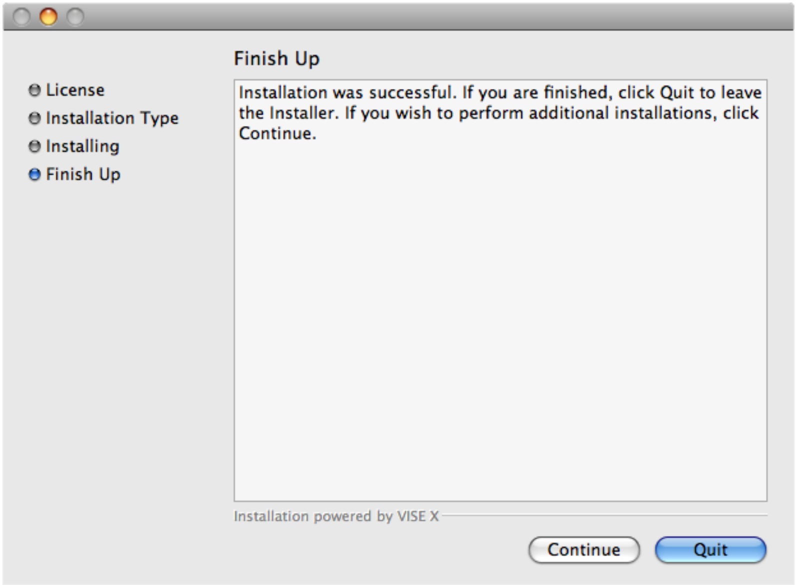
Disk space available: > 4GB Approximate disk space needed: 70,972K

7. Click the **Continue** button to quit another application.



No other applications can be running during this installation. Click Continue to automatically quit all other running applications. Click Cancel to leave your disks untouched.

8. When the following message is displayed, click the **Quit** button.



Installation was successful. If you are finished, click Quit to leave the Installer. If you wish to perform additional installations, click Continue.

Installation powered by VISE X

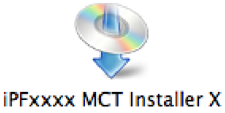
The installation of Media Configuration Tool is complete.

Note

- When the installation is completed properly, the **Media Configuration Tool** folder is saved in the following folder.
  Applications > **Canon Utilities** > **iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool**
- The **iPFxxxx** in the folder above will be the printer name in use.

Procedures for Uninstalling

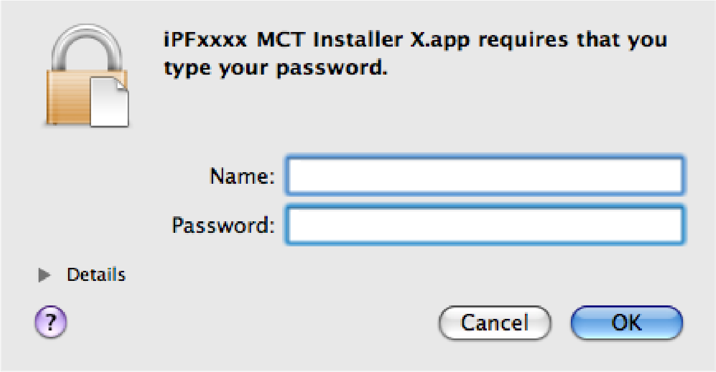
1. Double click the **MCT Installer iPFxxxx for X** icon to start the Media Configuration Tool installer.



Note

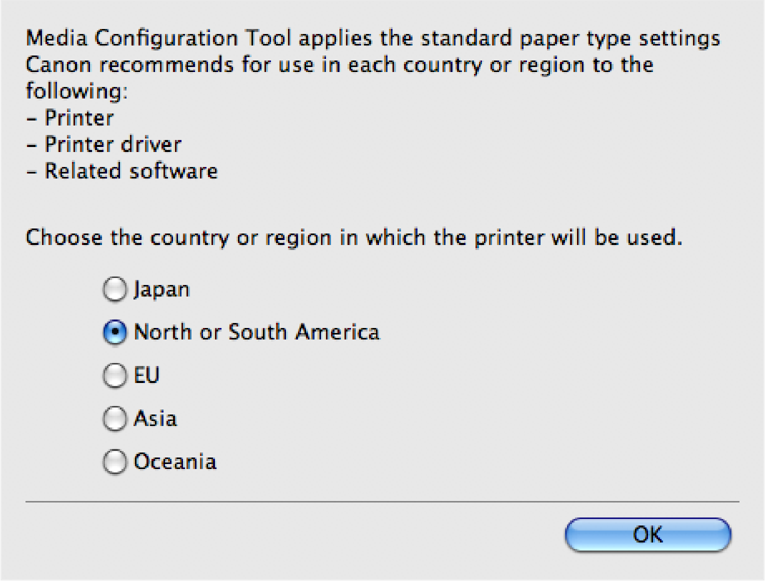
- The **iPFxxxx** in the icon will be the printer name in use.

2. Input the administrator name and password, and click the **OK** button.



iPFxxxx MCT Installer X.app requires that you type your password.

3. The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used.
Select a country or territory then click the **OK** button.

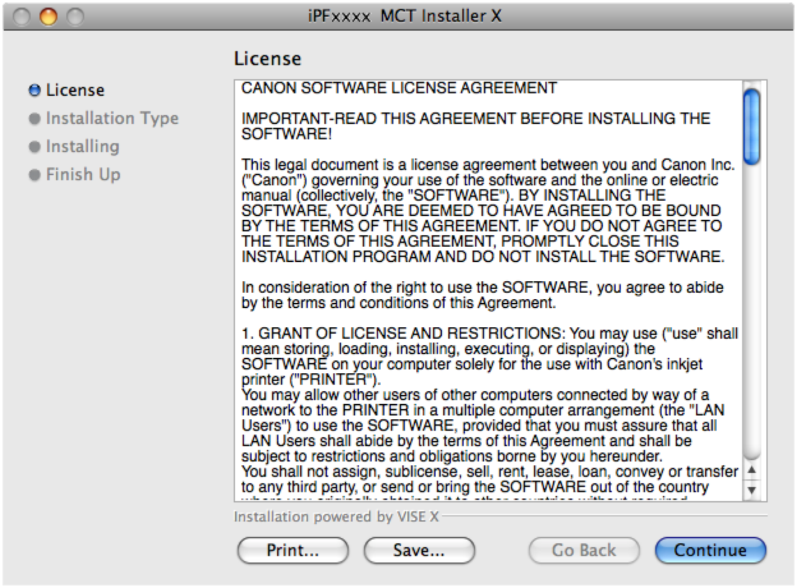


Media Configuration Tool applies the standard paper type settings Canon recommends for use in each country or region to the following:
- Printer
- Printer driver
- Related software

Choose the country or region in which the printer will be used.

○ Japan
● North or South America
○ EU
○ Asia
○ Oceania

4. The **License** is displayed.
After you have read Canon Software License Agreement, click the **Continue** button.



CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

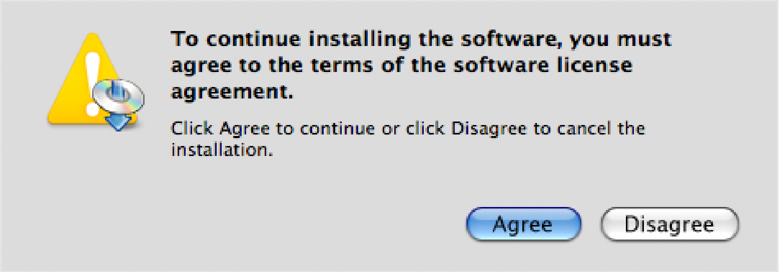
IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!

This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE AND RESTRICTIONS: You may use ("use" shall mean storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying) the SOFTWARE on your computer solely for the use with Canon's inkjet printer ("PRINTER").
You may allow other users of other computers connected by way of a network to the PRINTER in a multiple computer arrangement (the "LAN Users") to use the SOFTWARE, provided that you must assure that all LAN Users shall abide by the terms of this Agreement and shall be subject to restrictions and obligations borne by you hereunder.
You shall not assign, sublicense, sell, rent, lease, loan, convey or transfer to any third party, or send or bring the SOFTWARE out of the country

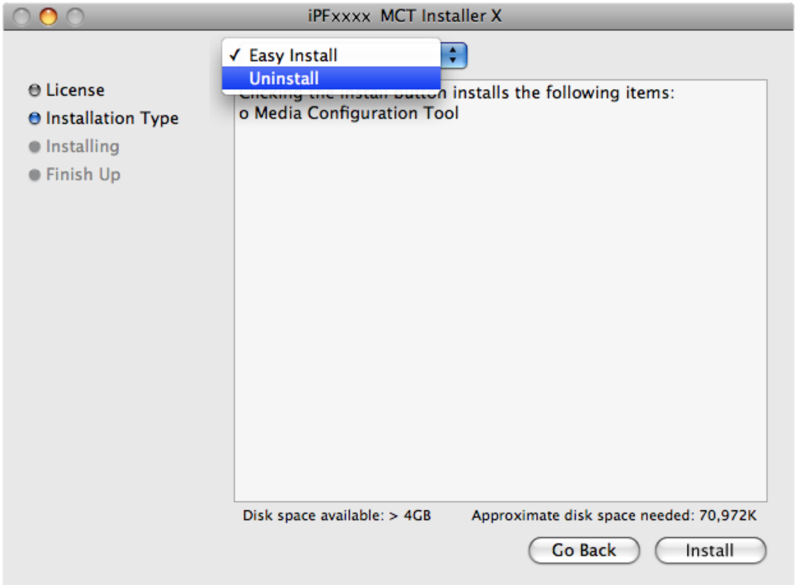
5. Click the **Agree** button.



To continue installing the software, you must agree to the terms of the software license agreement.

Click Agree to continue or click Disagree to cancel the installation.

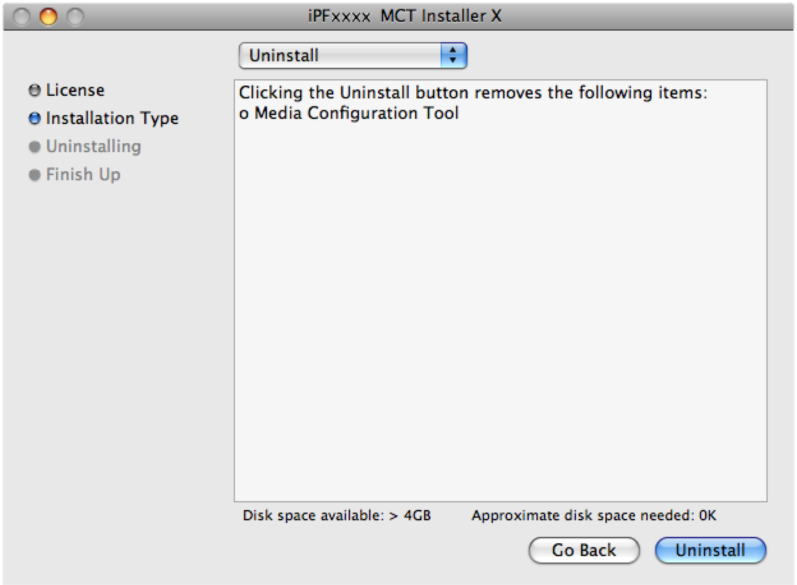
6. Select **Uninstall**.



Clicking the Install button installs the following items:
o Media Configuration Tool

Disk space available: > 4GB Approximate disk space needed: 70,972K

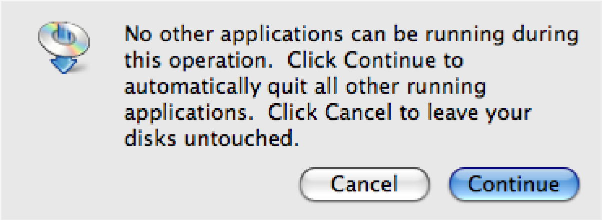
7. Click the **Uninstall** button.



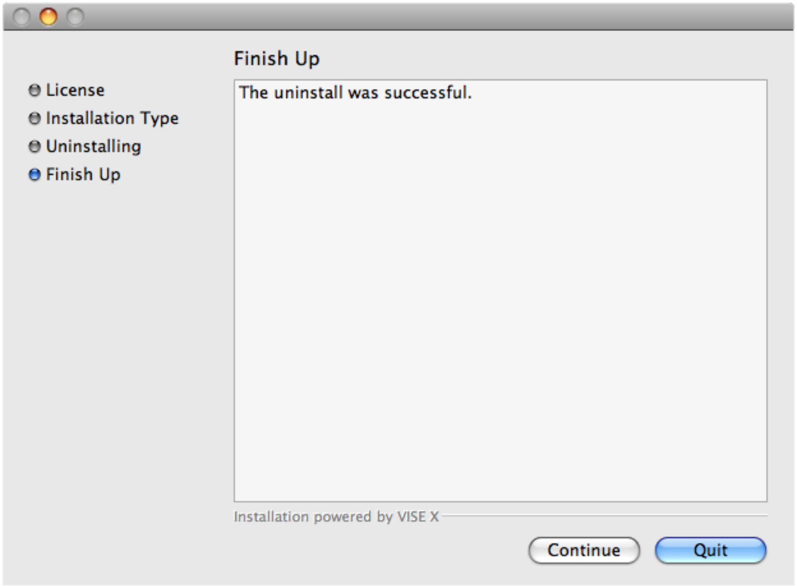
Clicking the Uninstall button removes the following items:
o Media Configuration Tool

Disk space available: > 4GB Approximate disk space needed: 0K

8. Press the **Continue** button when another application is running.


No other applications can be running during this operation. Click Continue to automatically quit all other running applications. Click Cancel to leave your disks untouched.

9. When the following message is displayed, click the **Quit** button.



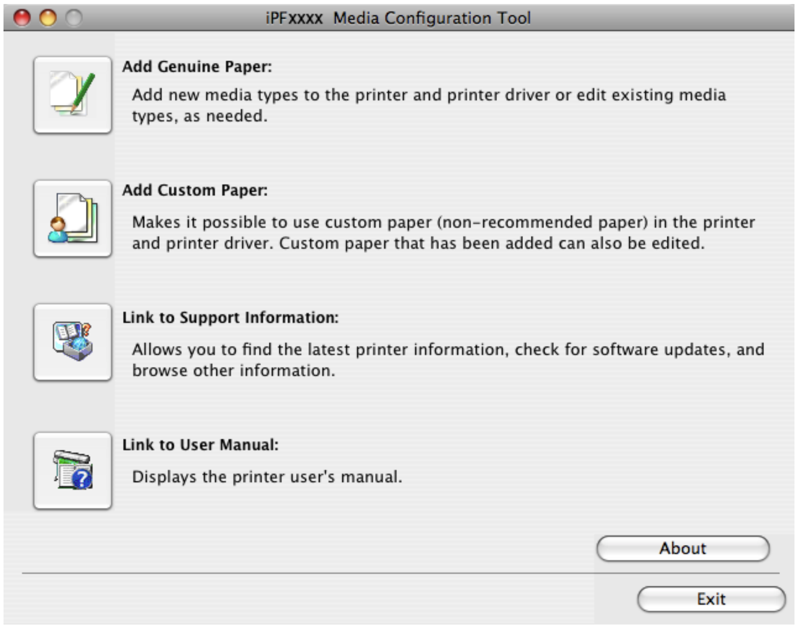
Finish Up

The uninstall was successful.

Media Configuration Tool has been uninstalled.

Starting the Media Configuration Tool

Follow the procedure below to start the Media Configuration Tool.
From the **Applications** menu > **Canon Utilities** >**iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool** > **MCTxxxx.app**.
Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.



Add Genuine Paper:
Add new media types to the printer and printer driver or edit existing media types, as needed.

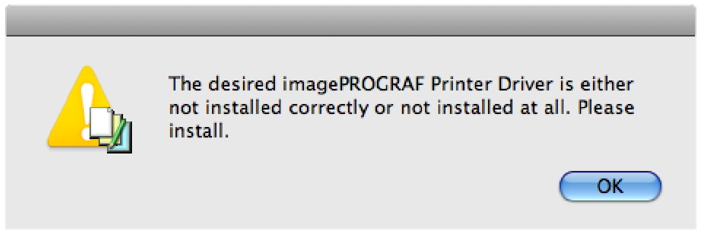
Add Custom Paper:
Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has been added can also be edited.

Link to Support Information:
Allows you to find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

Link to User Manual:
Displays the printer user's manual.

Note

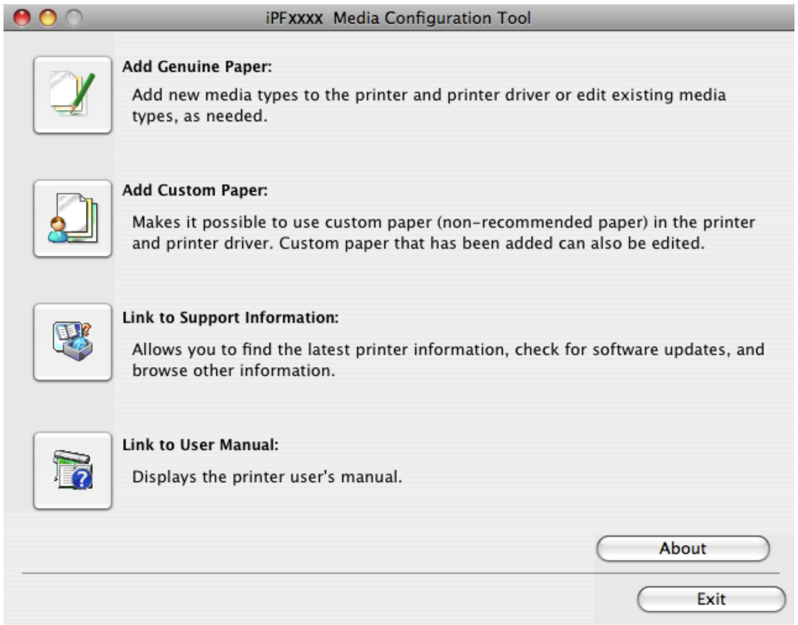
- If a compatible printer driver is not installed, the Media Configuration Tool will not start. If you attempt to start the Media Configuration Tool when a printer driver is not installed, the warning message below is displayed.



The desired imagePROGRAF Printer Driver is either not installed correctly or not installed at all. Please install.

Media Configuration Tool main window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.



iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool

Add Genuine Paper:
Add new media types to the printer and printer driver or edit existing media types, as needed.

Add Custom Paper:
Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has been added can also be edited.

Link to Support Information:
Allows you to find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.

Link to User Manual:
Displays the printer user's manual.

Note

- For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "Starting the Media Configuration Tool." →P.684

- **Add Genuine Paper** button

When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

You can also change the display order of Canon genuine paper and custom paper.

Refer to Editing Media Type Information →P.686 for details on **Add Genuine Paper**.

- **Add Custom Paper** button

When this button is clicked, the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to added custom paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper) to the printer control panel and printer driver.

Refer to Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper →P.700 for details on **Add Custom Paper**.

- **Link to Support Information** button

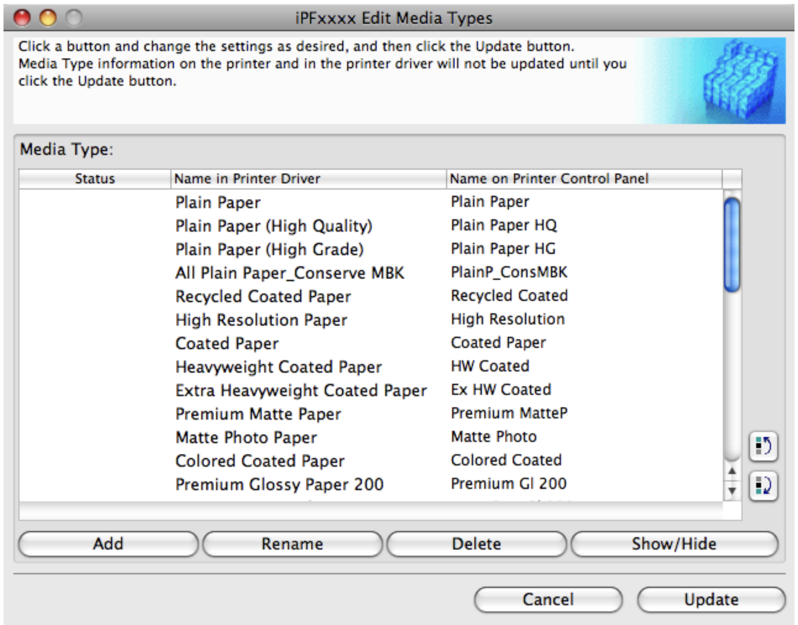
Opens **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

- **Link to User Manual** Button

Click this button to display the User's Guide. This function requires that the User's Guide be installed on your computer.

Editing Media Type Information

Click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window to display the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

This dialog box presents functions for the following tasks.

- Adding Media Types →P.687
- Changing Media Names →P.690
- Deleting Media Types You Have Added →P.692
- Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide →P.694
- Changing the Display Order of Media Types →P.696

Important

- When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.
- Adding, deleting, toggling display/non-display, and changing the paper name of a media type can only be performed for Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper. Refer to "Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper →P.700 " for details on adding, editing, and deleting custom paper. Custom paper displays **Custom** as the **Status** in the **Media Type** list.
- To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

Note

- It may not be possible to deleting, showing/hiding, and changing the display order under some conditions.

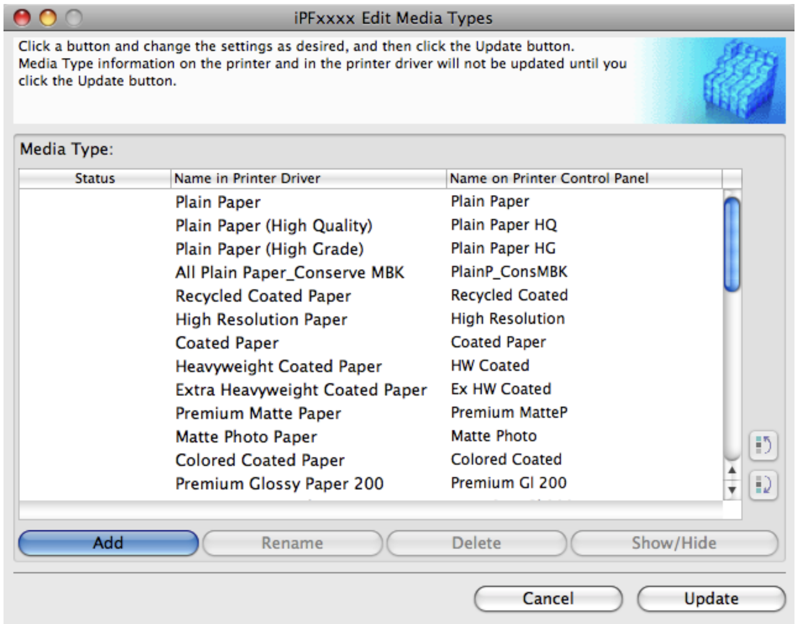
Adding Media Types

Media information files (.amf files) released by Canon are registered in the printer control panel and printer driver.

Important

- Do not perform printing on the target printer while adding the media types.
- Reinstalling Media Configuration Tool after registering a media information file may delete the registered media information file.In this case, first download and install latest Media Configuration Tool, then download and register the required media information file.

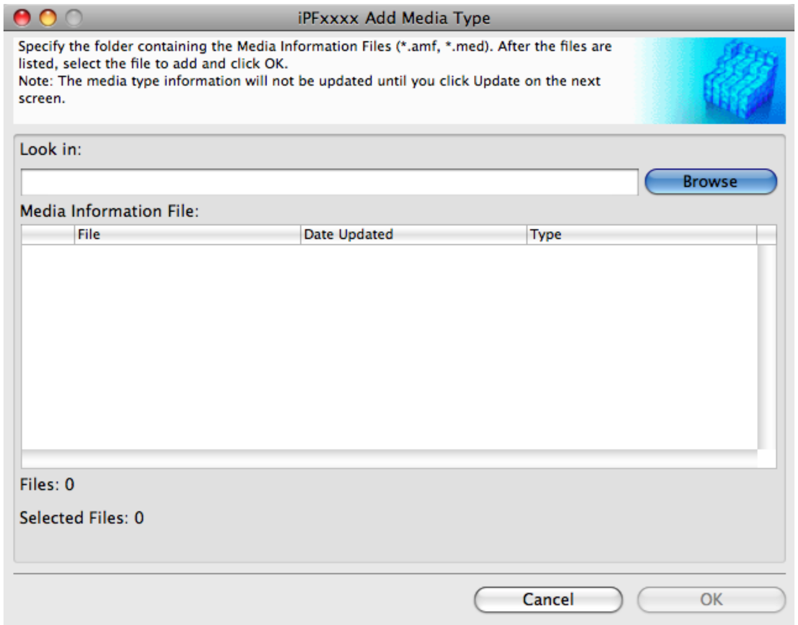
1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button. Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

2. The **Add Media Type** dialog box displays.
   Click the **Browse** button.



iPFxxxx Add Media Type

Specify the folder containing the Media Information Files (*.amf, *.med). After the files are listed, select the file to add and click OK.
Note: The media type information will not be updated until you click Update on the next screen.

Look in:

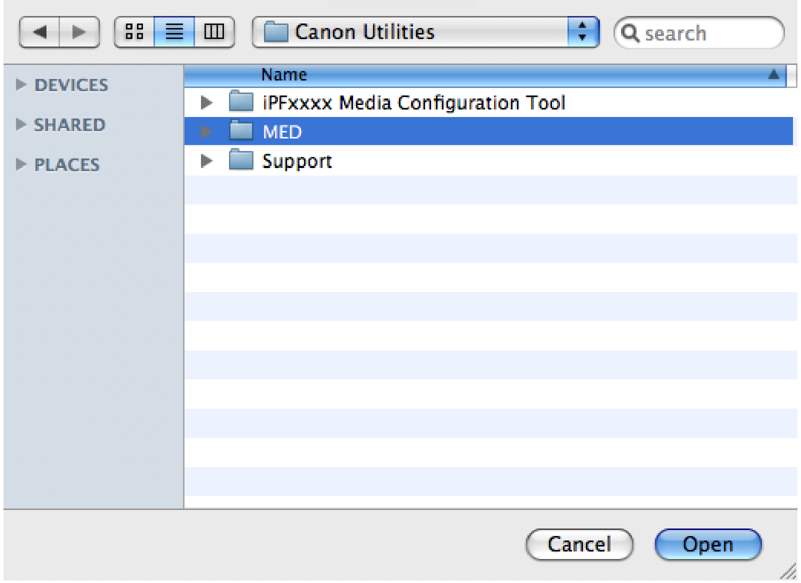
Media Information File:

File	Date Updated	Type

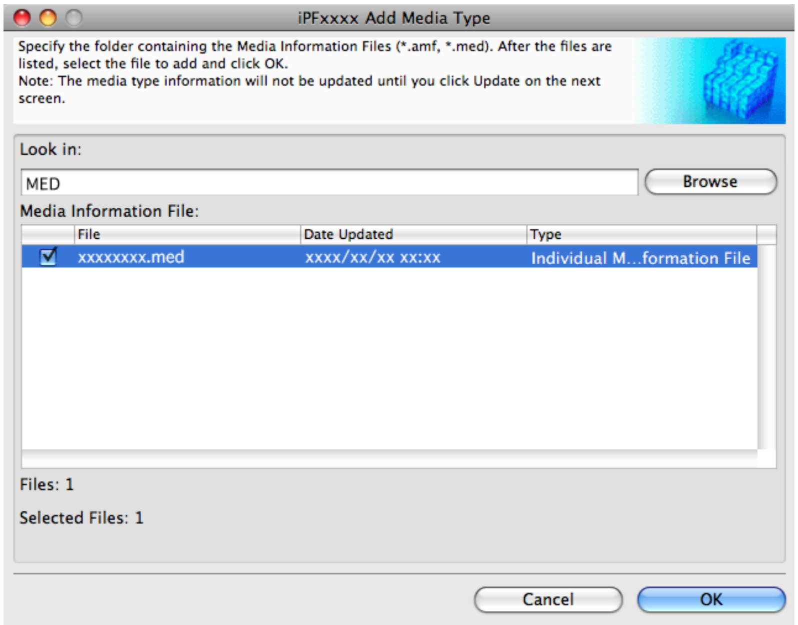
Files: 0

Selected Files: 0

3. Select the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files), and then click the **Open** button.



4. The names of media information files in the folder you selected in the **Open** dialog box are displayed under **Media Information File** in the **Add Media Type** dialog box. Select the check boxes of paper to add and click the **OK** button.



iPFxxxx Add Media Type

Specify the folder containing the Media Information Files (*.amf, *.med). After the files are listed, select the file to add and click OK.
Note: The media type information will not be updated until you click Update on the next screen.

Look in:

MED

Media Information File:

	File	Date Updated	Type
☑	xxxxxxxx.med	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx	Individual M...formation File

Files: 1

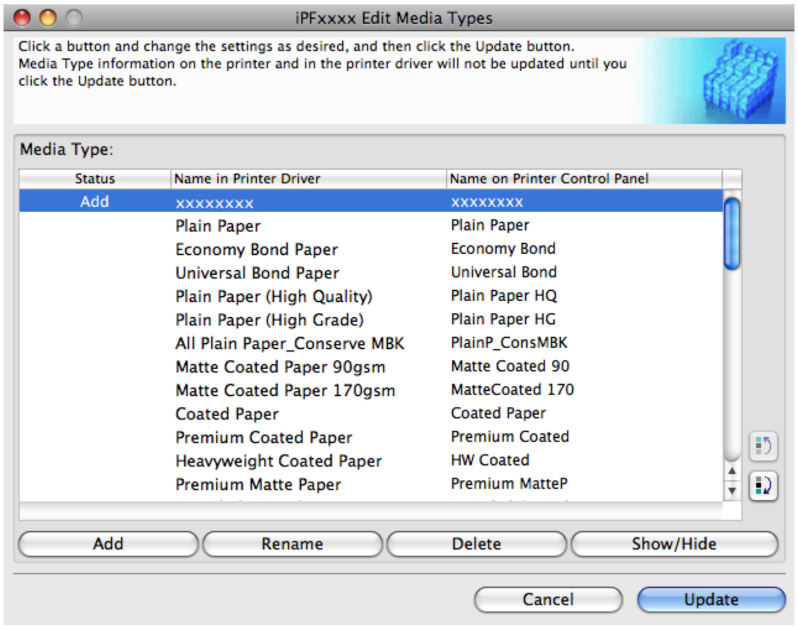
Selected Files: 1

Important

- If **Master Media Information File** is displayed as the **Type** of the **Media Information File**, the media type display order and media type display/non-display settings are initialized. Reconfigure these after added the master media information file.

5. Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

6. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

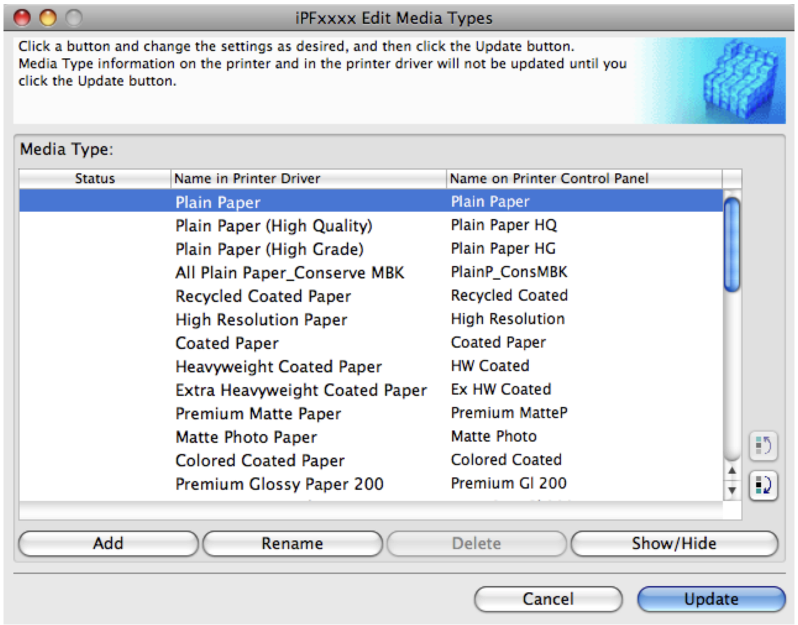
Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP

The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.698

Important
- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Changing Media Names

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



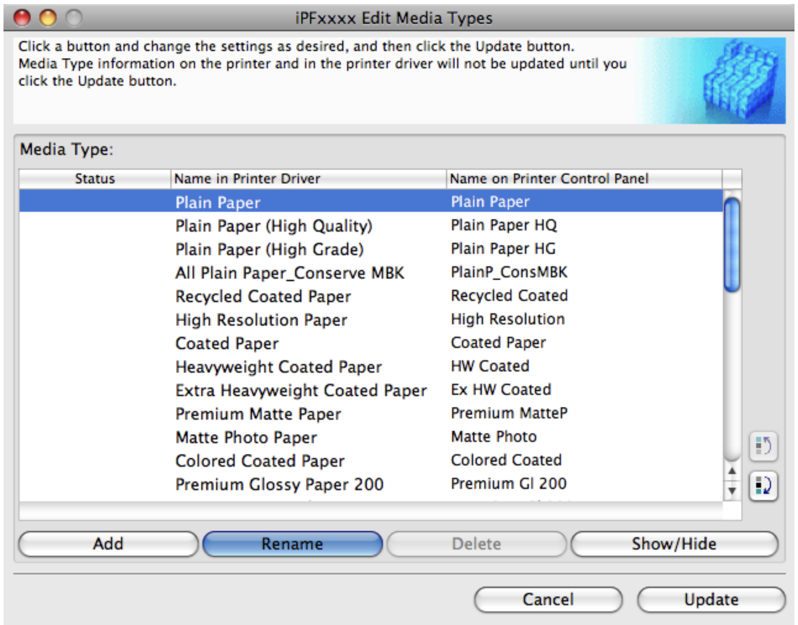
iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name to change.
   Click the **Rename** button.

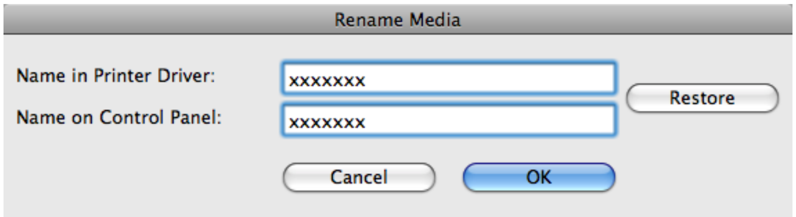


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

3. The **Rename Media** dialog box is displayed.
   Edit the names in **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** and click the **OK** button.



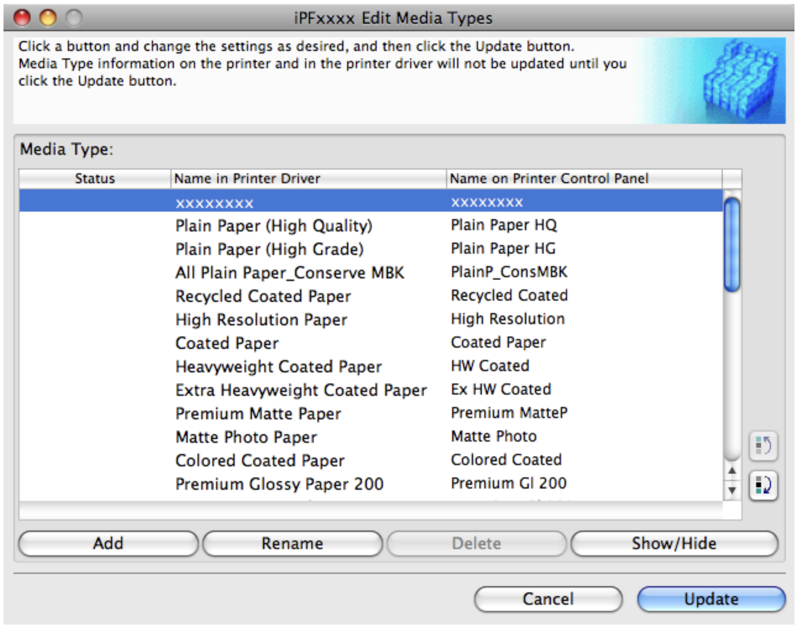
Name in Printer Driver: xxxxxxx

Name on Control Panel: xxxxxxx

Note

- To restore the original names, click the **Restore** button.

4. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

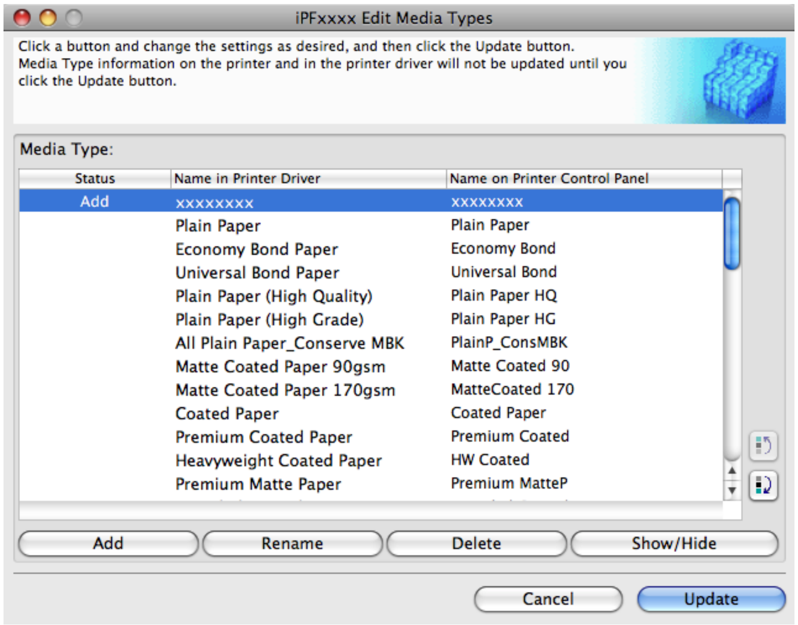
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.698

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Deleting Media Types You Have Added

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.

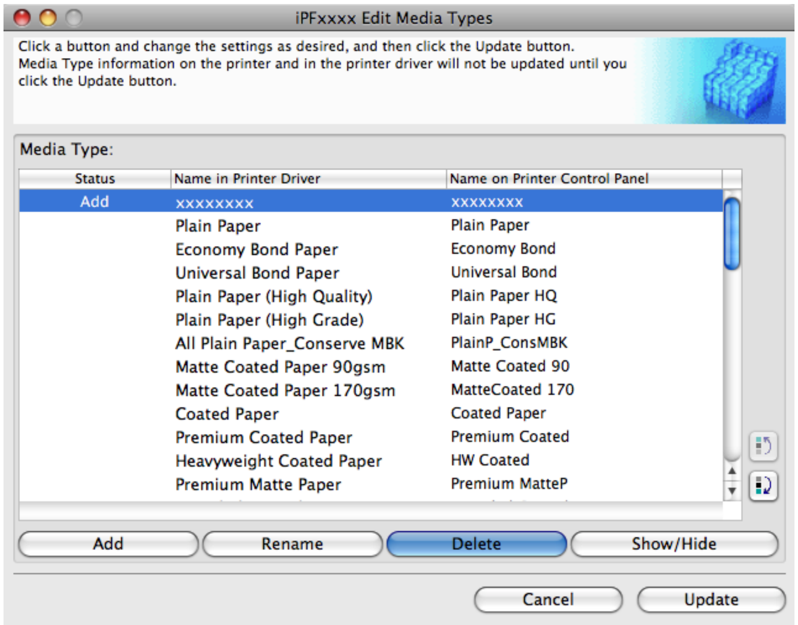


Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to delete.
   Click the **Delete** button.



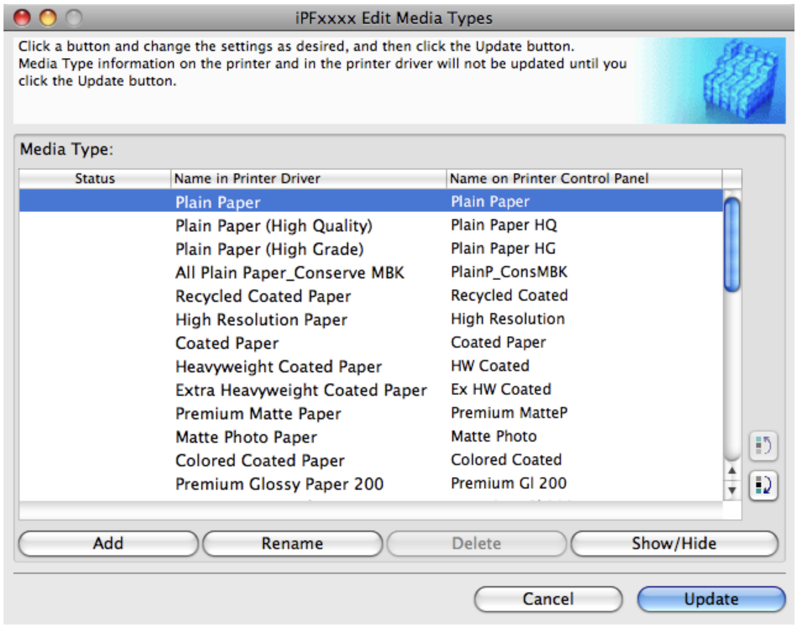
Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
Add	xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Economy Bond Paper	Economy Bond
	Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
	Matte Coated Paper 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Premium Coated Paper	Premium Coated
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP

Note

- Only paper for which **Status** in the **Media Type** is **Add** can be deleted.

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

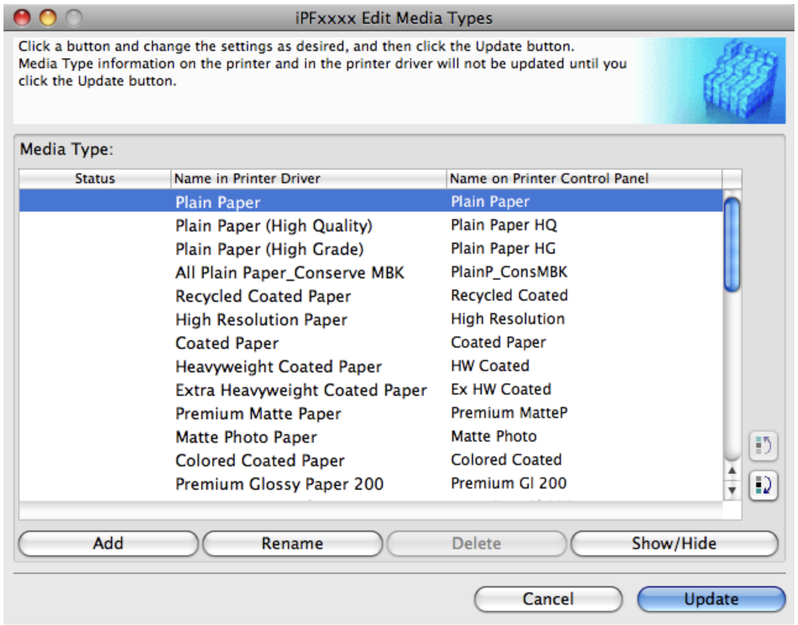
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.698

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



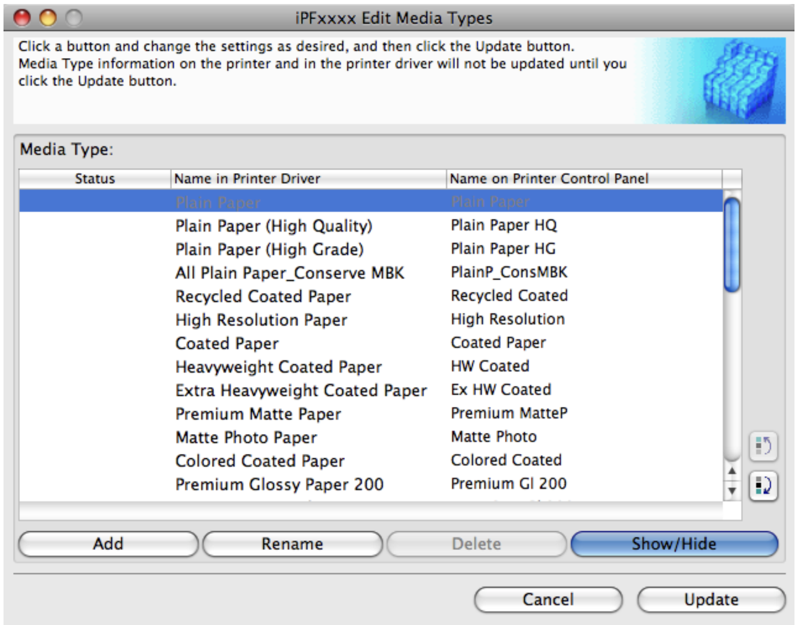
iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button. Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

2. In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to switch off or on for display.
   Click the **Show/Hide** button.
   The selected paper is alternately shown or hidden.



iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

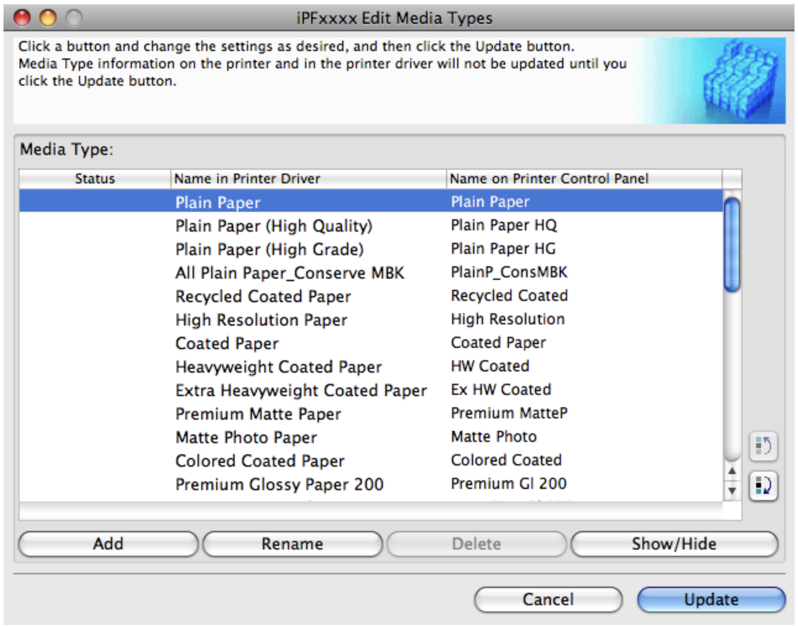
Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

Note

- The names of media switched for non-display appear grayed out in the **Media Type** list.
- Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

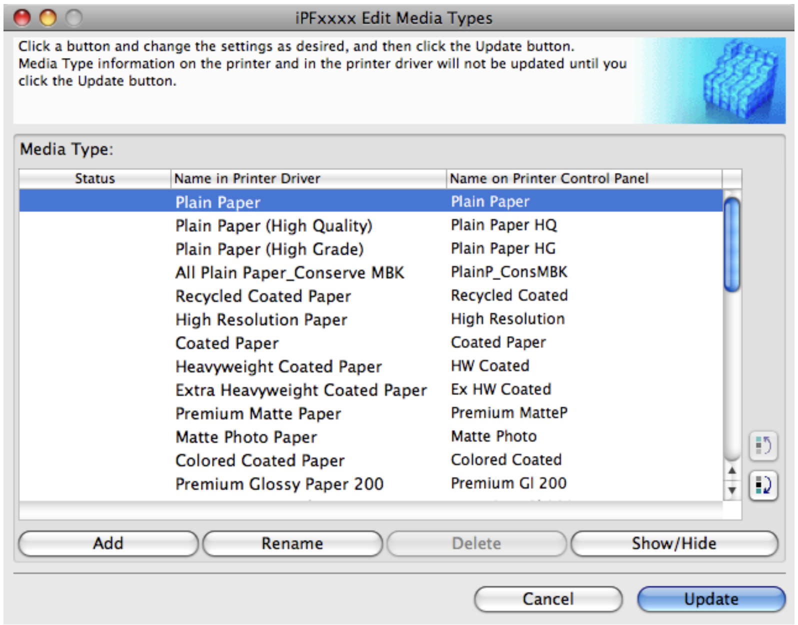
The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.698

Important

- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Changing the Display Order of Media Types

1. Open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box.



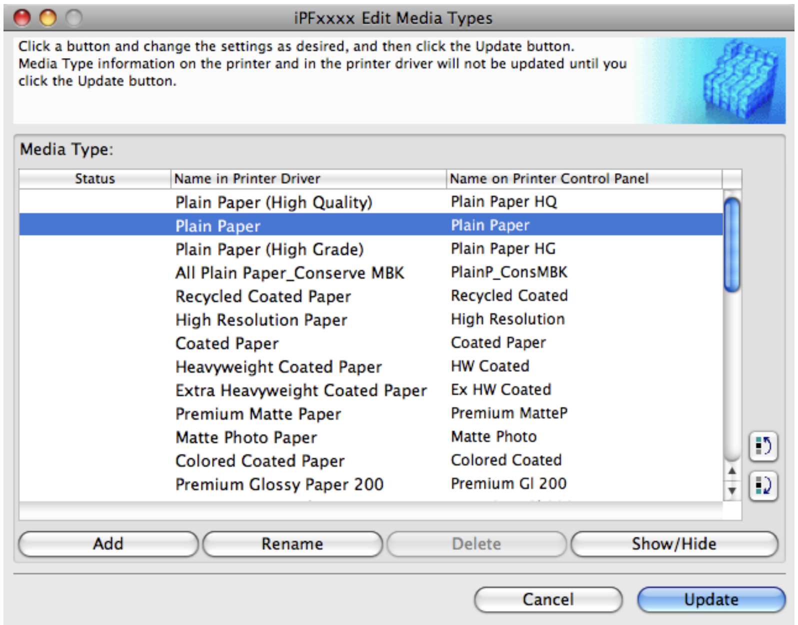
iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

2. Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to move the item (⤴ or ⤵).
   The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.



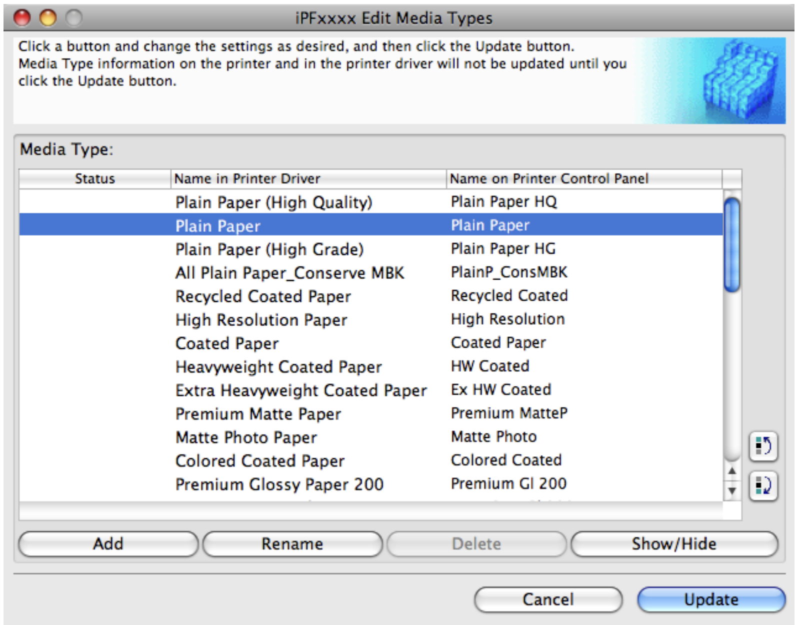
iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

3. In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



iPFxxxx Edit Media Types

Click a button and change the settings as desired, and then click the Update button.
Media Type information on the printer and in the printer driver will not be updated until you click the Update button.

Media Type:

Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
	Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
	Plain Paper (High Grade)	Plain Paper HG
	All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
	Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
	High Resolution Paper	High Resolution
	Coated Paper	Coated Paper
	Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
	Premium Matte Paper	Premium MatteP
	Matte Photo Paper	Matte Photo
	Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
	Premium Glossy Paper 200	Premium Gl 200

The **Update Media Types** wizard is started at this point. For details on the procedure to update paper information using the **Update Media Types** wizard, see "Updating Media Types." →P.698

Important

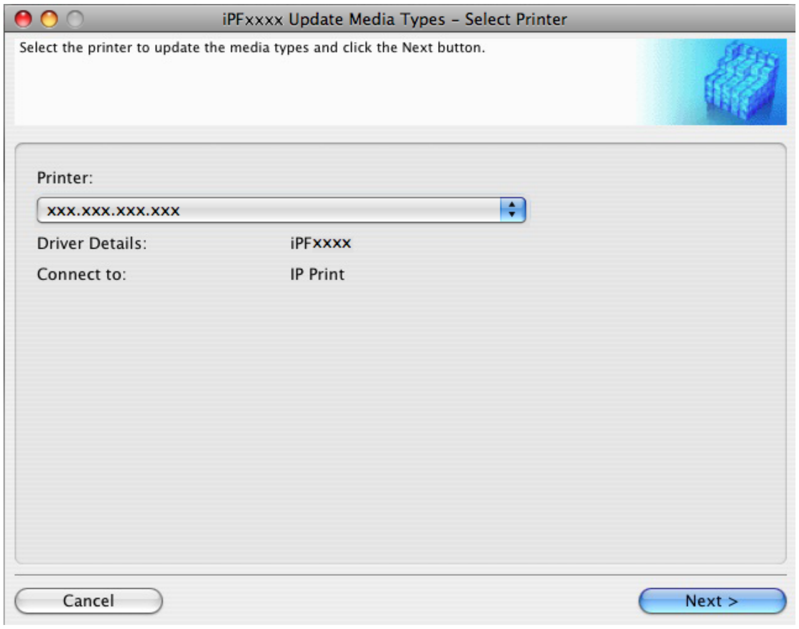
- Be sure to click the Update button. If you do not, your changes will not be applied to the printer and printer driver.

Updating Media Types

Clicking the **Update** button on the **Edit Media Types** dialog box opens the **Update Media Types** wizard. You can use this wizard to apply new information about print media in the printer and in the printer driver.
The procedures for updating the media information with the **Update Media Types** wizard are as follows.

> Important
> - When you update the media type information, perform the same update on all of the PCs that are using that printer.

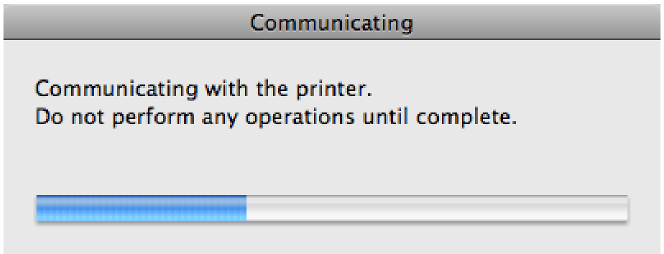
1. Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.



Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Driver Details: iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP Print

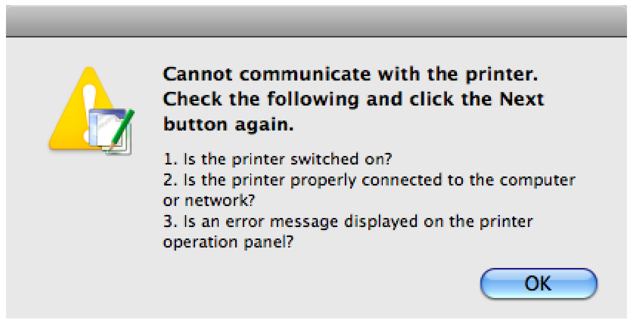
2. Communication with the printer starts and the following dialog box is displayed.



Communicating with the printer.
Do not perform any operations until complete.

Important

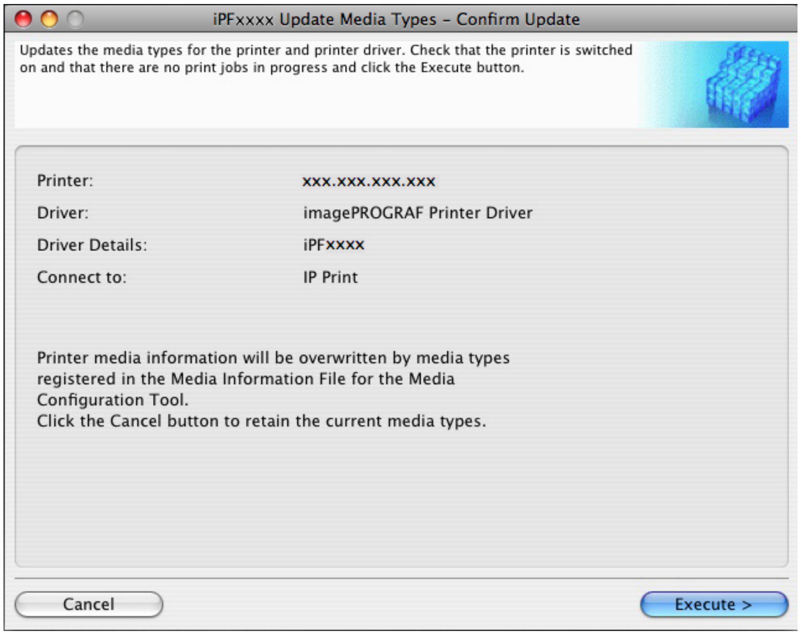
- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.
- When the program cannot communicate with the printer, the following warning message is displayed.



**Cannot communicate with the printer.
Check the following and click the Next button again.**

1. Is the printer switched on?
2. Is the printer properly connected to the computer or network?
3. Is an error message displayed on the printer operation panel?

3. When the program has finished communicating with the printer, the screen moves to display **Update Media Types - Confirm Update**. Confirm the information received from the printer.
To update click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver. Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

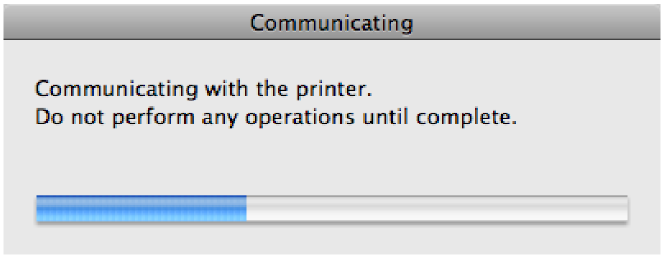
Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Driver: imagePROGRAF Printer Driver
Driver Details: iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP Print

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

Important

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.

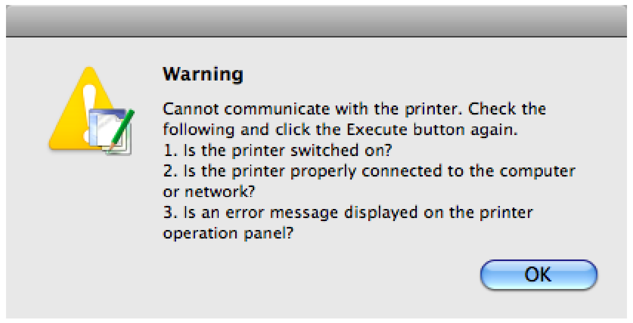
4. Communication with the printer starts and the following dialog box is displayed.



Communicating with the printer.
Do not perform any operations until complete.

Important

- Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.
- When the program cannot communicate with the printer, the following warning message is displayed.



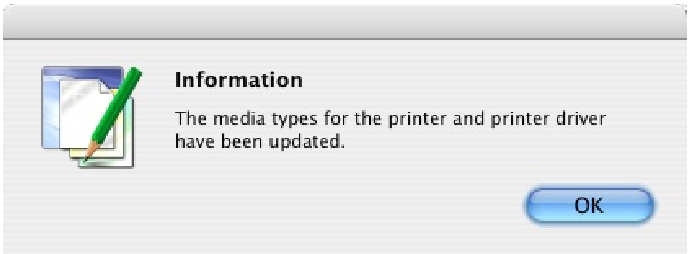
Warning

Cannot communicate with the printer. Check the following and click the Execute button again.
1. Is the printer switched on?
2. Is the printer properly connected to the computer or network?
3. Is an error message displayed on the printer operation panel?

Note

- If the authentication screen is displayed, input the administrator name and passowrd and click the **OK** button.

5. Click the **OK** button.



Information

The media types for the printer and printer driver have been updated.

Note

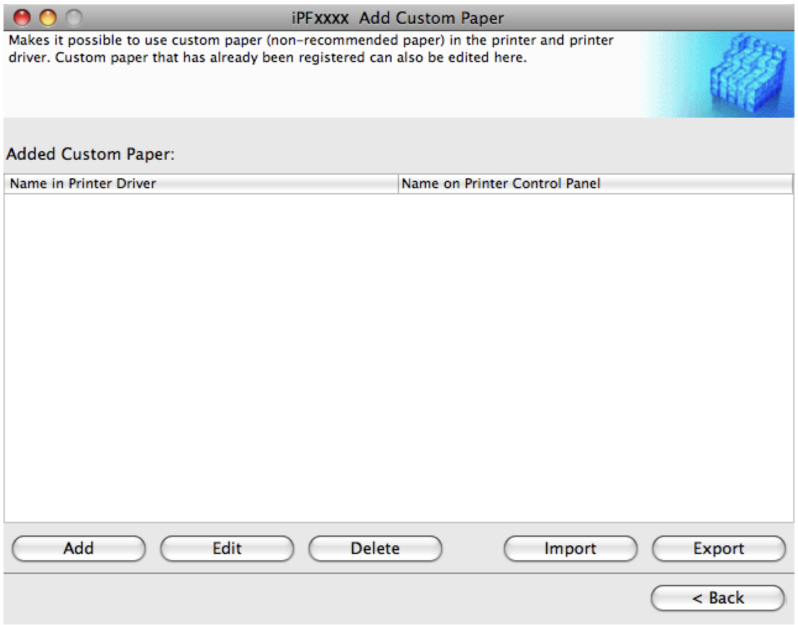
- To apply the same updates to other printers of the same model, click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the main window to open the **Edit Media Types** dialog box and then click the **Update** button. Select the printer that you want to update in Step 1, and update the media information by following the **Update Media Types** wizard.

Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper/Feed Confirmed Paper

When the **Add Custom Paper** button is clicked in the Media Configuration Tool main window, the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box is displayed.
Adding custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from this screen.

Note

- Custom paper is paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper (paper that is detailed in the Paper Reference Guide).



iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

The following operations can be performed from this screen.

- Add Custom Paper →P.702
- Edit Custom Paper →P.713
- Delete Custom Paper →P.711
- Export Custom Media Information →P.713
- Import Custom Media Information →P.715

Important

- When adding, editing, or deleting custom paper, make the same changes on all of the other PCs that use the target printer. The changes can be made easily by creating a Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) using the custom paper export function and importing the file on the other PCs.
- When using custom paper in another printer, always add the custom paper to that printer before use.
- Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper cannot be changed from this dialog box. Refer to "Editing Media Type Information →P.686 ".
- Changing the display order of media types displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver is performed from the **Edit Media Types** dialog box regardless of whether it is Canon genuine paper or custom paper. Refer to "Editing Media Type Information →P.686 ".

Compatible Paper

Paper specifications

Refer to "Specifications" and "Paper" for specifications such as thickness and size of paper that can be added as custom paper (See "Specifications.") →P.1123

Notes on the operating environment

In low humidity environments (below 40%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Paper becomes curled or wrinkled.

- Paper and the printhead are more likely to touch each other, resulting in a scratched print surface or damaged printhead.
- The cut printed matter sticks to the printer and will not fall down (film media).
- Paper sticks to the printer, making its transfer impossible and preventing its normal ejection (film media).
- Uneven printing (film media)

In high humidity environments (over 60%), your printer may develop the following problems.

- Printed matter will not dry.
- Wavy paper surface
- Cut edges are ragged (fabric media).
- Margins remain due to borderless printing.

Important

- Canon offers absolutely no guarantees regarding the print quality or paper feed properties of customer paper (paper that is not Canon genuine paper or Canon feed confirmed paper).

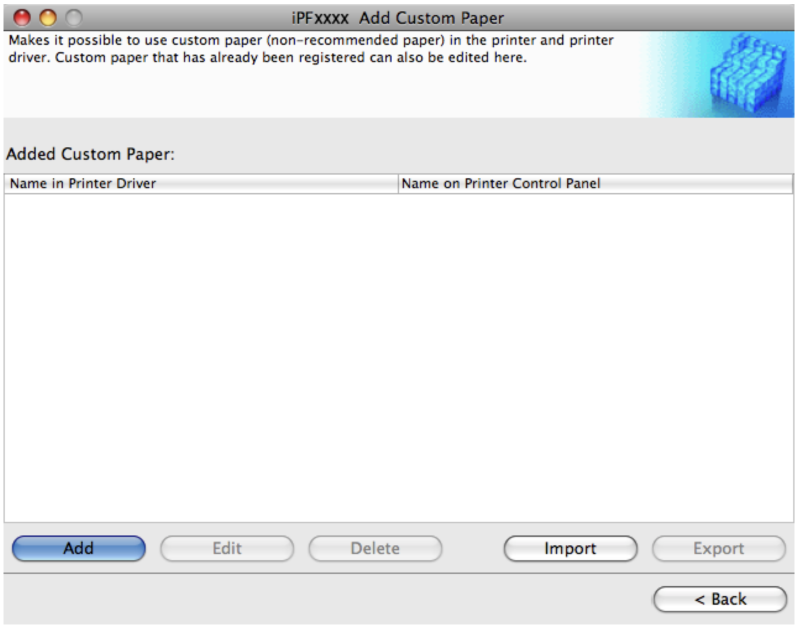
Add Custom Paper

In order to add new custom paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, first select the media type to use as the basis from among the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper. Add this as custom paper after making various changes to the standard paper as necessary.

Important

- Do not execute printing on the target printer while adding custom paper.
- When adding custom paper, check the specifications of paper that can be added using "Compatible Paper →P.701 ".
- Custom paper added using the add custom paper function can only be used by the printer driver. It cannot be used by other software.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box and click the **Add** button.



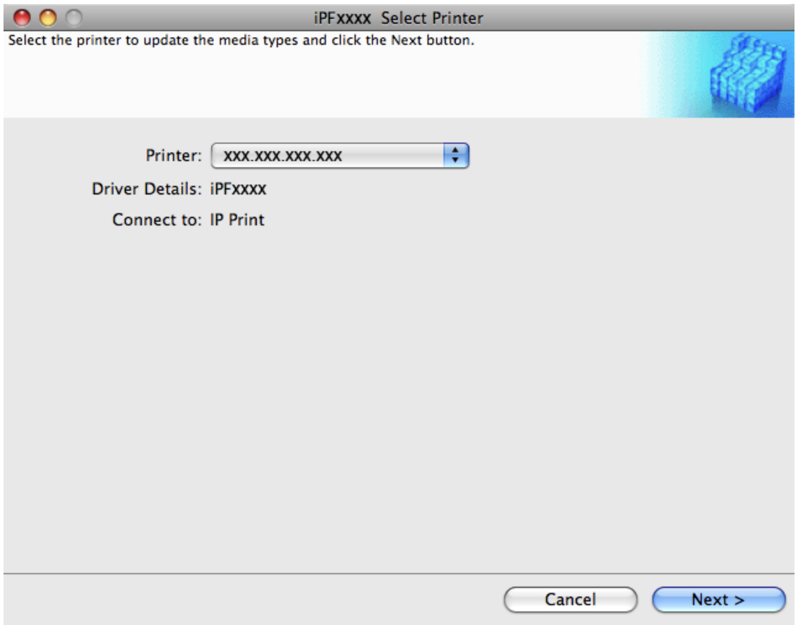
iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

2. Check that the printer on which you are updating the media information is displayed in **Printer** in the **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box and click the **Next** button.


iPFxxxx Select Printer

Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

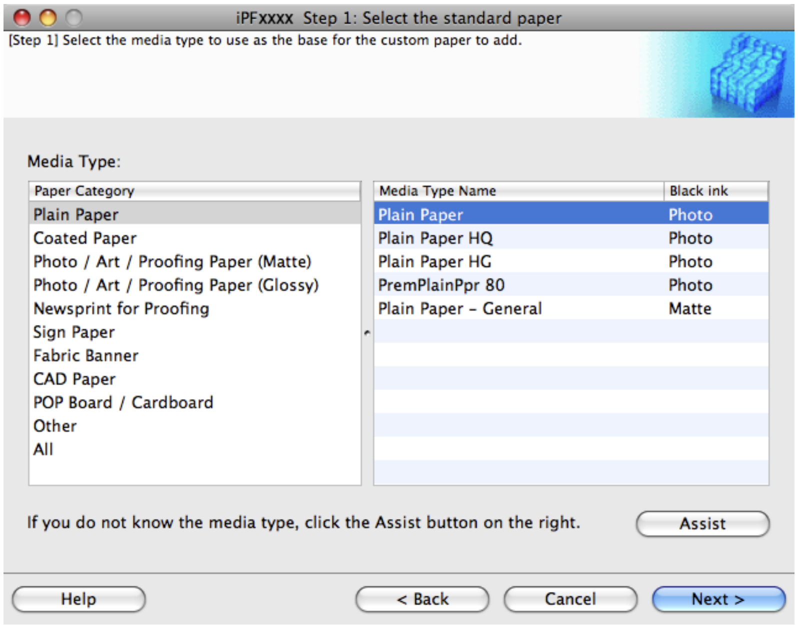
Driver Details: iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP Print

3. The **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box is displayed. In **Paper Category**, select the category of media type to use as the basis of the custom paper you are adding.

Important

- Select the category that you think is the closest to the custom paper you are adding.


iPFxxxx Step 1: Select the standard paper

[Step 1] Select the media type to use as the base for the custom paper to add.

Media Type:

Paper Category
Plain Paper
Coated Paper
Photo / Art / Proofing Paper (Matte)
Photo / Art / Proofing Paper (Glossy)
Newsprint for Proofing
Sign Paper
Fabric Banner
CAD Paper
POP Board / Cardboard
Other
All

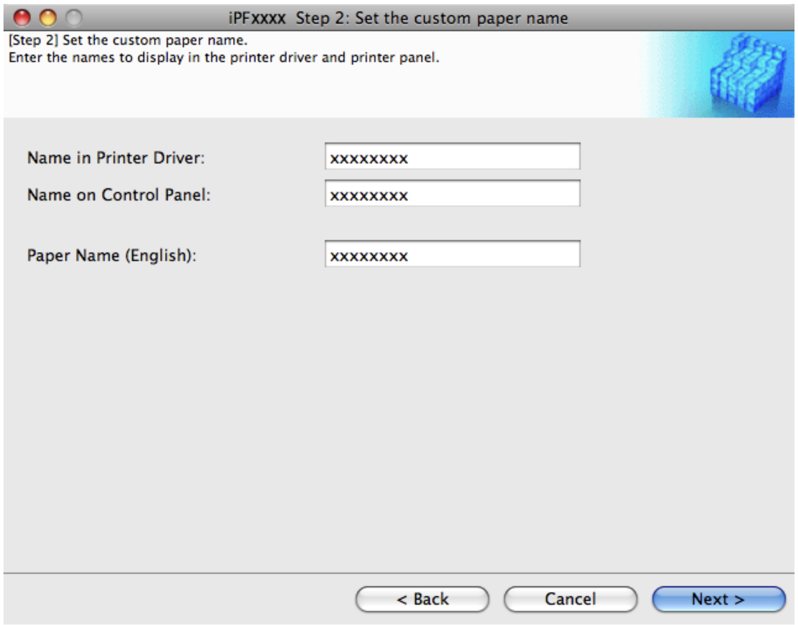
Media Type Name	Black ink
Plain Paper	Photo
Plain Paper HQ	Photo
Plain Paper HG	Photo
PremPlainPpr 80	Photo
Plain Paper - General	Matte

If you do not know the media type, click the Assist button on the right.

4. The media type names of the Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper within the selected category are shown in **Media Type Name**. Select the media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, and click the **Next** button.

> Note
>
> - If you do not know which media type to use as the basis of the custom paper, click the **Assist** button to open the **Media Type Selection Assistance** dialog box, and then set either the **Weight (grammage)** or the **Thickness**. The Media Configuration Tool automatically selects the appropriate paper from the selected paper category. Alternatively, select the media type called **General** from among the displayed **Media Type Name**.
> - Depending on the selected category, there might not be a media type called **General**.
> - Depending on the selected category, the **Assist** button may be disabled.

5. The **Step 2: Set the custom paper name** dialog box is displayed.
Enter an arbitrary name to display in the printer control panel and printer driver, and then click the **Next** button.



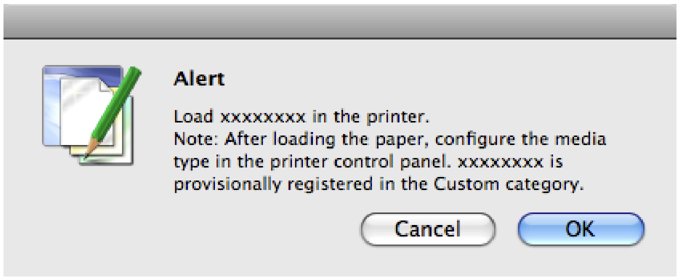
iPFxxxx Step 2: Set the custom paper name

[Step 2] Set the custom paper name.
Enter the names to display in the printer driver and printer panel.

Name in Printer Driver: xxxxxxxx
Name on Control Panel: xxxxxxxx
Paper Name (English): xxxxxxxx

> Note
>
> - **Paper Name (English)** is used in keeping track of the amount of roll paper left, in status print, etc.

6. Load the custom paper in the printer and then click the **OK** button.

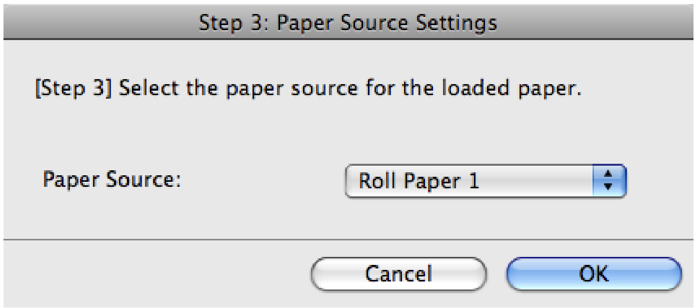


Alert

Load xxxxxxxx in the printer.
Note: After loading the paper, configure the media type in the printer control panel. xxxxxxxx is provisionally registered in the Custom category.

> Important
>
> - Do not load paper that is curled or that has already been printed on.

7. The **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box is displayed. Select the paper source where the custom paper is loaded and then click the **OK** button.

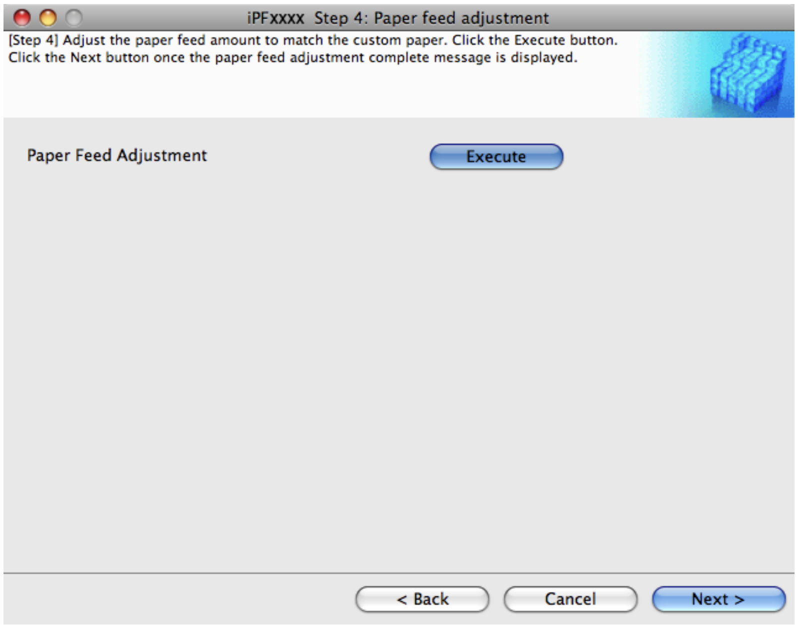


Step 3: Paper Source Settings

[Step 3] Select the paper source for the loaded paper.

Paper Source: Roll Paper 1

8. The **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box is displayed. Click the **Execute** button to execute paper feed adjustment.
The adjustment pattern is printed, and the paper feed is automatically adjusted based on the printing result.
Once the paper feed adjustment is complete, click the **Next** button.



iPFxxxx Step 4: Paper feed adjustment

[Step 4] Adjust the paper feed amount to match the custom paper. Click the Execute button.
Click the Next button once the paper feed adjustment complete message is displayed.

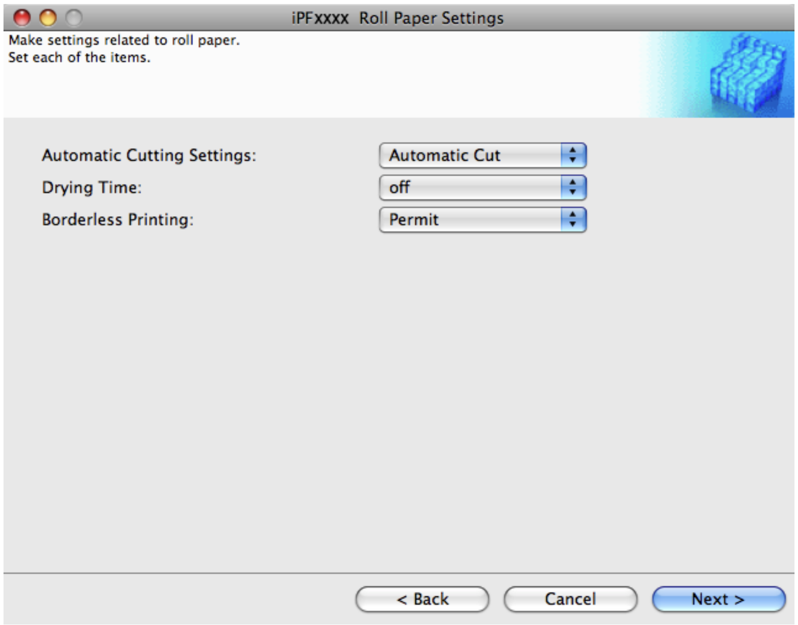
Important

- Check that there is no paper left on the ejection guide.
- If **Paper Feed Adjustment** is not executed, horizontal stripes with different color tones may appear in the printed material. Paper feed adjustment does not need to be executed more than once. Execute paper feed adjustment only once each time you add a custom paper.

9. The **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box is displayed.

Note

- If a paper source other than **Roll Paper** is selected in the **Step 3: Paper Source Settings** dialog box, this screen is not displayed.



iPFxxxx Roll Paper Settings

Make settings related to roll paper.
Set each of the items.

Automatic Cutting Settings: Automatic Cut

Drying Time: off

Borderless Printing: Permit

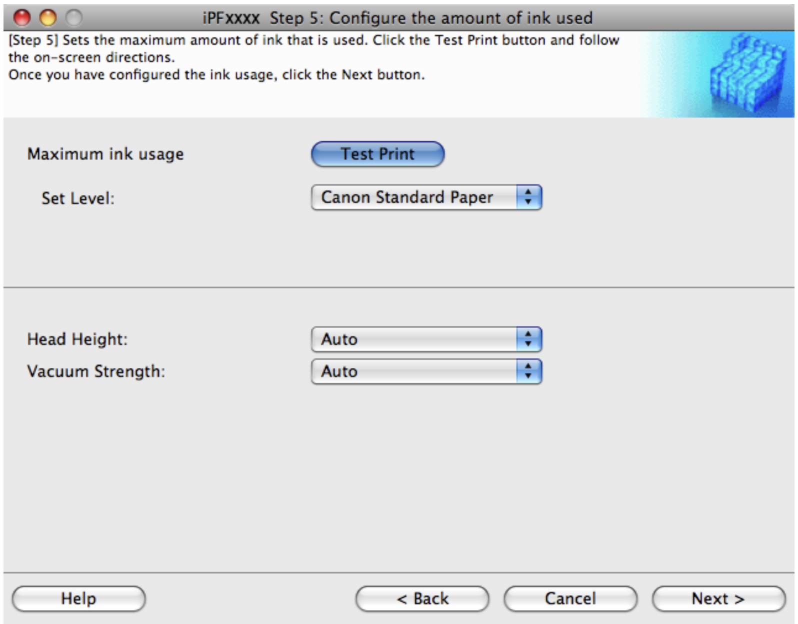
Configure the following settings as necessary, and then click the **Next** button.

Setting	Details
Automatic Cutting Settings	Configures the method for cutting roll paper when it is ejected after printing. • **Automatic Cut** :Roll paper is automatically cut by the cutter unit. • **Eject Cut** :When the **Cut** key is pressed on the printer control panel, the roll paper is cut by the cutter unit. Select this if you do not want the printed material to drop immediately after printing, such as to wait for the ink to dry. • **User Cut** :Cutting is not performed by the cutter unit. Cut the roll paper using scissors after each sheet. Select this for paper that cannot be cut by the cutter unit.
Drying Time	Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. • **Off** :Ejects immediately after printing finishes. • **30 sec./1 min./3 min./5 min./10 min./30 min./60 min.** :Ejects after the specified time has elapsed after printing finishes.
Borderless Printing	Configures whether or not to permit borderless printing. • **Permit** : Borderless printing is permitted. • **Deny** : Borderless printing is denied.

Important

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings**.
- If borderless printing is performed on paper where the ink drying is poor, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time**. Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.
- Paper where borderless printing can be performed is limited by the media type and roll paper width. Refer to "Compatible Paper →P.701 ".
- For custom paper where there is a need to set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut**, set the **Borderless Printing** to **Deny**.

10. The **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box is displayed.
The upper limit on the amount of ink used to print to the custom paper is set on this screen by selecting from among several levels.
First, click the **Test Print** button to perform a test print of each level.



iPFxxxx Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used

[Step 5] Sets the maximum amount of ink that is used. Click the Test Print button and follow the on-screen directions.
Once you have configured the ink usage, click the Next button.

Maximum ink usage

Set Level: Canon Standard Paper

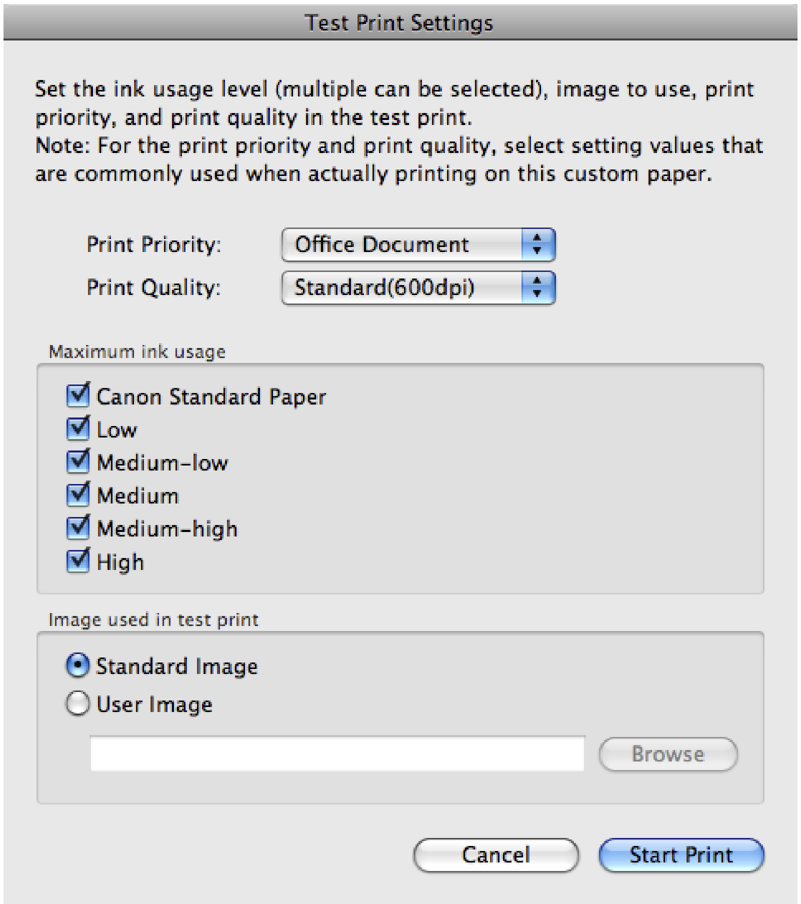
Head Height: Auto

Vacuum Strength: Auto

Important

- If **Newsprint for Proofing** was selected as the standard paper for the custom paper, you cannot perform the test print or configure the maximum ink usage.

11. The **Test Print Settings** dialog box is displayed.
Select the print priority and print quality of the test print using **Print Priority** and **Print Quality**.
Set the level to test print using **Maximum ink usage** and the image to use using **Image used in test print**, and then click the **Start Print** button.



Test Print Settings

Set the ink usage level (multiple can be selected), image to use, print priority, and print quality in the test print.
Note: For the print priority and print quality, select setting values that are commonly used when actually printing on this custom paper.

Print Priority: Office Document

Print Quality: Standard(600dpi)

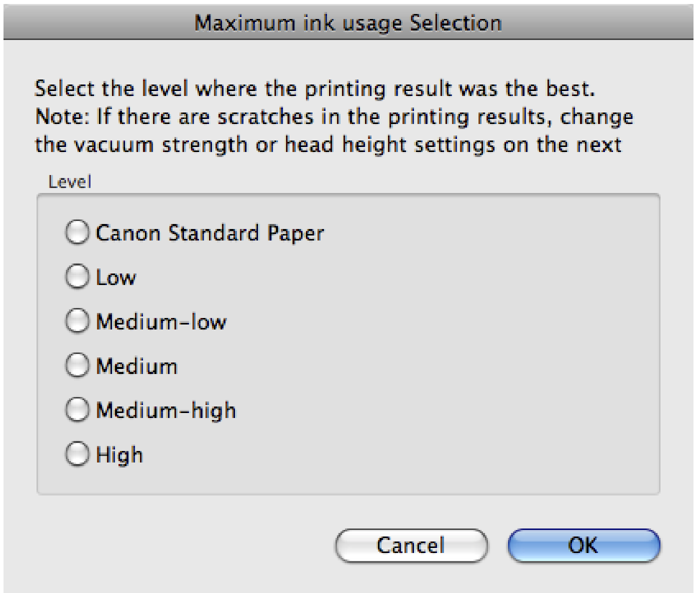
Maximum ink usage

☑ Canon Standard Paper
☑ Low
☑ Medium-low
☑ Medium
☑ Medium-high
☑ High

Image used in test print

● Standard Image
○ User Image

12. Determine and set the ink level that is thought to give the best visual test print results with no bleeding or scraping of ink.



Maximum ink usage Selection

Select the level where the printing result was the best.
Note: If there are scratches in the printing results, change the vacuum strength or head height settings on the next

Level

○ Canon Standard Paper
○ Low
○ Medium-low
○ Medium
○ Medium-high
○ High

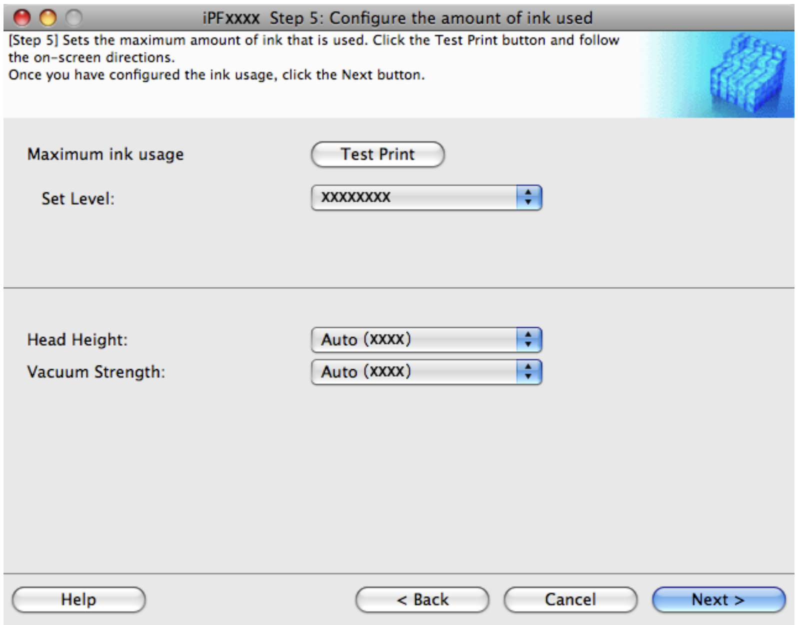
Note

- Select the optimal ink level by referring to the help.
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high quality printing no matter which maximum ink usage level you select, use the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box to change the paper that is the basis of the custom paper to another paper.

Important

- Because this settings imposes an upper limit on the amount of ink used during printing, the printing result might not change even if the level is changed depending on the image.
- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. Although the color tone may change when the maximum ink usage is changed, at this point you should select the optimal level by only focusing on bleeding and scraping of ink. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software.
- Depending on the maximum ink usage setting, some of the print qualities in the printer driver may become unselectable.

13. Configure **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength** as required and click the **Next** button.
Usually, these do not need to be set.



iPFxxxx Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used

[Step 5] Sets the maximum amount of ink that is used. Click the Test Print button and follow the on-screen directions.
Once you have configured the ink usage, click the Next button.

Maximum ink usage

Set Level: XXXXXXXX

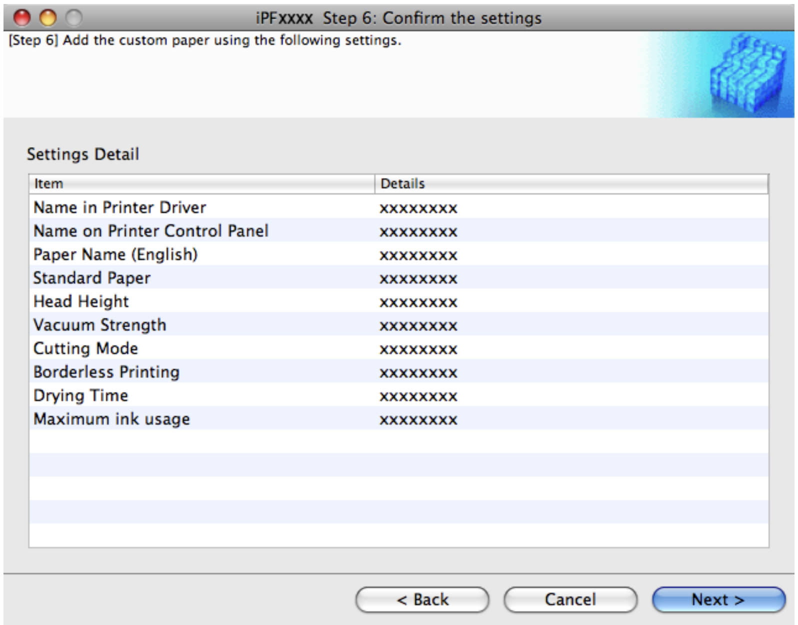
Head Height: Auto (XXXX)

Vacuum Strength: Auto (XXXX)

Important

- If you set the **Head Height** lower than the automatically set height in parentheses ( ), check that the printhead does not rub against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- If you change the **Vacuum Strength**, check that the printhead is not rubbing against the paper. (If the printhead rubs against the paper, there will be scratches in the printing results.) If the printhead rubs against the paper, this can cause damage to the printhead.
- For details on the **Head Height** and **Vacuum Strength**, refer to the help.

14. The **Step 6: Confirm the settings** dialog box is displayed.
Configure the settings of the custom paper, and then click the **Next** button.

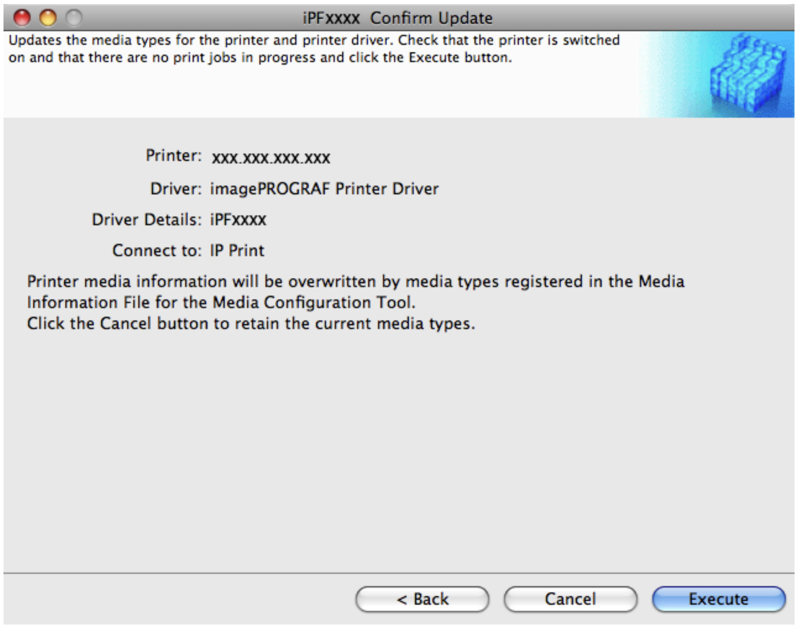


[Step 6] Add the custom paper using the following settings.

Settings Detail

Item	Details
Name in Printer Driver	xxxxxxxx
Name on Printer Control Panel	xxxxxxxx
Paper Name (English)	xxxxxxxx
Standard Paper	xxxxxxxx
Head Height	xxxxxxxx
Vacuum Strength	xxxxxxxx
Cutting Mode	xxxxxxxx
Borderless Printing	xxxxxxxx
Drying Time	xxxxxxxx
Maximum ink usage	xxxxxxxx

15. The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver. Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Driver: imagePROGRAF Printer Driver
Driver Details: iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP Print

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

Note

- If the authentication screen is displayed, input the administrator name and passowrd and click the **OK** button.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Important

- If you have added custom paper with the **POP Board / Cardboard** category as the Standard Paper, remove the loaded custom paper from the printer.

Note

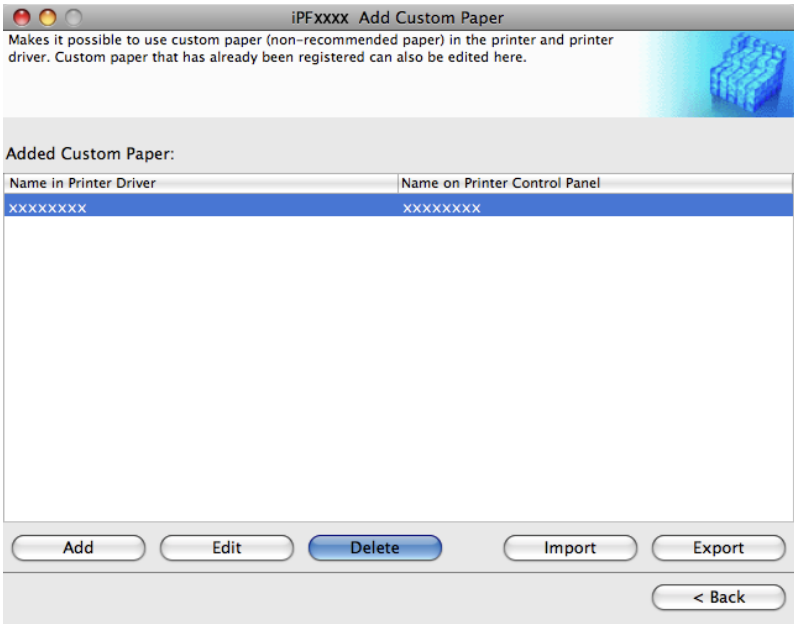
- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

Delete Custom Paper

You can delete custom paper that you have already added from printer control panel and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to delete from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Delete** button.

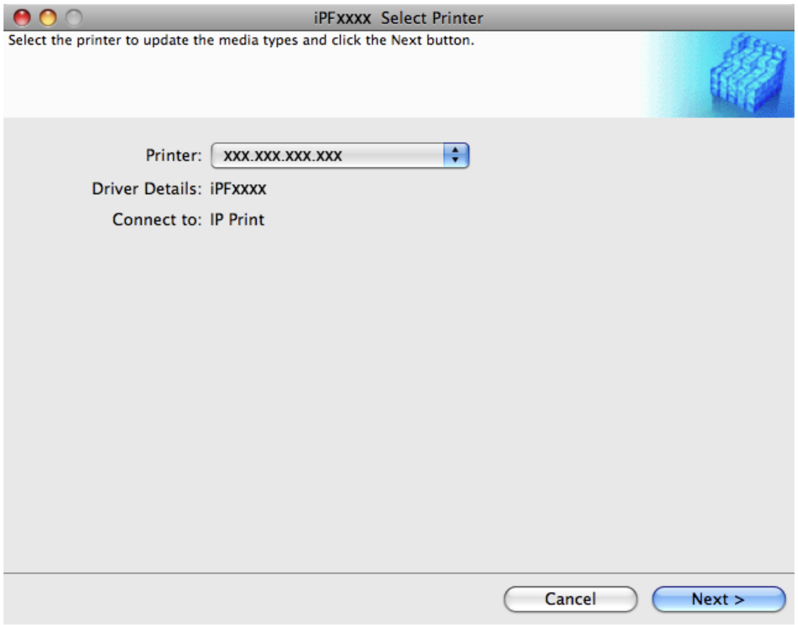


Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx

3. Select the custom paper you want to delete, and then click the **Next** button.



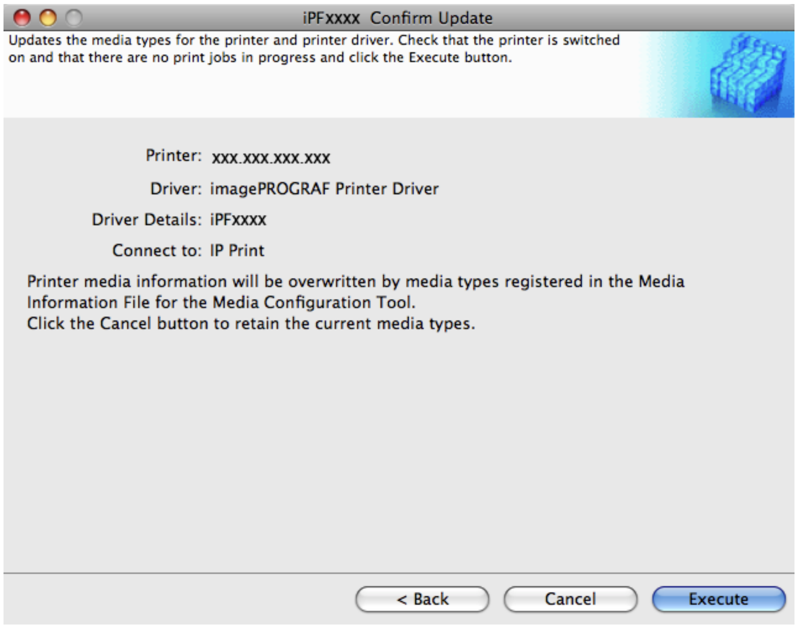
Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Driver Details: iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP Print

4. The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed.
Confirm the updates and then click the **Execute** button.



Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver. Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Driver: imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Driver Details: iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP Print

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

Note

- If the authentication screen is displayed, input the administrator name and passowrd and click the **OK** button.

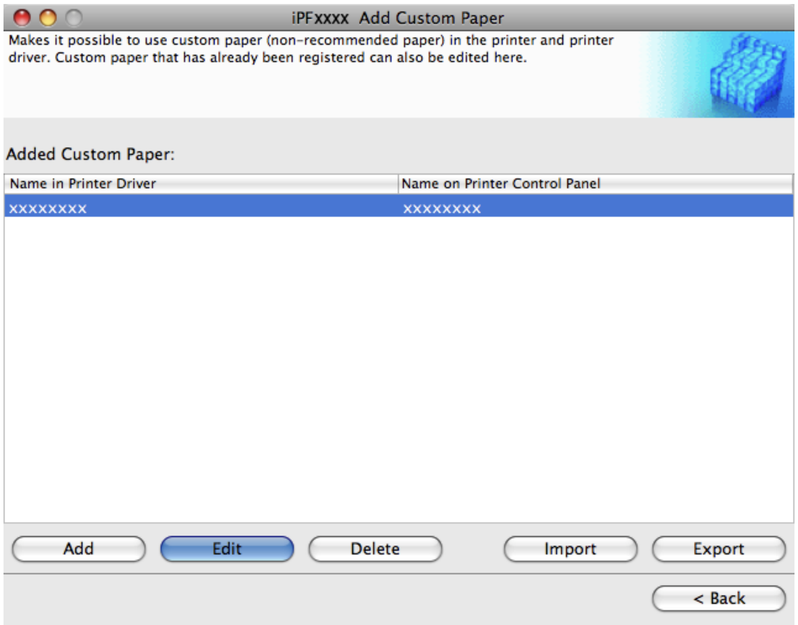
The custom paper is deleted from the control panel of the printer and from the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Edit Custom Paper

You can change the settings of custom paper you have already added.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to edit from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Edit** button.



Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx	xxxxxxxx

3. The **Update Media Types - Select Printer** dialog box is displayed.
Follow the on-screen directions and change the settings as required.

Note

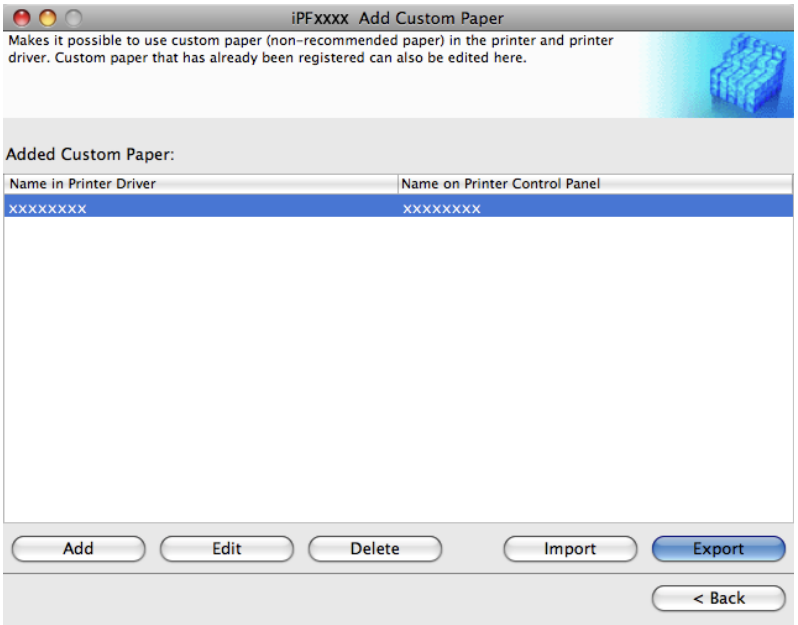
- Refer to Steps 5 to 15 of the "Add Custom Paper →P.702 " for details on how to configure each setting.

Export Custom Media Information

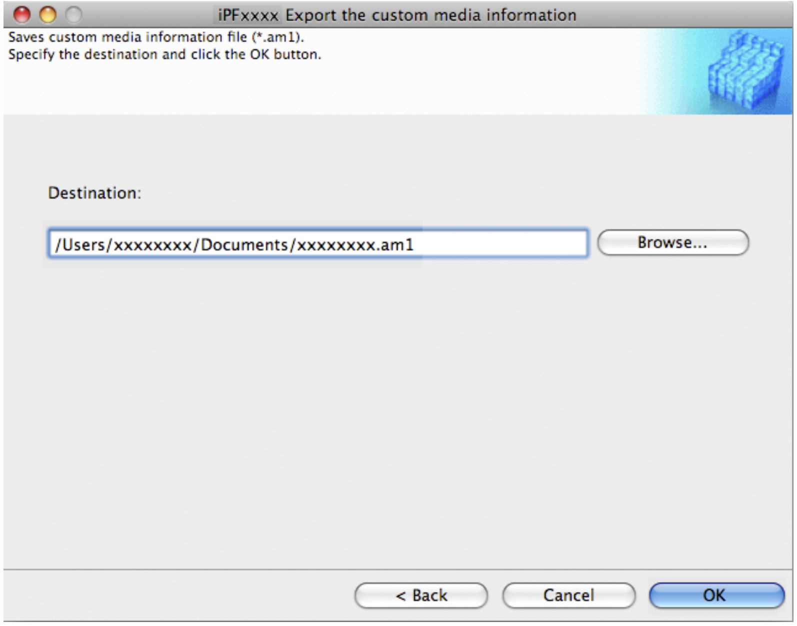
You can export to file and save media information about custom paper that you have added.
The saved Custom Media Information File can be used by importing it into another printer or PC. Refer to "Import Custom Media Information →P.715 " for details on "importing custom media information".

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Select the paper you want to export to media information file from the **Added Custom Paper** list and then click the **Export** button.


iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper
Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.
Added Custom Paper:
Name in Printer Driver
Name on Printer Control Panel
xxxxxxxx
xxxxxxxx
Add
Edit
Delete
Import
Export
< Back

3. Specify the location to save the Custom Media Information File.


iPFxxxx Export the custom media information
Saves custom media information file (*.am1).
Specify the destination and click the OK button.
Destination:
/Users/xxxxxxxx/Documents/xxxxxxxx.am1
Browse...
< Back
Cancel
OK

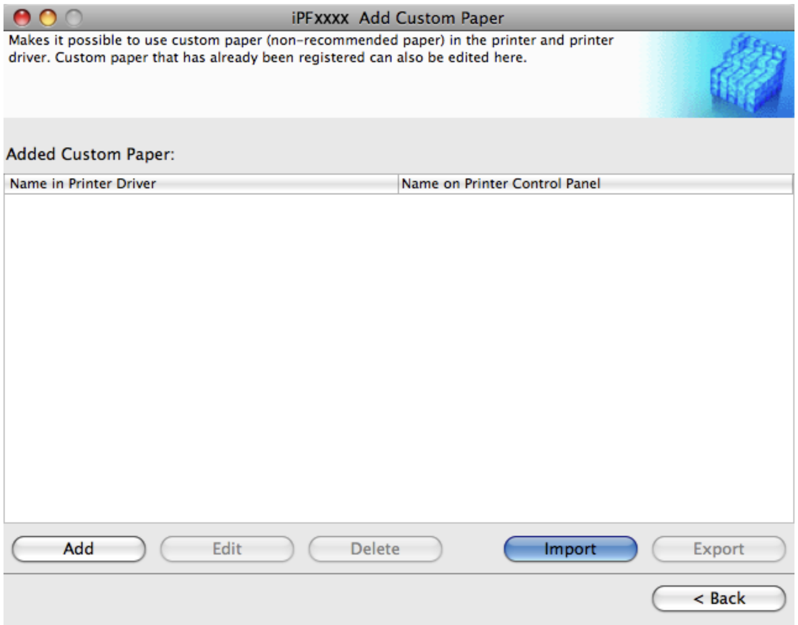
A Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) is saved.

Import Custom Media Information

You can import a Custom Media Information File that has been saved in a folder, and add the file to the printer control panel and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

1. Open the **Add Custom Paper** dialog box.

2. Click the **Import** button.



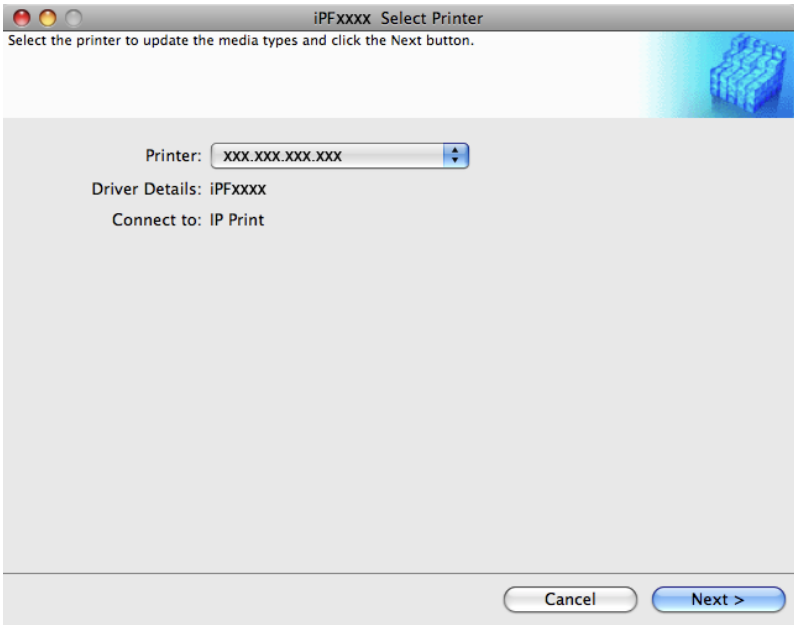
iPFxxxx Add Custom Paper

Makes it possible to use custom paper (non-recommended paper) in the printer and printer driver. Custom paper that has already been registered can also be edited here.

Added Custom Paper:

Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel

3. Select the printer to add the custom paper to.



iPFxxxx Select Printer

Select the printer to update the media types and click the Next button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

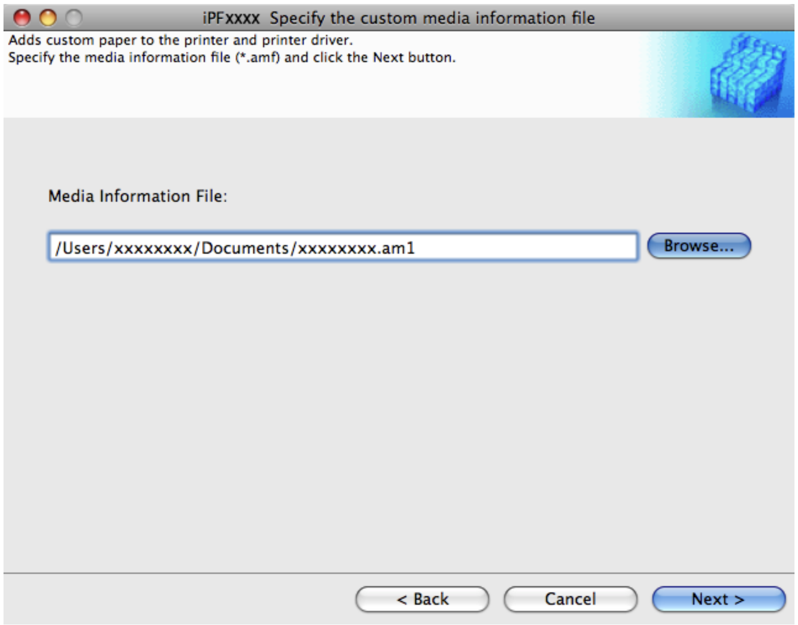
Driver Details: iPFxxxx

Connect to: IP Print

Note

- Double-click Custom Media Information File to start the Media Configuration Tool and display this screen.

4. Select the Custom Media Information File (.am1 file) to import.

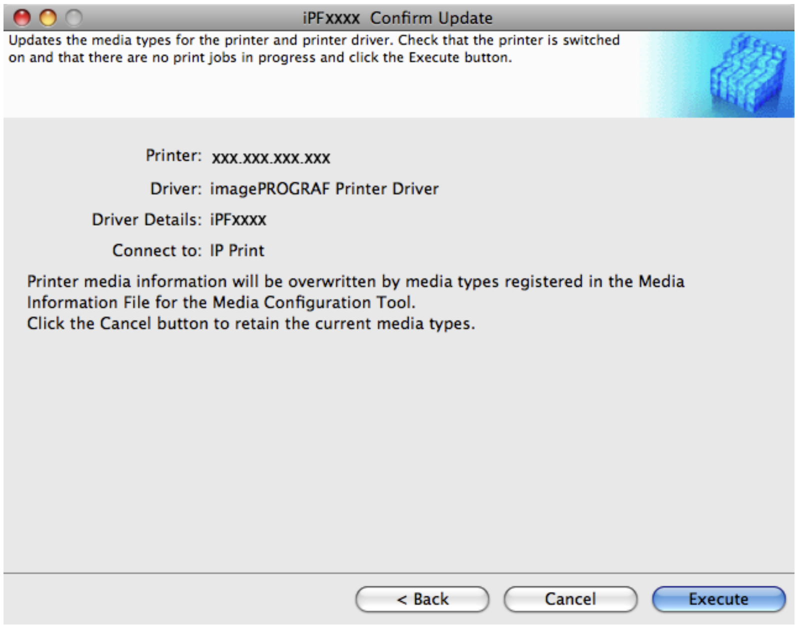


iPFxxxx Specify the custom media information file

Adds custom paper to the printer and printer driver.
Specify the media information file (*.amf) and click the Next button.

Media Information File: /Users/xxxxxxxx/Documents/xxxxxxxx.am1

5. The **Confirm Update** dialog box opens.
Click the **Execute** button.



iPFxxxx Confirm Update

Updates the media types for the printer and printer driver. Check that the printer is switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and click the Execute button.

Printer: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
Driver: imagePROGRAF Printer Driver
Driver Details: iPFxxxx
Connect to: IP Print

Printer media information will be overwritten by media types registered in the Media Information File for the Media Configuration Tool.
Click the Cancel button to retain the current media types.

Note

- If the authentication screen is displayed, input the administrator name and passowrd and click the **OK** button.

The custom paper is added to the control panel of the printer and to the printer driver of the PC you are using.

Note

- When the custom paper is correctly added to the printer driver, the name of the added custom paper is displayed in the **Edit Media Types** dialog box that is opened by **Add Genuine Paper** in the Media Configuration Tool window.

Warnings

Take note of the following warnings when added custom paper other than Canon genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer driver and the printer itself.

About the Cutter

- Depending on the paper, there are types that cannot be cut by the cutter unit, and types that speed deterioration of the blade and cause damage to the cutter. For thick paper, hard paper, etc. do not use the cutter unit, and instead cut the roll paper using scissors, etc. after printing. In this case, select **User Cut** as the **Automatic Cutting Settings** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.

Note

- If the cutter is damaged, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- Refer to "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls" for details on the methods for cutting roll paper. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

About the Printhead

- If the printhead rubs against the paper during printing, this may cause damage to the printhead. If the printhead is rubbing against the paper, configure the **Vacuum Strength** in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box as follows.
  - For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper: Set to **Strong** or **Strongest**
  - For film-based media such as CAD Tracing Paper: Set to **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest**
  - For thin paper of thickness 0.1mm or less: Set to **Weakest**

Note

- If the printhead still rubs even after changing the **Vacuum Strength**, set the **Head Height** to be higher in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- Refer to "Paper rubs against the Printhead" for details on how to handle the printhead rubbing against the paper. (See "Paper rubs against the printhead.") →P.1072

About Borderless Printing

- When performing borderless printing on paper where the ink does not dry well, the cutter unit may leave scratches where it touches the printed surface, or may not cut correctly. In this kind of situation, configure the amount of time to wait for the ink to dry after printing using **Drying Time** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box.
  Alternatively, if the paper cannot be cut well by the cutter, set the **Automatic Cutting Settings** to **User Cut** in the **Roll Paper Settings** dialog box, and cut the roll paper using scissors, etc.

About the Print Quality

- If the edges of images are blurry, set the **Vacuum Strength** to be weaker in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.

- If lines are warped or scratched, set the **Head Height** to be lower in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- If the amount of ink used is too much, wrinkles may appear and the ink may bleed in the printed material. Furthermore, if the amount of ink used is too little, color production may be poor and lines may become scratched. In this kind of situation, change the amount of ink used in the **Step 5: Configure the amount of ink used** dialog box.
- If horizontal bands with different color tone appear in the printed material, execute **Paper Feed Adjustment** in the **Step 4: Paper feed adjustment** dialog box. If you have already executed **Paper Feed Adjustment**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** from the printer control panel and fine tune the amount of paper feed.

> Note
> - Refer to "Fine tuning the amount of paper feed (paper feed fine adjustment)" for details on **Adj. Fine Feed**. (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).") →P.861
> - If horizontal bands appear even after executing **Adj. Fine Feed**, refer to "Banding in different colors occurs" in "Troubleshooting". (See "Banding in different colors occurs.") →P.1075

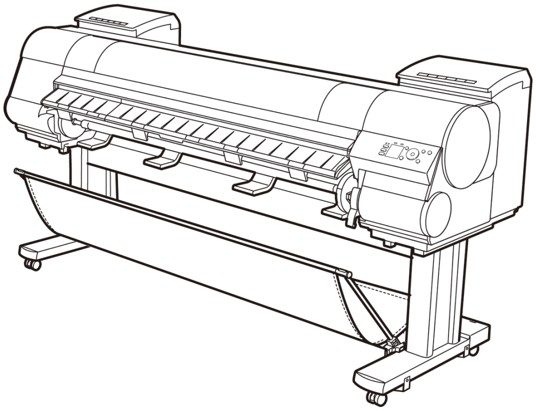
- If you cannot obtain sufficiently high print quality, change the maximum ink usage, or change the media type used as the basis for the custom paper in the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box.
- If there is no luster in printed material, set the paper used as the basis for the custom paper to a paper that uses photo ink as the Black ink.
  The types of Black ink used are displayed on the right side of each media type in the **Step 1: Select the standard paper** dialog box.

> Note
> - Refer to "Problems with the printing quality" for details on problems with printing quality. (Refer to " Problems with the printing quality →P.1071 ")

About the Color Tone

- The color tone cannot be configured using the Media Configuration Tool. If the color tone needs to be adjusted, provide an ICC color profile that matches the paper you are using, and select that ICC color profile in your software.
- Custom paper cannot be used with the ambient light adjustment function or Monitor Matching in Color-Matching Method.

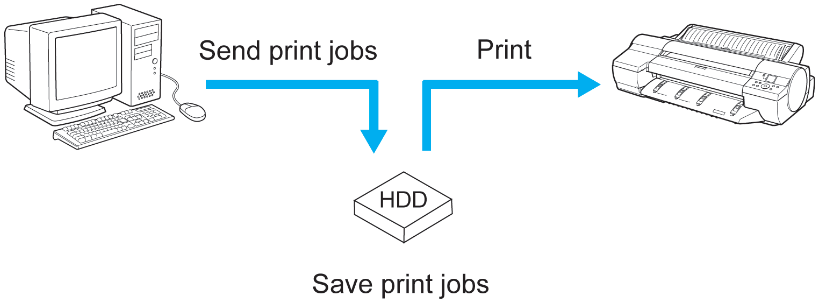
Print Job Operations



Basic Print Job Operations

Using the Printer Hard Disk

The printer can save print jobs on the built-in hard disk.
Using print jobs stored on the printer enables you to print the jobs again as needed without using a computer.



Saving print jobs offers the following benefits.

- Save the time spent using a computer
  When you send a print job to the printer, you can save it on the printer after printing or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.
- Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur
  If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.
- Streamline printing work
  Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

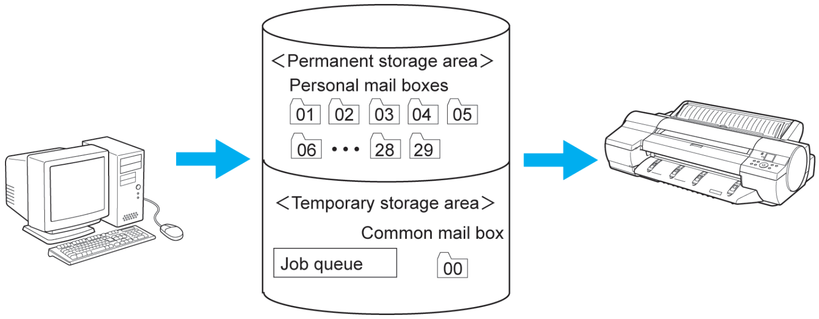
Output Method

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, choose **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X).

- **Print**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.
- **Save in mail box**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.
- **Print after reception is complete**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**. Print jobs are saved on the printer's hard disk before printing.

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. The temporary storage area stores print jobs in the job queue or shared mailbox. The permanent storage area stores jobs in personal boxes.



• Job queue

The job queue refers to print jobs that are being processed by the printer (saved, received, prepared for processing, printed, deleted, or held). Up to 64 jobs can be stored in the temporary storage area.

When the job queue is full, additional jobs sent from a computer are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

However, if all queued jobs are simply being held, the oldest job is deleted and the print job sent from the computer is processed.

• Shared mailbox

Jobs for which you have specified **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) are saved in the shared mailbox and classified as saved jobs.

There is one shared mailbox, numbered **00.** A password cannot be set for the shared mailbox.

Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

- If there are more than 100 jobs queued and saved in the shared mailbox combined
- If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) are received
- If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs for which you have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) are received

• Personal boxes

Jobs are classified as saved jobs and saved in personal boxes in the following situations.

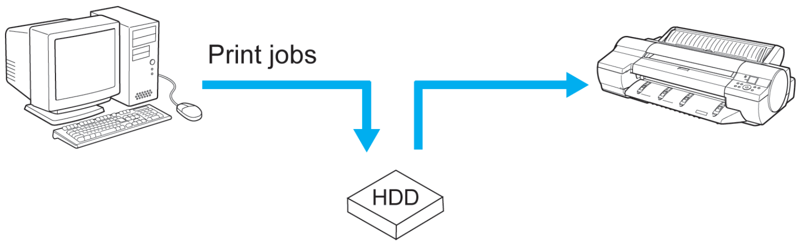
- When a saved job stored in the shared mailbox is moved to a personal box
- When you have selected **Save in mail box** as the option in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X)

There are 29 personal boxes, numbered **01** to **29.** You can specify a name and password for each personal box.

Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all personal boxes combined.

Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, configure the printer driver.



Note

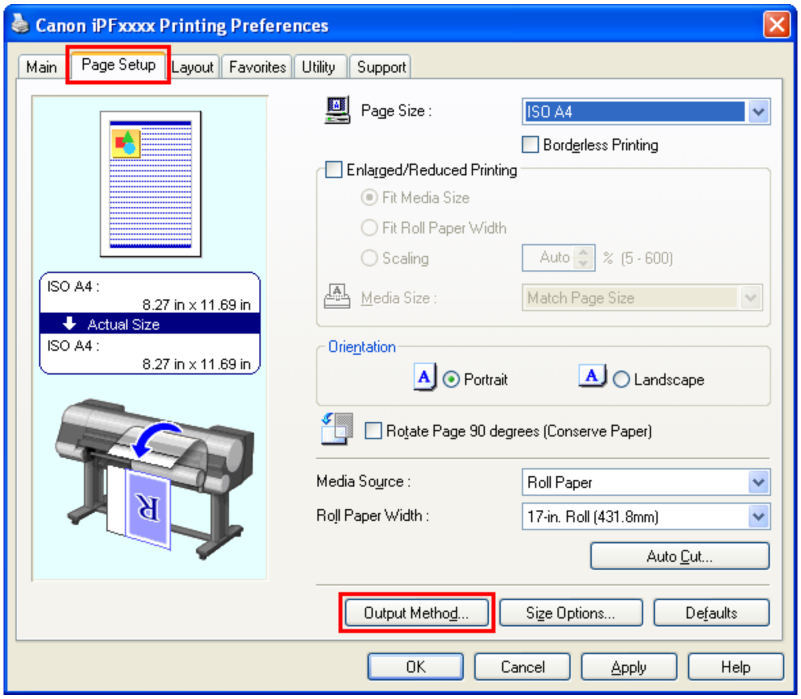
- Printing from the following software also enables you to save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.
  Windows
  - Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional →P.307
  - Free Layout →P.261
  - Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.292
  - Preview →P.248

  Mac OS
  - Print Plug-In for Photoshop/Digital Photo Professional →P.609
  - Free Layout →P.550
  - Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy →P.584
  - Preview →P.519

    The document title will be "imagePROGRAF" when you print from **imagePROGRAF Preview**.

Configuring the Printer Driver in Windows

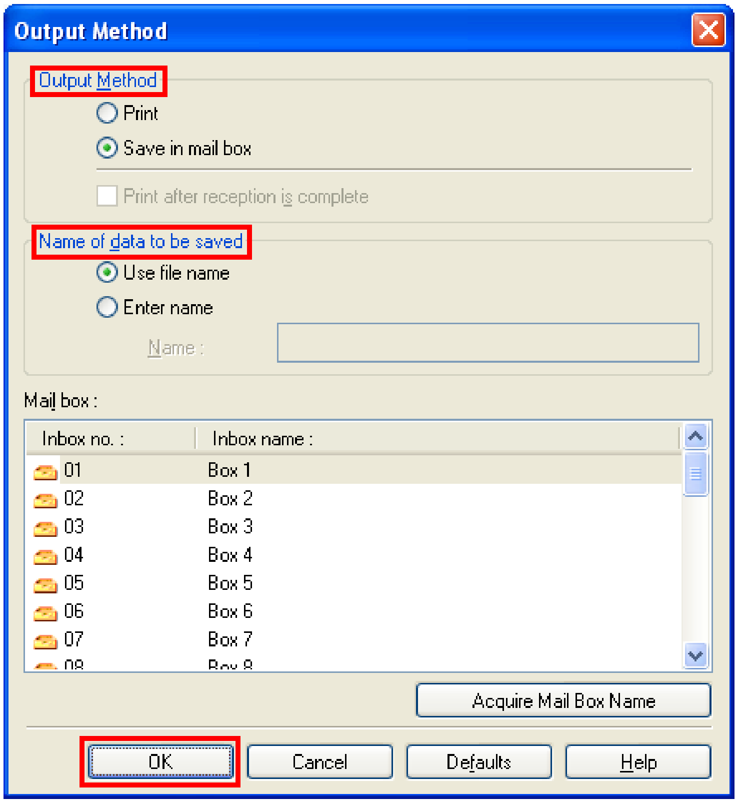
1. Access the **Page Setup** sheet.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Page Size : ISO A4
☐ Borderless Printing
☐ Enlarged/Reduced Printing
● Fit Media Size
○ Fit Roll Paper Width
○ Scaling Auto % (5 - 600)
Media Size : Match Page Size
Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape
☐ Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
Media Source : Roll Paper
Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
ISO A4 : 8.27 in x 11.69 in
Actual Size
ISO A4 : 8.27 in x 11.69 in

2. Click **Output Method** to display the **Output Method** dialog box.



3. Make your selection in **Output Method**.

- **Print**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.
- **Save in mail box**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.
  If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.
- **Print after reception is complete**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**. Print jobs are saved on the printer's hard disk before printing.

Note

- Click **Acquire Mail Box Name** to display personal box names in the **Mail box** list, as acquired from the printer.

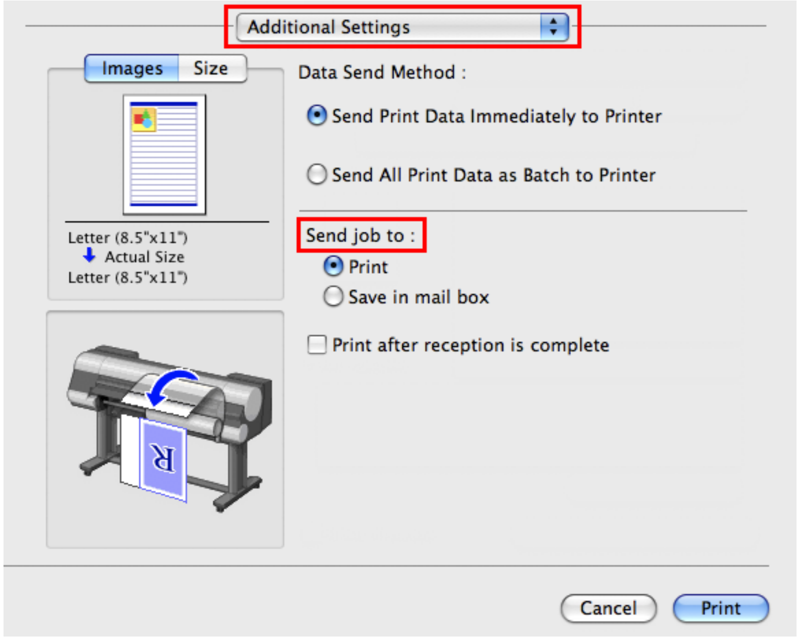
4. In **Name of data to be saved**, specify how to name saved print jobs.

- To use the file name, choose **Use file name**.
- Otherwise choose **Enter name** and enter a name in **Name**.

5. Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

Configuring the printer driver in Mac OS

1. Access the **Additional Settings** pane.



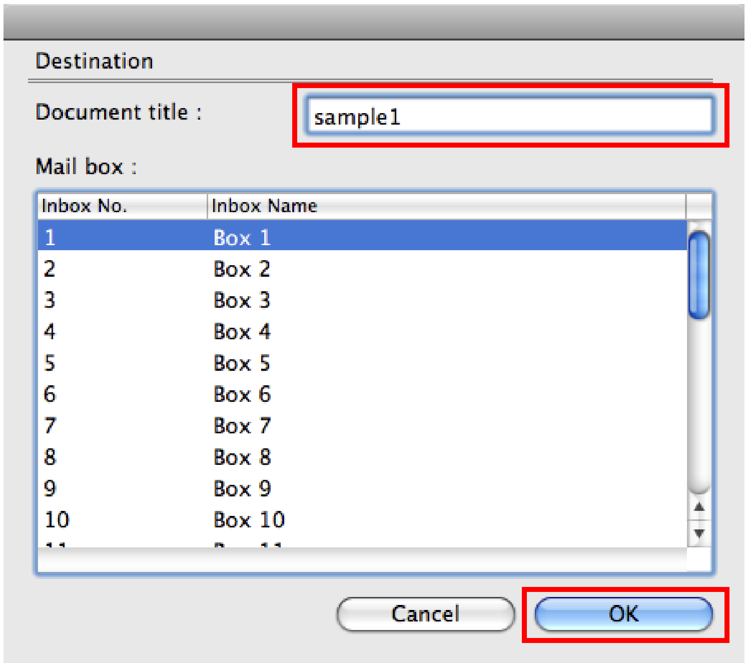
Data Send Method :
- ● Send Print Data Immediately to Printer
- ○ Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer

Send job to :
- ● Print
- ○ Save in mail box

☐ Print after reception is complete

2. Make your selection in **Send job to**.

- **Print**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.
- **Save in mail box**
  Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.
  The **Destination** dialog box is displayed if you select **Save in mail box**. Here, specify the name and personal box number for saved print jobs.



Document title : sample1

Mail box :

Inbox No.	Inbox Name
1	Box 1
2	Box 2
3	Box 3
4	Box 4
5	Box 5
6	Box 6
7	Box 7
8	Box 8
9	Box 9
10	Box 10

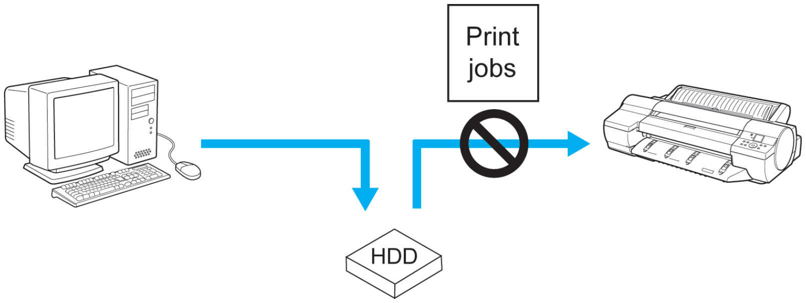
1. In **Document title**, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.
2. Select the personal box number in the **Mail box** list.
3. Click **OK** to close the **Destination** dialog box.

- **Print after reception is complete**
  This option is available in combination with **Print**. Print jobs are saved on the printer's hard disk before printing.

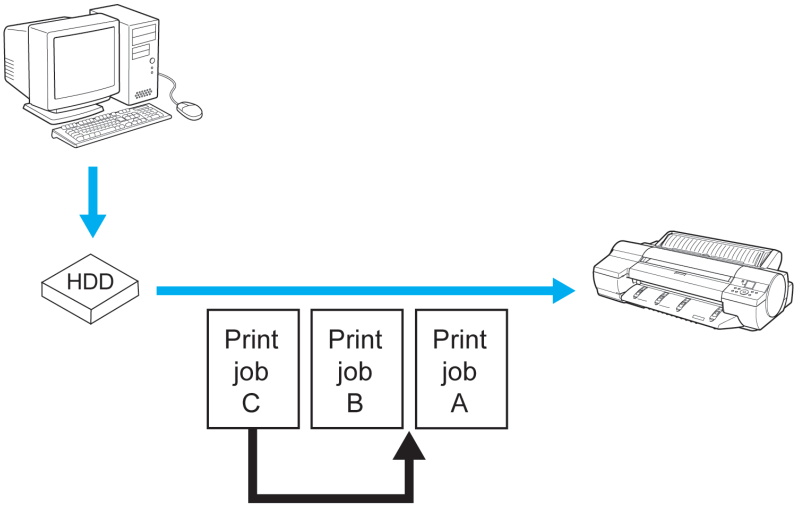
Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

Print jobs being processed by the printer are collectively called the job queue. You can delete or preempt jobs in the job queue as needed.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

- Delete
  Note that only jobs that are not currently being deleted can be deleted from the job queue.



- Preempting other jobs
  You can preempt other jobs by printing jobs that are currently being received or prepared for processing first.

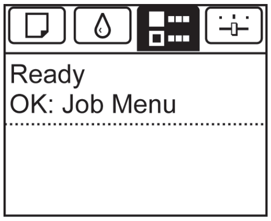


Note

- For information on managing jobs being held, see "Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)." →P.728

Using the Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab (▪⋯).



Ready
OK: Job Menu

> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Manage the job queue as needed.

   - Deleting jobs

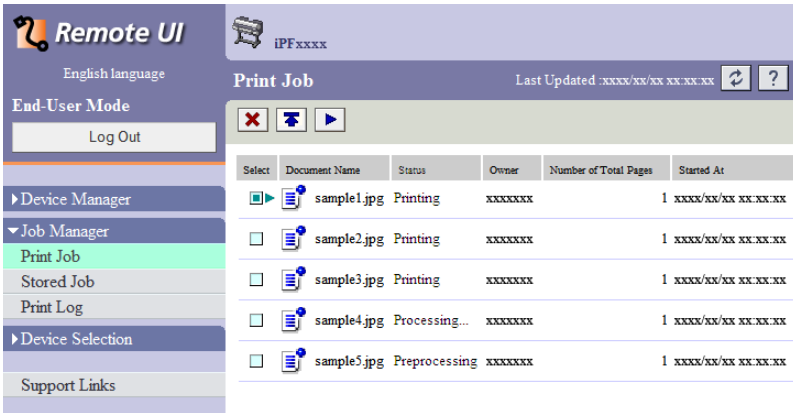
     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the **OK** button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

   - Preempting other jobs

     1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
     2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the job to print first, and then press the **OK** button.
     3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Preempt Jobs**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

Manage jobs as needed on the **Print Job** page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.



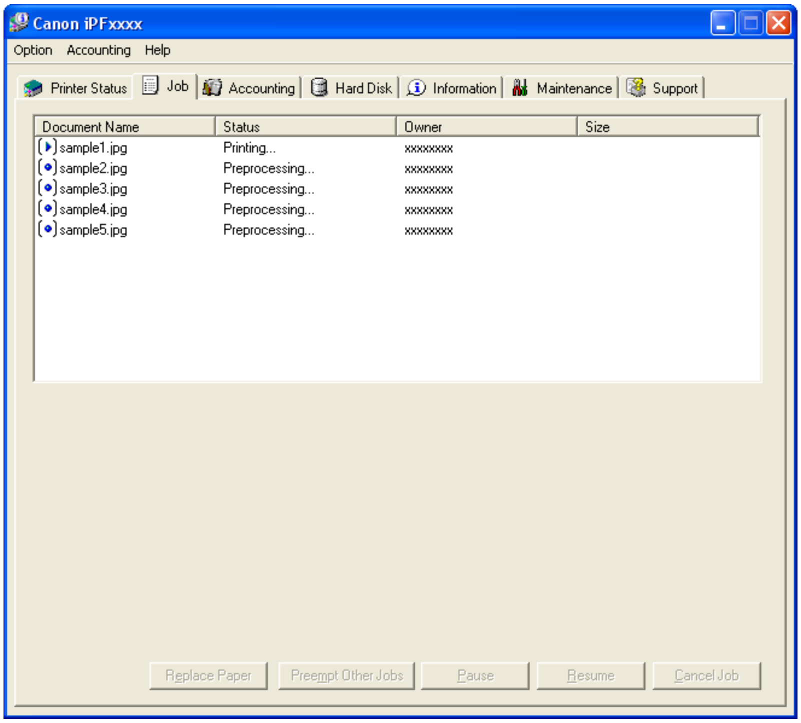
Print Job

Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Select	Document Name	Status	Owner	Number of Total Pages	Started At
▣ ▶	sample1.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	Processing...	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample5.jpg	Preprocessing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

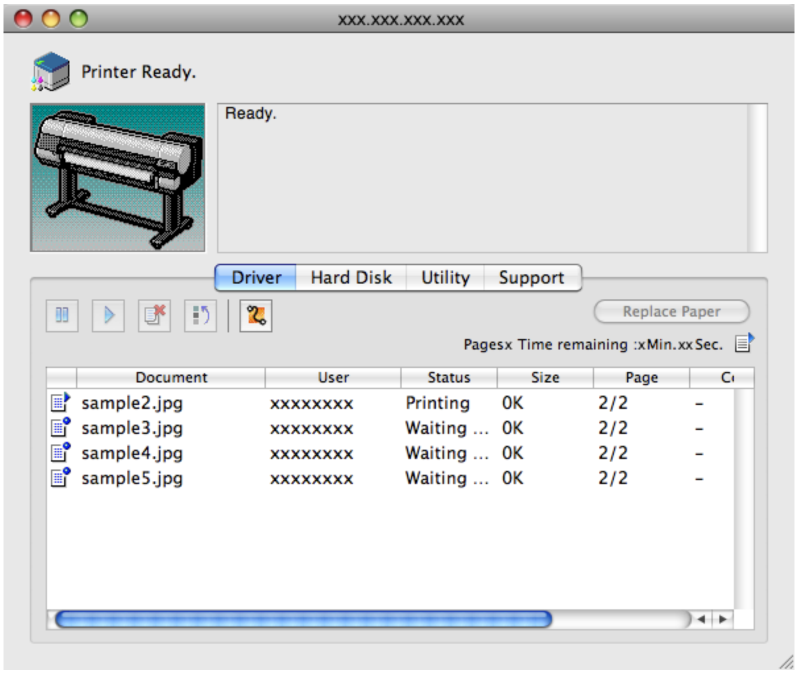
Manage jobs as needed on the **Job** sheet. For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.



Document Name	Status	Owner	Size
sample1.jpg	Printing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample2.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample3.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample4.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample5.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Manage jobs as needed on the **Driver** sheet. For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.



Printer Ready.

Ready.

Pagesx Time remaining :xMin.xxSec.

Document	User	Status	Size	Page	C
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Printing	OK	2/2	-
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-

Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)

If the type or size of paper loaded does not match the settings in the print job received when you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Hold Job** in the Control Panel menu, the print job is held on the printer as a pending job in the job queue.
Manage held jobs such as these as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

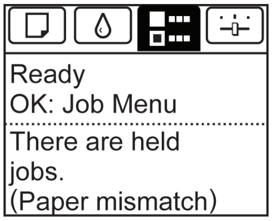
Note

- As long as you do not manage held jobs from the Control Panel, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, they will remain in the job queue. In this case, the printer processes the next job in the queue without pausing.
- To print held jobs, replace the loaded paper with the paper specified in the print job.
  (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
  (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813

Using the Control Panel

5

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab (▤).
   "**There are held jobs.**" is displayed if jobs are being held.



Ready
OK: Job Menu
There are held jobs.
(Paper mismatch)

Note

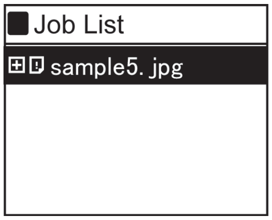
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** menu is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to manage, and then press the **OK** button.
   Held jobs are labeled with an icon.

728



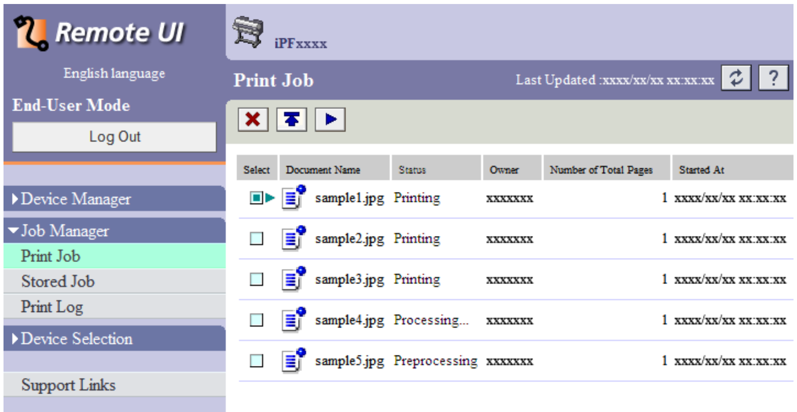
Job List
sample5. jpg

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Anyway** or **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - If you choose **Print Anyway**
     Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the **OK** button.
   - If you choose **Delete**

Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes** or **No**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

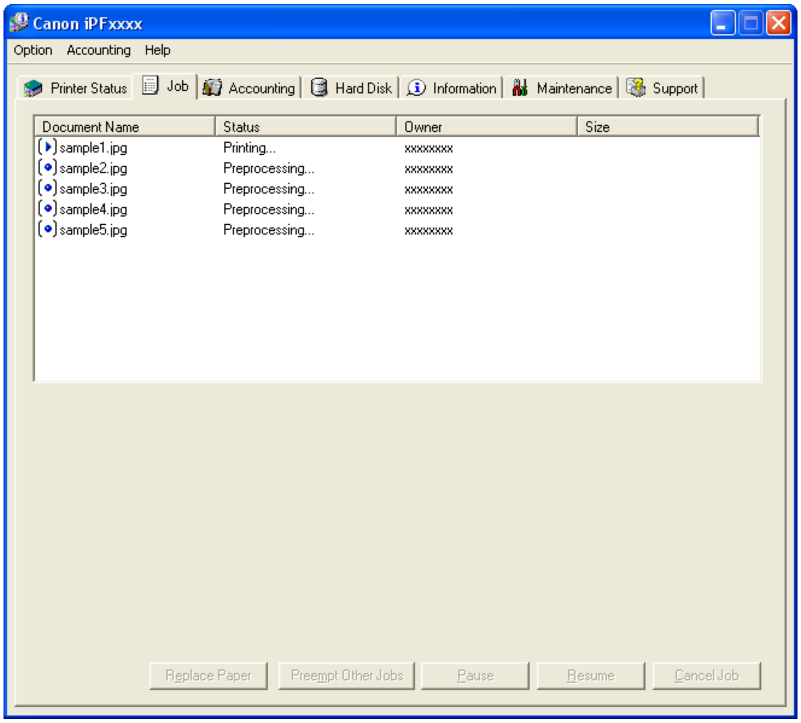
Manage jobs as needed on the **Print Job** page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.



Select	Document Name	Status	Owner	Number of Total Pages	Started At
▣ ▶	sample1.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	Processing...	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample5.jpg	Preprocessing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

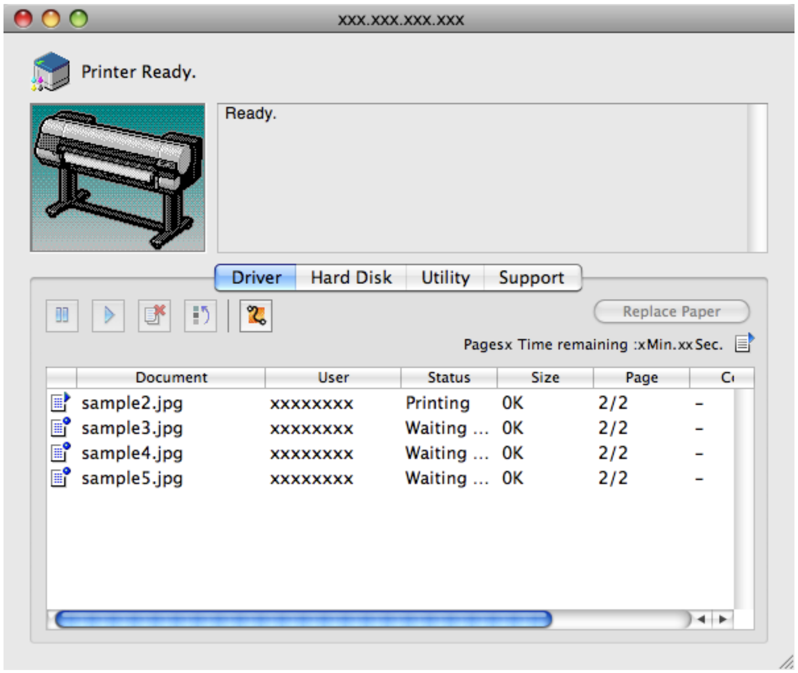
Manage jobs as needed on the **Job** sheet. For details, see "Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor." →P.427



Document Name	Status	Owner	Size
sample1.jpg	Printing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample2.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample3.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample4.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	
sample5.jpg	Preprocessing...	xxxxxxxx	

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

Manage jobs as needed on the **Driver** sheet. For details, see "Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor." →P.675



Printer Ready.

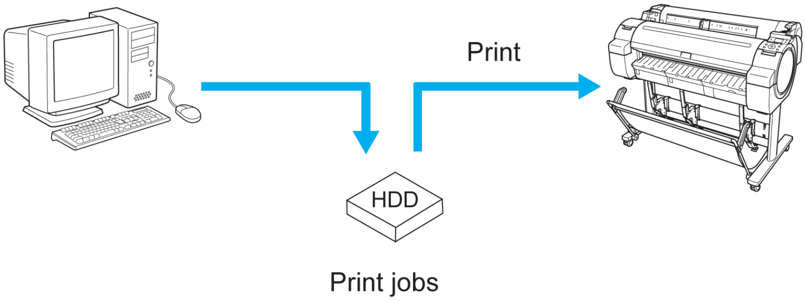
Ready.

Pagesx Time remaining :xMin.xxSec.

Document	User	Status	Size	Page	C
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Printing	OK	2/2	-
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting ...	OK	2/2	-

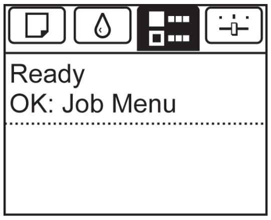
Printing Saved Jobs

Print saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



Using the Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ( ).



Ready
OK: Job Menu

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** menu is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

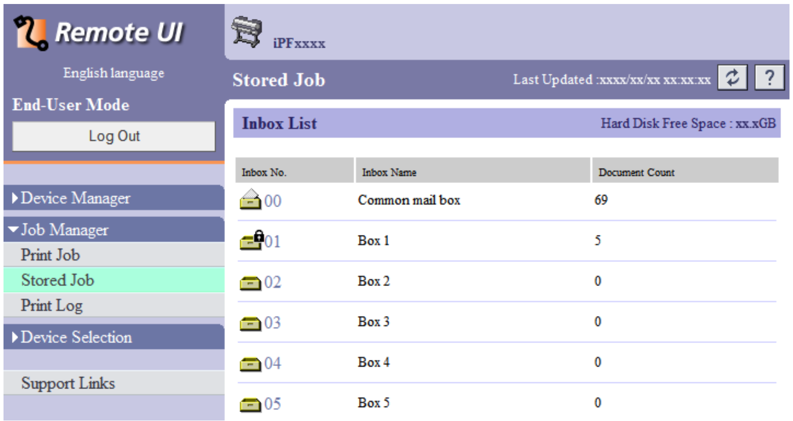
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



Stored Job

Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

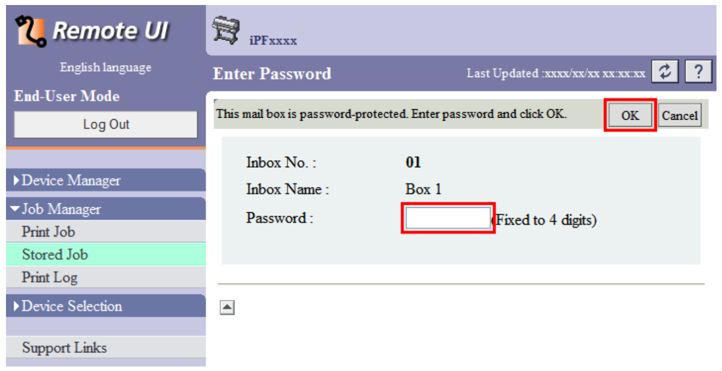
Inbox List

Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB

Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

Note

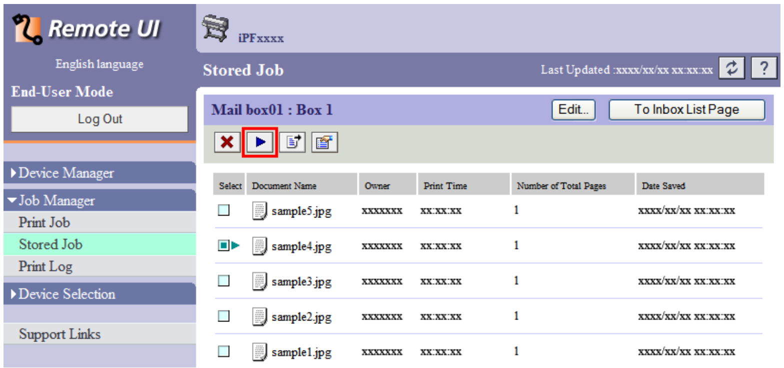
- Enter a password if one has been set.



This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

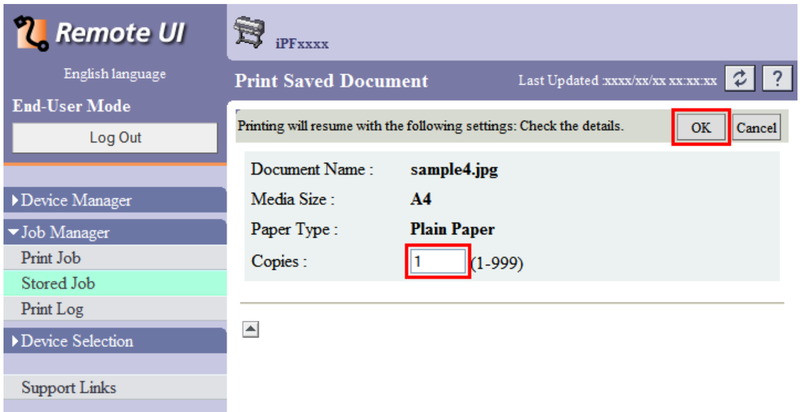
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

2. Select the print job and click **Resume**.



Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☑	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3. On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



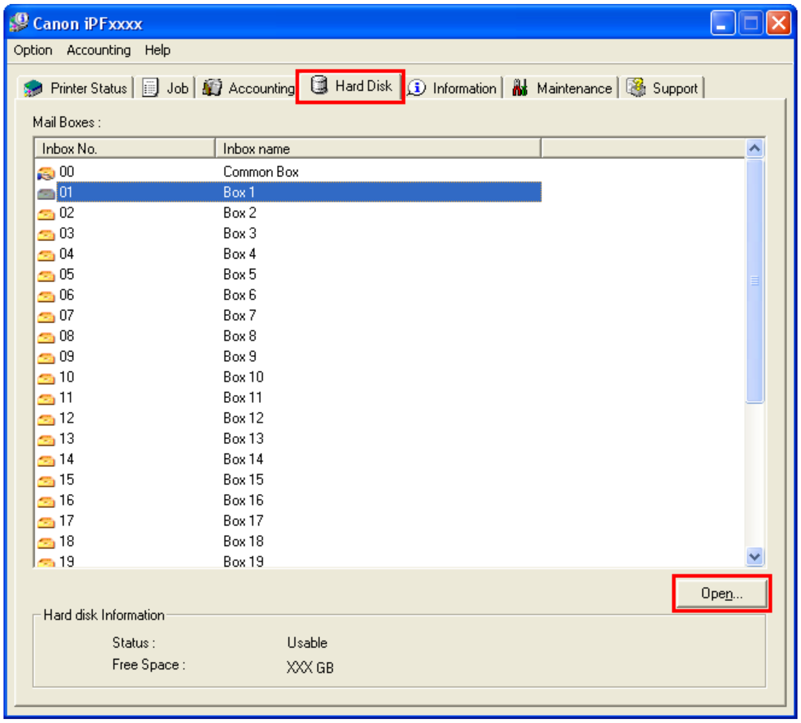
Printing will resume with the following settings: Check the details.

Document Name : **sample4.jpg**
Media Size : **A4**
Paper Type : **Plain Paper**
Copies : 1 (1-999)

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

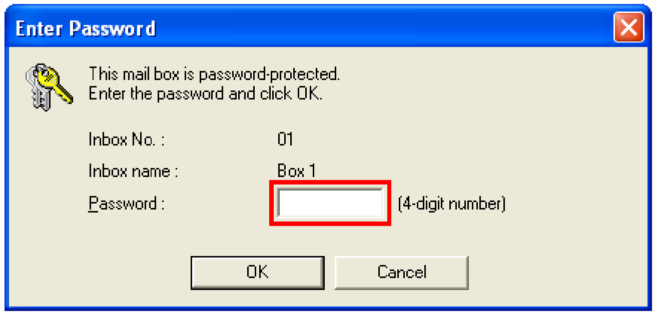
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



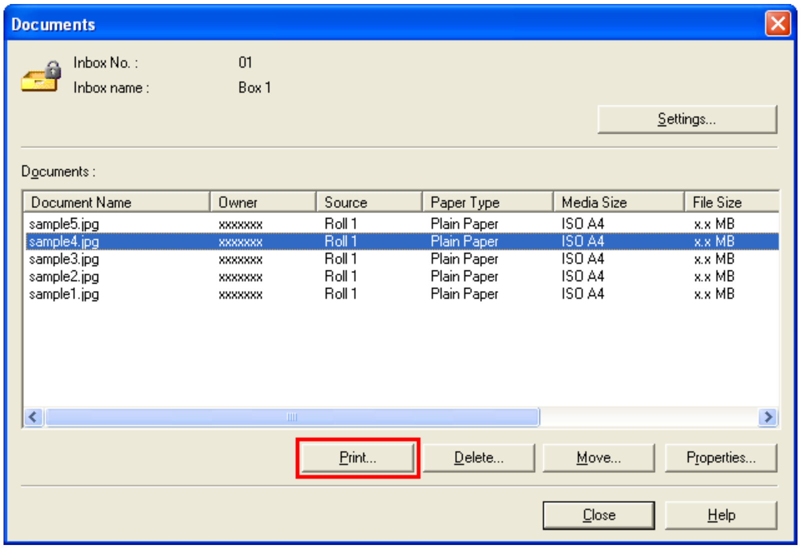
This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Print**.

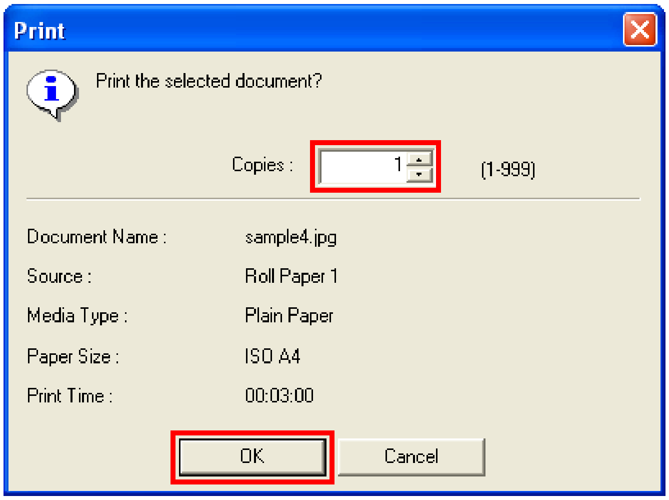


Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

3. In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.



Print the selected document?

Copies : 1 (1-999)

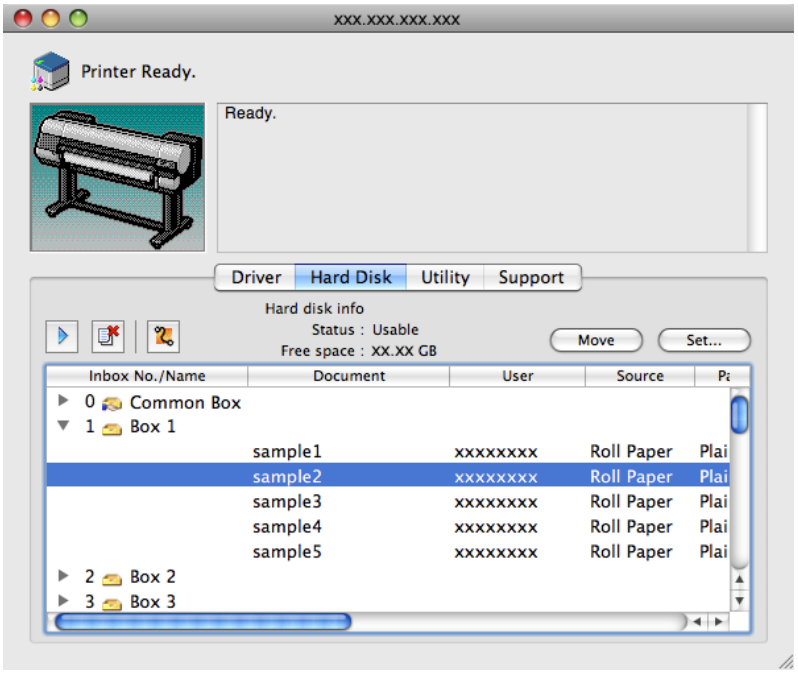
Document Name : sample4.jpg
Source : Roll Paper 1
Media Type : Plain Paper
Paper Size : ISO A4
Print Time : 00:03:00

> **Note**
>
> - The printing time initially indicates how long it took to finish printing one copy during the previous print job.
>   If you change the value in **Copies**, the printing time indicates the time it took to print one copy during the previous print job multiplied by the number of copies.

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**.



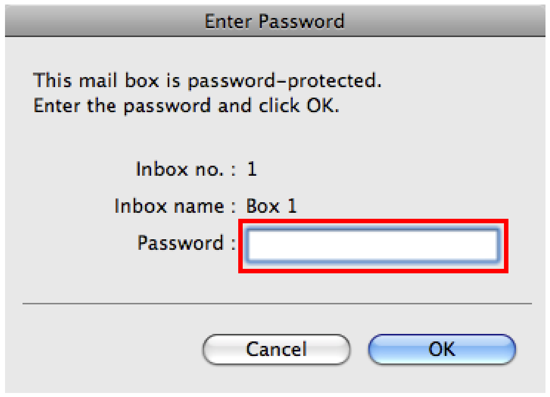
Printer Ready.

Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

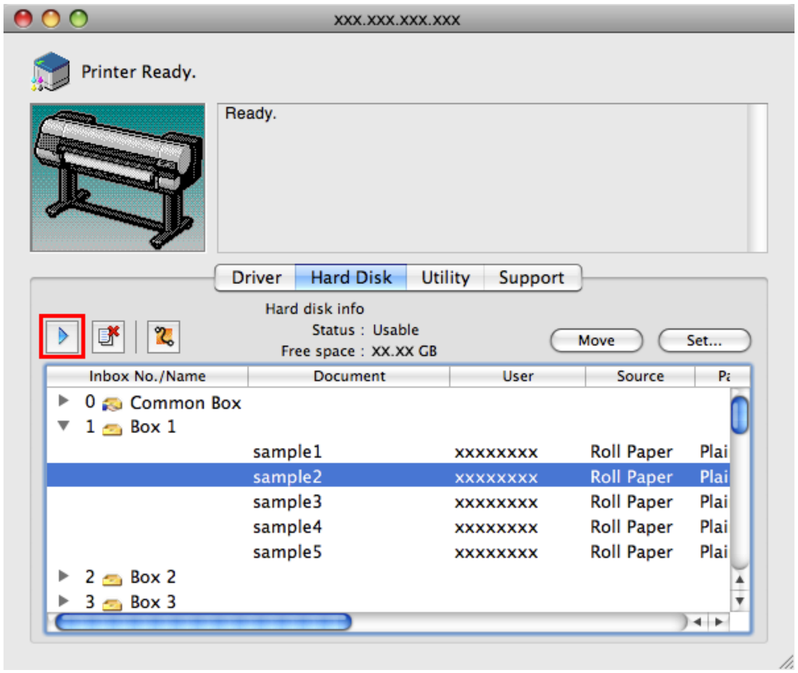
> **Note**
>
> - Enter a password if one has been set.
>   The password is a four-digit number.



This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

2. Select the saved job and click **Resume Printing**.



xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

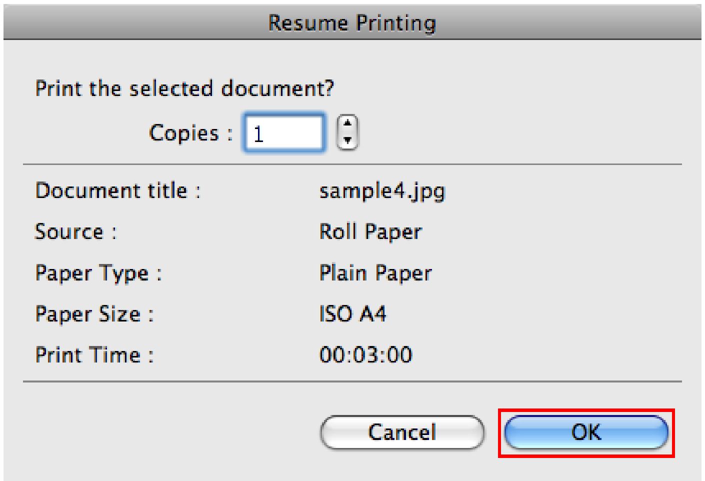
Printer Ready.

Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

3. In the **Resume Printing** dialog box, enter the quantity to print and click **OK**.



Resume Printing

Print the selected document?

Copies : 1

Document title : sample4.jpg
Source : Roll Paper
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Paper Size : ISO A4
Print Time : 00:03:00

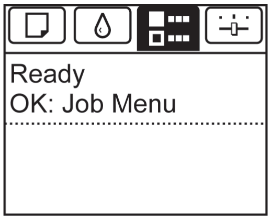
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Deleting Saved Jobs

Delete saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.
This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ().



Ready
OK: Job Menu

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

> Note
> - Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

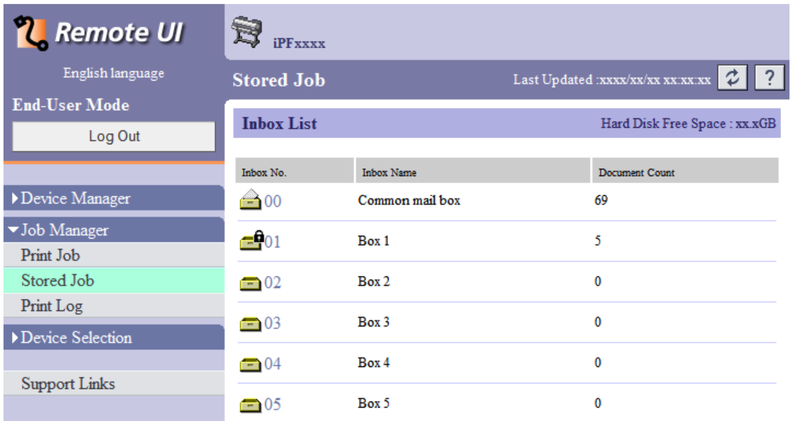
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the saved job, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

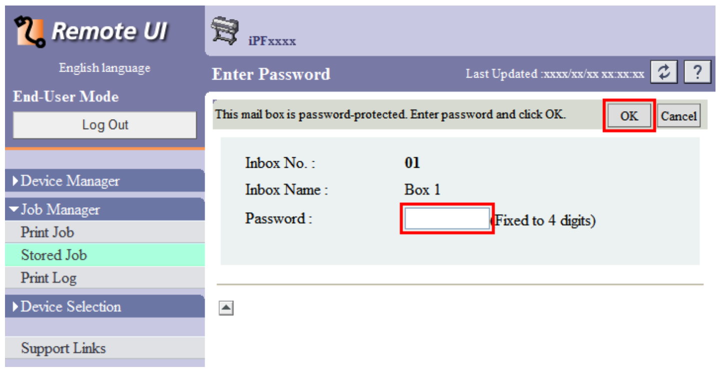
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the mail box.



Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

Note

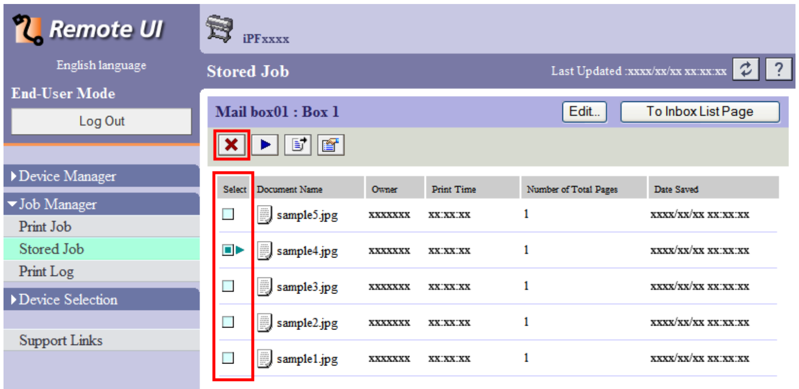
- Enter a password if one has been set.



This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

2. Select the print job and click **Delete**.

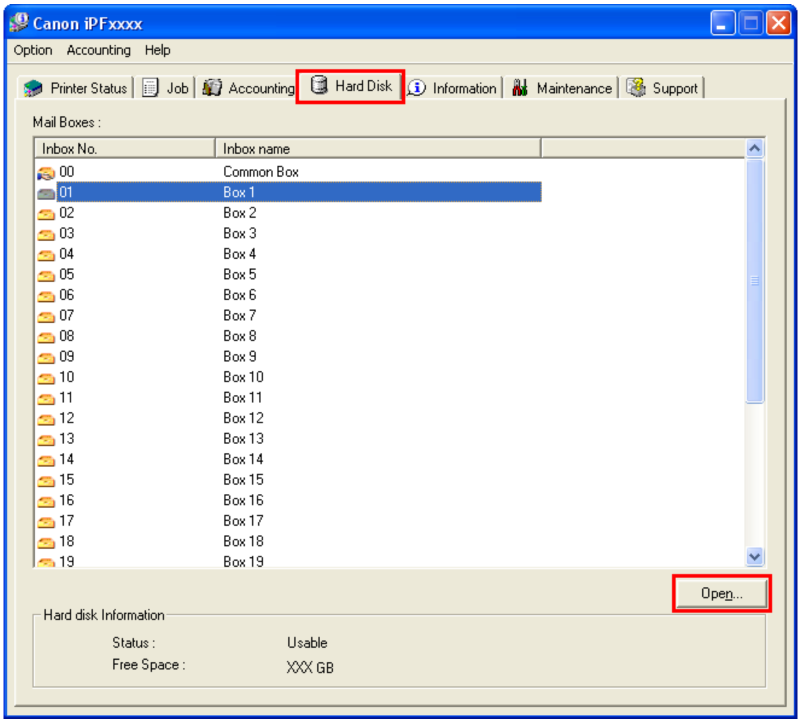


Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☑	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

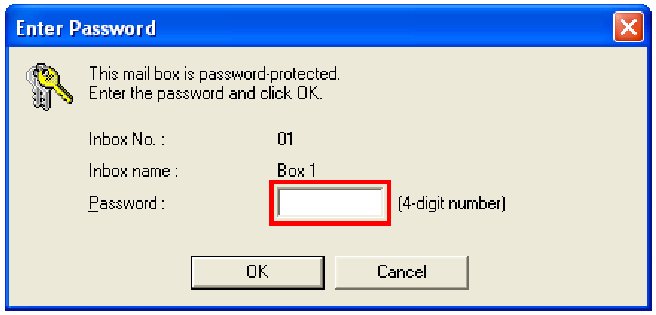
Hard disk Information

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



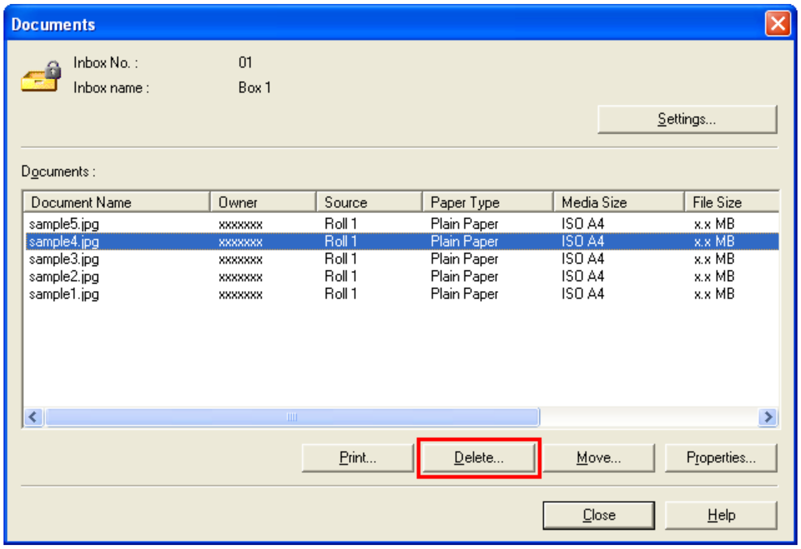
This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Delete**.



Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

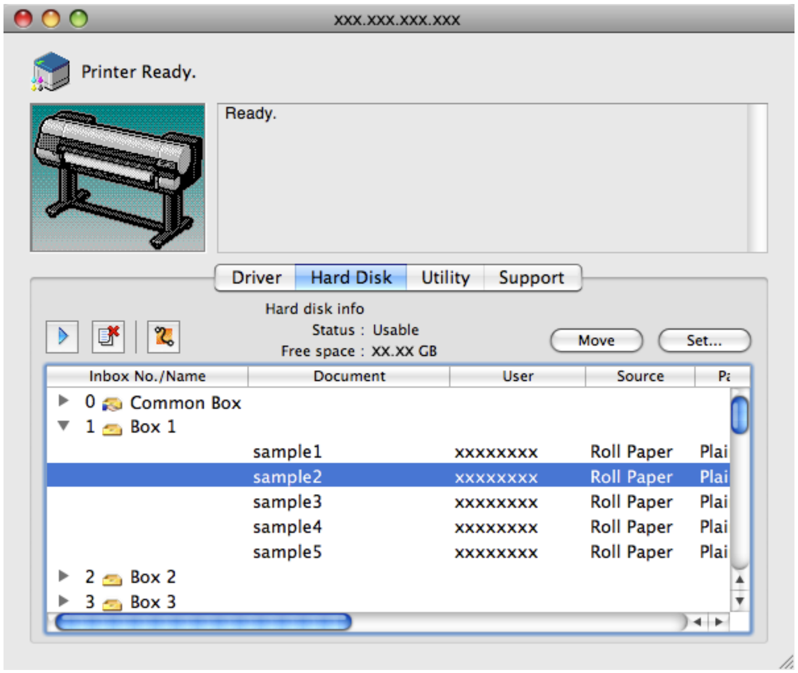
Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./Name**.



Printer Ready.

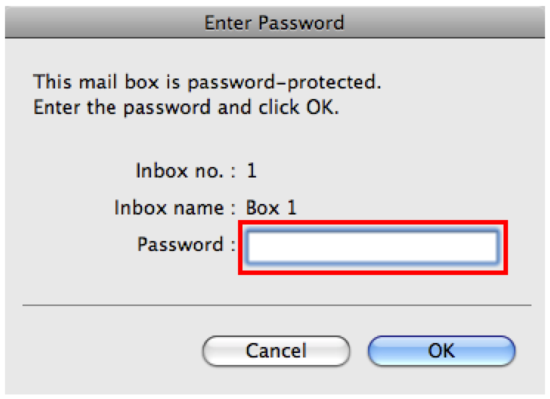
Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.

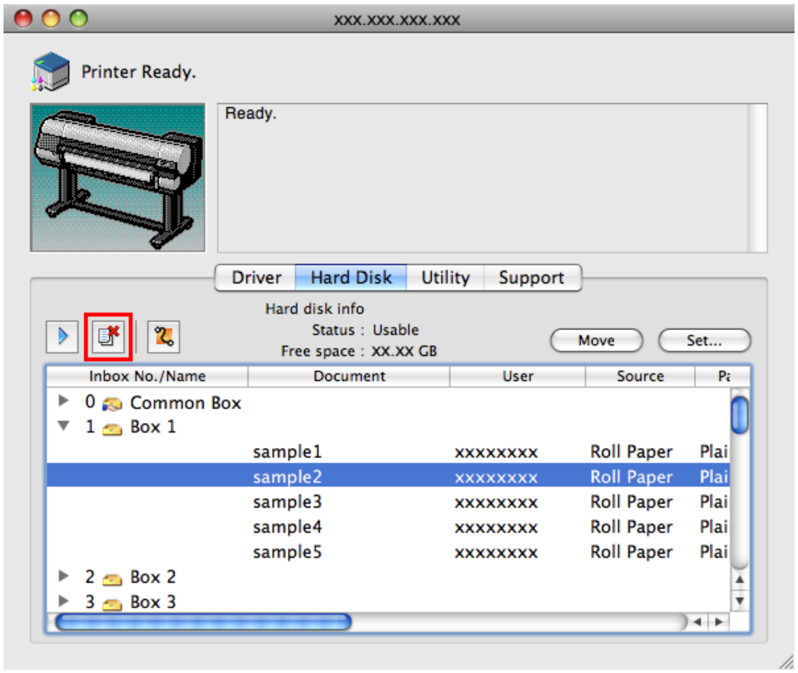


Enter Password

This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

2. Select the print job and click the **Delete** button.



xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Printer Ready.

Ready.

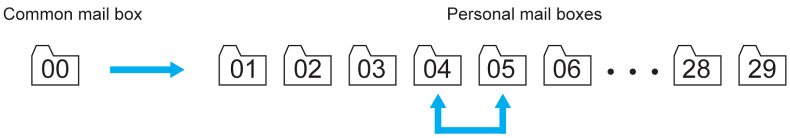
Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
0 Common Box				
1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
2 Box 2				
3 Box 3				

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Moving Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be moved from the current box to another box as follows. However, jobs saved in personal boxes cannot be moved to the shared mailbox.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

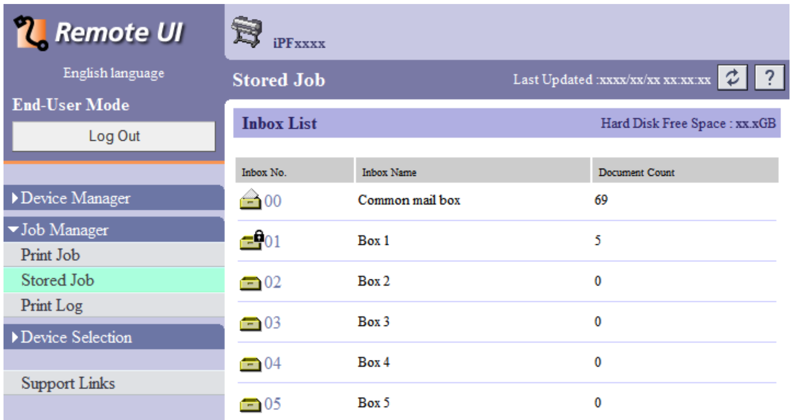


Important

- Jobs stored in the shared mailbox may be automatically deleted under some conditions. To prevent jobs from being deleted, move them from the shared mailbox to personal boxes. (See "Using the Printer Hard Disk.") →P.720

Using RemoteUI

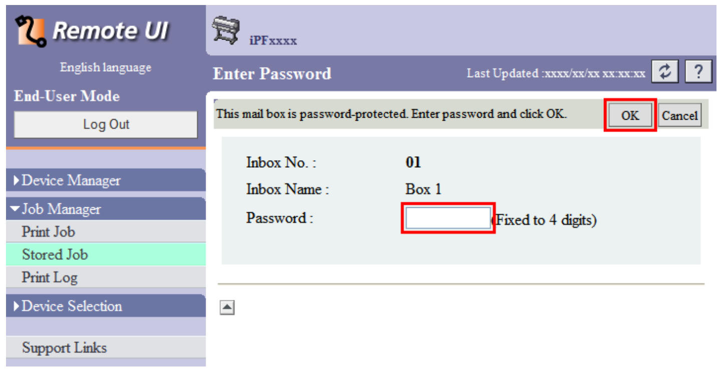
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

Note

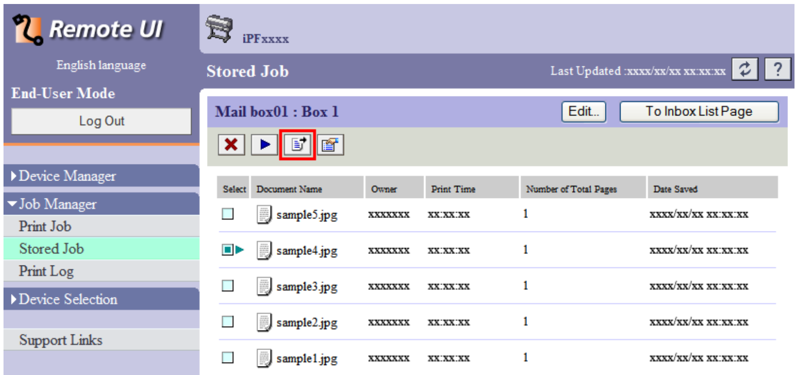
- Enter a password if one has been set.



This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

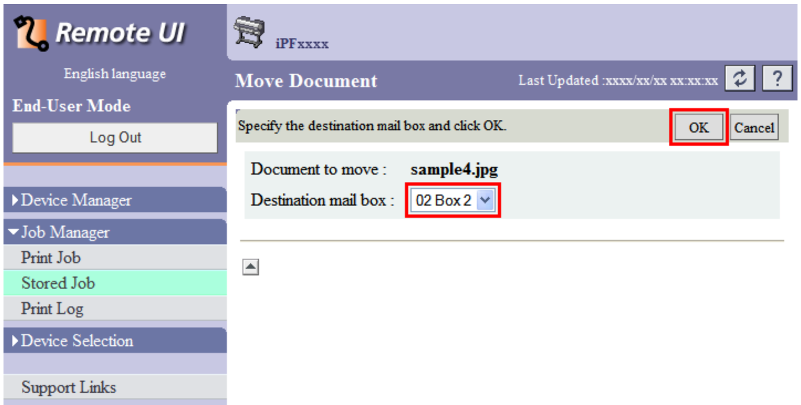
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

2. Select the print job and click **Move Document**.



Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☑	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3. On the **Move Document** page, select the name or number of the destination personal box in the **Destination mail box** list and click **OK**.



Specify the destination mail box and click OK.

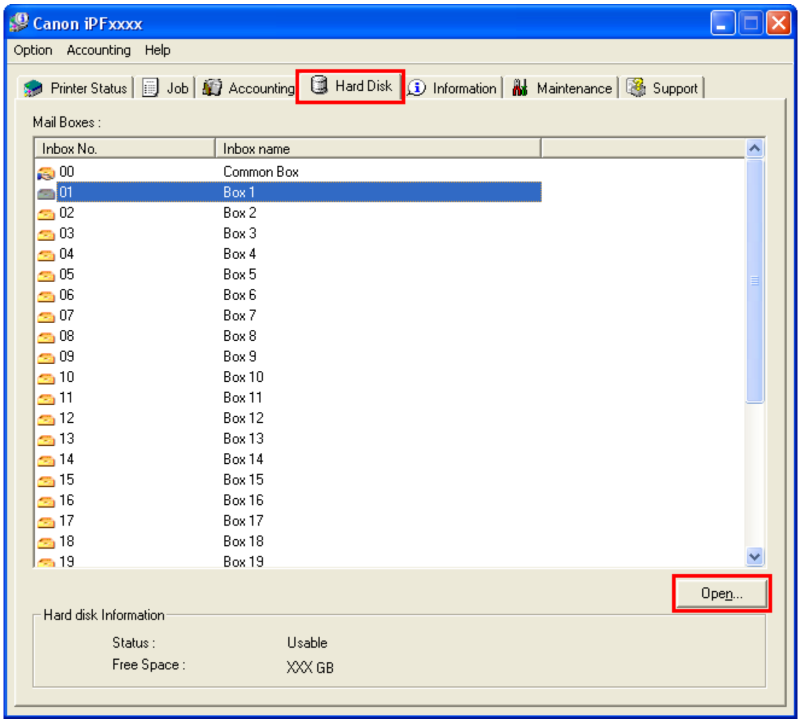
Document to move : sample4.jpg

Destination mail box : 02 Box 2

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



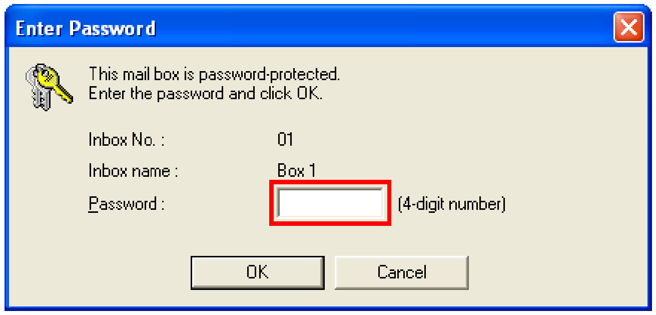
Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

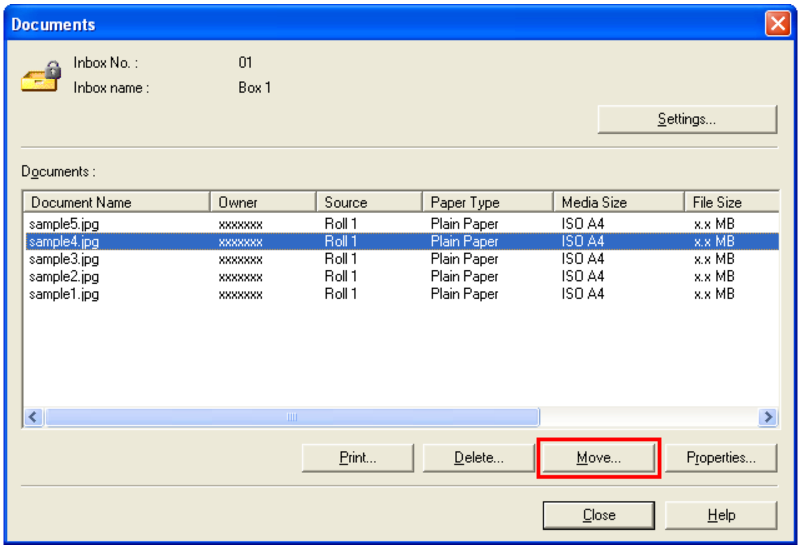


Enter Password

This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Move**.



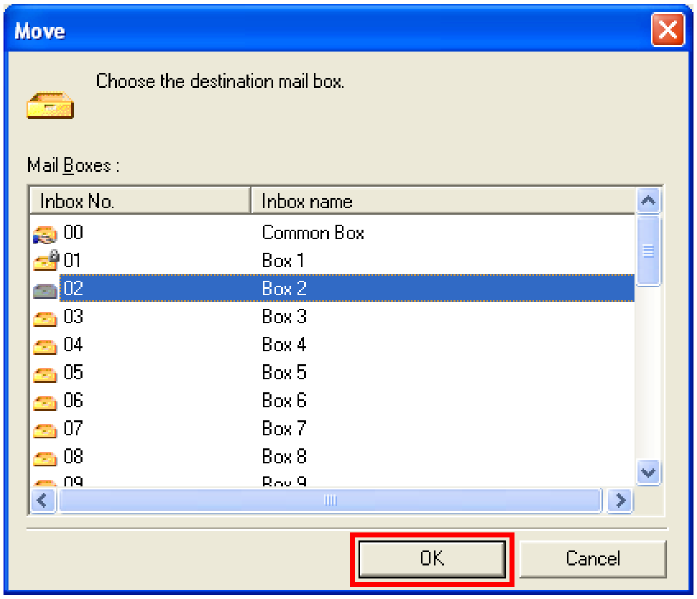
Documents

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

3. In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



Move

Choose the destination mail box.

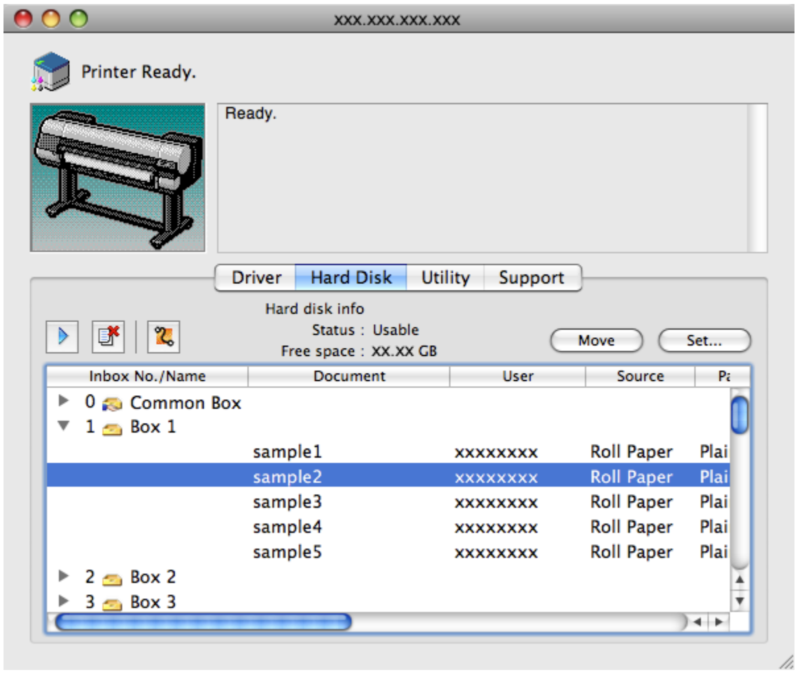
Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./Name**.



Printer Ready.

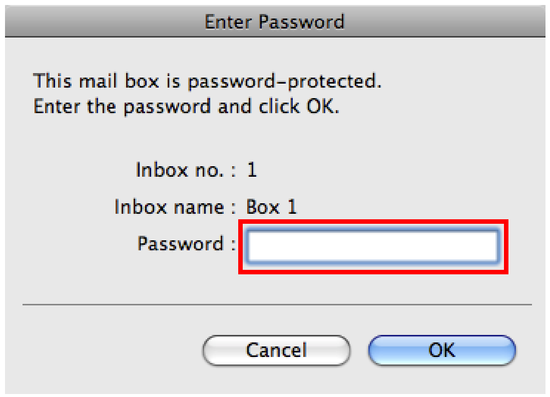
Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

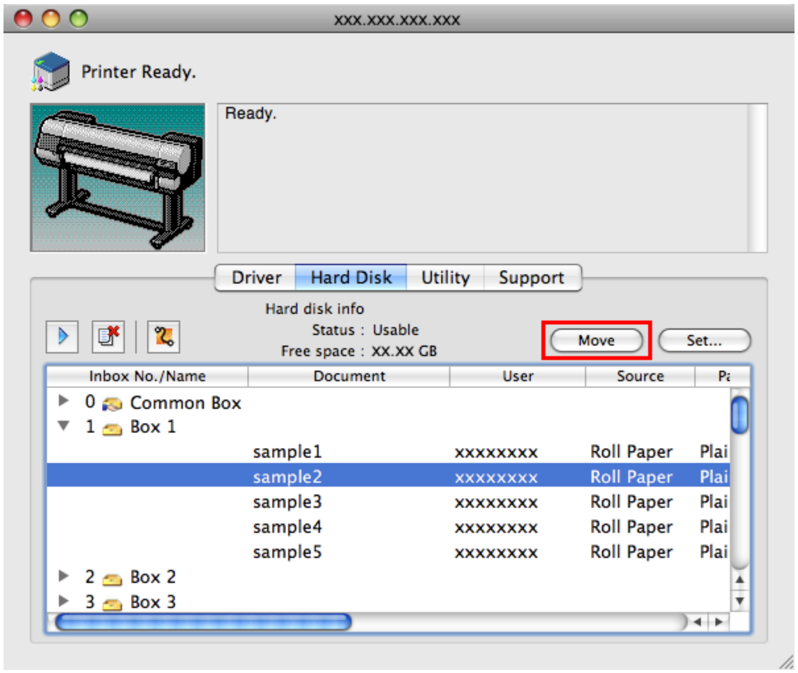
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.



This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

2. Select the print job and click **Move**.



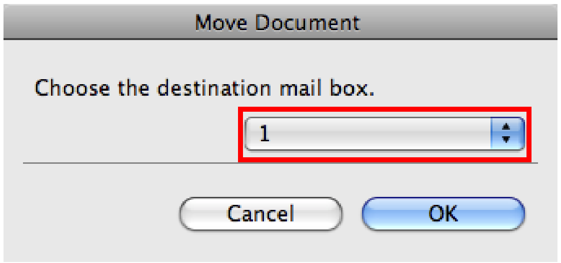
Printer Ready.

Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

3. In the **Move Document** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.



Choose the destination mail box.

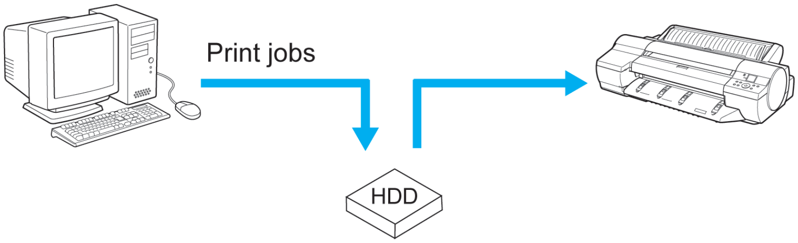
1

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Advanced Print Job Operations

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver

To save print jobs sent from software or systems other than the printer driver or applications provided with the printer, complete the **Output Method** and **Print After Recv** settings in the Control Panel menu.



Note

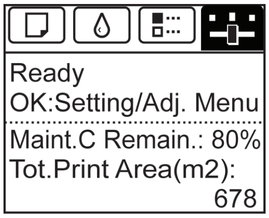
- Contact the software or system developer for information about support for this printer function.

Specifying **Output Method**

In **Output Method**, specify how to manage jobs, regarding printing and saving them.

- **Print**
  Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)
- **Print (Auto Del)**
  Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- **Save: Box 01** (Here, the number represents a box number)
  Save print jobs on the printer.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).


Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Output Method**, and then press the **OK** button.

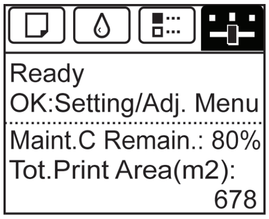
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, **Print (Auto Del)**, or **Save: Box 01**.
   Follow these steps only when you select **Save: Box 01**.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box, and then press the **OK** button.

Specify **Print After Recv**

To save print jobs on the hard disk before printing, specify **Print After Recv**.
Printing will start when **Print After Recv** is set to **On**, even if you have selected **Save: Box 01** in **Output Method**.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

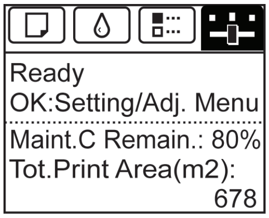
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print After Recv**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box

Jobs sent from a computer for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS X) in the printer driver are saved in the shared mailbox. (See "Using the Printer Hard Disk.") →P.720
When **Common Box Set.** is **Print (Auto Del)** in the Control Panel menu, print jobs for which you have selected **Print** in the **Output Method** dialog box of the printer driver are deleted from the shared mailbox after printing.
Use this function when printing highly confidential documents.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

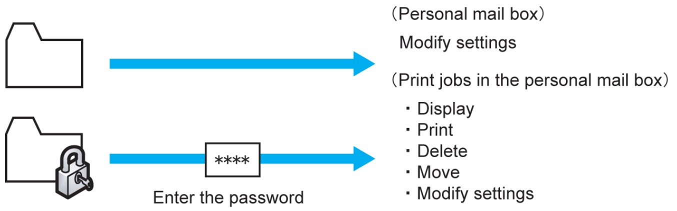
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Common Box Set.**, and then press the **OK** button.

> Note
> - If a password has been set on the printer, the **Logon** screen is displayed.
>   To change the setting, select **Administrator** and press the **OK** button. Enter the password when **Admin.Pswd** is displayed and press the **OK** button before going to the next procedure.
>   If you select **User** and press the **OK** button, you can check settings values but cannot change them.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print (Auto Del)**, and then press the **OK** button.

Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes

For greater security, you can specify a password for personal boxes. After you set a password, it will be required to modify the personal box settings, as well as to display, print, delete, move, and modify jobs saved in the personal box.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



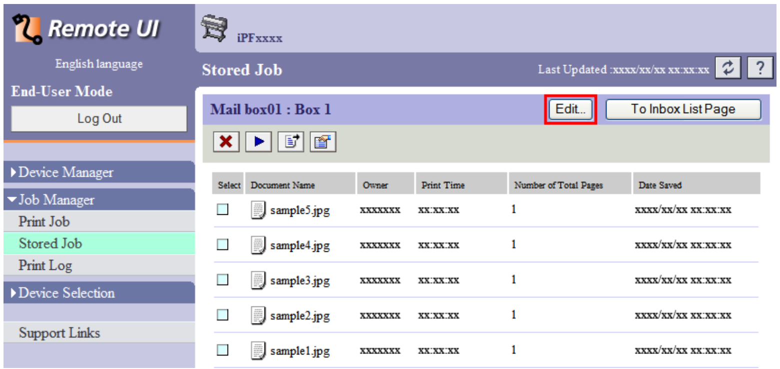
Note

- By default, no passwords are set for personal boxes.
- A password cannot be set for the shared mailbox.
- Enter a four-digit number as the password, in the range 0001–9999.
- Even if you have set passwords, they are not required to access personal boxes in Administrator Mode in RemoteUI.

Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the personal box.

2. Click **Edit**.



Stored Job

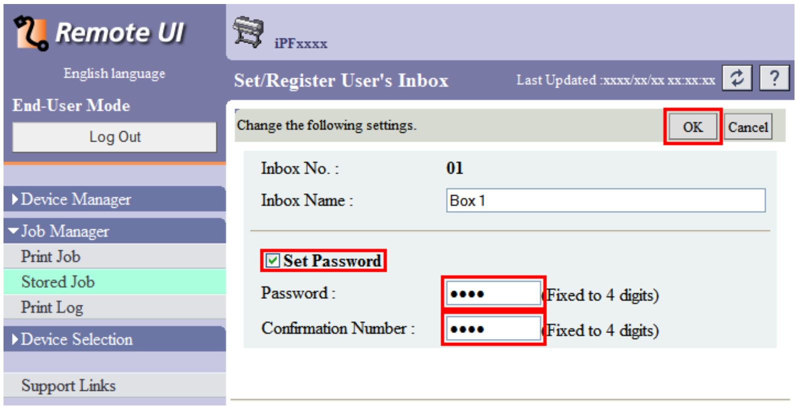
Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Mail box01 : Box 1

Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

   - **Set Password**
     Select the check box.
   - **Password**
     Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
   - **Confirmation Number**
     Re-enter the password to confirm it.



Set/Register User's Inbox

Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Change the following settings.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox Name : Box 1

☑ Set Password

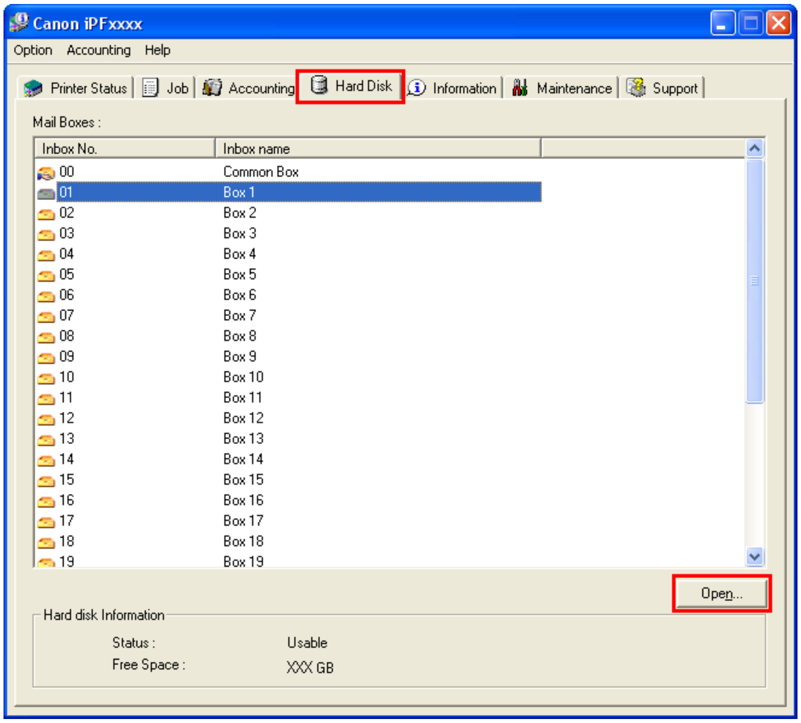
Password : •••• (Fixed to 4 digits)

Confirmation Number : •••• (Fixed to 4 digits)

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.



Mail Boxes :

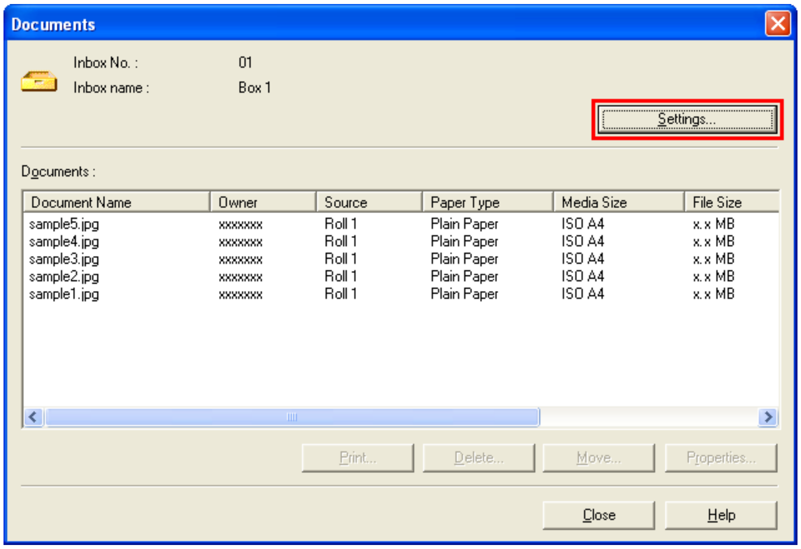
Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

Hard disk Information

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



Inbox No. : 01

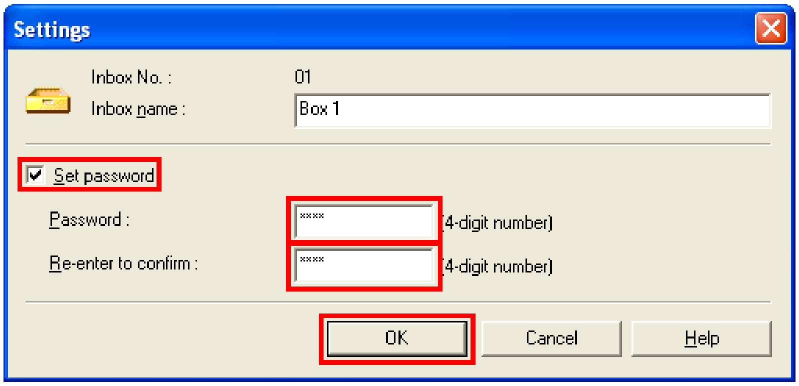
Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- **Set password**
  Select the check box.
- **Password**
  Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
- **Re-enter to confirm**
  Re-enter the password to confirm it.



Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

☑ Set password

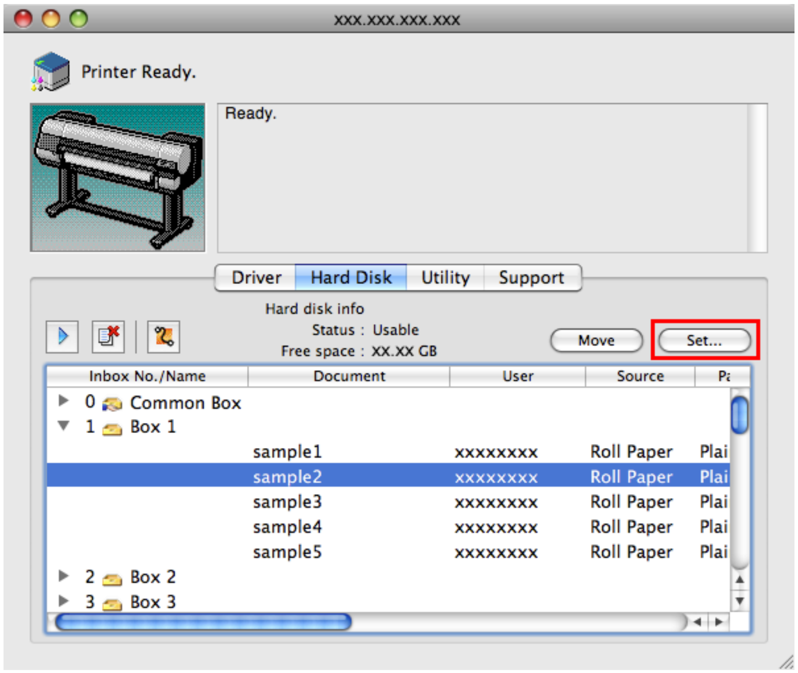
Password : **** (4-digit number)

Re-enter to confirm : **** (4-digit number)

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

1. On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**. Select a saved job in the list and click **Set**.

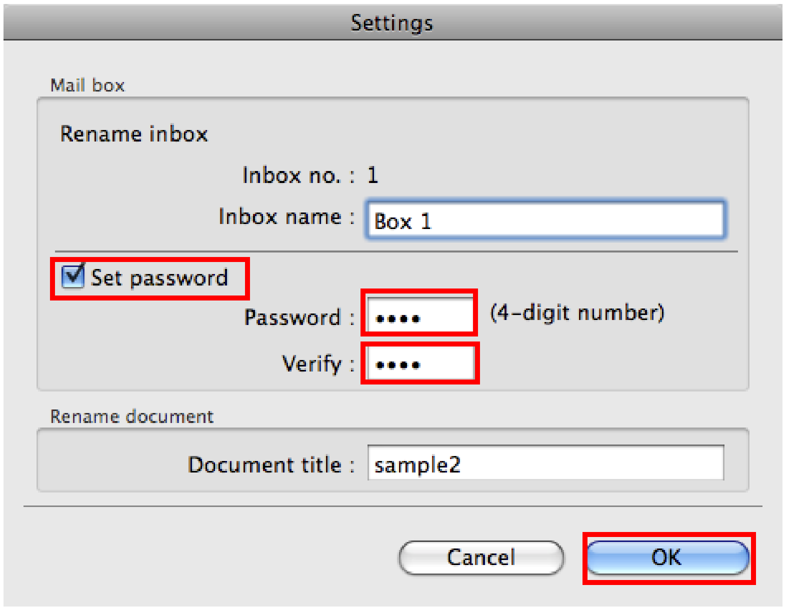


Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

2. In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- **Set password**
  Select the check box.
- **Password**
  Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
- **Verify**
  Re-enter the password to confirm it.



Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
☑ Set password
Password : •••• (4-digit number)
Verify : ••••
Document title : sample2

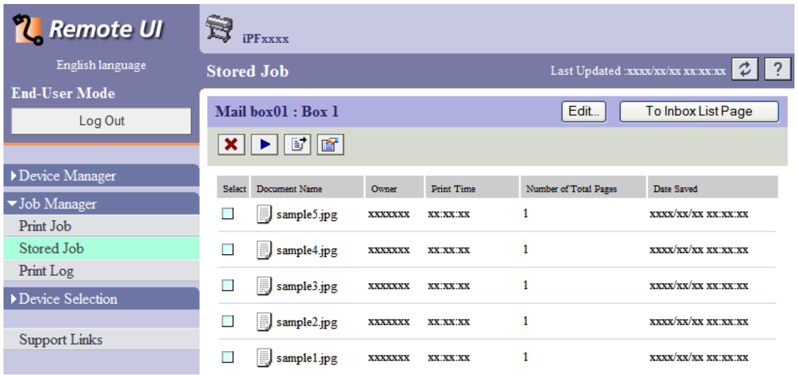
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Naming Personal Boxes

For easier identification, you can assign names to personal boxes.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the personal box.

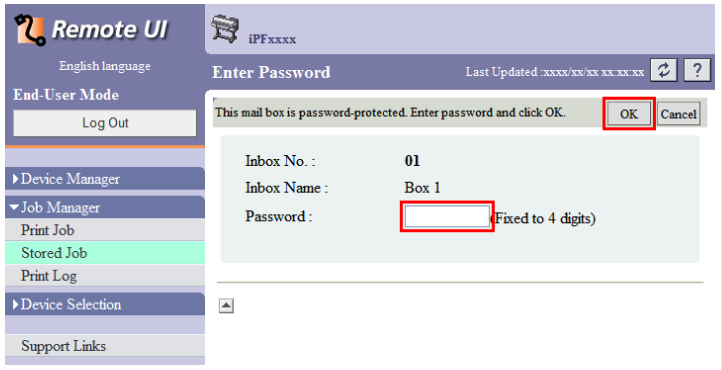


Mail box01 : Box 1

Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Note

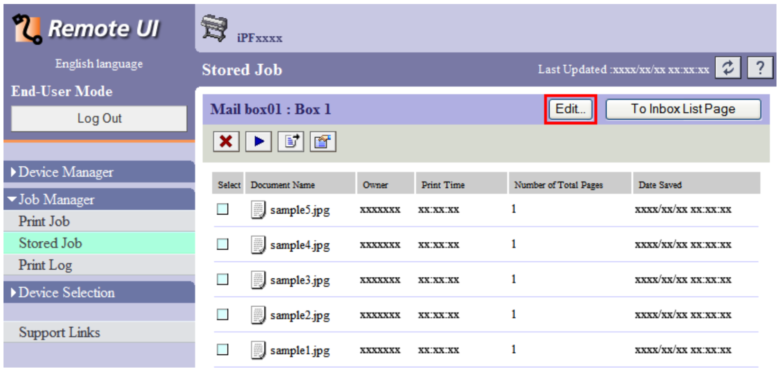
- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.



This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

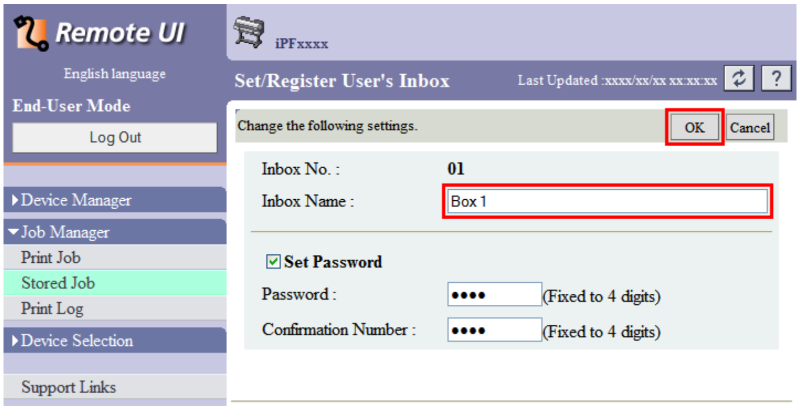
2. Click **Edit**.



Mail box01 : Box 1

Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3. In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, enter the name in **Inbox Name** and click **OK**.



Change the following settings.

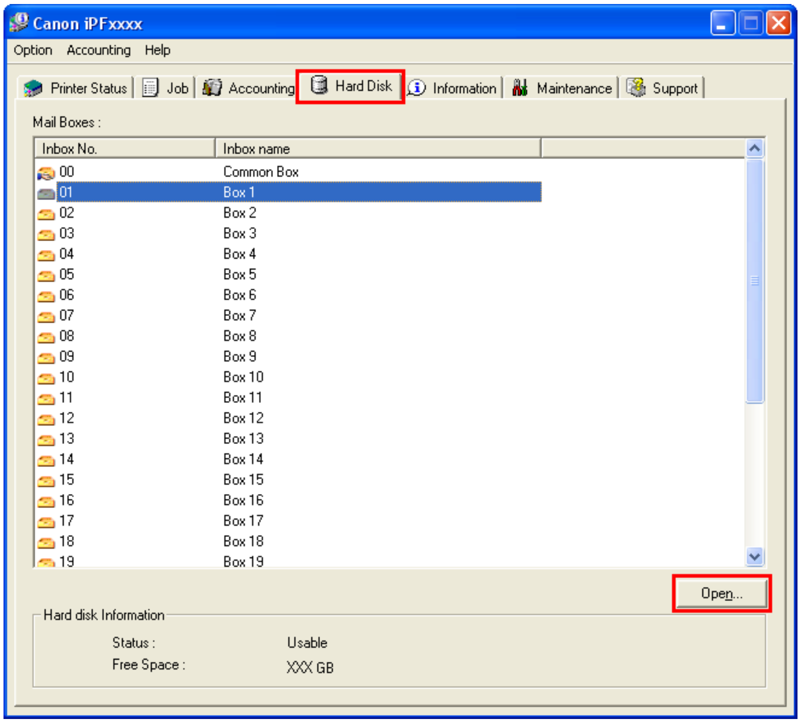
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1

☑ Set Password
Password : •••• (Fixed to 4 digits)
Confirmation Number : •••• (Fixed to 4 digits)

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.



Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

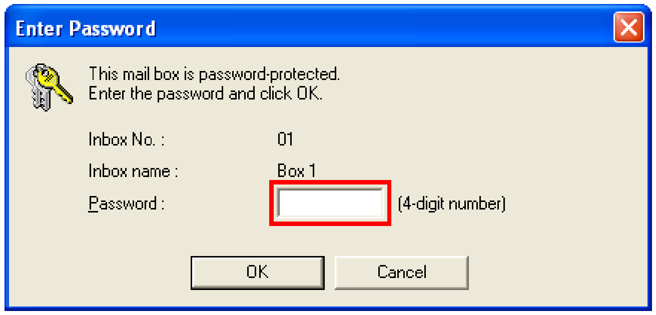
Hard disk Information

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.



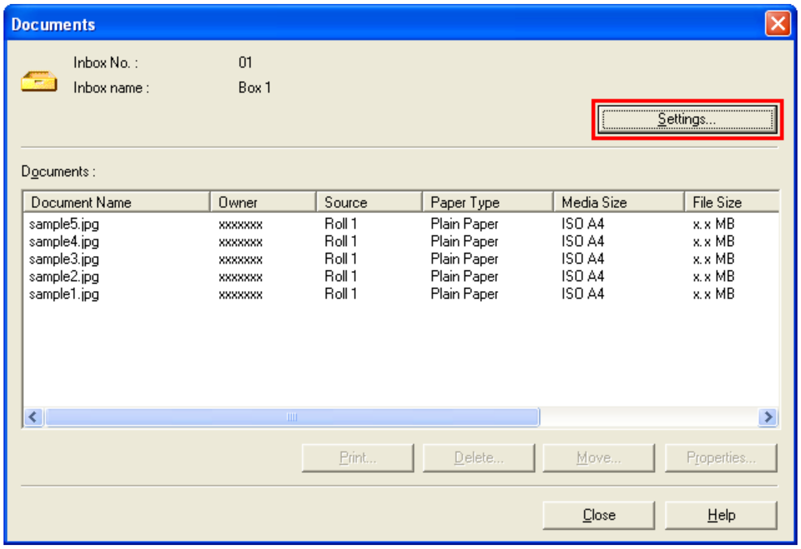
This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.



Documents

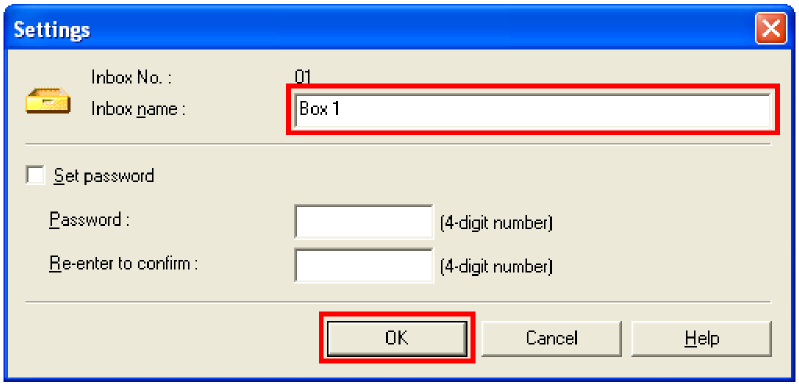
Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.



Settings

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

☐ Set password

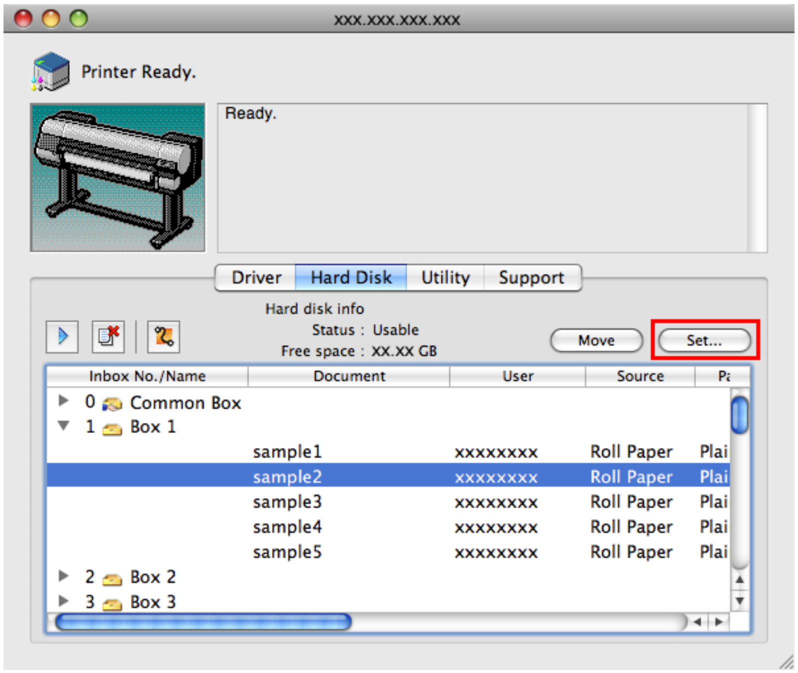
Password : (4-digit number)

Re-enter to confirm : (4-digit number)

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./Name**. Select a saved job in the list and click **Set**.

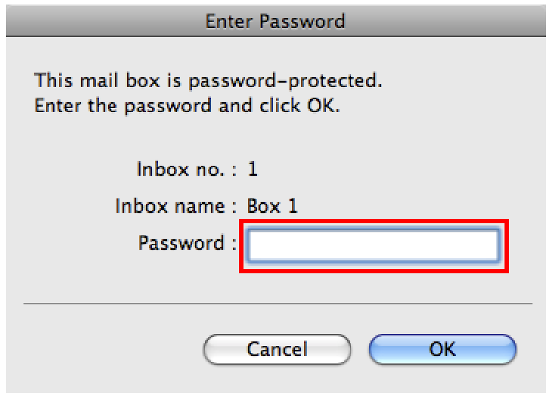


Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

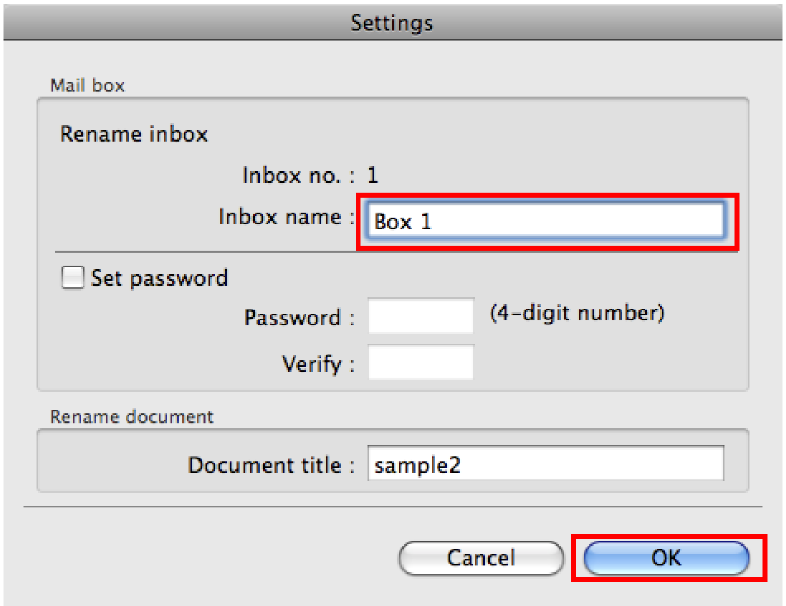
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.



This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

2. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.



Settings

Mail box

Rename inbox

Inbox no. : 1

Inbox name : Box 1

☐ Set password

Password : (4-digit number)

Verify :

Rename document

Document title : sample2

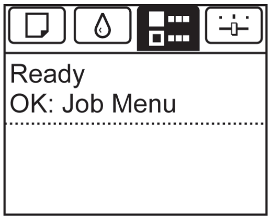
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be listed by box as follows.
These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab (▦).



Ready
OK: Job Menu

> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

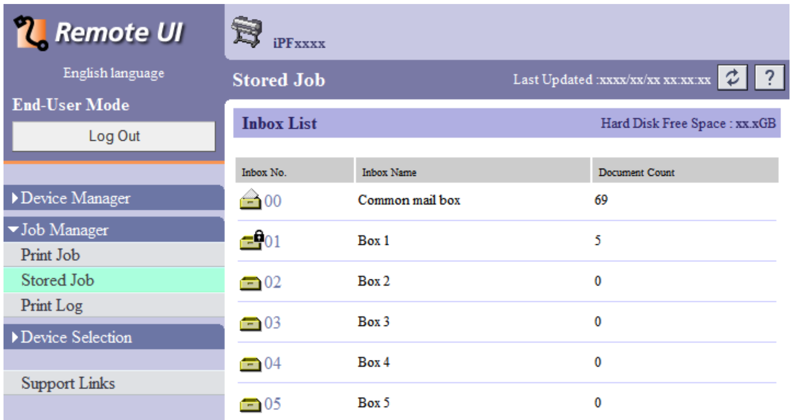
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

> Note
>
> - Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

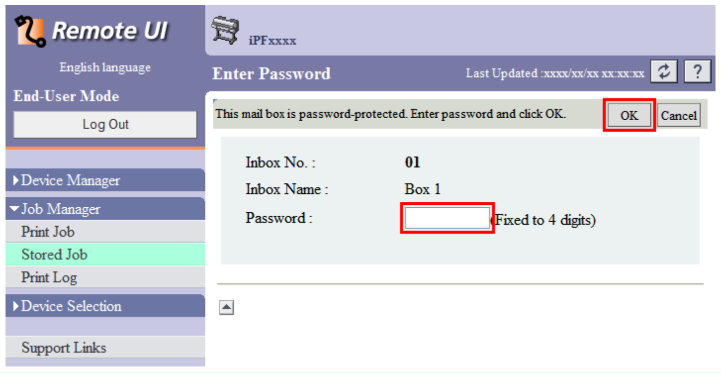
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

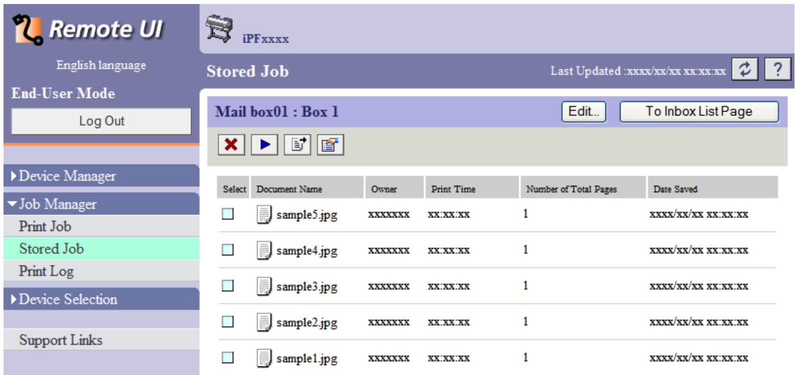
On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

> Note
>
> - Enter a password if one has been set.
>
> 
>
>
> This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.
>
> Inbox No. : 01
> Inbox Name : Box 1
> Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

Jobs saved in the box are listed.

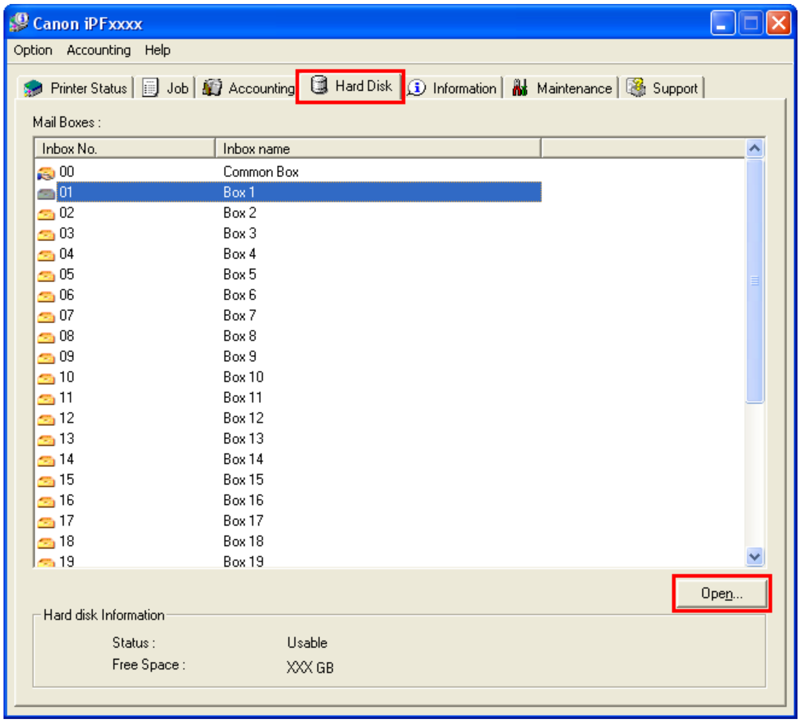


Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

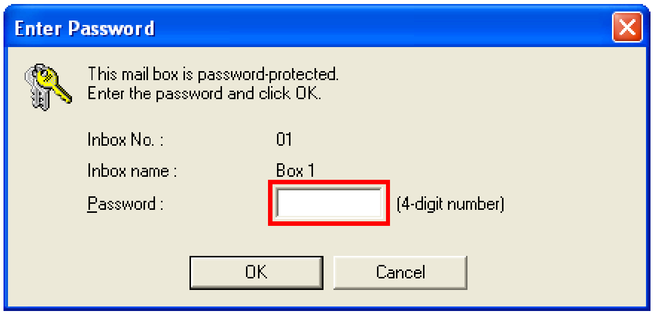
Hard disk Information

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



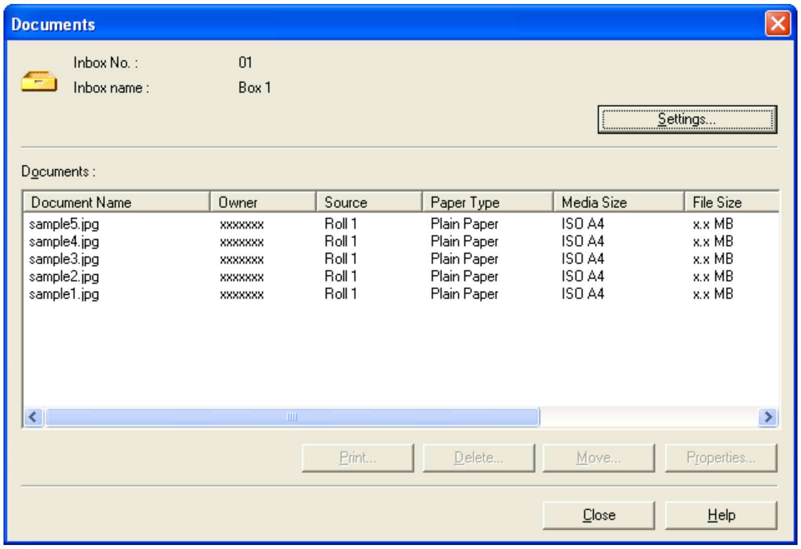
This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Password : (4-digit number)

Jobs saved in that box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.



Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

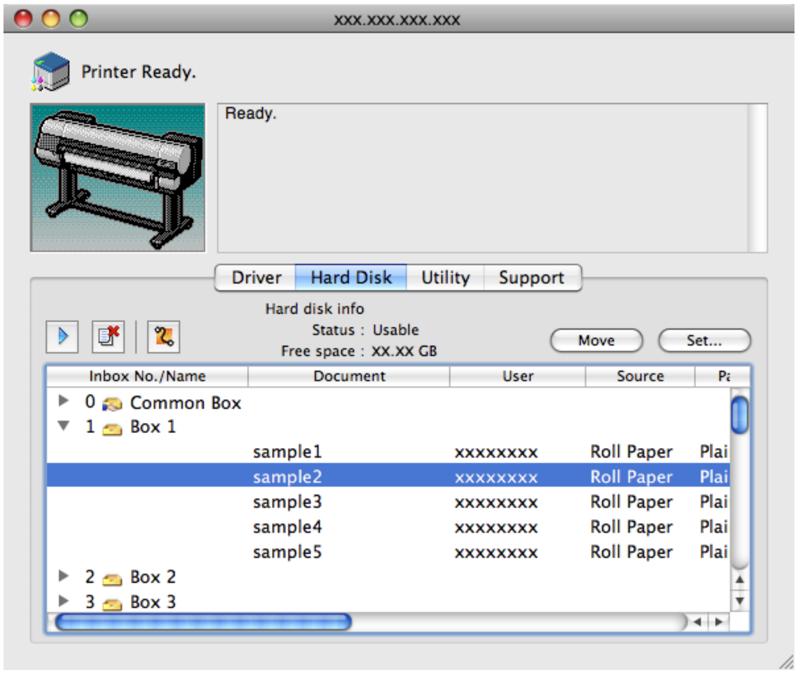
Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ by **Inbox No./Name**.



Printer Ready.

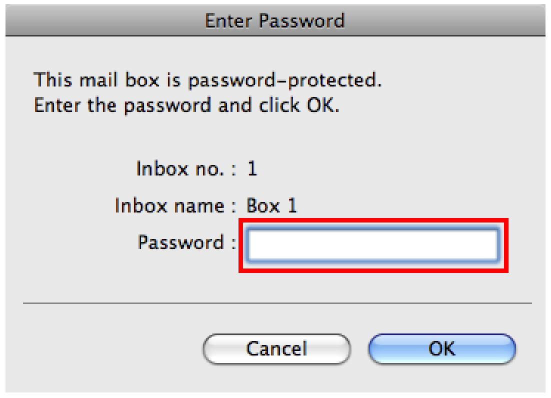
Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.



Enter Password

This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

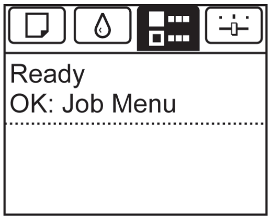
Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

The list of print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be printed by box as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ().



Ready
OK: Job Menu

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stored Job**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the box number (in the range 00–29), and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set, and then press the **OK** button.

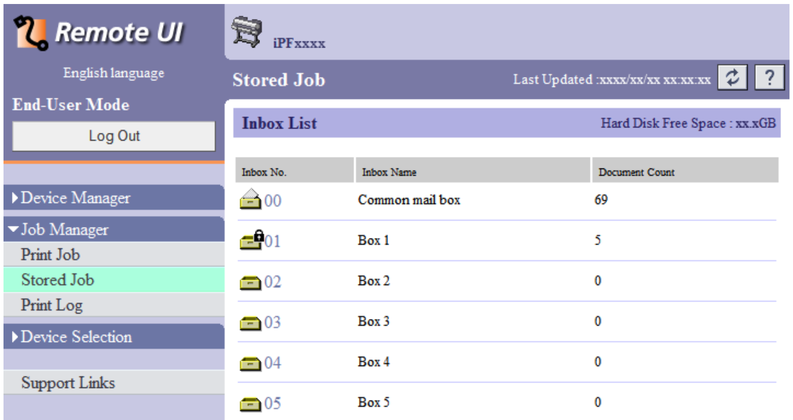
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

Displaying Details of Saved Jobs

Details of print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be displayed as follows.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



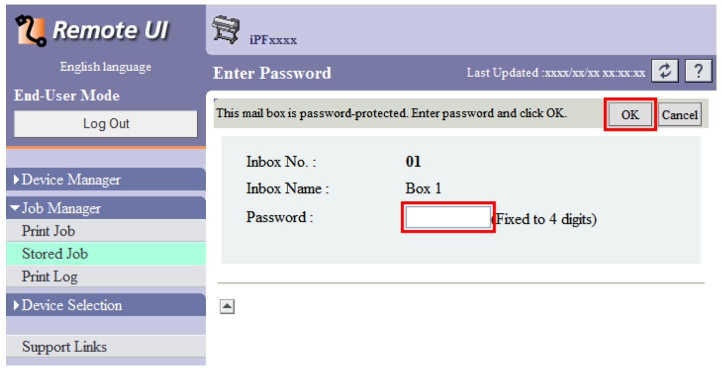
Stored Job Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Inbox List Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB

Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

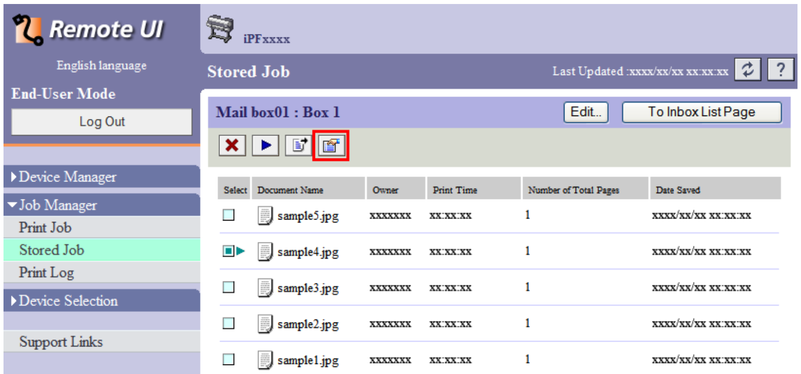


Enter Password Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

2. Select the print job and click **Details**.

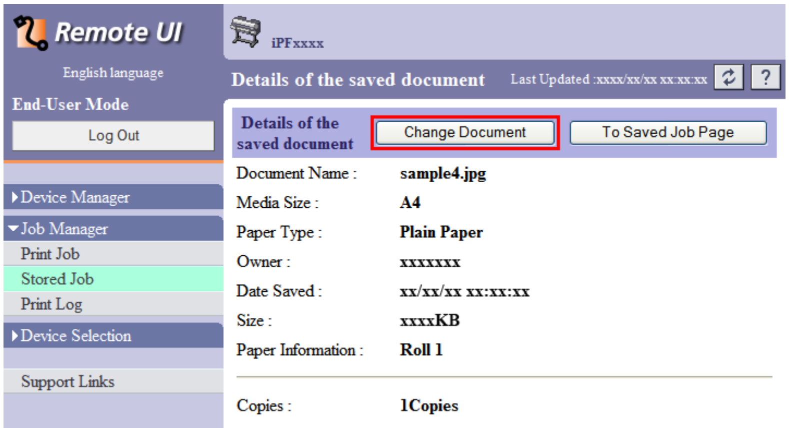


Stored Job Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Mail box01 : Box 1

Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☑	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.

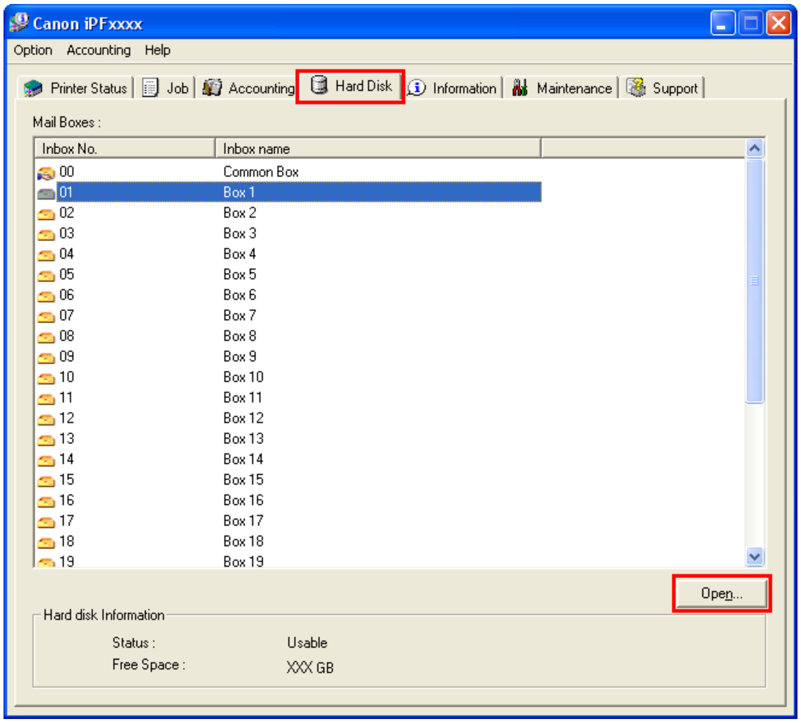


Document Name : sample4.jpg
Media Size : A4
Paper Type : Plain Paper
Owner : xxxxxxx
Date Saved : xx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Size : xxxxKB
Paper Information : Roll 1
Copies : 1Copies

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



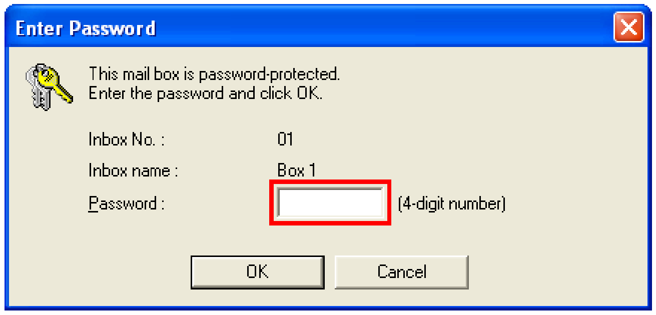
Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

Hard disk Information
Status : Usable
Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.

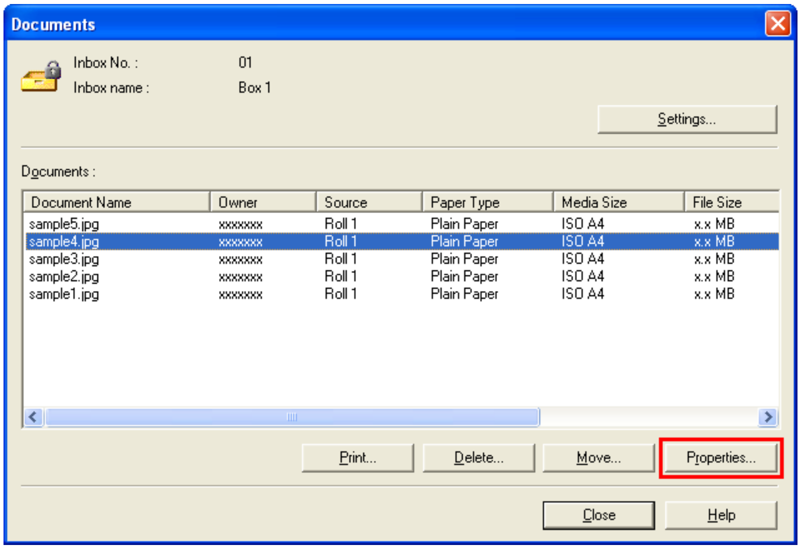


Enter Password

This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1
Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Properties**.



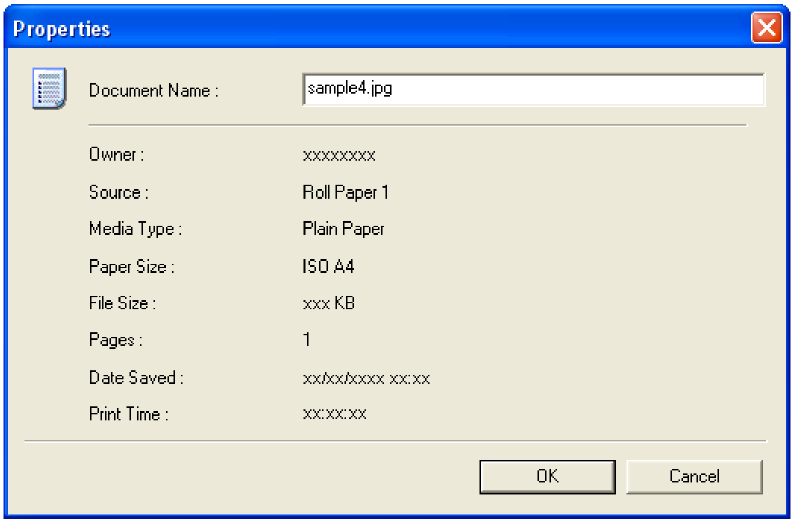
Documents

Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

The **Properties** dialog box is displayed.



Properties

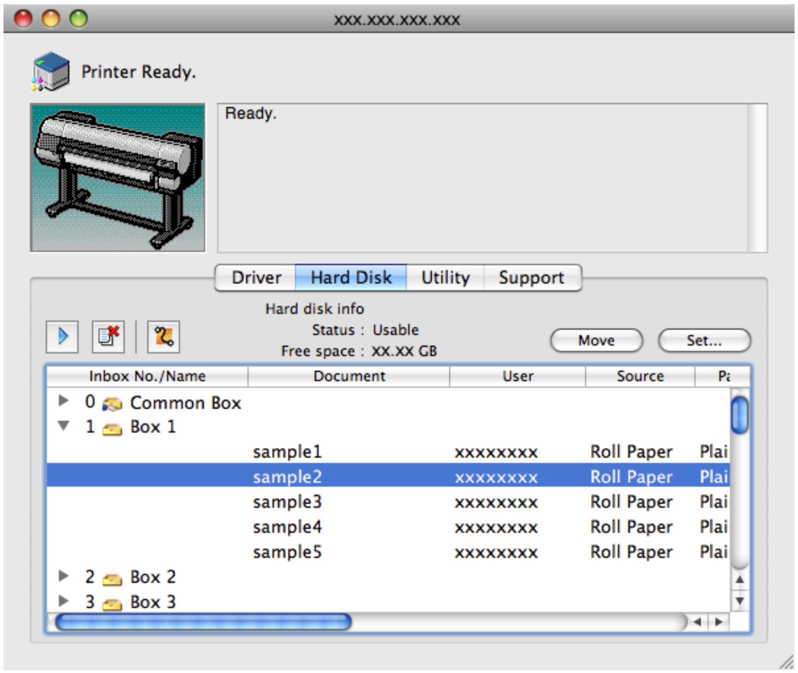
Document Name : sample4.jpg

Owner : xxxxxxxx
Source : Roll Paper 1
Media Type : Plain Paper
Paper Size : ISO A4
File Size : xxx KB
Pages : 1
Date Saved : xx/xx/xxxx xx:xx
Print Time : xx:xx:xx

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./Name**.



Printer Ready.

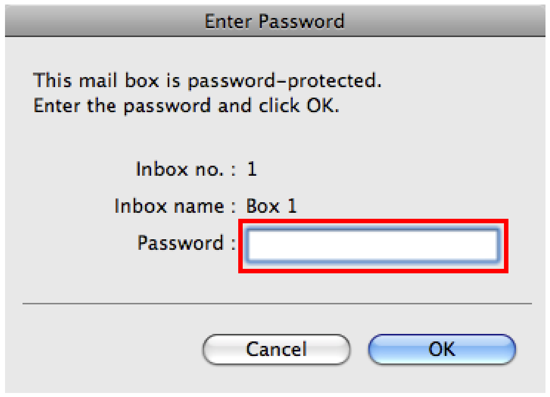
Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.



This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

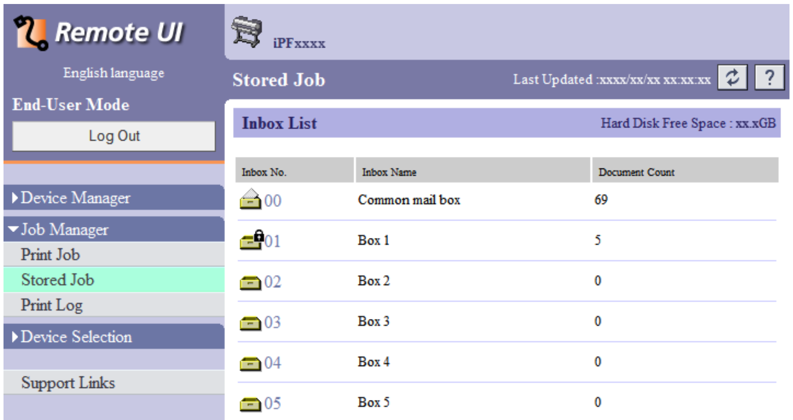
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Renaming Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be renamed as follows.
This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

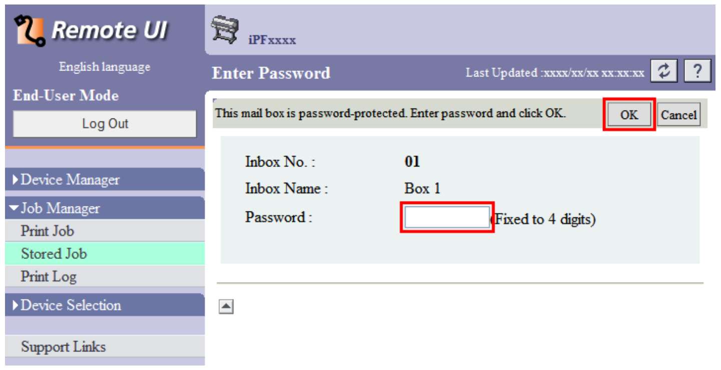
1. On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.



Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

Note

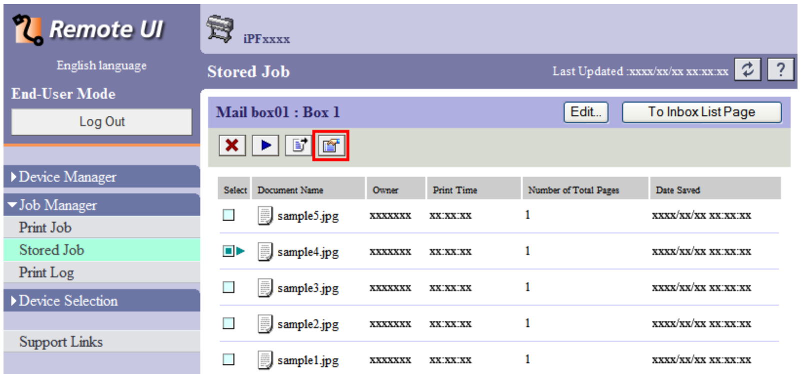
- Enter a password if one has been set.



This mail box is password-protected. Enter password and click OK.

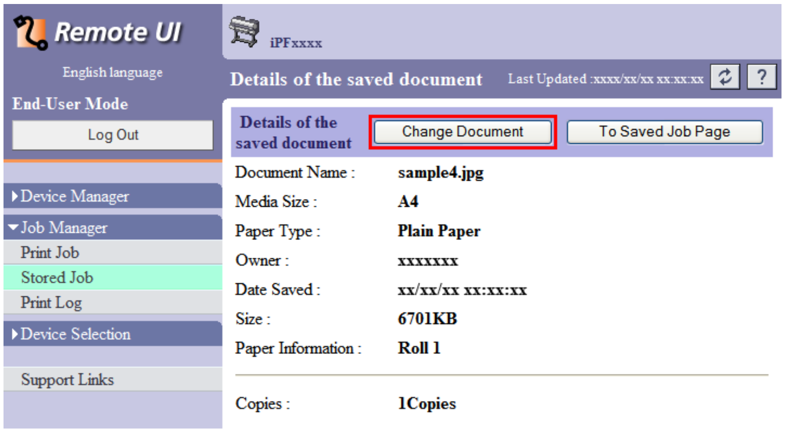
Inbox No. : 01
Inbox Name : Box 1
Password : (Fixed to 4 digits)

2. Select the print job and click **Details**.



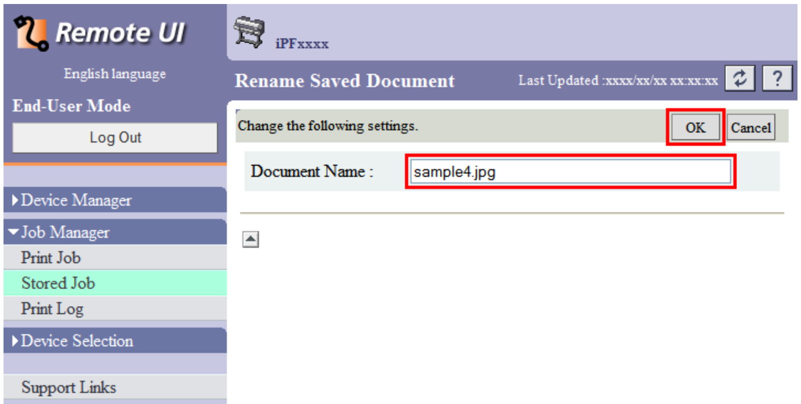
Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
☐	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☑	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
☐	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3. On the **Details of the saved document** page, click **Change Document**.



Document Name : **sample4.jpg**
Media Size : **A4**
Paper Type : **Plain Paper**
Owner : **xxxxxxx**
Date Saved : **xx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx**
Size : **6701KB**
Paper Information : **Roll 1**
Copies : **1Copies**

4. In the **Rename Saved Document** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.

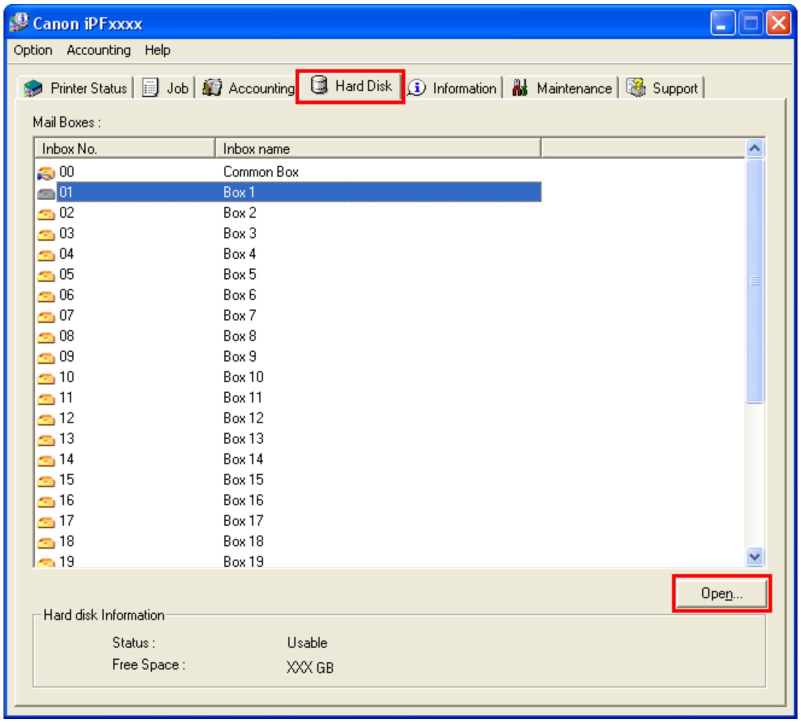


Change the following settings.
Document Name : sample4.jpg

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1. On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.



Mail Boxes :

Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

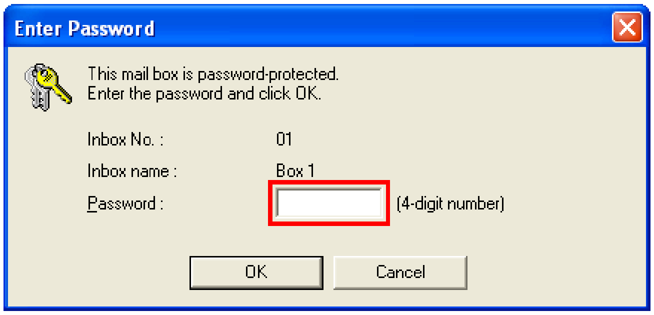
Hard disk Information

Status : Usable

Free Space : XXX GB

Note

- Enter a password if one has been set.



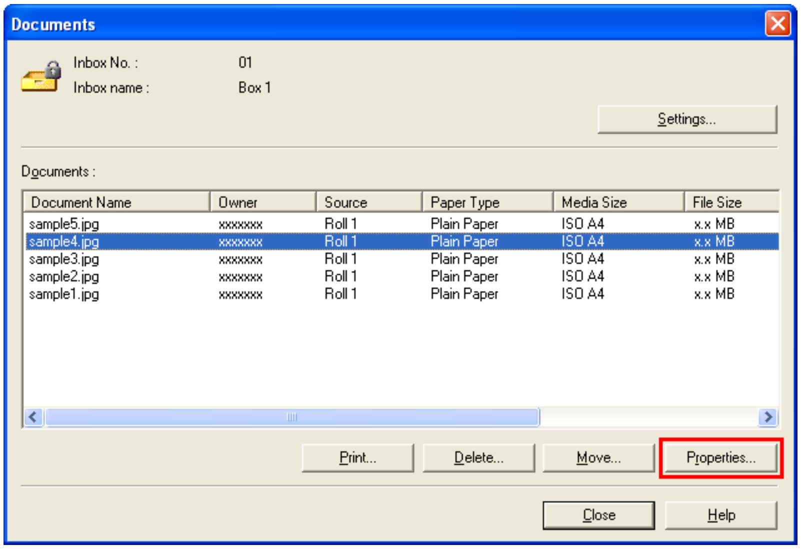
This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox No. : 01

Inbox name : Box 1

Password : (4-digit number)

2. In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Properties**.

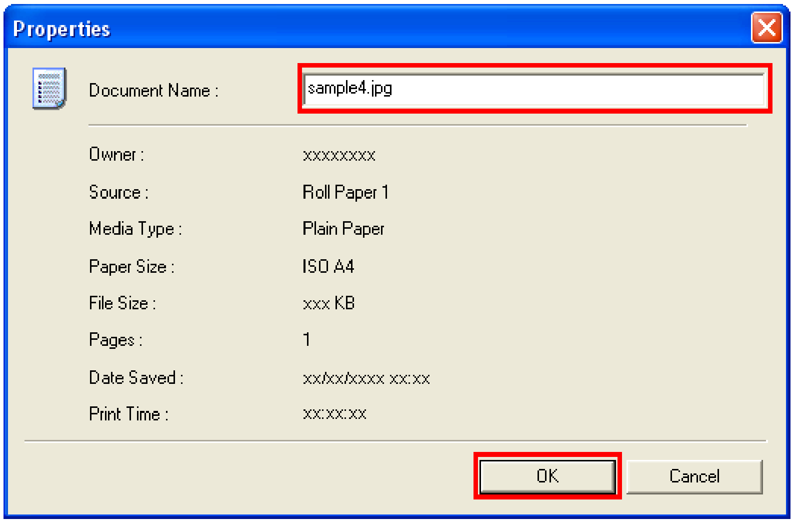


Inbox No. : 01
Inbox name : Box 1

Documents :

Document Name	Owner	Source	Paper Type	Media Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	Roll 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB

3. In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the new name and click **OK**.

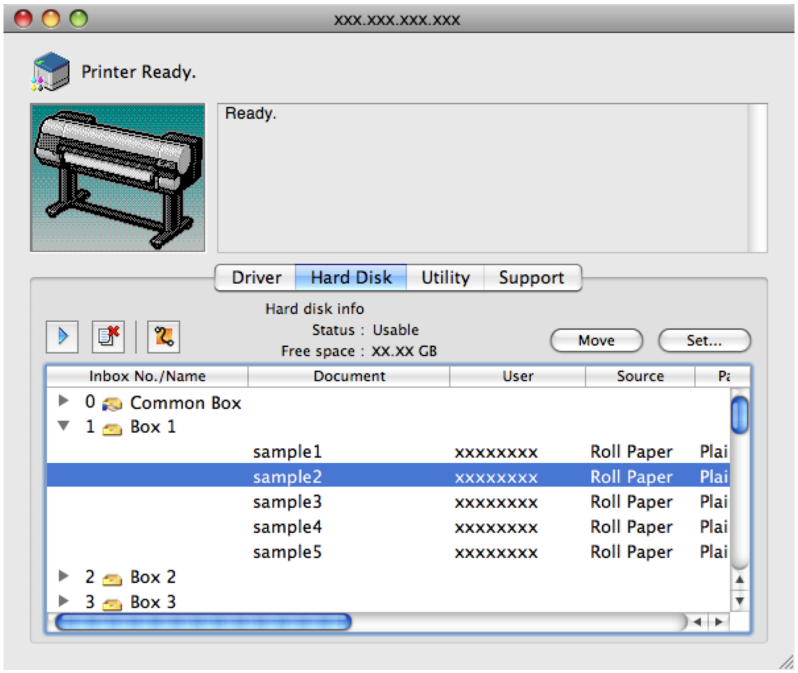


Document Name : sample4.jpg
Owner : xxxxxxxx
Source : Roll Paper 1
Media Type : Plain Paper
Paper Size : ISO A4
File Size : xxx KB
Pages : 1
Date Saved : xx/xx/xxxx xx:xx
Print Time : xx:xx:xx

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

1. In the **Hard Disk** pane, click ▶ next to **Inbox No./Name**.



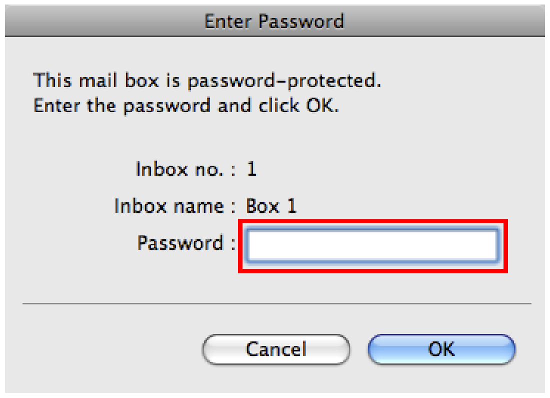
Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
▶ 0 Common Box				
▼ 1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 Box 2				
▶ 3 Box 3				

Note

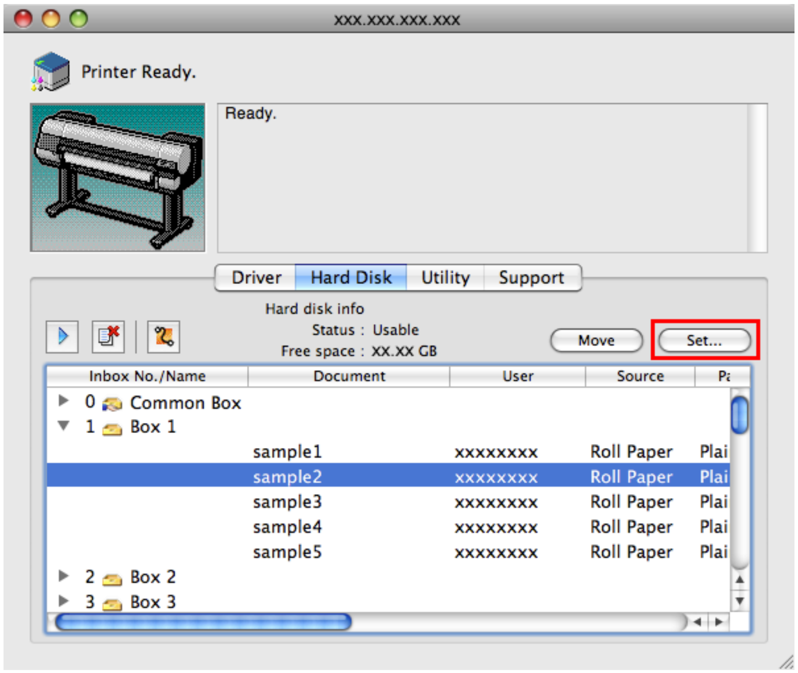
- Enter a password if one has been set.
  The password is a four-digit number.



This mail box is password-protected.
Enter the password and click OK.

Inbox no. : 1
Inbox name : Box 1
Password :

2. Select the print job and click **Set**.



xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

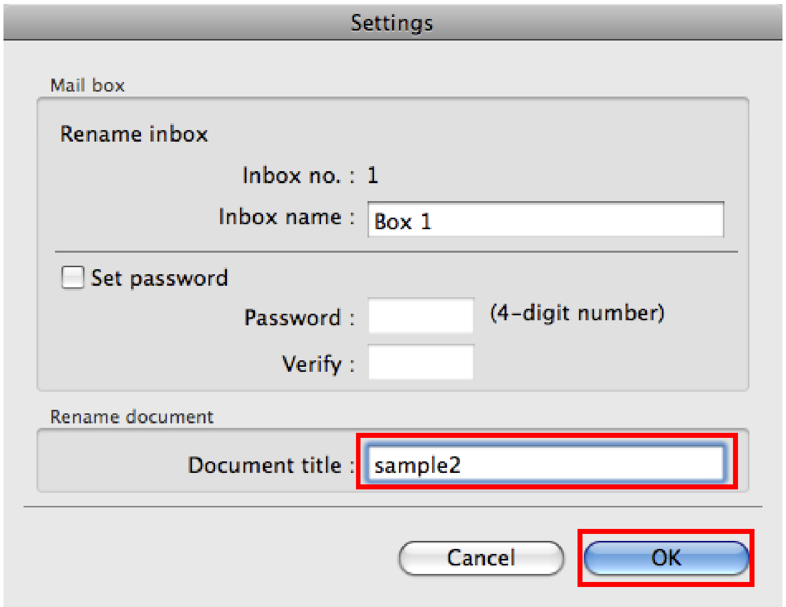
Printer Ready.

Ready.

Hard disk info
Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
0 Common Box				
1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
2 Box 2				
3 Box 3				

3. In the **Settings** dialog box, enter the new name and click **OK**.



Settings

Mail box

Rename inbox

Inbox no. : 1

Inbox name : Box 1

☐ Set password

Password : (4-digit number)

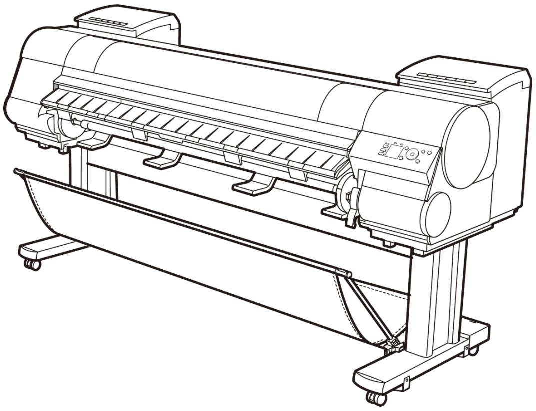
Verify :

Rename document

Document title : sample2

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Handling Paper



Paper

Types of Paper

The following types of paper are supported by the printer. For details on the paper supported by the printer, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)

- Plain Paper
- Coated Paper
- Photo Paper
- Glossy Paper
- Proofing Paper
- CAD-dedicated Paper Etc.

The following content is described in the Paper Reference Guide.

- Types of paper
- Paper handling
- Paper product specifications
- Use precautions
- Setting of printer driver, control panel etc.

- Paper Reference Guide display method

  You can display the Paper Reference Guide from [imagePROGRAF Support Information]. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide .") →P.777

- Method of Updating Supported Paper

  Paper supported by the printer may be newly released on the imagePROGRAF website.

  To use newly released paper, register the latest paper information on the printer with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") →P.779

Important

- To install the Paper Reference Guide and register paper types applicable to your region on your printer even when not using the printer driver, install the Media Configuration Tool.
  For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see Media Configuration Tool →P.448 or Media Configuration Tool →P.677 .

Note

- To use paper not described in the Paper Reference Guide, configure the custom paper setting. (See "Adding Custom Paper.") →P.780

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: Up to 150 mm (6 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll Width	**Roll Paper Width** Setting in Printer Driver	Borderless Printing (*1 →P.775)
1117.6 mm (44.00 in)	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**	Yes
1066.8 mm (42.00 in)	**42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**	Yes
1030.0 mm (40.55 in)	**JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**	Yes
914.4 mm (36.00 in)	**36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**	Yes
841.0 mm (33.11 in)	**ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**	Yes
762.0 mm (30.00 in)	**30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**	No
728.0 mm (28.66 in)	**JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**	No
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	**24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	**ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**	Yes
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	**JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	**17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**	Yes
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	**ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**	No
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	**16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**	No
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	**14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**	Yes
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	**ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**	No
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	**10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**	Yes
Custom Paper Size	254.0 mm (10.00 in) to 1,118.0 mm (44.02 in)	

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO A0	841.0 × 1189.0 mm (33.11 × 46.81 in)
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A2+	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A3	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A3+	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A4	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO B0	1000.0 × 1414.0 mm (39.37 × 55.67 in)
ISO B1	707.0 × 1000.0 mm (27.83 × 39.37 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B0	1030.0 × 1456.0 mm (40.55 × 57.32 in)
JIS B1	728.0 × 1030.0 mm (28.66 × 40.55 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
34"x44"(ANSI E)	863.6 × 1117.6 mm (34.00 × 44.00 in)
28"x40"(ANSI F)	711.2 × 1016.0 mm (28.00 × 40.00 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17"(Ledger)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19"(Super B)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter(8.5"x11")	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal(8.5"x14")	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
36"x48"(ARCH E)	914.4 × 1219.2 mm (36.00 × 48.00 in)
30"x42"(ARCH E1)	762.0 × 1066.8 mm (30.00 × 42.00 in)
26"x38"(ARCH E2)	660.4 × 965.2 mm (26.00 × 38.00 in)
27"x39"(ARCH E3)	685.8 × 990.6 mm (27.00 × 39.00 in)
24"x36"(ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24"(ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18"(ARCH B)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)
9"x12"(ARCH A)	228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C0	917.0 × 1296.0 mm (36.10 × 51.02 in)
DIN C1	648.0 × 917.0 mm (25.51 × 36.10 in)
DIN C2	458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)
DIN C3	324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4	229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)
20"x24"	508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"	457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"	355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"	304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"	254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"	254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
8"x10"	203.2 × 254.0 mm (8.00 × 10.00 in)

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
US Photo 16"x20"	406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
Poster 30"x40"	762.0 × 1016.0 mm (30.00 × 40.00 in)
Poster 42"x60"	1066.8 × 1524.0 mm (42.00 × 60.00 in)
Poster 44"x62"	1117.6 × 1574.8 mm (44.00 × 62.00 in)
13"x22"	329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	203.2 × 203.2 mm (8.00 × 8.00 in) to 1118.0 × 1600.0 mm (44.02 × 62.99 in)

Note

- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes." →P.131
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Displaying the Paper Reference Guide

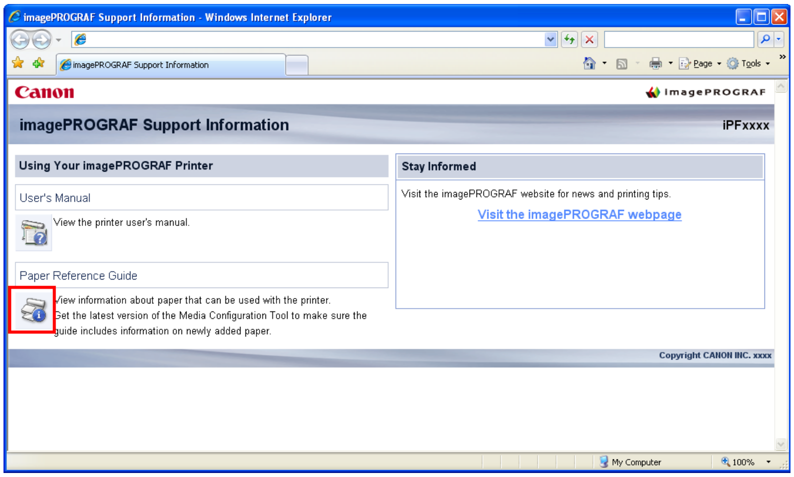
The Paper Reference Guide can be accessed from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. Follow these instructions, as appropriate for your operating system.

- Windows

1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.


imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer
imagePROGRAF Support Information
Page
Tools
Canon
imagePROGRAF
imagePROGRAF Support Information
iPFxxxx
Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer
User's Manual
Paper Reference Guide
Stay Informed
Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage
My Computer
100%

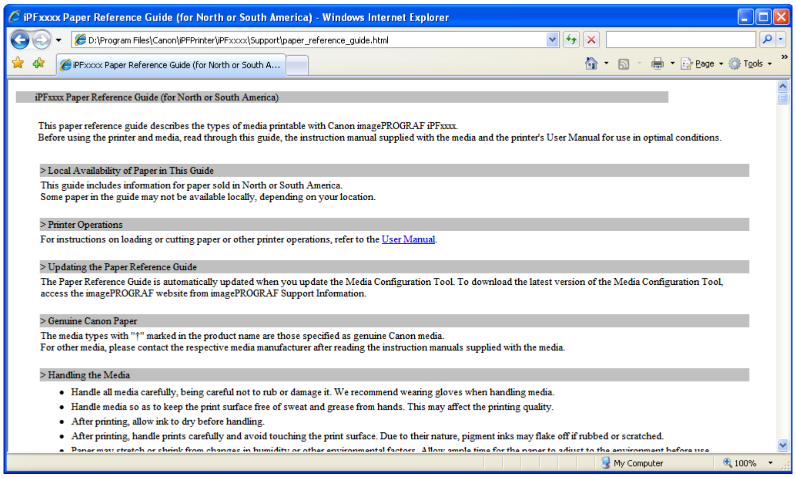
View the printer user's manual.

View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.

Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.

Copyright CANON INC. xxxx

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America) - Windows Internet Explorer
D:\Program Files\Canon\iPFPrinter\iPFxxxx\Support\paper_reference_guide.html
iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South A...
Page
Tools
My Computer
100%

iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)

This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.

> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide

This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.

> Printer Operations

For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.

> Updating the Paper Reference Guide

The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.

> Genuine Canon Paper

The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

> Handling the Media

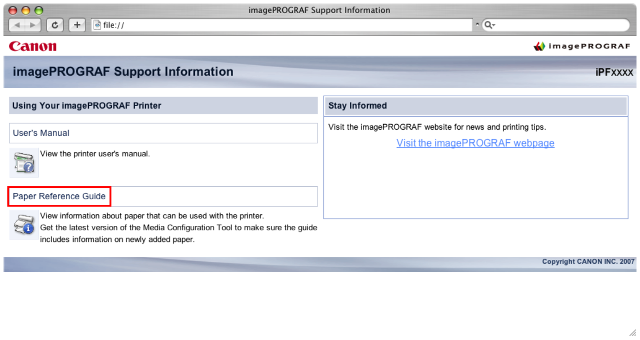
- Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
- Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
- After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
- After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.

- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.



imagePROGRAF Support Information

Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer

User's Manual

View the printer user's manual.

Paper Reference Guide

View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.

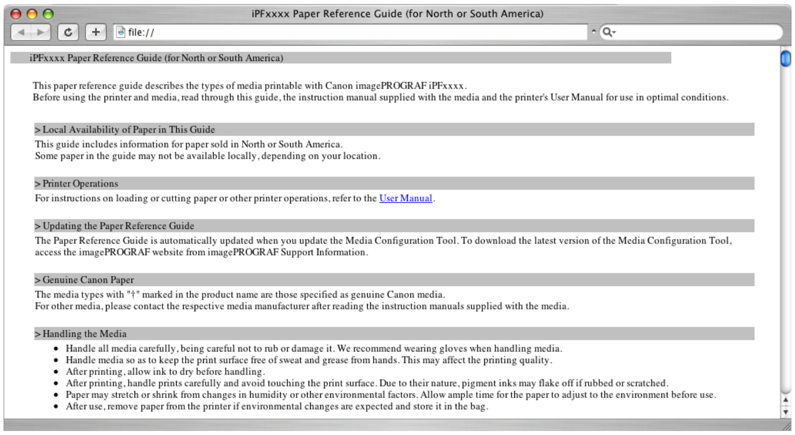
Stay Informed

Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.

Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage

Copyright CANON INC. 2007

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide (for North or South America)

This paper reference guide describes the types of media printable with Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx.
Before using the printer and media, read through this guide, the instruction manual supplied with the media and the printer's User Manual for use in optimal conditions.

> Local Availability of Paper in This Guide

This guide includes information for paper sold in North or South America.
Some paper in the guide may not be available locally, depending on your location.

> Printer Operations

For instructions on loading or cutting paper or other printer operations, refer to the User Manual.

> Updating the Paper Reference Guide

The Paper Reference Guide is automatically updated when you update the Media Configuration Tool. To download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool, access the imagePROGRAF website from imagePROGRAF Support Information.

> Genuine Canon Paper

The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media.
For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

> Handling the Media

- Handle all media carefully, being careful not to rub or damage it. We recommend wearing gloves when handling media.
- Handle media so as to keep the print surface free of sweat and grease from hands. This may affect the printing quality.
- After printing, allow ink to dry before handling.
- After printing, handle prints carefully and avoid touching the print surface. Due to their nature, pigment inks may flake off if rubbed or scratched.
- Paper may stretch or shrink from changes in humidity or other environmental factors. Allow ample time for the paper to adjust to the environment before use.
- After use, remove paper from the printer if environmental changes are expected and store it in the bag.

Updating paper information

As for paper information of the Paper Reference Guide, printer Control Panel, and printer driver, you can update it to the latest information by downloading and installing the latest version of **Media Information File** (Media Information File) from the imagePROGRAF website.
Download the latest **Media Information File** (Media Information File) after accessing the imagePROGRAF-dedicated site from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. If you cannot download it, contact your Canon dealer.
For details on **Media Information File** (Media Information File), refer as follows.

- Media Configuration Tool →P.448 (Windows)
- Media Configuration Tool →P.677 (Macintosh)

Important

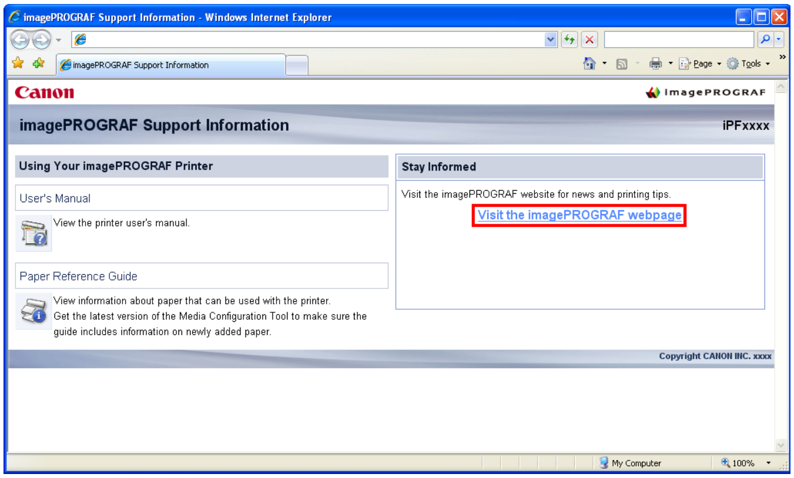
- When your version of Media Configuration Tool is older than the version released on the imagePROGRAF website, download and install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing **Media Information File**. If you do not install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing **Media Information File**, the latest paper information cannot be updated.

- Windows

1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



imagePROGRAF Support Information - Windows Internet Explorer

Canon

imagePROGRAF

imagePROGRAF Support Information

iPFxxxx

Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer

User's Manual

View the printer user's manual.

Paper Reference Guide

View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.

Stay Informed

Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.

Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage

Copyright CANON INC. xxxx

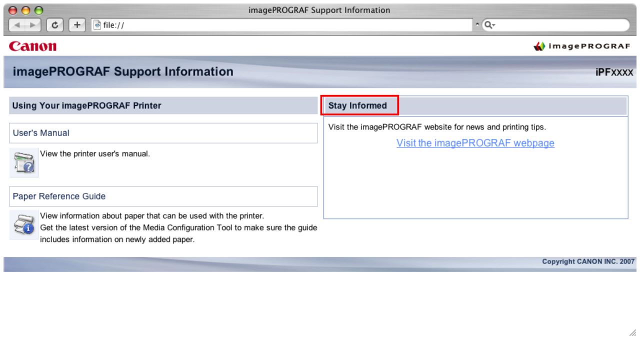
The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



imagePROGRAF Support Information

Canon

imagePROGRAF

imagePROGRAF Support Information

iPFxxxx

Using Your imagePROGRAF Printer

User's Manual

View the printer user's manual.

Paper Reference Guide

View information about paper that can be used with the printer.
Get the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool to make sure the guide includes information on newly added paper.

Stay Informed

Visit the imagePROGRAF website for news and printing tips.

Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage

Copyright CANON INC. 2007

The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Adding Custom Paper

Using Media Configuration Tool, you can add custom paper (paper not listed in the Paper Reference Guide) to the printer driver and control panel of the printer.
For details on Media Configuration Tool, refer as follows.

- Media Configuration Tool →P.448 (Windows)
- Media Configuration Tool →P.677 (Macintosh)

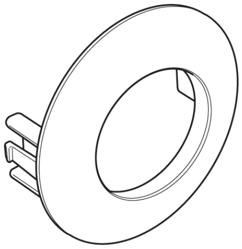
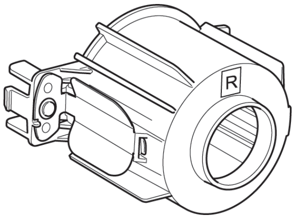
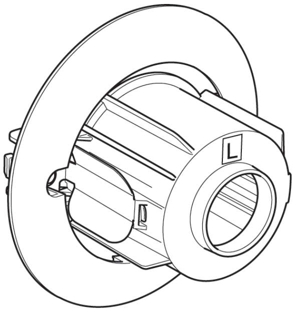
Important

- If a malfunction occurs in the printer resulting from the use of custom paper (paper not listed in the Paper Reference Guide), it is not guaranteed even within the warranty period.

Handling rolls

Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls

When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll.
Rolls have a two- or three-inch paper core. Use the correct attachment for the paper core. The printer comes equipped with the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment installed.

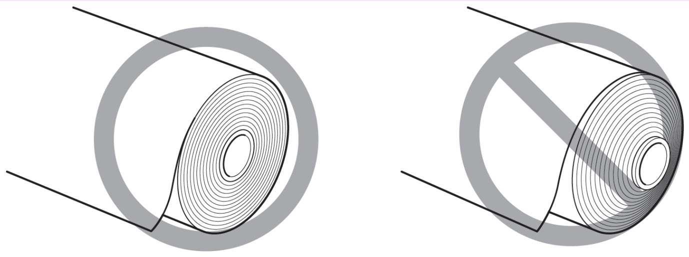
Using Rolls with a 2-inch Paper Core		Using Rolls with a 3-inch Paper Core	
Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side	Roll Holder Side	Holder Stopper Side
No Attachment Needed	2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

Caution

- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.

Important

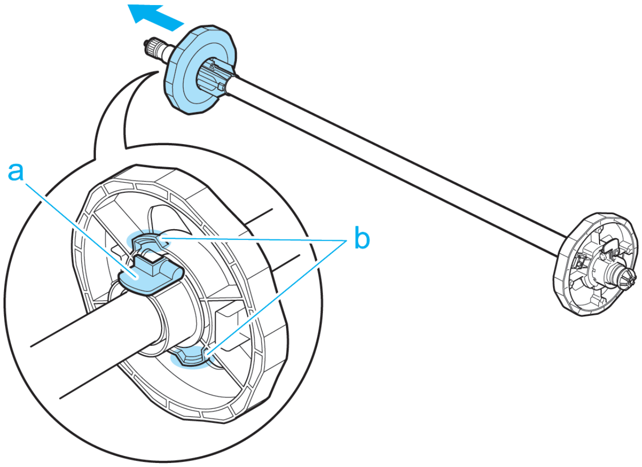
- When handling the roll, be careful not to soil the printing surface. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- Use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality. Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll. Misalignment may cause feeding problems.



Note

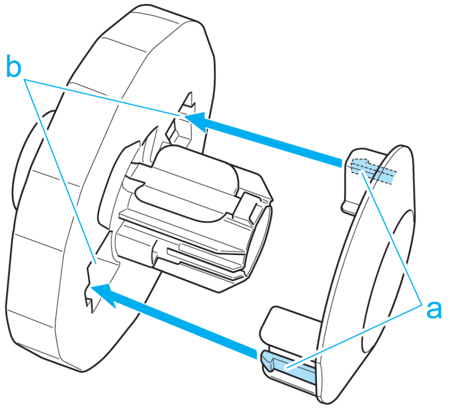
- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see **Paper Sizes** or the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775 (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
- To view instructions as you attach the Roll Holder, press the **Navigate** button. (See "How to View Instructions With Navigate.") →P.919

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.

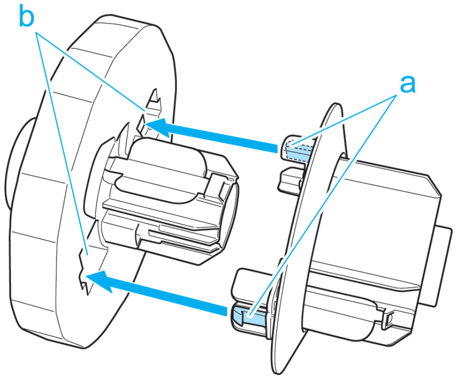
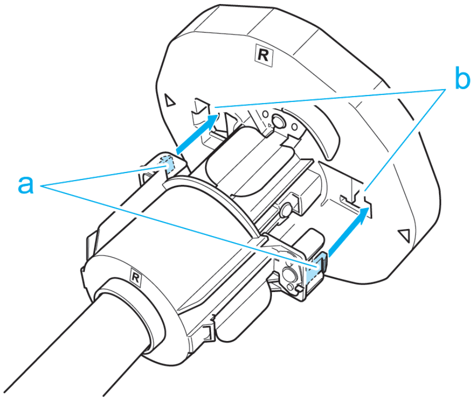


2. Insert the respective attachments for the roll paper core on the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper.

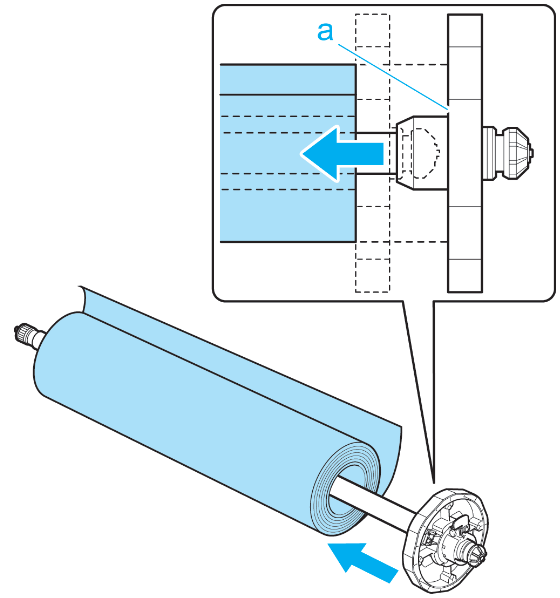
- Using rolls with a 2-inch paper core

Holder Stopper Side	Roll Holder Side
Align the tips (a) of the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.  	No attachment is needed.

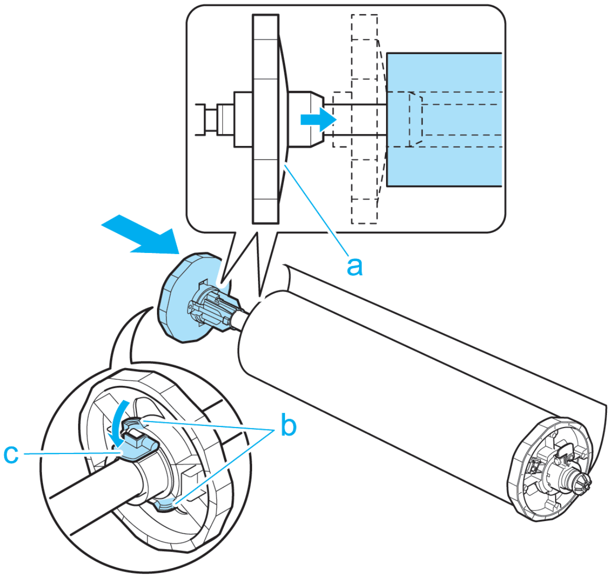
- Using rolls with a 3-inch paper core

Holder Stopper Side	Roll Holder Side
Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.  	Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 with the holes (b) of the Roll Holder and insert it firmly. 

3. With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the Roll Holder from the right of the roll. Insert it firmly until the roll touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder, leaving no gap.



4. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position shown (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it down toward the shaft side.



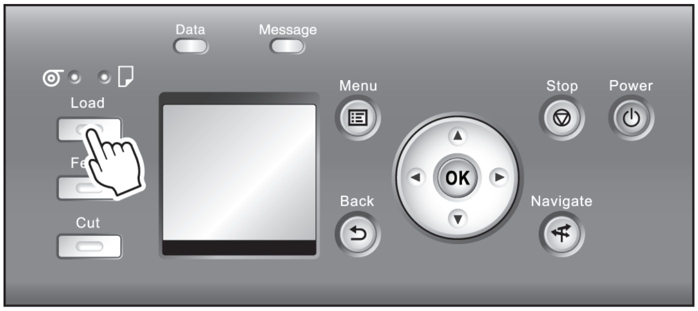
Loading Rolls in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.

Important

- Always load rolls when the printer is on. If the printer is off when you load a roll, the paper may not be advanced correctly when you turn the printer on.
- Before loading a roll, confirm whether the inside of the Top Cover or the Ejection Guide is soiled. If soiled, we recommend cleaning in advance. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

1. Press the **Load** button.

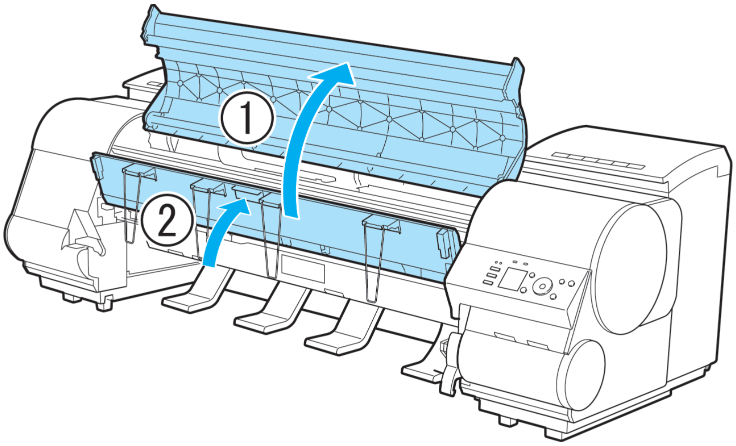


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

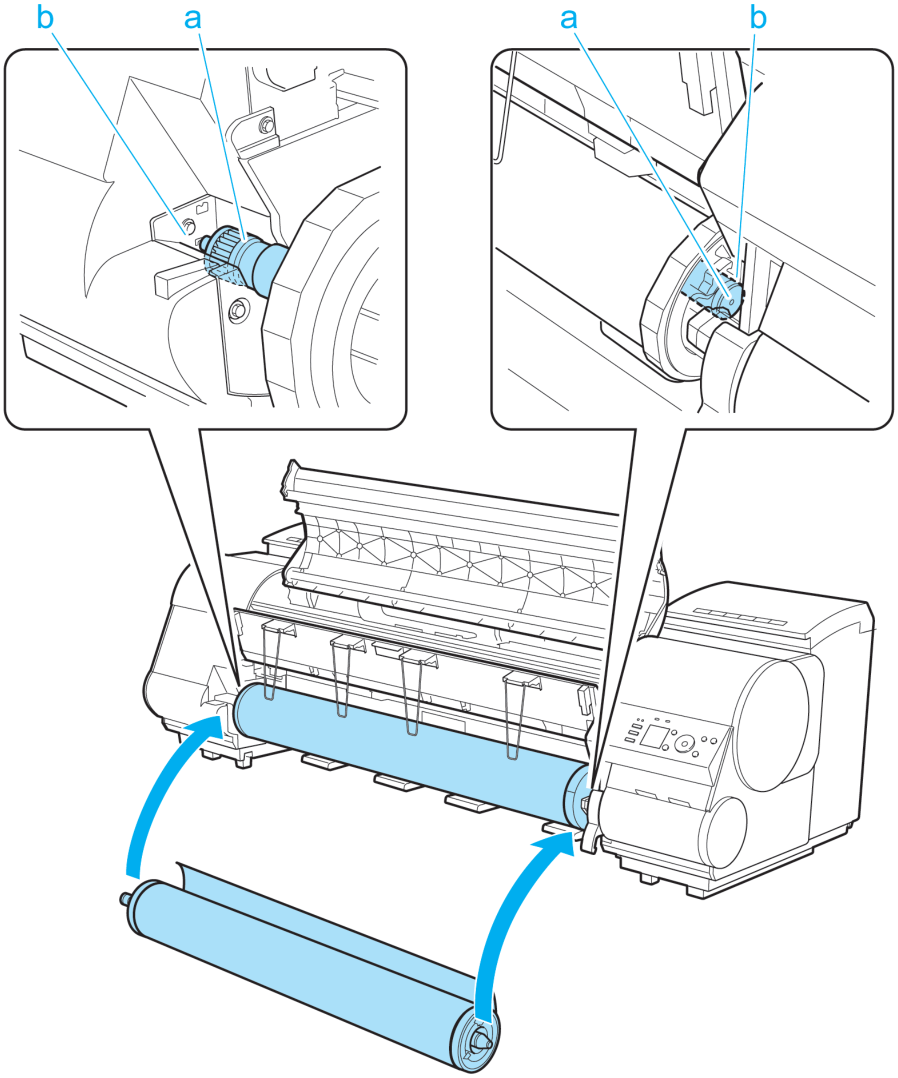
Note

- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

3. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



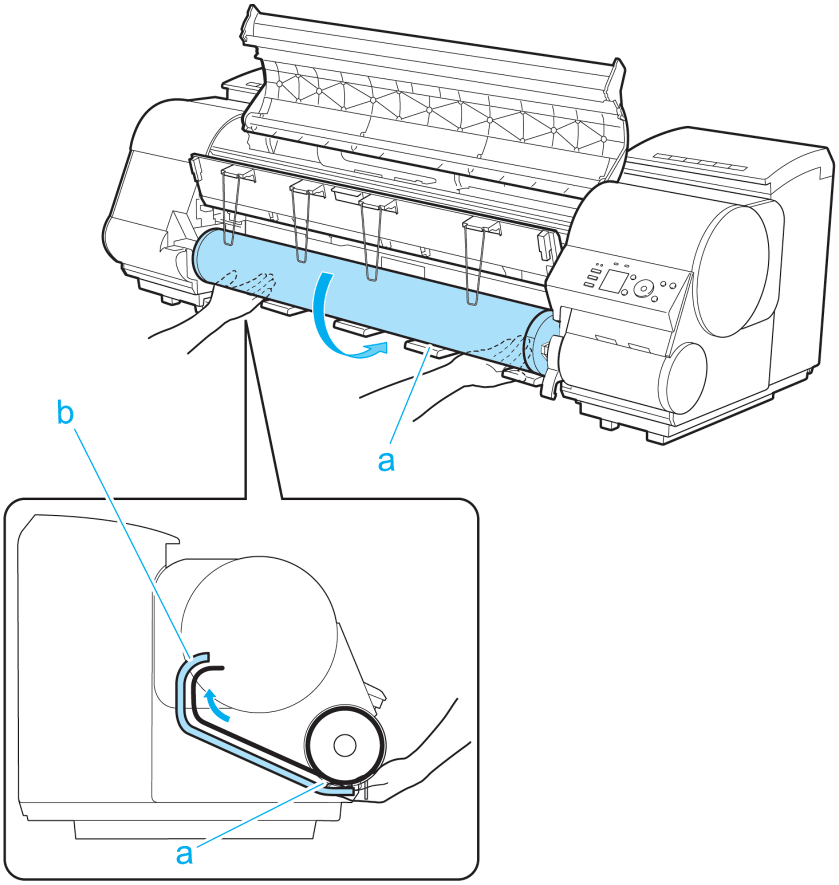
4. Holding the Roll Holder so that the side with the white gear faces the side of the Roll Holder Slot with a white gear, load the Roll Holder shaft (a) into the grooves (b) on both ends of the Roll Holder Slot, fully into the slot.



Caution

- Be careful not to drop the roll and hurt yourself when loading it.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Holder shaft (a) and the guide grooves (b) when loading rolls.

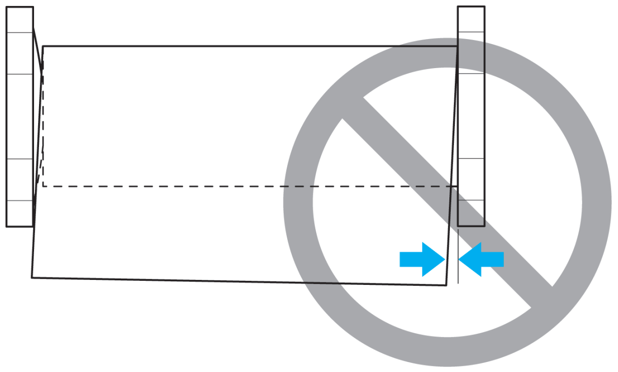
5. Pull out the roll evenly on both ends and insert it in the Paper Feed Slot (a). Advance the roll until it touches the Paper Retainer (b).



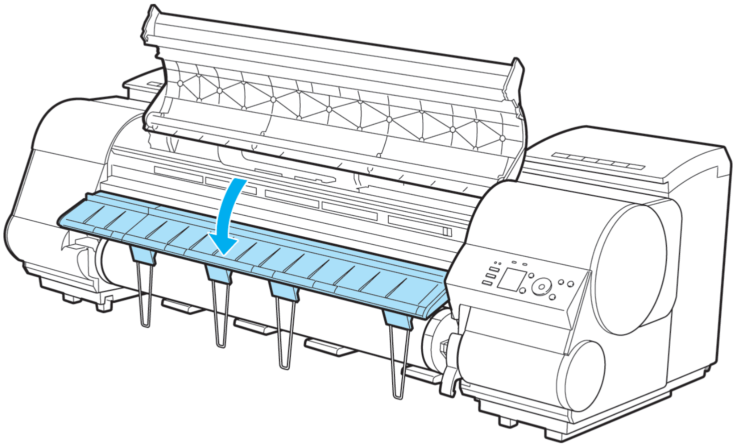
Once the roll reaches the Paper Retainer, it is automatically advanced over the Platen.

Important

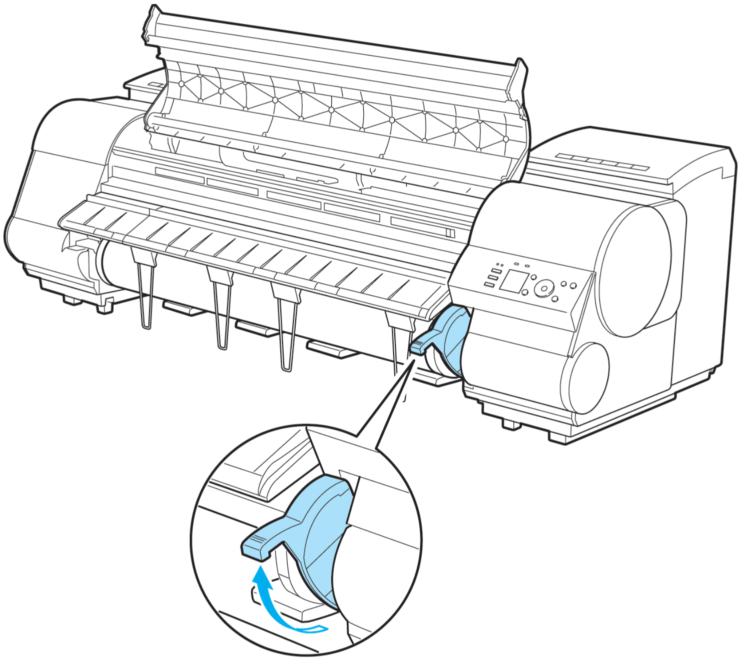
- When handling the roll, be careful not to soil the printing surface. Otherwise, it may affect printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- For paper that tends to curl, lift the Release Lever and manually pull the roll paper over the Platen.
- Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.



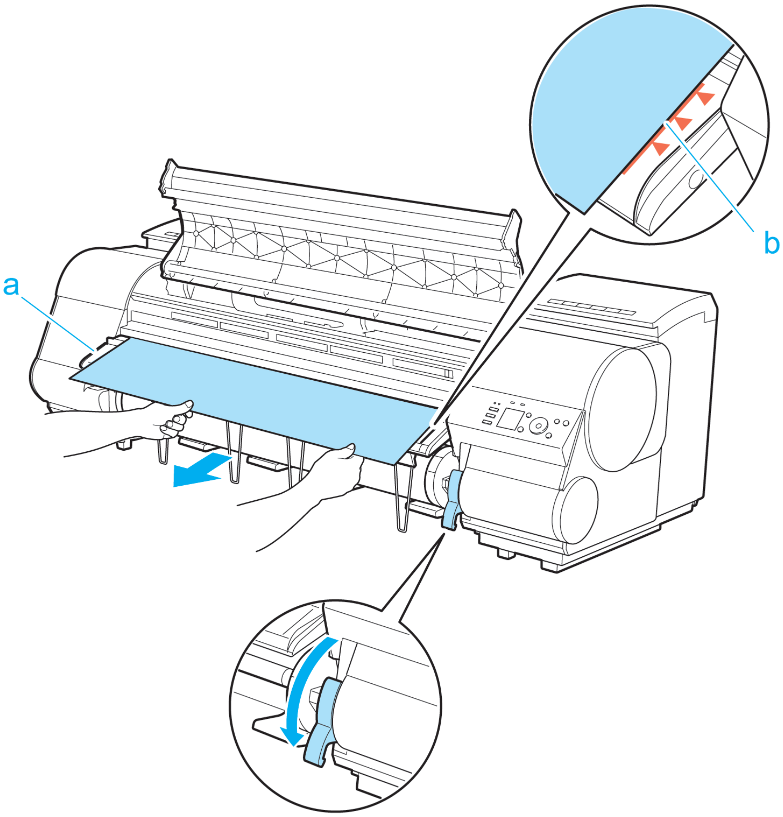
6. Lower the Ejection Guide.



7. Holding the edge of the roll paper, lift the Release Lever.



8. Hold the edge of the roll paper as you gently pull it evenly with both hands to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



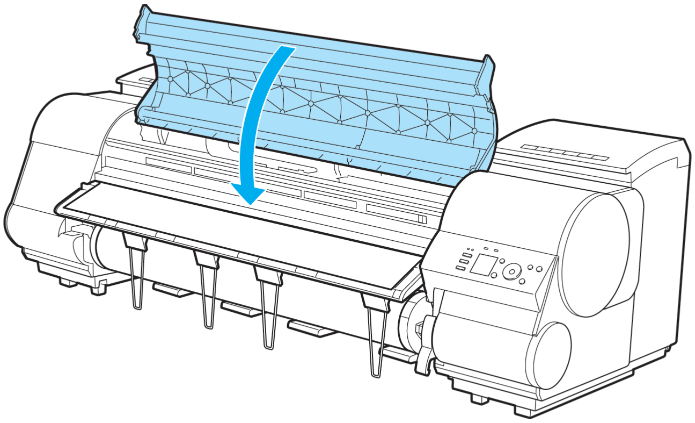
Important

- Do not omit steps 7 and 8. If paper cannot be advanced straight or if it wrinkles, it may jam or rub against the Printhead.
- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the paper alignment line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.

Note

- You can adjust the strength of suction holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is released. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set suction stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available.

9. Close the Top Cover.



10. Once paper feeding starts, you will need to do the following, based on the **ManageRemainRoll** setting and the barcode printed on rolls. (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.799

ManageRemainRoll	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
Off	Printed	A menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
	Not printed	
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.
	Not printed	A menu for selection of the type and length of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type and length of paper loaded, and then press the **OK** button.

Important

- Cut the edge of the roll using the **Paper Cutting** function if the edge is creased or soiled. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

Note

- For details on types of paper to select, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
- Adjusting the printhead alignment with the type of paper to be used in printing may enhance printing quality. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
- When paper leading edge detection is set to **Off** for Manual, printing will start at the position at which the roll was set in procedure 8. Thus, the margin of the paper leading edge will enlarge. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

Changing the Type of Paper

Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper.
If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type** > **On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (See "Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly.") →P.793

Important

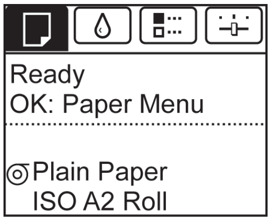
- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the print head height and the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount.
 (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.856

Changing the Type of Paper

Note

- When you load a roll, a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
  If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.793

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

◎Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded (**Roll Paper** or **Cut Sheet**), and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Important

- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

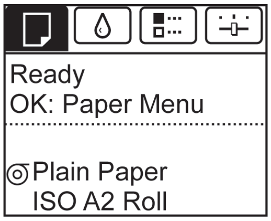
Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774 By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.

Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly

Configure this setting so that current media type settings will be automatically selected when you load the same type of paper later.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

◎Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Keep Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

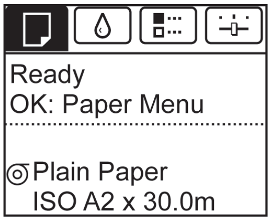
> Note
> - The specified media type setting is updated in the following situations.
>   - When using sheets, if you send a print job before loading a sheet, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the print job.
>   - When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** on the Control Panel and a barcode is printed on the roll, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the barcode.
> - To change the media type setting, see "Changing the Type of Paper." →P.792

Specifying the Paper Length

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

> Note
> - Specify the paper length when you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**. (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.799

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

◎Plain Paper
ISO A2 x 30.0m

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Size**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
   Specify the roll length as follows.
    1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.
    2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
    3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.

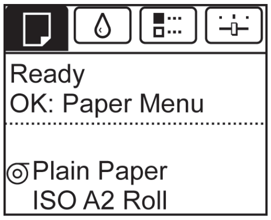
Removing the Roll from the Printer

Remove rolls from the printer as follows.

Note

- If you need to cut the roll, see "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls." →P.802

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

◎Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Note

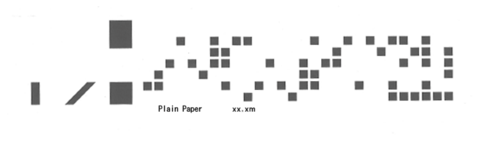
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

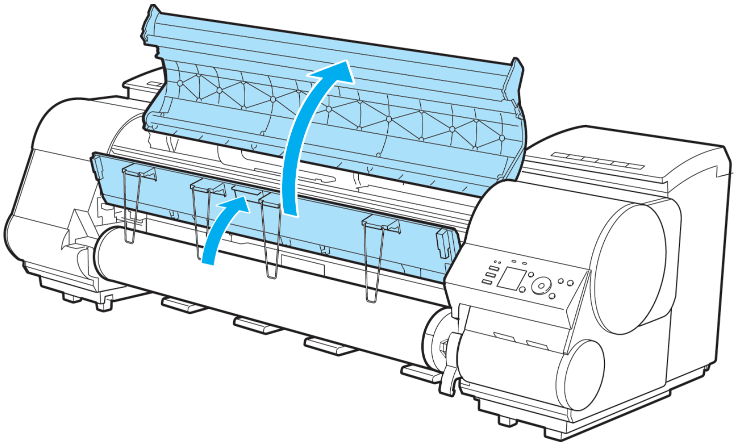
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button.
The roll is now rewound and ejected.

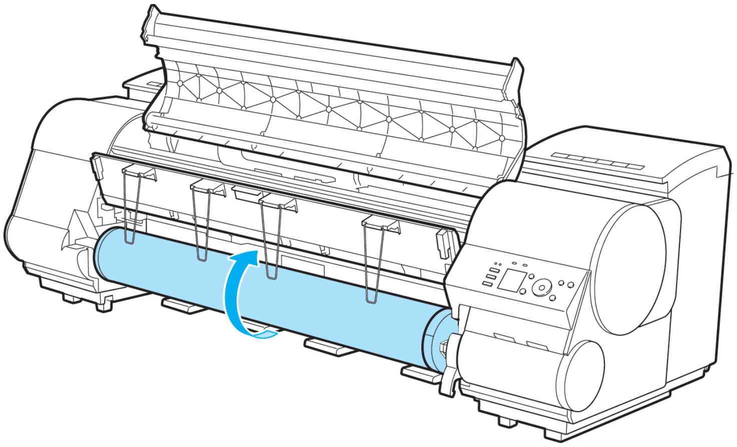
> **Important**
>
> - If you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** in the Control Panel menu, a barcode is printed on the leading edge of the roll.
>   Do not remove the roll before the barcode is printed. You will be unable to keep track of the amount of roll paper left. (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.799



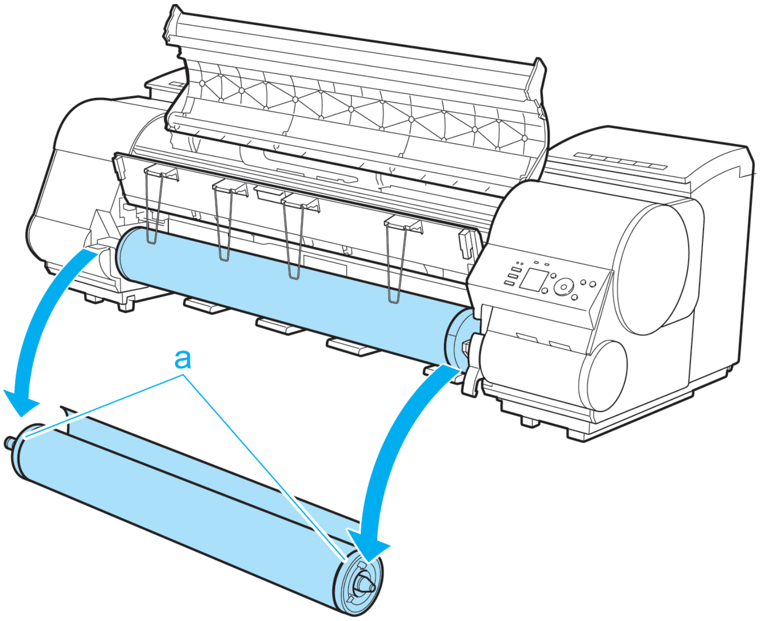
5. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



6. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder in the direction of the arrow to rewind the roll.



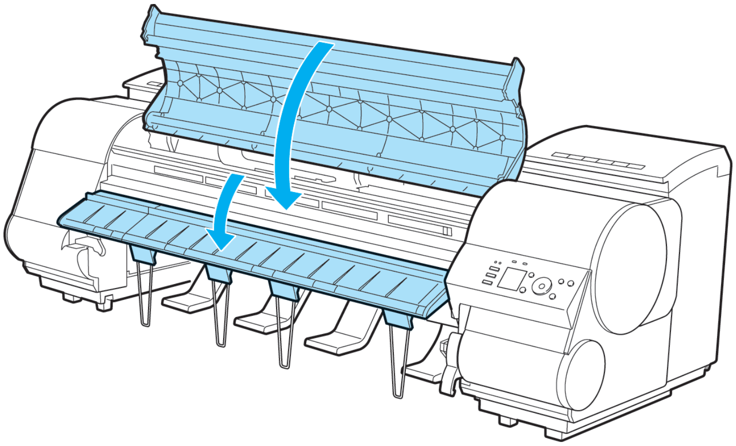
7. Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), remove the holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



Note

- For instructions on removing the Roll Holder from rolls, see "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls." →P.797

8. Lower the Ejection Guide and close the Top Cover.

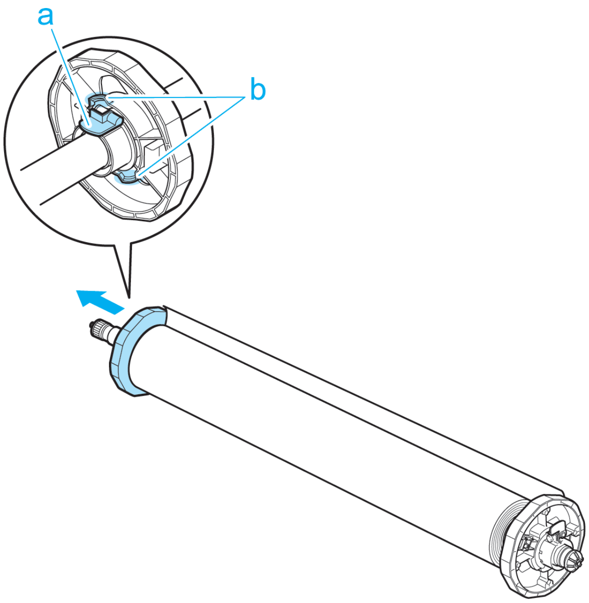


Note

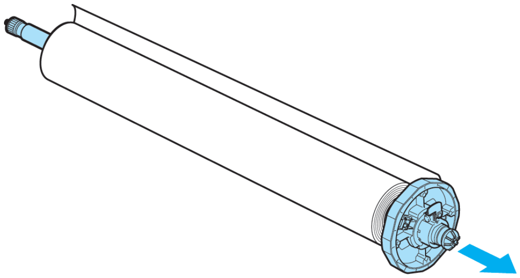
- To load new paper in the printer at this point, see "Loading Rolls in the Printer." →P.786
- Clean inside the top cover before loading paper.
  (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.

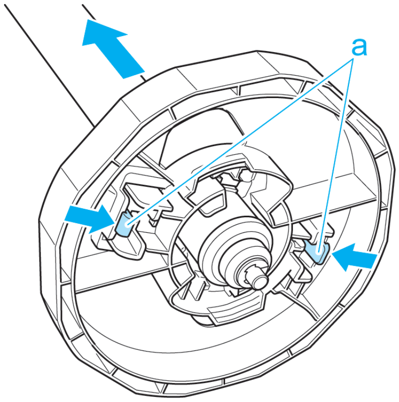


2. Remove the Roll Holder from the roll.

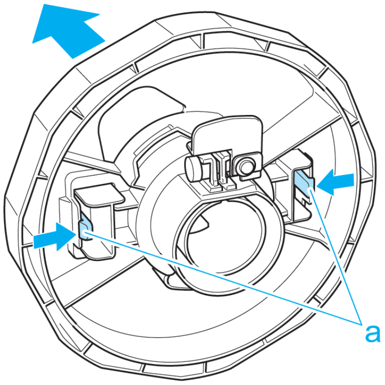


3. When removing attachments, push the tips (a) in as you remove the attachment.

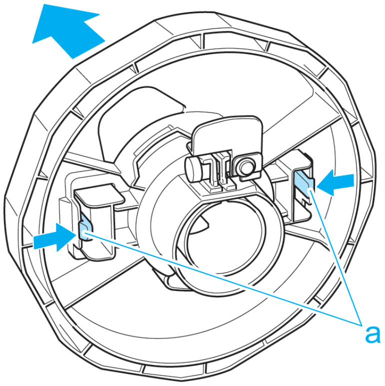
   - 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 (Roll Holder side)



- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 (Holder Stopper side)



- 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment

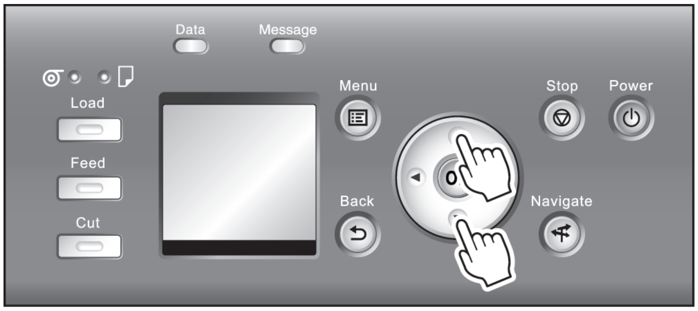


Important

- Store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Feeding Roll Paper Manually

After a roll has been advanced, you can press the **Feed** button to feed or retract the roll with the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



1. Press the **Feed** button.

2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to advance or retract the roll.
   Press ▲ to retract the roll manually.
   Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.

Note

- If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
  If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the roll will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates "**End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.**".

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left

Setting **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel will print a barcode with text on the roll when the roll is removed that identifies the type of paper and amount left. When **ManageRemainRoll** is **On** and you load rolls with printed barcodes, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected after rolls are loaded. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.

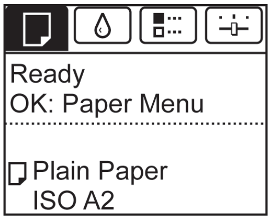
Plain Paper xx.xm

Important

- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ( ).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ManageRemainRoll**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. In that case, you may be able to improve the condition by setting the time to wait for the ink to dry after printing.

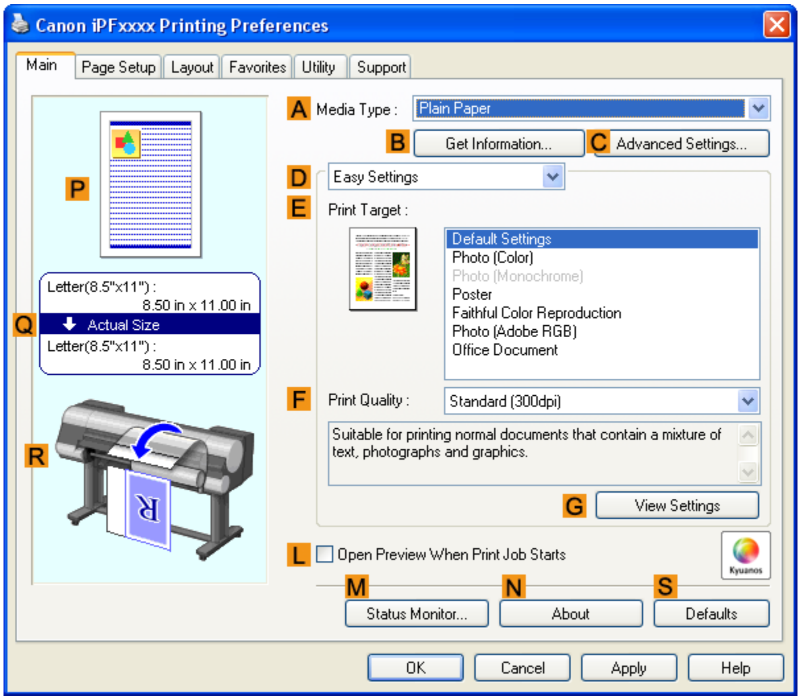
Note

- If the Cutter touches the print surface on which the ink is not dry, the paper surface may become scratched or soiled, or the paper surface may rub against the output stacker when the paper falls and the surface may become soiled.
  To wait for the ink to dry without allowing printed documents to fall after printing, set **Cutting Mode** on the menu of the printer to **Eject**. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
   (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).") →P.213

2. Select the **Main** sheet and click C **Advanced Settings** in A **Media Type**.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

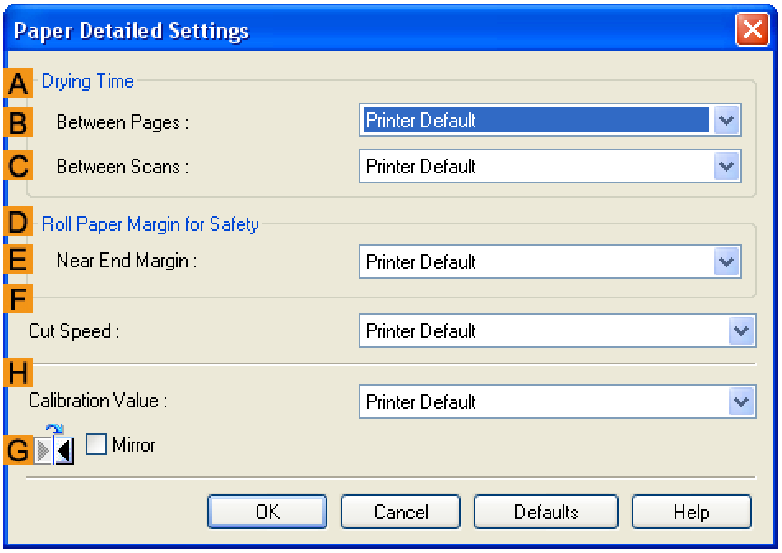
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **B** **Between Pages** and **C** **Between Scans** in **A** **Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows).") →P.220


Paper Detailed Settings

Drying Time

Between Pages : Printer Default

Between Scans : Printer Default

Roll Paper Margin for Safety

Near End Margin : Printer Default

Cut Speed : Printer Default

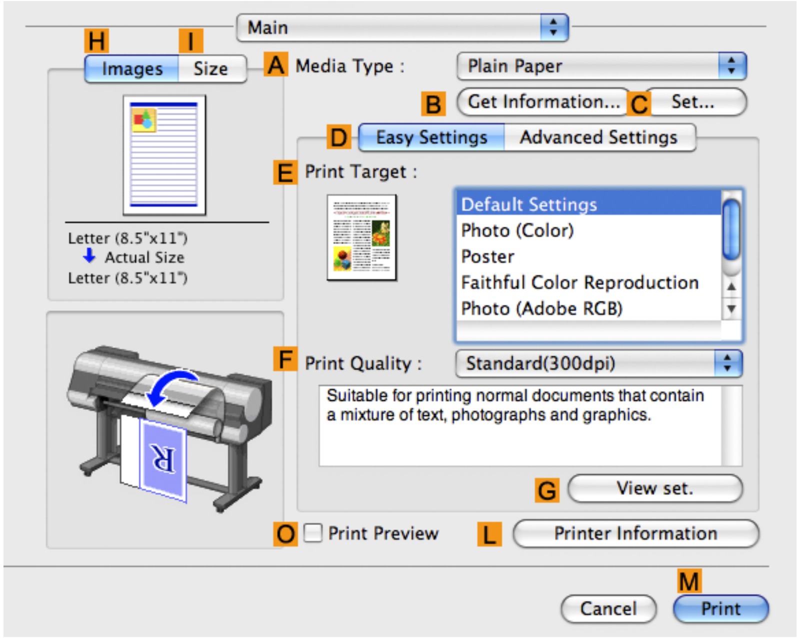
Calibration Value : Printer Default

☐ Mirror

Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C** **Settings** in **A** **Media Type**.


Main

Media Type : Plain Paper

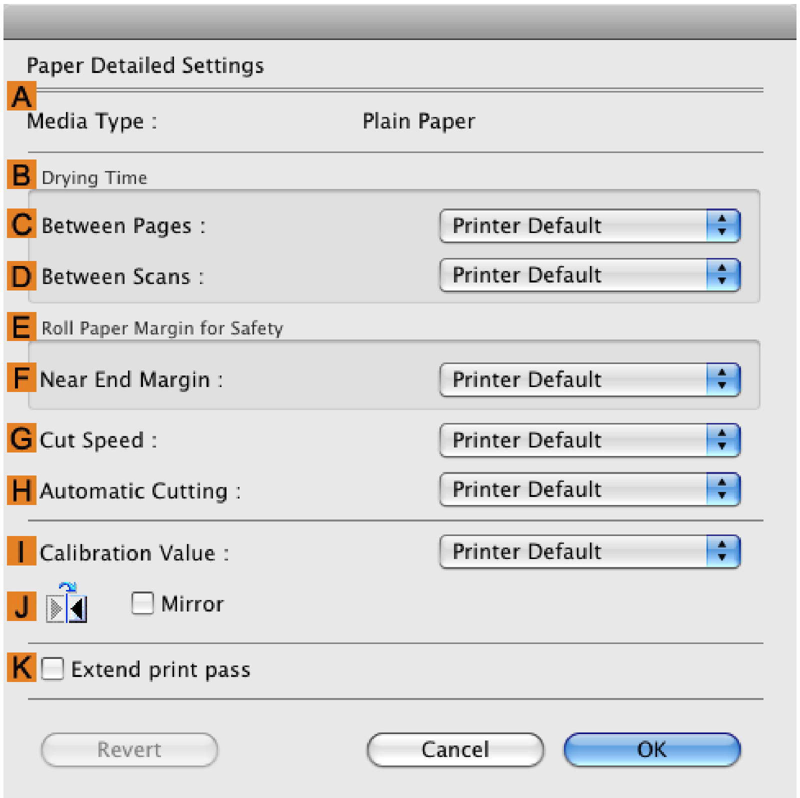
Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Print Preview

3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X).") →P.500


Paper Detailed Settings

A Media Type : Plain Paper

B Drying Time

C Between Pages : Printer Default

D Between Scans : Printer Default

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

F Near End Margin : Printer Default

G Cut Speed : Printer Default

H Automatic Cutting : Printer Default

I Calibration Value : Printer Default

J ☐ Mirror

K ☐ Extend print pass

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How rolls are cut after ejection varies depending on printer settings.

Cutting Method		Printer Setting		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	**Media Menu** > **Paper Details** > (Various Types of Paper) > **Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**	**Auto Cut** (See "Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.") →P.196	**Yes**
Eject →P.803	Select this to move the cutter by key operation and cut paper. Although there are cases with **Automatic** in which the paper falls and the paper surface is scratched when the paper rubs the Output Stacker, you can avoid damaging the paper with this method since you can cut by holding the paper with your hand so that the paper does not fall when cutting, Also, since you can cut while visually confirming the drying of the ink, you can avoid ejecting paper before the ink has dried. To cut the roll with the Cutter Unit, press the **Cut** button.		**Eject**		**Yes**
Manual →P.805	Select this for paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit and for paper of which the leading edge curls strongly and rubs the printhead.		**Manual**		**No Yes Print Cut Guideline**

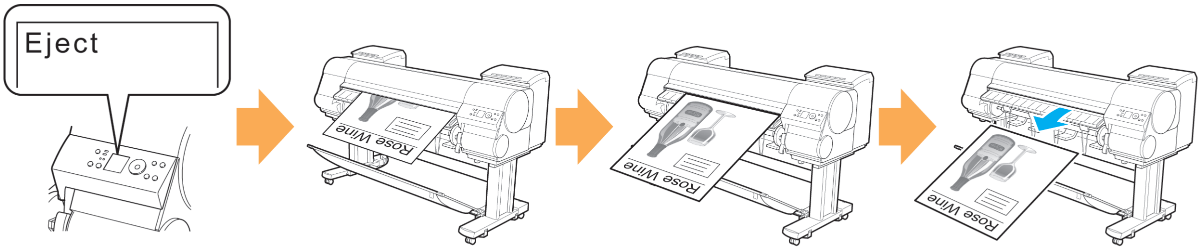
Cutting Method		Printer Setting		Driver Setting	
Manual →P.805	Use scissors to cut each document from the roll after printing. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), select **Auto Cut** > **Yes** or select **Print Cut Guideline**.	**Media Menu** > **Paper Details** > (Various Types of Paper) > **Cutting Mode**	**Manual**	**Auto Cut** (See "Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.") →P.196	**No Yes Print Cut Guideline**
Paper Cutting →P.809	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when **Auto Cut** > **No** is selected or **Print Cut Guideline** is selected in the printer driver. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	**Cut button pressed**	**Yes**		**No Print Cut Guideline**

Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have selected **Auto Cut** > **Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.
- **Eject** is the preset selection in **Cutting Mode** for some types of paper. For this paper, we recommend keeping the preset cutting mode.
- If documents printed using Automatic, Eject, or manual cutting are short, rolls are advanced a specific amount before cutting to prevent problems with cutting and paper ejection. This may create a wider bottom margin, in some cases.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

Eject (when the paper surface is being scratched / to wait for ink to dry)



Select **Eject**

Print

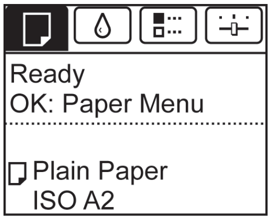
Stopped automatically at the cut position

As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Cut** button

Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality or cause rough cut edges.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

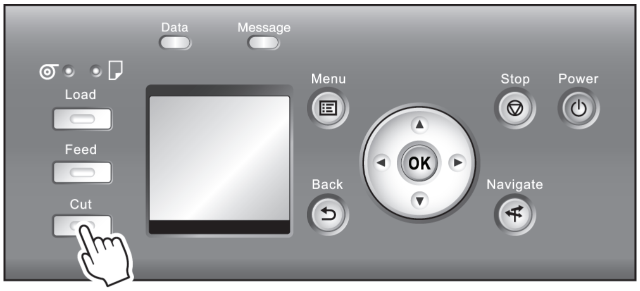
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

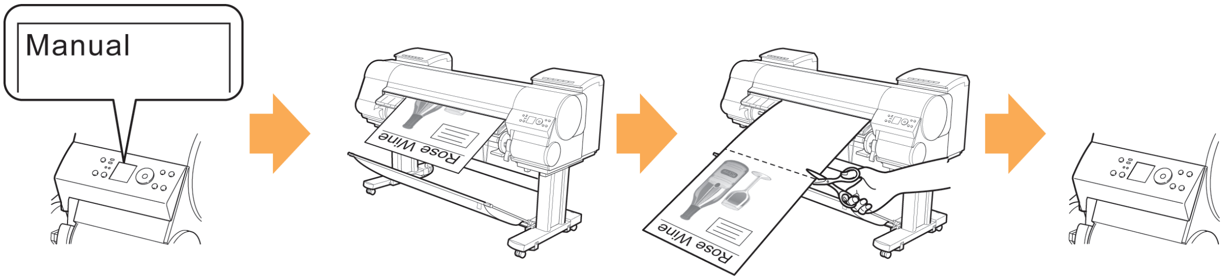
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Print the job.
   When printing is finished, the printer will stop without cutting.

8. Holding the printed document to prevent it from dropping, press the **Cut** button to cut the roll.



Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit)



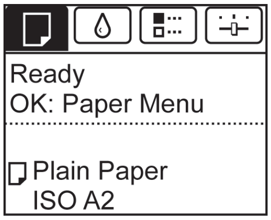
Select **Manual**

Print

Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Feed** button and cut manually

Rewind paper by pressing the **OK** button

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).


Ready
OK: Paper Menu
🗋Plain Paper
ISO A2

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

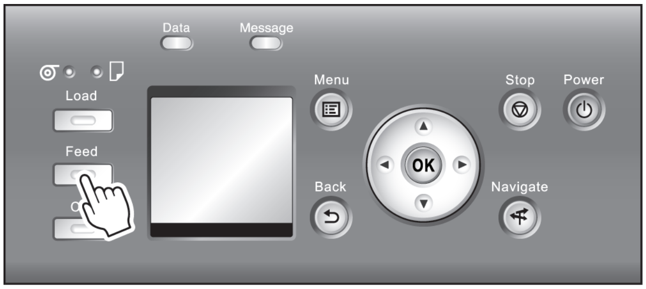
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. When **Perform the detection of paper leading edge?** is displayed, select **Perform(recommend)**.

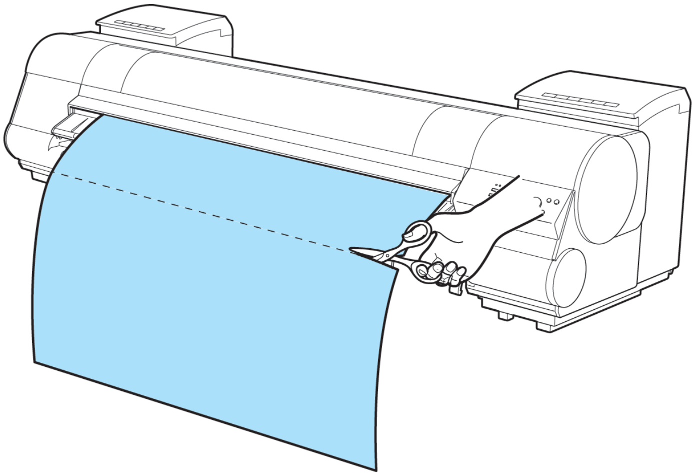
8. Print the job.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.

9. Press the **Feed** button.

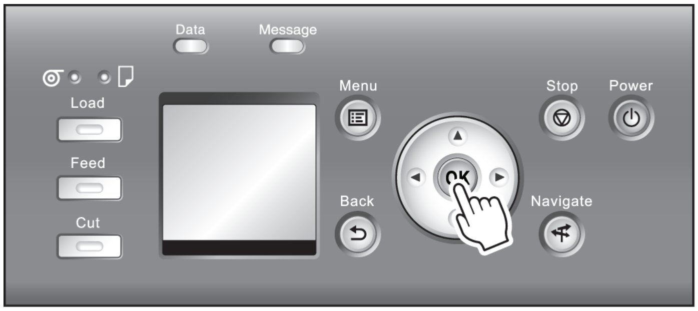


Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

10. Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.

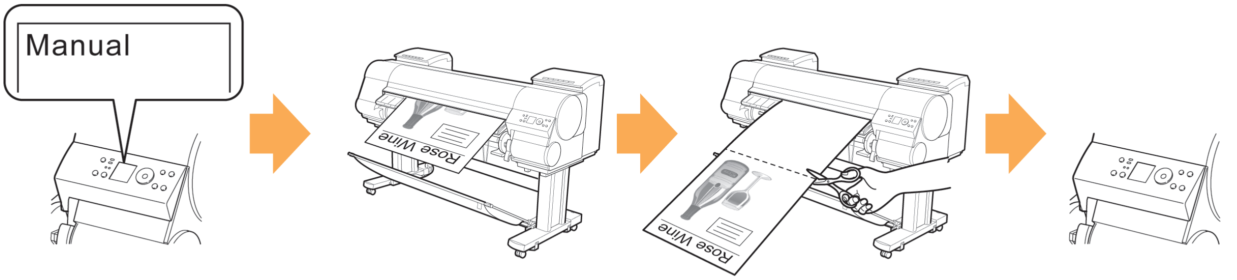


11. Press the **OK** button.



After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.

Manual (for paper of which the leading edge rubs the printhead)



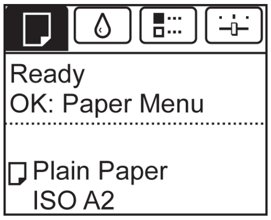
Select **Manual**

Print

Feed paper to the cut position by pressing the **Feed** button and cut manually

Rewind paper by pressing the **OK** button

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

🗋Plain Paper
ISO A2

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

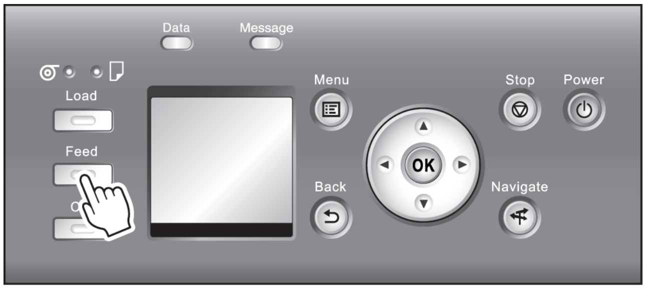
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.

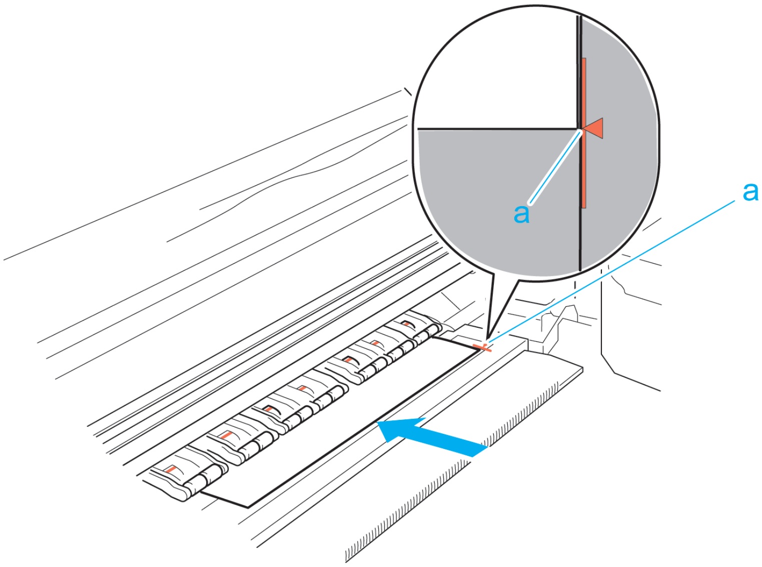
7. When **Perform the detection of paper leading edge?** is displayed, select **Do not perform**.

> Note
> - If you set the detection of paper leading edge to **Do not perform**, a margin of about 10 cm is created at the paper leading edge when printing starts.
> - When the detection of paper leading edge is set to **Do not perform**, printing will start at the position at which the roll was set for the first printing after replacing a roll. Thus, the margin of the paper leading edge will enlarge.
>   (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786

8. Press the **Feed** button.



9. Press ▲ or ▼ to align the paper leading edge with the (a) position.

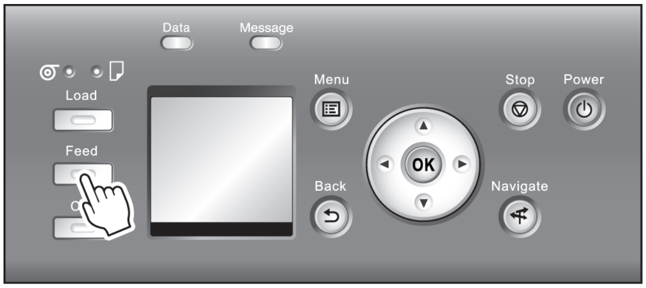


10. Print the job.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.

Note

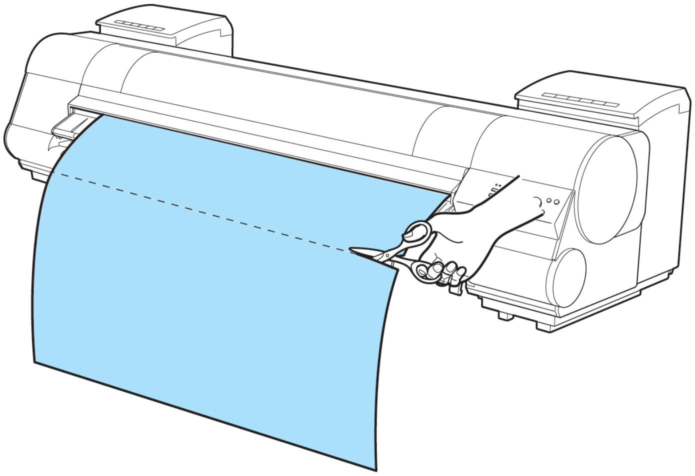
- The printer can continue to receive print jobs from computers. If a print job is received and printed here, it can be printed without the margin of about 10 cm being created at the paper leading edge.

11. Press the **Feed** button.



Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

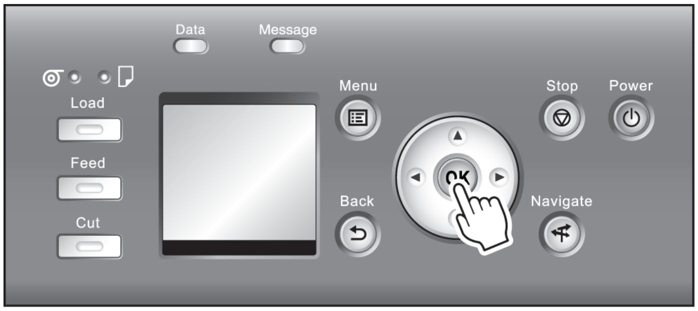
12. Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.



Important

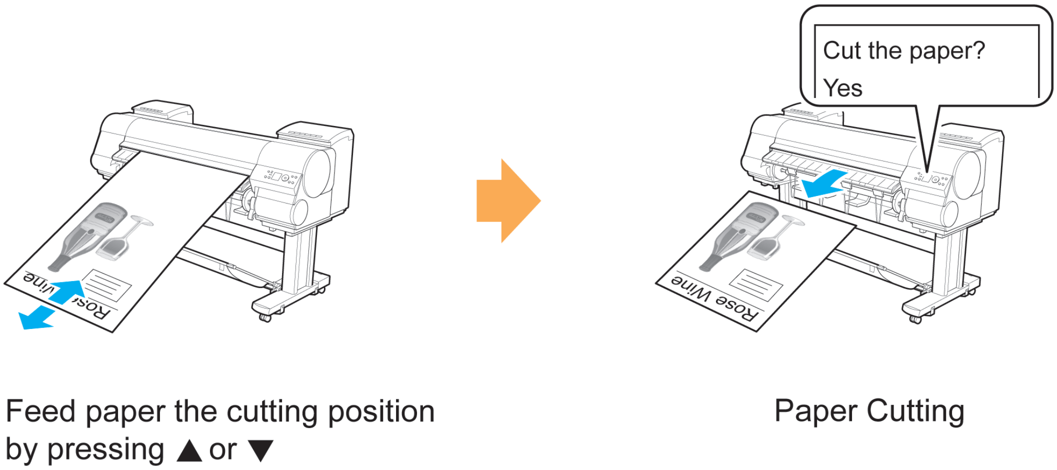
- Cut at the dotted line printed on the paper. If you cut on the printer side of the dotted line, the paper leading edge may rub against the printhead and may deviate from the paper retainer.

13. Press the **OK** button.



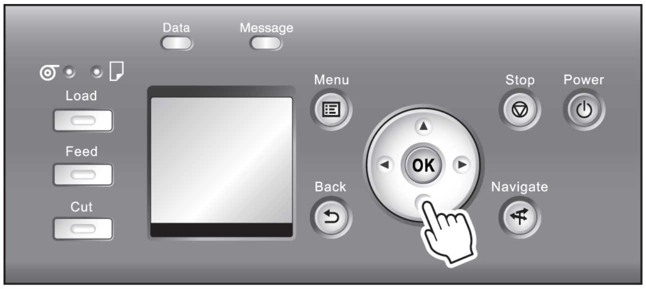
After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.

Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)

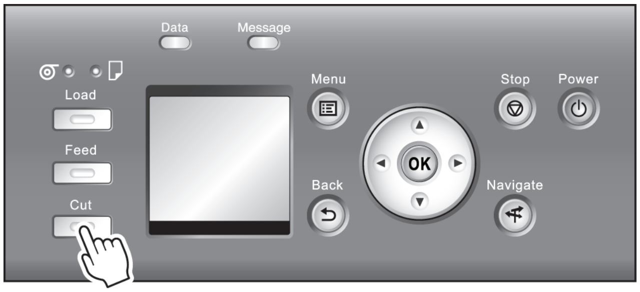


1. Press the **Feed** button.

2. Press the ▼ button to advance the roll to the position for cutting.



3. Press the **Cut** button.



4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

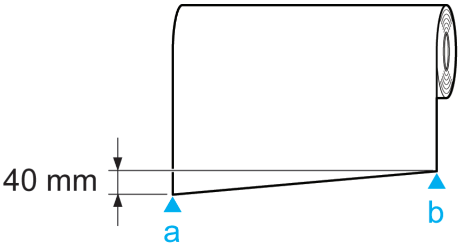
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 40 mm (1.6 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 40 mm. However, paper may sometimes be cut, depending on the state of the leading edge.

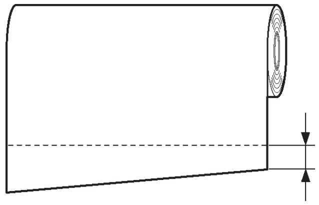


- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.

- **On**

The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut from the leading edge varies depending on the type of paper. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774



Important

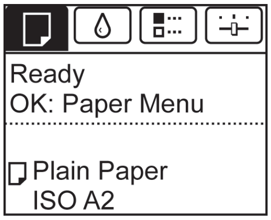
- If the width of the paper differs, setting **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** relaxes the accuracy of the paper skew detection feature, and setting it to **Off** ignores the skew detection feature. However, when **Off** is selected and the paper is loaded skewed, a paper jam may result or the Platen may become soiled.

Note

- By default, the setting varies depending on the type of paper. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (□).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

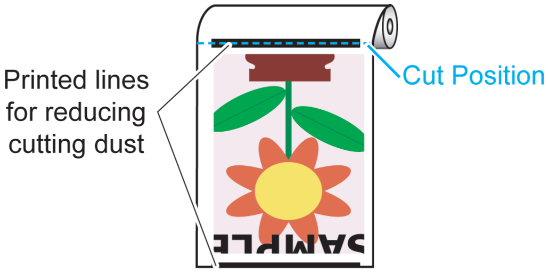
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.
   This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

For media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, select **CutDustReduct.** > **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel. This option reduces debris from cutting by printing black lines at the leading and trailing edges of documents. It may help prevent Printhead damage. You can specify for **CutDustReduct.** to be activated for particular types of paper.

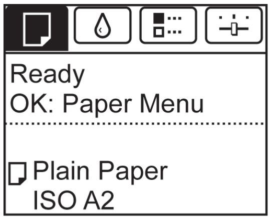


Important

- Do not set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**. To use borderless printing, select **CutDustReduct.** > **Off**.

Set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (□).


Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Handling sheets

Loading Sheets in the Printer

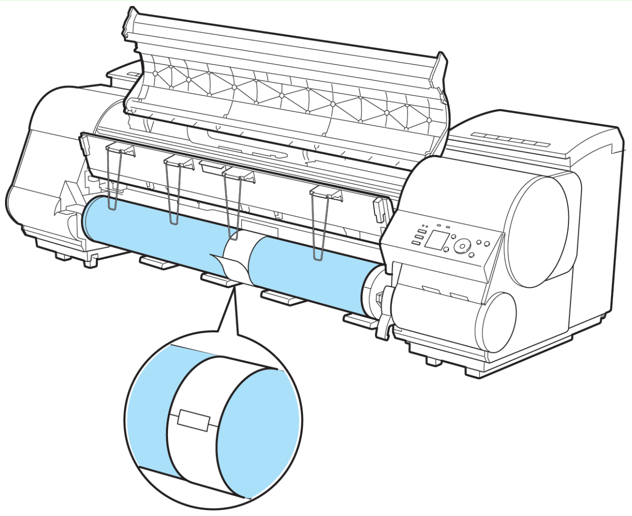
Follow these steps to load sheets in the printer.

Important

- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.

Note

- Loading sheets when a roll is already loaded in the printer may cause jams. We recommend removing rolls before loading sheets. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794
- To prevent the roll from unwinding if you leave it loaded, wrap a sheet of paper around the roll and tape it.



- Before loading sheets, make sure the printer is clean inside the Top Cover and around the Ejection Guide. If these areas are dirty, we recommend cleaning them in advance. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.

1. Select sheets as the paper source.

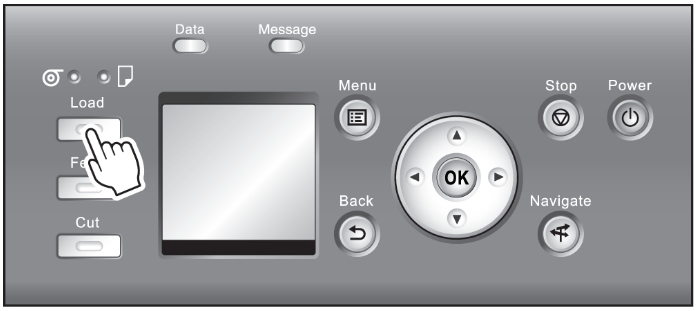
- If a print job was received

Sheets are automatically selected, and the media type and size specified by the print job are shown on the Display Screen.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

- If no print job was received

1. Press the **Load** button.

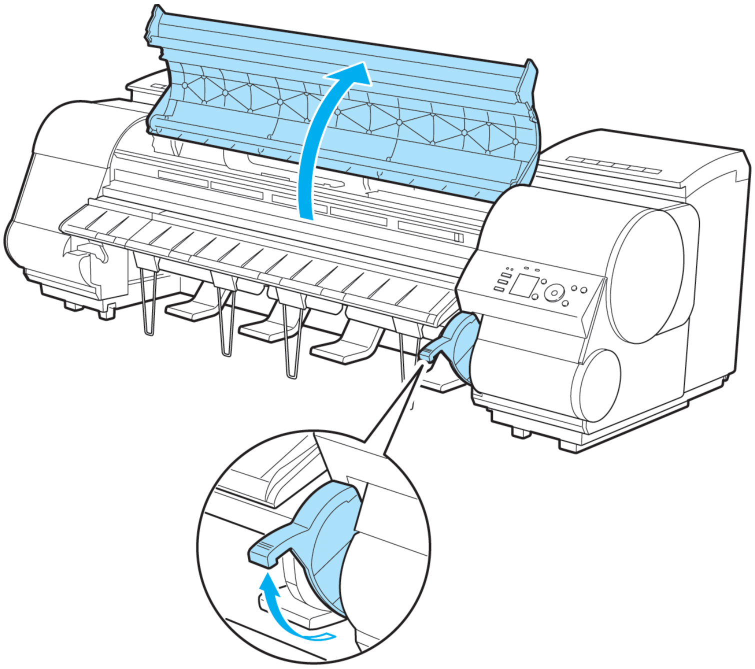


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Cut Sheet**, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

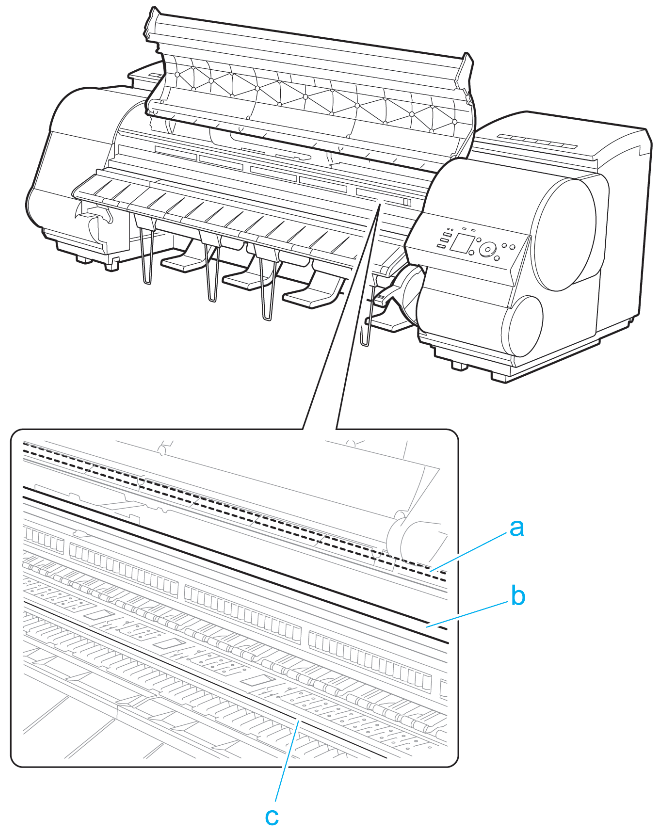
- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

2. Lift the Release Lever and open the Top Cover.



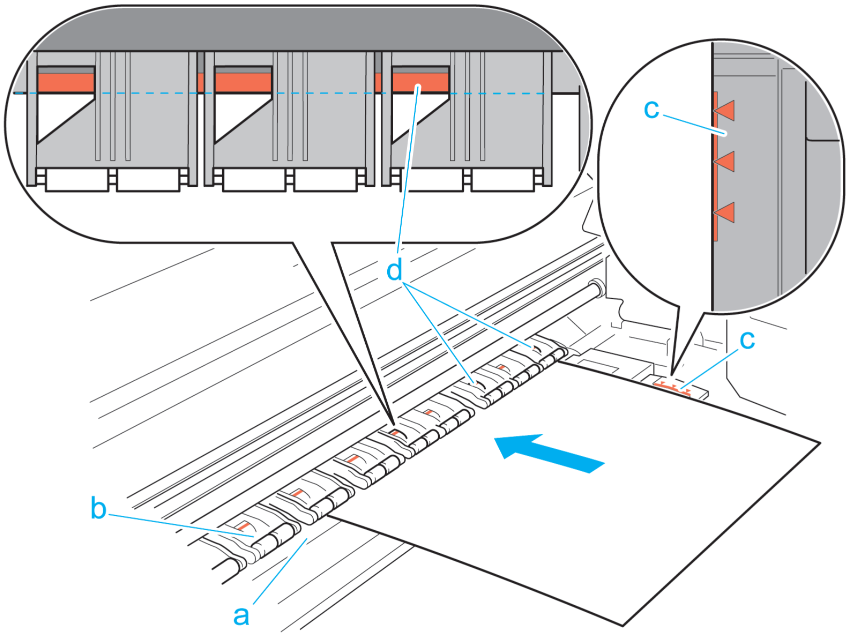
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



3. With a sheet lengthwise and printing-side up, insert it between the Platen (a) and the Paper Retainer (b). Align the edges of the sheet as follows.

    1. Align the sheet with the Paper Alignment Line (c) at right.
    2. Align the inserted edge of the sheet with the leading edge of the Paper Alignment Line (d), as shown.



When inserted, sheets are automatically held by suction against the Platen.

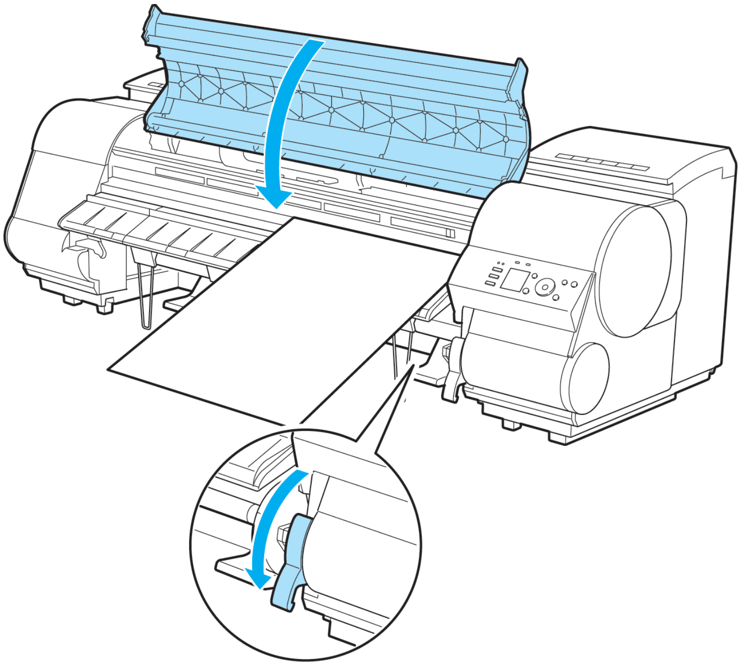
Important

- Load a sheet so that it is parallel to the Paper Alignment Line at right (c). Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Warped paper may rub against the Printhead. Straighten paper if it is warped before loading it.

Note

- You can adjust the strength of suction holding paper against the Platen when the Release Lever is up. If it is difficult to load paper, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the Control Panel to adjust the strength. Set suction stronger by pressing the ▲ button or weaker with the ▼ button. Three settings are available. However, even if you increase the suction, it may not be sufficient to hold some types of paper against the Platen well. In this case, use your hand to load the paper.
- Sheets are held in place by suction through holes on the Platen. Although the suction may produce a noise when paper is loaded in some positions, it does not indicate a problem. If the noise is distracting, try moving the paper over slightly to the left or right (up to 1 mm [0.039 in]) while keeping it parallel to the Paper Alignment Line.
- The suction remains on for about 30 seconds during loading. If you cannot finish loading a sheet during this time, pull the sheet away and reinsert it to start the suction again.

4. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



- **If a print job was received**

  Pressing the **OK** button will advance the paper, and then printing will begin.

- **If no print job was received**

  A menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen.

  Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

  The printer now starts feeding the paper.

> **Note**
>
> - For details on types of paper to select, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
> - When using the Output Stacker, if you will print on large, stiff sheets, we recommend adjusting the Output Stacker into the lowest position to prevent printed sheets from being bent. (See "Using the Output Stacker.") →P.823

6

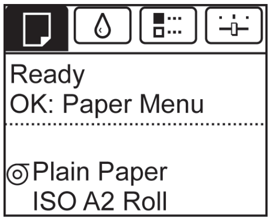
Printing From a Desired Starting Point

Print on sheets from a desired starting point as follows.

Set **Width Detection** to **Off**

817

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

◎Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Width Detection**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Load paper in the desired position to start printing from

Follow these instructions to load paper at the desired starting position for printing when **Width Detection** is **Off**.

1. If you did not send a print job in advance, a menu for selection of the type of paper is displayed.
   Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

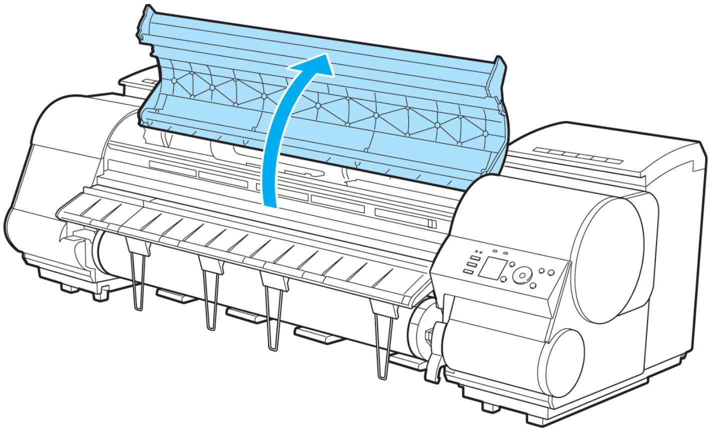
Note

- If a print job was received before paper was advanced, the media type and size specified by the job are shown on the Display Screen.
  Thus, this screen is not displayed. Go to step 2.

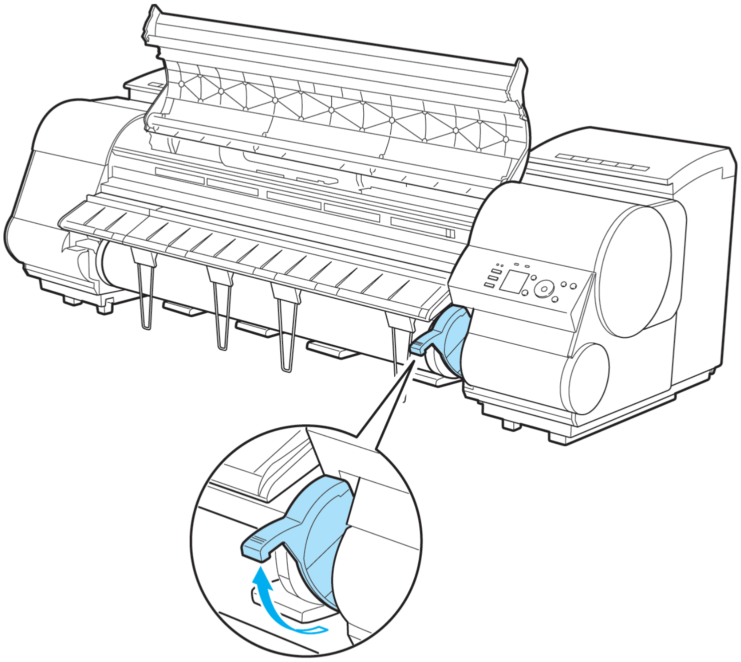
2. "**Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?**" is now shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Leave OFF**", and then press the **OK** button.

3. After a menu for selection of the paper size is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.

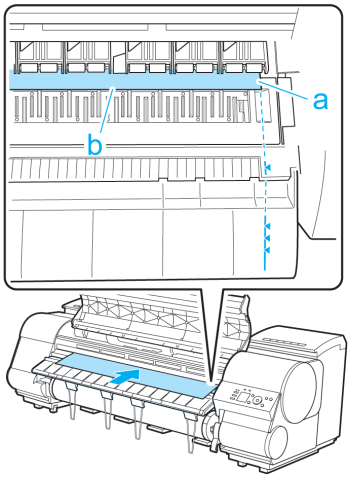
4. Open the Top Cover and check the position where paper is loaded.



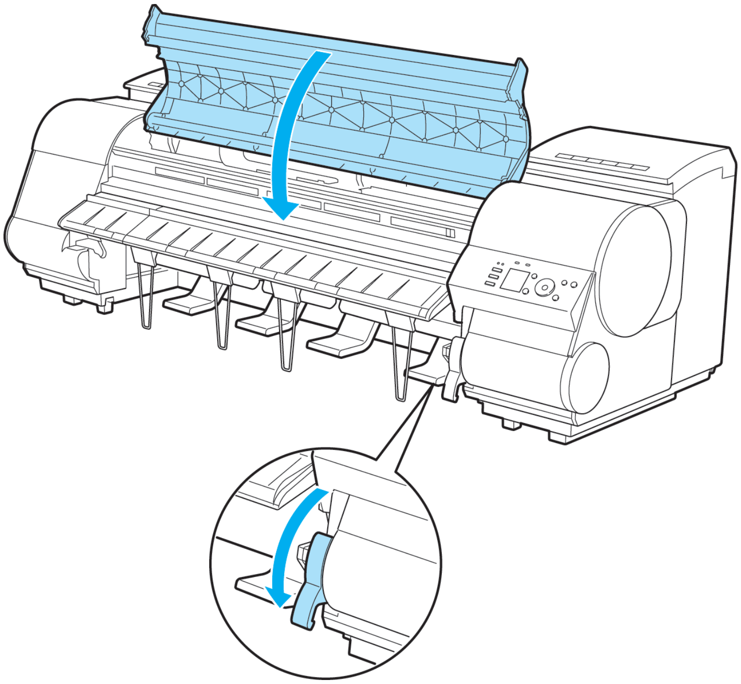
To start printing from the current position, close the Top Cover.
To reposition the paper, lift the Release Lever.



5. Keeping the right edge of the paper aligned with the extended line of the paper alignment line (a) on the right side of the printer and the position from which to start printing aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the platen, load the paper.



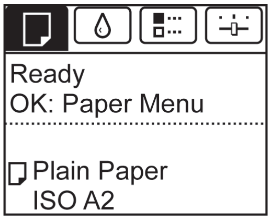
6. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



Removing Sheets

Remove sheets from the printer as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).



Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2

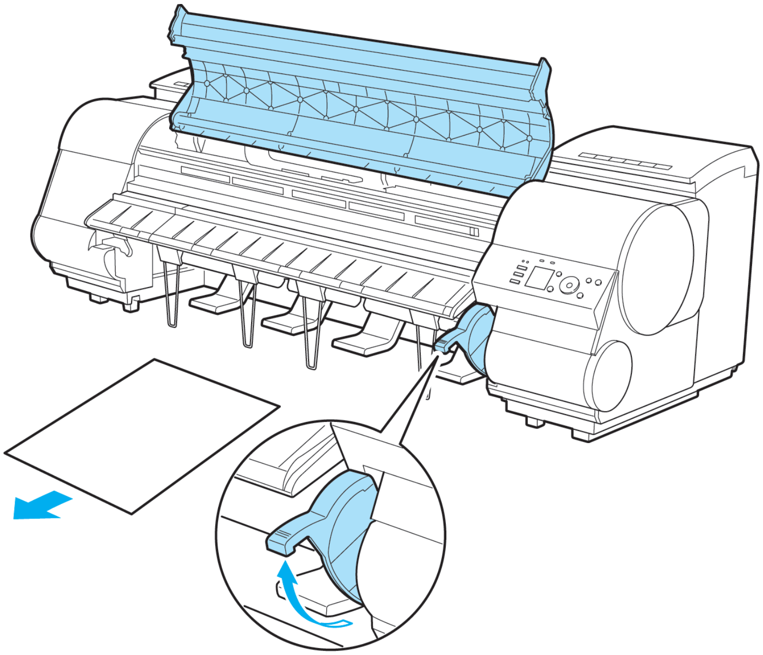
> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

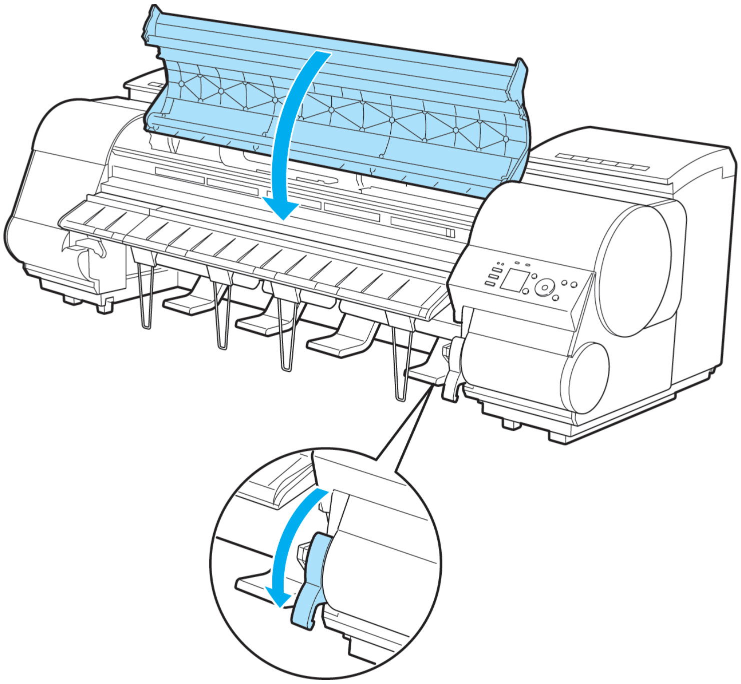
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button.
   The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

5. Open the Top Cover, lift the Release Lever, and remove the sheet.

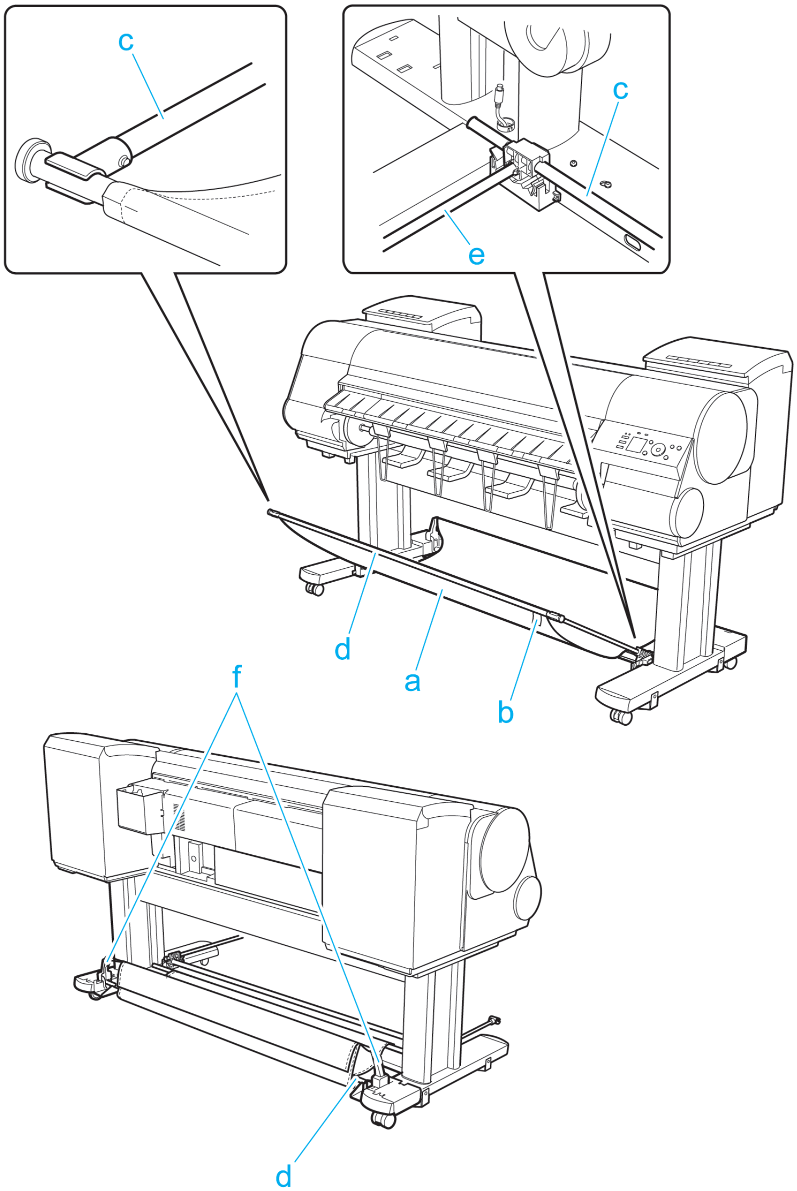


6. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



Output Stacker

Output Stacker



a. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents.

b. White tag

A point of reference for attaching the Output Stacker in the right direction.

c. Basket Arm R and Basket Arm L

Holds the Basket Rod (tag side) attached to the Output Stacker. When the Output Stacker is not used, push it down and store it next to the Stand Leg.

d. Basket Rod (tag side) and Basket Rod (cord side)

Holds the cloth Output Stacker securely in specific positions.

e. Basket Rod

Keeps Basket Arm R and Basket Arm L at the same angle.

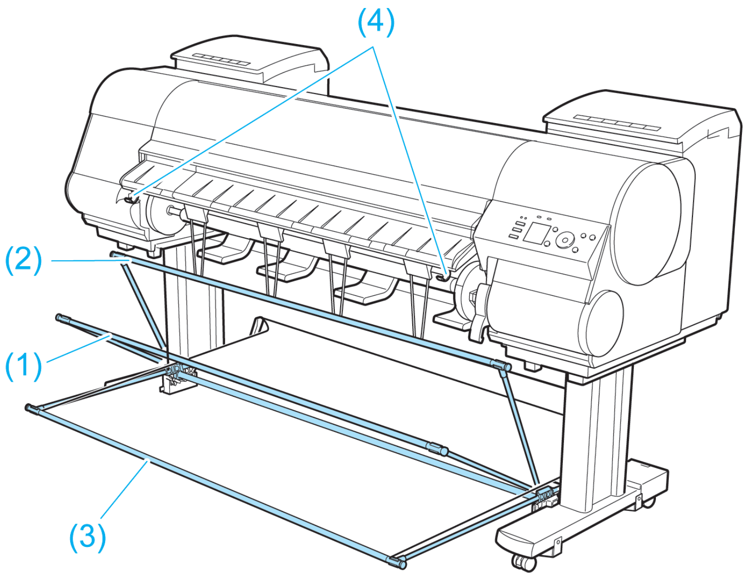
f. Rod Holder

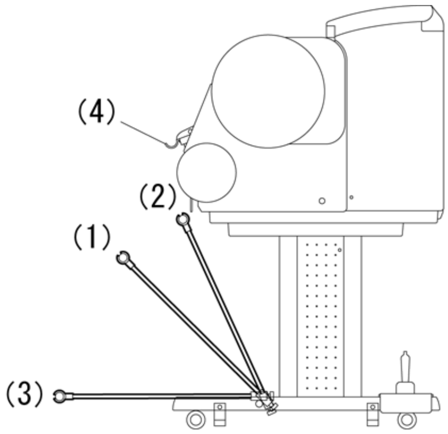
Holds the middle of the Basket Rod (cord side).

(See "Using the Output Stacker.") →P.823

Using the Output Stacker

The Output Stacker can be held at four positions, as shown.





- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker

  Use position (1).

- **When the Output Stacker is not used**

  Use position (2).

- **When the Media Take-up Unit is used, or when the Output Stacker is stored for long periods**

  Lower it to position (3) for storage. (See "Storing the Output Stacker.") →P.829

  When using the Output Stacker again after storage, reattach the Basket Rod on the front of the Output Stacker to the tips of the left and right basket arms and pull it out completely.

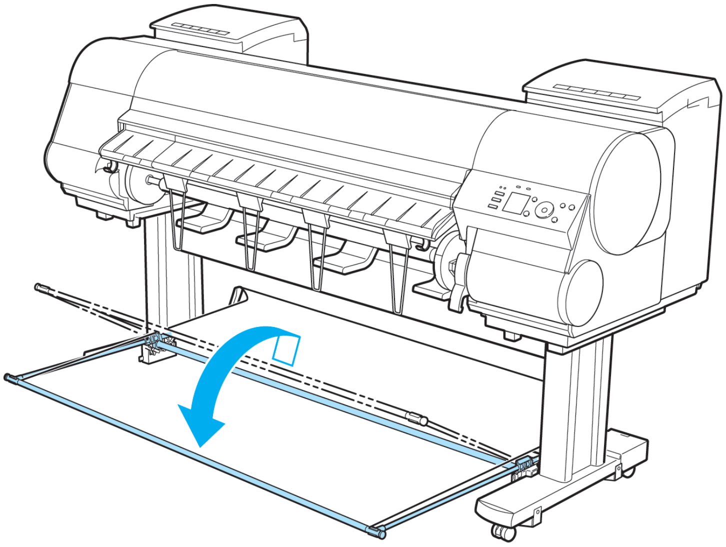
- **When printing on large, stiff sheets**

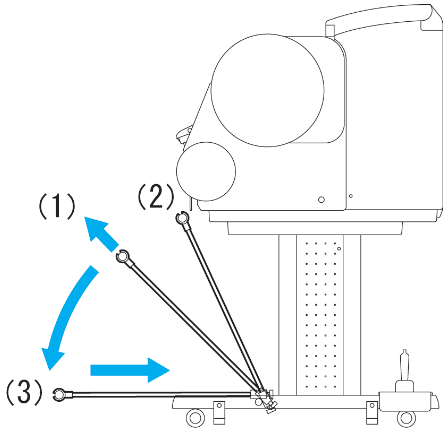
  Use position (3).

  Set it to position (4) when printing banners or when printing on delicate paper. (See "Using the output stacker for ejection in front.") →P.825

> **Important**
>
> - When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker, always use it in position (1). If you do not, printed documents may not be dropped into the Output Stacker, and the printed surface may become soiled.
> - The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.
> - Before using the Output Stacker, remove the Rewind Spool. If you do not, it may prevent printed documents from being held correctly, and they may be scratched.
> - The Output Stacker can hold printed documents from rolls that are 62 inches (1,575 mm) long. When printing longer documents, adjust the stacker for ejection in front, or use the optional Media Take-up Unit.

The Output Stacker locks into position if you lift it to position (1) or (2). To lower the Output Stacker, lift the front Basket Rod lightly to release the lock, and then lower the stacker.





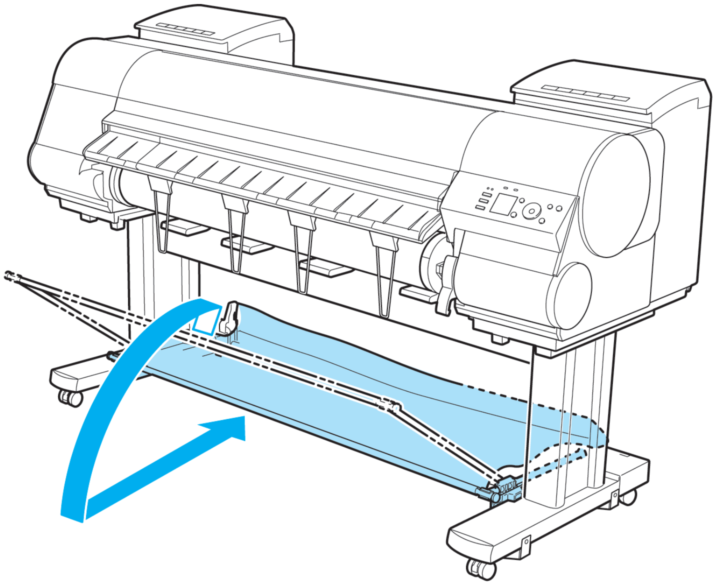
Using the output stacker for ejection in front

You can also set the stacker to the following position when printing banners or when printing on delicate paper.

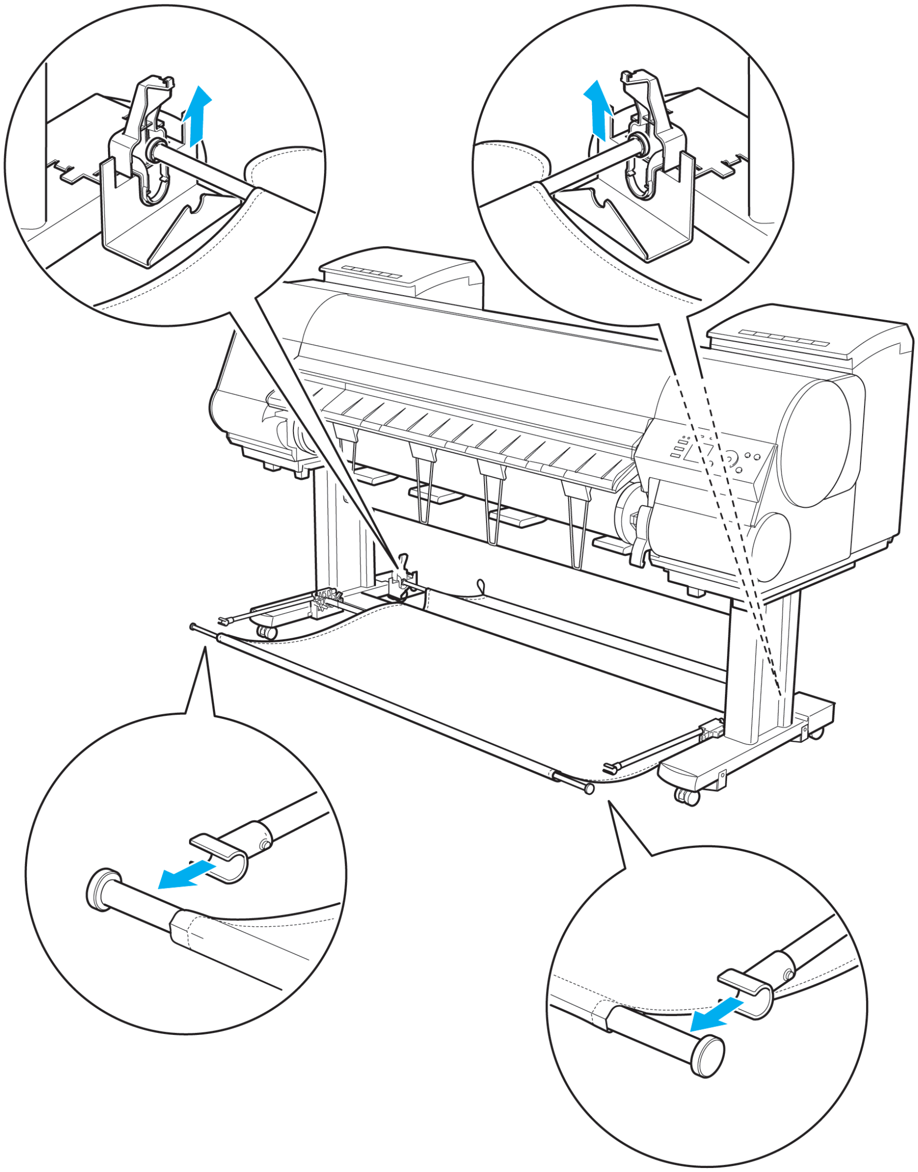
Important

- When using the stacker for ejection in front, always select **Cutting Mode** > **Eject**. Selecting **Automatic** may damage printed documents. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802
- During ejection in the front of the printer, be especially careful when using delicate paper or paper that curls easily.
- Depending on the type of paper, the edge may curl or bend during ejection. In this case, straighten out the paper. If the paper is curled or bent, it may damage printed documents.
- Some types of paper may get caught between the Ejection Guide and Output Stacker during ejection. In this case, free the paper from where it is caught. If the paper is caught, it may damage printed documents.

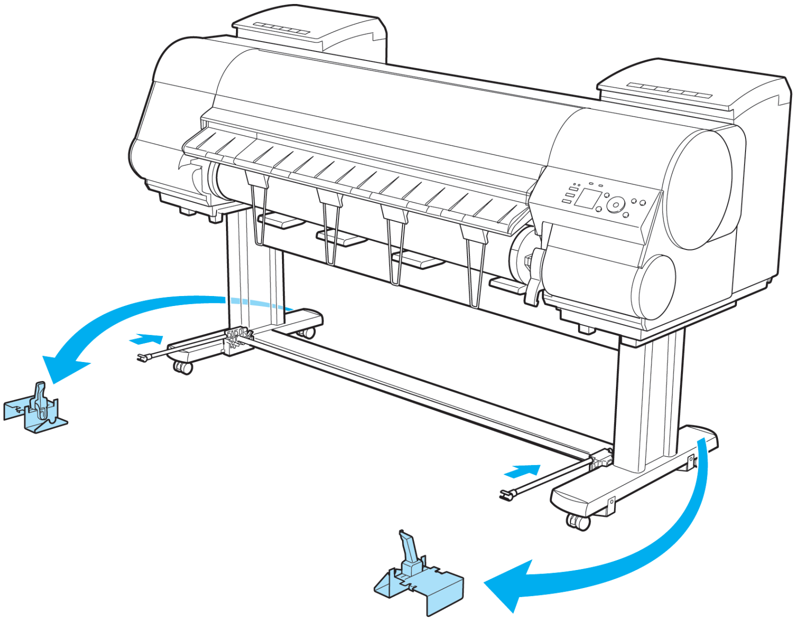
1. Lift the Basket Rod gently to release the lock, lower the stacker toward the front, and push it back.



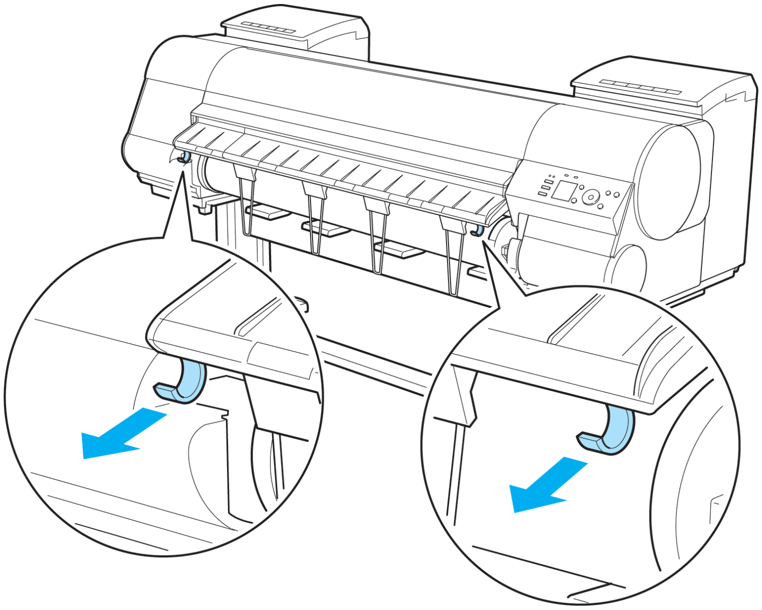
2. Remove the Output Stacker from the printer.
   Remove the front Basket Rod from the left and right basket arms, and remove the back Basket Rod and black cord from the Rod Holder.



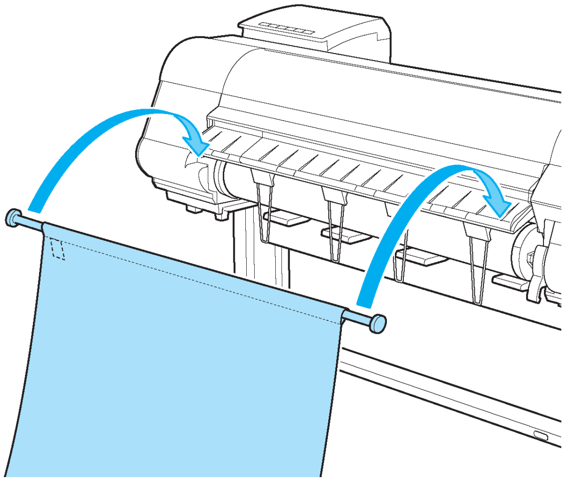
3. Stow the left and right basket arms. Next, with the Rod Holder still attached, remove the Rod Holder Adapter and put it in front of the printer.



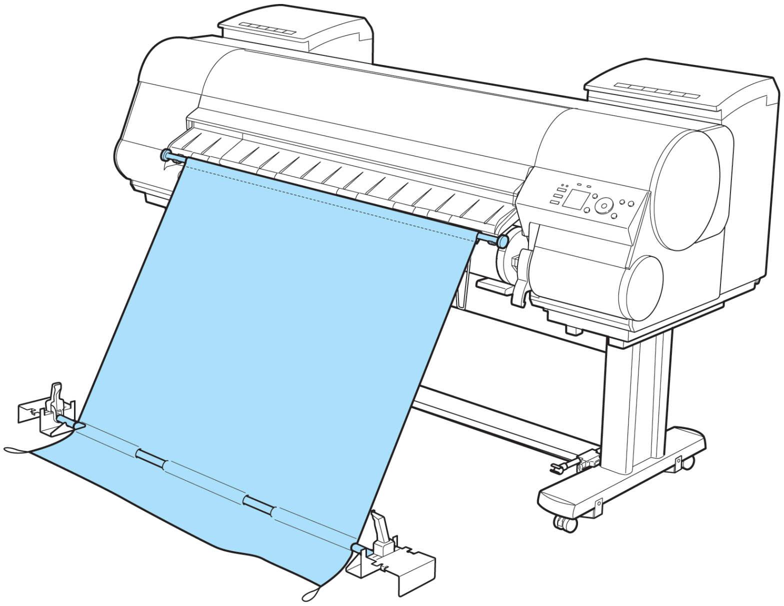
4. Pull out the left and right Basket Hooks from the Ejection Guide.



5. Attach the Basket Rod to the Basket Hooks so that the white tag of the Basket Cloth is on the left.



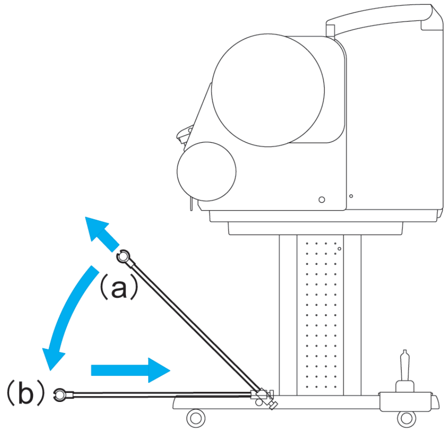
6. Form the Basket Cloth into a sloping shape to make it taut, and attach the middle Basket Rod to the Rod Holder.



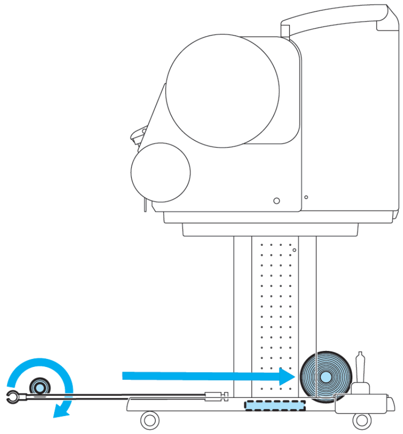
Storing the Output Stacker

Stow the Output Stacker if you will use the Media Take-up Unit or if you will not use the Output Stacker for an extended period.

1. When the Output Stacker is in the position used when storing printed documents (a), lift the front Basket Rod gently to release the lock, lower the stacker toward the front (b), and push it all the way back.

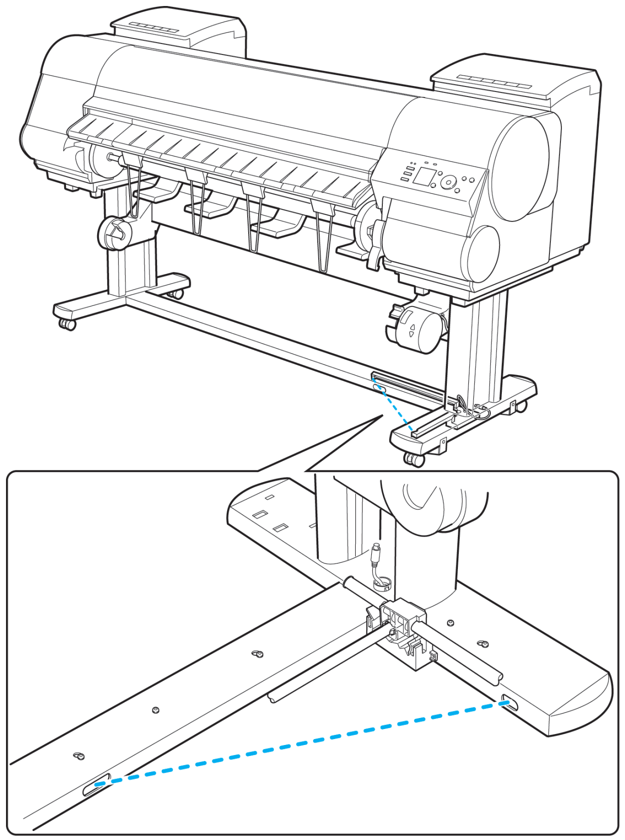


2. Remove the front Basket Rod from the left and right basket arms. Roll up the Basket Cloth and put it at the back of the Bottom Stand Stay.

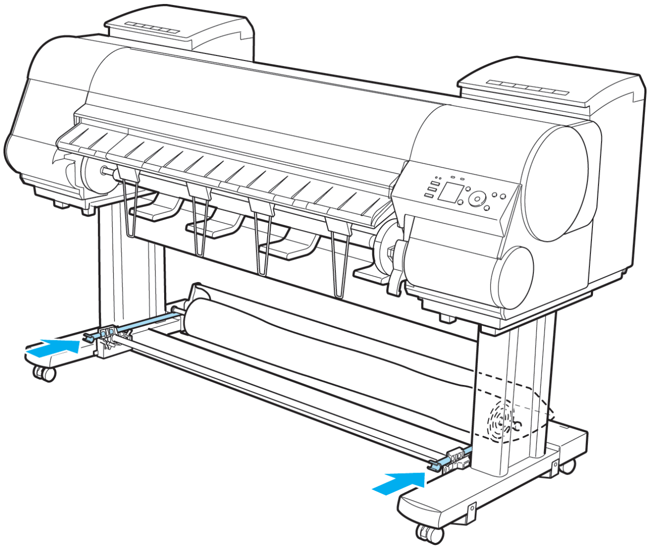


Important

- When using the Media Take-up Unit, position the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor (wave portion). This may impair operation.



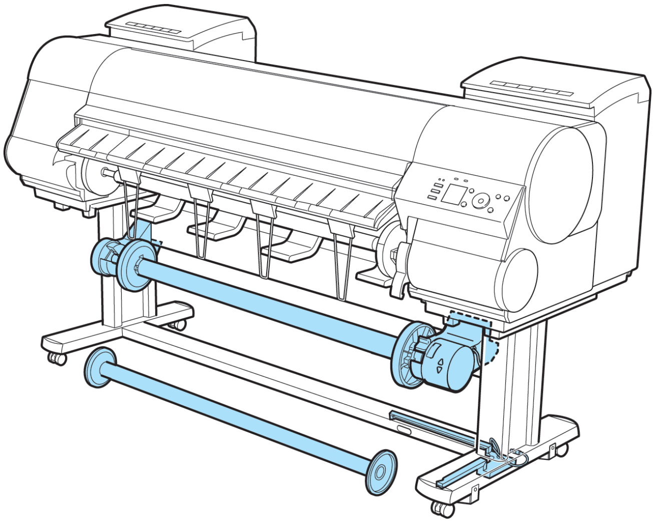
3. Push in the left and right basket arms toward the back all the way, until they stop.



Media take-up unit

Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

Use the optional Media Take-up Unit to have documents that are printed on rolls rewound automatically after printing. This is convenient for large-format printing, or when printing large-volume jobs continuously.



Note

- For instructions on installing the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide.
- For information on the types of paper compatible with the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774
- For Media Take-up Unit instructions, see "Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)." →P.831

Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

1. Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3
2. Enable roll take-up. (See "Enabling Roll Take-Up.") →P.832
3. Load the rewind spool on the media take-up unit. (See "Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit.") →P.834
4. Turn on the Media Take-up Unit.

5. Print on the roll.

6. Turn off the Media Take-up Unit.

7. Remove the printed document from the media take-up unit. (See "Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional).") →P.842

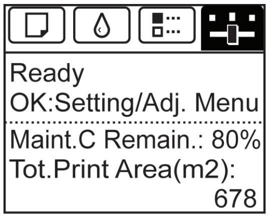
8. Disable roll take-up. (See "Disabling Roll Take-Up.") →P.833

Important

- The Media Take-up Unit cannot be used with sheets.
- If you have attached the Output Stacker, always stow it before using the Media Take-up Unit. (See "Storing the Output Stacker.") →P.829
- Position the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor. This may impair operation. (See "Storing the Output Stacker.") →P.829
- Rolls are not cut automatically when the Media Take-up Unit is used, regardless of the **Cutting Mode** setting in the printer menu or the **Automatic Cutting** setting in the printer driver. However, you can cut paper by pressing the **Cut** button.
- Color tones after printing may change during the ink drying period for some types of paper. Allow ample drying time before the final check of colors, and do not remove printed documents from the Media Take-up Unit too soon.
- In humid environments, documents printed using plenty of ink on relatively insubstantial media such as lightweight Coated Paper may not be retracted evenly by the unit. In this case, take steps to control humidity in the operating environment, or adjust the **Roll DryingTime** setting so that printed documents are retracted after the ink has fully dried.
- In humid environments, documents printed on Fabric Banner or Synthetic Paper may not be retracted evenly by the unit. In this case, take steps to control humidity in the operating environment, or adjust the **Roll DryingTime** setting so that printed documents are retracted after the ink has fully dried.

Enabling Roll Take-Up

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Take-up Reel**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Use Take-up Reel**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Enable**, and then press the **OK** button.

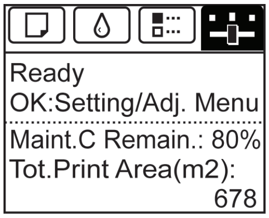
Disabling Roll Take-Up

1. Press the **Cut** button.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The mode now switches from take-up mode to regular mode.

> Note
>
> - The printer will also switch from take-up mode to regular mode if you lift the Release Lever and cut the roll with scissors instead of pressing the **Cut** button.

3. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> Note
>
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

4. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Take-up Reel**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Use Take-up Reel**, and then press the **OK** button.

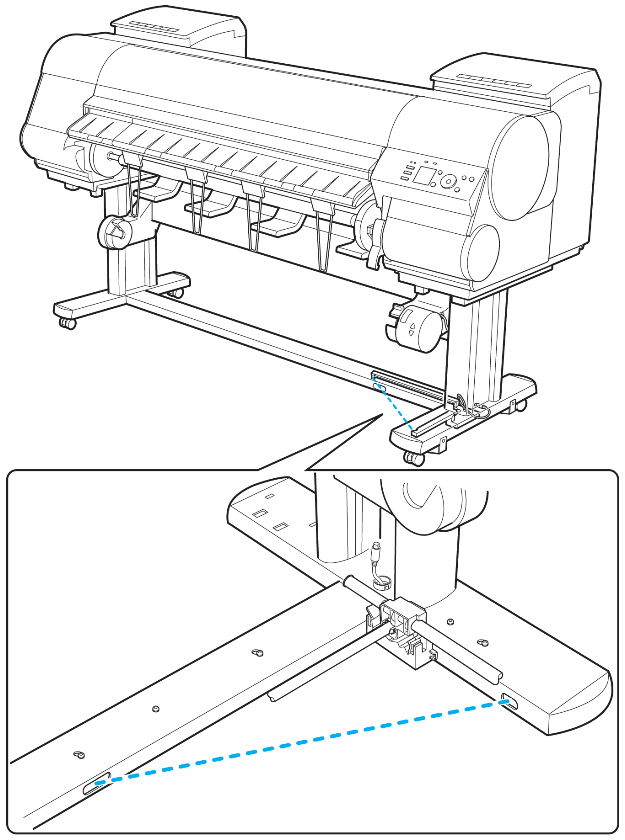
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Disable**, and then press the **OK** button.

Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit

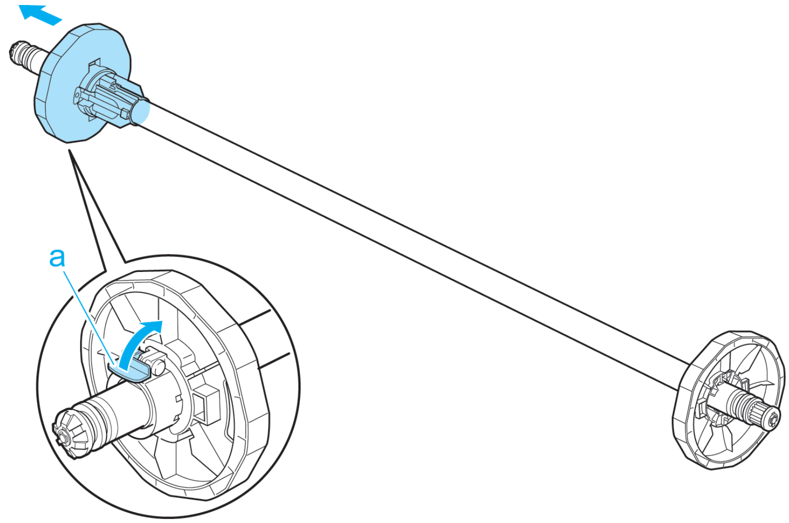
1. When using the Output Stacker, stow the Output Stacker before this procedure. (See "Storing the Output Stacker.") →P.829

Important

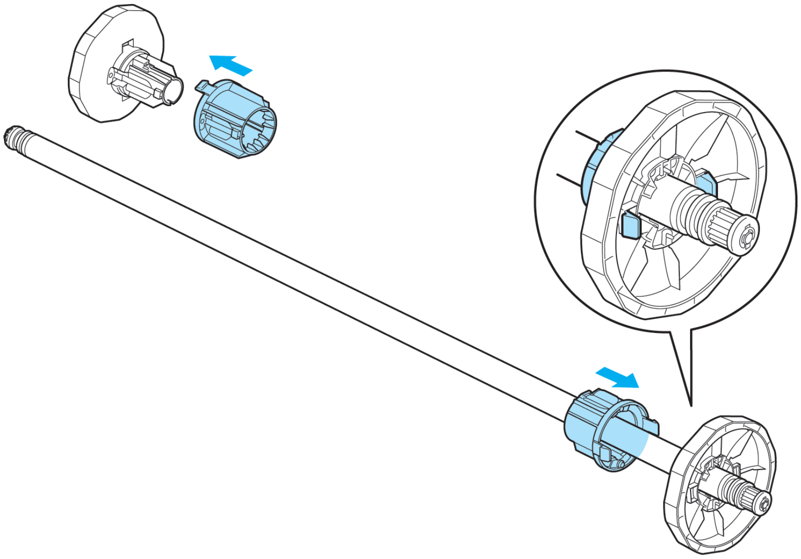
- Position the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor (wave portion). This may impair operation.



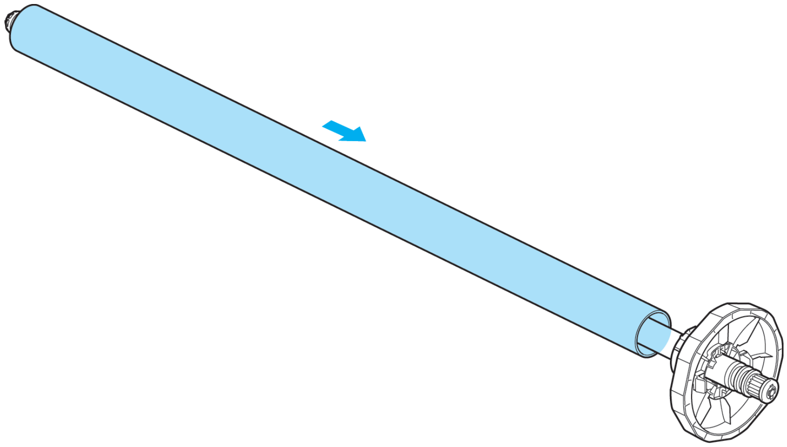
2. Unlock the flange on the left side of the Rewind Spool by lifting the lever (a) from the shaft side. Remove the flange.



3. When rewinding rolls with 3-inch paper cores, insert the 3-inch Adapter on the flanges at both ends.



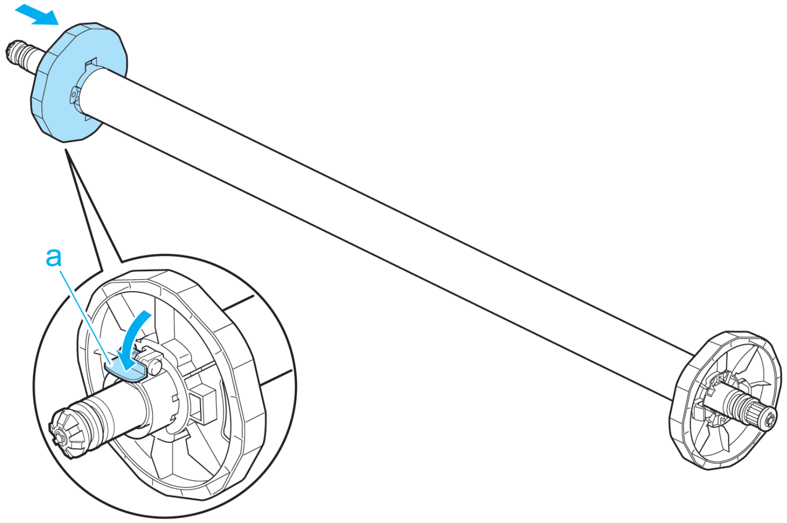
4. Insert the paper core, which serves as the spindle for rewinding a roll, on the Rewind Spool.



Important

- Definitely load the same size of paper core in the Rewind Spool as that of the roll to be rewound. Using a paper core of a different size may cause rewinding problems.

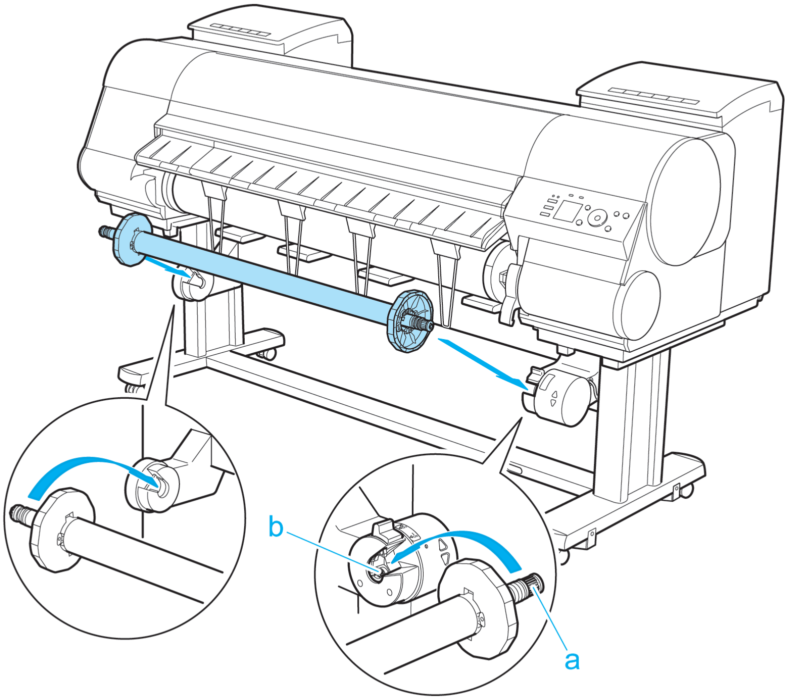
5. Push the flanges in firmly until the paper core is secured in place and push down the lever (a) toward the shaft.



Important

- After the flange is pressed strongly, confirm that the paper core does not move. If you can hold and move the paper core leftward and rightward and there is clearance between the flange and paper core, repeat procedures 2 to 4. If there is clearance, a rewinding problem may result.

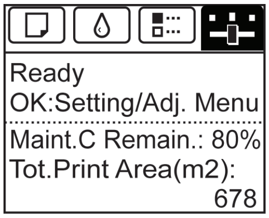
6. Load the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit so that the gear of the Rewind Spool (a) meshes with the gear of the Right Media Take-up Unit (b).



Important

- If the gear of the Rewind Spool (a) does not mesh with the gear of the Right Media Take-up Unit (b), the Media Take-up Unit cannot be turned on.

7. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

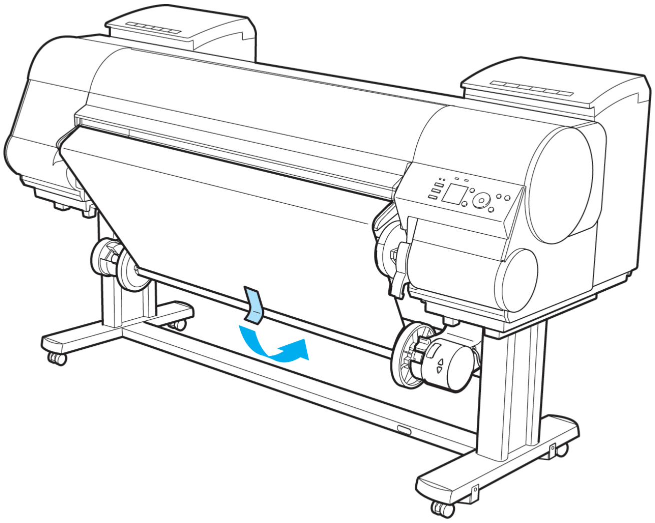
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

8. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

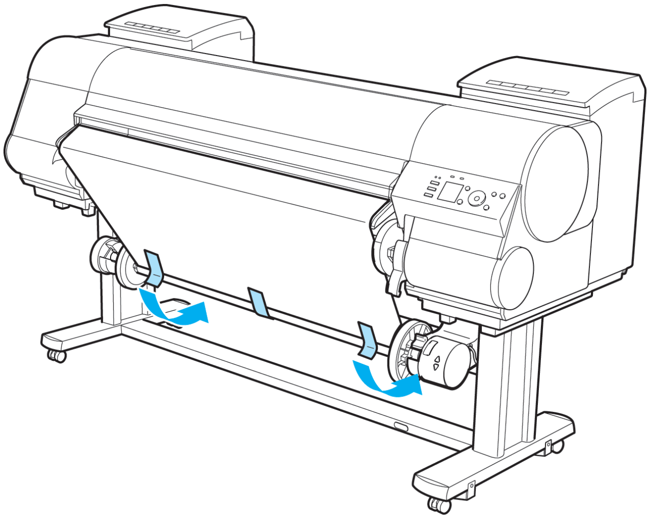
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Take-up Reel**, and then press the **OK** button.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.
The roll is now advanced to the Media Take-up Unit.

11. Hold the roll paper by the middle of the leading edge and align the right edge with the right edge of the paper core of the Rewind Spool. With the left and right edges of the roll paper evenly taut, tape the middle to the paper core to fasten it.



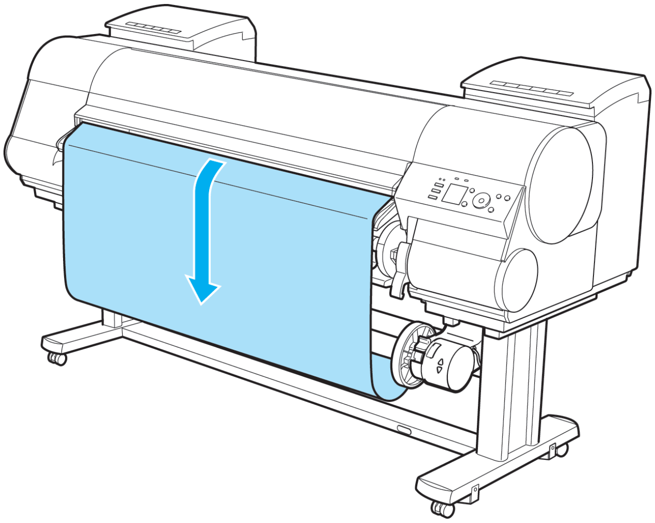
12. Making sure the roll paper is not slack, tape the left and right side of the leading edge to the paper core.



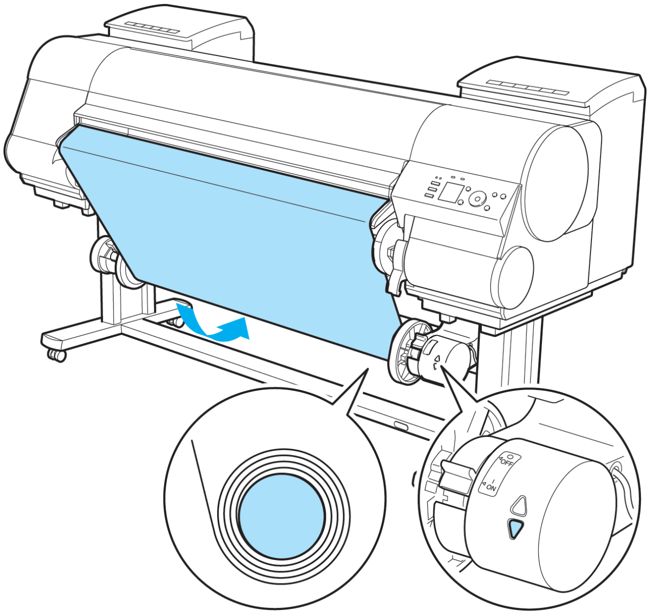
Note

- When rewinding heavyweight paper, use strong adhesive tape to fasten it. Otherwise, a rewinding problem may result.

13. Press the ▼ button to make the roll a little slack.



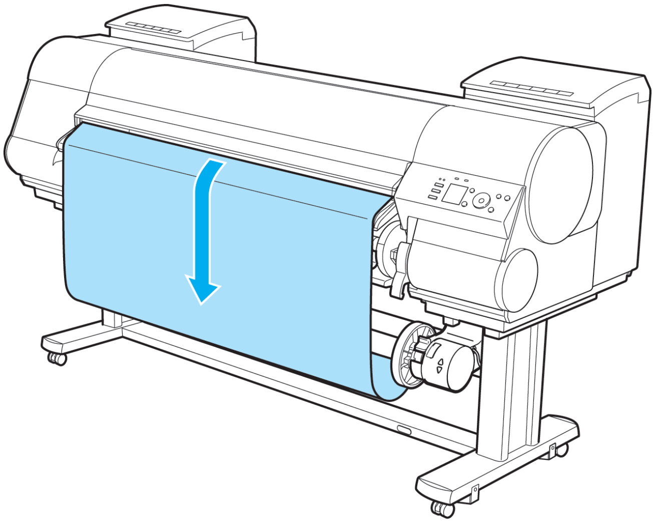
14. On the Right Media Take-up Unit, pull the Rewind Mode Switch forward to turn it on. Press the ▼ button to rewind the roll so that it is nearly taut.



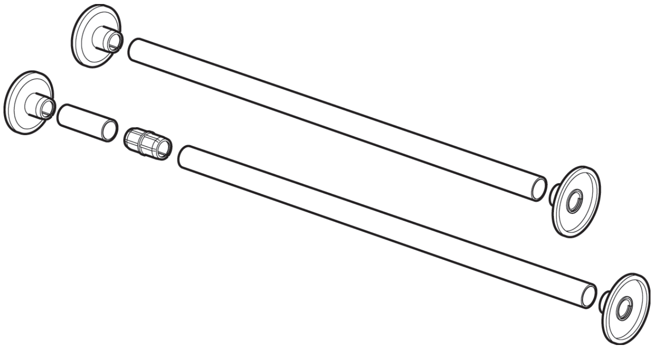
Important

- Rewind the paper so that the paper core makes at least two revolutions. If the paper is not rewound two full revolutions, repeat steps 13 and 14.
- Do not manually force the Rewind Spool or paper core to rotate them. This may damage them. To rewind or unwind rolls, press ▲ or ▼ on the Media Take-up Unit.

15. You can unwind rolls by holding down ▼ on the control panel.



16. Refer to the following table and securely insert the Weight Flange and Weight Joint suitable for the type and width of roll into the Weight Roll.



The following list identifies Weight Roll and Weight Flange you can use. A Color Label is applied to each Weight Roll.

Weight Roll

Roll Width	Weight Roll to Use
B2 Width: 515.0 mm (20.3 in)	**D**
B1 Width: 728.0 mm (28.7 in)	**A**+**E**
B0 Width: 1,030.0 mm (40.6 in)	**A**+**G**
A1 Width: 594.0 mm (23.4 in)	**E**
A0 Width: 841.0 mm (33.1 in)	**B**+**E**
431.8 mm (17 in)	**C**
609.6 mm (24 in)	**E**
762.0 mm (30 in)	**B**+**D**
914.4 mm (36 in)	**G**
1,066.8 mm (42 in)	**C**+**E**
1,117.6 mm (44 in)	**D**+**E**

Weight Flange

Roll Type	Weight Flange to Use
Glossy Photo Paper, Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlossy Photo Paper, Fine Art Photo Paper, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo Paper, Fine Art Textured Paper, Canvas Matte, Fine Art Block Print, Fine Art Watercolor, Proofing Paper, Coated Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Colored Coated Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Backprint Film, Backlit Film, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Fabric Banner, Thin Fabric Banner	Weight Flange 1 (*1)
Premium Matte Paper	Weight Flange 2

*1: If you cannot retract stiff paper well using Weight Flange 1 or if the diameter of the retracted paper is wider than the Rewind Spool, use Weight Flange 2. When using Weight Flange 2, adjust the paper feed amount by executing **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857

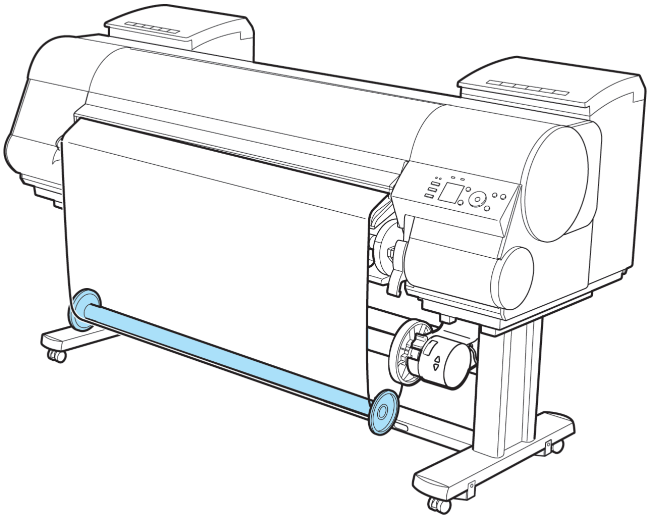
Important

- Do not use combinations other than those identified here.
- Insert the Weight Flange and Weight Joint firmly on the Weight Roll.
- Use identical Weight Flange on the left and right ends. Insert matching Weight Flanges (1 or 2) on both ends of the Weight Roll.

Note

- Keep unused weight rolls, weight joints, and weight flanges handy by putting them in the box and putting the box under the Stand.

17. Set the Weight Roll gently on top of the slack in the roll paper.



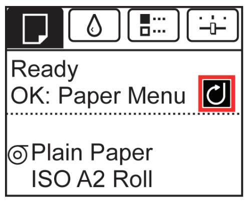
The media take-up unit is now ready for use. Printed rolls can now be rewound automatically.

Important

- Always set the Weight Roll on the paper. Failure to do this may cause rewinding problems.
- When setting the Weight Roll on the paper, avoid touching the paper core and causing the wound roll to become misaligned on the left and right end. If it is misaligned on the left and right ends, a rewinding problem may result.

Note

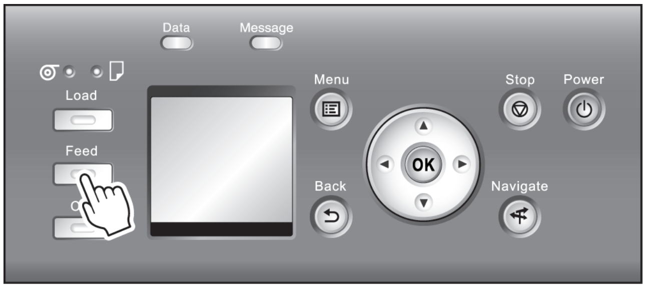
- When the media take-up unit is in use, an icon indicating the take-up mode is shown on the Display Screen.



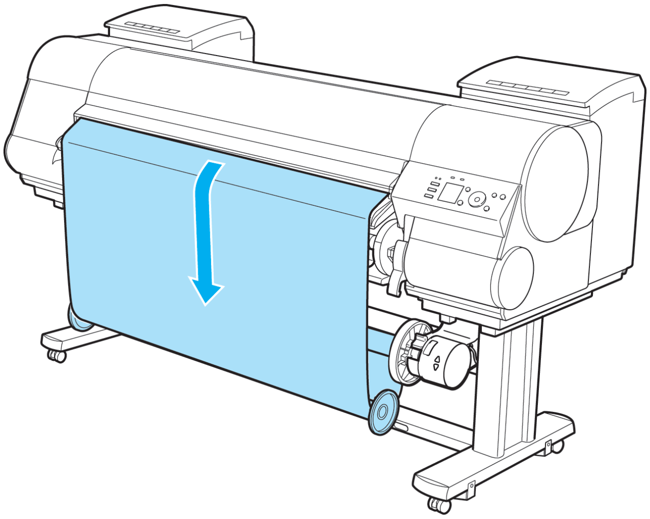
Ready
OK: Paper Menu
Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

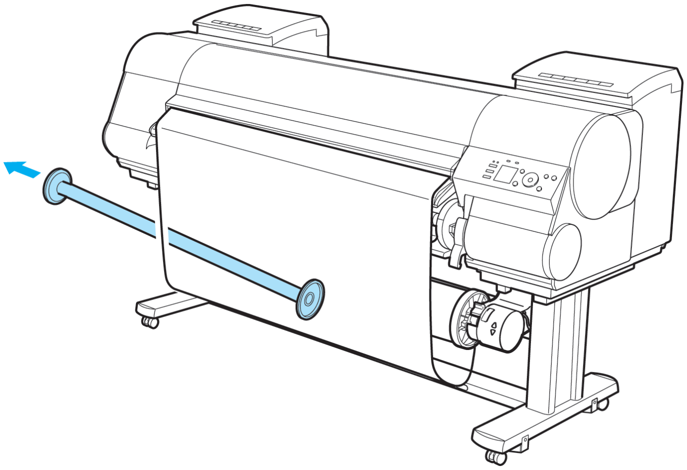
1. Press the **Feed** button.



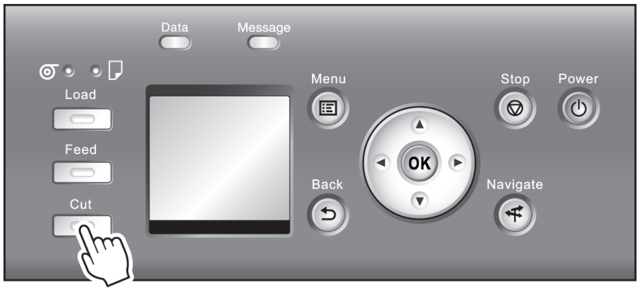
2. Hold down the ▼ button to advance the roll a little.
   To protect the paper that has been rewound, advance it an amount longer than the outer circumference.



3. Remove the Weight Roll from the roll paper.



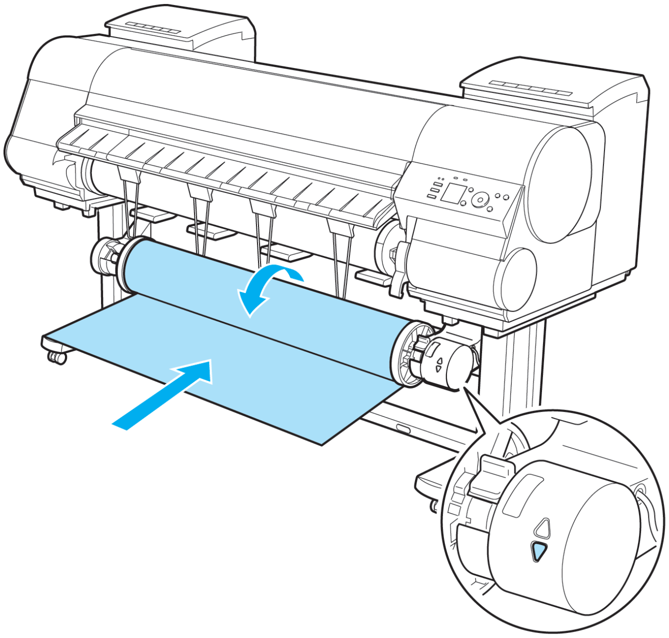
4. Press the **Cut** button.



5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**. As you hold the trailing edge of the printed document, press the **OK** button.
The roll is now cut.

> **Important**
>
> - Always hold the trailing edge of printed documents when cutting rolls. If you do not hold the documents, they may fall on the floor and the printed surface may become soiled.

6. Hold the trailing edge of the printed document and press the ▼ button on the Media Take-up Unit to rewind the printed document.

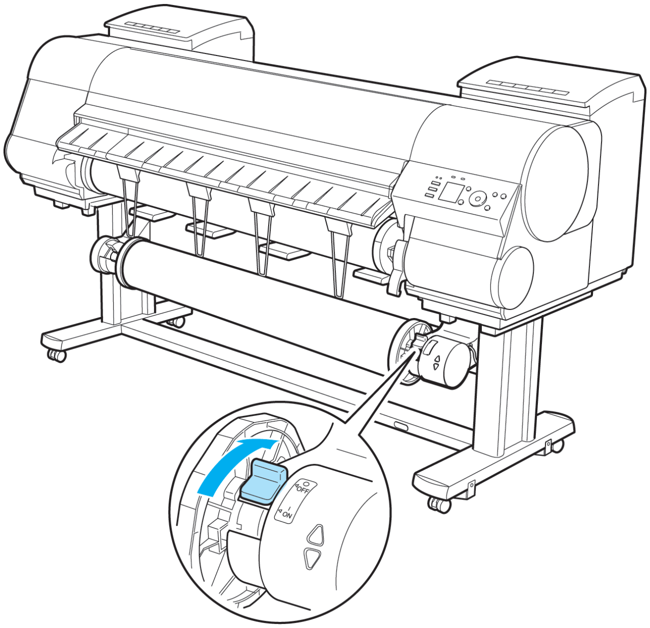


Apply adhesive tape to the rewound paper to hold it in place, if necessary.

Important

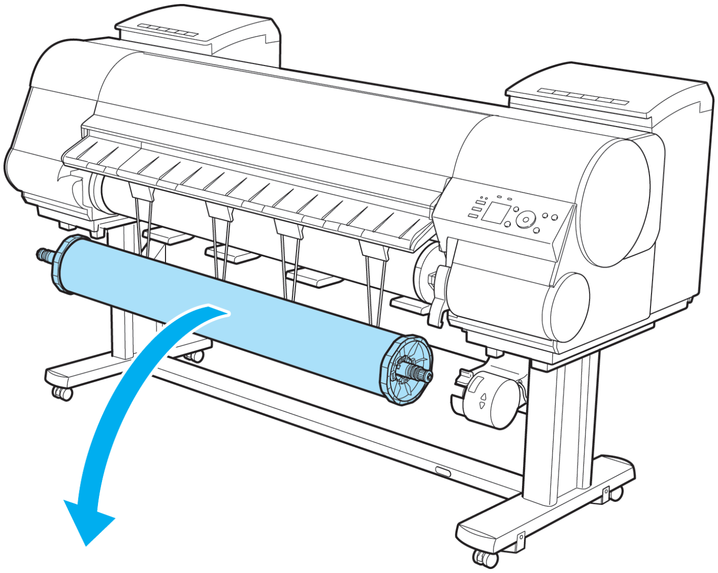
- Be careful not to scratch the printed surface.

7. Turn off the Media Take-up Unit by pushing in the Rewind Mode Switch.



6

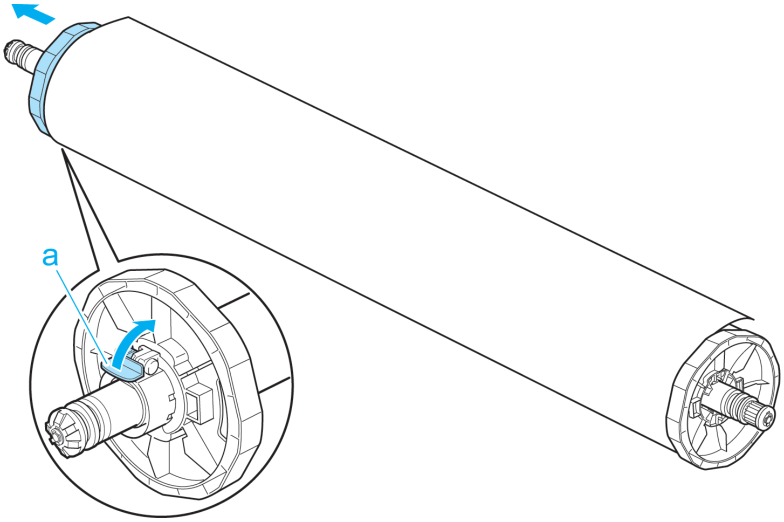
8. Remove the Rewind Spool from the Media Take-up Unit.



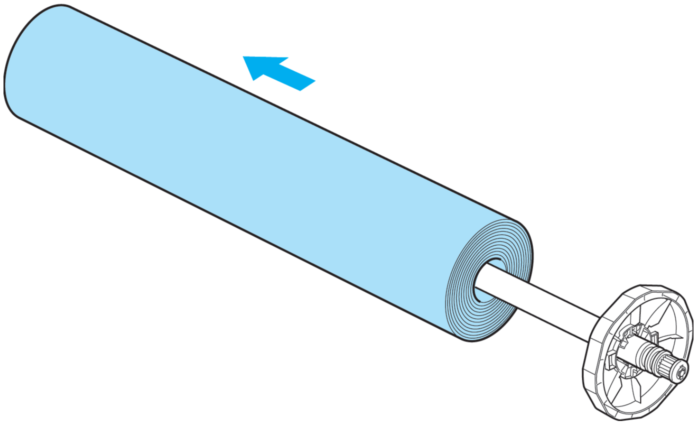
Important

- Always turn off the Media Take-up Unit before removing the Rewind Spool. The Media Take-up Unit may be damaged if you do not turn it off first.
- Remove the Rewind Spool, pulling off both ends from the Media Take-up Unit at once. If you do not pull off both ends at once, the Media Take-up Unit may become damaged.

9. Unlock the flange on the left side of the Rewind Spool by lifting the lever (a) from the shaft side. Remove the flange.



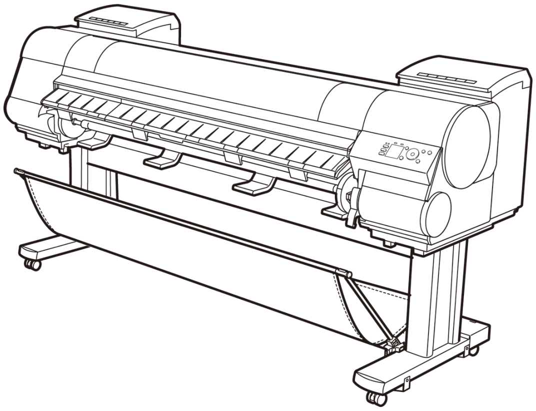
10. Remove the entire paper core with the rewound printed documents from the Rewind Spool.



Note

- You can leave the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit even when it is not used for rewinding rolls.

Adjustments for Better Print Quality



Adjustment for high-precision printing

Enhancing Printing Quality

With some types of paper and under some conditions, adjusting the printer as follows with the paper to be used can enhance printing quality when printing fine lines/text or photos.
Two adjustment options are available: standard adjustment (with the Printhead height set to **Automatic**) and supplemental adjustment (used if standard adjustment is not effective).

Important

- Ideal temperature and humidity during adjustment and for printing in general when the Printhead height is set to **Automatic** are 20–30ºC and 30–60%. Under other environmental conditions, adjustment may not enhance printing quality.

Note

- Paper used for adjustment must conform to the following specifications.
  Type: Glossy or semi-glossy photo paper, or proofing paper (in either case, roll paper only)
  Thickness/weight: 300 µm or less, or 300 g/m² or less
  Width: 25.4 cm (10 in.) or more

Standard Adjustment

Perform standard adjustment with the Printhead height set to **Automatic**.

1. Load paper in the printer.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().

   Note

   - **Auto(Expansion)** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu.
     If so, execute **Auto(Advanced)** once.
   - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(Expansion)**, and then press the **OK** button.

A test pattern is printed for adjustment. This process will take about 11 minutes.

Note

- If standard adjustment does not enhance printing quality, next try supplemental adjustment, which may be helpful.

Supplemental Adjustment

Perform supplemental adjustment with the Printhead height set to **Super Low**.

Important

- Printing with **Head Height** set to **Super Low** may enhance printing quality, but it may also cause paper to rub against or become caught on the Printhead, which may cause paper jams or soiling on printed documents.

1. Set **Head Height** to **Super Low**. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854

   Note

   - If **Super Low** is not available, select **Lowest**.

2. In **Head Posi. Adj.**, select **Auto(Expansion)**.

   Note

   - If paper rubs against the Printhead or becomes jammed during Printhead height adjustment, try selecting a higher level in **Head Height** and performing **Auto(Expansion)** again.

Adjusting the Printhead

Adjusting the Printhead

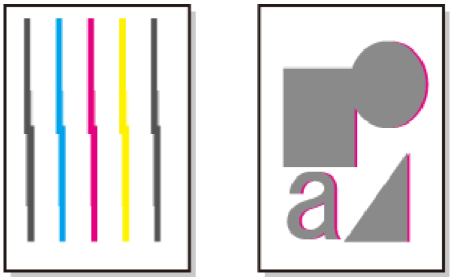
If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the printhead.

- Printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors
  Execute **Nozzle Check** to check for printhead nozzle clogging.
  For instructions, see "Checking for Nozzle Clogging." →P.1011
- Printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment
  Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the printhead position.
  Normally, execute **Auto(Standard)**, **Auto(Advanced)**, or **Auto(Expansion)**. However, when using special paper or if printing is not improved after executing **Auto(Advanced)**, try **Manual**.
  (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
  (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.852
- Paper rubs against the printhead, or image edges are blurred
  Executing **Head Height** to adjust the printhead height may improve printing results.
  (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854

Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)

If vertical lines in printed documents are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.**. The printer will print and read a test pattern, and the Printhead position will be adjusted automatically.
There are three modes for automatic Printhead adjustment: **Auto(Standard)**, **Auto(Advanced)** and **Auto(Expansion)**.

- **Auto(Standard)**
  Fixes slight distortion and color misalignment.
- **Auto(Advanced)**
  Try adjustment in this mode if **Auto(Standard)** does not improve printing.
- **Auto(Expansion)**
  Try adjustment in this mode if vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment when the printer driver option **Print Priority** is set to **Proof**.



Important

- This function is not available with CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of paper, or try **Manual** adjustment.
  (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.852

Note

- Because the results of adjustment vary depending on the type of paper used for adjustment, use the same type of paper as you will use for printing. Even if you will print on a different type of paper, we recommend using **Auto(Advanced)** for adjustment.
- If **Auto(Advanced)** does not improve printing, try adjustment in **Manual** mode.
  (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.852
- Advanced adjustment can enable superior printing quality when printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper.
  (See "Enhancing Printing Quality.") →P.848

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	**Auto(Standard)** : Three sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2) **Auto(Advanced)** : 11 sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or three sheets when using A2) **Auto(Expansion)** : Seven sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or two sheets when using A2)

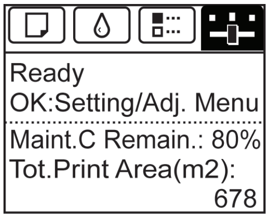
Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

   Important

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

   Note

   - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

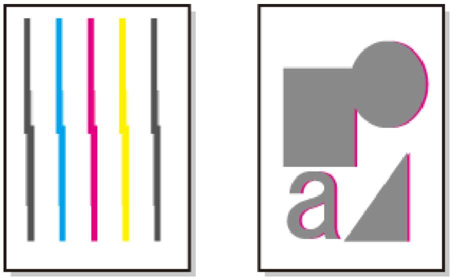
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(Standard)**, **Auto(Advanced)**, or **Auto(Expansion)**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll.

> Note
> - **Auto(Expansion)** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu. If so, execute **Auto(Advanced)** once.

7. If you are printing on sheets, a confirmation message is displayed requesting you to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions displayed.

Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.
Normally, execute **Auto(Standard)**, **Auto(Advanced)**, or **Auto(Expansion)**.
(See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
However, when printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Auto(Advanced)**, try **Manual**.
Manual adjustment requires you to examine the printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.



> Note
> - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

Items to Prepare

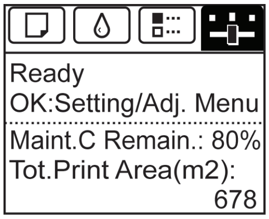
When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	Three sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)

Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

> Important
> - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

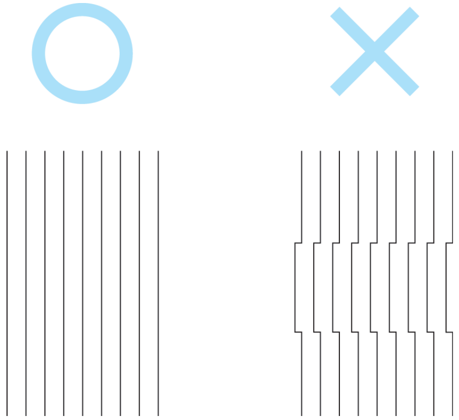
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

Note
- **Manual** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu.
If so, execute **Auto(Advanced)** once.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the **OK** button.

9. Examine adjustment test pattern **D-1** and determine the number with straight lines.



Note
- If two patterns seem equally good and you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.
For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.

11. Repeat steps 8–10 to specify the adjustment value for **D-1** to **D-8**, **D-10** to **D-20**, **D-22** to **D-32**, and **D-34** to **D-36**.

12. Press the **Back** button.

13. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the **OK** button.

14. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
    The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)

The Printhead height setting affects printing quality.
Specifying a low Printhead height makes images clearer and enhances printing quality but may cause paper to rub against the Printhead.
On the other hand, specifying a high Printhead height will prevent paper from rubbing against the Printhead but may reduce the printing quality.

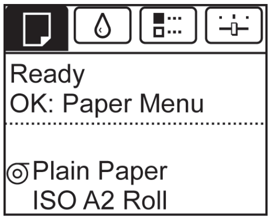
Important

- Paper rubbing against or becoming caught on the Printhead may jam or result in printed documents that are soiled.

Note

- Raise or lower the printhead, depending on the nature of the problem.
  (See "Paper rubs against the printhead.") →P.1072
  (See "The edges of the paper are dirty.") →P.1073
  (See "Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs.") →P.1077

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().


Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

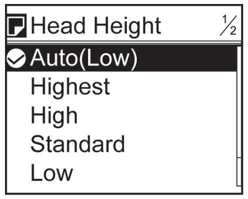
2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- When **Head Height** is set to **Automatic**, the setting value selected for the previous print job is displayed (to the right of **Automatic**) once you select the type of paper currently supplied.
  However, the value is cleared when the printer is turned off or the paper is replaced.



Head Height 1/2

✓ Auto(Low)

Highest

High

Standard

Low

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- Using **Automatic** will ensure that the printer adjusts the Printhead height to the optimal level before printing, accounting for the ambient temperature and humidity. When a setting other than **Automatic** is used, that value will always be applied.
- Depending on the type of paper, some setting values may not be available.

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

1. Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper.
   (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).") →P.856

2. Execute **Adj. Quality** or **Adjust Length**, depending on the selection in **Adj. Priority**.
   (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
   (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.859
   (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).") →P.861

3. After executing **Adj. Quality**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** for further adjustment as needed.
   (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).") →P.861

Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority)

Methods of adjusting the amount paper is fed are set in **Adj. Priority**.
Adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit your particular printing application.

- **Print Quality** : Adjusts the feed amount to reduce banding across the sheet in printed documents.
  Adj. Quality settings are applied. When **Adj. Fine Feed** is executed, the **Adj. Fine Feed** settings are applied in addition to the **Adj. Quality** settings.
- **Print Length** : Adjusts the feed amount for better accuracy of lines in printed documents.
  The settings of **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in **Adjust Length** are applied.
- **Automatic** : **Print Quality** or **Print Length** is selected, depending on **Print Priority** as selected in the printer driver at the time of printing.
  Image or **Office Document** : **Print Quality** is selected.
  Line Drawing/Text : **Print Length** is selected.

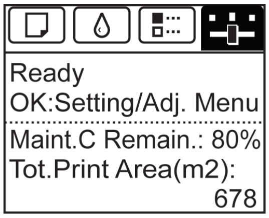
Note

- Either **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in the **Adjust Length** menu is applied, depending on printer driver settings at the time of printing.
- If you have selected **Easy Settings** in the printer driver, follow these steps to confirm the **Print Priority** setting.
  - Windows: Click **View Settings** on the **Main** tab to display the **View Settings** dialog box.
  - Mac OS X: Click **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.

Follow these steps to configure the settings.

1. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Automatic**, **Print Quality**, or **Print Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors across the sheet, execute **Adj. Quality** for automatic adjustment of the paper feed amount.
There are two modes of automatic adjustment to correct banding: **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**. In either mode, the printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

- **Auto(GenuinePpr)**
  Use this mode with paper identified in the Paper Reference Guide.
  (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

- **Auto(OtherPaper)**
  Use this mode with paper not in the Paper Reference Guide, or if **Auto(GenuinePpr)** does not eliminate banding.
  (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

Important

- Adjustment is not possible with **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)** when using highly transparent media.
  In this case, use **Manual** adjustment.
  (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.859

Note

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**.
  (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).") →P.856
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed**.
  (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).") →P.861
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.
  (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).") →P.861
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	**Auto(GenuinePpr)** : One sheet of unused paper, A4/Letter size **Auto(OtherPaper)** : Two sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)

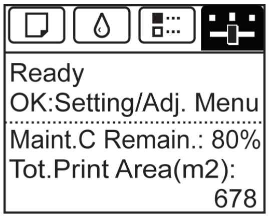
Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

   Important

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified in the settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

   Note

   - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
   Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.

8. If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Auto(OtherPaper)**, a confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to continue printing.
   Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, execute **Adj. Quality** for adjustment of the paper feed amount. Use **Manual** adjustment with highly transparent media or other paper for which **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)** cannot be used.
(See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
Manual adjustment requires you to enter an adjustment value after a test pattern is printed.

Note

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Manual** adjustment.
  (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).") →P.856
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Manual** adjustment, use **Adj. Fine Feed**
  (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).") →P.861
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.
  (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).") →P.861

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

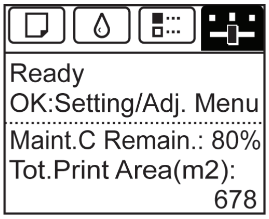
Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

   Important

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

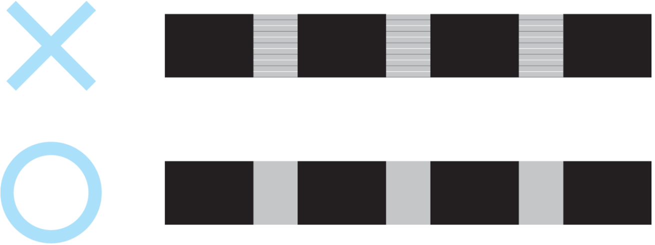
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern A is printed for manual adjustment.

> **Note**
> - When printing on sheets, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

8. Examine test pattern A for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.



> **Note**
> - If banding seems least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.
>   For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.
   Test pattern B is printed for adjustment.

> **Note**
> - If you printed test pattern A on a sheet, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and use another sheet of the same type of paper.
>   Additionally, after test pattern B is printed, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

10. Examine test pattern B for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.

11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.
    The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

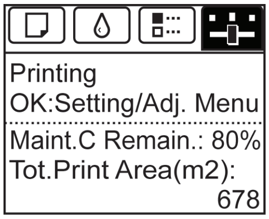
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed)

If the contrast is uneven or banding in different colors appears at 50 mm (2.0 in) intervals in printed documents, try executing **Adj. Fine Feed** during printing to fine-tune the feed amount.

> Note
> - Always execute **Adj. Quality** before **Adj. Fine Feed**.
>   Once you execute **Adj. Quality**, the **Adj. Fine Feed** value will revert to 0.
>   (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
>   (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.859

Perform adjustment as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Fine Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting value in the range -5 to +5, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is now applied.

Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length)

To ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, use **Adjust Length** to adjust the amount that paper is advanced.
There are two options in **Adjust Length** : **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings**.

- **AdjustmentPrint**
  After a test pattern is printed, you will measure the discrepancy based on the results of printing.
- **Change Settings**
  No test pattern is printed. Instead, you will measure a document already printed to determine the discrepancy.

Additionally, two modes are available in both **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings** : **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**. Choose the mode that suits your particular printing application.

- **A:High**
  This setting is applied when **Highest quality** or **High** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.
- **B:Standard/Draft**
  This setting is applied when **Standard** or **Fast** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.

Note

- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Adjust Length**. (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).") →P.856
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	• An unused roll at least 10 inches wide • High-precision ruler
When Using Sheets	• One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size • High-precision ruler

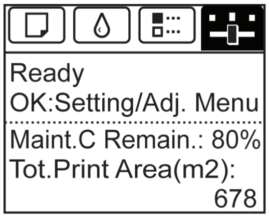
Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

   Important

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

   Note

   - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

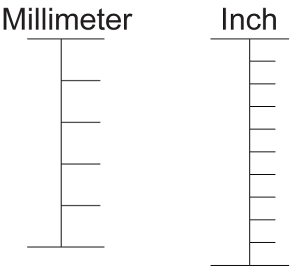
3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AdjustmentPrint** or **Change Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
When you select **AdjustmentPrint**, a test pattern is printed for you to measure the scale and calculate the discrepancy. The scale bar shows **Millimeter** in 50 mm units and **Inch** in 1 inch units.



Note
- A test pattern is printed in black when you choose **A:High** or in magenta if you choose **B:Standard/ Draft**.
- To cancel printing the test pattern for adjustment, hold down the **Stop** button. When "**Stop printing?**" is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button.

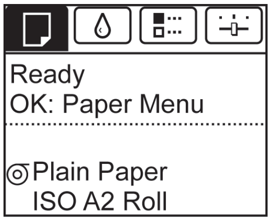
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the amount of discrepancy, and then press the **OK** button.
If the scale is shorter than the actual size, use a positive setting value. If it is longer, use a negative value.
The feed amount can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the Printhead rubs against paper, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

Important
- Paper rubbing against or becoming caught on the Printhead may jam or result in printed documents that are soiled.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (🗋).


Ready
OK: Paper Menu

Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

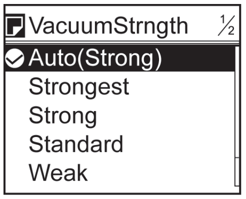
2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- When **VacuumStrngth** is set to **Automatic**, the setting value selected for the previous print job is displayed (to the right of **Automatic**) once you select the type of paper currently supplied. However, the value is cleared when the printer is turned off or the paper is replaced.



5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

Color adjustment

Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment

What is Color Calibration?

Color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears when printing due to individual variations or aging among the printers.
Executing color calibration will print a test pattern, which will be read automatically by a sensor built in the printer.
By this operation, an adjustment value reflecting the print result of the test pattern is set automatically.

Important

- For better color consistency, execute color calibration under the same conditions of temperature and humidity each time.
  If you execute color calibration under various conditions of temperature and humidity, correct adjustment may not be possible.
- If you execute color calibration with paper classified for common calibration, continue to use the same type of paper for better color consistency.
  If you execute color calibration with multiple paper types, correct adjustment may not be possible.
- Before color calibration, ensure the printer is not exposed to direct sunlight or other strong sources of light.
  If the printer is exposed to strong sources of light, correct adjustment may not be possible.

Recommend Timing for Color Calibration

We recommend color calibration in the following situations.

- After initial printer installation
- After Printhead replacement
- If colors seem different from before, despite using the same printing environment, under the same conditions
- To ensure uniform colors when printing on multiple printers (however, be sure to use the same version of firmware and printer driver, under the same settings)
- When the Execution Guide is displayed (Specifying Execution Guide →P.868)

Note

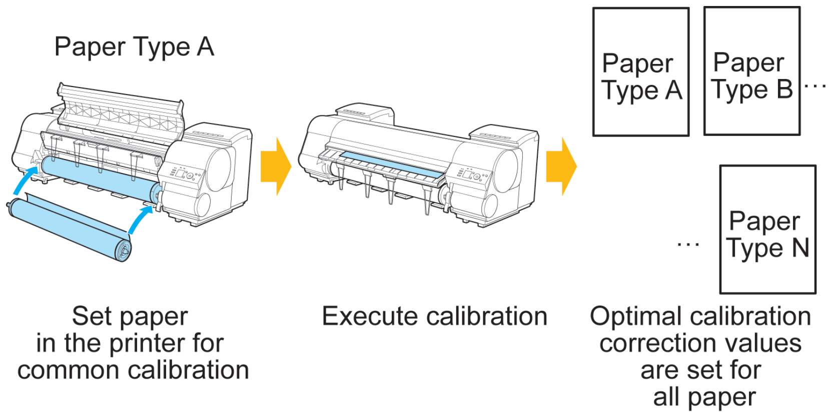
- You can confirm information of color calibration such as the execution date and executed paper type by the following method.

Confirm it on the Control Panel of the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Calibration Log**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
Print information about the printer.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Test Print** > **Status Print**. (See "Status Print.") →P.951
Confirm with imagePROGRAF Status Monitor. (Windows)	On the **Information** sheet of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.") →P.426
Confirm this in the **Printer Information** dialog box of the printer driver. (Mac OS X)	In the **Printer Information** dialog box, click the **Information** tab, and click the **View Calibration Log** button. (See "Main Pane (Mac OS X).") →P.495

Adjustment Types of Color Calibration

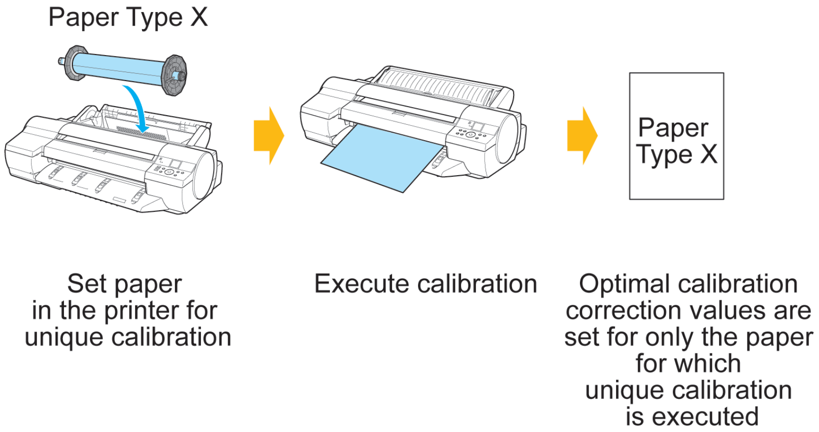
Two types of color calibration are available: common calibration and unique calibration.
The adjustment type in which calibration is to be classified is decided in advance according to the paper type for which calibration is to be executed. To confirm the adjustment type in which calibration is to be classified, refer to Paper that can be used in Color Calibration →P.869 .

- Common calibration
  If you execute color calibration with paper classified for common calibration, the color calibration adjustment value is set for all print qualities of all paper types (including paper types for which color calibration cannot be executed).
  If executing color calibration per paper type is unnecessary, you can operate calibration easily in a short time.
  For better color consistency, continue to use the same type of paper in color calibration.


Paper Type A
Paper Type A
Paper Type B
…
…
Paper Type N
Set paper in the printer for common calibration
Execute calibration
Optimal calibration correction values are set for all paper

- Unique calibration
  If you execute color calibration with paper types classified for unique calibration, the color calibration adjustment value is set for only the executed paper. The set adjustment value is not applied to paper types other than that for which color calibration was executed.

If unique calibration is not executed, the adjustment value of common calibration is applied when printing.



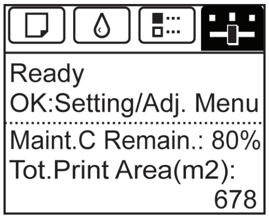
Executing Color Calibration

Perform adjustment as follows.

1. You can confirm whether the paper to be loaded can be used in color calibration.
   - Paper that can be used in Color Calibration →P.869

2. Load the paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

3. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select (Settings/Adj. tab).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

4. Press the **OK** button.
   Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

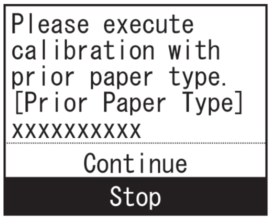
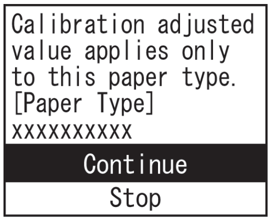
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Calibration**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Adjust**, and then press the **OK** button.
After the environment measurements and paper are confirmed, and color calibration is executed, the adjustment value is set automatically.

Note

- A confirmation message may be displayed depending on the paper type.

 Please execute calibration with prior paper type. [Prior Paper Type] XXXXXXXXXX Continue Stop	Although you attempted to execute common calibration, since the paper type differs from that executed the previous time, replace it with the same paper type for which calibration was executed the previous time. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop**, and then press the **OK** button.
 Calibration adjusted value applies only to this paper type. [Paper Type] XXXXXXXXXX Continue Stop	This is displayed in the case of unique calibration. To continue color calibration, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Continue**, and then press the **OK** button.

- The application of the adjustment value when printing can be set in the printer driver or on the menu of the Control Panel.
  However, when the setting value of the printer driver and the setting value of the Control Panel differ, the setting of the printer driver is prioritized.

Configure on the printer driver menu. (Windows)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows).") →P.220
Configure on the printer driver menu. (Mac OS X)	Configure **Calibration Value**. (See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X).") →P.500
Configure on the menu of the Control Panel.	From **Set./Adj. Menu**, select **Adjust Printer** > **Calibration** > **Use Adj. Value**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

- After executing color calibration, you can also adjust colors as desired in the printer driver. (See "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.") →P.55

Specifying Execution Guide

Execution Guide is a function in which a guide is displayed on the Control Panel, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows), imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh), or RemoteUI when you execute color calibration.
If you enable this function, an Execution Guide is displayed in the following cases.

- When a new Printhead has been installed
- When a certain amount of printing has been executed after color calibration is executed
- When the data of color calibration has been initialized

To enable the function, set "**Set Exec. Guide**" to **On** on the menu of the Control Panel.
(See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

Paper that can be used in Color Calibration

Recommended Environment for Use of Paper

Since the recommended use environment varies according to the paper type, use within the recommended environment range suiting the paper type.
For details, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

Paper Type and Adjustment Type

In color calibration, you can use any of the following paper types.
Also, the adjustment type of color calibration is decided according to the paper type. (See "Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment.") →P.865
For details, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

Paper Type	Country or Region of Use selected when the printer driver was installed			Adjustment Type
	Japan, Asia, Oceania	**EU**	**North or South America**	
HW Coated	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
GlossyPhotoHG170	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
SemGlsPhotoHG170	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
GlossyPhotoHG255	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
SemGlsPhotoHG255	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
Premium Gl2 280	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
Prem.SemiGl2 280	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
Poster Semi-Gl	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
SatinPhoto 190	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
Proofing Paper	Available	Not available	Available	Common calibration
Proofing Paper3	Available	Not available	Available	Unique calibration
FineArt Photo	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
FneArt HW Photo	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration
GlossyPhoto 190	Not available	Available	Available	Common calibration
GlossyPhoto 240	Not available	Available	Available	Common calibration
SatinPhoto 240	Not available	Available	Available	Common calibration
RC Photo Luster	Not available	Not available	Available	Unique calibration
Comm Proofing	Not available	Available	Available	Common calibration
SemiGlProof 195	Not available	Available	Not available	Unique calibration
PhotoProPlat adj	Available	Available	Available	Common calibration

Note

- For details on the paper that can be used when **PhotoProPlat adj** is selected as the paper type, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

Paper Sizes that can be Used in Color Calibration

Paper sizes that can be used in color calibration differ for sheets and rolls.
For details, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide (however, a roll at least 16 inches wide depending on the paper type)
When Using Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (however, one sheet of unused paper of at least A2 size depending on the paper type)

Registration and Confirmation of Paper Information

• To Register Paper Information on the Printer

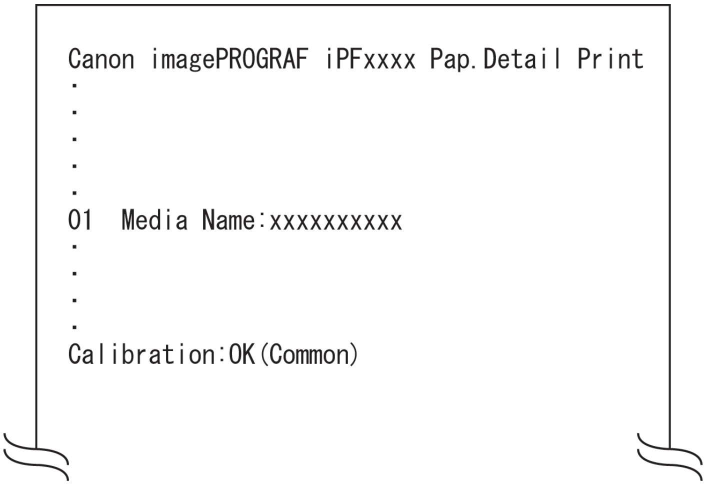
When using newly released paper, paper information must be registered on the printer and the printer driver. Download the new version of **Media Information File** from the Canon website and install it.

(See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

• To Confirm the Paper Information Registered on the Printer

When confirming the paper information registered on the printer, select **Paper Details** on the Control Panel menu, and print the detailed information of the paper.

In the **Calibration** column, **OK(Common)** is displayed for the paper for which common calibration is executed, **OK(Unique)** is displayed for the paper for which unique calibration is executed, and **N/A** is displayed for the paper for which color calibration cannot be executed.



```
Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Pap.Detail Print
.
.
.
.
.
01  Media Name:xxxxxxxxxx
.
.
.
.
Calibration:OK(Common)
```

Important

- If, when reinstalling the printer driver, you change the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool, the region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation will be deleted.
  Using paper with deleted information when executing color calibration will prevent the resulting calibration adjustment value from being applied to all other types of the paper.
  To apply the color calibration, prepare paper compatible with color calibration in the newly selected region and perform color calibration again.
  (See Media Configuration Tool →P.448 .)
  (See Media Configuration Tool →P.677 .)
- To restore the default settings, set **Reset PaprSetngs** to **Yes** in **System Setup** in the Control Panel menu.
  Because paper information added or modified by the Media Configuration Tool is deleted, if you have calibrated the printer using paper with information added by the Media Configuration Tool, color calibration executed this way can no longer be applied to any type of paper.
  If you wish to apply calibration results, prepare calibration-compatible paper that was in the original settings and perform calibration again.
  (See Media Configuration Tool →P.448 .)
  (See Media Configuration Tool →P.677 .)

Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment

You can print in the colors that look best when viewed under the light where the printed image will be displayed.
There are two ways to adjust the color tone for the ambient light, as follows.

- By selecting color tones on **Chart** before printing

On the printed **Chart**, note the number of the set of colors with the desired color tone and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function is only supported in Windows and Mac OS X 10.4 or later.
- The colors in this function may differ slightly depending on the system software used (Windows 32/64 bit or Macintosh).

For instructions on selecting color tones on **Chart** before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Selecting Color Tones on Charts Before Printing (Windows) →P.872
- Selecting Color Tones on Charts Before Printing (Mac OS X) →P.876

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the i1 spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported i1 devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.
- This function is only supported in Windows and Mac OS X 10.4 or later.
- The colors in this function may differ slightly depending on the system software used (Windows 32/64 bit or Macintosh).

For instructions on measuring light levels before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Windows) →P.881

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Mac OS X) →P.884

Selecting Color Tones on Charts Before Printing (Windows)

Print **Chart**, note the number of the chart with your desired color tone, and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

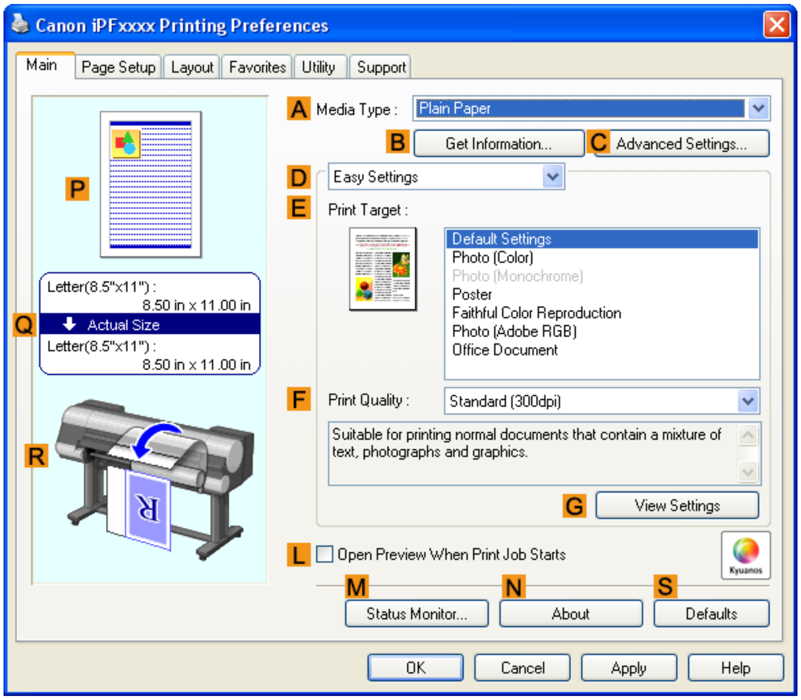
Important
- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.

Note
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

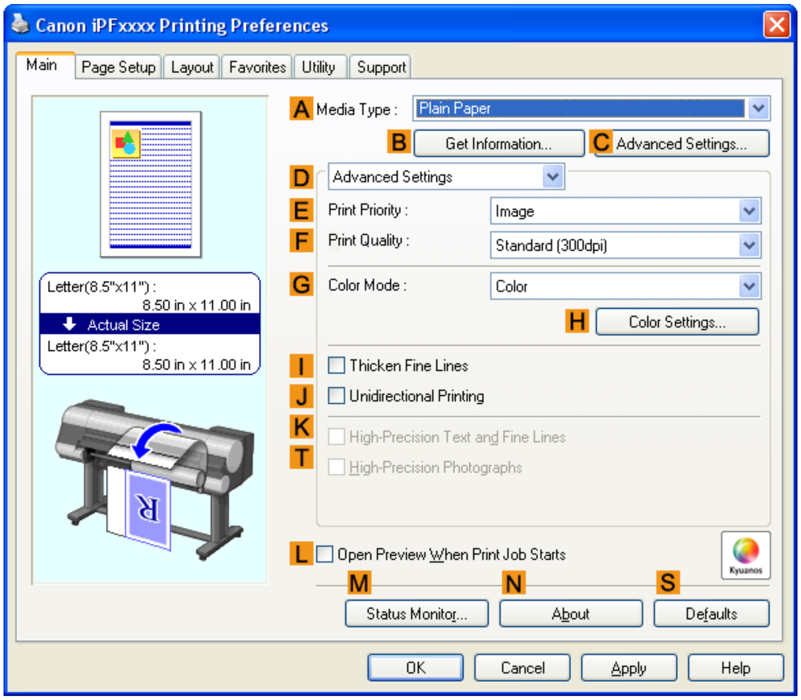
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

Important
- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

5. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Advanced Settings

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

G Color Mode : Color

I ☐ Thicken Fine Lines

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

T ☐ High-Precision Photographs

L ☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

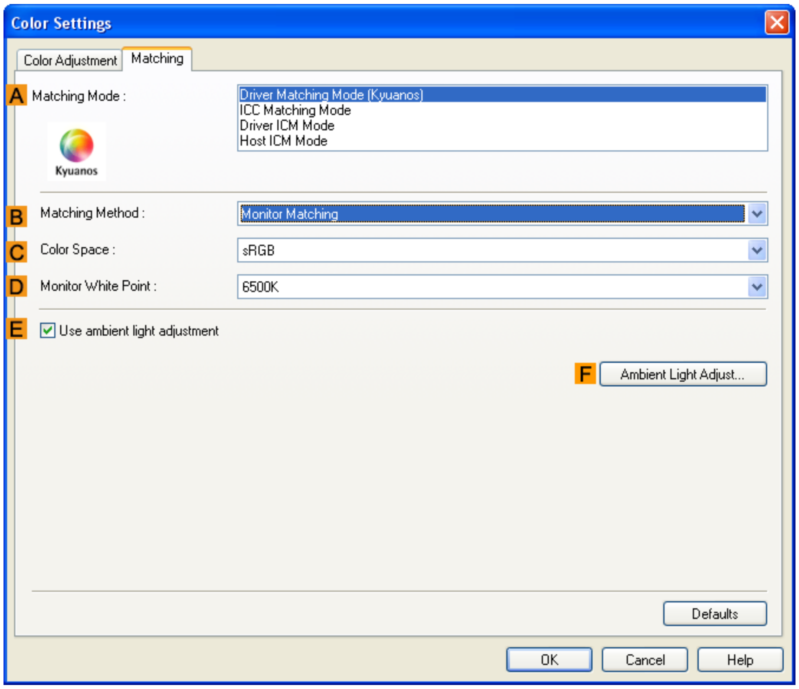
6. In **F** **Print Quality**, click **High**.

> Important
>
> - You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

7. Click **Color** in the **G** **Color Mode** list.

8. Click **H** **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.



Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos)

Matching Method : Monitor Matching

Color Space : sRGB

Monitor White Point : 6500K

☑ Use ambient light adjustment

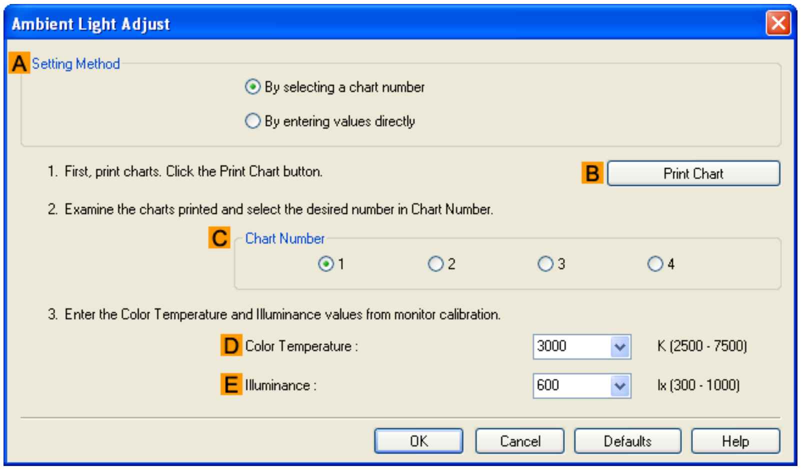
10. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A Matching Mode**.

Note

- To specify monitor matching, select **Monitor Matching** in **B Matching Method**. In this case, select the same color space as when the file was opened in **C Color Space** and the monitor color temperature in **D Monitor White Point**.

11. Select **E Use ambient light adjustment**.

12. Click **F Ambient Light Adjust** to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box.



● By selecting a chart number

○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button.

2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

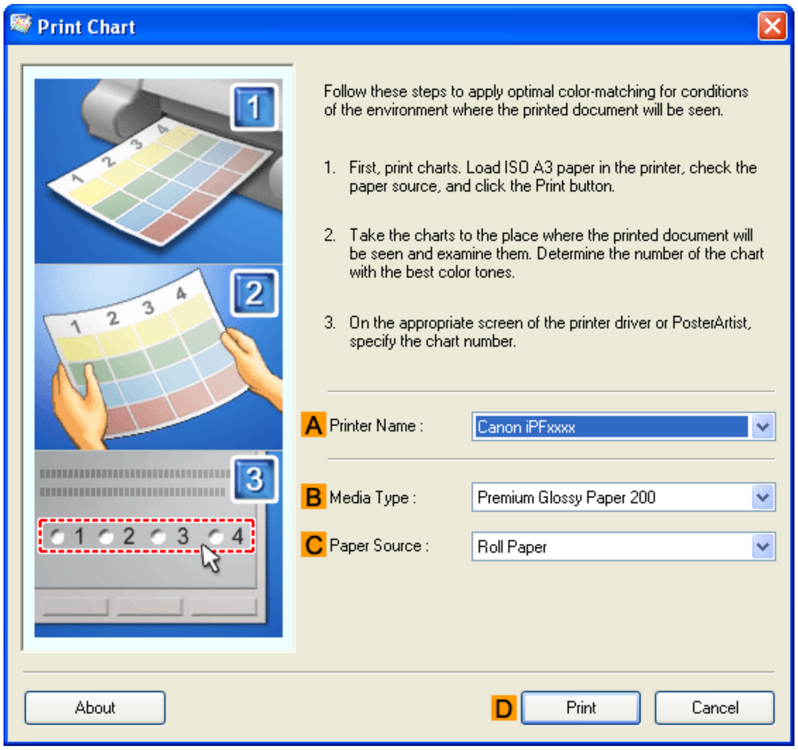
3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

Illuminance : 600 lx (300 - 1000)

13. Confirm that **By selecting a chart number** is selected in **A Setting Method**.
If it is not selected already, select it.

14. Click **B** **Print Chart**.
Light Source Check Tool now starts up.



Print Chart

Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.

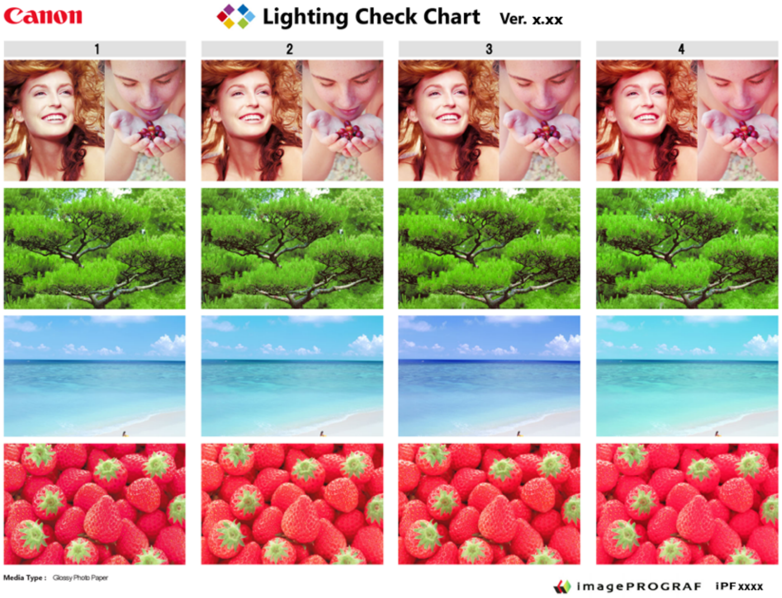
1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the paper source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver or PosterArtist, specify the chart number.

A Printer Name : Canon iPFxxxx

B Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

C Paper Source : Roll Paper

15. Check the settings and click **D** **Print**.
The **Chart** is printed.

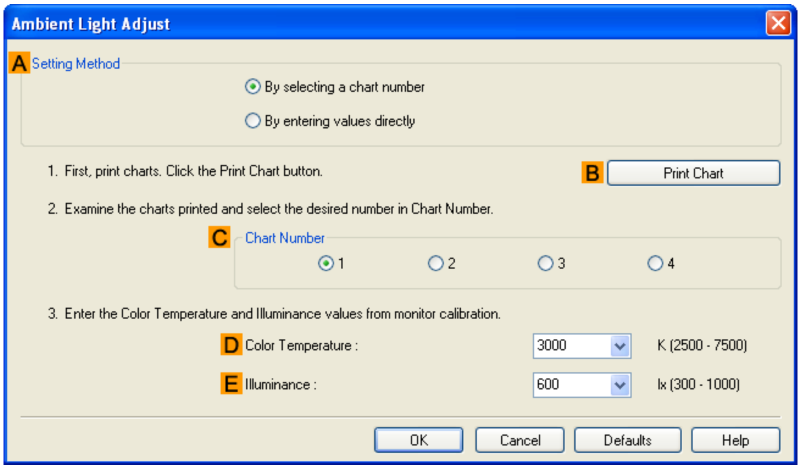


Canon
Lighting Check Chart Ver. x.xx
1
2
3
4
Media Type : Glossy Photo Paper
imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx

16. In the viewing environment, determine the number of the set of images on the **Chart** in which all four vertical images have the best overall color tone.

> Note
>
> - Choose the number of the set of images in which the people, the blue of the sky, and the red of the strawberries look the most natural overall.

17. In the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box, select the number of your preferred chart in C **Chart Number**.


Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method
- ● By selecting a chart number
- ○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button.
2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

C Chart Number: ● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

D Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

E Illuminance : 600 lx (300 - 1000)

18. If **Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** sheet, enter the D **Color Temperature** and E **Illuminance** as measured during monitor calibration.

19. Click **OK**.

20. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

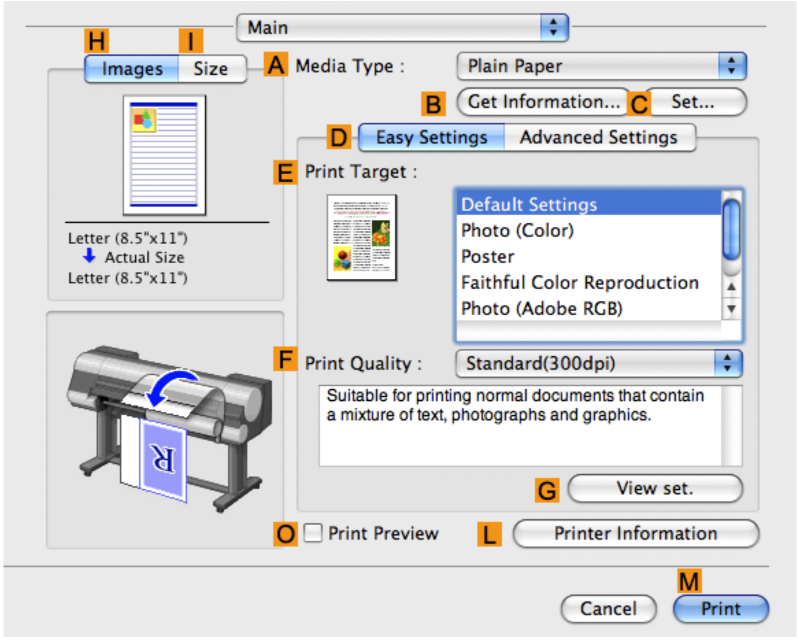
Selecting Color Tones on Charts Before Printing (Mac OS X)

Print **Chart**, note the number of the chart with your desired color tone, and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X).") →P.494

3. Make sure the **Main** panel is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

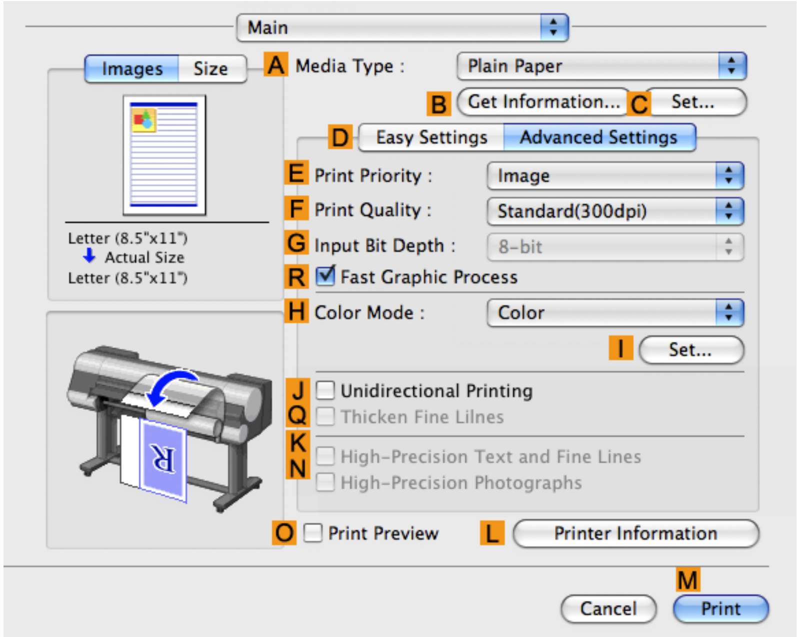
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

5. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Input Bit Depth : 8-bit

☑ Fast Graphic Process

Color Mode : Color

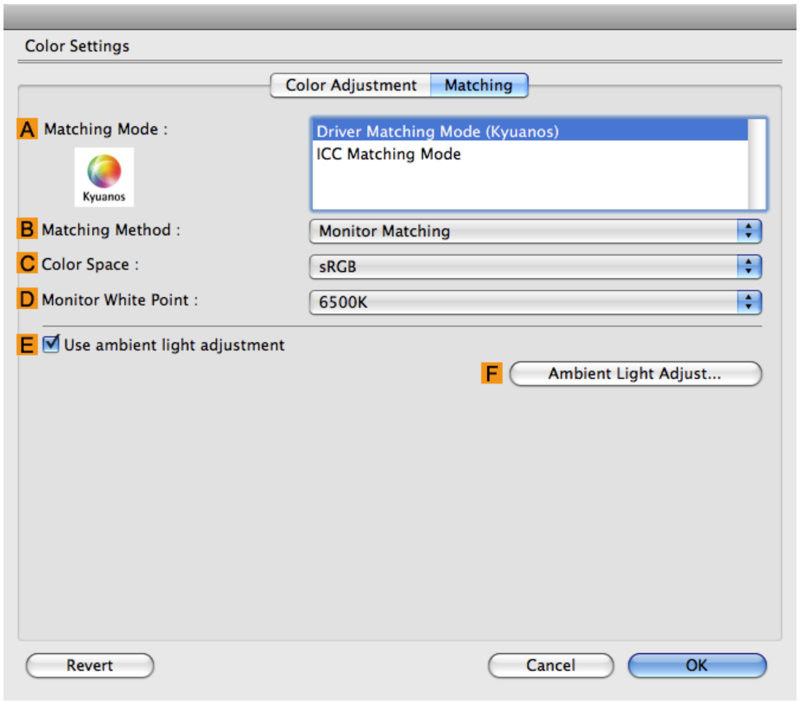
6. In **F** **Print Quality**, click **High**.

> **Important**
>
> - You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

7. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.

8. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** panel.



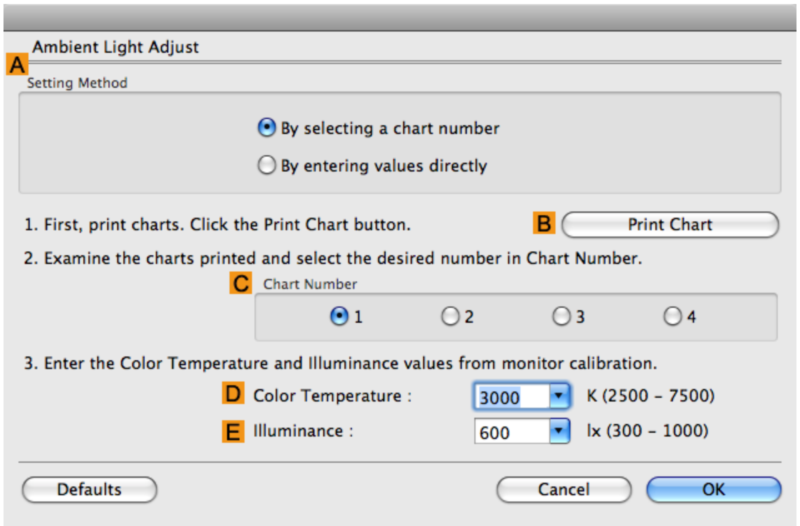
A Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos)
ICC Matching Mode
B Matching Method : Monitor Matching
C Color Space : sRGB
D Monitor White Point : 6500K
E ☑ Use ambient light adjustment
F Ambient Light Adjust...

10. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A** **Matching Mode**.

> **Note**
>
> - To specify monitor matching, select **Monitor Matching** in **B** **Matching Method**. In this case, select the same color space as when the file was opened in **C** **Color Space** and the monitor color temperature in **D** **Monitor White Point**.

11. Select **E** **Use ambient light adjustment**.

12. Click **F Ambient Light Adjust** to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box.



Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method

● By selecting a chart number

○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button. B Print Chart

2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

C Chart Number

● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

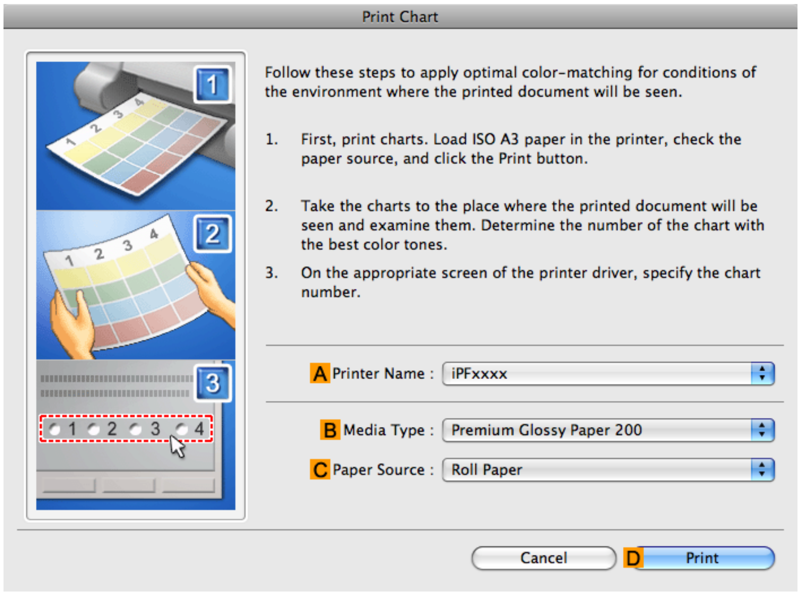
3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

D Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 – 7500)

E Illuminance : 600 lx (300 – 1000)

13. Confirm that **By selecting a chart number** is selected in **A Setting Method**.
If it is not selected already, select it.

14. Click **B Print Chart**.
Light Source Check Tool now starts up.



Print Chart

Follow these steps to apply optimal color-matching for conditions of the environment where the printed document will be seen.

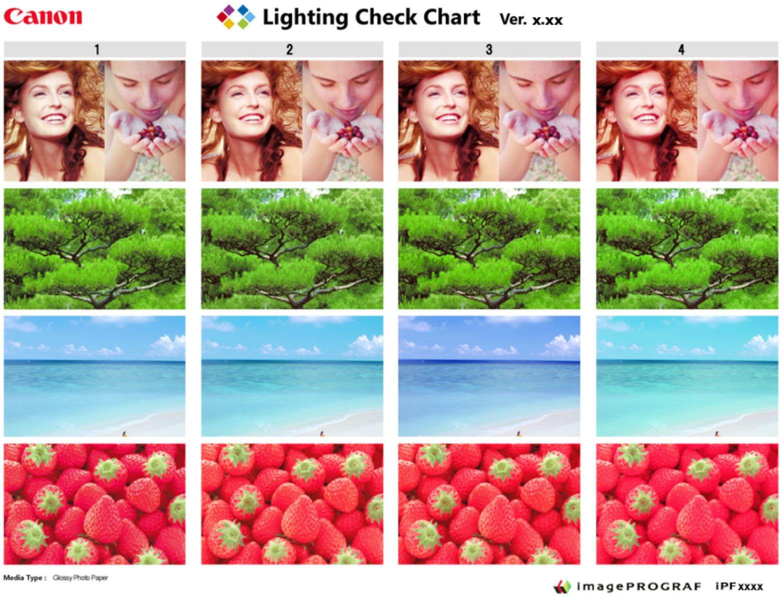
1. First, print charts. Load ISO A3 paper in the printer, check the paper source, and click the Print button.
2. Take the charts to the place where the printed document will be seen and examine them. Determine the number of the chart with the best color tones.
3. On the appropriate screen of the printer driver, specify the chart number.

A Printer Name : iPFxxxx

B Media Type : Premium Glossy Paper 200

C Paper Source : Roll Paper

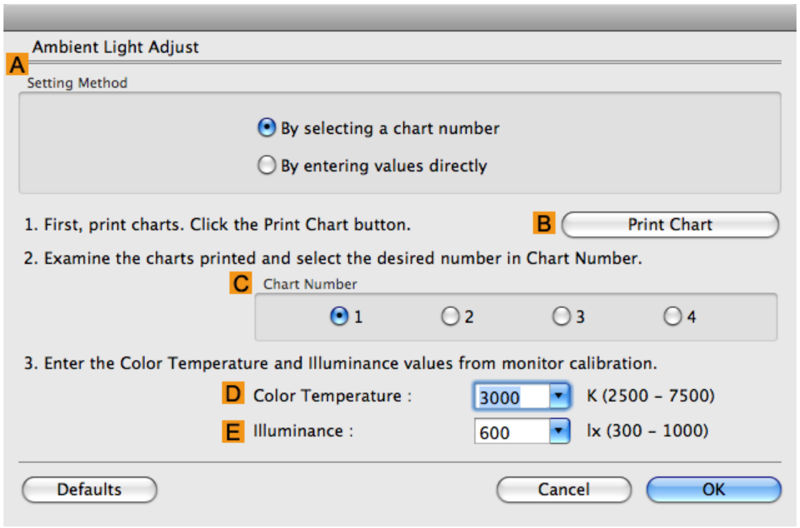
15. Check the settings and click **D** **Print**.
The **Chart** is printed.


Canon
Lighting Check Chart Ver. x.xx
1
2
3
4
Media Type : Glossy Photo Paper
imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx

16. In the viewing environment, determine the number of the set of images on the **Chart** in which all four vertical images have the best overall color tone.

> **Note**
> - Choose the number of the set of images in which the people, the blue of the sky, and the red of the strawberries look the most natural overall.

17. In the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box, select the number of your preferred chart in **C** **Chart Number**.



Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method

● By selecting a chart number

○ By entering values directly

1. First, print charts. Click the Print Chart button. B Print Chart

2. Examine the charts printed and select the desired number in Chart Number.

C Chart Number

● 1 ○ 2 ○ 3 ○ 4

3. Enter the Color Temperature and Illuminance values from monitor calibration.

D Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 – 7500)

E Illuminance : 600 lx (300 – 1000)

18. If **Matching Method** is set to **Monitor Matching** on the **Matching** panel, enter the **D** **Color Temperature** and **E** **Illuminance** as measured during monitor calibration.

19. Click **OK**.

20. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Windows)

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the i1 spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.

Note

- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported i1 devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.

1. Using the i1 spectrophotometer and the Light Source Measure Tool, determine the **Lighting Source Type**, **Color Temperature**, and **Illuminance** in the viewing environment.

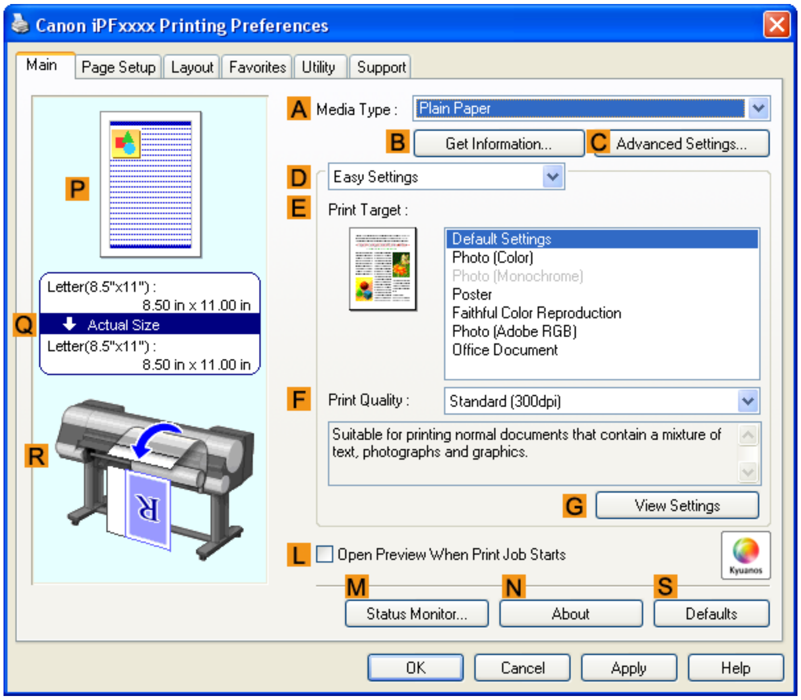
   Note

   - For detailed instructions on the i1 and Light Source Measure Tool, refer to the provided instructions.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Easy Settings

Print Target : Default Settings

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

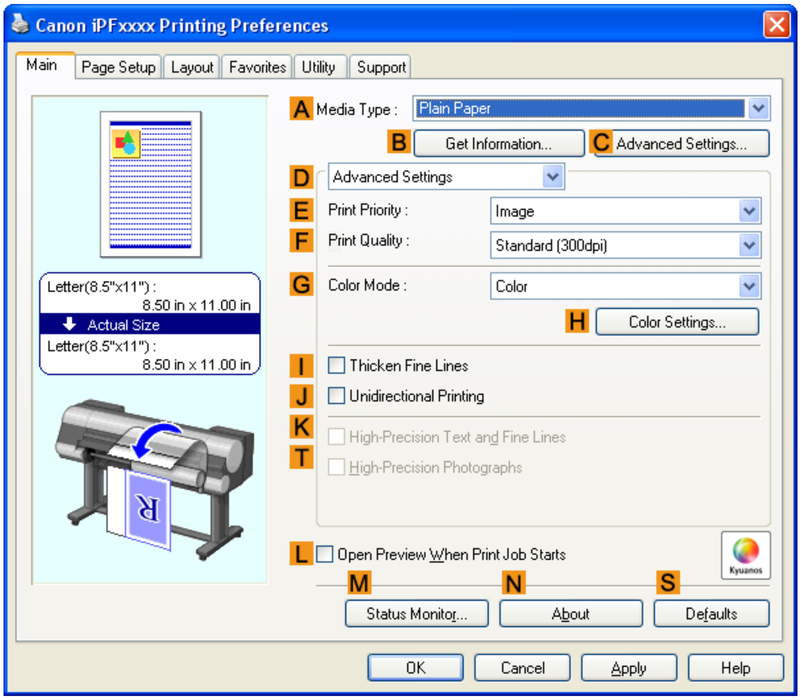
☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when F **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

6. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Media Type : Plain Paper

Advanced Settings

Print Priority : Image

Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Color Mode : Color

☐ Thicken Fine Lines

☐ Unidirectional Printing

☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

☐ High-Precision Photographs

☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

Actual Size

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

7. In F **Print Quality**, click **High**.

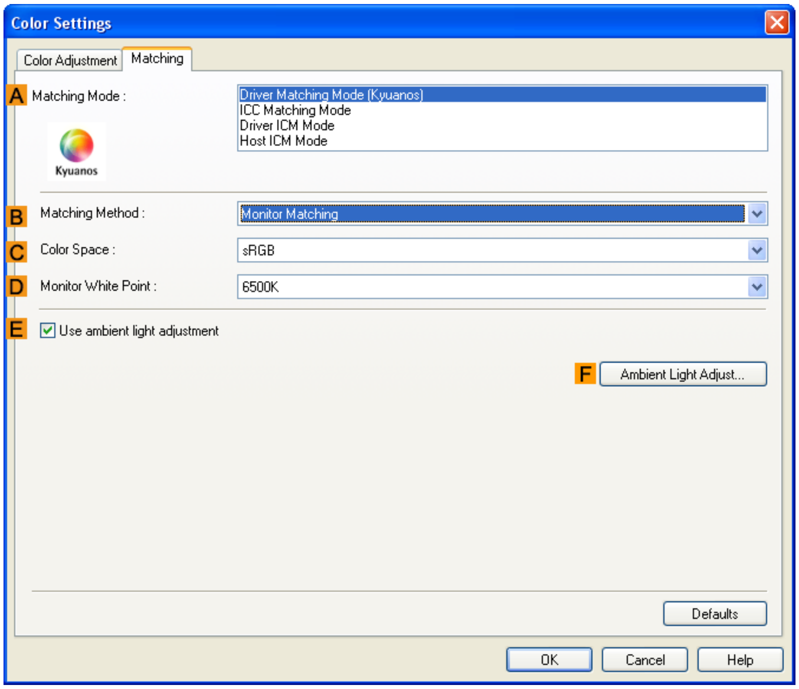
Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when F **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

8. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

9. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.



Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos)

Matching Method : Monitor Matching

Color Space : sRGB

Monitor White Point : 6500K

☑ Use ambient light adjustment

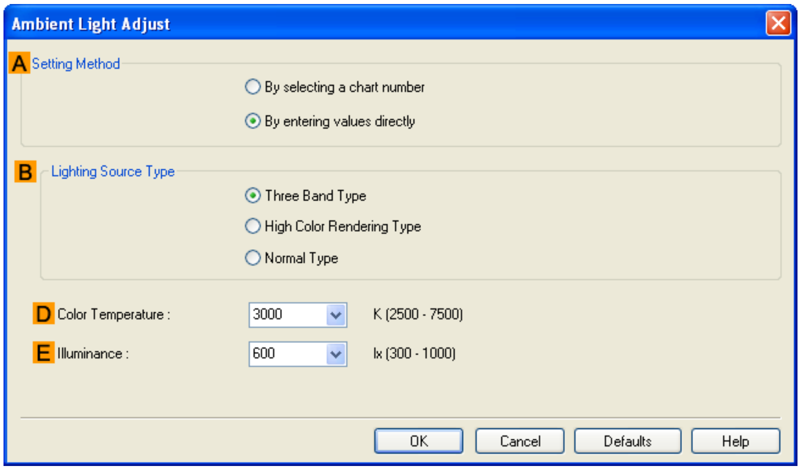
11. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A** **Matching Mode**.

Note

- To specify monitor matching, select **Monitor Matching** in **B** **Matching Method**. In this case, select the same color space as when the file was opened in **C** **Color Space** and the monitor color temperature in **D** **Monitor White Point**.

12. Select **E** **Use ambient light adjustment**.

13. Click **F** **Ambient Light Adjust** to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box.



Setting Method

○ By selecting a chart number

● By entering values directly

Lighting Source Type

● Three Band Type

○ High Color Rendering Type

○ Normal Type

Color Temperature : 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

Illuminance : 600 lx (300 - 1000)

14. Select **By entering values directly** in **A** **Setting Method**.

15. Select the B **Lighting Source Type** and D **Color Temperature** determined in step 1.
    If you have selected **Monitor Matching** in **Matching Method** on the **Matching** sheet, also select E **Illuminance**.

    Note
    - If you will print repeatedly using the settings values you set this one time, we recommend completing the settings by accessing the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu.(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) →P.213 ")

16. Click **OK**.

17. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Mac OS X)

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important
- This function requires the i1 spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported i1 devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.

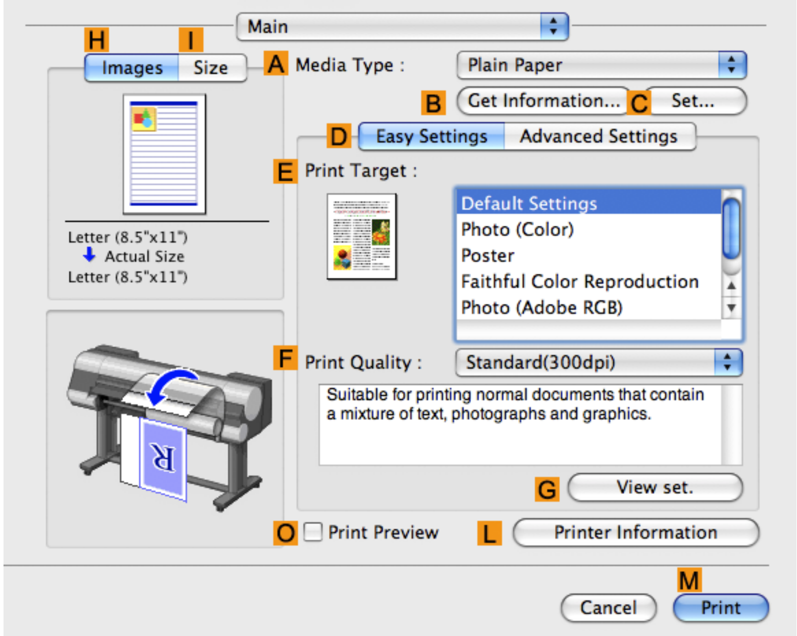
1. Using the i1 spectrophotometer and the Light Source Measure Tool, determine the **Lighting Source Type**, **Color Temperature**, and **Illuminance** in the viewing environment.

    Note
    - For detailed instructions on the i1 and Light Source Measure Tool, refer to the provided instructions.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X).") →P.494

4. Make sure the **Main** panel is displayed.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

E Print Target : Default Settings

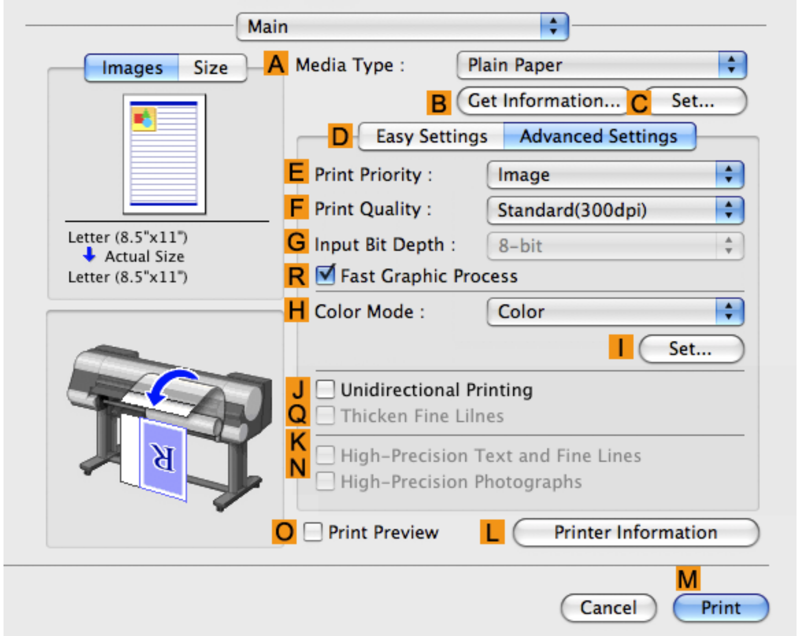
F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

5. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

> Important
>
> - You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

6. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Main

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Advanced Settings

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard(300dpi)

G Input Bit Depth : 8-bit

R ☑ Fast Graphic Process

H Color Mode : Color

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

Q ☐ Thicken Fine Lilnes

K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

N ☐ High-Precision Photographs

O ☐ Print Preview

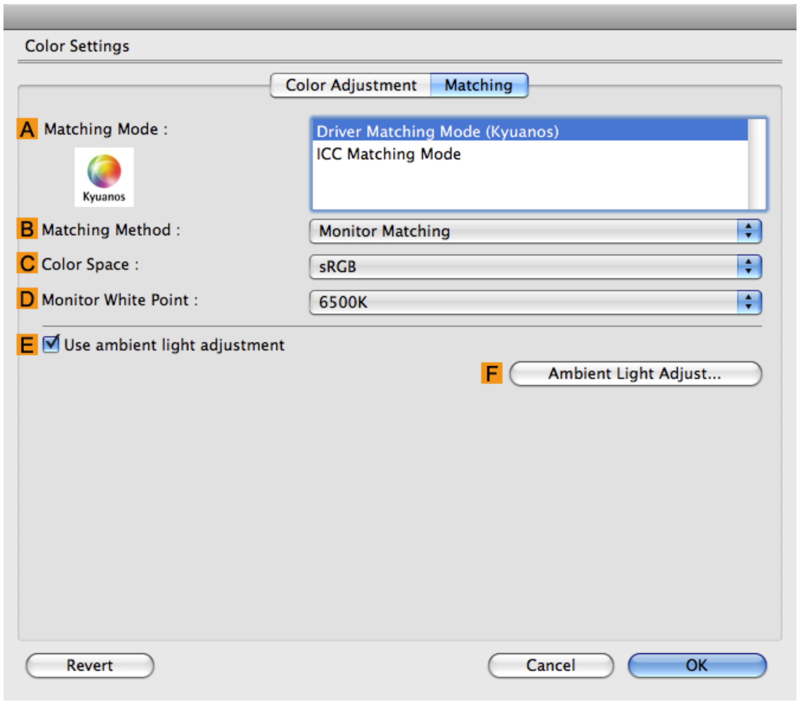
7. In **F Print Quality**, click **High**.

> Important
>
> - You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F Print Quality** is set to **High**.

8. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.

9. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** panel.

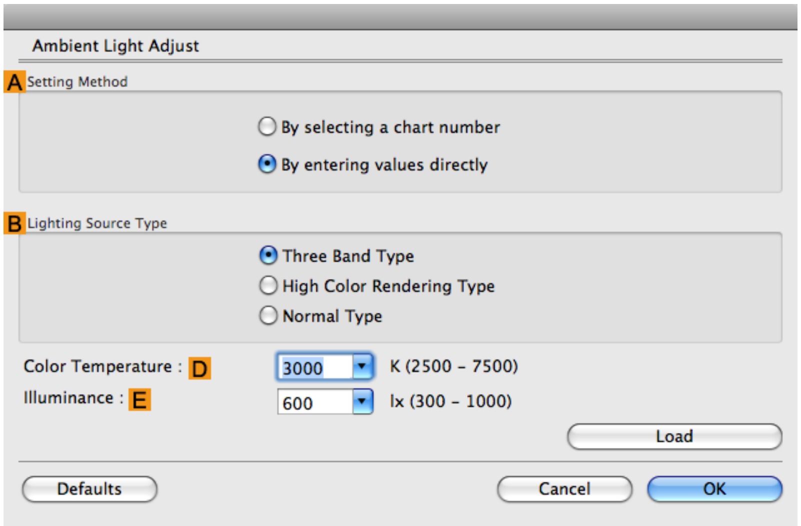


11. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A Matching Mode**.

> Note
>
> - To specify monitor matching, select **Monitor Matching** in **B Matching Method**. In this case, select the same color space as when the file was opened in **C Color Space** and the monitor color temperature in **D Monitor White Point**.

12. Select **E Use ambient light adjustment**.

13. Click F **Ambient Light Adjust** to display the **Ambient Light Adjust** dialog box.



Ambient Light Adjust

A Setting Method

○ By selecting a chart number

● By entering values directly

B Lighting Source Type

● Three Band Type

○ High Color Rendering Type

○ Normal Type

Color Temperature : D 3000 K (2500 - 7500)

Illuminance : E 600 lx (300 - 1000)

14. Select **By entering values directly** in A **Setting Method**.

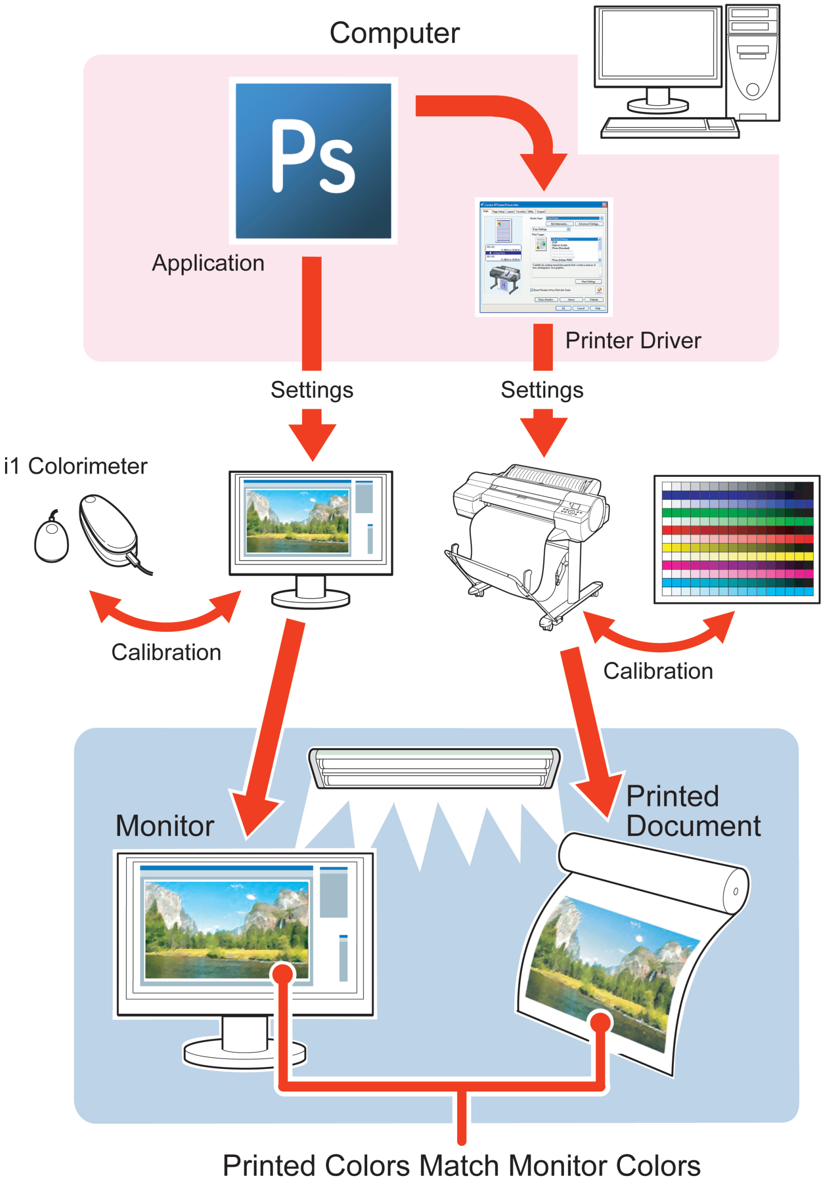
15. Select the B **Lighting Source Type** and D **Color Temperature** determined in step 1.
If you have selected **Monitor Matching** in **Matching Method** on the **Matching** panel, also select E **Illuminance**.

16. Click **OK**.

17. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors

Adjusting the colors printed so that they more closely match the colors displayed on the monitor is called "monitor matching." Using this mode requires adjustment or configuration of the settings of your monitor, the source application, the file for printing, and the printer driver.



Important

- Monitor matching may not be applied, or these settings may not be configurable or adjustable, depending on your monitor and the source application.

Note

- Printing in exactly the same colors as displayed on the monitor may not be possible due to differences in the monitor and printer color gamuts.
- Calibrating your monitor requires a measuring device.
- Because colors appear different under sunlight at different times of day, we recommend following this procedure in a room not exposed to sunlight.

- **Monitor Matching**

The sequence in monitor matching is as follows.

1. Calibrate the printer.
   Calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears due to individual variation among printheads or conditions in various printing environments.
   (See "Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment.") →P.865

2. Calibrate the monitor.
   Normally, you can use a colorimeter such as the **i1-Display**.
   Set the **white point** to **6500 K** or **5000 K**, the **gamma** to **2.2**, and the **brightness** to **120 cd**, and activate light source measurement.
   The exact procedure varies depending on your monitor and measurement device.

3. Open the file to print and configure settings in the source application.
   Display the file in the sRGB or Adobe RGB color space.
   Configure settings to prevent color conversion by the application.
   In Photoshop CS3, for example, select **Color Management** in the **Print** dialog box, and then select **No Color Management** in **Color Handling**.

4. Configure and adjust printer driver settings.
   Select **Monitor Matching** in **Matching Method**. Specify the **Monitor White Point** set during monitor calibration and the **Color Temperature** and **Illuminance** measured in the ambient light.
   In **Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.
   If you own an **i1-Pro**, using Light Source Measure Tool enables more precision measurement of the ambient light.

> Note
> - If you will print repeatedly using the settings values you set this one time, we recommend completing the settings by accessing the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) →P.213 ")

For instructions on configuring printer driver settings for monitor matching, refer to the following topic, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows) →P.889
- Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS X) →P.892

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows)

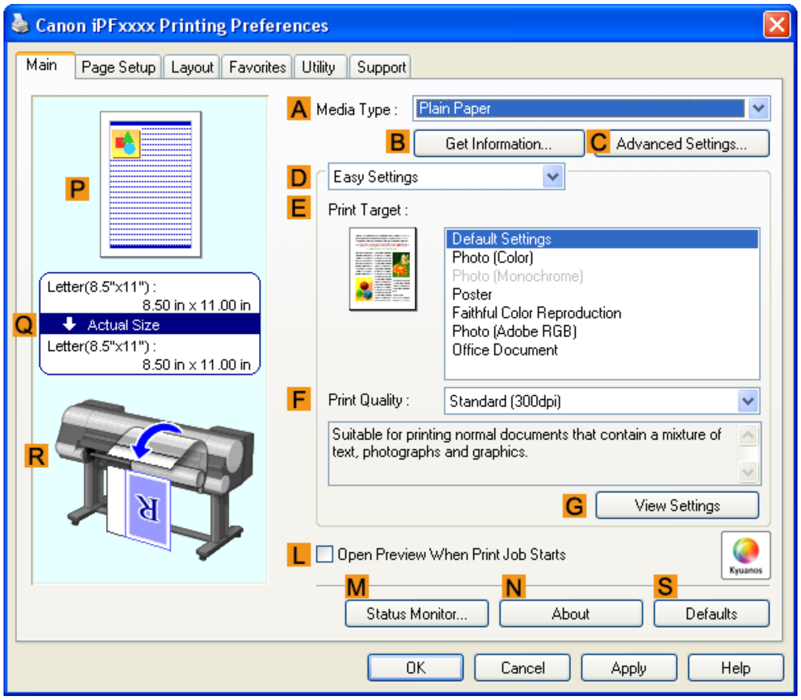
By calibrating your monitor and configuring settings in the source application in advance, you can complete settings to print in colors that are as close as possible to the colors displayed on the monitor.

> Important
> - Before using this feature, you must calibrate the monitor and configure settings in the source application. (See "Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors →P.888 ")

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) →P.211 ")

3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Easy Settings

E Print Target :

Default Settings
Photo (Color)
Photo (Monochrome)
Poster
Faithful Color Reproduction
Photo (Adobe RGB)
Office Document

F Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

L ☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

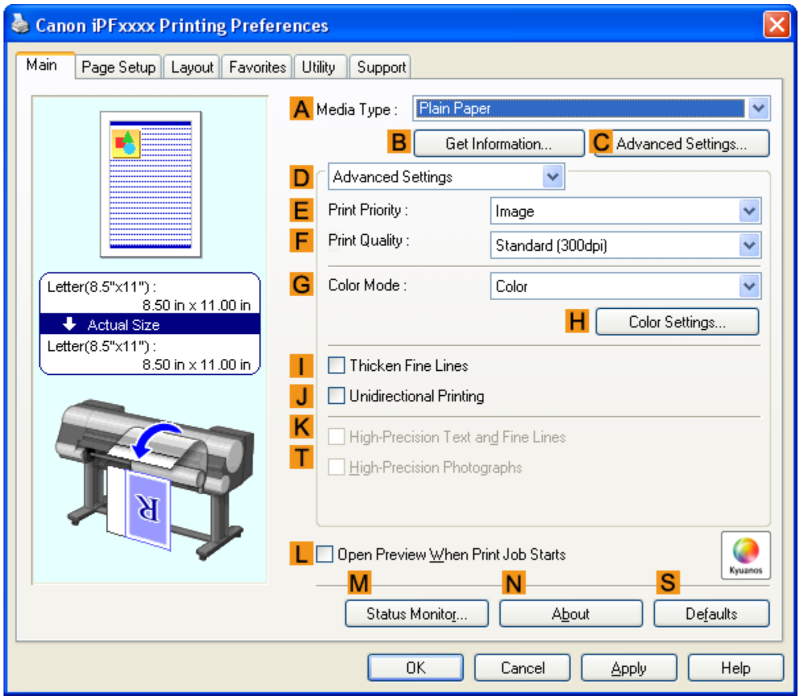
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F Print Quality** is set to **High**.

5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences

A Media Type : Plain Paper

D Advanced Settings

E Print Priority : Image

F Print Quality : Standard (300dpi)

G Color Mode : Color

I ☐ Thicken Fine Lines

J ☐ Unidirectional Printing

K ☐ High-Precision Text and Fine Lines

T ☐ High-Precision Photographs

L ☐ Open Preview When Print Job Starts

Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in
Actual Size
Letter(8.5"x11") : 8.50 in x 11.00 in

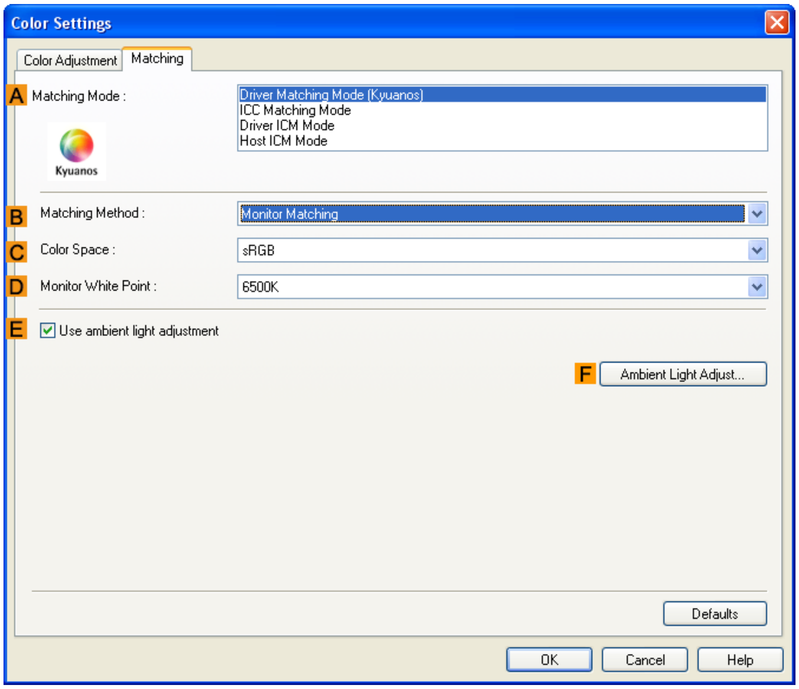
6. In F **Print Quality**, click **High**.

> Important
>
> - You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when F **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

7. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

8. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.



A Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos)
ICC Matching Mode
Driver ICM Mode
Host ICM Mode

B Matching Method : Monitor Matching

C Color Space : sRGB

D Monitor White Point : 6500K

E ☑ Use ambient light adjustment

10. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in A **Matching Mode**.

11. In B **Matching Method**, select **Monitor Matching**.

12. In C **Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.

13. In D **Monitor White Point**, select the white point set on the monitor.

> Note
>
> - For greater precision in monitor matching, we recommend configuring the settings for ambient light matching. (See "Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment →P.871 ")

14. Click **OK**.

15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS X)

By calibrating your monitor and configuring settings in the source application in advance, you can complete settings to print in colors that are as close as possible to the colors displayed on the monitor.

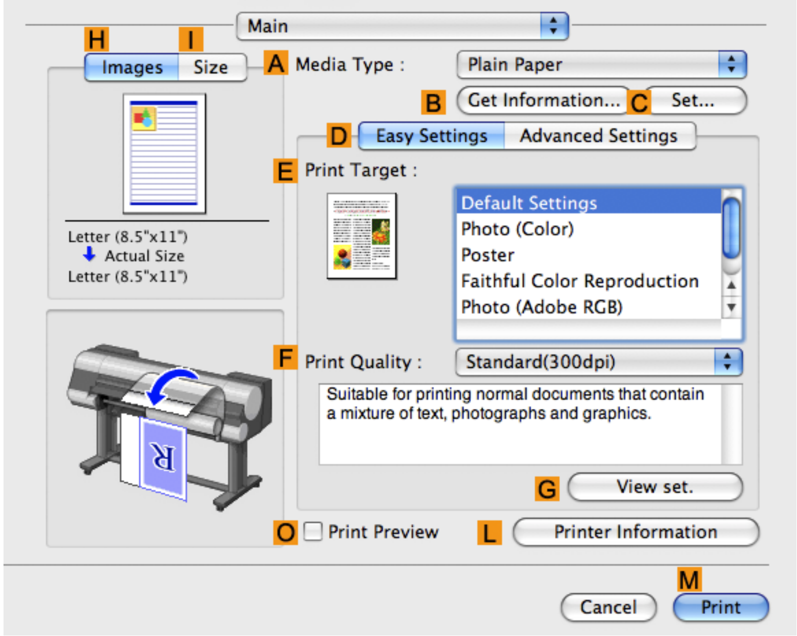
Important

- Before using this feature, you must calibrate the monitor and configure settings in the source application. (See "Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors.") →P.888

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X).") →P.494

3. Make sure the **Main** panel is displayed.



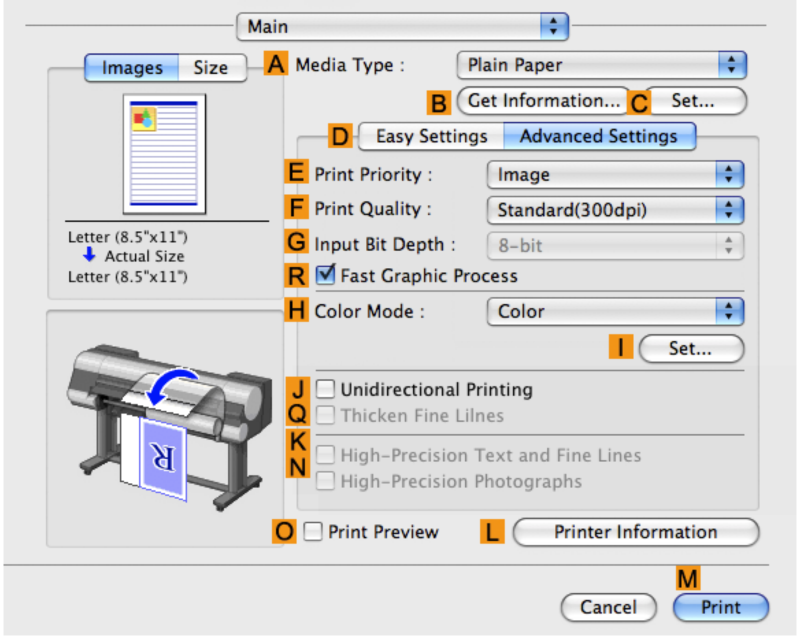
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

4. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, **Glossy Photo Paper HG 170**).

Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

5. Click **D** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. In **F** **Print Quality**, click **High**.

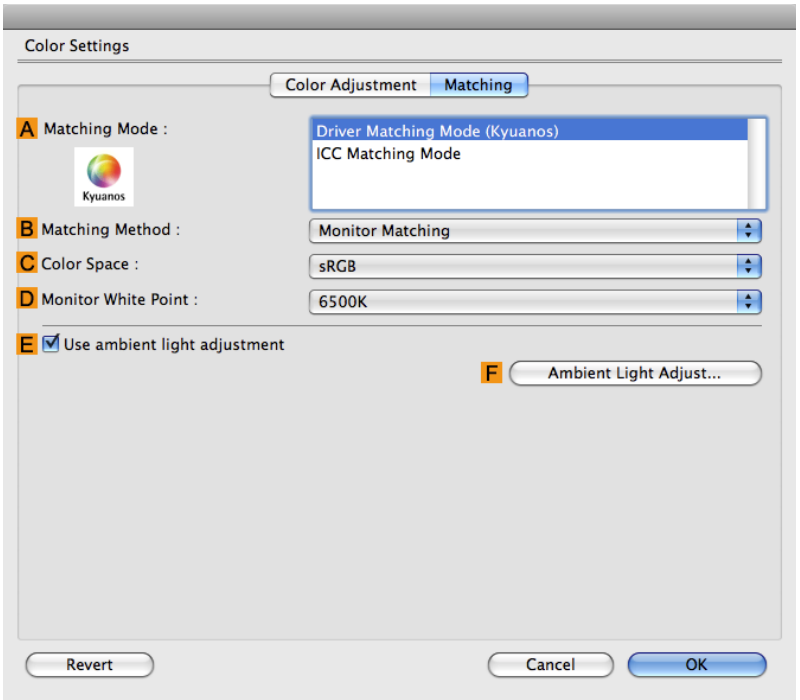
Important

- You can execute **Ambient Light Adjust** only when **F** **Print Quality** is set to **High**.

7. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.

8. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** panel.



Color Settings

A Matching Mode : Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos) / ICC Matching Mode

B Matching Method : Monitor Matching

C Color Space : sRGB

D Monitor White Point : 6500K

E ☑ Use ambient light adjustment

10. Make sure **Driver Matching Mode** is selected in **A** **Matching Mode**.

11. In **B** **Matching Method**, select **Monitor Matching**.

12. In **C** **Color Space**, select the color space used when displaying the file in the source application.

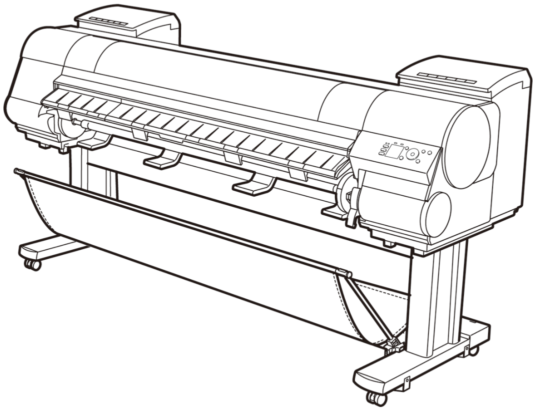
13. In **D** **Monitor White Point**, select the white point set on the monitor.

> Note
>
> - For greater precision in monitor matching, we recommend configuring the settings for ambient light matching. (See "Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment.") →P.871

14. Click **OK**.

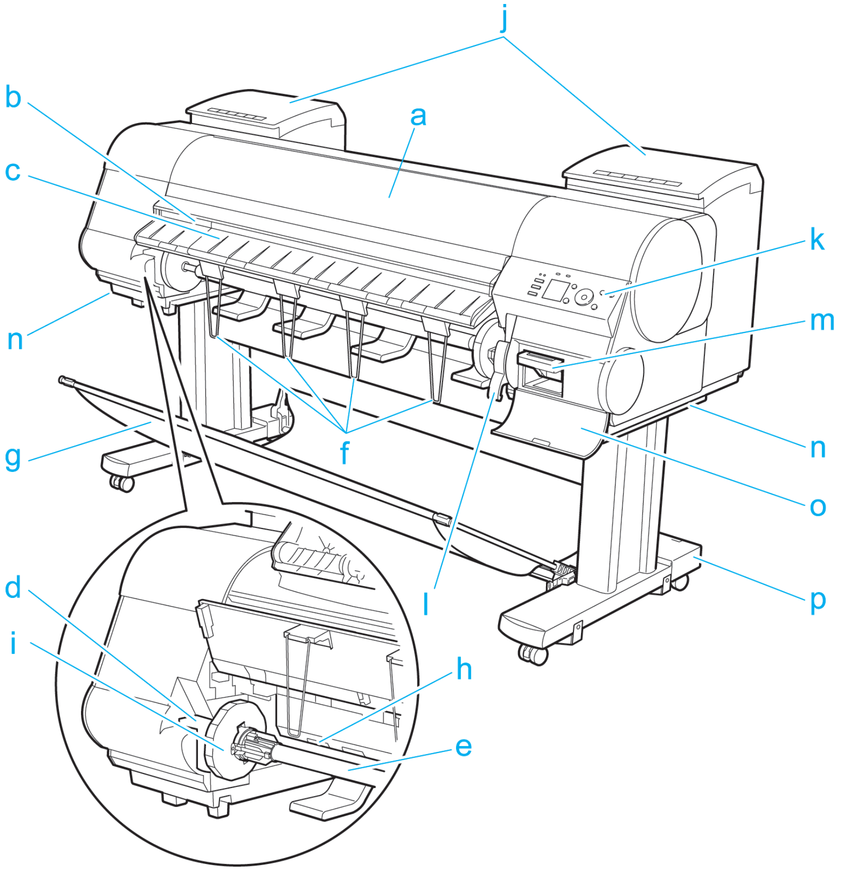
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printer Parts



Printer parts

Front



a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead, load paper, and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer as needed. (See "Top Cover (Inside).") →P.899

b. Cutter Groove

Paper is cut (using the cutter or manually with scissors) over this groove.

c. Ejection Guide

Guides printed documents as they are ejected. Raise the guide when loading a roll.

d. Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this slot.

e. Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

f. Ejection Support

Prevents printed documents from winding around the Roll Holder or being drawn into the Paper Feed Slot.

g. Output Stacker

A cloth tray that catches ejected documents. (See "Output Stacker .") →P.822

h. Paper Feed Slot

When loading a roll, insert the edge of the roll paper here.

i. Holder Stopper

Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.

j. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (See "Ink Tank Cover (Inside).") →P.901

k. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (See "Control Panel.") →P.914

l. Release Lever

Releases the Paper Retainer. Lift this lever toward the front of the printer when loading paper.

m. Maintenance Cartridge

Absorbs ink used for maintenance purposes such as head cleaning. (Replace the cartridge when it is full.)

n. Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have four people hold it by these handles under both sides.

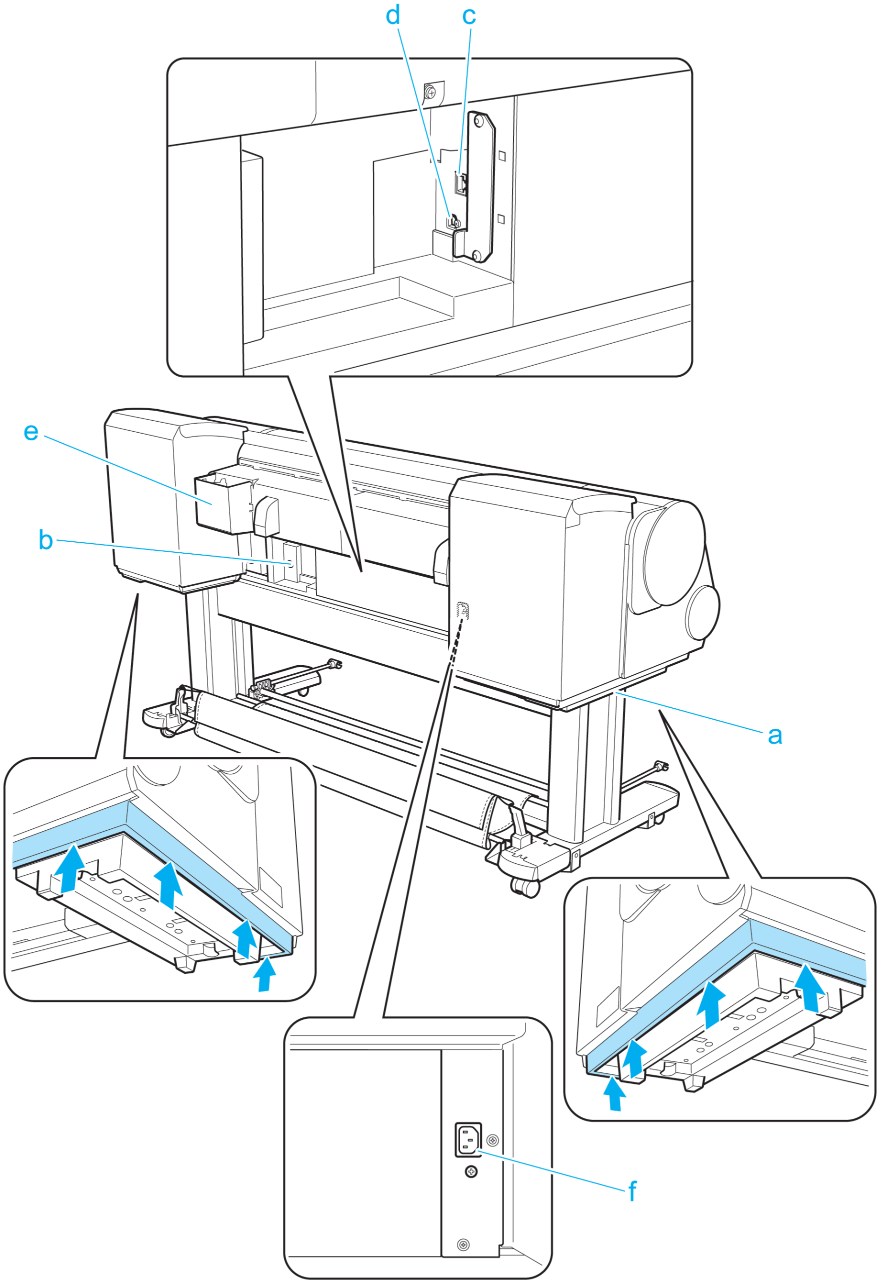
o. Maintenance Cartridge Cover

Open this cover to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

p. Stand

A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it. (See "Stand .") →P.903

Back



a. Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have four people hold it by these handles under both sides.

b. Media Take-up Unit Power Inlet

Connect the power cord of the optional Media Take-up Unit here.

c. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port.

d. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. It supports Hi-Speed USB.

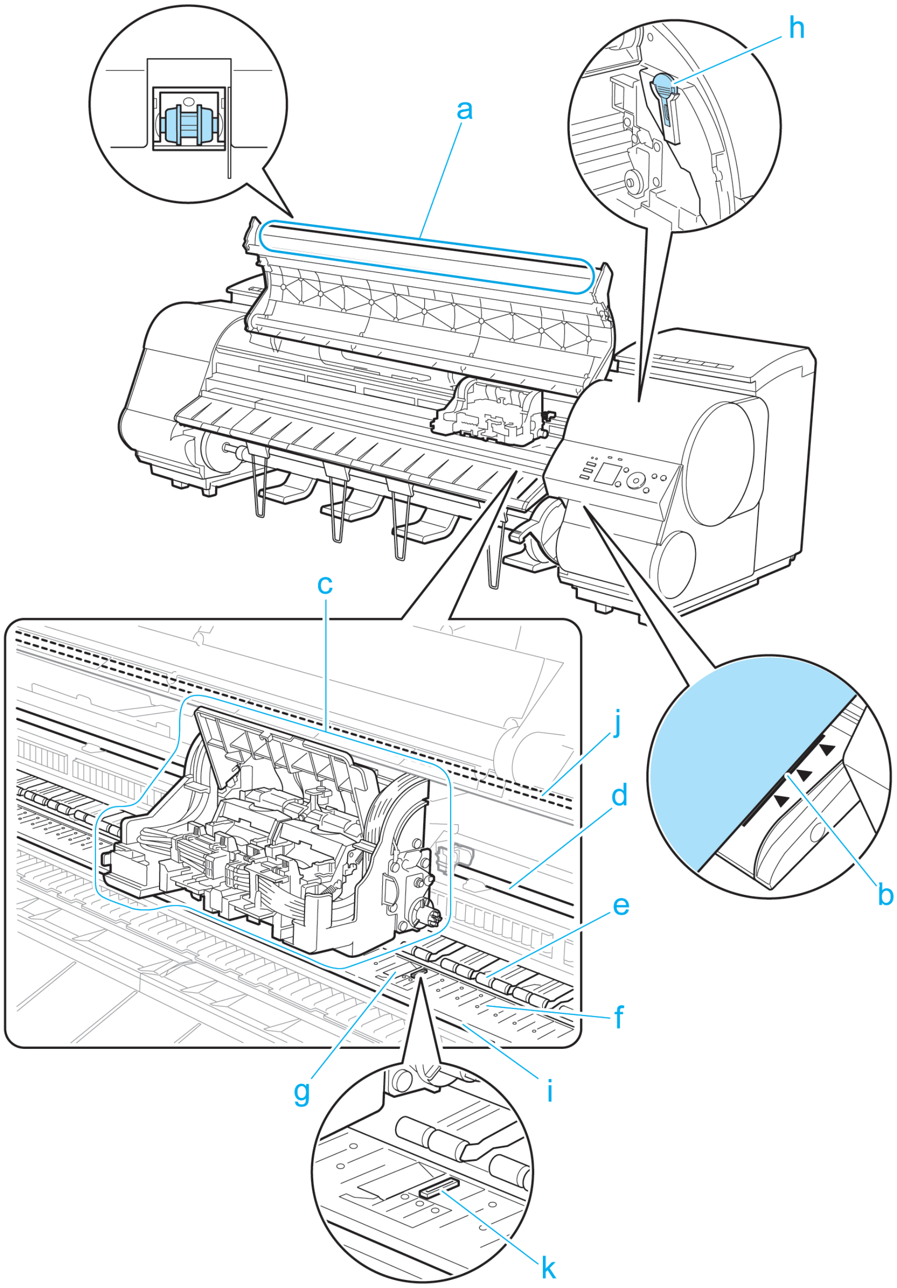
e. Manual Pocket

Store printer manuals in this pocket.

f. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Top Cover Roller

Prevents paper from rising when ejected.

b. Paper Alignment Line

Align paper with this line when loading it.

c. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (See "Carriage.") →P.900

d. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

e. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

f. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

g. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

h. Cleaning Brush

When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

Also use the brush to move the blue Switch on the Platen.

i. Fixed Blade

The Cutter Unit passes over this rail to cut paper.

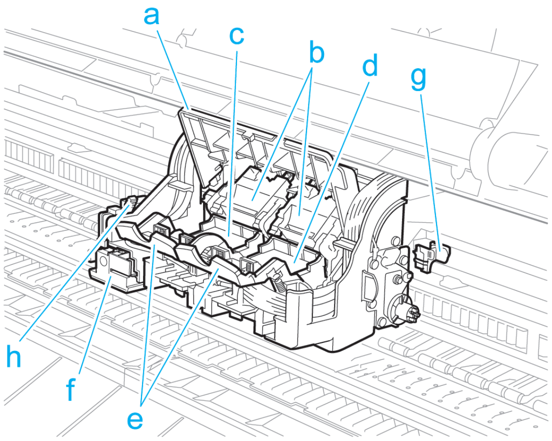
j. Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

k. Switch

Set the switch to the side opposite ● if the edges of printed images are blurred. Set the switch to the ● side before borderless printing. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078

Carriage



a. Carriage Cover

Protects the Carriage.

b. Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place.

c. Printhead L

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. The carriage serves a key role in printing.

d. Printhead R

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. The carriage serves a key role in printing.

e. Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

f. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic paper cutting. Retracted when not in use.

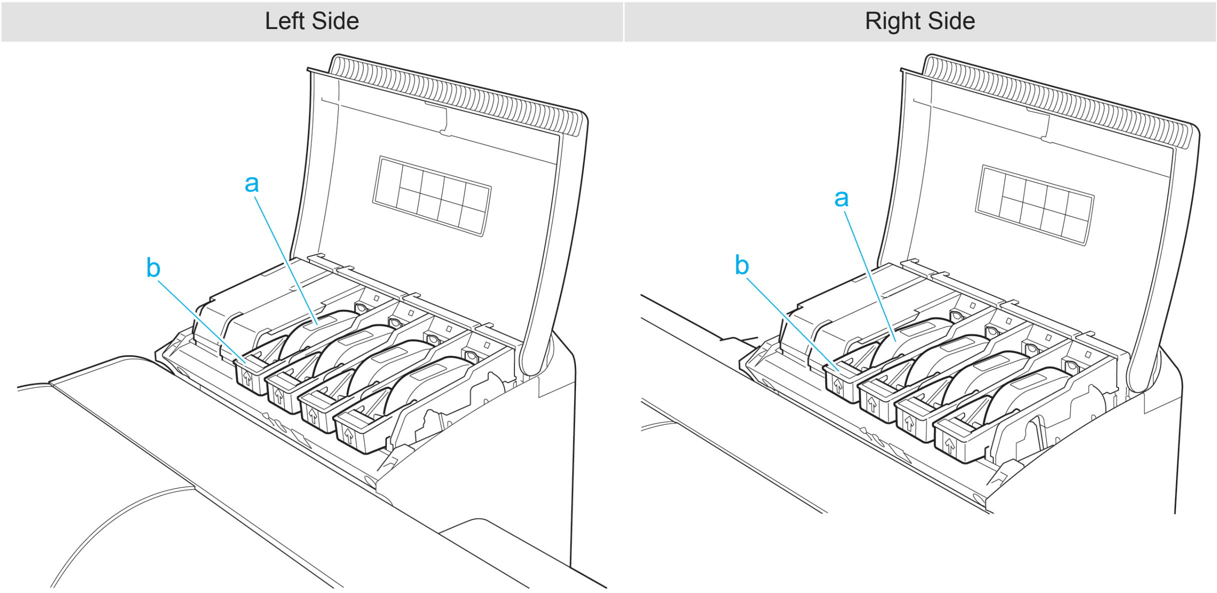
g. Shaft Cleaner

Prevents the Carriage Shaft from becoming dirty.

h. Cutter Unit Detachment Lever

Used when replacing the Cutter Unit.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)


Left Side

Right Side

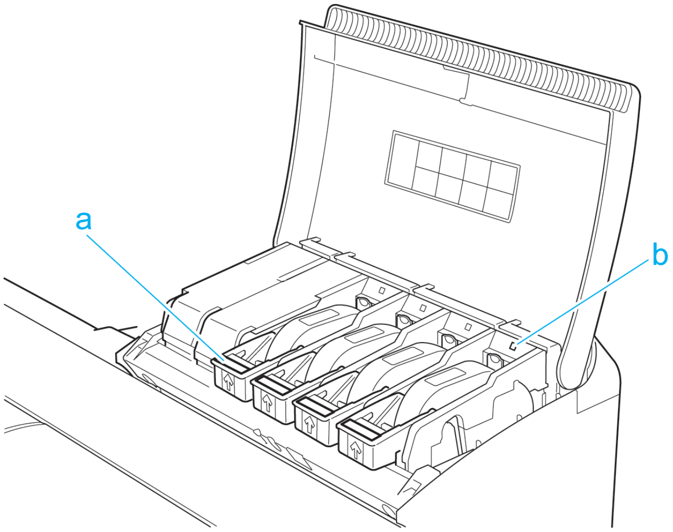
Note: The figure shows the printer as loaded with 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) Ink Tank.

a. Ink tanks

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and lower the lever when replacing an Ink Tank. To open it, lift the stopper of the lever until it stops, and then push it down toward the front. To close it, push it down until it clicks into place.



a. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

b. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- **On**

  The Ink Tank is installed correctly.

- **Off**

  No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.

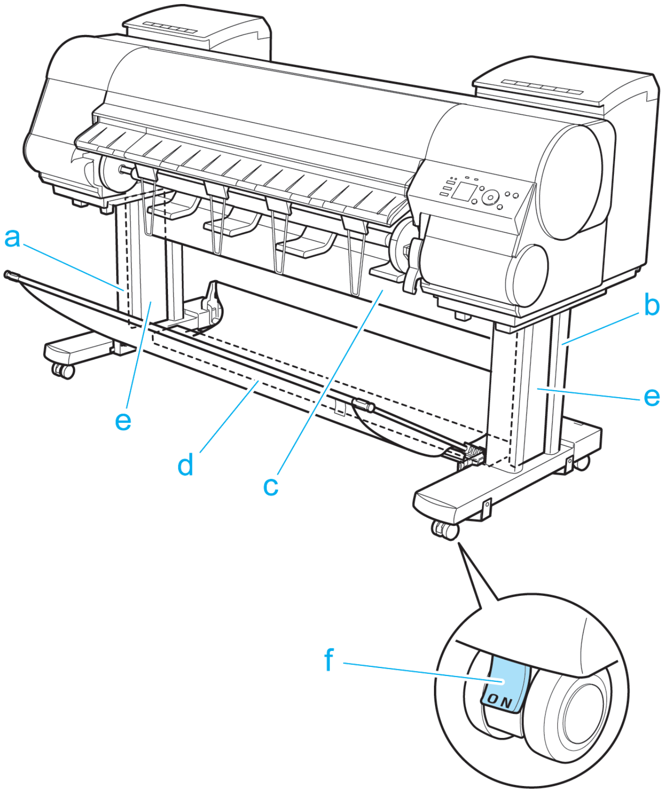
- **Flashing Slowly**

  Not much ink is left.

- **Flashing Rapidly**

  Ink tank is empty.

Stand



a. Stand L

The left leg of the Stand.

b. Stand R

The right leg of the Stand.

c. Top Stand Stay

Supports Stand L and Stand R. Attach the optional Media Take-up Unit to this part.

d. Bottom Stand Stay

Supports Stand L and Stand R.

e. Leg Covers

Covers for Stand L and Stand R.

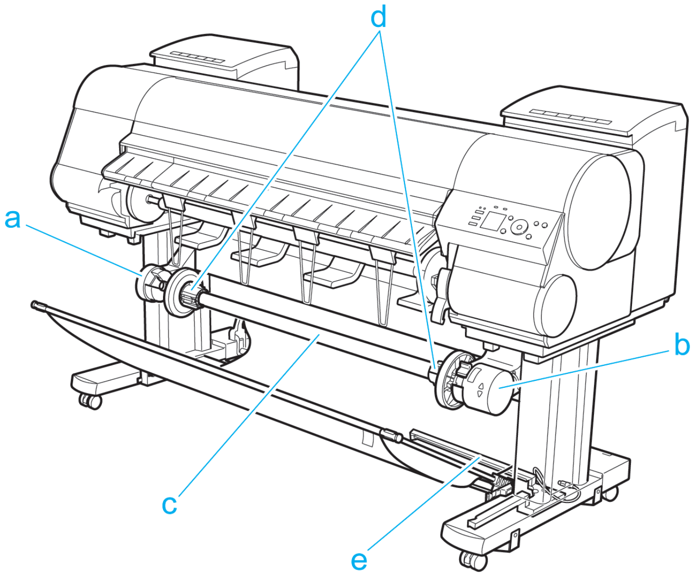
f. Stopper

Locks the Stand casters.

Always release the Stopper before moving the printer. Moving the printer while the Stopper is locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

Media Take-up Unit (Optional)

・Main Unit



a. Left Media Take-up Unit

Load the Rewind Spool here.

b. Right Media Take-up Unit

Load the Rewind Spool here. Includes the Media Take-up Unit **Power** button, ▲ and ▼ buttons to advance or rewind paper, and a power cord.

c. Rewind Spool

Winds documents printed on rolls.

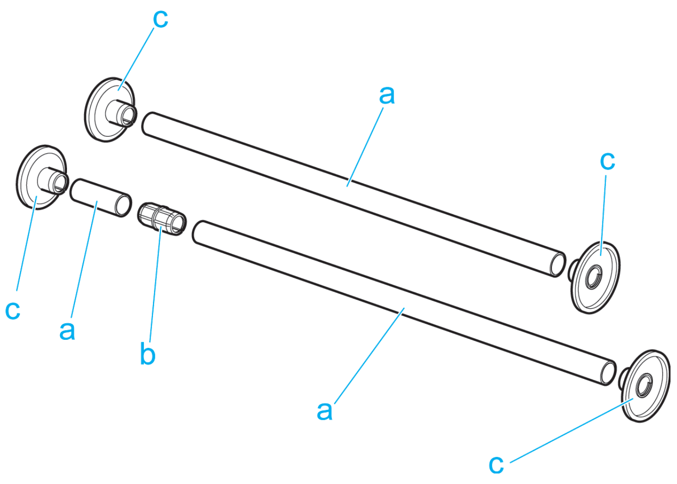
d. 3-inch Adapter

When rewinding rolls with 3-inch paper cores, attach the adapter to the Rewind Spool.

e. Media Take-up Sensor

A sensor for automatically rewinding rolls.

・Weight



a. Weight Roll (6)

Weights required when rewinding rolls. Use one weight roll or combine two (with a Weight Joint), depending on the roll width.

b. Weight Joint

Fastens two weight rolls.

c. Weight Flange (2 sets)

Attached to the ends of Weight Roll to adjust the weight. Use Weight Flange 1 or Weight Flange 2, depending on the type of paper. (See "Loading the Rewind Spool on the Media Take-up Unit.") →P.834

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available through the Control Panel and in the printer driver, imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In, RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.
The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

Operation		Printer Driver or imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	imagePROGRAF Status Monitor or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	RemoteUI	Control Panel
Saving print jobs	Print	Yes	No	No	No
	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No
	Save data before printing(*1)	Yes	No	No	No
	Print without saving jobs in the shared mailbox	No	No	No	Yes
	Save print jobs sent from sources other than the printer driver	No	No	No	Yes
Operations with saved jobs	Print saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Priority	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	Yes
	Error recovery	No	No	No	Yes
Display error messages		No	Yes	Yes	Yes

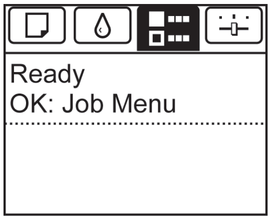
*1: This option is available in combination with **Print**. Print jobs are saved and then printed.

Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

Check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.
This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using the Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab (▤).



Ready
OK: Job Menu

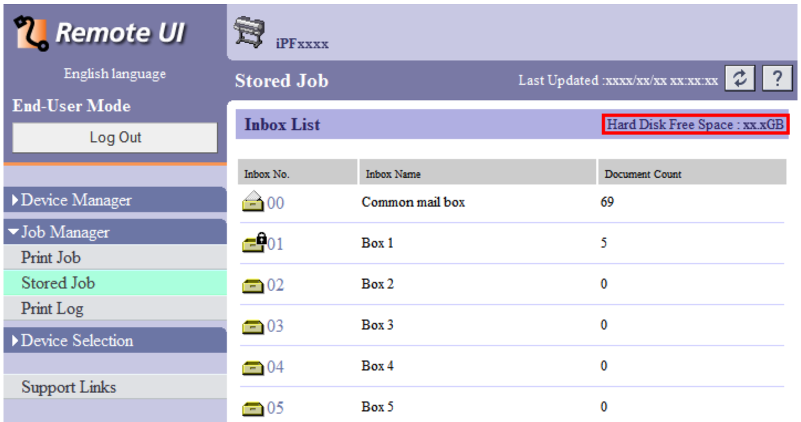
> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **HDD Information**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.



Stored Job
Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

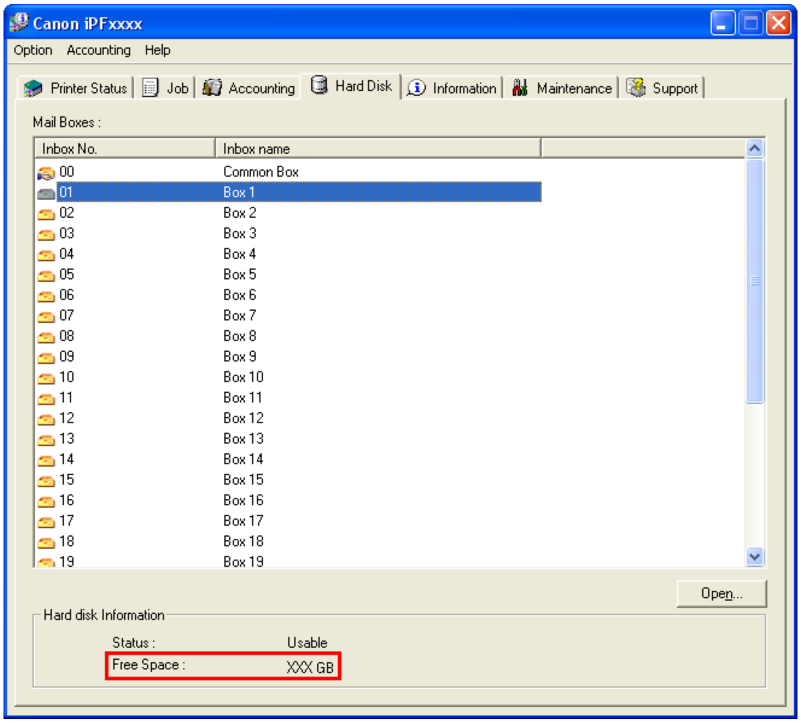
Inbox List
Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB

Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
00	Common mail box	69
01	Box 1	5
02	Box 2	0
03	Box 3	0
04	Box 4	0
05	Box 5	0

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

The **Hard Disk** sheet shows the free hard disk space.



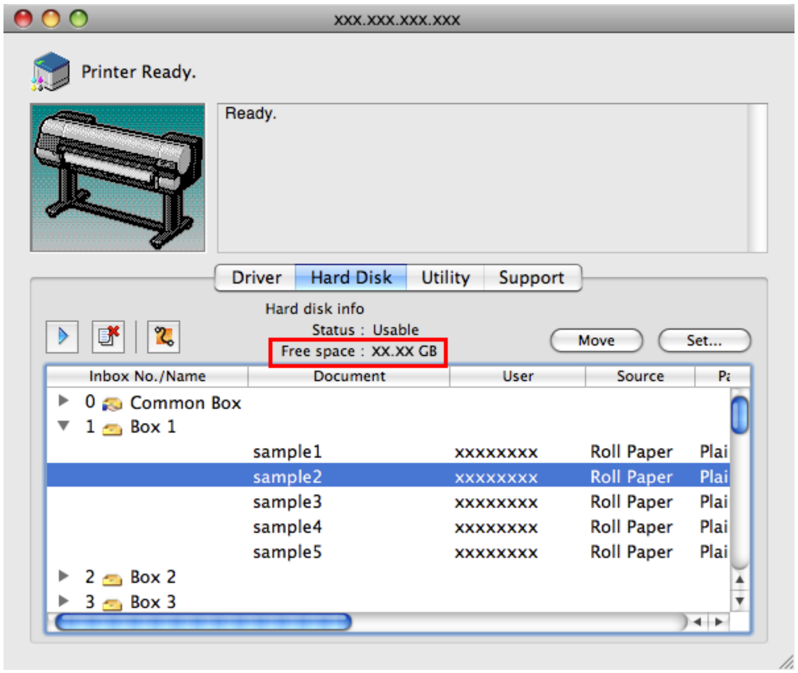
Inbox No.	Inbox name
00	Common Box
01	Box 1
02	Box 2
03	Box 3
04	Box 4
05	Box 5
06	Box 6
07	Box 7
08	Box 8
09	Box 9
10	Box 10
11	Box 11
12	Box 12
13	Box 13
14	Box 14
15	Box 15
16	Box 16
17	Box 17
18	Box 18
19	Box 19

Status : Usable
Free Space : XXX GB

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The **Hard Disk** pane shows the free hard disk space.



Ready.

Status : Usable
Free space : XX.XX GB

Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
0 Common Box				
1 Box 1				
	sample1	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
2 Box 2				
3 Box 3				

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk

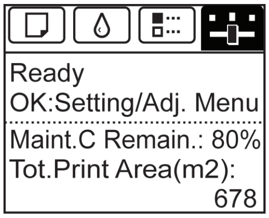
When erasing all data on the hard disk, choose from the following three options.
This operation is only available from the Control Panel.

Erasure Method	Details
High Speed	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. Choose this method for relatively fast erasure. Because only the file management data is erased, the print job data itself is not erased. Note that it may be possible to read this data using commercial data recovery software.
Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. No verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase highly confidential data. Note that it may be possible to read the overwritten data using specialized data recovery tools.
Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase especially confidential data. It is virtually impossible to recover the overwritten data. Conforms to the DoD5220.22-M standard of the U.S. Department of Defense.

Important

- For a more secure method of preventing data recovery, we recommend physically or magnetically destroying the hard disk. In this case, the hard disk can no longer be used.
- **Erase HDD Data** is not available if there is a job queue.
  Additionally, print jobs are not processed during execution of **Erase HDD Data**.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Erase HDD Data**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **High Speed**, **Secure High Spd.**, or **Secure**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.

> Note
>
> - If a password has been set on the printer, the **Admin.Pswd** screen is displayed. In this case, enter the password and press the **OK** button to go to the next step.
> - As for the time required for deletion, confirm it on the Control Panel. However, when **High Speed** is selected, this finishes in several seconds.

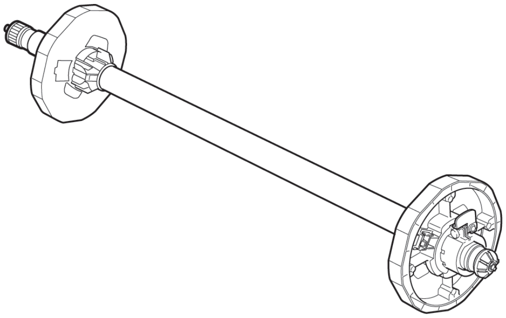
6. Press the **OK** button to start erasure.
   After the printer hard disk is erased, the printer automatically restarts.

Optional accessories

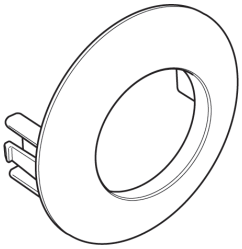
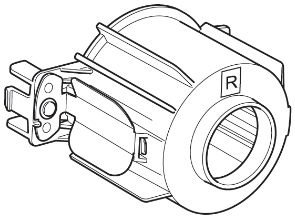
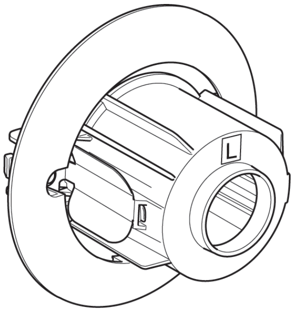
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-44 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782

- Roll Holder Set RH2-44
  - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



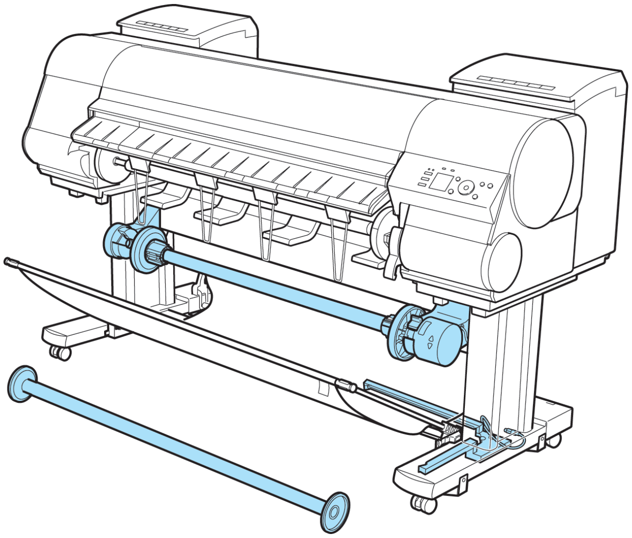
  - Attachments

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment	Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #1 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment #2 

Media Take-up Unit

Automatically winds documents printed on rolls.

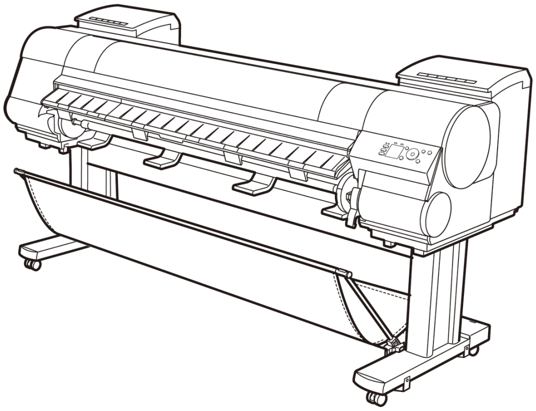
- Media Take-up Unit TU-06



Note

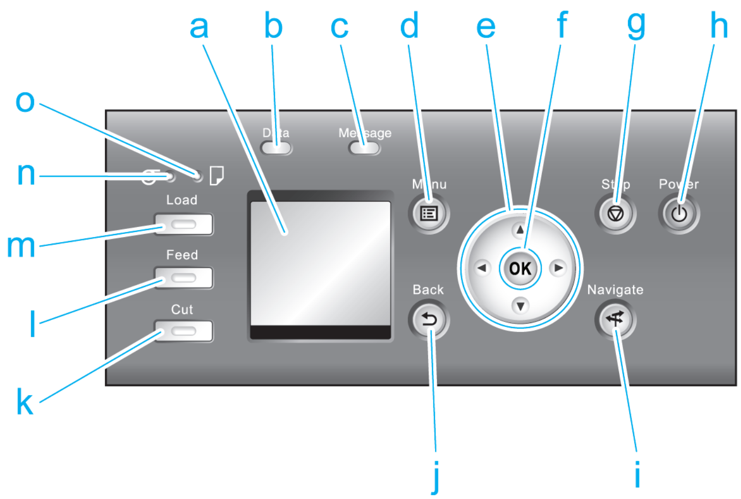
- For instructions on installing the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Media Take-up Unit Setup Guide.
- For information on the types of paper compatible with the Media Take-up Unit, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
- For Media Take-up Unit instructions, see "Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional)." →P.831

Control Panel



Operations and Display Screen

Control Panel



a. Display Screen

Shows printer menus, as well as the printer status and messages.

b. **Data Lamp** (green)

- Flashing

  During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.

- Off

  There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

c. **Message Lamp** (orange)

- On

  A warning message is displayed.

- Flashing

  An error message is displayed.

- Off

  The printer is off or is operating normally.

d. **Menu** button

Displays the **Tab Selection screen**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

e. Arrow buttons

- ◀ button

  Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.

In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

- ▲ button

  Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

- ▶ button

  Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.

  In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

- ▼ button

  Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

f. OK button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to display the menu of the tab shown.

Pressing this button in menu items of each tab for which ⊞ is displayed at left will move to the lower level of the menu item, enabling you to execute menu commands or set menu values.

Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

g. Stop button

Cancels print jobs in progress and ends the ink drying period.

h. Power button (green)

Turns the printer on and off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

The **Power** button is lit when the printer is on or in Sleep mode.

i. Navigate button

Enables you to check instructions for loading and removing paper or replacing ink tanks or printheads, as well as other operations. (See "How to View Instructions With Navigate.") →P.919

j. Back button

Displays the screen before the current screen.

k. Cut button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded cuts the paper, if you have specified **Automatic** or **Eject** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

l. Feed button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded enables you to reposition the paper. (See "Feeding Roll Paper Manually.") →P.798

m. Load button

Press this button when loading or replacing paper.

(See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786

(See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813

n. Roll Media lamp (green)

Lit when rolls are selected as the paper source.

o. Cut Sheet lamp (green)

Lit when sheets are selected as the paper source.

Note

- To recover from Sleep mode, any button can be pressed on the Control Panel.

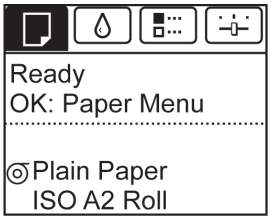
Control Panel Display

After the printer starts up, the **Tab Selection screen** is displayed.
Each of the four tabs presents status, menus, and error information related to the particular tab.

Types of tabs

The **Tab Selection screen** presents four tabs. Each tab is represented by an icon in the top row. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs.

Paper tab

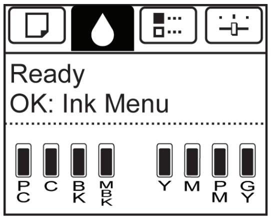


Ready
OK: Paper Menu
Plain Paper
ISO A2 Roll

A tab indicating status and showing menus related to paper. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Paper Menu**.

- Top line displayed
  The paper icon is highlighted.
- Middle line displayed
  Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.
- Bottom line displayed
  The first and second lines display the paper type and size.

Ink tab

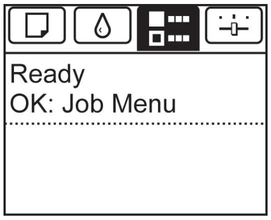


Ready
OK: Ink Menu

A tab indicating status and showing menus related to ink. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Ink Menu**.

- Top line displayed
  The ink icon is highlighted.
- Middle line displayed
  Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.
- Bottom line displayed
  Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (See "Checking Ink Tank Levels.") →P.1008

Job tab

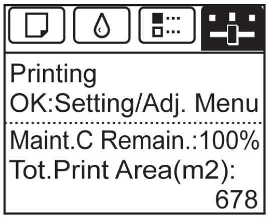


Ready
OK: Job Menu

A tab indicating status and showing menus related to print jobs. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Job Menu** menu.

- Top line displayed
  The job icon is highlighted.
- Middle line displayed
  Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.

Settings/Adj. tab



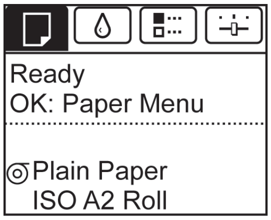
Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.:100%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

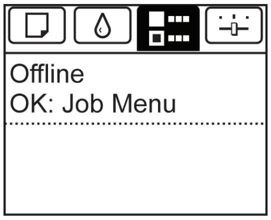
A tab indicating status and showing menus related to settings and adjustment. Pressing the **OK** button when this tab is highlighted will display the **Set./Adj. Menu**.

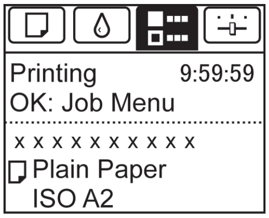
- Top line displayed
  The settings/adjustment icon is highlighted.
- Middle line displayed
  Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.
- Bottom line displayed
  The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the first line and **Tot.Print Area** on the second. The display unit for **Tot.Print Area** can be specified in the **Length Unit** menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

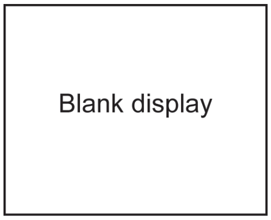
Printer status and modes

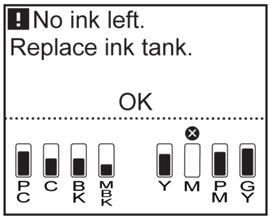
Printer status is classified according to the following five modes.

Standby	The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed immediately.
 Ready OK: Paper Menu Plain Paper ISO A2 Roll	

Printing Paused	Printing is paused on the printer. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
 Offline OK: Job Menu	

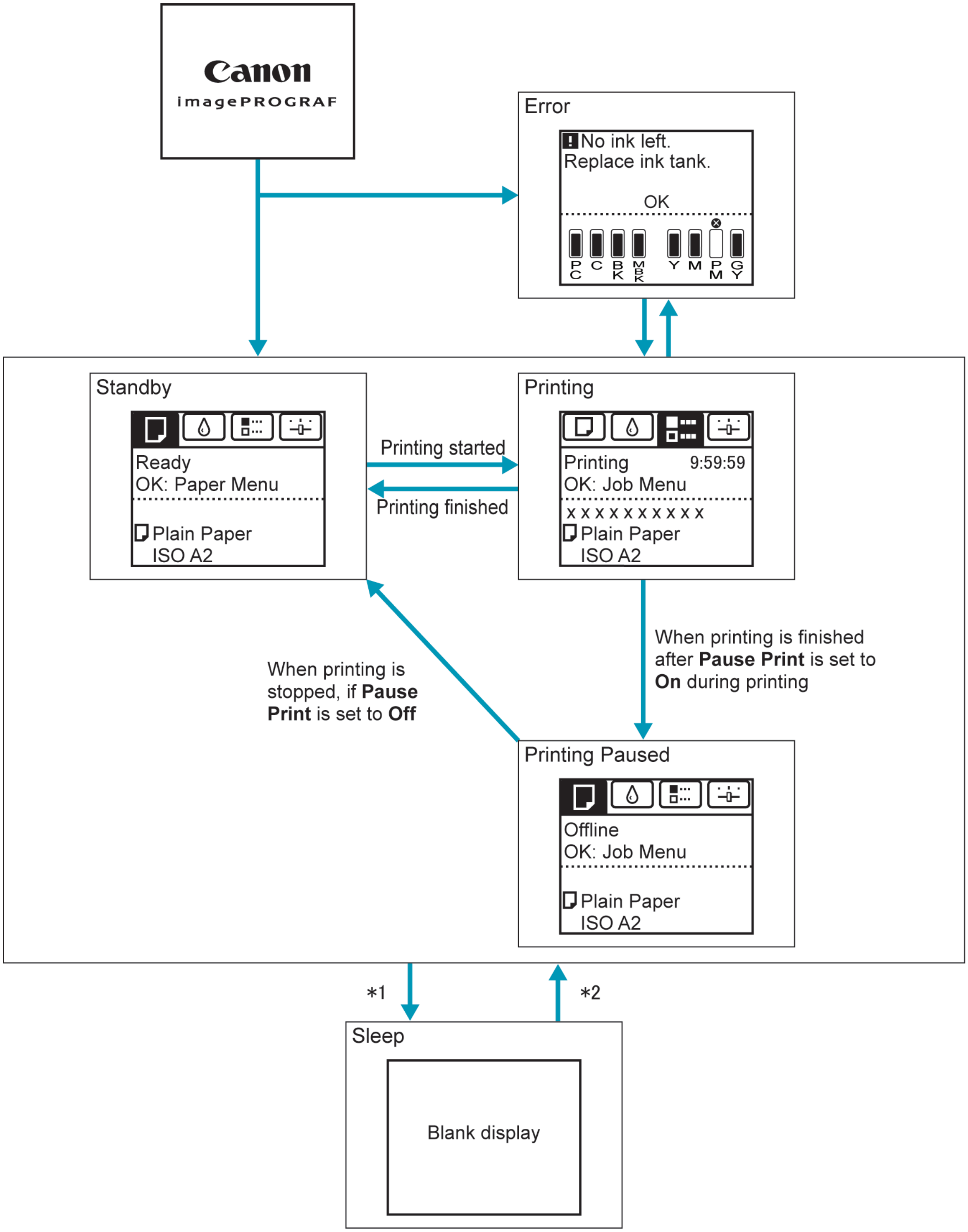
Printing	Printing is in progress on the printer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed after the current job. The time left until printing is finished is indicated in the upper-right corner of the screen. (Values exceeding 10 hours are not shown.)
 Printing 9:59:59 OK: Job Menu x x x x x x x x x x Plain Paper ISO A2	

Sleep	The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. You can specify the period before the printer enters **Sleep** mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938 After entering **Sleep** mode from **Standby** mode, the printer automatically recovers if print jobs are received, and the jobs are printed.
 Blank display	

Error	The printer requires your attention. Any jobs sent from the computer cannot be processed. The tab related to the error is displayed. For information about the display in the case of multiple errors, see "Error display." →P.919
 No ink left. Replace ink tank. OK 	

Mode transition

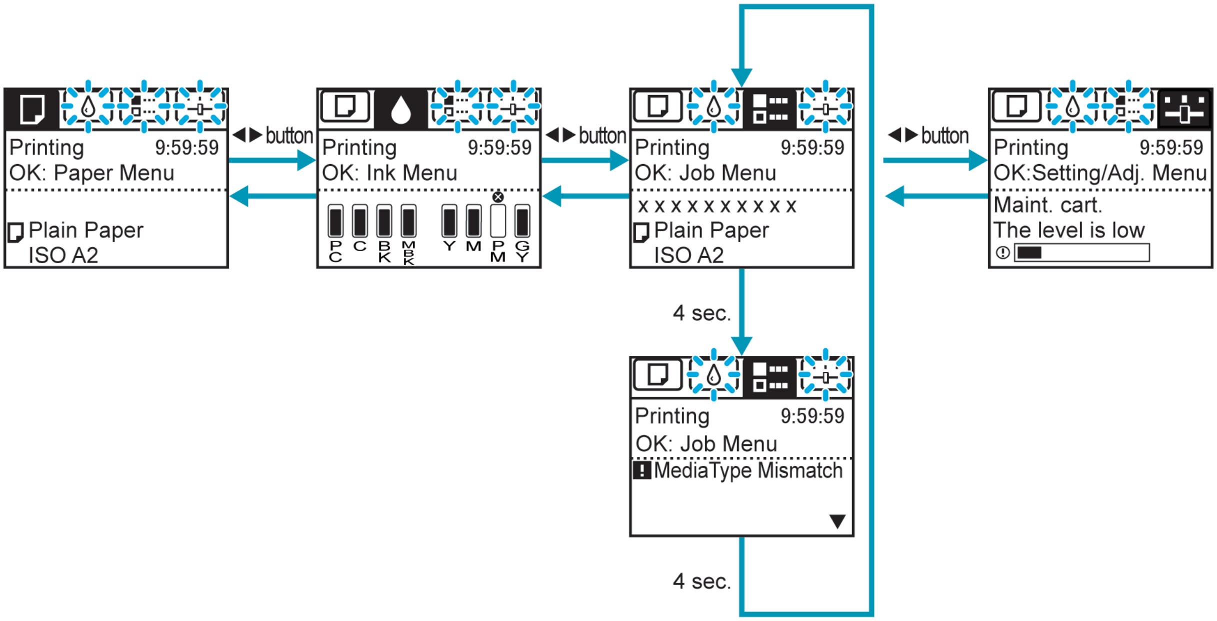
- Mode display
  The printer mode is indicated as follows.



*1: The printer automatically enters **Sleep** mode when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter **Sleep** mode while error messages are displayed or when a roll can be manually advanced by pressing the **Feed** button.

*2: When the printer is in **Sleep** mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to recover from **Sleep** mode. **Sleep** mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

- Error display
  Mode transition during error display is as follows.
  If multiple errors occur, tabs related to errors other than the error currently shown flash. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs and check those errors. If multiple errors occur that are related to the Job tab and Settings/Adj. tab, each error message is displayed for 4 seconds on each tab before another message is shown.



How to View Instructions With Navigate

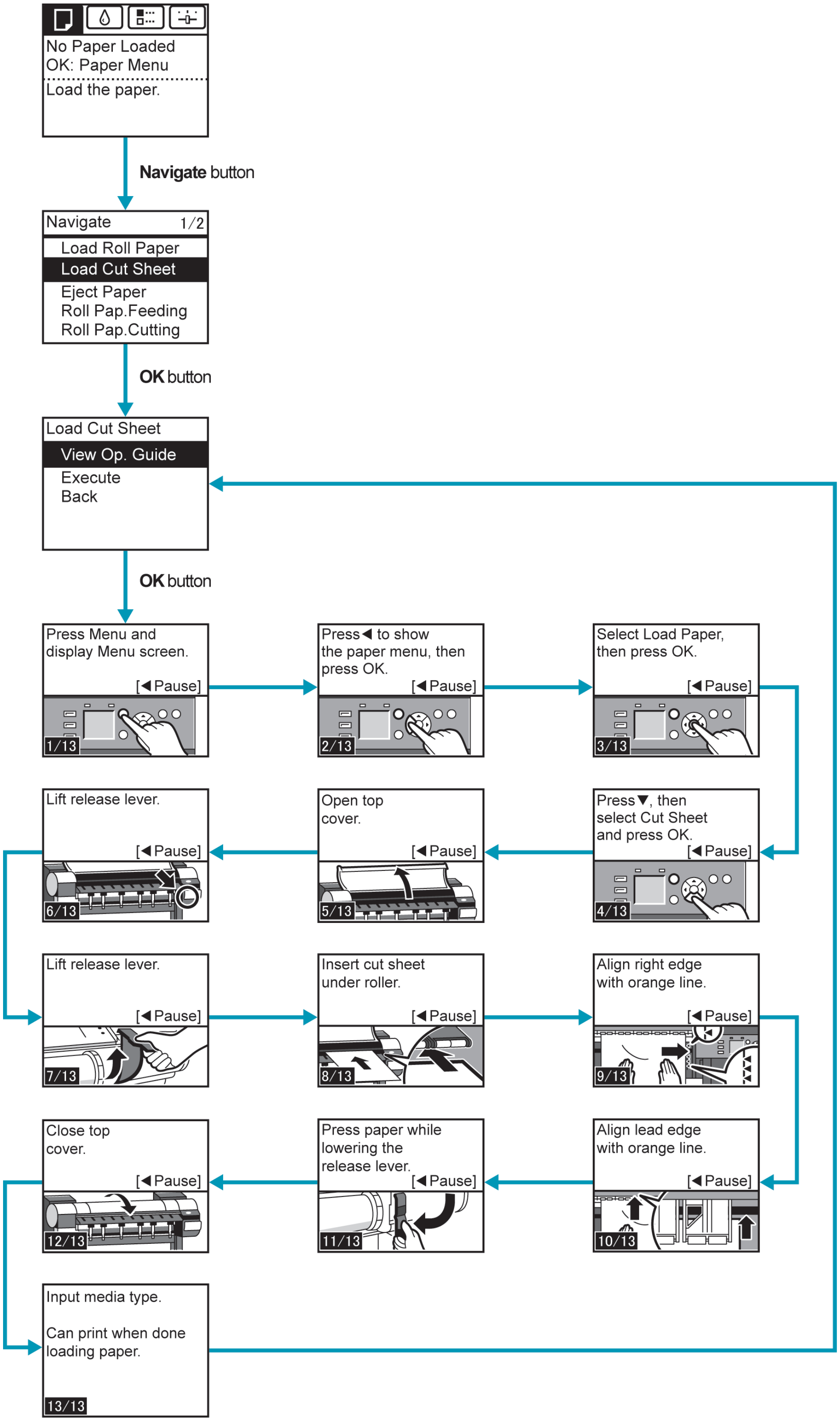
You can refer to instructions for loading paper, replacing ink tanks, and performing other operations on the printer control panel.

1. Press the **Navigate** button.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired navigation menu.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **View Op. Guide**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Instructions are now displayed.

- **Example: Loading sheets**



No Paper Loaded
OK: Paper Menu
Load the paper.

Navigate 1/2
Load Roll Paper
Load Cut Sheet
Eject Paper
Roll Pap.Feeding
Roll Pap.Cutting

Load Cut Sheet
View Op. Guide
Execute
Back

Press Menu and display Menu screen. [◀Pause] 1/13

Press ◀ to show the paper menu, then press OK. [◀Pause] 2/13

Select Load Paper, then press OK. [◀Pause] 3/13

Press ▼, then select Cut Sheet and press OK. [◀Pause] 4/13

Open top cover. [◀Pause] 5/13

Lift release lever. [◀Pause] 6/13

Lift release lever. [◀Pause] 7/13

Insert cut sheet under roller. [◀Pause] 8/13

Align right edge with orange line. [◀Pause] 9/13

Align lead edge with orange line. [◀Pause] 10/13

Press paper while lowering the release lever. [◀Pause] 11/13

Close top cover. [◀Pause] 12/13

Input media type.

Can print when done loading paper.
13/13

Checking Instructions During Printer Operations

You can refer to instructions on the printer control panel when loading paper, replacing ink tanks, or performing other operations.

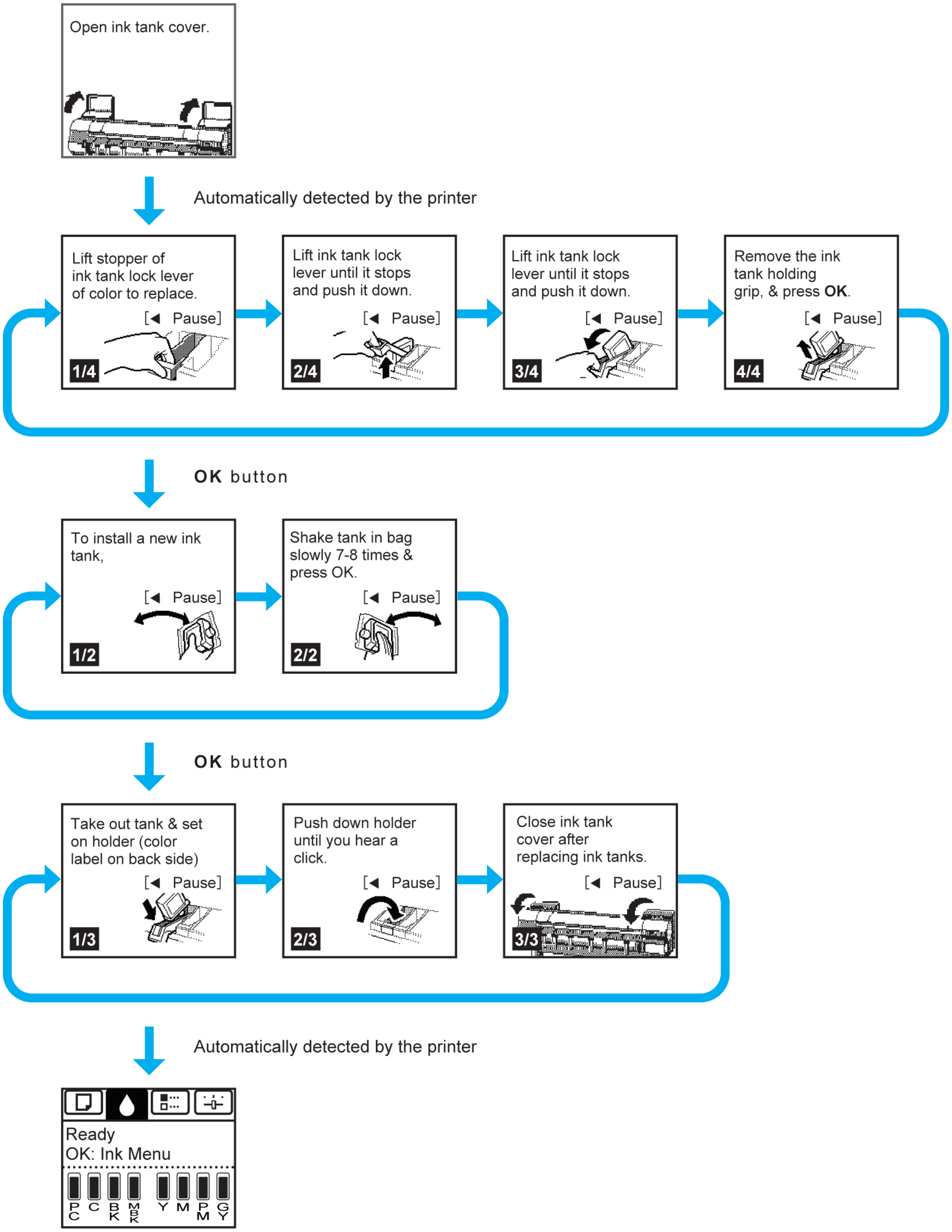
How to view instructions

Once you complete an action described in the instructions, the printer detects the action and switches to the next instruction screen.

In the case of actions the printer cannot detect, instruction screens are switched every four seconds, and the sequence of operations is shown repeatedly.

When all actions in the sequence are finished, the instruction screen for the next step is displayed.

- **Example: Ink tank replacement**



Open ink tank cover.

Automatically detected by the printer

Lift stopper of ink tank lock lever of color to replace. [◀ Pause] 1/4

Lift ink tank lock lever until it stops and push it down. [◀ Pause] 2/4

Lift ink tank lock lever until it stops and push it down. [◀ Pause] 3/4

Remove the ink tank holding grip, & press **OK**. [◀ Pause] 4/4

OK button

To install a new ink tank, [◀ Pause] 1/2

Shake tank in bag slowly 7-8 times & press OK. [◀ Pause] 2/2

OK button

Take out tank & set on holder (color label on back side) [◀ Pause] 1/3

Push down holder until you hear a click. [◀ Pause] 2/3

Close ink tank cover after replacing ink tanks. [◀ Pause] 3/3

Automatically detected by the printer

Ready
OK: Ink Menu

Note

- During a continuous display of instructions, you can press the ◀ button to pause the instructions on the current screen.
  Press the ◀ or ▶ button to display the previous or next screens. If you do not press the ◀ or ▶ button within 30 seconds, continuous display is resumed.
  Press the **OK** button to display the instruction screen for the next step.

Printer Menu

Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu is classified into menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu items only available during printing.

- Menu operations when no print job is in progress →P.924
- Menu operations during printing →P.924

Menu operations when no print job is in progress

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button.

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

The following operations are available from the menu.

- **Paper Menu**
  Paper menu settings
- **Ink Menu**
  Ink menu operations
- **Job Menu**
  Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
  Menu operations for printer adjustment and maintenance

For a description of specific menu items available, see "Menu Settings." →P.938
For instructions on selecting menu items, see "Menu Operations." →P.925

Note
- By default, menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Menu operations during printing

To display menus during printing, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel, and then press the **OK** button. Other menus are available after printing is finished.

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

The following operations are available from the menu during printing.

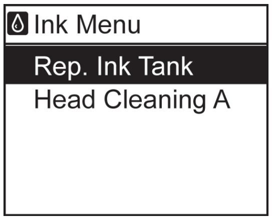
- **Ink Menu**
  Ink menu operations
- **Job Menu**
  Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
  Fine-tuning paper feeding
  Display of printer-related information

For a description of specific menu items available during printing, see "Menu Settings (During Printing)." →P.949
For instructions on selecting menu items during printing, see "Menu Operations." →P.925

Menu Operations

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button. For details, see "Menu Settings." →P.938

- Menus (when the Ink tab is selected and the **OK** button is pressed)



Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

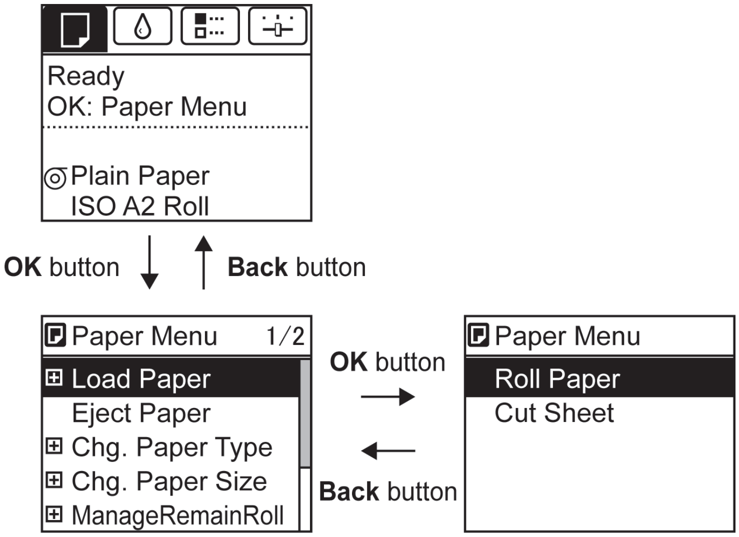
Simply press buttons on the Control Panel to access menus on various tabs from the **Tab Selection screen** and set or execute **Menu** items.
The following sections describe menu operations.

- Accessing menus →P.925
- Specifying menu items →P.927
- Specifying numerical values →P.927
- Executing menu commands →P.928

Accessing menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. You can use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.



- Press **Back** to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press **OK** to access a lower one. If not all menu items are displayed, hold down ▲ or ▼ to scroll through higher and lower menu items. Items you select are highlighted.

Data
Message
Load
Feed
Cut
Menu
Back
Stop
Power
Navigate

The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

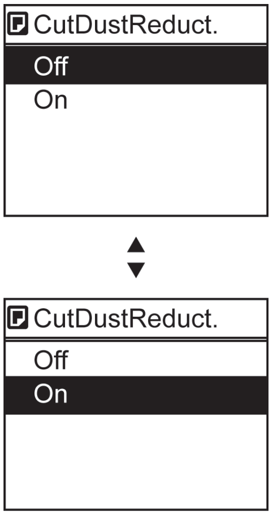
- Lower menus are available if ⊞ is displayed at left next to the second and subsequent rows. To access the lower menus, select the menu and press the **OK** button.

Data
Message
Load
Feed
Cut
Menu
Back
OK
Stop
Power
Navigate

Specifying menu items

Menu items can be set as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.



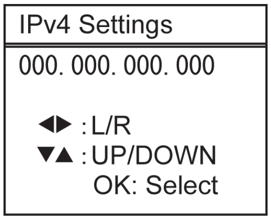
After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.

> Note
> - If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Specifying numerical values

Follow these steps to enter numbers. In this example, network settings items are entered.

1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.



2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.

> Note
> - Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.

> Note
> - If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Executing menu commands

Menu commands can be executed as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button.
   The menu command is now executed.

Menu Structure

The menu structure is organized by tabs, as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk are the defaults.

- Paper Menu →P.928
- Ink Menu →P.930
- Job Menu →P.930
- Set./Adj. Menu →P.931

For instructions on menu operations, see "Menu Operations." →P.925
For details on menu items, see "Menu Settings." →P.938

Paper Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Load Paper	**Roll Paper**			
	Cut Sheet			
Eject Paper				
Chg. Paper Type (*1 →P.930)	**Roll Paper**	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1 →P.930)		
	Cut Sheet	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1 →P.930)		
Chg. Paper Size	**Sheet Size**	(The size of paper is displayed here.) (*2 →P.930)		
		CustomPaperSize	(Set the length and width)	
	Roll Length (*3 →P.930)	(Set the length)		
	Roll Width (*4 →P.930)	(Set the width)		
ManageRemainRoll	**Off ***			
	On			
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1 →P.930)	**Head Height**	**Automatic ***	
			Highest	
			High	
			Standard	
			Low	
			Lowest	
			Super Low	
		Skew Check Lv.	**Standard ***	
			Loose	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1 →P.930)	**Skew Check Lv.**	**Off**	
		Cutting Mode (*6 →P.930)	**Automatic**	
			Eject	
			Manual	(The screen for setting paper leading edge detection is displayed)
		Cut Speed	**Fast**	
			Standard	
			Slow	
		Trim Edge First	**Automatic**	
			Off	
			On	
		CutDustReduct.	**Off**	
			On	
		VacuumStrngth	**Automatic** *	
			Strongest	
			Strong	
			Standard	
			Weak	
			Weakest	
		Scan Wait Time	**Dry time**	**Off** *
				1 sec.
				3 sec.
				5 sec.
				7 sec.
				9 sec.
			Area (*5 →P.930)	**Entire area** *
				Leading edge
		Roll DryingTime	**Off**	
			30 sec.	
			1 min.	
			3 min.	
			5 min.	
			10 min.	
			30 min.	
			60 min.	
		NearEnd RollMrgn	**5mm**	
			20mm	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1 →P.930)	**NearEnd Sht Mrgn**	**5mm**	
			20mm	
		Bordless Margin	**Automatic**	
			Fixed	
		Width Detection	**Off**	
			On *	
		Return Defaults		
Paper Details				
Keep Paper Type	**Off** *			
	On			

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .) Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") →P.779

*2: For information on the sizes of paper the printer supports, see "Paper Sizes." →P.775

*3: Available only if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On**.

*4: Available only if **Width Detection** is **Off**.

*5: **Leading edge** is not available as a setting option in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box of the printer driver.

*6: see "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls." →P.802

Ink Menu

First Level
Rep. Ink Tank
Head Cleaning A

Job Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Print Job	**Job List**	(Choose a print job.)	**Delete**	
			Preempt Jobs (*1 →P.931)	
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**
				Delete
			Print Job List	
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		
		User Name		
		Page Count		
		Job Status	**OK**	
			CANCELED	
		Print Start Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss**	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Print End Time**	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss**	
		Print Time	**xxxsec.**	
		Output Img. Size	(The image size is displayed)	
		Media Type		
		Paper Consumed		
		Paper Length		
		Paper Width		
		Interface	**USB**	
			Network	
			HDD	
		Ink Consumed	(The ink color is displayed here.)	**xxx.xxx ml**
		Print settings		
		Head Height		
		Temp./Humidity		
		Adjustment req.		
Print Job Log				
Pause Print	**Off ***			
	On			
HDD Information	**Total capacity**			
	Box free space			

*1: If a pending job is selected, **Print Anyway** is displayed.

Set./Adj. Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Test Print	**Nozzle Check**					
	Status Print					
	Interface Print					
	Paper Details					
	Print Job Log					
	Menu Map					
Adjust Printer	**Head Posi. Adj.**	**Auto(Standard)**				
		Auto(Advanced)				
		Auto(Expansion) (*1 →P.938)				
		Manual (*1 →P.938)				
	Feed Priority	**Adj. Priority**	**Automatic ***			
			Print Quality			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Adjust Printer	Feed Priority	Adj. Priority	Print Length			
		Adj. Quality (*2 →P.938)	Auto(GenuinePpr)			
			Auto(OtherPaper)			
			Manual			
		Adjust Length (*3 →P.938)	AdjustmentPrint	A:High		
				B:Standard/Draft		
			Change Settings	A:High		
				B:Standard/Draft		
	Calibration	Auto Adjust				
		Calibration Log	Date			
			Paper Type			
			Adjustment Type			
		Use Adj. Value	Disabled			
			Enabled *			
		"Set Exec. Guide"	Off *			
			On			
		Return Defaults				
Maintenance	Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A				
		Head Cleaning B				
	Nozzle Check					
	Replace P.head	Printhead L				
		Printhead R				
		L & R Printheads				
	Repl. maint cart					
	Head Info	Printhead L	ProductName:			
			s/n:			
			Days elapsed:			
			Count [Mdot]:			
		Printhead R	ProductName:			
			s/n:			
			Days elapsed:			
			Count [Mdot]:			
	Repl. S. Cleaner					
	Change Cutter					
Interface Setup	EOP Timer (*8 →P.938)	10 sec.				
		30 sec.				

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer** (*8 →P.938)	**1 min.**				
		2 min.				
		5 min.				
		10 min. *				
		30 min.				
		60 min.				
	TCP/IP (*8 →P.938)	**IPv4**	**IPv4 Mode**	**Automatic**		
				Manual *		
			Protocol (*4 →P.938)	**DHCP**	**On**	
					Off *	
				BOOTP	**On**	
					Off *	
				RARP	**On**	
					Off *	
			IPv4 Settings (*9 →P.938)	**IP Address**	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	
				Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	
				Default G/W	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	
			DNS Settings (*9 →P.938)	**DNS Dync update**	**On**	
					Off *	
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr		
				DNS Host Name		
				DNS Domain Name		
		IPv6	**IPv6 Support**	**On**		
				Off *		
			IPv6 StlessAddrs (*10 →P.938)	**On ***		
				Off		
			DHCPv6 (*10 →P.938)	**On**		
				Off *		
			DNS Settings (*9 →P.938) (*10 →P.938)	**DNS Dync update**	**Statefull Addr**	**On**
						Off *
					Stateless Addr	**On**
						Off *
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr		
				DNS Host Name		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Interface Setup	TCP/IP (*8 →P.938)	IPv6	DNS Settings (*9 →P.938) (*10 →P.938)	DNS Domain Name		
	NetWare (*8 →P.938)	NetWare	On			
			Off *			
		Frame Type (*5 →P.938)	Auto Detect			
			Ethernet 2			
			Ethernet 802.2 *			
			Ethernet 802.3			
			Ethernet SNAP			
		Print Service (*5 →P.938)	BinderyPServer			
			RPrinter			
			NDSPServer *			
			NPrinter			
	AppleTalk (*8 →P.938)	On				
		Off *				
	Ethernet Driver (*8 →P.938)	Auto Detect	On *			
			Off			
		Comm.Mode (*6 →P.938)	Half Duplex *			
			Full Duplex			
		Ethernet Type (*6 →P.938)	10 Base-T *			
			100 Base-TX			
			1000 Base-T			
		Spanning Tree	Not Use *			
			Use			
		MAC Address	xxxxxxxxxxxx			
	Interface Print (*8 →P.938)					
	Return Defaults (*8 →P.938)					
System Setup	Sleep Timer (*11 →P.938)	5 min. *				
		10 min.				
		15 min.				
		20 min.				
		30 min.				
		40 min.				

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
System Setup	**Sleep Timer** (*11 →P.938)	**50 min.**				
		60 min.				
		240 min.				
	Buzzer	**Off**				
		On *				
	Contrast Adj.	-4,-3,-2,-1,0*,+1,+2,+3,+4				
	Date & Time (*8 →P.938)	**Date** **yyyy/mm/dd** (*7 →P.938)				
			Time **hh:mm**			
	Date Format (*8 →P.938)	**yyyy/mm/dd** *				
		dd/mm/yyyy				
		mm/dd/yyyy				
	Language	English				
		日本語				
		Français				
		Italiano				
		Deutsch				
		Español				
		Русский				
		中文 (簡体字)				
		한국어				
	Time Zone (*8 →P.938)	**0:London (GMT)**				
		+1:Paris,Rome				
		+2:Athens,Cairo				
		+3:Moscow				
		+4:Eerevan,Baku				
		+5:Islamabad				
		+6:Dacca				
		+7:Bangkok				
		+8:Hong Kong				
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul				
		+10:Canberra				
		+11NewCaledonia				
		+12:Wellington				

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
System Setup	Time Zone (*8 →P.938)	-12:Eniwetok				
		-11:Midway is.				
		-10Hawaii(AHST)				
		-9:Alaska(AKST)				
		-8:Oregon (PST)				
		-7:Arizona(MST)				
		-6:Texas (CST)				
		-5:NewYork(EST)				
		-4:Santiago				
		-3:Buenos Aires				
		-2:				
		-1:Cape Verde				
	Length Unit	meter *				
		feet/inch				
	Detect Mismatch	Pause				
		Warning				
		None *				
		Hold Job				
	Paper Size Basis	Sht Selection 1	ISO A3+ * 13"x19"(Super B)			
		Sht Selection 2	ISO B1 * 28"x40" (ANSI F)			
	Keep Paper Size	Off *				
		On				
	Rep.P.head Print	Off				
		On *				
	Nozzle Check	Frequency	Standard *			
			1 page			
		Warning	Off *			
			On			
	CarriageScanWdth	Automatic *				
		Fixed				
	Use RemoteUI (*8 →P.938)	On *				
		Off				
	Reset PaprSetngs (*8 →P.938)					
	Erase HDD Data	High Speed (*8 →P.938)				
		Secure High Spd. (*8 →P.938)				

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
System Set-up	**Erase HDD Data**	**Secure** (*8 →P.938)				
	Output Method	**Print ***				
		Print (Auto Del)				
		Save: Box XX				
	Print After Recv	**Off ***				
		On				
	Common Box Set. (*4 →P.938)	**Print ***				
		Print (Auto Del)				
	Show Job Log (*8 →P.938)	**Off**				
		On *				
Take-up Reel (*12 →P.938)	**Use Take-up Reel**	**Disable ***				
		Enable				
	Auto Feed (*13 →P.938)					
	Skip Take-Up Err (*14 →P.938)	**Off ***				
		On				
Prep.Move-Printer	**Level 1**					
	Level 2					
	Level 3					
Admin. Menu (*8 →P.938)	**Change Password** (*9 →P.938)	(The screen for setting the password is displayed)				
	Init.Admin.Pswd (*9 →P.938)					
Printer Info	**Paper Info**					
	Ink Info					
	Head Info	**ProductName:**				
		s/n:				
		Days elapsed:				
		Count [Mdot]:				
		Printhead L	**ProductName:**			
			s/n:			
			Days elapsed:			
			Count [Mdot]:			
		Printhead R	**ProductName:**			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level
Printer Info	**Head Info**	**Printhead R**	**s/n:**			
			Days elapsed:			
			Count [Mdot]:			
	System Info					
	Error Log					
	Other Counter					

*1: Available after you have used **Auto(Advanced)** in **Head Posi. Adj.** once.

*2: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Quality**.

*3: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Length**.

*4: Not displayed if **IPv4 Mode** is **Manual**.

*5: Not displayed if **NetWare** is **Off**.

*6: Not displayed if **Auto Detect** is **On**.

*7: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.

*8: Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators, and only viewing for other users.

*9: Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators only.

*10: Not displayed if **IPv6 Support** is **Off**.

*11: Default setting for the time to enter the power save mode/Sleep mode is recommended.

*12: Displayed only when the Media Take-up Unit is attached.

*13: : Available if: (a) **Use Take-up Reel** is **Enable**, (b) roll paper is loaded, and (c) you have not executed **Auto Feed** for the loaded roll.

*14: Available when **Use Take-up Reel** is **Enable**.

Menu Settings

Menu items are as follows.
For instructions on selecting menu items, see "Menu Operations." →P.925
For details on menu levels and values, see "Menu Structure." →P.928

Paper Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Load Paper	Select either sheets or rolls and load the paper.
Eject Paper	Choose this item before removing loaded paper.
Chg. Paper Type (*1 →P.940)	Change the type of paper loaded. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.791
Chg. Paper Size	Change the size of paper loaded. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.793 (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775
ManageRemainRoll	Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode. (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.799

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1 →P.940)	**Head Height**	Adjust the Printhead height. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
		Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
		Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. If you choose **Automatic**, the roll will be cut automatically using the Cutter Unit, depending on the printer driver settings. Select **Eject** to prevent printed documents from falling immediately after printing such as when you wait for the ink to dry, etc. **Manual** prints lines at the cut position instead of cutting after printing. If you select **Manual**, the setting screen for detection of the paper leading edge is displayed. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802
		Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. The preset selection represents the optimal cutting speed for the type of paper. We recommend keeping the preset cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing **Slow** helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
		Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.
		CutDustReduct.	If you choose **On**, a line will be printed at the cut position when paper cutting is selected. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (See "Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.") →P.812
		VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863
		Scan Wait Time	Select **Entire area** to apply the ink drying time after each scan until the document is fully printed. If you select **Leading edge**, the drying time is entered per each scan until about 130–160 mm (5.1–6.2 in) from the leading edge of the paper, and colors may be uneven in the boundary between the areas with and without a drying time. (The applicable length varies depending on the **Print Quality** setting.)
		Roll DryingTime	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
		NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **5mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1 →P.940)	**NearEnd Sht Mrgn**	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **5mm**, it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
		Bordless Margin	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose **Automatic** to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when **Automatic** is selected, choose **Fixed**. In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
		Width Detection	Specify this option to print inside boundaries or in other cases when specifying a particular starting position for printing. Paper width and skew are not detected if you select **Off**. If paper is loaded askew, paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
		Return Defaults	Choose **OK** to restore **Paper Details** to the default values.
Paper Details			Print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**.
Keep Paper Type			Select **On** when printing on a particular type of paper regularly. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.791

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .) Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") →P.779

Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997
Head Cleaning A	Printhead cleaning options. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 Execute **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

Job Menu

Setting Item				Description, Instructions
Print Job	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**	Delete the current job or queued jobs. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725
			Preempt Jobs	Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print the saved job.
				Delete	Delete the saved job.
			Print Job List		Print a list of saved print jobs.
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)	**Document Name**			Indicates the document name of the selected print job.
		User Name			Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count			Indicates the number of pages in the job.
		Job Status			Indicates the printing results.
		Print Start Time			Indicates when the print job was started.
		Print End Time			Indicates when the print job was finished.
		Print Time			Indicates the time required to print the job.
		Output Img. Size			Indicates the image size in the print job.
		Media Type			Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
		Paper Consumed			Indicates the total amount of paper consumed.
		Paper Length			Indicates the length of paper.
		Paper Width			Indicates the width of paper.
		Interface			Indicates the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed			Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job.(*1 →P.941)
		Print settings			A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates job print settings.
		Head Height			A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the head height when jobs wereprinted.
		Temp./Humidity			A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the temperature and humiditywhen jobs were printed.
		Adjustment req.			A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates adjustment conditions appliedto jobs.
Print Job Log					Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(*1 →P.941)
Pause Print					Choose **On** to stop printing.
HDD Information					Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space.

*1: A rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

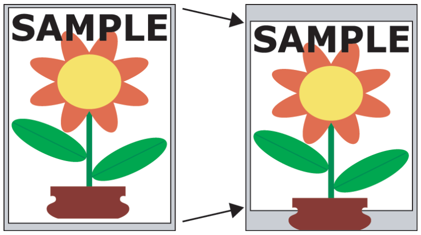
Set./Adj. Menu

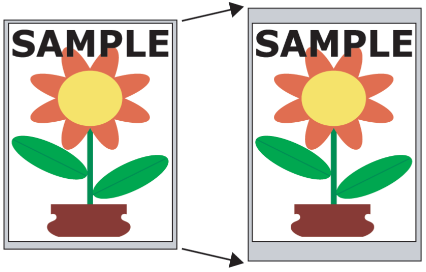
Setting Item				Description, Instructions
Test Print	**Nozzle Check**			Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.
	Status Print			Print information about the setting values and condition of the printer.
	Interface Print			Print interface settings information.
	Paper Details			Print the paper settings as specified in **Paper Details**.
	Print Job Log			Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(*1 →P.949)
	Menu Map			Print the menu structure.
Adjust Printer	**Head Posi. Adj.**	**Auto(Standard)**		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
		Auto(Advanced)		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction and spacing between nozzles and colors. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
		Auto(Expansion)		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction and spacing between nozzles and colors. Adjustment is performed at a higher level of precision than **Auto(Advanced)**. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
		Manual		Print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.852
	Feed Priority	**Adj. Priority**	**Automatic**	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select **Automatic**. Choose **Print Quality** for attractive printing. Choosing **Print Quality** also makes banding less noticeable. Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that slight banding may occur in the direction of carriage scanning when **Print Length** is selected.
			Print Quality	
			Print Length	
		Adj. Quality	**Auto(GenuinePpr)**	Specify this mode with paper identified in the Paper Reference Guide.(See Paper Reference Guide .) The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
			Auto(OtherPaper)	Specify this mode with paper not in the Paper Reference Guide.(See Paper Reference Guide .)

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	**Feed Priority**	**Adj. Quality**	**Auto(OtherPaper)**		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and consumes more ink than **Auto(GenuinePpr)**. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
			Manual		Use this mode with highly transparent media or other paper for which **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)** cannot be used. Print a test pattern for adjustment of the feed amount based on the type of paper. (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.859
		Adjust Length	**Adjustment-Print**	**A:High**	Print a test pattern for particular types of paper to compensate for paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you enter the amount of adjustment. (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).") →P.861
				B:Standard/Draft	
			Change Settings	**A:High**	Displayed when you have selected **Feed Priority** > **Adj. Priority** > **Print Length**. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from **Adjustment-Print** or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
				B:Standard/Draft	
	Calibration	**Auto Adjust**			Choose **Yes** for automatic adjustment of the adjustment value after a test pattern for color calibration is printed.
		Calibration Log			The **Date**, **Paper Type**, and **Adjustment Type** for which color calibration was executed are displayed on the Display Screen where you can confirm them. Common calibration and unique calibration are the **Adjustment Type** of color calibration. When paper is set in the printer, the history of effective color calibration for the set paper is displayed. When paper is not set in the printer, the latest history among common calibration or unique calibration is displayed. Also, a hyphen (-) is displayed when there are no execution results. (See "Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment.") →P.865 (See "Paper that can be used in Color Calibration.") →P.869
		Use Adj. Value			Choose **Disabled** > **OK** if you prefer not to apply the color calibration adjustment value in print jobs. However, printer driver settings are given priority. Choose **Enabled** > **OK** to apply the color calibration adjustment value in print jobs. However, printer driver settings are given priority.

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	**Calibration**	**"Set Exec. Guide"**			If you select **On**, a message is displayed on the control panel at the timing recommended for executing color calibration.
		Return Defaults			Clear the color calibration adjustment value and the execution log.
Maintenance	**Head Cleaning**				Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A**.
	Nozzle Check				Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.
	Replace P.head				Execute when replacing the Printhead. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013 Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.
	Repl. maint cart				Execute when replacing the Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028
	Head Info	**Printhead L**			Indicates information about the printhead.
		Printhead R			
	Repl. S. Cleaner				Replace the Shaft Cleaner. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028
	Change Cutter				Replace the Cutter Unit. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing the Cutter Unit.") →P.1024 Once you replace the Cutter Unit, you can also reset the cut counter.
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**				Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
	TCP/IP	**IPv4**	**IPv4 Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
			Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
				BOOTP	
				RARP	
			IPv4 Settings	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway. The value that was automatically configured is displayed if you have set **IPv4 Mode** to **Automatic**.
				Subnet Mask	
				Default G/W	

Setting Item						Description, Instructions
Interface Setup	**TCP/IP**	**IPv4**	**DNS Settings**	**DNS Dync update**		Specify whether DNS server registration is updated automatically.
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		Specify the DNS server address.
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr		
				DNS Host Name		Specify the DNS host name.
				DNS Domain Name		Specify the DNS domain name.
		IPv6	**IPv6 Support**			Specify whether to connect via IPv6.
			IPv6 StlessAddrs			Specify whether a IPv6 stateless address is used.
			DHCPv6			Specify whether DHCPv6 settings are used.
			DNS Settings	**DNS Dync update**	**Statefull Addr**	Specify whether DNS server registration is updated automatically.
					Stateless Addr	
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		Specify the DNS server address.
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr		
				DNS Host Name		Specify the DNS host name.
				DNS Domain Name		Specify the DNS domain name.
	NetWare	**NetWare**				Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
		Frame Type				Specify the frame type to use.
		Print Service				Choose the print service.
	AppleTalk					Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**.
	Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**				Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Register Setting**. Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to use settings values of **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type**.
		Comm.Mode				Choose the LAN communication method.
		Ethernet Type				Choose the LAN transfer rate.
		Spanning Tree				Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
		MAC Address				Indicates the MAC address.
	Interface Print					Print interface settings information.
	Return Defaults					Choose **OK** to restore **Interface Setup** settings to the default values.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Setup	**Sleep Timer**		Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.
	Buzzer		Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.
	Contrast Adj.		Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.
	Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
		Time	Set the current time. Available only if the **Date** setting is specified.
	Date Format		Specify the date format.
	Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen.
	Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
	Length Unit		Choose the display unit for length. Change the unit displayed for the remaining amount of roll paper, **Tot.Print Area**, and so on.
	Detect Mismatch		Specify printing behavior if the type and size of paper specified in the printer menu does not match the type and size in the printer driver. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. Choose **Warning** to continue printing after notification. Choose **None** to continue printing without notification. Choose **Hold Job** to store jobs with mismatched types and sizes of paper on the printer hard disk, in a print queue awaiting processing. (See "Using the Printer Hard Disk.") →P.720
	Paper Size Basis	**Sht Selection 1**	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3+** or **13"x19"(Super B)** is applied when a sheet of an intermediate size is detected.
		Sht Selection 2	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO B1** or **28"x40" (ANSI F)** is applied when a sheet of an intermediate size is detected.
	Keep Paper Size		Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed.  Choose **Off** to give priority to margin settings. The larger value is used if the margin specified in the printer driver does not match the margin in the printer menu.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
System Setup	**Keep Paper Size**		
	Rep.P.head Print		Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
	Nozzle Check		In **Frequency**, specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **Standard** to have the printer adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use. Choose **1 page** to check once per page. Select **Warning** > **On** to display warnings if the nozzles clog during printing.
	CarriageScanWdth		Specify the scan width of the carriage during printing. Select **Automatic** for movement equivalent to the width of paper loaded. Selecting **Fixed** will reduce any soiling on the back of the paper, although printing may take a little longer.
	Use RemoteUI		Choosing **Off** prohibits access from RemoteUI. Settings can only be configured from the control panel.
	Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the default values.
	Erase HDD Data	**High Speed**	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. (See "Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.") →P.909
		Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. (See "Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.") →P.909
		Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random data (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. (See "Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.") →P.909
	Output Method	**Print**	Select the printing method for jobs received from software other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver, configure settings on the printer. To print as usual, select **Print**. Selecting **Print (Auto Del)** will print the job and then delete the data from the printer's hard disk. Selecting **Save: Box 01** will only save the print job in the box, without printing it.
		Print (Auto Del)	
		Save: Box XX	
	Print After Recv		A setting for jobs received from software other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver, configure settings on the printer. Select **On** to print the job after it has been saved.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Setup	**Common Box Set.**	Select **Print (Auto Del)** to print without saving jobs in the box shared among multiple users.
	Show Job Log	Selecting **Off** prevents display of the log in **Job Menu** > **Job Log**. Additionally, the log is not printed if you choose **Job Menu** > **Print Job Log**. Note that because job logs are not collected, the Status Monitor accounting functions will not work correctly.
Take-up Reel	**Use Take-up Reel**	Selecting **Enable** allows use of the Media Take-up Unit.
	Auto Feed	Available only if **Use Take-up Reel** is already set to **Enable**. Rolls are automatically advanced to the position for attachment to the Rewind Spool.
	Skip Take-Up Err	Available only if **Use Take-up Reel** is already set to **Enable**. Choose **On** to continue with printing even if an error occurs with the Media Take-up Unit. Choose **Off** to pause printing if a take-up error occurs.
Prep.MovePrinter		When transferring the printer to another location, choose the level of transfer and follow the instructions on the screen. (See "Preparing to Transfer the Printer.") →P.1044 Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.
Admin. Menu	**Change Password**	By setting a password, you can restrict menu display and configuration as follows. Enter a number in the range 0–9999999. • Viewing and configuration by administrators only **IPv4 Settings** **Change Password** **Init.Admin.Pswd** • Viewing and configuration by administrators, and only viewing by other users **Interface Setup** settings (except **IPv4 Settings**) **Date & Time** **Date Format** **Time Zone** **Use RemoteUI** **Reset PaprSetngs** **Common Box Set.**
	Init.Admin.Pswd	Choose **OK** to restore the **Admin. Menu** password to the default values.
Printer Info	**Paper Info**	Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info	Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Printer Info	**Head Info**	**Printhead L**	Indicates information about the printhead.
		Printhead R	
	System Info		Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log		Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Other Counter		Indicates the total printing volume of the printer.

*1: A rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

Menu Settings (During Printing)

Menu items are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting menu items, see "Menu Operations." →P.925
For details on menu levels and values, see "Menu Structure." →P.928

Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997
Head Cleaning A	Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 Execute **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

Job Menu

Setting Item					Description, Instructions
Print Job	**Job List**	(Choose a print job)	**Delete**		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725
			Preempt Jobs		Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725
			Print Anyway		Displayed when a job being held is selected. (See "Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold).") →P.728
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Job List**	**Print**	Print the saved job.
				Delete	Delete the saved job.

Setting Item				Description, Instructions
Stored Job	**Mailbox List**	(Enter a password if one has been set.)	**Print Job List**	Print a list of saved print jobs.
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		Indicates the document name of the selected print job.
		User Name		Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count		Indicates the number of pages in the job.
		Job Status		Indicates the printing results.
		Print Start Time		Indicates when the print job was started.
		Print End Time		Indicates when the print job was finished.
		Print Time		Indicates the time required to print the job.
		Print Size		Indicates the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type		Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
		Interface		Indicates the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumed		Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job.(*1 →P.950)
Print Job Log				Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job. (*1 →P.950)
Pause Print				If you set this option to **On**, printing is stopped at that point and the printer enters a state in which printing is paused.
HDD Information				Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space.

*1: A rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

Set./Adj. Menu

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Adj. Fine Feed		Displayed when you have selected **Feed Priority** > **Adj. Priority** > **Automatic** or **Print Quality**. Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
Printer Info	**Paper Info**	Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info	Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.
	Head Info	Indicates the model name, serial number, number of days used, and dot count of the current printhead
	System Info	Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log	Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Other Counter	Indicates the total printing volume of the printer.

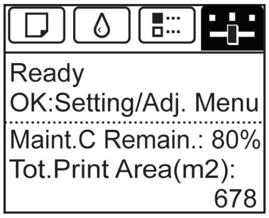
Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the status of consumables.

Printing **Status Print** reports

1. Load paper.
   When using sheets, load paper of A4/Letter size. You will need at least four sheets.
   The required sheet quantity varies depending on the execution log quantity of unique calibration.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in **Status Print** reports

The following information is included in **Status Print** reports.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model
Firm	Firmware version
Boot	Boot ROM version
MIT(DBF)	MIT database format version
MIT(DB)	MIT database version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	Indicates when the status print report was printed.

Paper Menu			Information on the loaded paper.
	Paper Type		
		Roll Media	
		Cut Sheet	
	ManageRemainRoll		
	Keep Paper Type		

Job Menu			Job-related information.
	Job Log		A counter for maintenance purposes. Various information about previous jobs.
	HDD Information		Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space.
		Total capacity	
		Box free space	

Set./Adj. Menu				Settings and adjustment information.
	System Setup			Printer system settings, as well as settings regarding warnings and errors.
		Sleep Timer		
		Buzzer		
		Contrast Adj.		
		Date Format		
		Language		
		Time Zone		
		Length Unit		
		Detect Mismatch		
		Paper Size Basis		Paper-related settings.
			Sht Selection 1	
			Sht Selection 2	
		Keep Paper Size		

9

		Rep.P.head Print			Settings after a test pattern was printed following head replacement.
		Show Job Log			**Show Job Log** settings.
		Nozzle Check			Nozzle-check settings.
			Frequency		
			Warning		
		CarriageScanWdth			Carriage scan width setting.
		Use RemoteUI			Settings used by RemoteUI.
		Output Method			Print job settings.
		Print After Recv			
		Common Box Set.			
	Adjust Printer				Adjustment settings.
		Head Posi. Adj.			A counter for maintenance purposes. Head position adjustment values for previous jobs.
			Adjust Log		
		Calibration			Color calibration settings.
			Calibration Log (Common Calibration)		A record of when common calibration was performed.
				Date	Indicates the date when calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
				Paper Type	
			Use Adj. Value		A setting value indicating whether color calibration adjustment values are to be applied to printing.
			Set Exec. Guide		A setting value indicating whether to display a message recommending the execution of color calibration.
	Take-up Reel				Settings regarding the Media Take-up Unit.
		Use Take-up Reel			
		Skip Take-Up Err			
	Printer Info				Ink information, RAM usage, and a record of errors.
		Ink Info			Ink-related information.
			MC		Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
			PC, C, BK, MBK, Y, M, PM, GY		Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.
		System Info			Indicates the total amount of RAM.
			RAM		
		Error Log			The past five error codes.

HEAD LOT NUMBER		Printhead lot number.
	LOT L: R:	

PARTS STATUS			Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER		
COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
		LIFE TTL	
		LIFE ROLL	
		LIFE CUTSHEET	
	MEDIA 1-7,OTHER		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

DUTY		Counters for maintenance purposes. Needed when service is requested.
	UNIT:m2	
	UNIT:sq.f	
	UNIT:A4 Sheet	
	UNIT:Letter Sheet	

Set./Adj. Menu					Settings and adjustment information.
	Adjust Printer				Adjustment settings.
		Calibration			Color calibration settings.
			Calibration Log (Unique Calibration)		A record of when unique calibration was performed.
				No.	Log number.
				Paper Type	Indicates the date when calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
				Date	

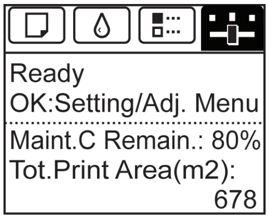
Printing Interface Setting Reports

You can print an **Interface Print** report indicating the current interface settings values of the printer.
Interface Print reports indicate settings values for TCP/IP, NetWare, and other settings.

Printing **Interface Print** reports

1. Load the paper.
   If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized, you will need at least three sheets.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Confirming **Interface Print** information

The following information is included in the **Interface Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Interface Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	The date when the interface setup print report was printed.

EOP Timer		Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IPv4	Frame Type	**IPv4** settings values.
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address	
	Subnet Mask	
	Gateway Address	

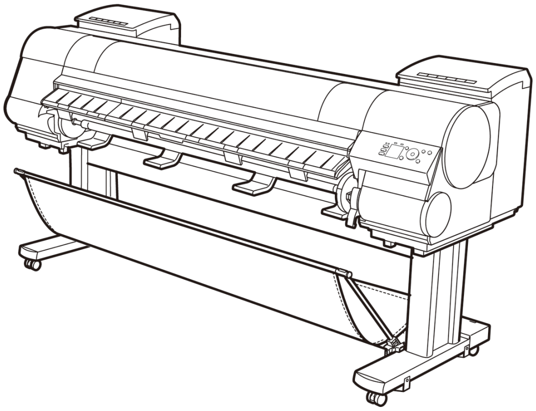
TCP/IPv4	LPD Printing	**IPv4** settings values.
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Use Discovery	
	Scope	
	Primary DNS Server Address	
	Secondary DNS Server Address	
	DNS Host Name	
	DNS Domain Name	
	MulticastDNS ServiceName	
	SNMPv1	
	SNMPv3	

TCP/IPv6	Use IPv6		**IPv6** settings values.
	Use DHCPv6	Stateful Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use a stateless address	Stateless Address 1	
		Prefix Length 1	
		Stateless Address 2	
		Prefix Length 2	
		Stateless Address 3	
		Prefix Length 3	
		Stateless Address 4	
		Prefix Length 4	
		Stateless Address 5	
		Prefix Length 5	
		Stateless Address 6	
		Prefix Length 6	
	Use a link-local Address	Link-Local Address	
		Prefix Length	
	Use a manual address	IP Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Default Router Address	
		Prefix Length	

TCP/IPv6	Use a manual address	Primary DNS Server Address	**IPv6** settings values.
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4	DNS Host Name	
		DNS Domain Name	
	Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses		
	Dynamically update the stateless address		
	Dynamically update the manual address		

NetWare	Frame Type		**NetWare** settings values.
	IPX External Network Number		
	Node Number		
	Print Application		
	Bindery PServer	File Server Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter	Print Server Name	
		Printer Number	
	NDS PServer	Tree Name	
		Context Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
	NPrinter	Print Server Name	
		Printer Number	
AppleTalk	Phase Type		**AppleTalk** settings values.
	Name		
	Network Number		
	Zone		
Network Interface	Physical Interface		Network interface settings values.
	Transmission Rate		
	MAC Address		
	Auto Detect		
	Communication		
	Ethernet Type		
	Spanning Tree		
	Use the Jumbo Frame Function		

Network Setting



Network Environment

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv4)
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
    - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Windows Server 2008 (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition)
    - Windows 7
    - Windows XP Professional x64 Edition
    - Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
    - Windows Vista x64
    - Windows Server 2008 x64
    - Windows 7 x64
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
    - Unix (Solaris 9)
    - Unix (Red Hat 9)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv6)
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Windows Server 2008 (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition)
    - Windows 7
    - Windows Vista x64
    - Windows Server 2008 x64
    - Windows 7 x64
    - Mac OS X 10.3.9 or later

Note

- When using IPv6, you must specify IPv6 on the Control Panel or in RemoteUI. For instructions, see "Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings." →P.968 or see "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI ." →P.970
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is supported in Mac OS X 10.4.11 or later.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with Unix.

- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8–10.4
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows XP (Professional)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

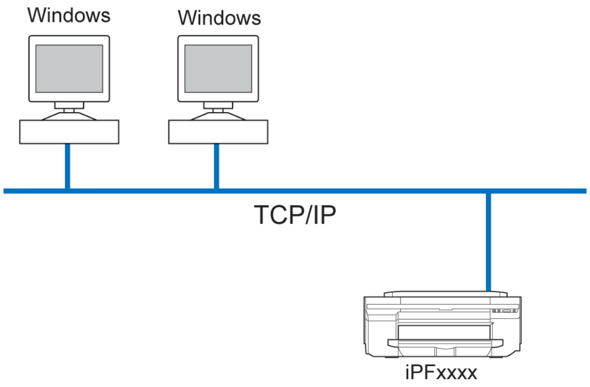
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network Environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

Example of a Windows network

In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.

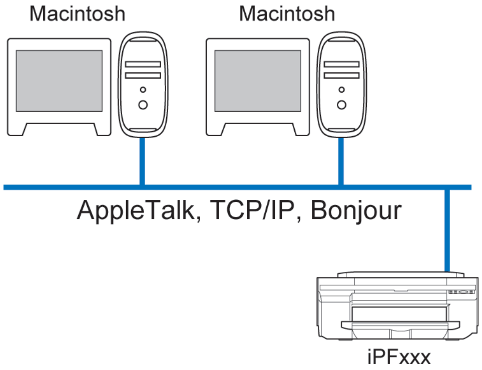


Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network

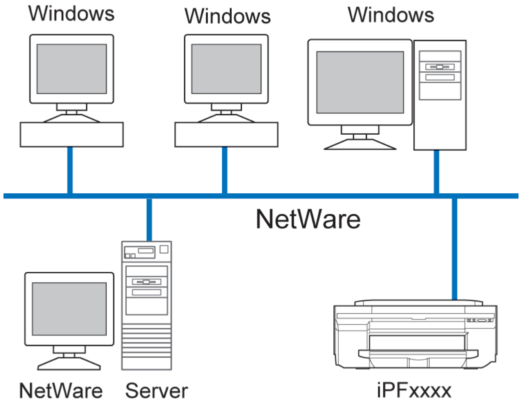
In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour (Zeroconf) functions.



Note

- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use it in conjunction with TCP/IP or AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Using RemoteUI

Using RemoteUI

RemoteUI is software with which you can access the printer via the network from your Web browser to confirm the printer status, operate jobs, and configure the settings. Since the software (Web server) for using RemoteUI is built in the printer, preparing software other than a Web browser is unnecessary. You can use RemoteUI if an imagePROGRAF printer on a network is connected to your computer. If you start your Web browser and specify the IP address of the printer, the RemoteUI screen is displayed, and you can use RemoteUI.

Important

- To use RemoteUI, an IP address must be set on the printer in advance. For the method of setting an IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer." →P.965

What You Can Do With RemoteUI

With RemoteUI, you can access the printer via a network, configure network settings, and display the current status of the printer, various types of information, the processing status of jobs, etc.

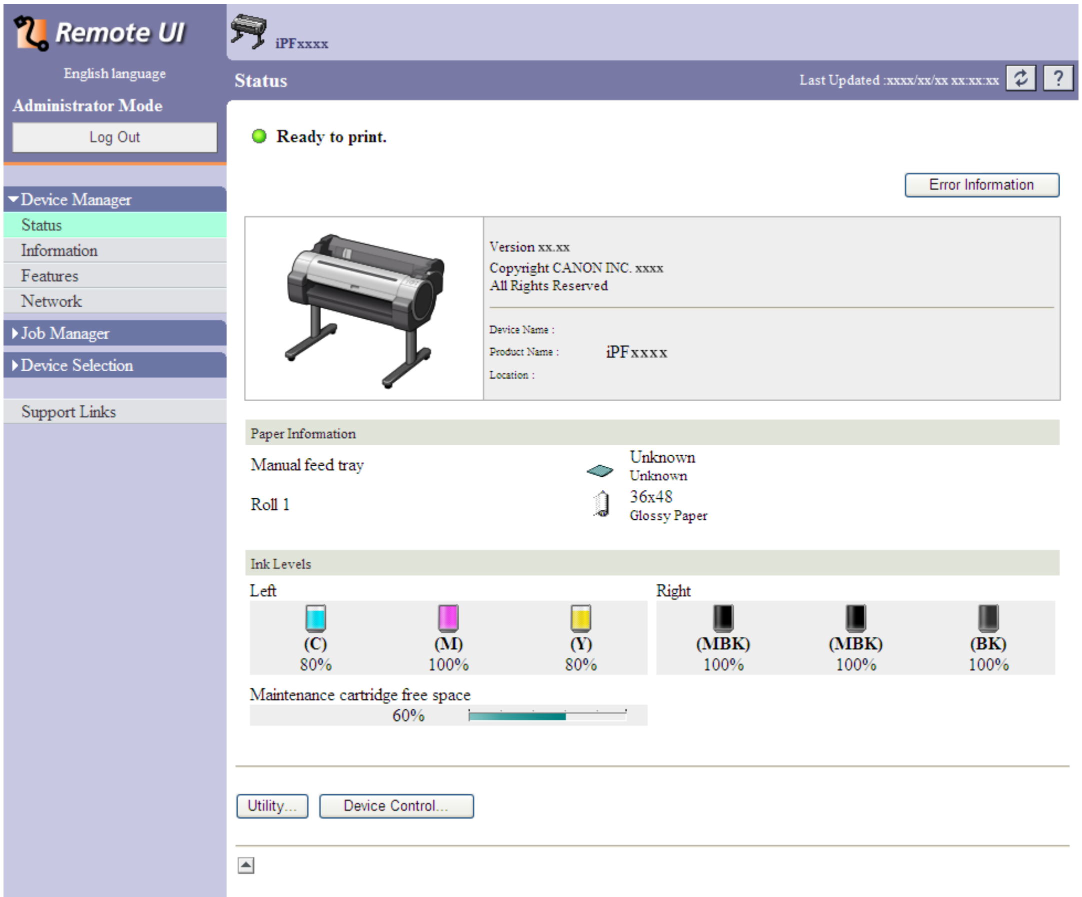
Starting RemoteUI

Start RemoteUI by the following operations.

1. Start your Web browser.

2. Enter the following URL in **Address** or **Location**.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

3. The RemoteUI screen is displayed.



Ready to print.

Version xx.xx
Copyright CANON INC. xxxx
All Rights Reserved

Device Name :
Product Name : iPFxxxx
Location :

Paper Information

Manual feed tray	Unknown Unknown
Roll 1	36x48 Glossy Paper

Ink Levels

Left			Right		
(C)	(M)	(Y)	(MBK)	(MBK)	(BK)
80%	100%	80%	100%	100%	100%

Maintenance cartridge free space 60%

Note

- The screen slightly differs depending on the model of printer.

Configuring the Network With RemoteUI

For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI →P.970
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings →P.989
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI →P.981
- Specifying Printer-Related Information →P.991

Important

- For the Web browser, use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later. For Mac OS X, Safari 1.32 or later or 2.03 or later also is supported.
- This cannot be used connected via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.
- Depending on the network environment, you may not be able to start RemoteUI.
- Confirm whether **System Setup** > **Use RemoteUI** is set to **On** on the Control Panel of the printer.

Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.
- If you login in Administrator Mode, you can configure to use the Jumbo Frame function in the **Network** page. However, this function might not be able to be used depending on the network environment.

Initial Settings

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Setup Guide.
Configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility →P.443 (Windows)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel →P.966
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands →P.967

Important

- If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus, when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.
  - Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating
    In the printer menu, either set **DNS Dync update** to **On**, or activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** in RemoteUI.
    (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
    (See "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI .") →P.970
  - Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up

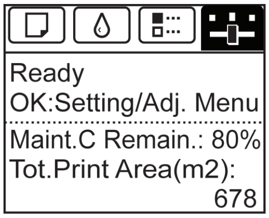
Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4 Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the **OK** button.

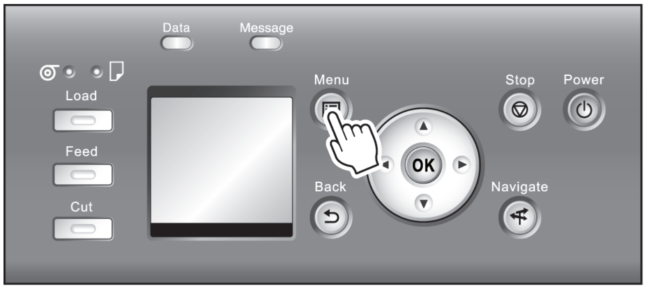
8. After you press ◀ or ▶ to select the input field, numerical input is possible.

9. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.

> Note
> - Hold down ▲ to increase the value continuously. However, 0 follows 2 for digits of 100 and 0 follows 9 for digits of 10 and 1.
> - Hold down ▼ to decrease the value continuously. However, 2 follows 0 for digits of 100 and 9 follows 0 for digits of 10 and 1.
> - Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
> - Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.

10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.

11. Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed the settings, a confirmation message is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.
- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.

Note

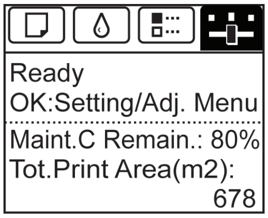
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.
- The DNS can also be configured from the printer Control Panel.

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.
To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.
You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu

Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the **OK** button.

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- You can investigate the MAC address by printing an interface setting report.
(See "Printing Interface Setting Reports.") →P.954

2. In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.

3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.
   arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]
   Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx

   > Note
   > - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format
   >   arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx.
   >   For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
   ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
   Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

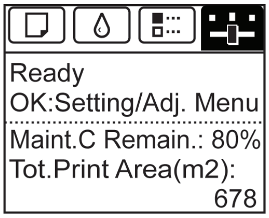
   > Note
   > - In **-l**, the **l** is the letter **l**.
   > - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format
   >   ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.
   >   For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

> Note
> - The subnet mask and default gateway are set to 0.0.0.0. Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
>   For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings

When printing in a TCP/IPv6 network, you must configure the TCP/IPv6 settings on the Control Panel.
Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IPv6 network settings.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6 Support**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

Important

- Once you set **IPv6 Support** to **On**, the **IPv6 StlessAddrs** setting takes effect.

Note

- You can also configure **IPv6 StlessAddrs** and **DHCPv6** from the printer Control Panel.
- The DNS can also be configured from the printer Control Panel.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.
The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or Raw protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

Important

- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer →P.965

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**, **Devices and Printers**) window.

2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** (For Windows 7 and Windows Vista, **Printer Properties**) to open the printer properties window.

3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.

4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.

5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.

6. Click **New Port**.
After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.

7. Click **Next**.

8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address. If the DNS is configured, you can also enter the DNS Domain Name.

9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.

10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.

11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.

12. Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS X)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks ." →P.984
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network ." →P.986

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

When using an IPv4 IP address

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://**printer IP address or name**/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv4** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.

6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters.	printer
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
FTP Printing	Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.	On
Use Discovery	Activate this setting to use SLP Discovery function.	On
Scope	Enter the SLP search range.	default
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address. You can also specify the SMTP server domain name, if desired.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and **-** (hyphens). Do not use numbers or **-** for the first character or **-** for the last character.	NB-18GBipxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, **-** (hyphens), and **.** (periods). Do not use numbers, **-**, or **.** for the first character, or **-** or **.** for the last character.	blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1–63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes up to two minutes to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address** and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

When using an IPv6 IP address

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://**printer IP address or name**/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv6** group to display the **Edit TCP/IPv6 Protocol Settings** page.

6. Refer to the TCP/IPv6 Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IPv6 Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Use IPv6		Activate to enable IPv6.	Off
Use DHCPv6		Activate when using a DHCPv6 server to acquire the IP address.	Off
Use a stateless address		Activate when using an IPv6-compatible router to acquire the IP address.	On
Use a manual address		Activate when configuring the IP address manually.	Off
	IP Address	Enter the printer's IP address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the IP address prefix length.	0
	Default Router Address	Enter the default router address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the prefix length of the default router address.	0
Primary DNS Server Address		Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	::
Secondary DNS Server Address		Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	::
Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4		Activate when using the same DNS host and domain names as for IPv4.	Off
	DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and **-** (hyphens). Do not use numbers or **-** for the first character or **-** for the last character.	NB-18GBip6xxxxxx
	DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, **-** (hyphens), and **.** (periods). Do not use numbers, **-**, or **.** for the first character, or **-** or **.** for the last character.	blank
Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateful address with the DNS server.	Off
Dynamically update the stateless address		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateless address with the DNS server.	Off

Item	Details	Default Setting
Dynamically update the manual address	Activate this setting to automatically register the manual address with the DNS server.	Off

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Note

- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address** and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

NetWare Settings

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

Follow these steps to configure the network environment when using the printer in a NetWare network.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as **Administrator**. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Configure the Ethernet frame type to be used in communication by the printer with the computer.
   For details on configuring settings, see "Specifying the Printer's Frame Type." →P.975

2. Configure the NetWare print service such as the print server and queue.
   For details on configuring settings, see "Specifying NetWare Print Services." →P.979

3. Configure the NetWare protocol details other than the frame type.
   For details on configuring settings, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI." →P.981
   After completing the settings of this procedure, configure the settings on each computer for printing in a NetWare network.

4. Connect to the NetWare network.
   Install the NetWare client software on all computers that are to perform printing, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For details on connecting, refer to the documentation for NetWare or your operating system.

5. Install the printer driver.
   According to the instructions of your network administrator, install the printer driver on all computers that are to perform printing. When installing, select **Network Printer** as the printer connection destination, and select the queue created when configuring the NetWare print service.

6. Configure the printer port by the following procedure. If you configured the printer connection destination while installing the printer driver, this procedure is unnecessary.
   1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**, **Devices and Printers**) window.
   2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** (For Windows 7 and Windows Vista, **Printer Properties**) to open the printer properties window.
   3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
   4. Configure the print destination port to the print queue created when configuring the NetWare print service.

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.

Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.

Important

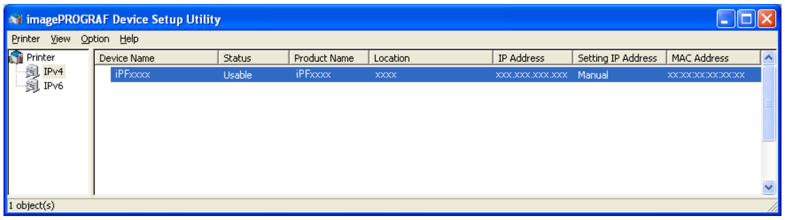
- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.

Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility." →P.443 .

Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

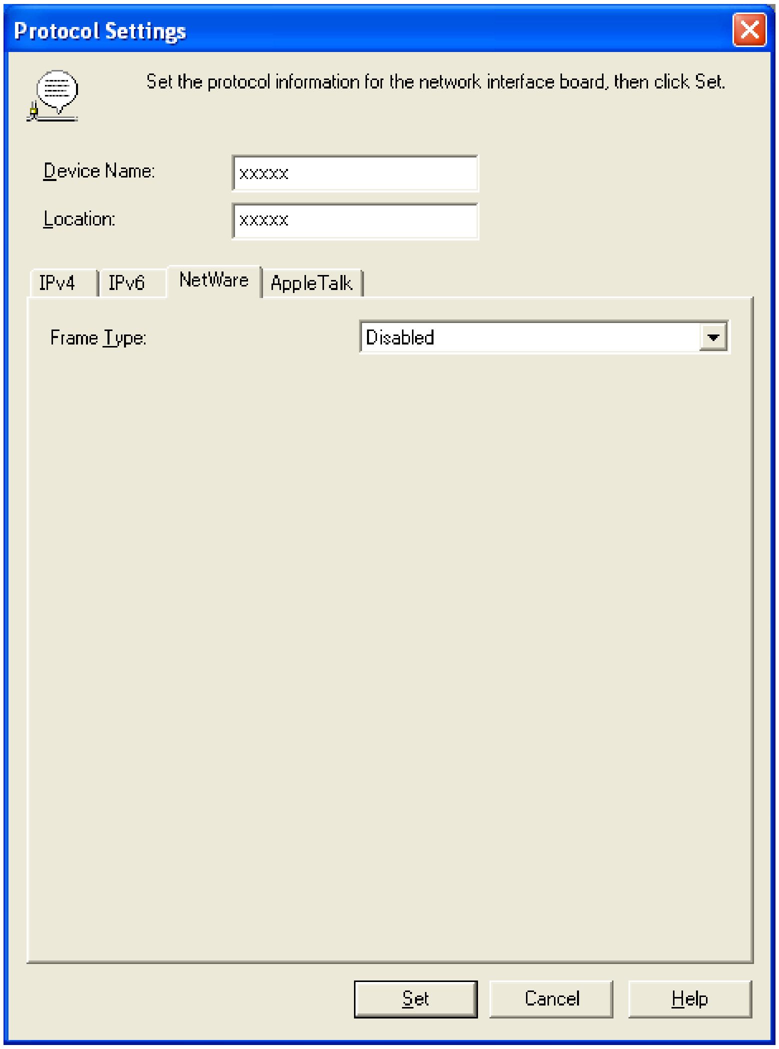
Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address
iPFxxxx	Usable	iPFxxxx	xxxx	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Manual	xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx

1 object(s)

2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.

3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.

4. Click the **NetWare** tab and select the frame type in the **NetWare Frame Type** list.



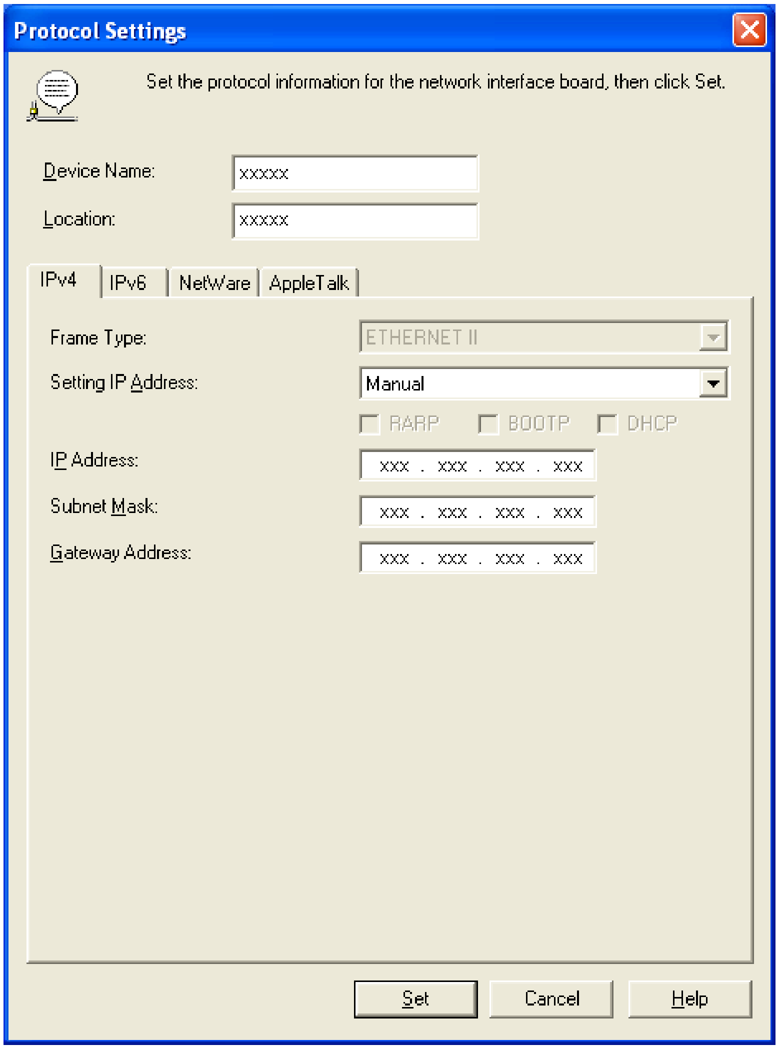
Set the protocol information for the network interface board, then click Set.

Device Name: xxxxx

Location: xxxxx

Frame Type: Disabled

5. Select the **IPv4** tab. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.



Protocol Settings

Set the protocol information for the network interface board, then click Set.

Device Name: xxxxx

Location: xxxxx

Frame Type: ETHERNET II

Setting IP Address: Manual

☐ RARP ☐ BOOTP ☐ DHCP

IP Address: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

Subnet Mask: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

Gateway Address: xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx

Important

- You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

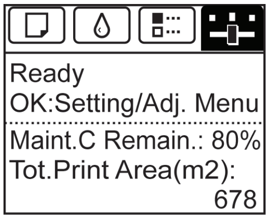
6. Click **Set**.

7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.

8. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (⊟).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

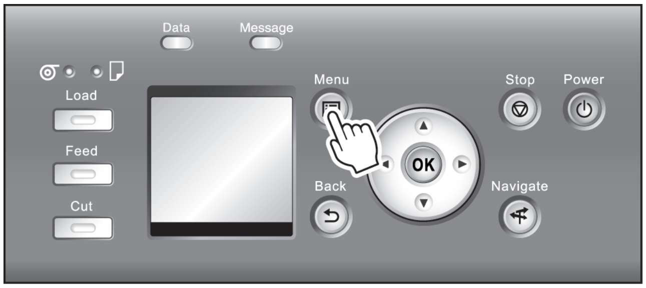
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the **OK** button.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.

11. Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed any settings, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel this process, press the **Back** button.

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following Novell software provided with NetWare.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE

Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note

- In NetWare 5.1 or 6.0, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and bindery
  NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue server mode and remote printer mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue server mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote printer mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.

2. Run Quick Setup.
    1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
    2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
    3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
    4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
    5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
    6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
    7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

    Note
    - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.
    - When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number 0. When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from 0.

3. Set a password.
    1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
    2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
    3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
    4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.

4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.
    To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter **LOAD PSERVER.NLM** at the file server and press the Enter key.

    Note
    - This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Admin and start PCONSOLE.

2. Switch to bindery mode.

3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup**, and press the Enter key.
    2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

Note

- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
    1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
    2. Press the Esc key.
    3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
    2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
    3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
    4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.

6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. The print service selected here is enabled. Multiple print services cannot be enabled simultaneously. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0–20 characters)	—
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1–15 seconds)	5
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-15)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server. (0–32 characters)	—
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server. (0–255 characters)	—
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–64 characters)	—
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server. (0–20 characters)	—
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1–255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server. (0–47 characters)	—
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254)	0

7. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.

- If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)

  1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.

- If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)

  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)

  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.

- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)

  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ." Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services →P.979 ."

8. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Mac OS X Settings

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks

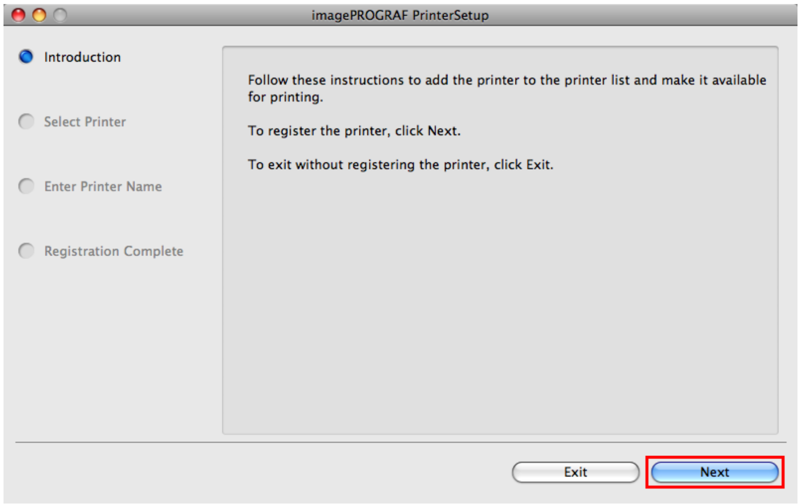
Follow these steps to configure the destination when using the printer in a TCP/IP network.

> Important
> - If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel.") →P.966

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

1. Navigate to **Applications** > **Canon Utilities** > **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup** and double-click **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup.app**.

2. Click **Next**.

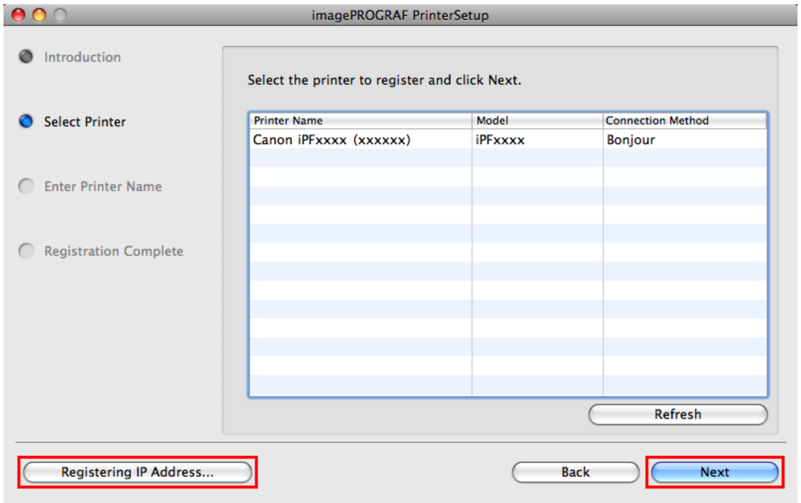


Follow these instructions to add the printer to the printer list and make it available for printing.

To register the printer, click Next.

To exit without registering the printer, click Exit.

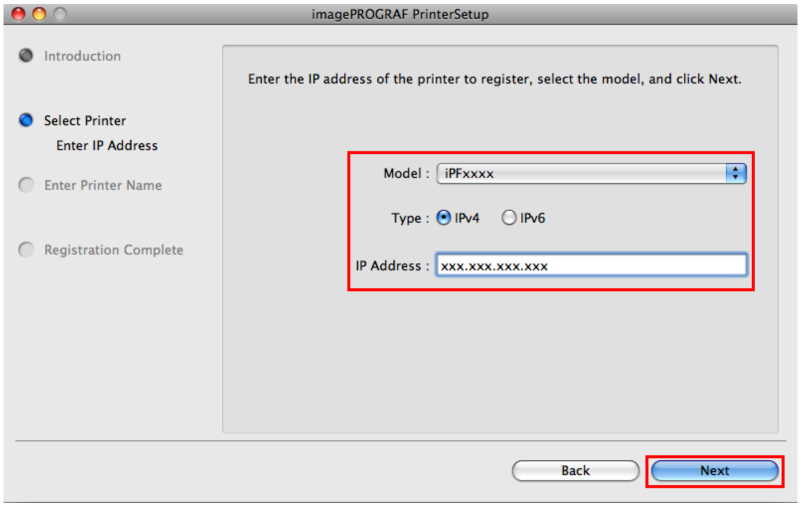
3. Click **Registering IP Address**.



Select the printer to register and click Next.

Printer Name	Model	Connection Method
Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)	iPFxxxx	Bonjour

4. Select the model and type and then enter the IP address before clicking the **Next** button.



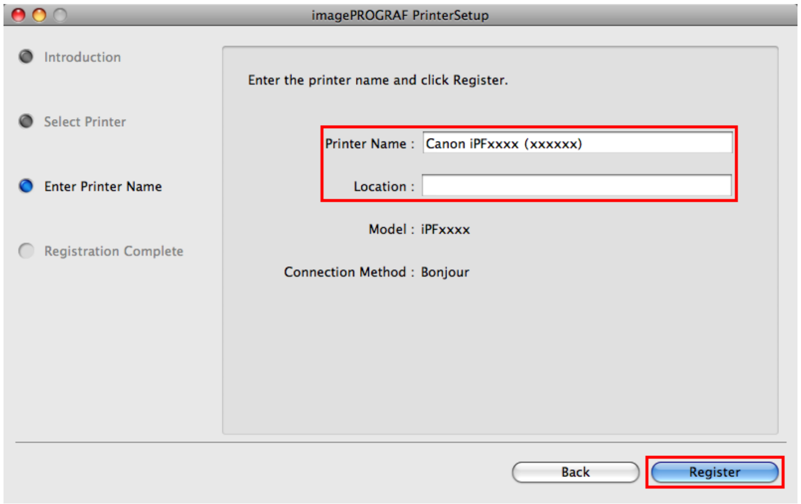
Enter the IP address of the printer to register, select the model, and click Next.

Model : iPFxxxx

Type : ● IPv4 ○ IPv6

IP Address : xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

5. Complete **Printer Name** and **Location** as desired and click **Register**.



Enter the printer name and click Register.

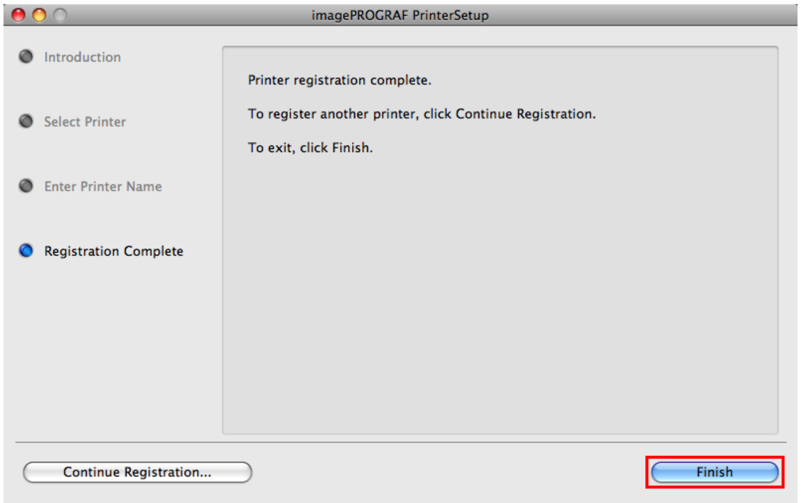
Printer Name : Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

Location :

Model : iPFxxxx

Connection Method : Bonjour

6. Click **Finish**.



Printer registration complete.

To register another printer, click Continue Registration.

To exit, click Finish.

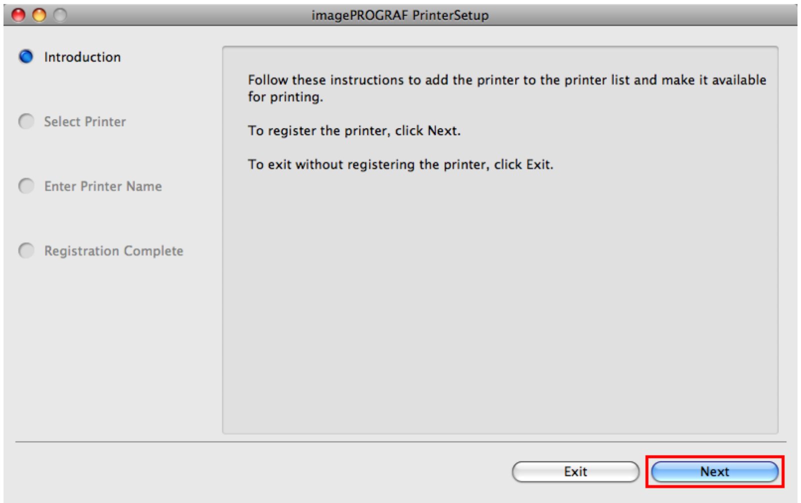
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network

Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you are using the printer in a network that uses the Bonjour function.

> Important
>
> - Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
> - By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

1. Navigate to **Applications** > **Canon Utilities** > **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup** and double-click **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup.app**.

2. Click **Next**.

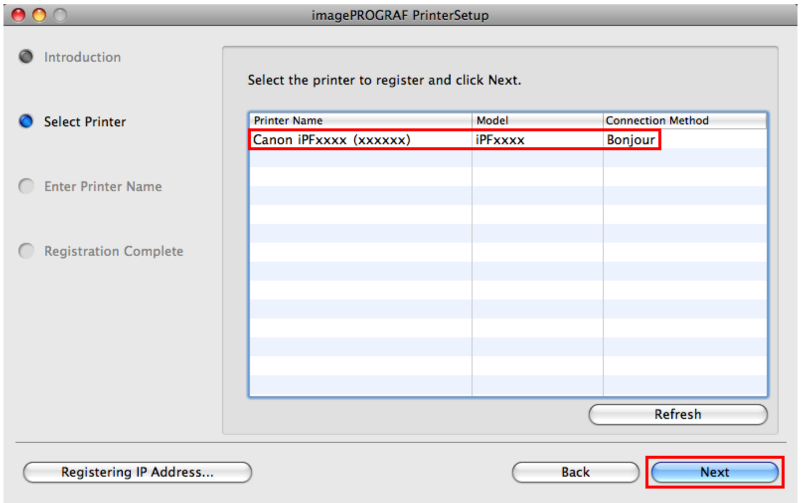


Follow these instructions to add the printer to the printer list and make it available for printing.

To register the printer, click Next.

To exit without registering the printer, click Exit.

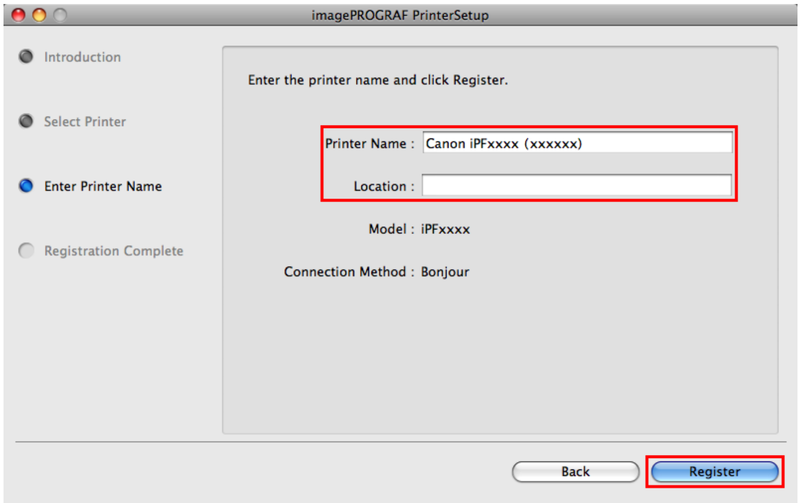
3. Select the printer to register and click **Next**.



Select the printer to register and click Next.

Printer Name	Model	Connection Method
Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)	iPFxxxx	Bonjour

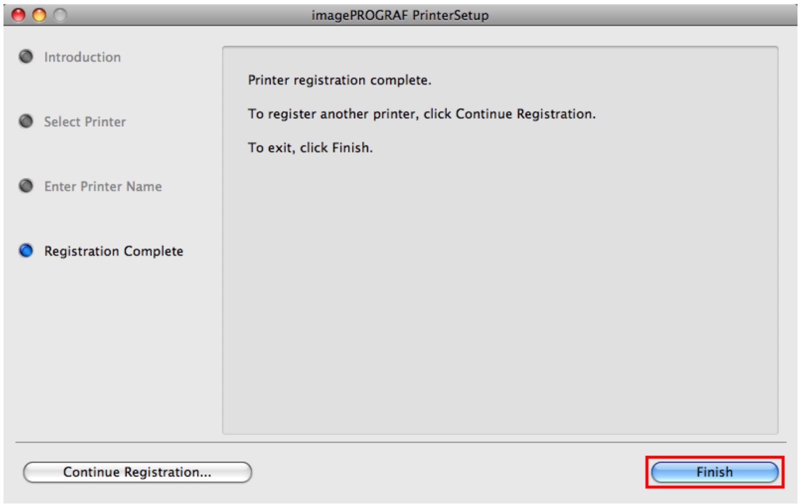
4. Complete **Printer Name** and **Location** as desired and click **Register**.



Enter the printer name and click Register.

Printer Name : Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)
Location :
Model : iPFxxxx
Connection Method : Bonjour

5. Click **Finish**.



Printer registration complete.

To register another printer, click Continue Registration.

To exit, click Finish.

Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks

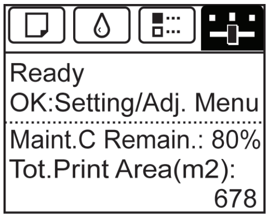
To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

Important

- By default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

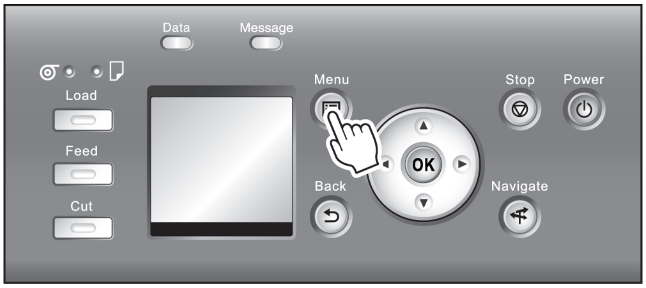
2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press the **Menu** button.
   If you have changed any settings, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Important

- Be sure to complete step 6. This will activate the values you have entered.

Note

- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used for AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

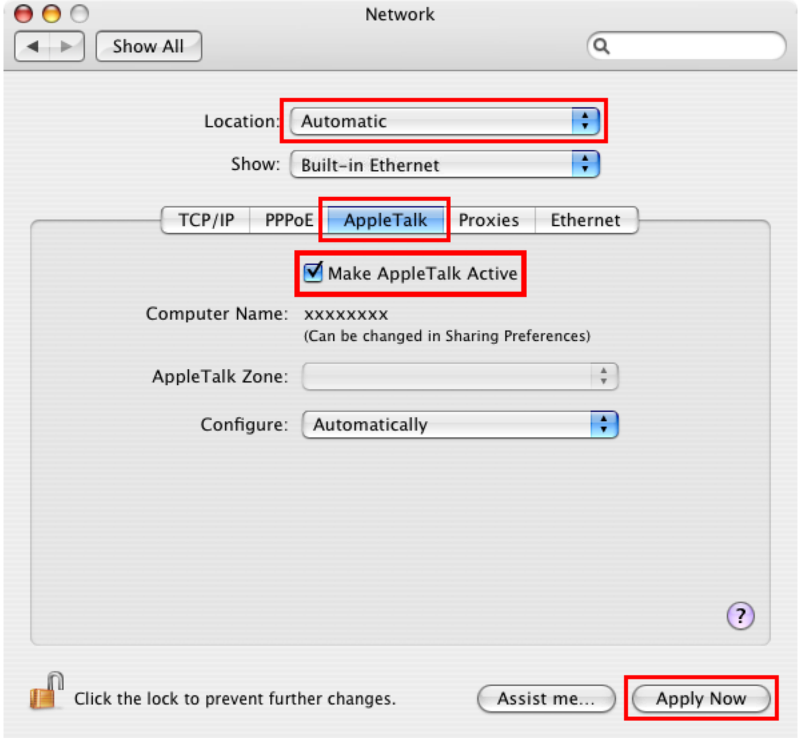
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

Important
- AppleTalk is supported in Mac OS X 10.2.8–10.4.

Note
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.

2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



Location: Automatic

Show: Built-in Ethernet

☑ Make AppleTalk Active

Computer Name: xxxxxxxx
(Can be changed in Sharing Preferences)

AppleTalk Zone:

Configure: Automatically

Click the lock to prevent further changes.

3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
http://printer IP address or name/
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.

6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled**.	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.	Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: Also avoid using ***** (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8–10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is **Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx)**. (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's MAC address.)

*2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk ***** entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Other Settings

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.

5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
   To change the administrator password, click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

6. Refer to the table of settings for device information and security as you complete these settings.
   Security setting items are displayed when you click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

Device Information Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Enter a device name. (0–32 characters)	blank
Location	Enter the location where the device is installed. (0–32 characters)	blank
Administrator	Enter the administrator's name. (0–32 characters)	blank
Phone	Enter the administrator's contact information. (0–32 characters)	blank
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any comments regarding the administrator. (0–32 characters)	blank

Security Settings

Item	Details	Default Setting
New Password	Enter the new password. (0-9999999)	blank
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-9999999)	blank

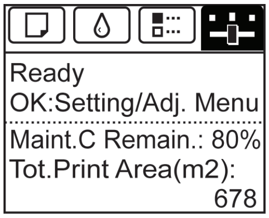
*1: On the **Security** settings screen, besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication settings.

7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.
   The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

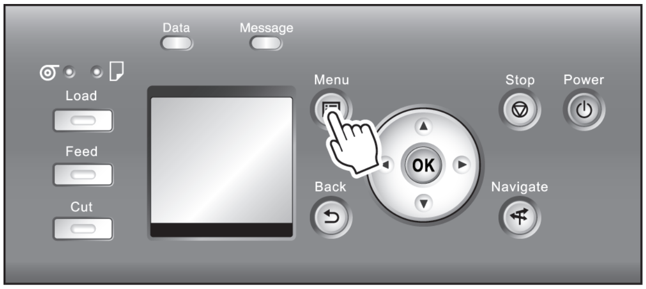
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press the **OK** button.
    The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press the **OK** button.

12. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press the **OK** button.
    The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

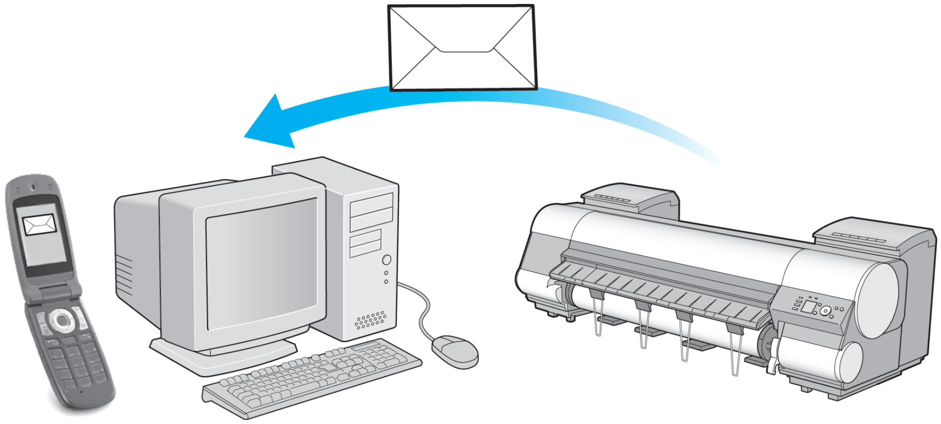
13. Press the **Menu** button.
After the confirmation message is displayed, press the **OK** button.
The new settings will take effect after the printer restarts.



Note
- Communication can also be configured on the **Network** page in RemoteUI.

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions,see "Specifying Printer-Related Information." →P.991

Note
- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.
- Mail server authentication is only supported with imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer." →P.965
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI ." →P.962

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://printer IP address or name/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.

3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.

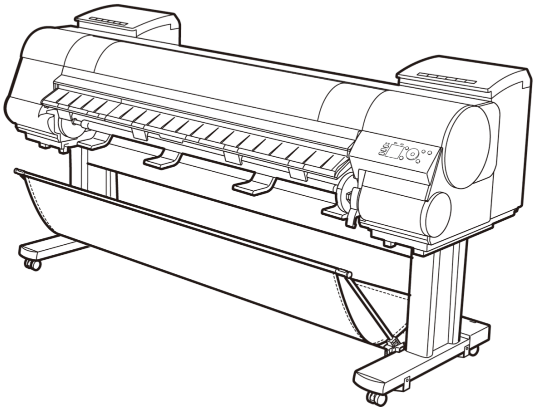
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.

6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.

Maintenance and Consumables

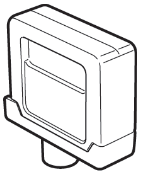


Ink Tanks

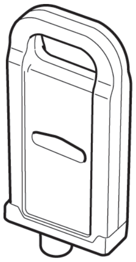
Ink Tanks

When purchasing ink tanks, make sure the following Ink Tank serial numbers are printed on the label.

- 330 ml (11.2 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-304MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-304BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-304C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-304M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-304Y
  - PC Ink Tank PFI-304PC
  - PM Ink Tank PFI-304PM
  - GY Ink Tank PFI-304GY



- 700 ml (23.7 fl oz)
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-704MBK
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-704BK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-704C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-704M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-704Y
  - PC Ink Tank PFI-704PC
  - PM Ink Tank PFI-704PM
  - GY Ink Tank PFI-704GY



Note

- For instructions on Ink Tank replacement, see "Replacing Ink Tanks." →P.997

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible ink tanks

Replacement ink tanks in 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) and 700 ml (23.7 fl oz) capacities are supported.
For information on supported ink tanks, see "Ink Tanks." →P.996

Precautions when handling ink tanks

Take the following precautions when handling ink tanks.

Caution

- For safety, keep ink tanks out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

- There may be ink around the ink supply section of ink tanks you removed. Handle ink tanks carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install used ink tanks in another model of printer.
  This will prevent correct ink level detection, which may damage the printer or cause other problems.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Printing quality may be affected if you use older ink tanks.
- Do not leave the printer without ink tanks installed for extended periods (a month or more). Residual ink may become clogged inside the printer and affect printing quality.

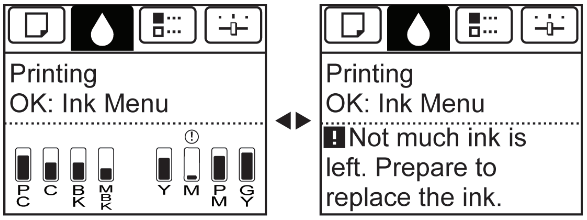
How to replace an Ink Tank

1. Confirm the message. →P.997
2. Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement. →P.998 (Otherwise, open the Ink Tank Cover.)
3. Remove the Ink Tank.
   - 330 ml ink tanks →P.999
   - 700 ml ink tanks →P.1000
4. Load the new Ink Tank.
   - 330 ml ink tanks →P.1002
   - 700 ml ink tanks →P.1005

Confirm the message

When the ink level becomes low, a message is displayed on the Display Screen.

According to the message, replace the ink tank or prepare a new ink tank. (See "When to Replace Ink Tanks.") →P.1009

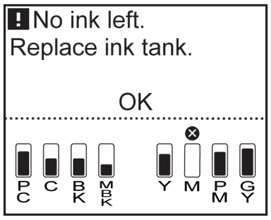


Printing
OK: Ink Menu

◀▶

Printing
OK: Ink Menu
Not much ink is left. Prepare to replace the ink.

If a message requests you to replace an Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. In this case, you can skip the step **Access the menu for ink tank replacement.** Follow the instructions in **Remove the ink tanks.**



No ink left.
Replace ink tank.

OK

Important

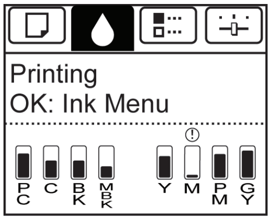
- Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning. Ink may leak out.

Note

- Ink Tank replacement is possible even during printing, when print jobs are being canceled, or when paper is being advanced.

Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab (💧).



Printing
OK: Ink Menu

Note

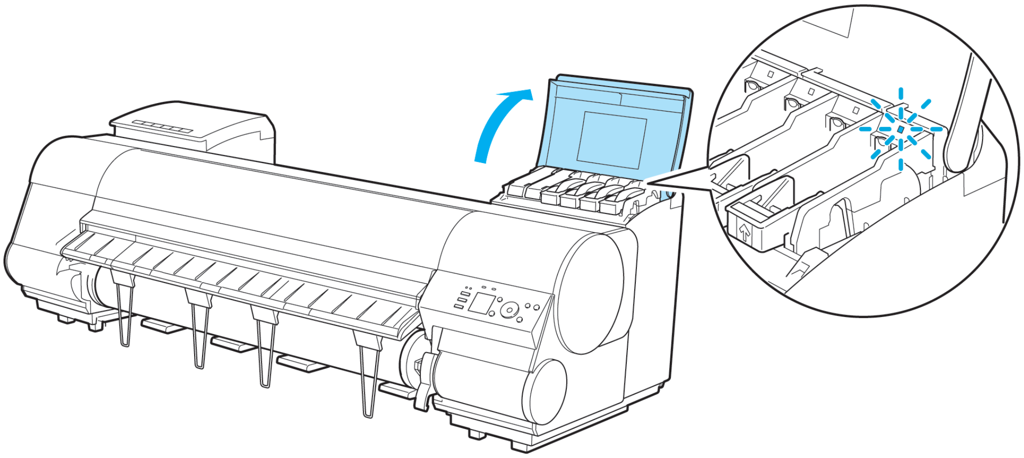
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Ink Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the **OK** button.
A message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Remove the Ink Tank at this point.

Remove the Ink Tank (330 ml)

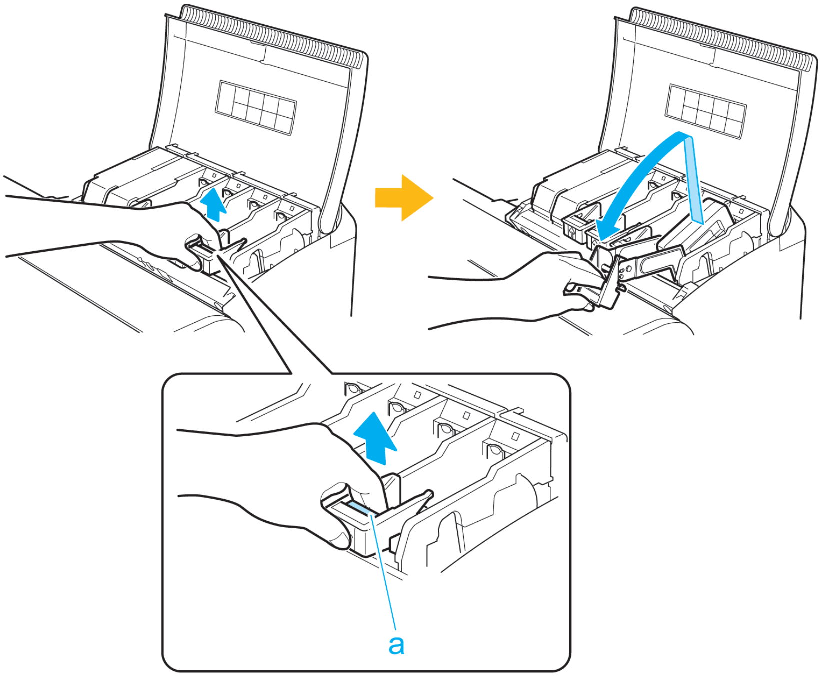
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
   The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Important

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks. Jolting the printer during printing may deteriorate print quality.

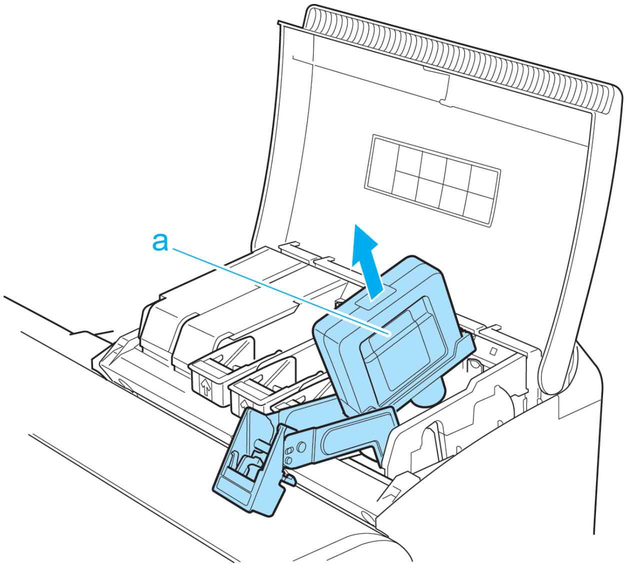
2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever for the color to replace. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.



Note

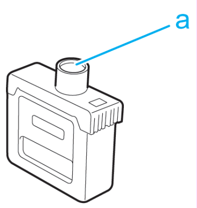
- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the original position.

3. Hold the Ink Tank by the grips (a) and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



Important

- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the removed Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

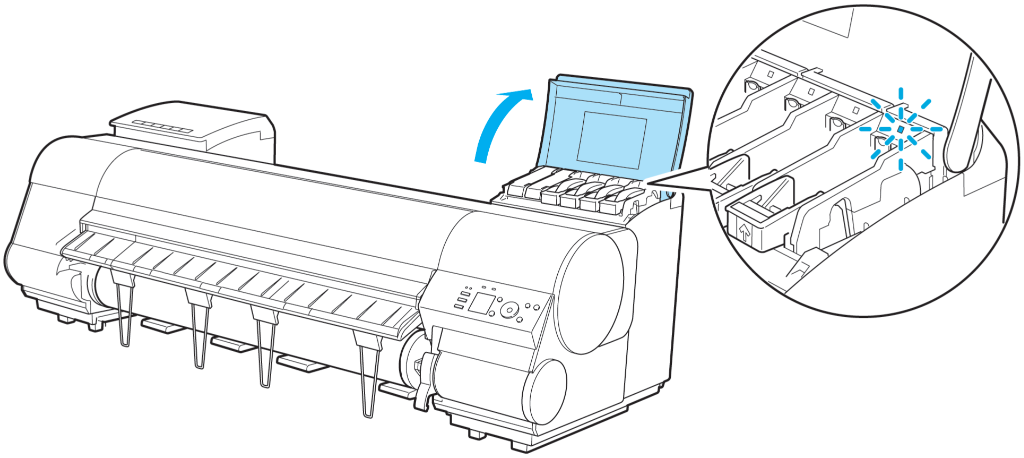


Note

- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

Remove the Ink Tank (700 ml)

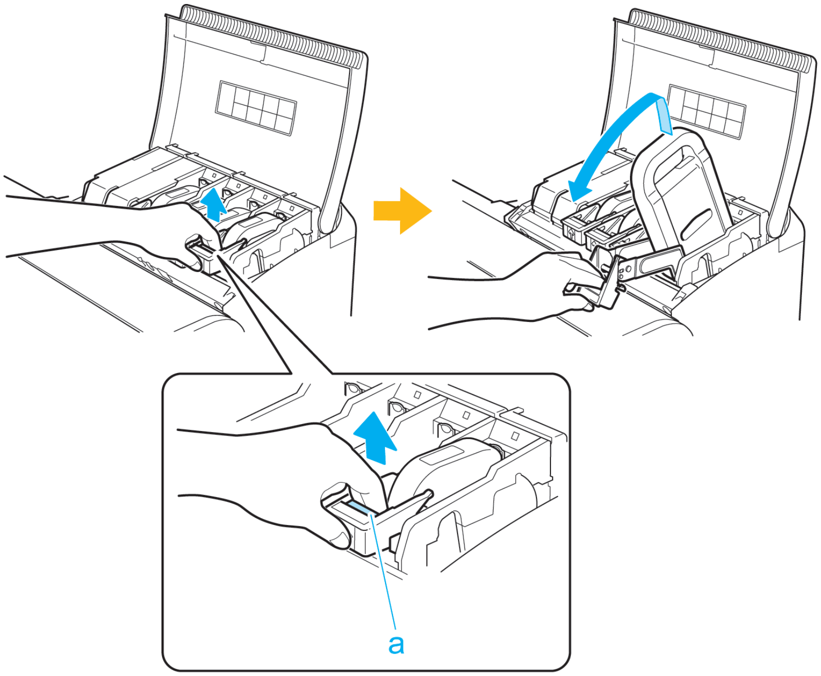
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover of the tank for replacement and check the Ink Lamp.
The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.



Important

- Avoid hitting the printer when replacing an Ink Tank. Handle the printer gently when replacing tanks. Jolting the printer during printing may deteriorate print quality.

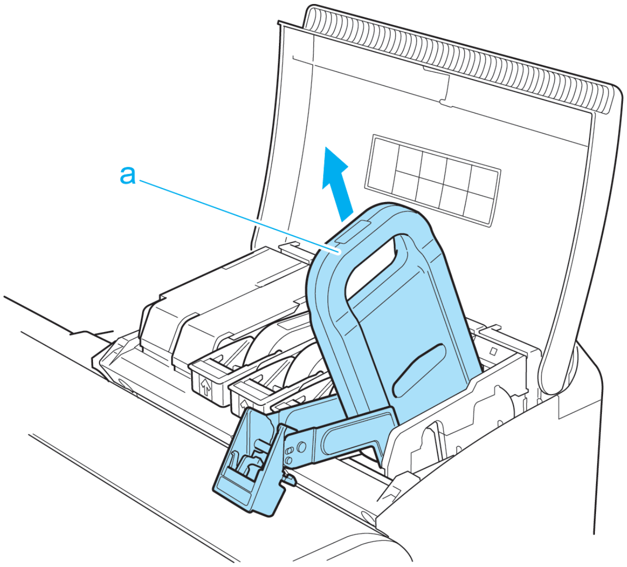
2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever for the color to replace. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.



Note

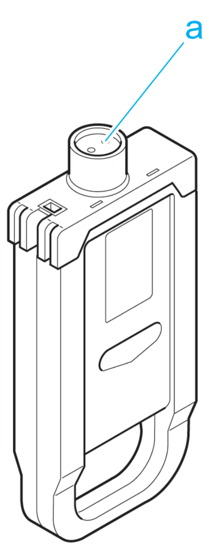
- Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever down until it locks.
- Make sure the Ink Tank Lock Lever does not return to the original position.

3. Hold the Ink Tank by the handle (a) and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



Important

- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

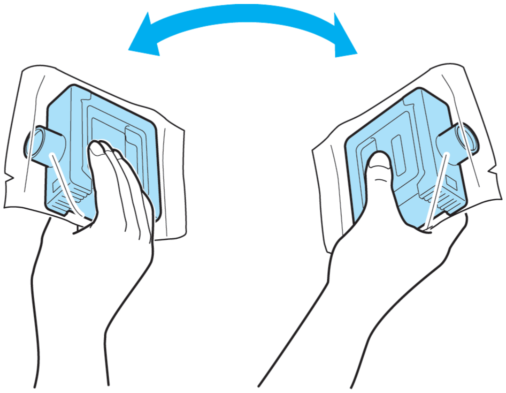


Note

- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

Load the Ink Tank (330 ml)

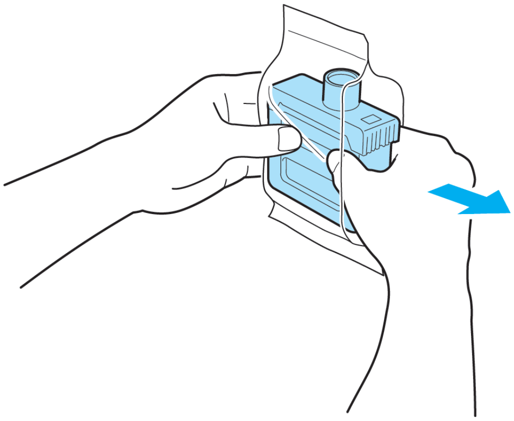
1. Before opening the pouch, tilt the Ink Tank to the left and right gently seven or eight times.



Important

- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may settle, which may affect printing quality.

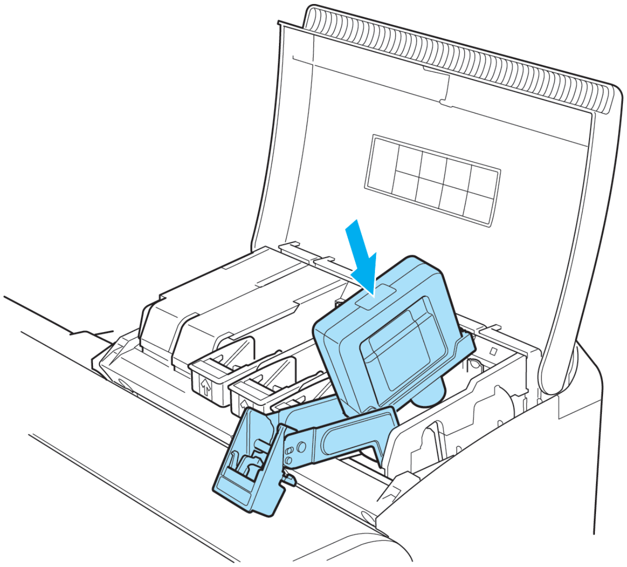
2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Important

- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.

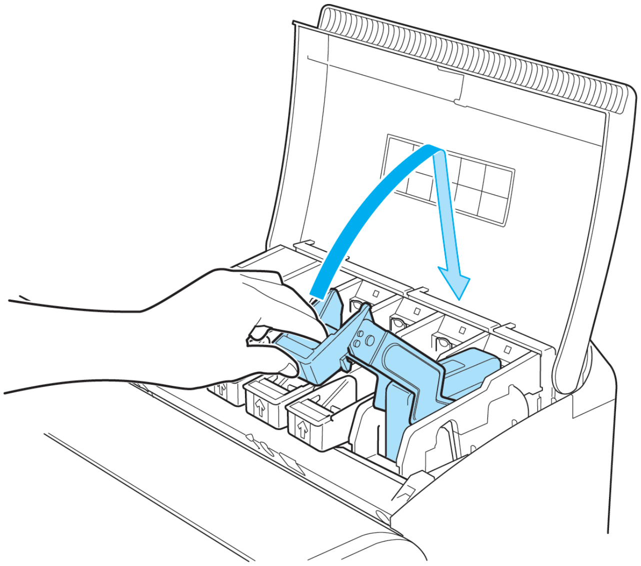
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown, with the ink holes down.



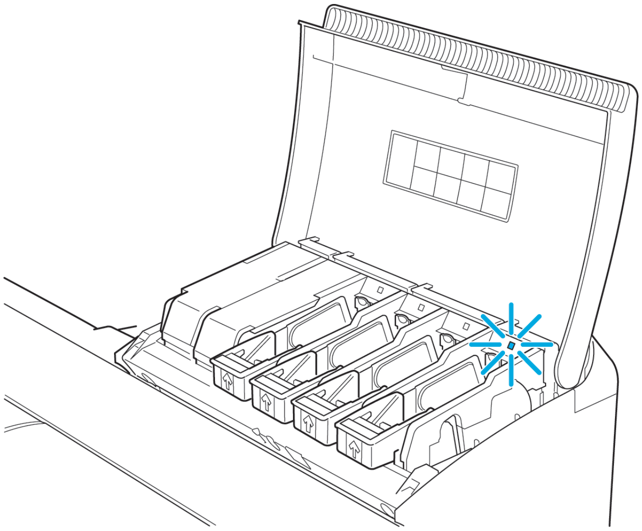
Important

- Ink tanks cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



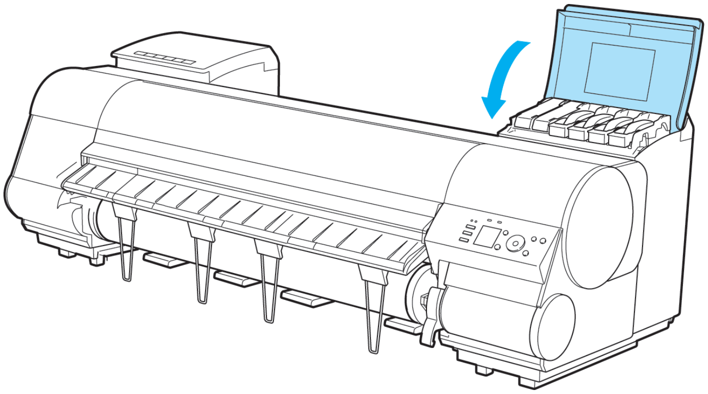
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the tank.

6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.

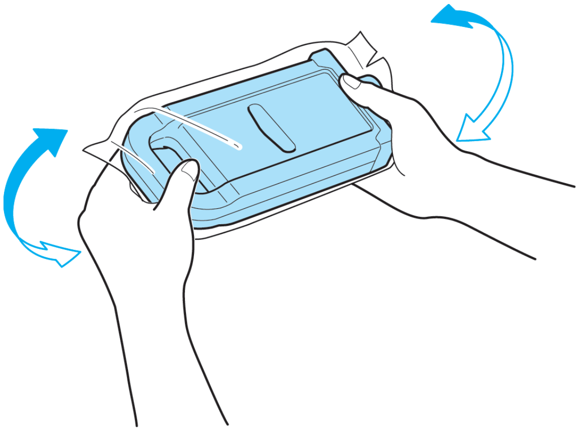


Important

- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure all ink tank lock levers are fully closed.

Load the Ink Tank (700 ml)

1. Before opening the pouch, hold the new Ink Tank with both hands and tilt it to the left and right as shown, shaking gently it seven or eight times.



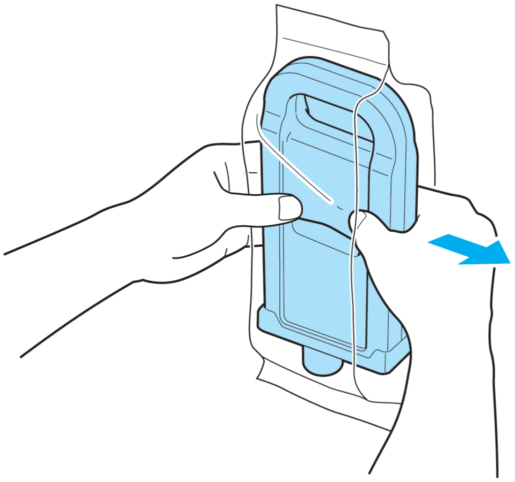
Caution

- 700 ml ink tanks are heavy, so use your whole arm to agitate it instead of just your wrist. If you agitate it using just your wrist, you may injure your wrist.

Important

- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may settle, which may affect printing quality.

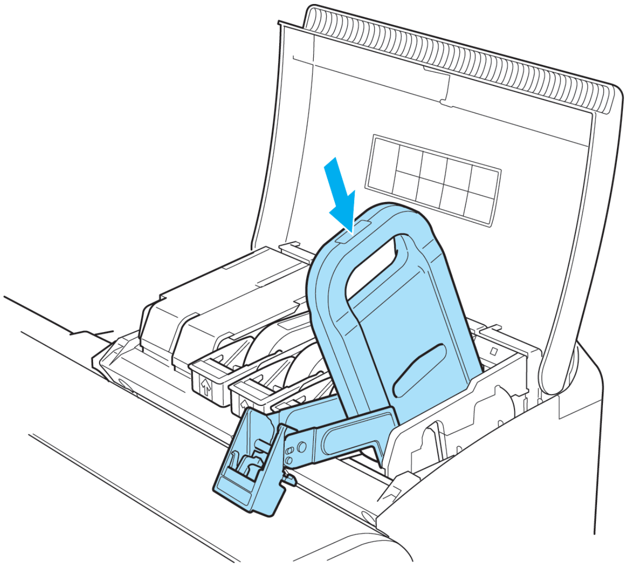
2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Important

- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.

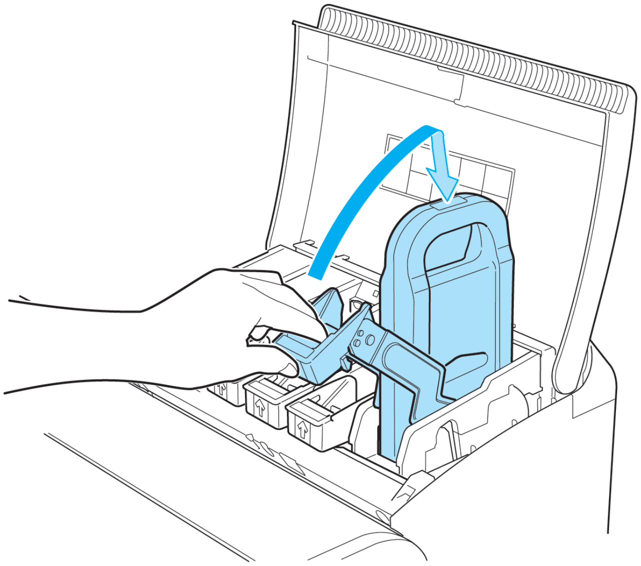
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown, with the ink holes down.



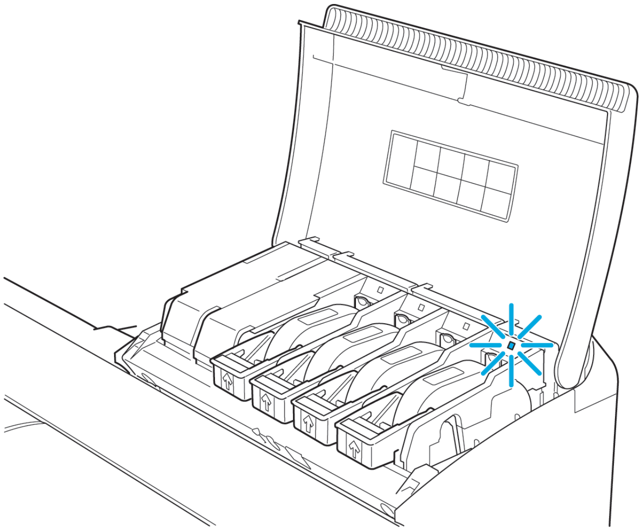
Important

- Ink tanks cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down until it clicks into place.



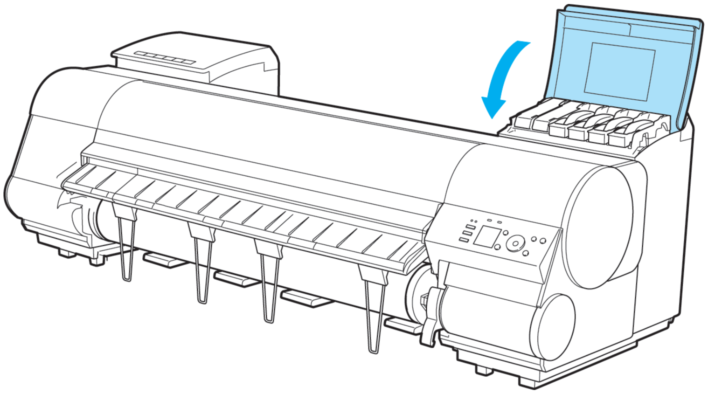
5. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

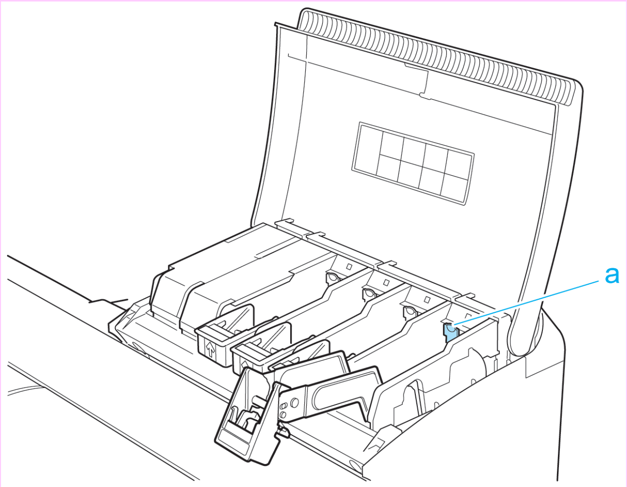
- If the Ink Lamp is not lit in red, reload the tank.

6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



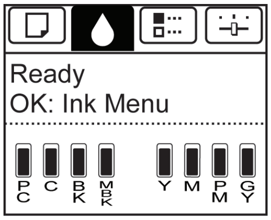
Important

- After Ink Tank replacement, always close the Ink Tank Cover. If the Ink Tank Cover cannot close, some Ink Tank Lock Lever may not be closed completely. Make sure all ink tank lock levers are fully closed.
- To close the Ink Tank Cover when no Ink Tank is installed (as when moving the printer), push the release lever (a) as shown while returning the Ink Tank Lock Lever to the original position.



Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the ink tanks.
To check remaining Ink Tank levels, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab (💧).

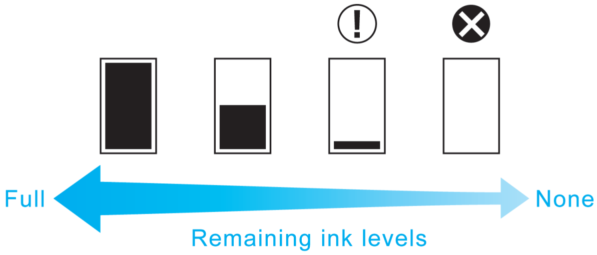

Ready
OK: Ink Menu

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- If an error has occurred and the **Tab Selection screen** cannot be displayed, display **Ink Info** as follows.

1. Press the **OK** button to display **Printer Info**.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Ink Info**.
3. Press the **OK** button.

The remaining ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.
These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: **!** if ink is low, × if no ink is left, and **?** if you have deactivated ink level detection.
The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



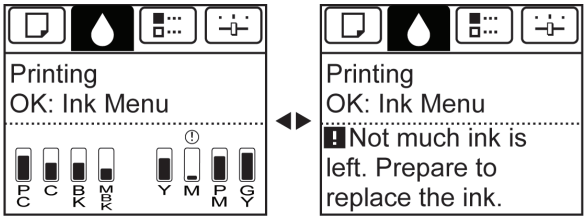
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace ink tanks in the following situations.

If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**Not much ink is left.**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (See "Checking Ink Tank Levels.") →P.1008

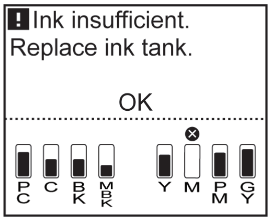


Printing
OK: Ink Menu

Printing
OK: Ink Menu
Not much ink is left. Prepare to replace the ink.

Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.

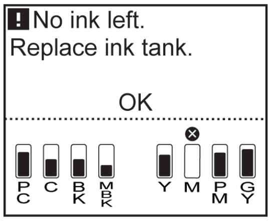


Ink insufficient.
Replace ink tank.

OK

If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the **Message Lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.



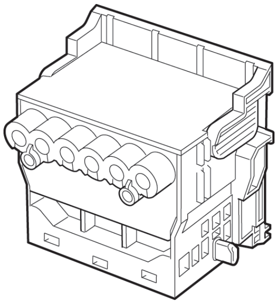
No ink left.
Replace ink tank.

OK

Printheads

Printhead

- Printhead PF-05



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see "Replacing the Printhead." →P.1013

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

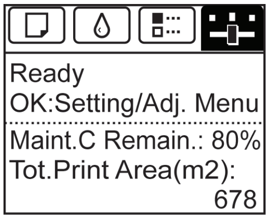
- Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

1. Load paper.
   - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.782
   - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.786
   - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.813

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

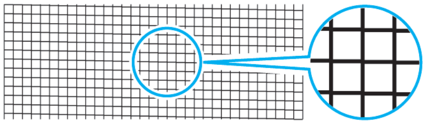
> Note
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

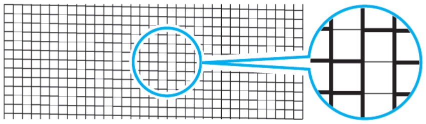
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer now prints a test pattern for checking the nozzles.

6. Check the printing results.
   If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.

1. Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012
2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

> Important
> - If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Cleaning the Printhead

If printing is faint, cleaning the Printhead may improve results.
Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

- **Head Cleaning A**

Use this mode if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink.
It takes about four minutes to complete.

- **Head Cleaning B**
  Use this mode if no ink is ejected at all, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem.
  It takes about five minutes to complete.

Important

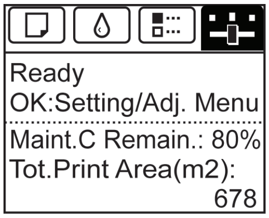
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or ink tanks during either **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**. Ink may leak or an error may occur.
- If printing does not improve even if you execute **Head Cleaning B**, try repeating **Head Cleaning B** once or twice. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Note

- Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

Perform cleaning as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**, and then press the **OK** button.
   Head cleaning is now executed.

6. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

This printer is equipped with two printheads.

Replace one or both printheads in the following situations.

- **If the printing quality does not improve even after one or two cycles of Head Cleaning B from the printer menu**

  Replace any printheads with poor printing performance.

- If the Display Screen indicates "**Open top cover and replace the left printhead.**"

  Replace the Printhead on the left side.

- If the Display Screen indicates "**Open top cover and replace the right printhead.**"

  Replace the Printhead on the right side.

- If the Display Screen indicates "**Open top cover and replace the printhead.**"

  Replace both printheads.

- If your Canon dealer has advised Printhead replacement

  Replace the Printhead as directed.

Compatible printheads

For information on compatible printheads, see "Printhead." →P.1011

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important

- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.

Access the menu for Printhead replacement

Caution

- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

Important

- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.

Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge.

1. Remove any paper that has been advanced by selecting **Eject Paper** in the Control Panel menu.
   - When using a roll, rewind it.

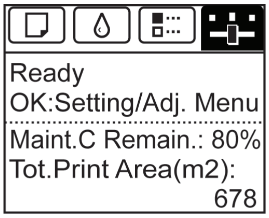
(See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794

- When using sheets, remove the sheet.

  (See "Removing Sheets.") →P.820

2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

3. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

4. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

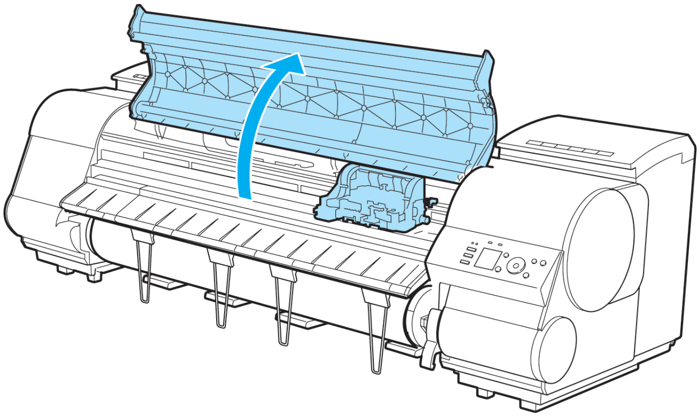
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the **OK** button.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Printhead for replacement.
   Select **Printhead L** when replacing the left printhead, **Printhead R** when replacing the right printhead, and **L & R Printheads** when replacing both. Make sure your selection is correct.

8. Press the **OK** button.
   Ink is now filled.
   After about three minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.

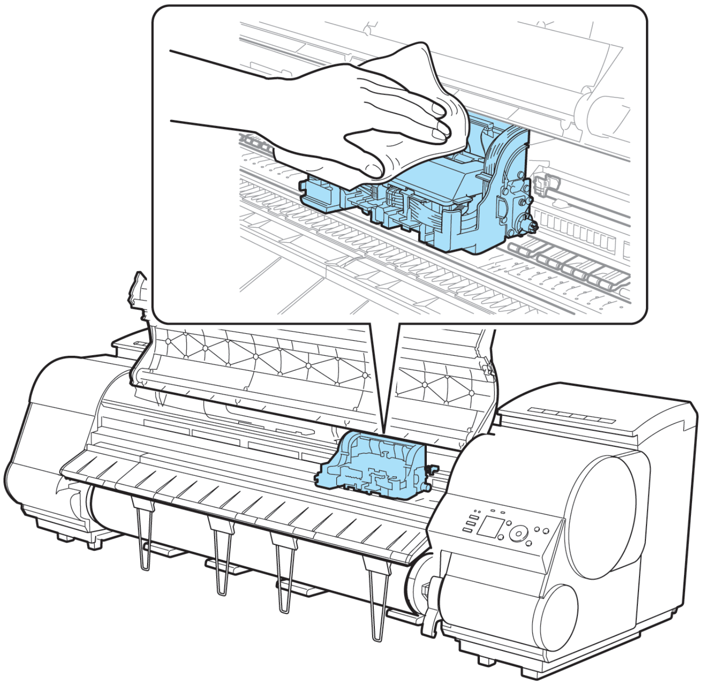
Replace the Printhead

1. Open the Top Cover.



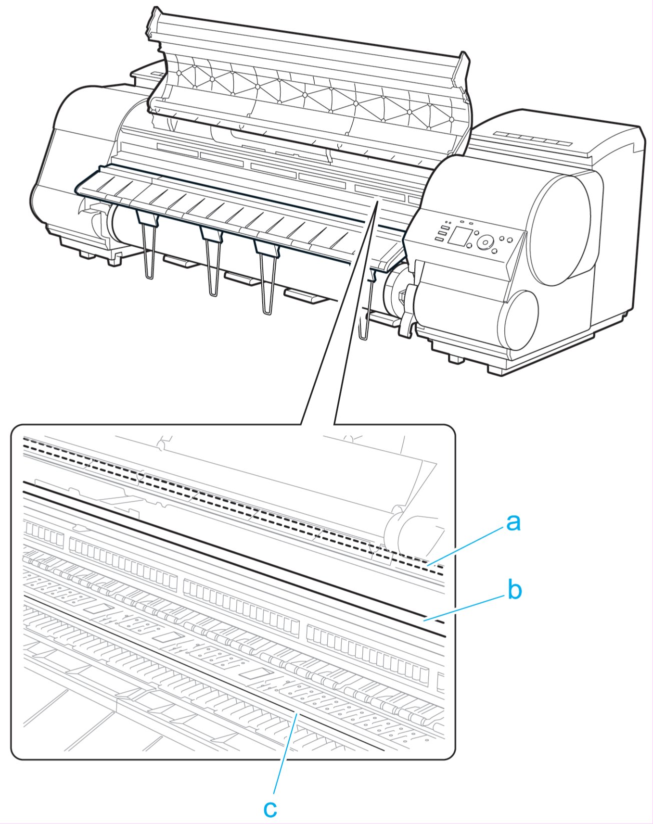
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding head replacement.

2. If the Carriage Cover is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



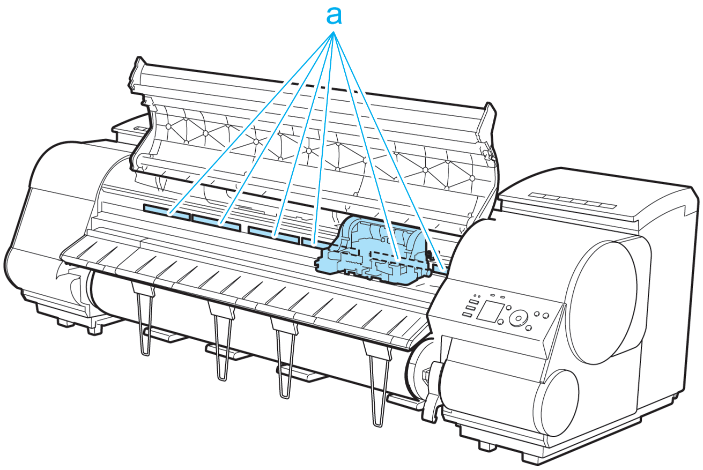
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

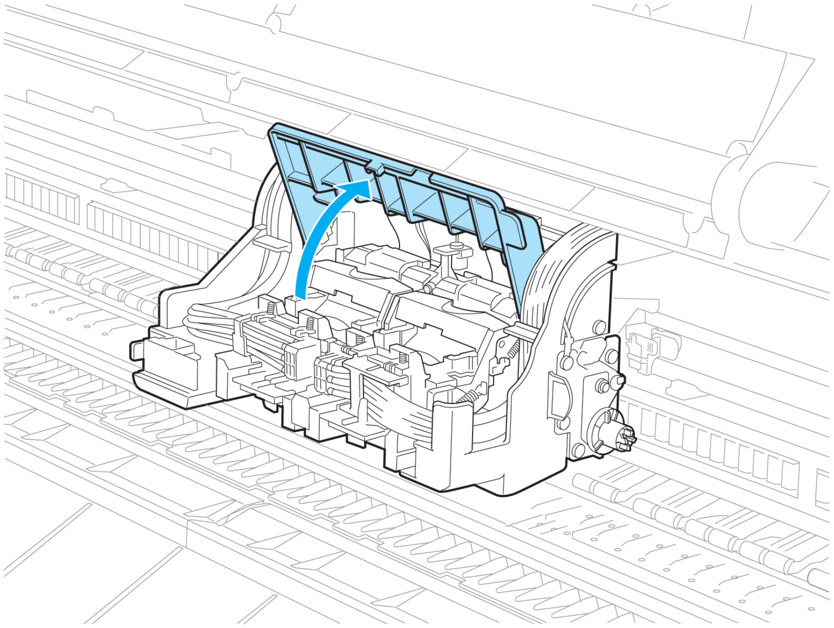


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

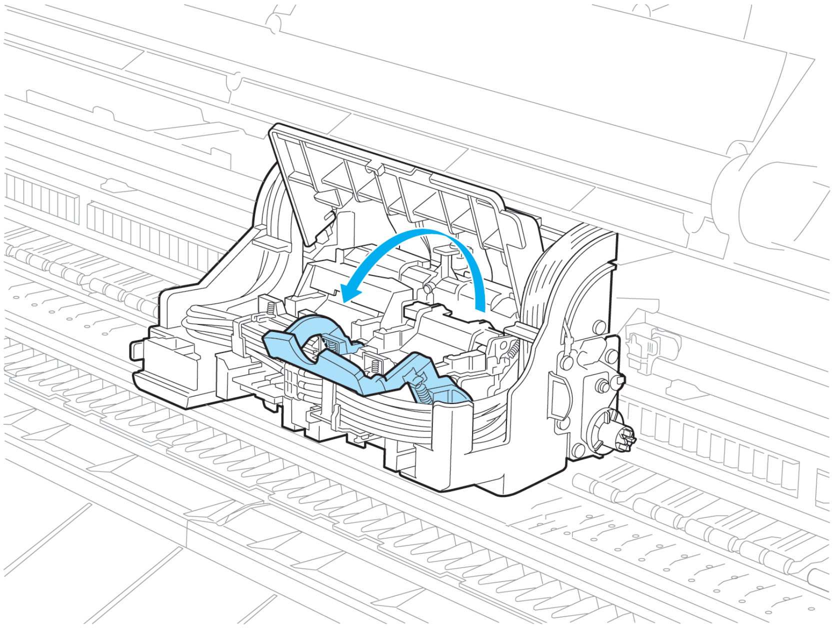
3. If the ventilation duct (a) is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean. If the Carriage is obscuring the ventilation duct, move the Carriage manually before cleaning the duct.



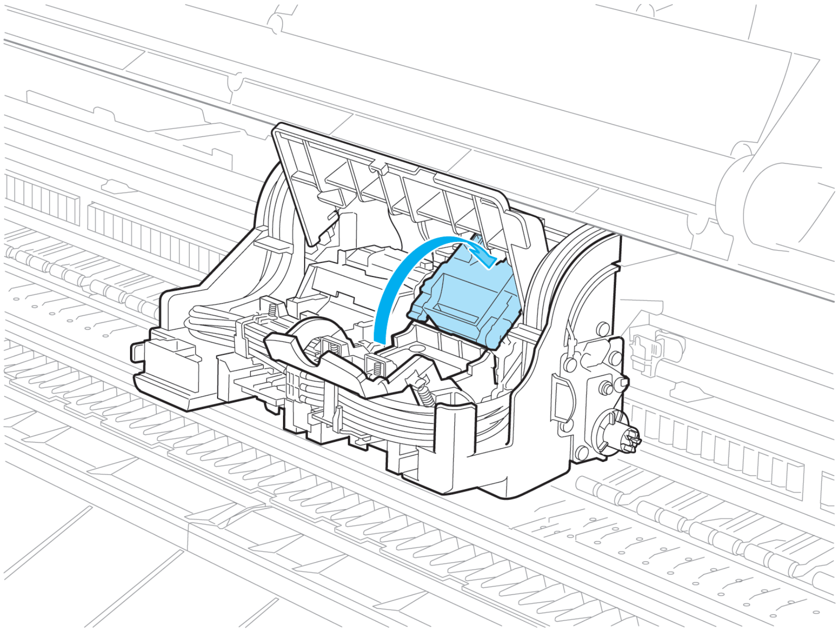
4. Pull up the Carriage Cover to open it completely.



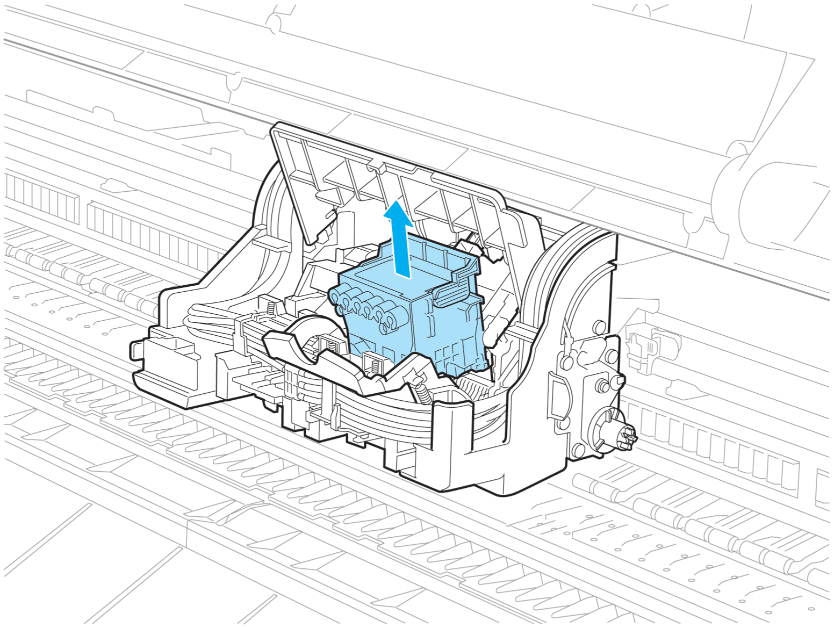
5. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



6. Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



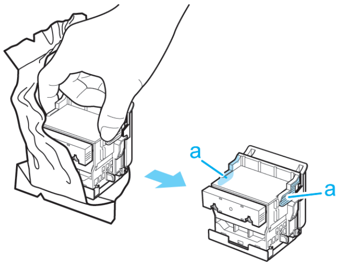
7. Remove the Printhead and press the **OK** button.



Note

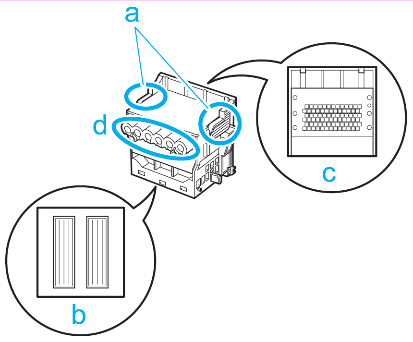
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

8. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the pouch.



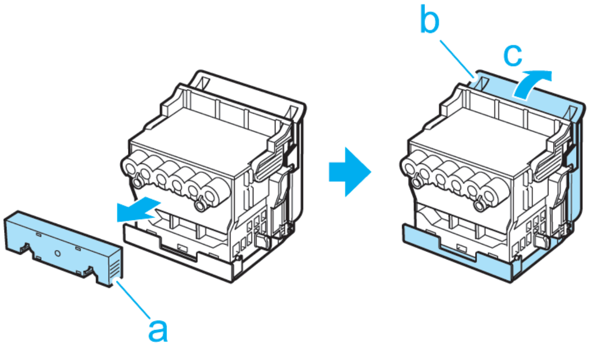
Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.



- If you need to put a Printhead somewhere temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.

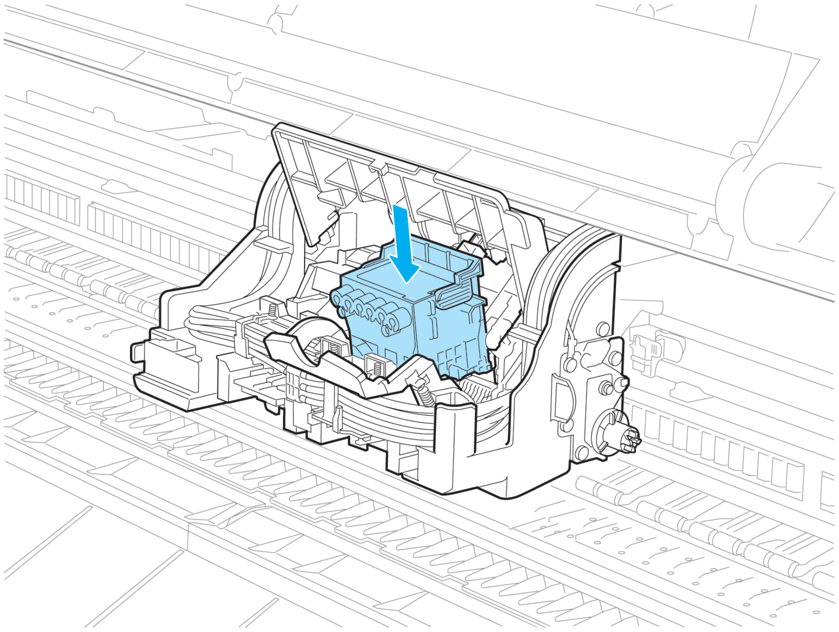
9. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Protective Part (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Protective Part (b) and pull it down to remove it.



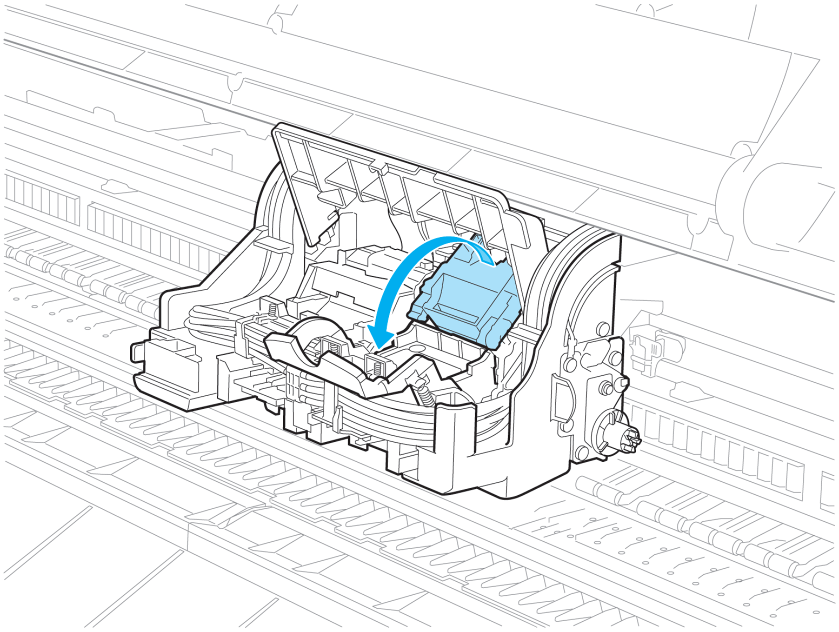
Important

- The inside surface of the Protective Part (a) and Protective Part (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Be careful not to touch these surfaces when removing the caps.
- The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. We recommend removing Protective Part (b) as you hold it over the Printhead package or safely out of the way to avoid spilling ink and staining your clothes or the surrounding area. If ink accidentally spills, wipe off the ink with a dry cloth.
- Do not reattach the Protective Part or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

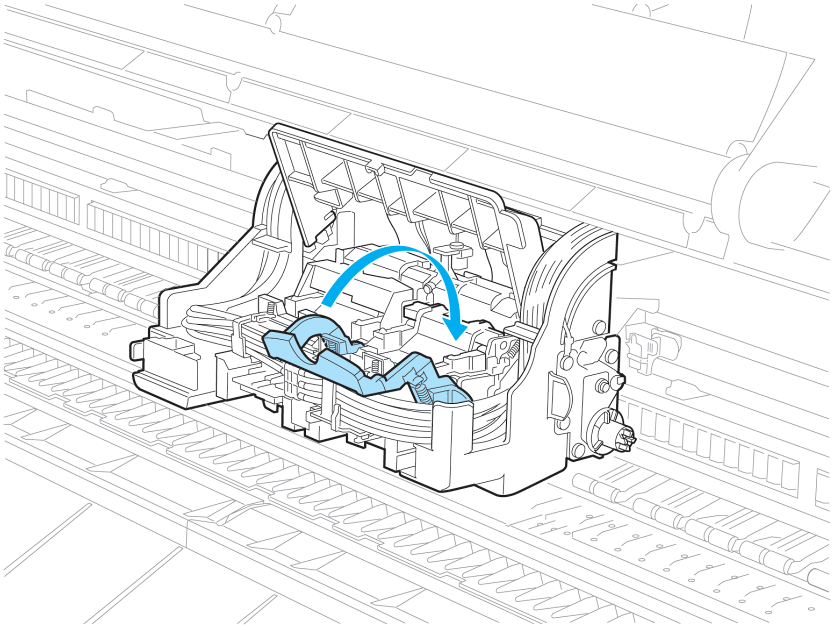
10. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, tilt the Printhead slightly forward and insert it into the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles and metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



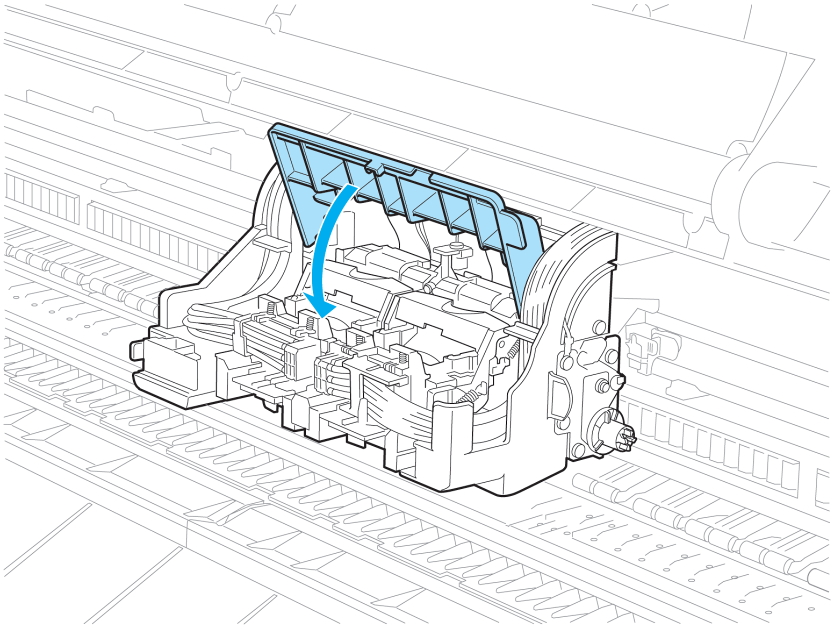
11. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



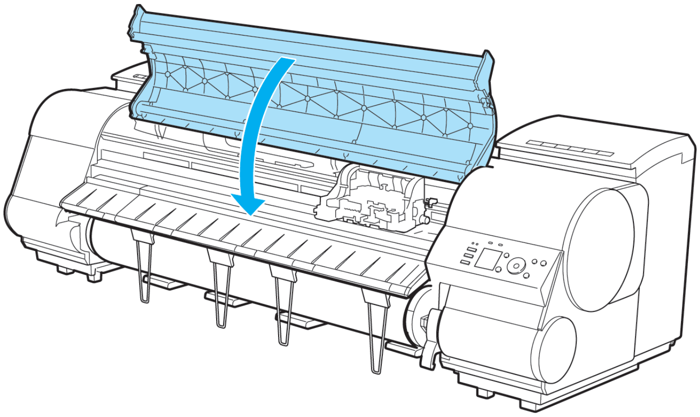
12. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



13. Push the Carriage Cover down toward the front.



14. Close the Top Cover.



Ink now fills the system. It takes about 13 minutes for ink to fill the system.

Important

- While ink is being filled, definitely do not remove the Ink Tank or Maintenance Cartridge. Ink may leak out.

Note

- The procedure is now finished if you have set **Rep.P.head Print** to **Off** in the Control Panel menu. If so, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** > **Auto(Advanced)** in the Control Panel menu.
  (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850

15. Follow the instructions on the Display Screen and supply paper that you will use for printing. After the paper is advanced, **Head Posi. Adj.** will be executed automatically.
(See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850

Note

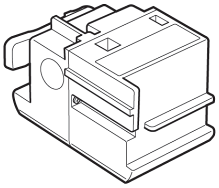
- When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead.
  (See "Enhancing Printing Quality.") →P.848

Cutter Unit

Cutter Unit

The printer can use the following Cutter Unit.

- Cutter Unit CT-06



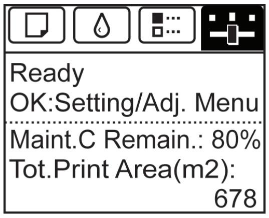
Note

- For instructions on Cutter Unit replacement, see "Replacing the Cutter Unit." →P.1024

Replacing the Cutter Unit

For information on compatible cutter units, see "Cutter Unit." →P.1024

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

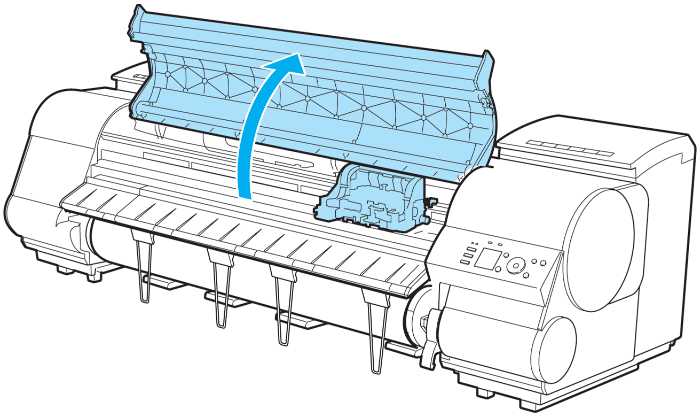
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Cutter**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The Carriage moves to the center, and a message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Top Cover.

Note

- If you do not respond within two minutes, cutter cleaner replacement is canceled. In this case, repeat the procedure.

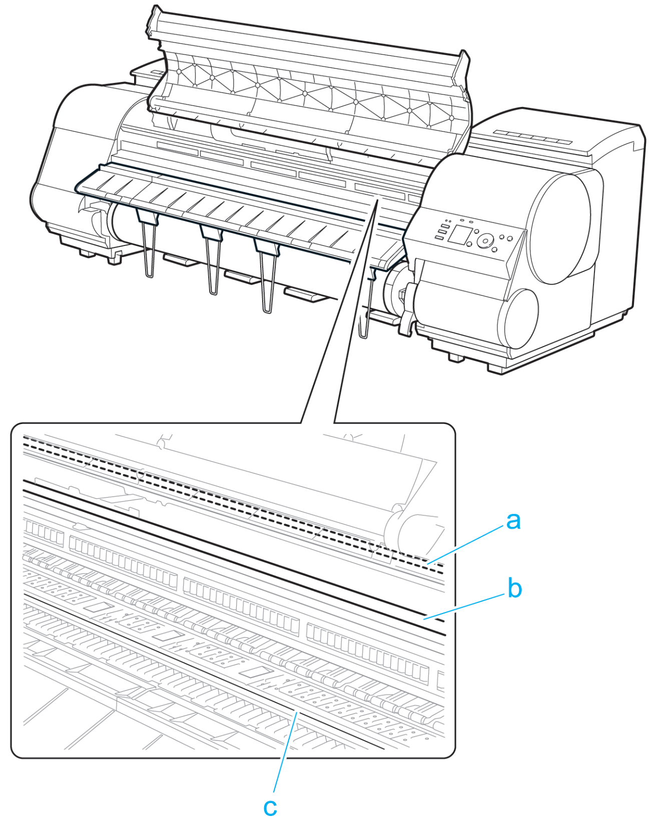
5. Open the Top Cover.



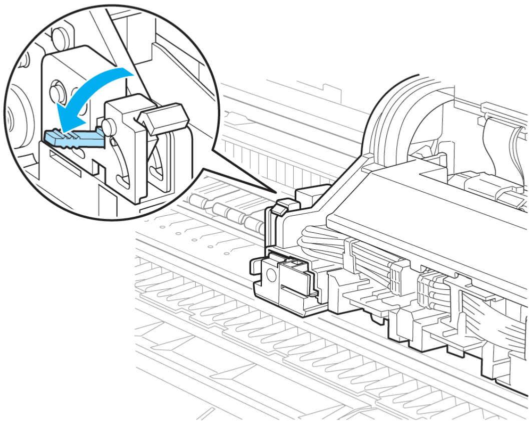
6. If the Cutter Unit or Carriage Cover is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.

Important

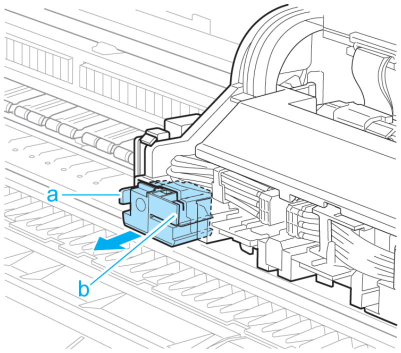
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



7. Push the Cutter Unit Detachment Lever to the left to unlock it.



8. Holding the Cutter Unit by the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b), remove it from the Carriage.



Caution

- Never touch any part of the Cutter Unit except the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b). This may stain your hands or cause injury. Additionally, this may damage the printer.
- Do not disassemble the Cutter Unit. Touching the blade may cause injury.

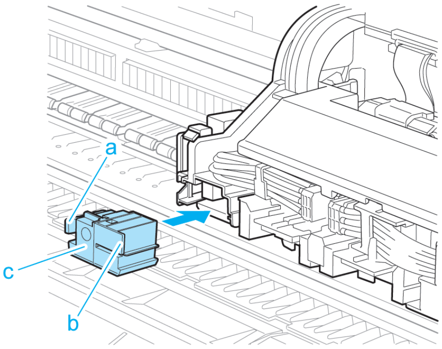
Note

- Dispose of the used Cutter Unit in accordance with local regulations.

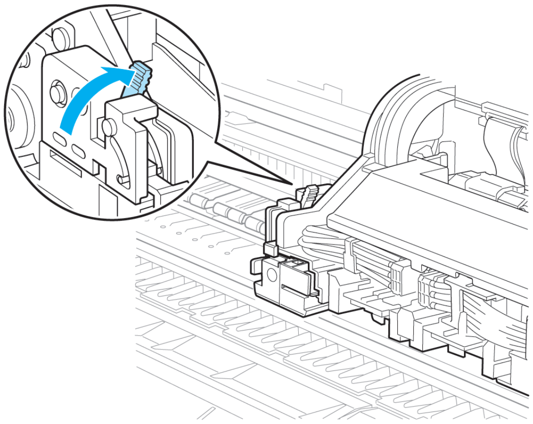
9. Holding the new Cutter Unit by the Lock Lever (a) and grip (b), insert it on the Carriage until it clicks into place (c).

Important

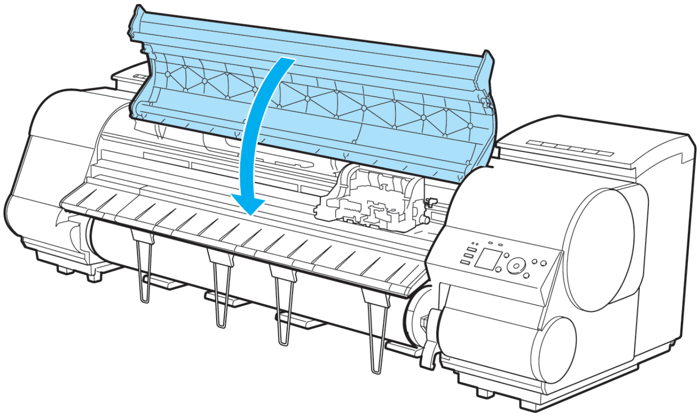
- After installing the Cutter Unit, hold it only by the grip (b) and pull the Cutter Unit forward to make sure it does not come off. It may damage the printer if the Cutter Unit comes off.



10. Lift the Cutter Unit Detachment Lever to lock it.



11. Close the Top Cover.



12. A confirmation message is displayed about the Cutter Unit lock.
    Press ▲ or ▼ to select "**Yes**", and then press the **OK** button.

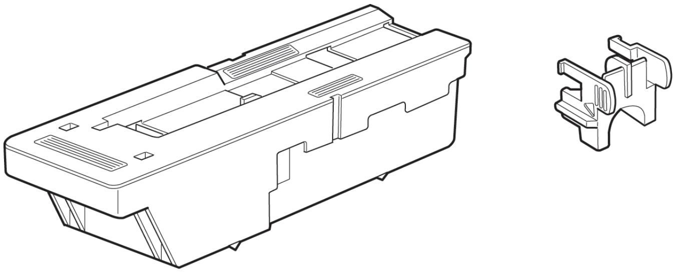
13. The Carriage is moved, and a confirmation message is displayed about resetting the cut count.
    To reset the cut counter, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge

A replacement Maintenance Cartridge. Maintenance Cartridge is provided with a Shaft Cleaner.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-08



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge." →P.1028

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible maintenance cartridges

For information on compatible maintenance cartridges, see "Maintenance Cartridge." →P.1028

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

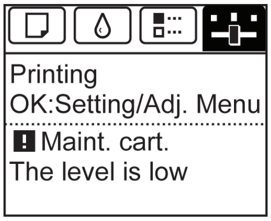
- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it. Ink may leak out.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

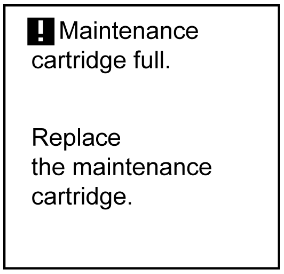
Confirm the message

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost empty, a message is shown on the Display Screen. According to the message, replace the Maintenance Cartridge or prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge. (See "When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1037



Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
! Maint. cart.
The level is low

If a message is displayed requesting Maintenance Cartridge replacement, you can skip the step **Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement.** Follow the instructions in **Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.**



! Maintenance
cartridge full.

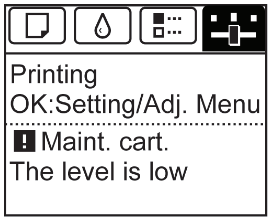
Replace
the maintenance
cartridge.

Important

- Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or when ink is being absorbed. Ink may leak out.

Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
! Maint. cart.
The level is low

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

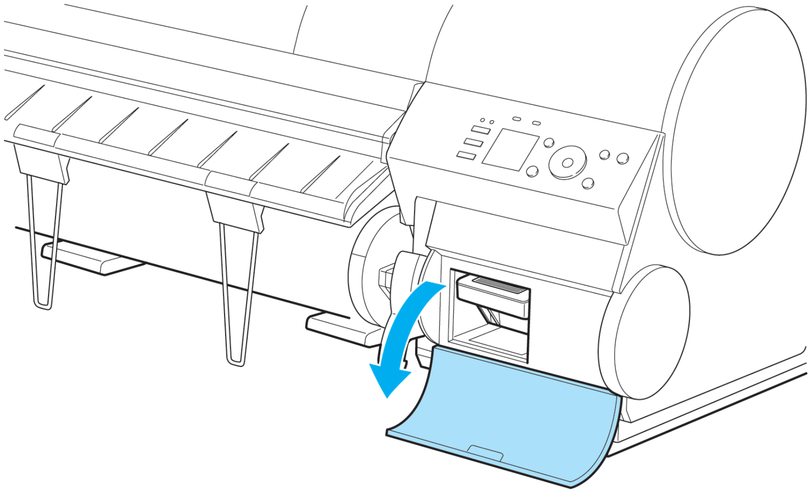
2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

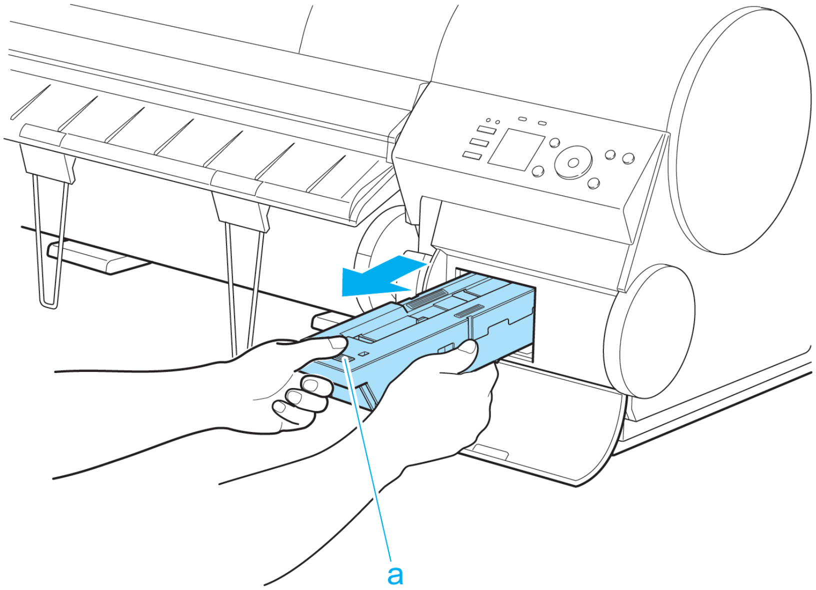
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.

Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

1. At this point, open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



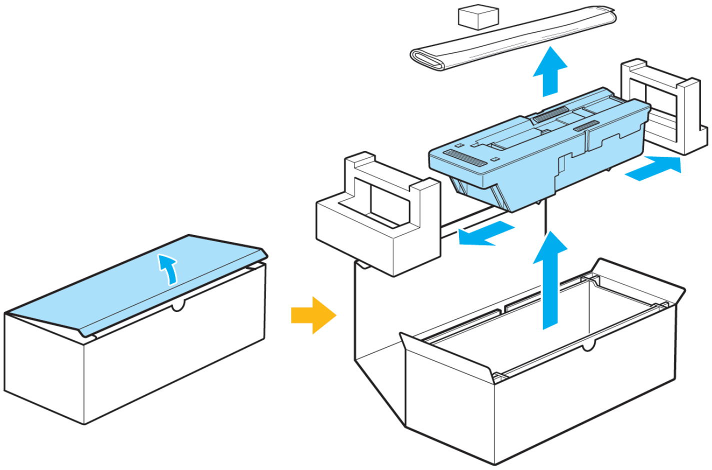
2. Hold the used Maintenance Cartridge by the grip (a) with one hand and put your other hand under the Maintenance Cartridge to hold it firmly on the bottom, keeping it level as you pull it out.



Important

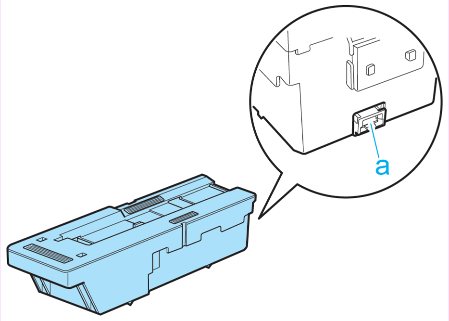
- Used maintenance cartridges are heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

3. Open the box, remove the plastic bag, packaging material, and Shaft Cleaner, and then take out the Maintenance Cartridge.

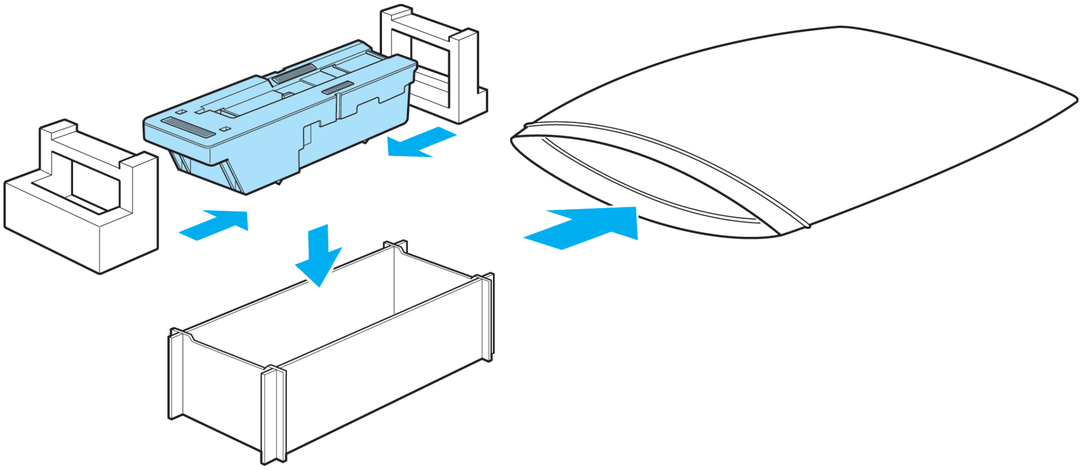


Important

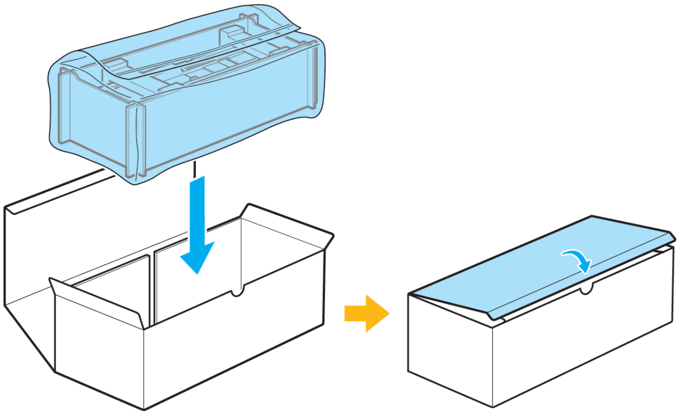
- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.



4. Attach the packaging material to the used Maintenance Cartridge and put it in the box. Keep it level as you put it in the plastic bag. Expel excess air from the plastic bag and seal the zipper.



5. Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box, and store it so that it stays level.



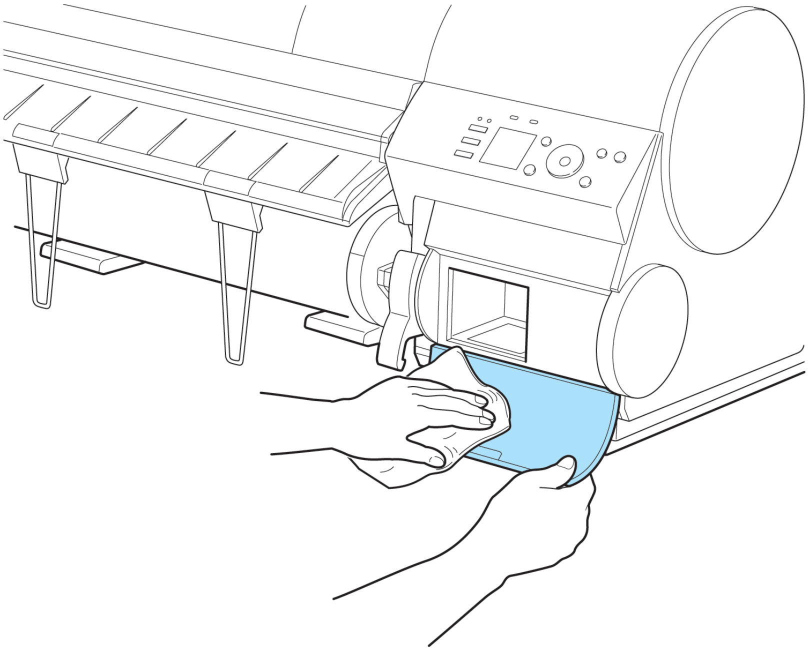
Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

Note

- In accordance with active and ongoing environmental programs, Canon supports recycling of used maintenance cartridges. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

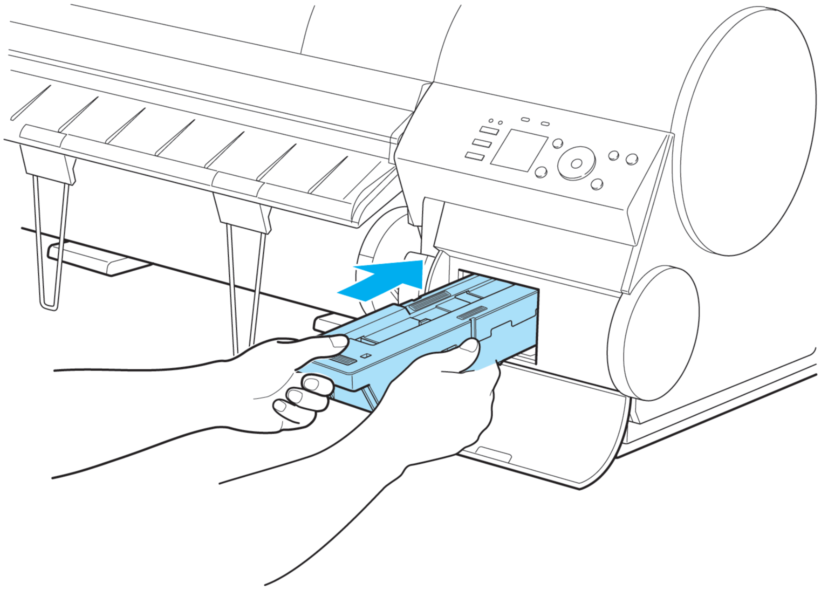
6. Wipe away any soiling on the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



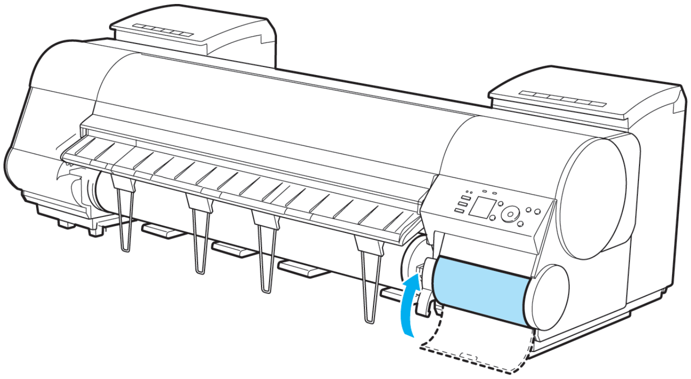
Important

- Support the Maintenance Cartridge Cover from underneath as you wipe it.

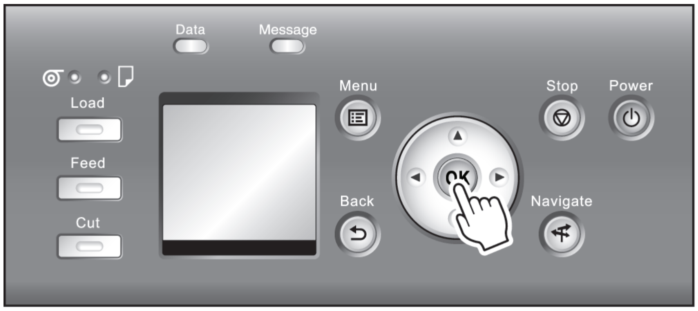
7. Keeping the new Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it all the way in.



8. Close the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



9. Press the **OK** button.



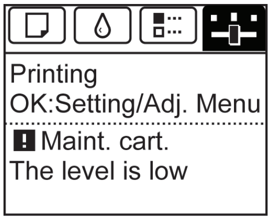
The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.
Next, replace the Shaft Cleaner.

Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

Replace the Shaft Cleaner when you replace the Maintenance Cartridge. New Shaft Cleaner is included with replacement Maintenance Cartridge.

After you execute **Repl. maint cart** and replace the Maintenance Cartridge, a message will appear on the Display Screen requesting you to replace the Shaft Cleaner. Select **Yes** and press the **OK** button. When a message requests you to open the Top Cover, go to step 5.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
! Maint. cart.
The level is low

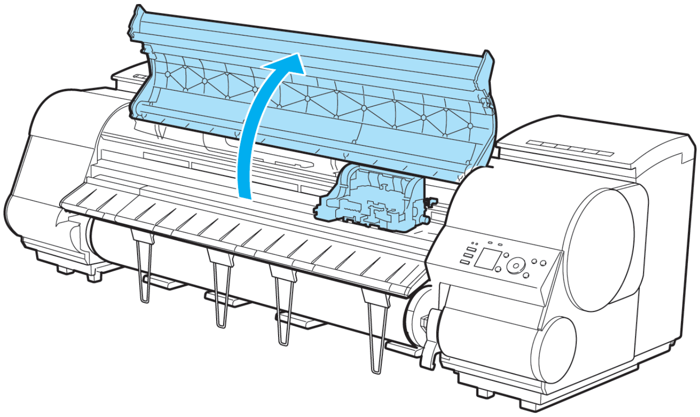
> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.

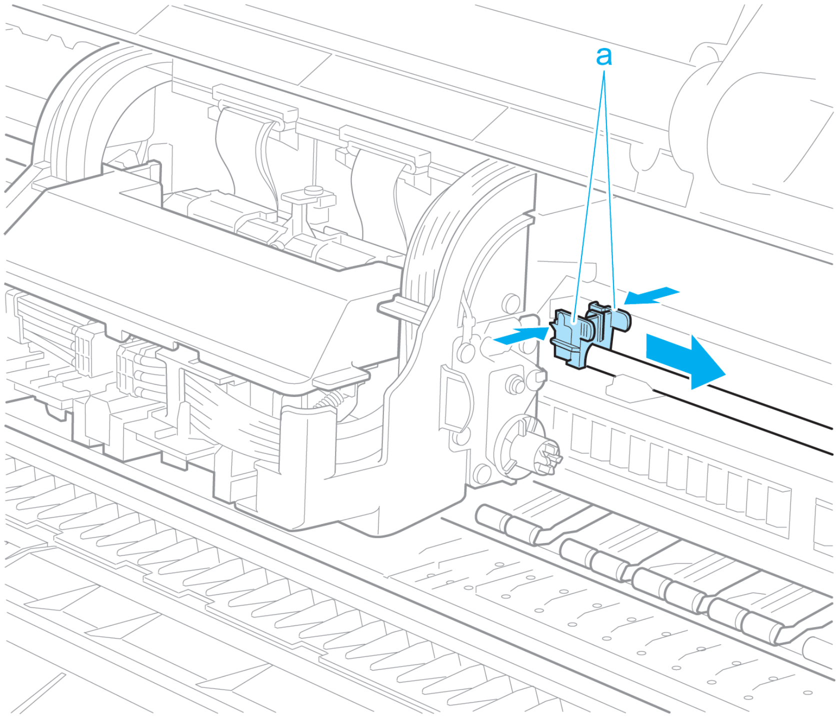
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. S. Cleaner**, and then press the **OK** button.
After the Carriage is moved, the Display Screen indicates "**Open Upper Cover**".

5. Open the Top Cover.



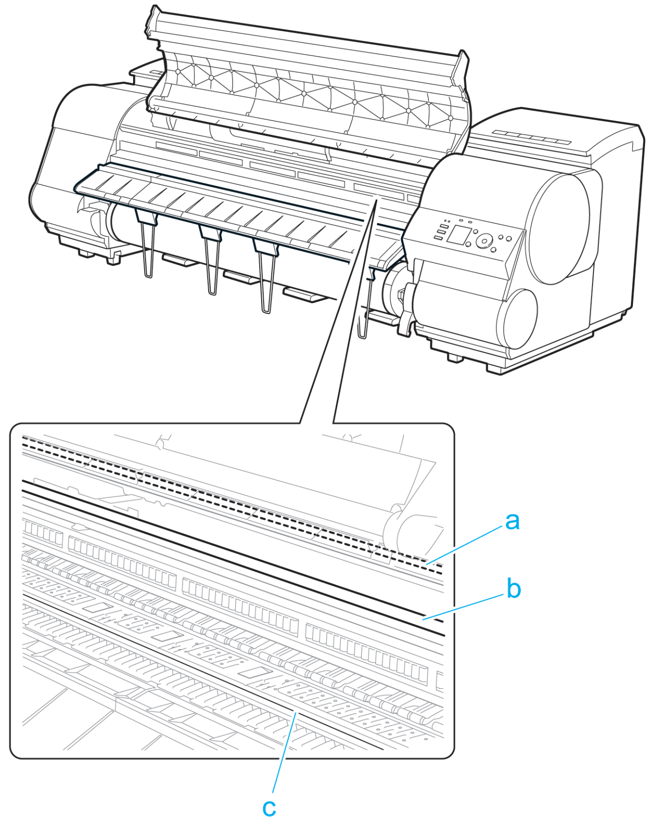
> **Note**
> - If you do not respond within two minutes, shaft cleaner replacement is canceled. In this case, repeat the procedure.

6. Hold the Shaft Cleaner on the right side of the Carriage by the grips (a) and pull it to the right to remove it.

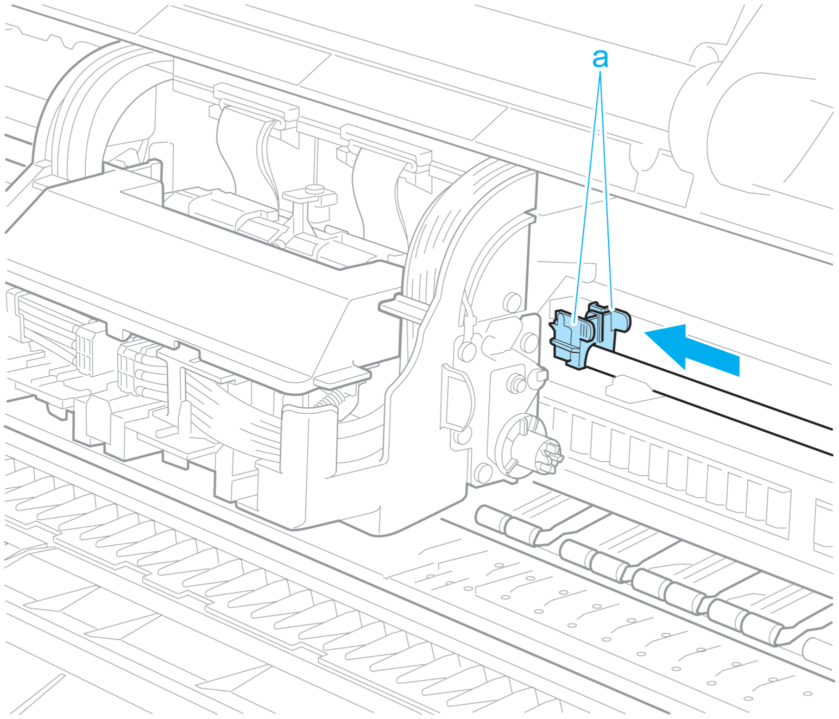


Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

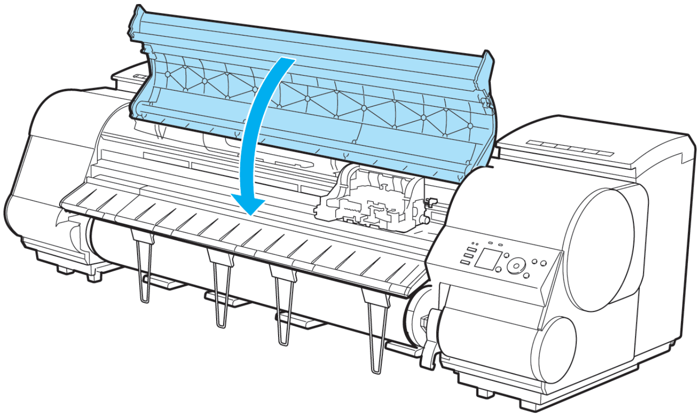


7. Holding the new Shaft Cleaner by the grips (a), attach it to the Carriage.



> **Note**
> - Be sure to put the used Shaft Cleaner in the small box before putting it in the larger box with the used Maintenance Cartridge for disposal.

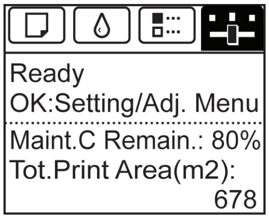
8. Close the Top Cover.



The Carriage moves back into position.

Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.
To check remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

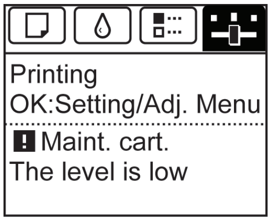
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost full, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**The level is low**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (See "Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity.") →P.1037

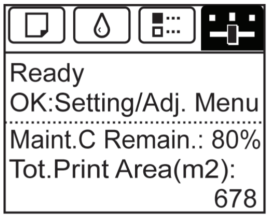


Printing
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
! Maint. cart.
The level is low

When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.)

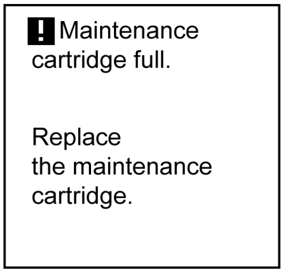
Check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity before this maintenance and replace the Maintenance Cartridge if necessary.



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost empty, the **Message Lamp** lights, a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is displayed on the Display Screen, and you cannot print. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



! Maintenance
cartridge full.

Replace
the maintenance
cartridge.

Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

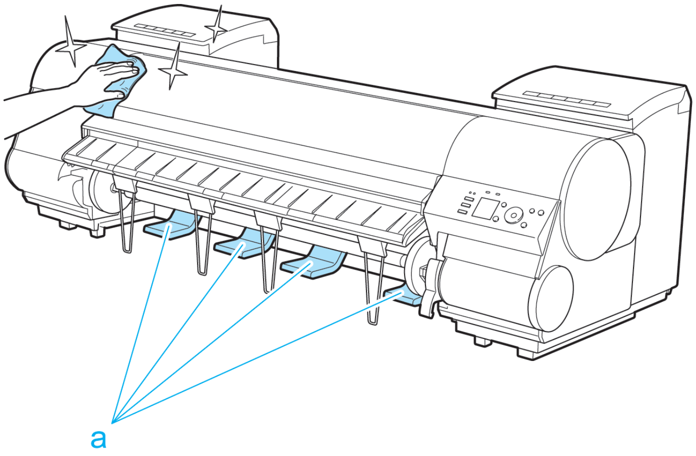
Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

1. Turn the printer off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.

> Caution
>
> - Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe away any dirt or paper dust from the Paper Feed Slot (a), power cord plug, and so on. Dry these parts with a dry cloth.



> Warning
>
> - Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

> Important
>
> - If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

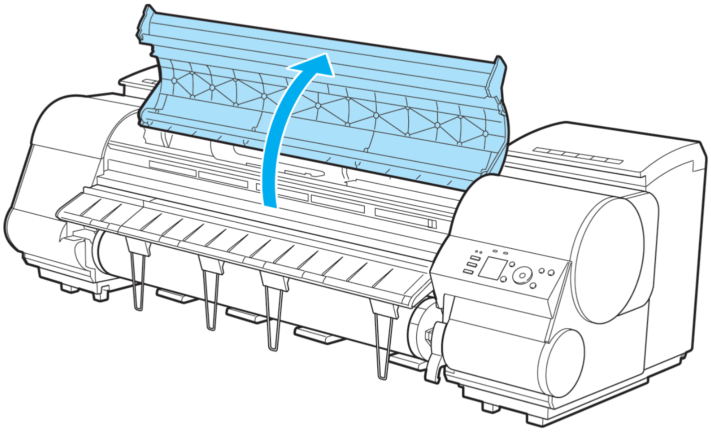
Clean inside the Top Cover to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust
- If the message "**Blue platen switch is dirty.**" is displayed

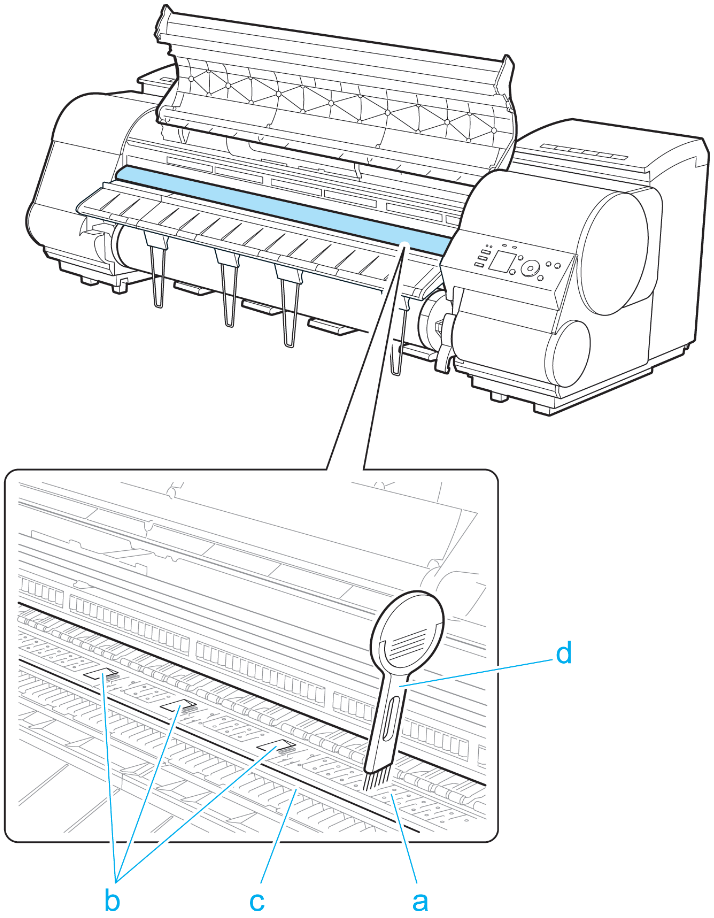
Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

1. Open the Top Cover.



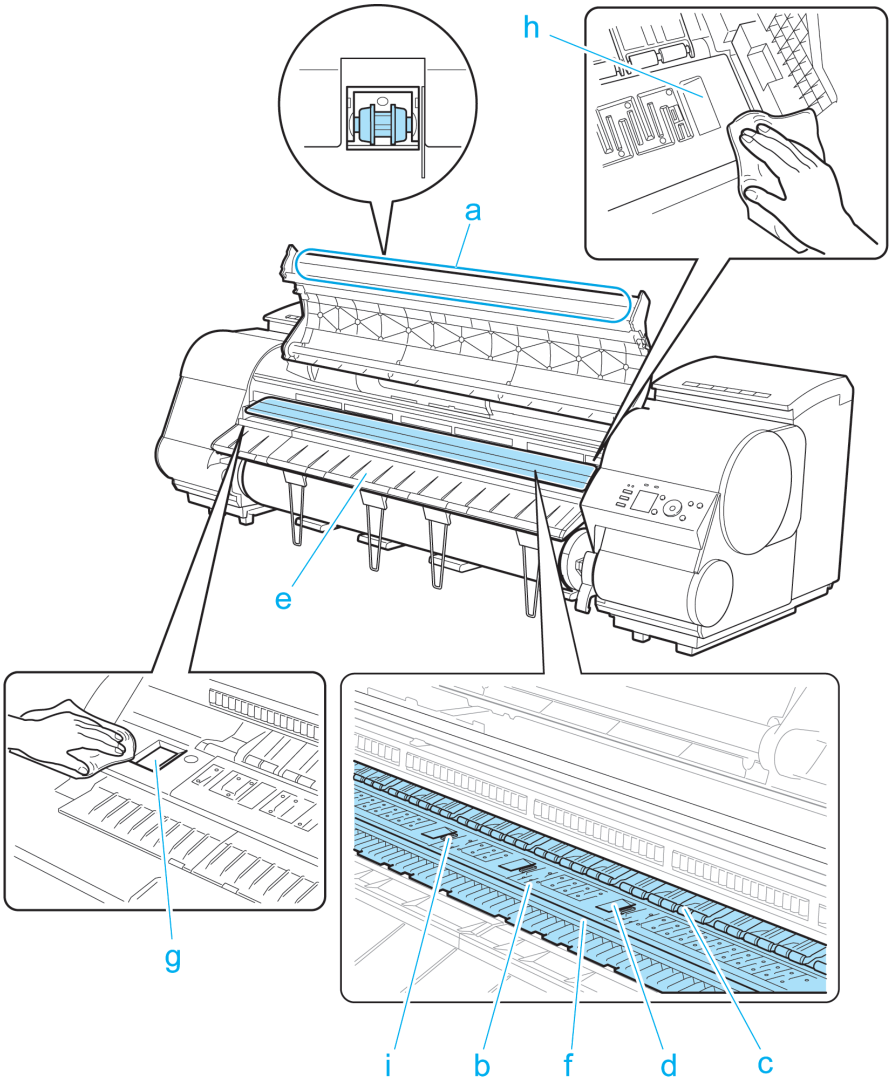
2. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen, in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), or on the cutter guide (c), use the Cleaning Brush (d, provided with the printer) to wipe it away.



Note

- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue and paper dust (debris from cutting) on the Top Cover Roller (a), all over the Platen (b), on the Paper Retainer (c), the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (d), the Ejection Guide (e), the cutter guide (f), around the ink suction holes at left (g), around the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves at right (h), on the blue Switch (i), and so on.

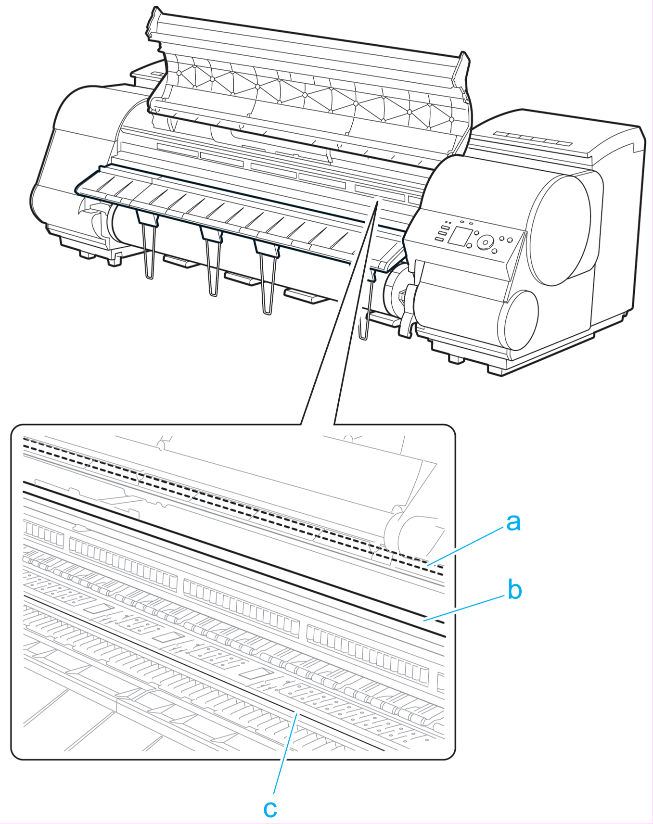


Warning

- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

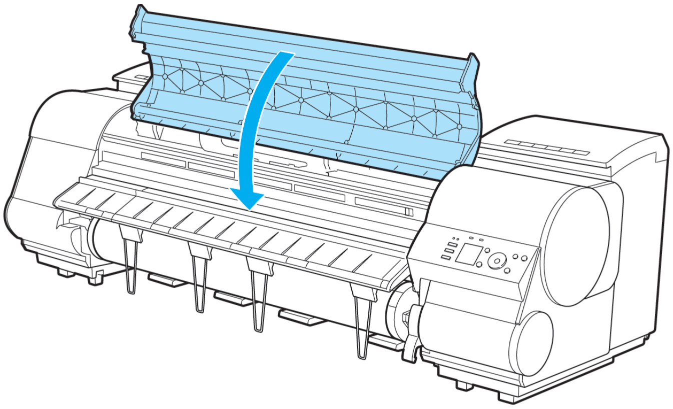
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Do not touch the clear sheet on the side of the Top Cover Roller. This may damage the roller.

4. Close the Top Cover.



Other Maintenance

Preparing to Transfer the Printer

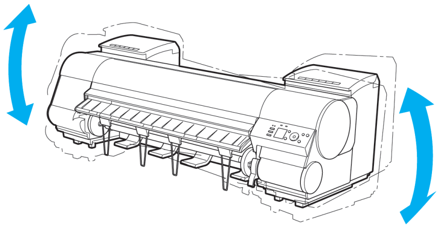
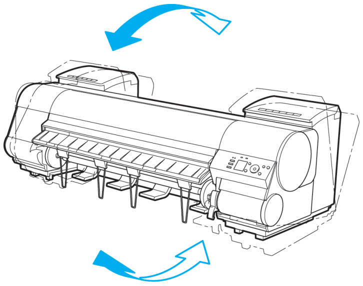
To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow these steps before transferring the printer to a new location.
Refer to the Setup Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

Important

- Be sure to contact your Canon dealer before transferring the printer to a new location. Ink may leak and damage the printer if you do not prepare the printer correctly and it is tipped or stood on end in transit.
- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen requests you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge or check the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

Note

- Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).
- Ink must be drained before Level 2 or Level 3 printer transfer, as described in the following table. Prepare a Maintenance Cartridge in advance.
- Always follow the instructions of the service representative when transferring the printer under Level 3 conditions.

Level	Shipping Method (Example)	Permitted Angle of Inclination	Amount of Ink to Dispose of	Required Maintenance Cartridges(*1)
1	By truck	Lengthwise: 0–30º  Rotation: 0–10º 	0	0 or 1
2	By plane	All directions: 0–30º	Approx. 1.2 L (40.6 fl oz)	1 or 2

Level	Shipping Method (Example)	Permitted Angle of Inclination	Amount of Ink to Dispose of	Required Maintenance Cartridges(*1)
3	Tipping the printer or holding it upright for elevators or stairs	Lengthwise: 0–90º Rotation: 0–30º	Approx. 1.2 L (40.6 fl oz)	1 or 2

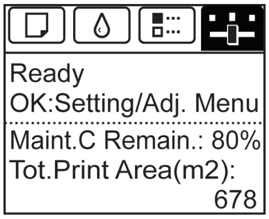
*1: The quantity of cartridges required depends on the capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge in use.

Remove paper

1. Remove the paper.
   - Rolls (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794
   - Sheets (See "Removing Sheets.") →P.820

Access the **Prep.MovePrinter** menu

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

Note
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Prep.MovePrinter**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the level of transfer, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Execute**, and then press the **OK** button to display the confirmation screen.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer is now prepared for transfer.
   - **Level 1**
     Once preparations are finished, a message on the Display Screen requests you to turn off the printer. Turn off and pack the printer. There is no need to remove the ink tanks.
     (See "Pack the printer.") →P.1049
   - **Level 2** and **Level 3**
     Once preparations are finished, a message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Remove the ink tanks before packing the printer.

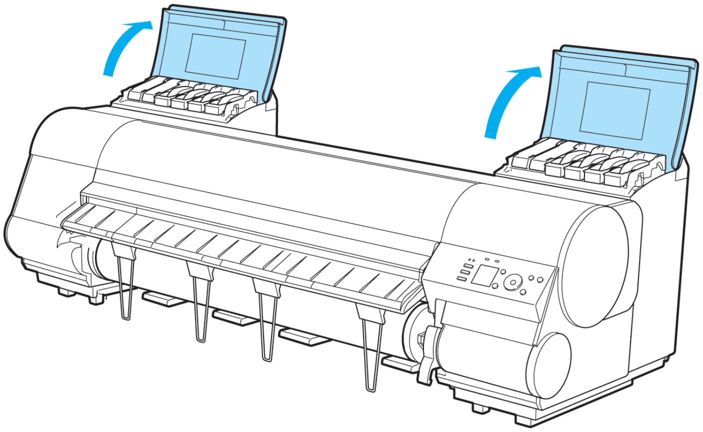
(See "Removing Ink Tanks.") →P.1046

Important

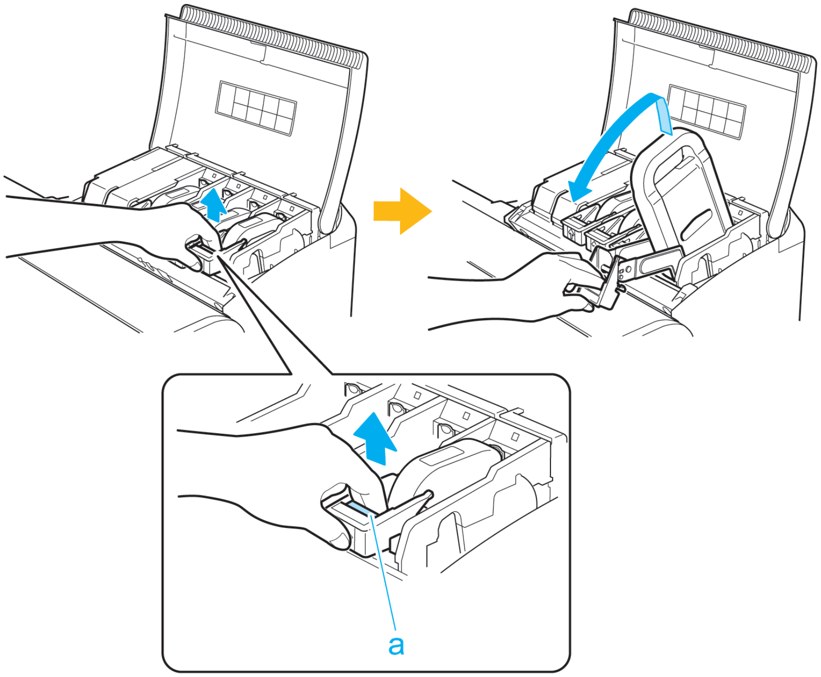
- If consumables must be replaced, the message "**Consumables must be replaced. Call for service.**" is shown on the Display Screen and preparation is not possible. If this message is displayed, press the **OK** button and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Removing Ink Tanks

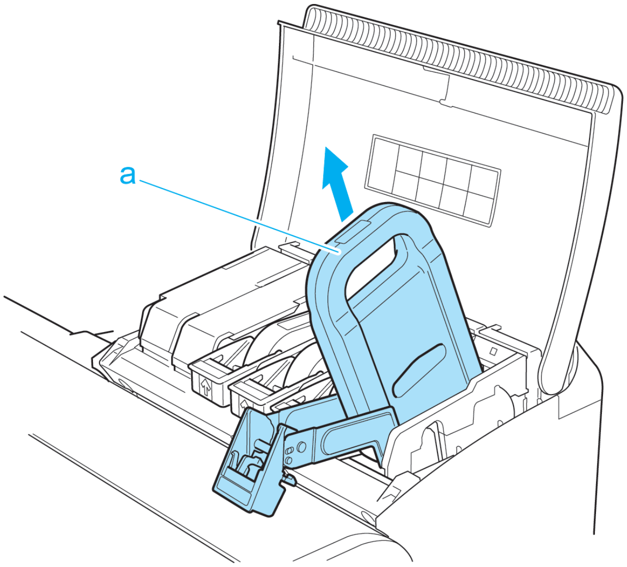
1. Open the left and right ink tank covers.



2. Lift the stopper (a) of the Ink Tank Lock Lever (a). Lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it stops, and then push it down to the front.

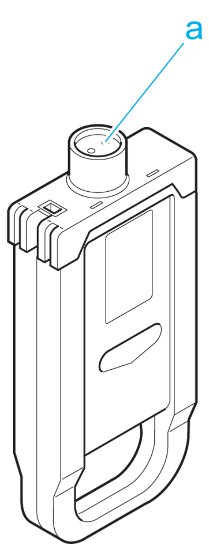


3. Hold the Ink Tank by the handle (a) and remove it.



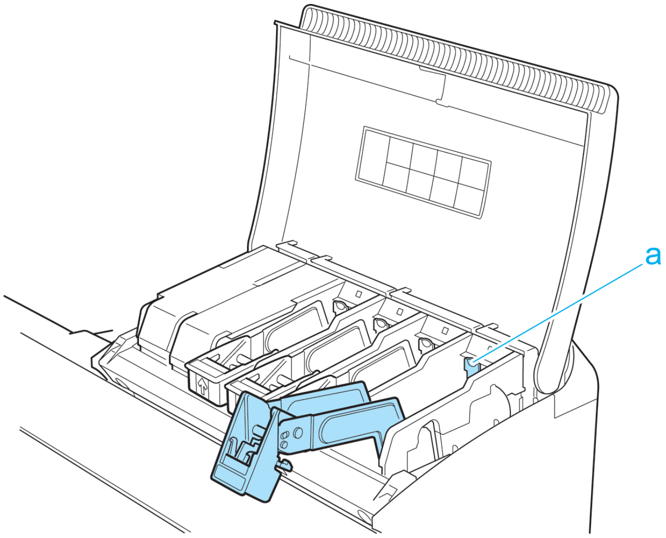
Important

- Store the Ink Tank you removed in the box with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.

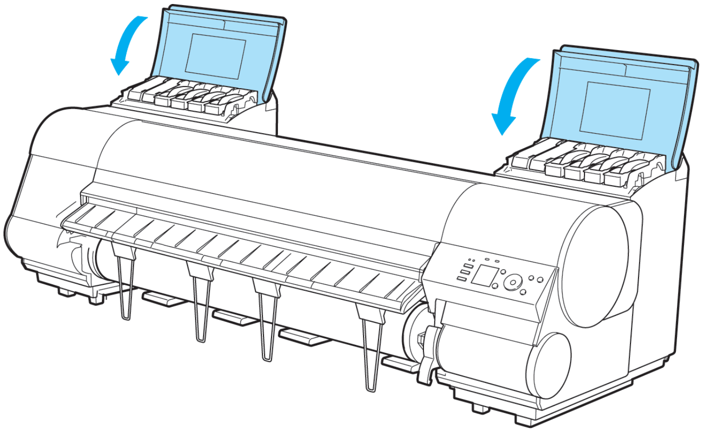


4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to remove all ink tanks.

5. Push down the release lever (a) as shown as you gently return all ink tank lock levers to the original position.



6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



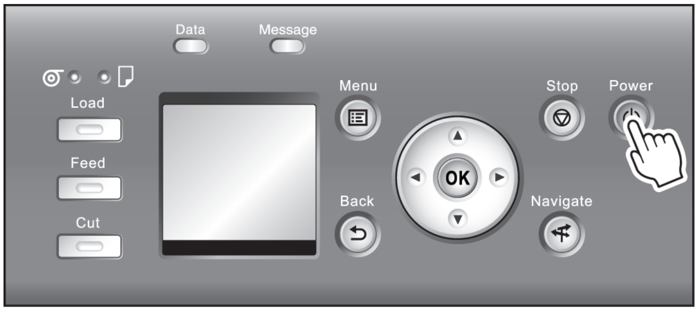
At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.

> Important
> - Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process. Ink may leak out.

When the process is finished, "**Preparations for moving the printer finished. Turn the power off**" is displayed.

Pack the printer

1. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.

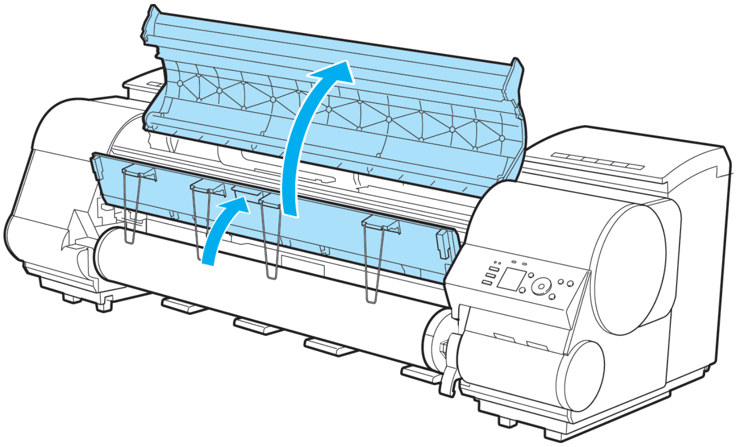


Important

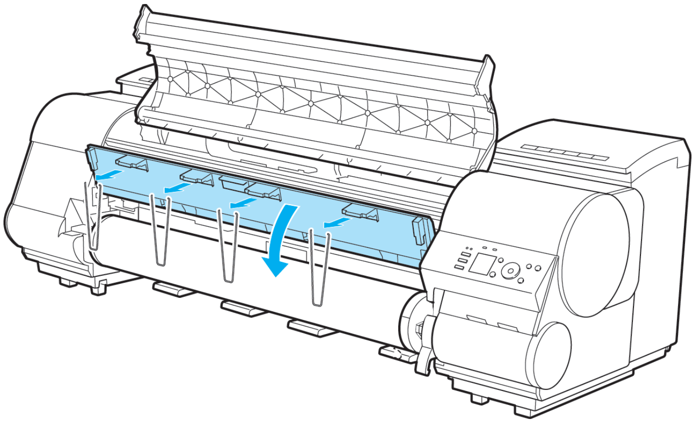
- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the ink tanks, and follow this procedure again.

2. Disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and Media Take-up Unit Power Inlet.

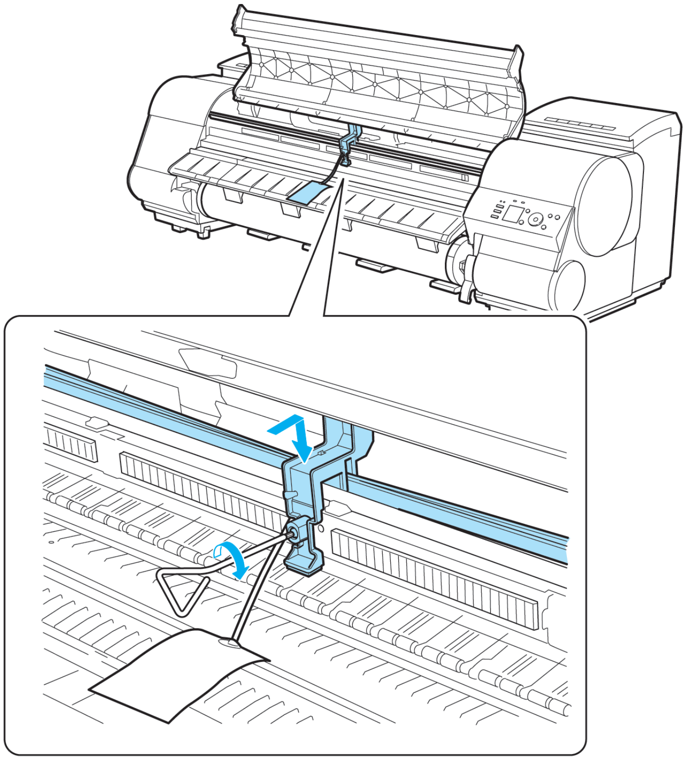
3. Open the Top Cover and lift the Ejection Guide.



4. Remove the four ejection supports and lower the Ejection Guide.

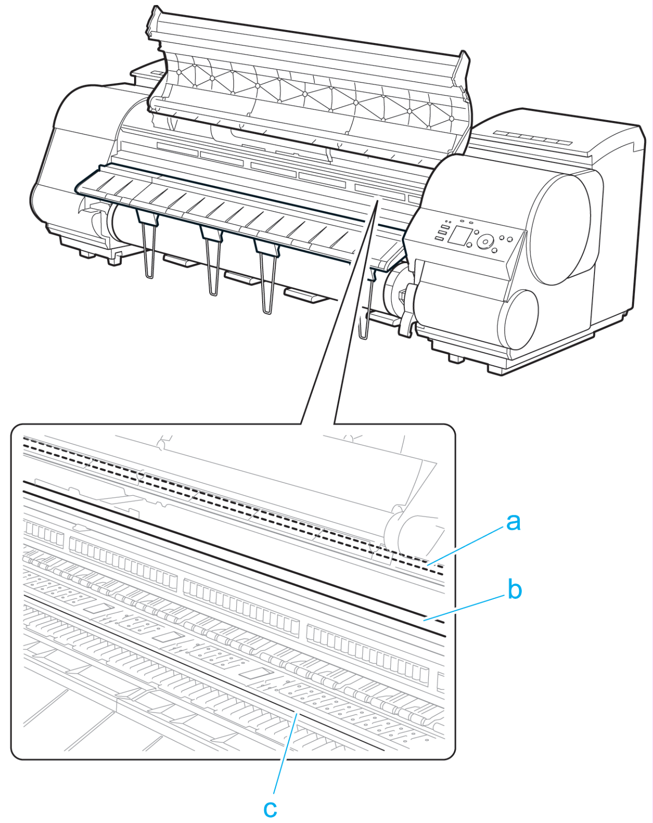


5. Grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper with a hex screw at the position indicated.

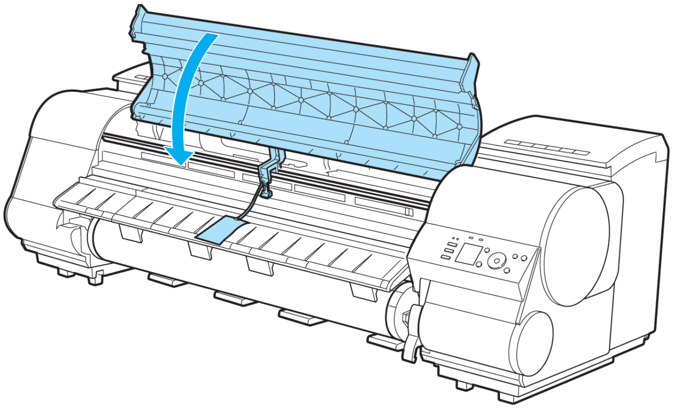


Important

- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation. Neglecting to attach the Belt Stopper may damage the printer.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



6. Close the Top Cover.



7. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

8. If the Output Stacker is installed, reverse the installation procedure to remove the Output Stacker.

9. Remove the Stand by reversing the installation procedure, when it was attached to the printer.

10. Disassemble and repackage the Stand by following the installation procedure in reverse.

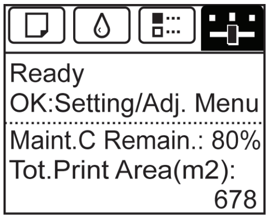
11. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Ready
OK:Setting/Adj. Menu
Maint.C Remain.: 80%
Tot.Print Area(m2):
678

> **Note**
> - If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
   The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Printer Info**, and then press the **OK** button.

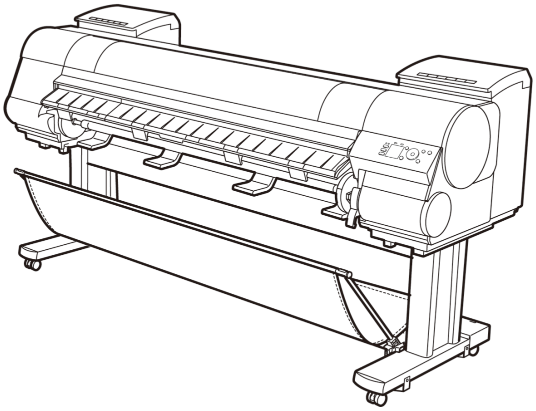
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Consumables

Troubleshooting



Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
I want to easily create vertical or horizontal banners.	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. ⇒"Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) →P.122 "
A replacement message for the Maintenance Cartridge was displayed.	If a replacement message for the Maintenance Cartridge is displayed, replace it with a new Maintenance Cartridge. ⇒"When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge →P.1037 "
I want to perform enlargement copying from a **Color imageRUNNER**.	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. ⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER →P.304 " ⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER →P.606 "
I want to tilt and transfer the printer.	The tasks required before transfer differ depending on the angle of tilting. To protect internal mechanisms, prepare the form of transfer before transferring. ⇒"Preparing to Transfer the Printer →P.1044 "
I want to know the time to replace the Ink Tank.	Normally, replace it when an Ink Tank replacement message is displayed. Ink Tank replacement is possible even during printing, when print jobs are being canceled, or when paper is being advanced. ⇒"When to Replace Ink Tanks →P.1009 "
Does this printer support sub-ink tank system?	This printer supports sub-ink tank system. Even if an ink tank becomes empty during printing, since a certain amount of ink always is stored in a sub-ink tank, you can replace the ink tank while printing. ⇒"Replacing Ink Tanks →P.997 "
I want to know how to configure roll cutting.	You can select the cutting method by the setting of the printer driver and the setting of the printer. To cut rolls automatically after printing, set **Cutting Mode** of the printer to **Automatic** and **Automatic Cutting** of the printer driver to **Yes**. When using paper for which ink adhesion takes time or the print surface is easily scratched, we recommend that you set the **Cutting Mode** setting of the printer to **Eject**. ⇒"Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls →P.802 " ⇒"Cutting Roll Paper After Printing →P.196 "
I want to configure so that the roll is cut automatically after waiting for the ink to dry.	In the printer driver, you can set the time for waiting until the ink dries. Also, you can set likewise on the printer. ⇒"Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls →P.800 " ⇒"Menu Structure →P.928 "
I want to replace the Printhead myself.	Acquire a Printhead supported by the printer. You can replace it yourself. ⇒"Replacing the Printhead →P.1013 "
How do I print without borders?	When printing on rolls, you can perform borderless printing by configuring the printer driver. (when printing on cut sheets, you cannot perform borderless printing) ⇒"Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size →P.107 " ⇒"Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.114 "

Question	Answer
How do I print without borders?	⇒"Borderless Printing at Actual Size →P.100 "
I want to know the paper types that can be used in this printer.	Concerning the paper that can be used in this printer, refer to the imagePROGRAF home page or the Paper Reference Guide. ⇒"Types of Paper →P.774 "
The paper type that I want to print is not displayed on the Display Screen.	When using newly released paper, paper information must be registered on the printer and the printer driver. Download the new version of **Media Information File** from the imagePROGRAF website and install it. ⇒"Types of Paper →P.774 "
What type of function is color calibration?	Color calibration improves color consistency by compensating for slight differences in how color appears when printing due to individual variations or aging among the printers. We recommend color calibration in the following situations. • After initial printer installation • After Printhead replacement • When you sense a change of color compared to previously • To print with colors aligned from multiple printers • When the execution guide is displayed ⇒"Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment →P.865 "
How do I print without wasting paper?	To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins. ⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees →P.172 " ⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins →P.178 "
Can I perform duplex printing?	This printer cannot perform duplex printing. If you use the **Folded Duplex** function in the free layout of Windows software, you can print two pages one-sided, fold them at the center and suspend them to substitute for duplex printing. ⇒"Prints using Folded Duplex →P.290 "
I want to perform enlargement printing.	With the printer driver, you can specify the ratio matching the document with the paper size and width and perform enlargement printing or reduction printing. ⇒"Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size →P.73 " ⇒"Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P.79 " ⇒"Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value →P.85 "

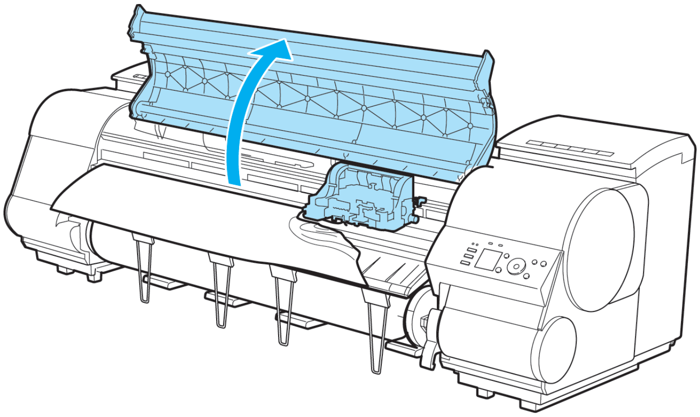
Problems Regarding Paper

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If roll paper jams, follow the steps below to remove jams.

1. Turn the printer off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

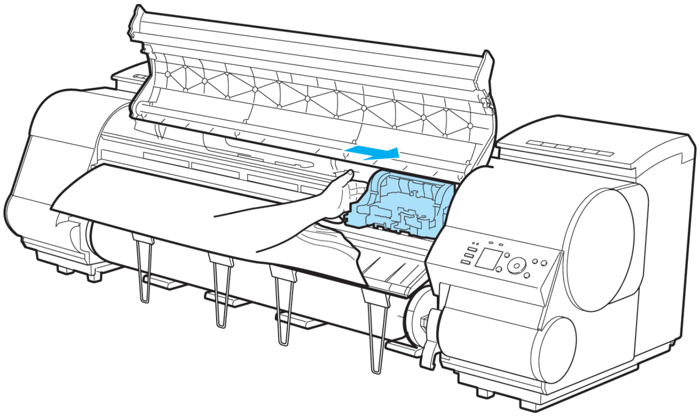
2. Open the Top Cover.



Note

- If the leading edge of the roll jams in the carriage such as when the paper curls strongly, you may be able to avoid paper jamming by setting the roll cutting method to Manual and setting the detection of paper leading edge to [Off].
  (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

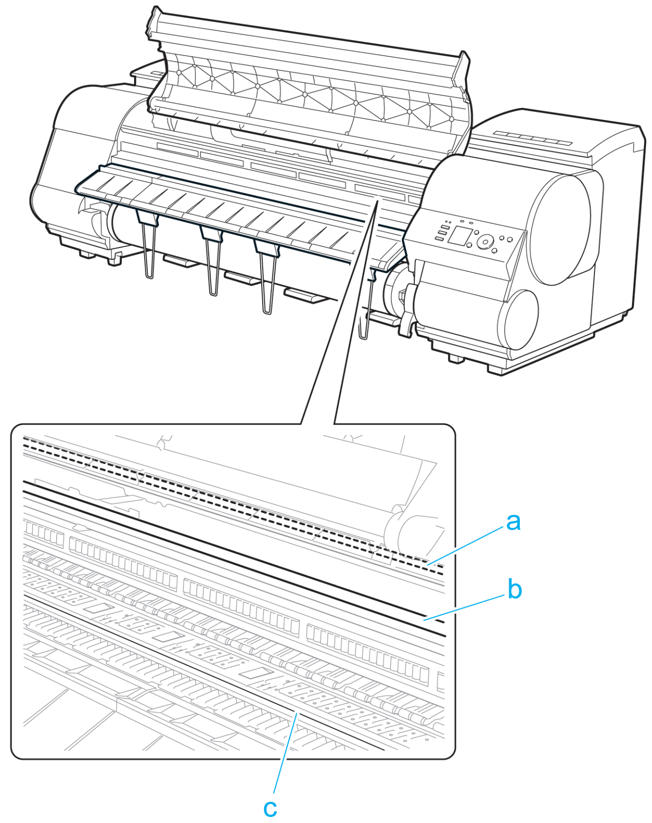


Caution

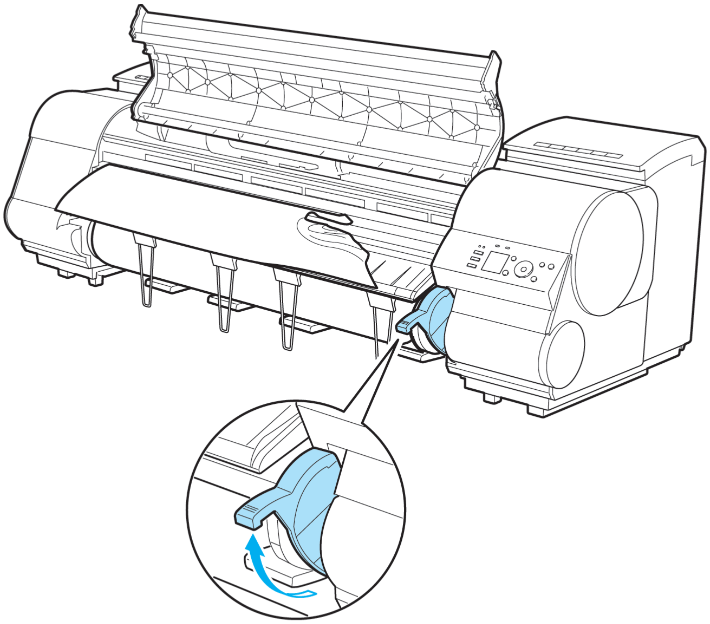
- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.

Important

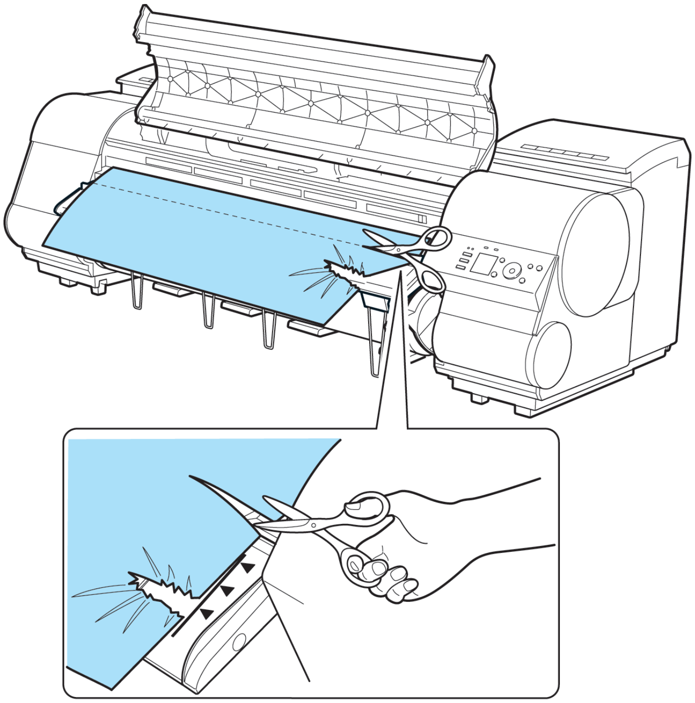
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c), This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



4. Lift the Release Lever.



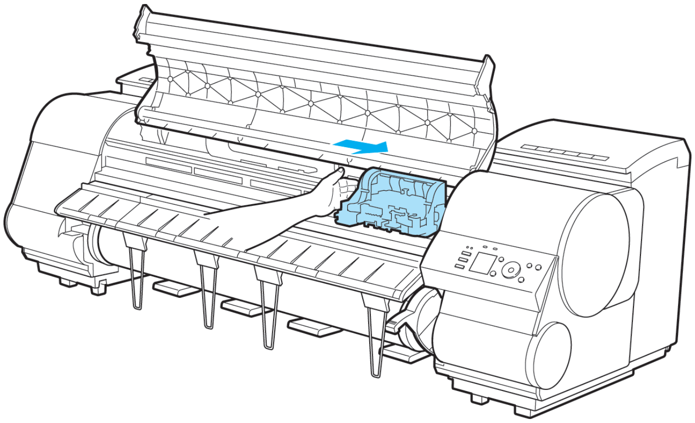
5. Holding the paper on both sides, pull the jammed portion out toward the front. Use scissors or a cutting tool to cut away the printed or wrinkled portion.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury or damage to the printer.

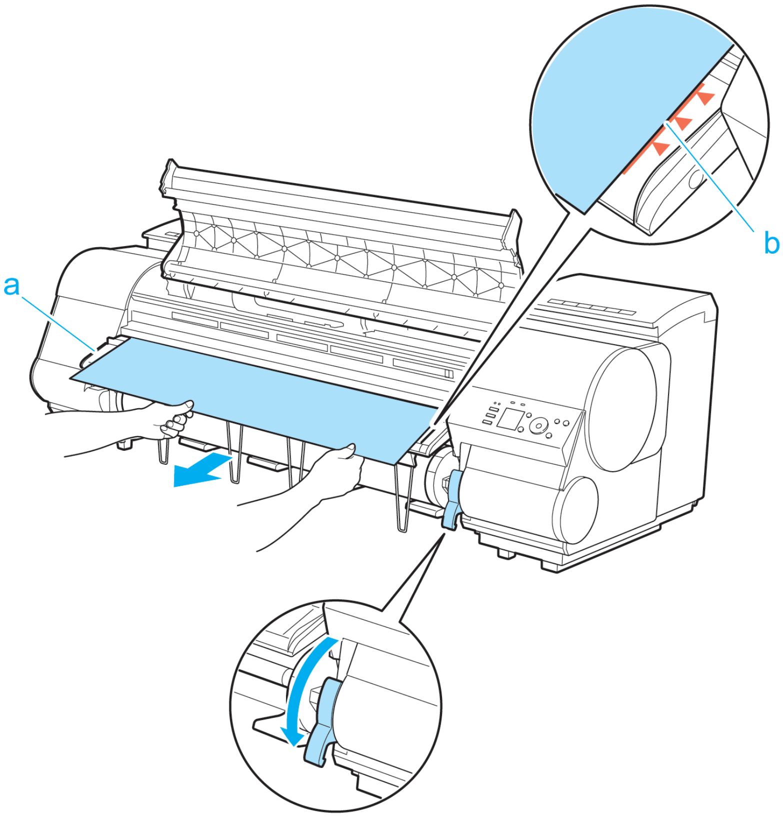
6. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

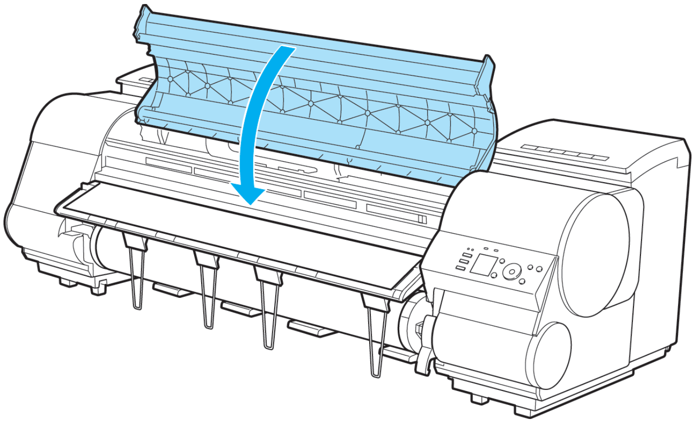
7. Hold the edge of the roll paper in the middle as you gently pull it evenly to the position of the Ejection Guide (a). Align the right side of the roll paper with the Paper Alignment Line (b), keeping this side parallel to the line, and then lower the Release Lever.



Important

- Do not force the roll paper into alignment with the Paper Alignment Line (b). This may prevent the paper from being advanced straight.

8. Close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3
The roll is now advanced. After it is finished being advanced, you can resume printing.

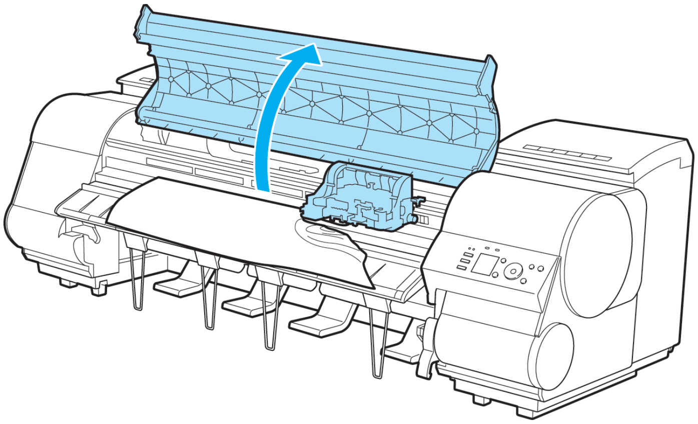
> Note
> - To ensure that the edge is cut more neatly, follow these steps to cut it.
>
> **1.** Press the **Feed** button.
>
> **2.** Hold down the ▼ button to advance the paper.
>
> **3.** Press the **Cut** button, and then select **Yes** to cut the edge.
> (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

Clearing a Jammed Sheet

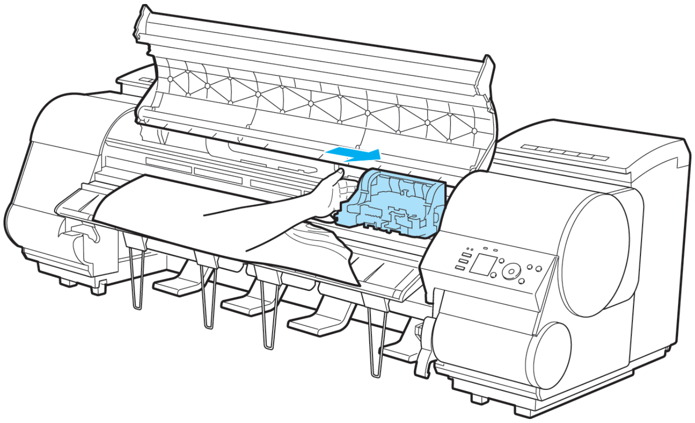
If a sheet jams, follow the steps below to remove it.

1. Turn the printer off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

2. Open the Top Cover.



3. If the Carriage is out, move the Carriage out of the way, away from the paper.

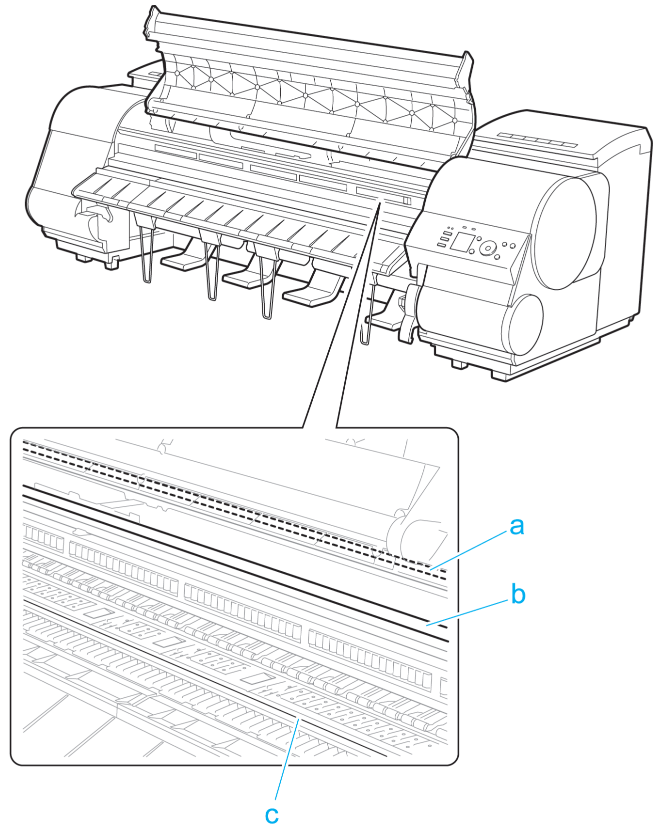


Caution

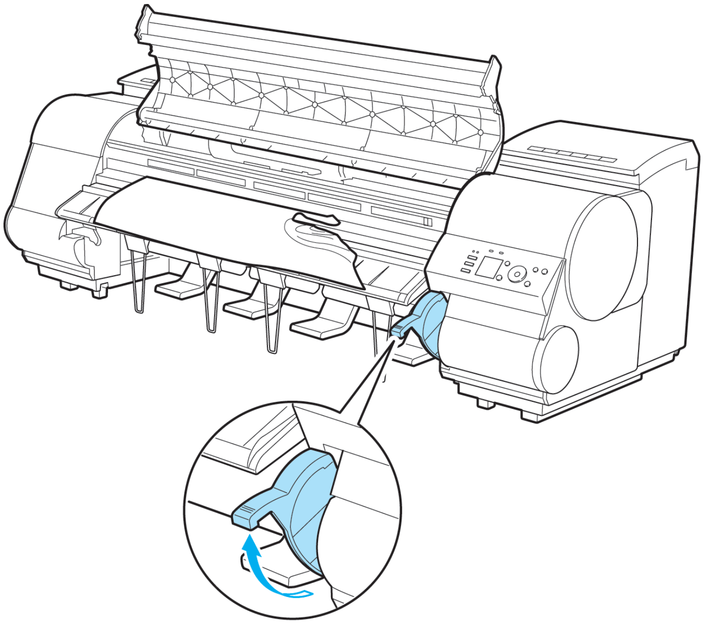
- If you push the Carriage to the left edge, the blade of the Cutter Unit will be lowered in preparation to cut the paper. Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Carriage and Platen if you have pushed the Carriage to the left edge or if a paper jam occurs during cutting.

Important

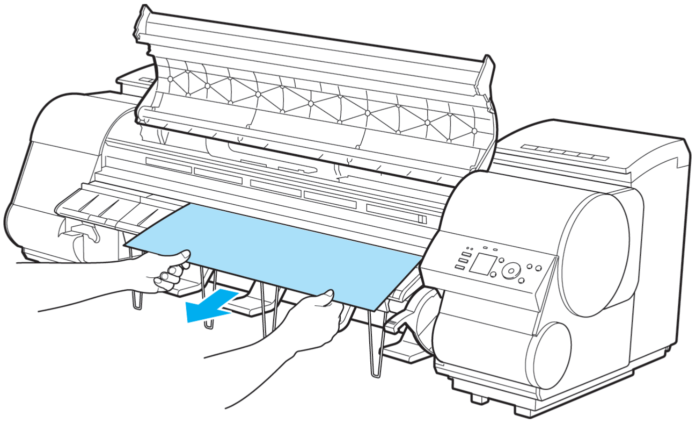
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a), Carriage Shaft (b), or Fixed Blade (c). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



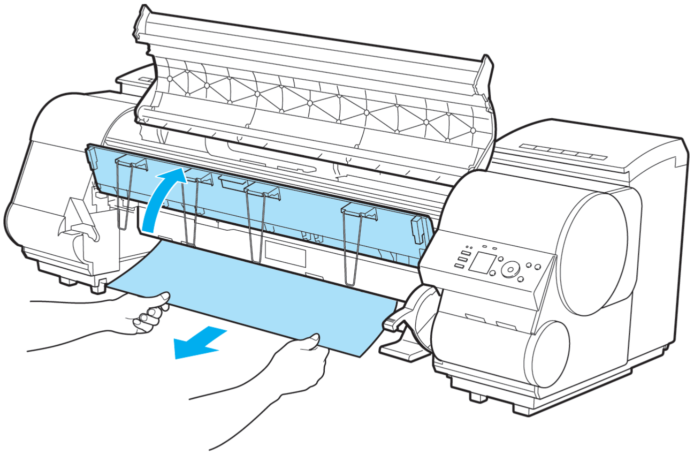
4. Lift the Release Lever.



5. If the paper is visible, hold the paper and pull it out toward the front.

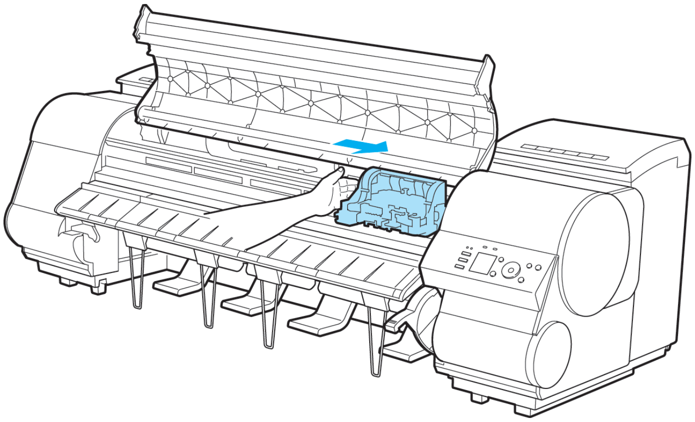


6. If the paper is not visible, lift the Ejection Guide, remove the Roll Holder, and clear the paper jam from below.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer, and then lower the Ejection Guide.

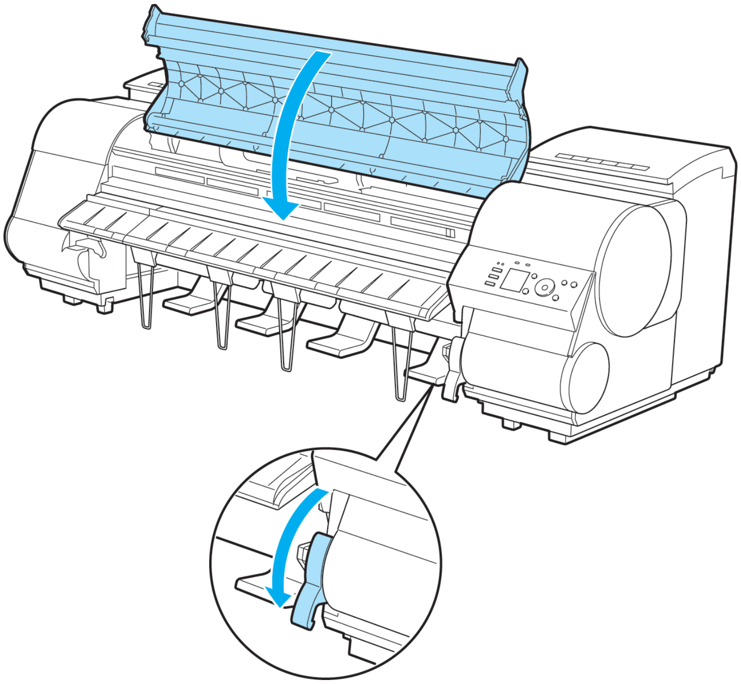
7. If the Carriage is on the left, move the Carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Always move the Carriage to the right side. If the Carriage is on the left, a Carriage error may occur when you turn on the printer.

8. Lower the Release Lever and close the Top Cover.



9. Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.3

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the paper feed slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
Paper is jammed by the paper feed slot.	Remove the jammed paper. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") →P.1057 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") →P.1061
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Load** button and select the paper source.

Cannot load sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Load** button and select the paper source.

Paper is not cut straight

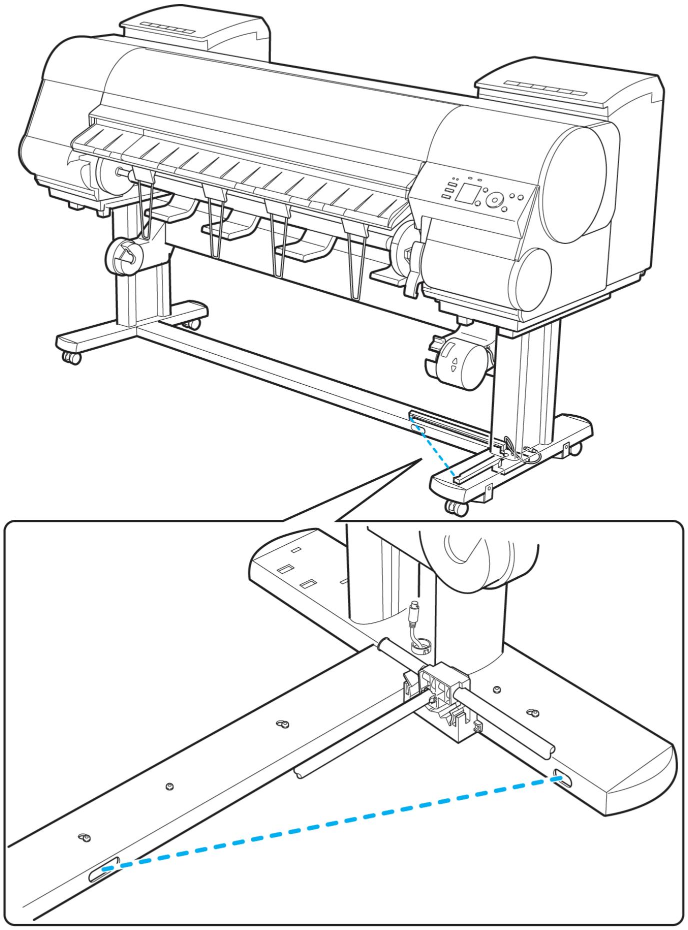
Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.
You are using paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit.	Specify **Manual** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll after printing. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802
The Cutter Unit is not installed correctly.	Reinstall the Cutter Unit correctly. (See "Replacing the Cutter Unit.") →P.1024
The Cutter Unit blade is worn out.	Replace the Cutter Unit. (See "Replacing the Cutter Unit.") →P.1024
Cut Speed is not configured correctly in the Control Panel menu.	Change the **Cut Speed** setting in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Structure.") →P.928
During cutting, printed documents fall out at an angle.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject**. Hold documents after printing, as they are cut. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802

Paper is not cut

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Auto Cut**.	Specify **Yes** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver.
In the Control Panel menu, **Cutting Mode** is set to **Eject** or **Manual**.	If the **Cutting Mode** is **Eject**, press the **Cut** button to cut the paper. If the **Cutting Mode** is **Manual**, cut rolls with scissors or the like.
The Cutter Unit is not installed.	Install the Cutter Unit. (See "Replacing the Cutter Unit.") →P.1024

Cause	Corrective Action
Rolls are not cut when you are using the Media Take-up Unit.	Either cut the roll paper by pressing the **Cut** button or lift the Release Lever and cut the roll with scissors. (See "Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional).") →P.842

The media take-up unit continues rotating

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a foreign object in the path of the Media Take-up Sensor (indicated by a dotted line). 	Remove the foreign object from the Media Take-up Sensor path. Arrange the Basket Cloth and Basket Rod so they do not interfere with the Media Take-up Sensor.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Media Take-up Sensor cord is not connected to the Right Media Take-up Unit correctly.	Reconnect the Media Take-up Sensor cord as follows. **1.** Turn the printer off. **2.** Disconnect the Media Take-up Sensor cord from the Right Media Take-up Unit and reconnect it firmly, all the way in. **3.** Turn the printer on. (See "Using the Media Take-up Unit (Optional).") →P.831
	If the Media Take-up Unit continues rotating, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

The size of clear film cannot be detected

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen is soiled with ink or other substances.	Open the Top Cover and clean the entire Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

Margins are wide

Cause	Corrective Action
Rolls are advanced a specific amount before cutting to prevent problems with cutting and paper ejection.	This operation is normal.

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
The target printer was not selected when printing. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, open the dialog box of the printer driver, select the printer from the list of **Printer**, and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. **1.** Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. **2.** Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. **1.** Click **Print & Fax**. (This is identified as **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center** in other versions of Mac OS X.) **2.** Select the printer, and then **Resume Printer** (or **Start Jobs**) in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.

The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Pause Print** is **On**.	Set **Pause Print** to **Off**. (See "Pausing Printing.") →P.19
You have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** on the printer.	Print the job saved on the printer's hard disk. (See "Printing Saved Jobs.") →P.730
Print jobs are pending.	Manage the jobs on hold and print as needed. (See "Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold).") →P.728

Ink Filling.. is displayed

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer was forced off during operation.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about nine minutes.

The display screen indicates Agitating

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink agitation is in progress.	Please wait until ink agitation is finished. The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer was off. (Between about a minute and a half to twenty minutes.)

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (See "Error Messages.") →P.1093
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P.797 (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") →P.5

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	The leading edge of rolls may be cut to straighten it if you have selected **Trim Edge First** > **On** or **Automatic** in the Control Panel menu. (See "Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically.") →P.810
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011
Because the printer was left without ink tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the ink tanks have been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B** from the Control Panel. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. **1.** Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. **2.** Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") →P.1057 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") →P.1061 **3.** Close the Top Cover.
The ink was not dry when paper was cut.	Specify a longer drying period in the Control Panel menu, in **Paper Details** > **Roll DryingTime**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Fast**.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest quality** or **High** in **Print Quality**. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower.

Cause	Corrective Action
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Fast**.	(See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64
You are printing on paper that tends to generate dust when cut.	In the Control Panel menu, set **CutDustReduct.** in **Paper Details** to **On**. (See "Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.") →P.812

Paper rubs against the printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to **Automatic**. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thick or less, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
When you have loaded paper, the paper you have loaded does not match the type selected on the Control Panel.	Be sure to select the correct type of paper in the Control Panel menu when loading paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813

Cause	Corrective Action
Since the leading edge of the paper strongly warps upward or ripples, the leading edge of the paper rubs against the printhead.	Set **Cutting Mode** to **Manual** on the Control Panel menu, and select **Off** for the paper leading edge detection setting. In this case, when keeping track of the amount of roll paper left, set **ManageRemainRoll** to **Off** before loading the roll paper and then set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** after loading the roll paper. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802 (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.799

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040
The type of paper as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.791
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
A cut line is printed because **CutDustReduct.** is **On** in the Control Panel menu to reduce cutting dust.	If this function is not needed, set **CutDustReduct.** to **Off** in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to **Automatic**. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard**, **Strong**, or **Strongest** in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher **Head Height** setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide. (See "Cleaning the Printer Exterior.") →P.1039

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Roll DryingTime** to at least **1 min.** (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
	When paper that does not dry easily is used for printing, it may curl during printing and touch the Output Tray. In this case, in the Control Panel menu, set **Scan Wait Time** to an option other than **Off**. However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040
	In the Control Panel menu, set **CarriageScanWdth** to **Fixed**. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938
The Platen has become soiled because you have set **Width Detection** to **Off** in the Control Panel menu.	Set **Width Detection** to **On** in the Control Panel menu, and then open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040
	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. After this, manually advance the roll onto the Platen before printing. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040 (See "Feeding Roll Paper Manually.") →P.798
The Platen suction is too strong.	In the Control Panel menu, reduce the level of **VacuumStrngth**. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863

Immediately after borderless printing, the trailing edge margin is soiled during regular printing

Cause	Corrective Action
Depending on your printing environment, after borderless printing in which the leading and trailing edge of the roll is cut automatically, any ink adhering to the cutter unit may rub off on the next printed document.	Follow these steps to change the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time** to a value between about 30 seconds and 3 minutes before trying borderless printing again. **1.** On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Advanced Settings** by **Media Type**. **2.** Select an ink drying time in the list for the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time**.

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011
In the Windows printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box.
There may be a slight difference in how colors are printed after Printhead replacement because of individual variation among printheads.	Execute color calibration.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Execute color calibration.
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. **1.** Use the same version of firmware or printer driver. **2.** Specify the same value for all settings items. **3.** Execute color calibration.
When reinstalling the printer driver, you changed the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool. Changing the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool deletes the region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation. Using paper with deleted information when executing color calibration will prevent the resulting calibration adjustment value from being applied to all other types of the paper.	Prepare paper compatible with calibration in the newly selected region and perform calibration again.

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.856
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Adj. Priority** is set to **Print Length**.	Setting **Adj. Priority** to **Print Quality** in the Control Panel menu and adjusting the feed amount may improve results. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.856
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	In **Print Priority** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Image**.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Select a stronger level in **VacuumStrngth** in the Control Panel menu to increase suction against the paper, or specify a leading margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. Printing in **Fast** or **Standard** mode is faster and consumes less ink than in **Highest quality** or **High** modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the leading edges.	Specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, and then use scissors or a cutting tool to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.

Cause	Corrective Action
When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the leading edges.	(See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
Allowing printed documents to dry on top of each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Density may be uneven if you use Glossy Paper or Coated Paper.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest quality** or **High** in **Print Quality**.
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Scan Wait Time > **Area** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Leading edge**.	When **Scan Wait Time** > **Area** is set to **Leading edge**, colors may be uneven 110–160 mm from the leading edge. (The position varies depending on the **Print Quality** setting.) In this case, select **Scan Wait Time** > **Area** > **Entire area**. However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.938

Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	In the Control Panel menu, reduce the level of **VacuumStrngth**. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth).") →P.863
	Close the blue Switch on the platen so that it matches the paper size. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead. (See "Enhancing Printing Quality.") →P.848
	In the Control Panel menu, set **Head Height** to a lower height. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen

If printed documents exhibit the following symptoms, adjust the setting of the blue Switch on the Platen.

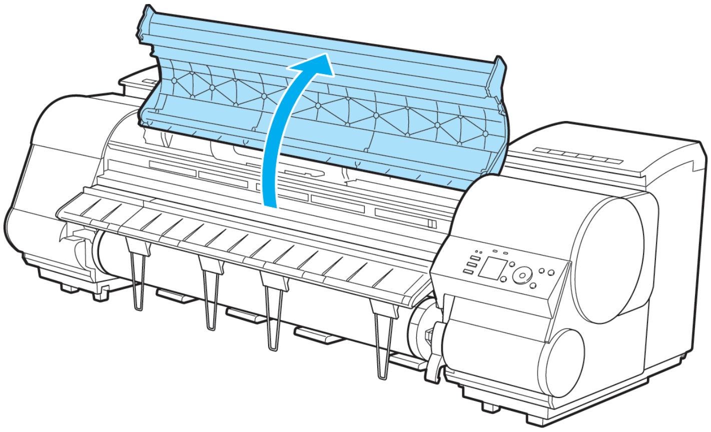
- Image edges are blurred
- Image edges are affected by white banding

Important

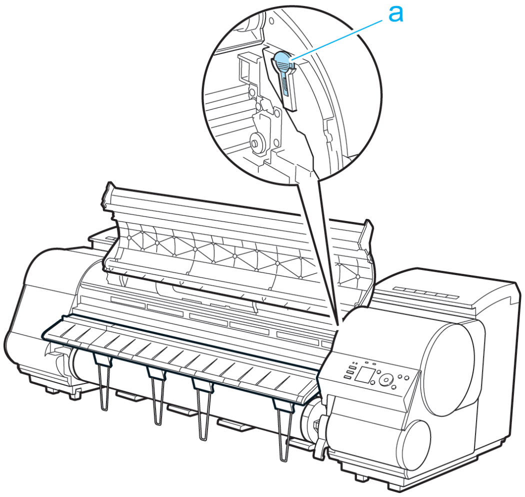
- Always set the blue Switch on the Platen to the ● side for borderless printing. Printing quality may be affected if the Switch is incorrectly set.

1. Remove any loaded paper that will not be used.
   - Rolls (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794
   - Sheets (See "Removing Sheets.") →P.820

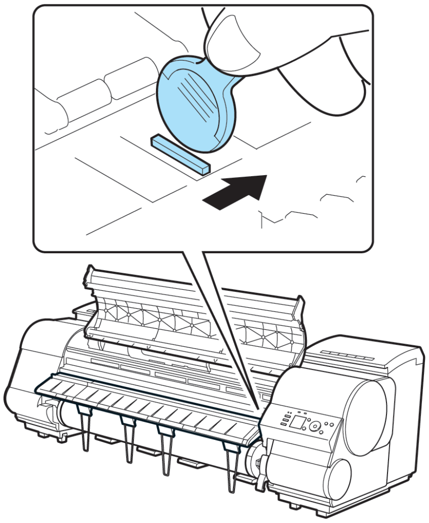
2. Open the Top Cover.



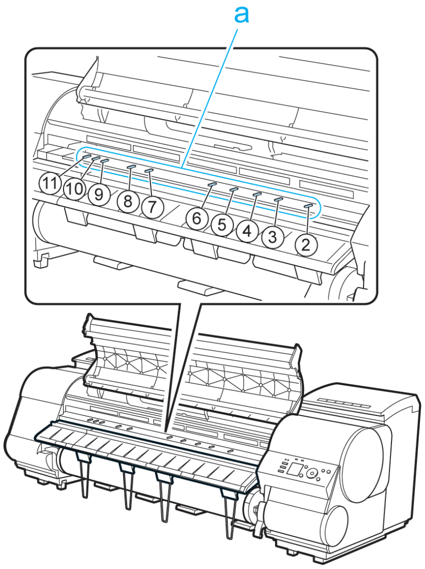
3. Remove the Cleaning Brush (a).



4. Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the first Switch to the side opposite ●.



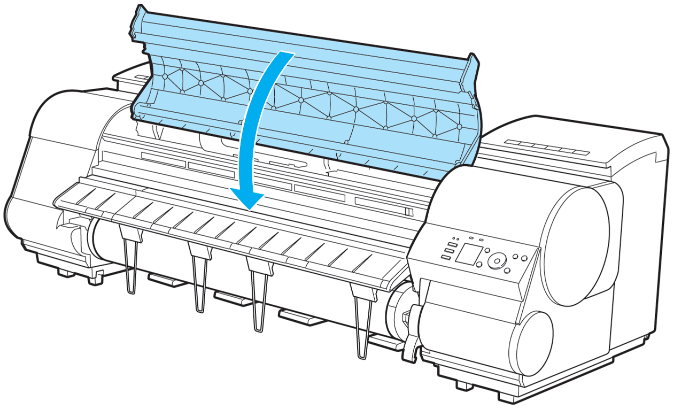
5. Refer to the following table to confirm the number on the Platen that corresponds to the size of paper for printing.



Number	Dimensions
2	254 mm (10 in)
3	355 mm (14 in)
4	432 mm (17 in)
5	515 mm (JIS B2 or B3)
6	594 mm (ISO A1 or A2) or 610 mm (24 in)
7	841 mm (ISO A0 or A1)
8	914 mm (36 in)
9	1,030 mm (JIS B0 or B1)
10	1,067 mm (42 in)
11	1,117 mm (44 in)

6. Using the back of the Cleaning Brush, move the Switch to the side opposite ●, corresponding to the size of the paper for printing.
   In this case, note that you will move the switch in the opposite direction from the direction in step 4.

7. Close the Top Cover.



The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.856
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Adj. Priority** is set to **Print Quality**.	Set **Adj. Priority** to **Print Length** in the Control Panel menu, and then execute **Adjust Length**. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.856
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Images are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, **Skew Check Lv.** is set to **Loose** or **Off**.	In the Control Panel menu, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Standard**.
In the Control Panel menu, **Width Detection** is set to **Off**.	Set **Width Detection** to **On** in the Control Panel menu.

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (Photo)**, is specified in **Color Mode**.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011

Line thickness is not uniform

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Access the printer driver **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the **File** menu of the source application, and follow these steps to print. **1.** Clear the option **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** on the **Main** sheet. **2.** Clear the option **Page Layout** on the **Layout** sheet. **3.** Click the **Special Settings** button on the **Layout** sheet to display the **Special Settings** dialog box, and then clear the option **Fast Graphic Process**.
The blue Switch on the platen is set incorrectly.	Move the Switch numbered corresponding to the size of paper for printing opposite to the ● position. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	(See "Enhancing Printing Quality.") →P.848
	In the Control Panel menu, use a lower **Head Height** setting. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
Depending on the type of paper, the thickness of printed lines may be noticeably inconsistent.	Specify **Proof** in **Print Priority** in the printer driver. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64

Lines or colors are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead is not being aligned correctly.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850 (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.852
	When printing fine lines or text at high precision on glossy or semi-glossy photo or proofing paper, set the optimal Printhead height before aligning the printhead. (See "Enhancing Printing Quality.") →P.848
	In the Control Panel menu, use a lower **Head Height** setting. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height).") →P.854
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer. **1.** Press the **Stop** button and stop printing. **2.** Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Depending on the type of paper, printed lines may be noticeably misaligned.	Specify **Proof** in **Print Priority** in the printer driver. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	**1.** Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Setup Guide. **2.** Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The top and bottom indicators are lit if the printer is connected via 1000Base-T. The bottom indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100BASE-TX, and the top indicator is orange if connected via 10BASE-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (See "Configuring the Communication Mode Manually.") →P.992

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.") →P.443 (See "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel.") →P.966
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI .") →P.970
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows).") →P.969 (See "Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks .") →P.984

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. (See "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings With RemoteUI.") →P.981
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring NetWare Network Settings.") →P.974
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. **1.** Make sure the NetWare file server is running. **2.** Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. **3.** Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. **4.** If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. **5.** If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify **Other/Unknown** as the printer type.

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. (See "Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings.") →P.989
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks .") →P.988 (See "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network .") →P.986
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Installation problems

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note

- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.

2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.

3. Click **Yes** after the **Warning** message is displayed.

4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and then click **Exit**.

Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.

2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
   Open the **OS X** folder and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.

3. In the upper left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and then click **Uninstall**.

4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

Note

- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.

2. Select **Add or Remove Programs**.

3. Select **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, and then click the **Change/Remove** button.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

Note

- The following instructions are for Windows XP. The method of removing printer drivers varies depending on the version of Windows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.

2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.

3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Other problems

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. (See "Specifications.") →P.1123

The printer takes time to start up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer may have shut down incorrectly last time. This may happen after power outages or if the printer is unplugged before it is turned off. In this case, the next time power is restored, the printer's hard disk is checked, and startup may take some time.	Please wait a while, because it may take several minutes to finish checking the hard disk. If an error message is displayed after the hard disk check, follow the instructions indicated to resolve the problem.

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer makes a sound during operation.	The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer. • There is a sound of suction from the Platen. To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it. • Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing. There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced. • You suddenly hear the sound of cleaning operations. At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. • You suddenly hear the sound of ink agitation. At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. Ink agitation takes about a minute and a half. The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions. Note that other operations are not possible while "**Agitating**" is displayed on the control panel. • After the printer is turned on • After data transmission • After ink tank replacement In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge that was used to replace the old one.	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B in the Control Panel menu is executed frequently.	**Head Cleaning B** in the Control Panel menu consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B**, to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead, which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Check for nozzle clogging. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011

Ink Level Detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

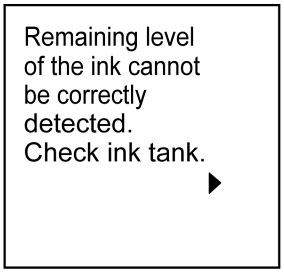
Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (See "Ink Tanks.") →P.996
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

Important

- After ink level detection has been released, this function cannot be reactivated for currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with new ones specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

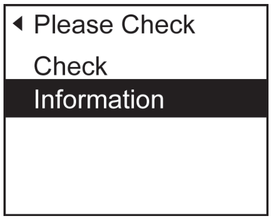
Releasing ink level detection

1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



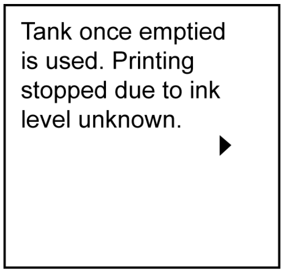
Remaining level
of the ink cannot
be correctly
detected.
Check ink tank.
▶

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



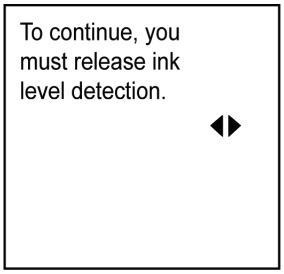
◀ Please Check
Check
Information

3. A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about releasing ink level detection. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



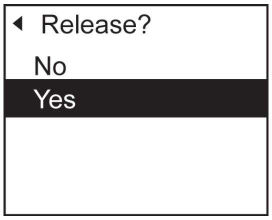
Tank once emptied
is used. Printing
stopped due to ink
level unknown.
▶

4. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



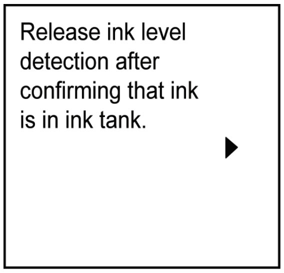
To continue, you must release ink level detection. ◀▶

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



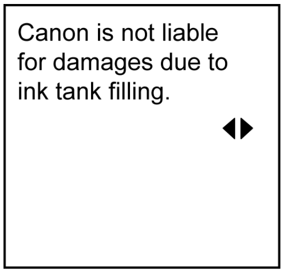
◀ Release?
No
Yes

6. Check the message and press the ▶ button.



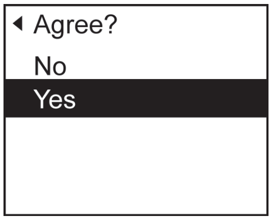
Release ink level detection after confirming that ink is in ink tank. ▶

7. Check the message and press the ▶ button.



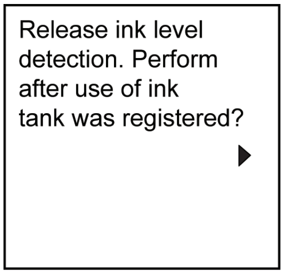
Canon is not liable for damages due to ink tank filling. ◀▶

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



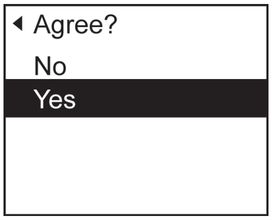
◀ Agree?
No
Yes

9. A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen. After checking the message, press the ▶ button.



Release ink level
detection. Perform
after use of ink
tank was registered?
▶

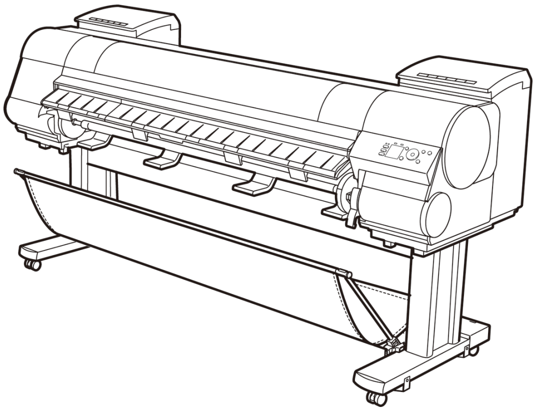
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



◀ Agree?
No
Yes

Ink level detection is now released.

Error Message



Error Messages

Messages regarding paper

Paper mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern for adjustment, use sheets of the same size and type of paper, in the required quantity. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, press the **OK** button, and replace the paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9 The printer now starts printing the test pattern.
	Replace the paper as follows and perform adjustment again. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. **2.** Replace the paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9 **3.** Execute adjustment again from the control panel menu.

MediaType Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. **2.** Change the paper type setting in the printer driver to the type loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. **2.** Replace the loaded paper with paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") →P.5 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types of paper were used.	When printing a test pattern for adjustment, use sheets of the same type of paper, in the required quantity. Replace the paper as follows and perform adjustment again. **1.** Lift the Release Lever and stop printing. **2.** Replace the paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9 **3.** Execute adjustment again from the control panel menu.
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Warning**, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause** or **Hold Job**, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. **2.** Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows.

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause** or **Hold Job**, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	**1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. **2.** Replace the loaded paper to match the paper width setting in the printer driver and try printing again.
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Warning**, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

"Replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger"

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Replace the paper with paper of A4/Letter (vertical) size or larger as follows. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, press the **OK** button, and remove the paper. (See "Removing Sheets.") →P.820 **2.** Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9 The printer will resume printing.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

"Replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll."

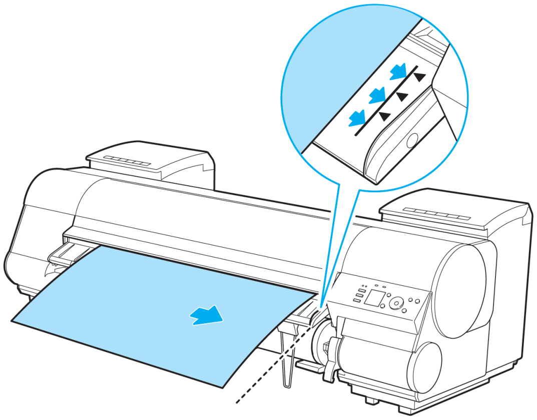
Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small. (When you have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information.)	Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches in width or larger as follows. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P.797 **2.** Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches wide or larger. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 The printer will resume printing.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

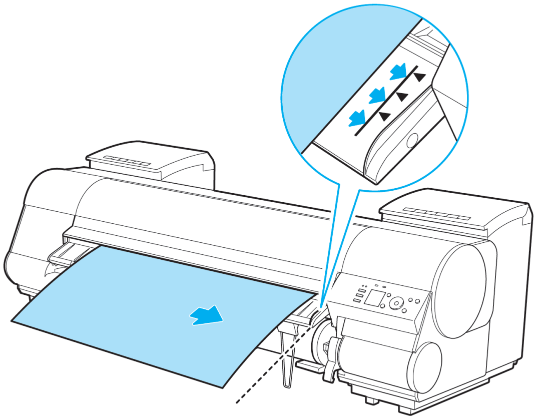
PaprWidth Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause** or **Warning**, the width of the loaded roll does not match the width specified in **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.

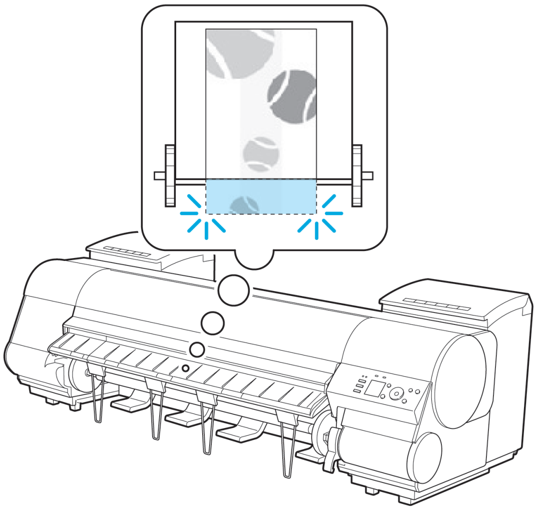
Cause	Corrective Action
When **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu is set to **Pause** or **Warning**, the width of the loaded roll does not match the width specified in **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.
	Follow these steps to replace the roll to match the width specified in the printer driver. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P.797 **2.** Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Make sure the roll width selected in the dialog box displayed when you select **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver matches the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then try printing again.

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Follow these steps to reload the roll. **1.** Lift the Release Lever. **2.** Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line. **3.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782
	Follow these steps to reload the sheet. **1.** Lift the Release Lever. **2.** Adjust the right edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line and the trailing edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the paper alignment line under the Paper Retainer. **3.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813
Because the Platen is soiled with ink or other substances, the size of the clear film cannot be detected.	Open the Top Cover and clean the entire Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left when **ManageRemainRoll** in the Control Panel menu is **On**. 	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. When using the Media Take-up Unit, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. Change the **Paper Source** of the printer driver, or replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then printt. When using the Media Take-up Unit, press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. Remove the printed document from the Media Take-up Unit, replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then try printing again. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Removing Printed Documents from the Media Take-up Unit (Optional).") →P.842
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

This paper cannot be used as size is not supported.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too large for the printer has been loaded.	Lift the Release Lever and load paper of the correct size. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775
Paper that is too small for the printer has been loaded.	Lift the Release Lever and load paper of the correct size. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.775
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Lift the Release Lever and load unused paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. Load the roll, and then print. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

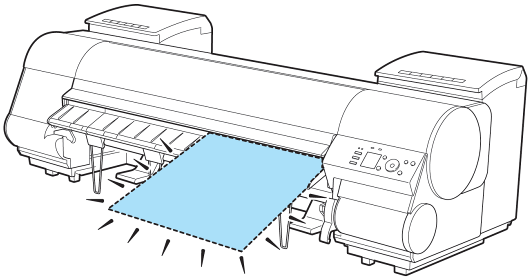
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.	Follow these steps to load and print on a roll. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, press the **OK** button, and remove the sheet. (See "Removing Sheets.") →P.820 **2.** Load a new roll. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty.	Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. **1.** Lift the Release Lever and remove the roll. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P.797 **2.** Load the new roll. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 **3.** If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.791 **4.** When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** in the control panel menu and a barcode is not printed on the roll, also specify the paper length. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.793 **5.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
There is remaining roll paper, but because it could not be advanced, it could not be detected.	The unused portion of the roll is heavy, and this is placing a burden on the printer. It may be helpful to change the printing mode, which will change the paper feed timing. Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.64

No sheets.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet has come out of the printer during printing. 	**1.** Lift the Release Lever and remove the paper. **2.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

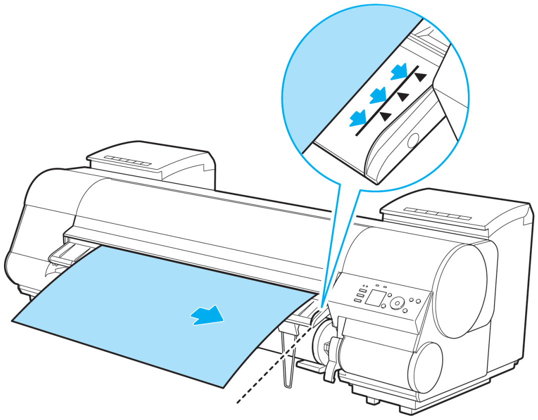
Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Load Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. Load a sheet, and then print. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select **Stop Printing** or press the **Stop** button to stop printing.

Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	**1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Remove Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. **2.** After removing the roll, load and print on a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing.
You are using a roll with the Media Take-up Unit, but a print job requiring sheets was sent.	**1.** Press the **OK** button to stop printing. **2.** After removing the roll, load and print on a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.9

Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper loaded crooked was detected when the paper was advanced. 	Follow these steps to reload the roll. **1.** Lift the Release Lever. **2.** Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the orange Paper Alignment Line. **3.** Lower the Release Lever. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782
	Follow these steps to reload the sheet. **1.** Lift the Release Lever. **2.** Pull out the sheet. **3.** Adjust the right edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the right Paper Alignment Line and the trailing edge of the sheet to make it parallel to the paper alignment line under the Paper Retainer. **4.** Lower the Release Lever. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813

Important

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams and printing problems because paper may be askew when printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Cannot feed paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper could not be advanced correctly during feeding.	**1.** Lift the Release Lever and remove the jammed paper. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") →P.1057 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") →P.1061 **2.** Load paper. **3.** Lower the Release Lever. **4.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.813

Cannot cut this paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.	**1.** Lift the Release Lever and remove the paper. **2.** Load paper. **3.** Lower the Release Lever. **4.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	**1.** Lift the Top Cover and remove the foreign object. **2.** If "**Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?**" is shown on the Display Screen, press the **OK** button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	**1.** Specify **Manual** as the cutting method and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.802 For information about paper that is compatible with automatic cutting, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .) **2.** Lift the Release Lever and remove the paper.
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge.	Release the ▲ button.
Paper can be retracted only up to 17 mm (0.7 in) when using the Media Take-up Unit.	Release the ▲ button.

Rel lever is in wrong position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Release Lever is up.	Lower the Release Lever.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Rewinding error.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is some foreign object near the Media Take-up Unit sensor and the roll cannot be detected.	Remove the foreign object near the sensor.
The Media Take-up Unit sensor is soiled and the roll cannot be detected.	Wipe the sensor with a dry cloth to clean it.
The roll is out of range of detection by the Media Take-up Unit sensor.	Reload the roll. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786
A paper jam has occurred and the roll cannot be rewound.	Remove the paper from the Media Take-up Unit. Press the **OK** button to clear the error.
The Media Take-up Unit sensor is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

*1: Printing will stop momentarily if an error involving the Media Take-up Unit occurs. If you prefer printing not to stop, set **Skip Take-Up Err** to **On**. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.

Media take-up unit ready.

Cause	Corrective Action
The **Take-up Reel** setting in the printer **Set./Adj. Menu** was changed from **Enable** to **Disable**, but a print job was received before the roll was removed.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. The mode switches from take-up mode to regular mode after you change the **Take-up Reel** setting in the **Set./Adj. Menu** from **Enable** to **Disable** and lift the Release Lever to remove a roll, or after you execute **Paper Cutting**.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing.

Turn on the media take-up unit.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Media Take-up Unit was off when you selected **Enable** for **Take-up Reel**.	Turn the Media Take-up Unit on.

Borderless printng not possible.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. **2.** Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)

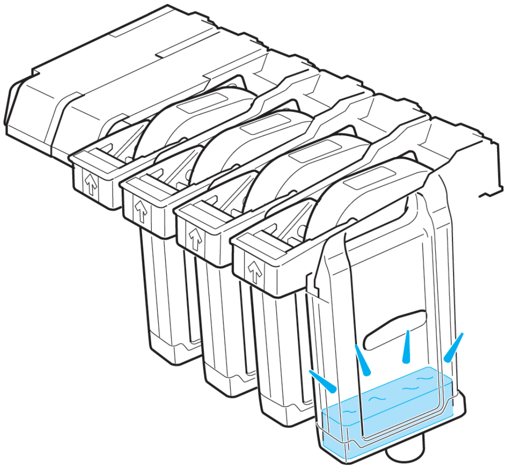
Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Select **None** when you have set **Detect Mismatch** on the control panel to **Warning**. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
The loaded paper is a size not compatible with borderless printing.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.
	Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing as follows. **1.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper**, and then press the **OK** button. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.794 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P.797 **2.** Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.786 The printer now starts printing the print job. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.

Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.

Cause	Corrective Action
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button. Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
	Select **None** when you have set **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu to **Warning**. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.
The paper is loaded askew.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Change Paper** and straighten the paper so that the edges are between the ink grooves for borderless printing. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.782
	Select **None** when you have set **Detect Mismatch** in the Control Panel menu to **Warning**. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print With Border**, and then press the **OK** button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**, and then press the **OK** button.

Messages regarding ink

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead, or do other operations that require ink. 	Press the **OK** button and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

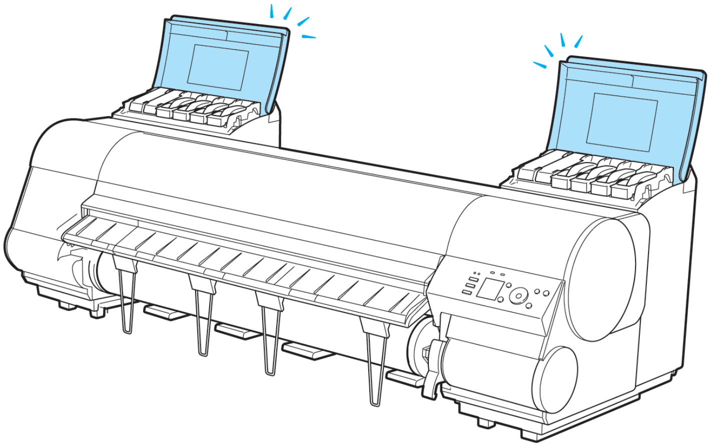
No ink left.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left.	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

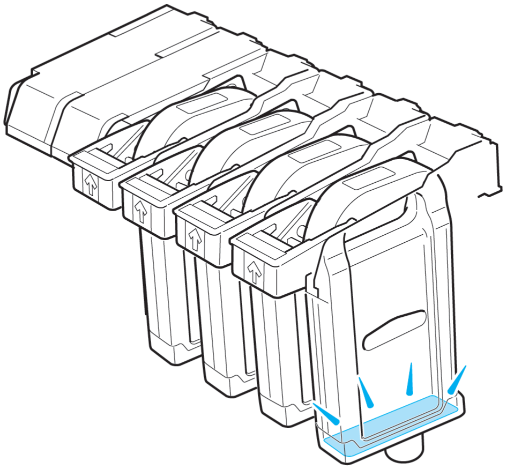
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section **Ink level detection** and take the appropriate action. (See "Ink Level Detection.") →P.1089

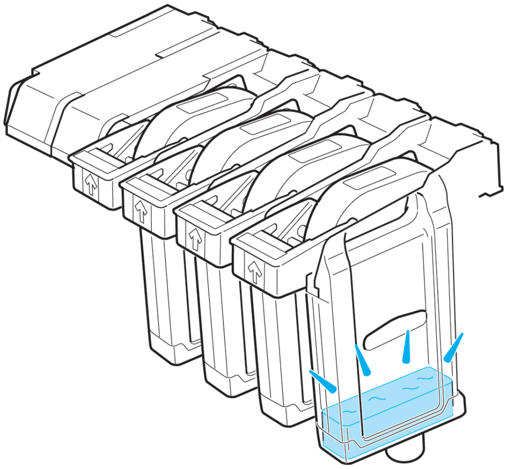
Close Ink Tank Cover

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover is open. 	Close the Ink Tank Cover.

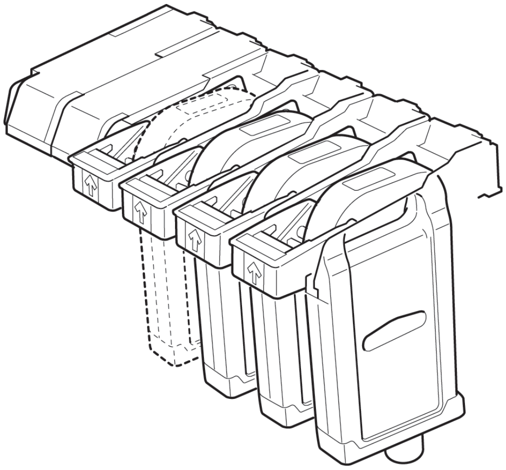
Ink tank is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left in an ink tank. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

Not much ink is left.

Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left. 	Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

No ink tank loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer. 	Load the Ink Tank. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997
There is a problem with the Ink Tank.	Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

Wrong ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.	Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.997

Messages regarding printing or adjustment

Cannot execute this command. Use other paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper compatible with color calibration is not loaded.	**1.** Press the **OK** button to clear the error. **2.** Load paper that is compatible with color calibration. See the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .) Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper in the printer paper settings. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

Cannot calibrate.

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper for printing a test pattern is soiled. Otherwise, you have loaded colored paper.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Load unused paper compatible with color calibration. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
The test pattern was printed too faintly.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Take steps to remedy faint printing. (See "Printing is faint.") →P.1071
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.

Excessive temperature or humidity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The temperature or humidity where the printer is installed is out of the acceptable range for operation.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop**, and then press the **OK** button to stop printing. Use the printer under suitable environmental conditions. Also note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Continue**, and then press the **OK** button to continue with color calibration. However, note that correct adjustment may not be possible.

Please execute calibration.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is not even one color calibration execution result. This is displayed when paper is loaded in the printer and "**Set Exec. Guide**" is set to **On** on the Control Panel menu.	Execute color calibration. (See "Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment.") →P.865
	Set "**Set Exec. Guide**" to **Off** on the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Structure.") →P.928

Please calibrate using above paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
It has become the time for prompting the execution of color calibration. This is displayed when paper is loaded in the printer and "**Set Exec. Guide**" is set to **On** on the Control Panel menu.	Execute color calibration. (See "Using Color Calibration for Color Adjustment.") →P.865
	Set "**Set Exec. Guide**" to **Off** on the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Structure.") →P.928

Borderless printng not possible. Paper stretched or shrank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded roll has expanded or contracted due to environmental conditions, making it wider or narrower than the supported width for borderless printing.	Press the **OK** button to stop printing.
	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)

Before borderless printing, move the blue platen switch.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen was set to the side opposite ● when a borderless print job was received.	Before borderless printing, set the blue Switch on the platen to the ● side. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078

Blue platen switch is dirty.

Cause	Corrective Action
The blue Switch on the platen is dirty.	Open the Top Cover and clean the blue Switch on the platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.1040

Move the blue platen switch No.xx to the right. (xx represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the blue Switch on the platen needed in maintenance during printing is set away from the ● mark.	Set blue platen Switch of the indicated number toward the ● side. (See "Setting the Blue Switch on the Platen.") →P.1078

Cannot adjust paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Adj. Quality** again, as follows. **1.** Press the **OK** button to clear the error. **2.** Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011 **3.** Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 **4.** Execute **Adj. Quality** again. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.857
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).") →P.859

Check printed document.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** again, as follows. **1.** Press the **OK** button to clear the error. **2.** Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.1011 **3.** Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 **4.** Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** again. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the **OK** button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.).") →P.850

PHeads: wrong pos.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printheads are installed in the wrong positions.	Open the Top Cover and switch the Printhead used once in the right side to the right side. Switch the Printhead used once in the left side to the left side.

Wrong x printhead. (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Open the Top Cover. Replace the Printhead L with a new one if **Printhead L** is displayed and the Printhead R if **Printhead R** is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both Printhead L and Printhead R with new ones. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013

x printhead error (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Follow these steps to replace the Printhead. **1.** Open the Top Cover. **2.** Replace the Printhead L with a new one if **Printhead L** is displayed and the Printhead R if **Printhead R** is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both Printhead L and Printhead R with new ones. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013
	Follow these steps to replace the Printhead. **1.** Turn off the printer, wait a while, and then turn it on again. **2.** Open the Top Cover. **3.** Replace the left printhead with a new one if **Printhead L** is displayed and the right one if **Printhead R** is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, replace both printheads. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013

No x printhead (x is L, R, or not displayed)

Cause	Corrective Action
No Printhead is installed.	Install the Printhead L if **Printhead L** is displayed and the Printhead R if **Printhead R** is displayed. If neither left or right is indicated, install both Printhead L and Printhead R. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013

Execute printhead cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow these steps to clean the Printhead. **1.** Stop printing by pressing ▲ or ▼ to select **Stop Printing**. **2.** Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 If the message is still displayed when printing, replace the Printhead. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print**, and then press the **OK** button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.
	If **OK** is shown on the Display Screen, clean the Printhead. **1.** Press the **OK** button on the Control Panel to stop printing. **2.** Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.1012 If the message is still displayed when printing, replace the Printhead. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.1013

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

No maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

Wrong maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
A Maintenance Cartridge for a different model of printer is installed.	Replace it with the Maintenance Cartridge for your particular model.

Maint. cart. The level is low

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.1028

Messages regarding the hard disk

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The format of the printer's hard disk is invalid.	Press the **OK** button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, data on the printer hard disk is erased and the printer automatically restarts.

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become corrupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

The mail box is full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.737

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	After printing, this message is cleared.
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.737

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The free hard disk space left for Personal Boxes in the printer's hard disk does not have more than 1 GB, combined.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.737

Maximum jobs stored.

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the personal box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.737

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data

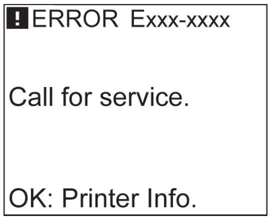
Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the Personal Box.	Press the **Stop** button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.725
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.737

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

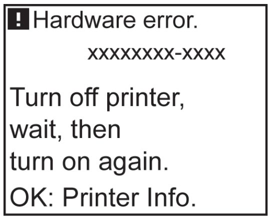
Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
An error requiring service may have occurred.  ! ERROR Exxx-xxxx Call for service. OK: Printer Info.	Write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job. The paper was not advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Turn off the printer and remove the roll from the printer before restoring power.
Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover.	Turn off the printer, open the Top Cover and remove the tape or the Belt Stopper before restoring power.

Cause	Corrective Action
An error requiring service may have occurred.  ! Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again. OK: Printer Info.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Top cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If "**Parts replacement time has passed.**" is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format.	Check the data. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the firmware.
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

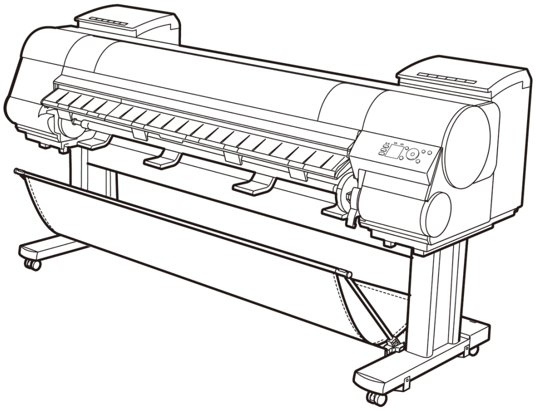
Calibration There is a problem with the multi-sensor.

Cause	Corrective Action
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Press the **OK** button and cancel calibration. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Specifications



Printer Specifications

Specifications

Important
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100–120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220–240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	During operation	190 W max.
	Sleep mode	100–120 V: 5 W max.
		220–240 V: 6 W max.
	Off	1 W max. (*1 →P.1123)
Operating noise (*2 →P.1123)	During operation (sound pressure level/LWAd)	Approx. 50 dB (A) (6.8 bels)
	Standby	35 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15–30°C (59–86°F)
	Humidity	10–80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand (including the Roll Holder and Output Stacker)	1,893×975×1,144 mm (74.5×38.4×45.0 in)
Weight	Printer and Stand (not including the Printhead and ink tanks)	Approx. 143 kg (315.3 lb)
Space for installation (W × D × H)	Printer only	2,293×1,675×1,500 mm (90.3×65.9×59.1 in)
Applicable standards	International Energy Star, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing (Japan), Eco Mark, GPN, EU RoHS, The Eco Declaration (Europe), WEEE, U.S. presidential directives, ErP Lot6 (Europe)	

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Calculation based on ISO 7779. Operating conditions: On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, **Media Type** > **Coated Paper**, **Advanced Settings** > **Print Priority** > **Image**, and **Print Quality** > **Standard**.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1 →P.1124) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-05 ×2
Number of nozzles	C,PC,PM,GY : 2560 nozzles X 2 BK,MBK,M,Y: 2560 nozzles X 1

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

Hi-Speed USB	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Gigabit Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10Base-T, IEEE 802.3u 100Base-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3ab1000Base-T/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex

Ink

Ink Tank	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304BK (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704BK (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304MBK (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704MBK (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304C (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704C (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304M (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704M (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304Y (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704Y (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	PC Ink Tank (Photo Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304PC (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704PC (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	PM Ink Tank (Photo Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304PM (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704PM (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
	GY Ink Tank (Gray Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-304GY (330 ml or 11.2 fl oz) or PFI-704GY (700 ml or 23.7 fl oz)
Capacity			330 or 700 ml (11.2 or 23.7 fl oz) per color (*1 →P.1124)

*1: The provided Starter Ink Tanks contain 330 ml (11.2 fl oz) each.

Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See Paper Reference Guide .)

Paper width	Rolls	254–1,118 mm (10.0–44.0 in)
	Sheets	203.2–1,118 mm (8.0–44.0 in)
Minimum paper length		203.2 mm (8.0 in)
Maximum printable length (*1 →P.1125)	Rolls	18 m (19.7 yd)
	Sheets	1,600 mm (63.0 in)
Thickness	Rolls	0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)
	Sheets	0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)
Roll maximum outer diameter		150 mm (6 in) or shorter
Supported paper core inner diameter		2 inches / 3 inches
Paper Size	Roll width	**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**, **42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **30-in. Roll (762.0mm)**, **JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**, **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**, **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**, and **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**
	Sheets	**ISO A0**, **ISO A1**, **ISO A2**, **ISO A2+**, **ISO A3**, **ISO A3+**, **ISO A4**, **ISO B0**, **ISO B1**, **ISO B2**, **ISO B3**, **ISO B4**, **JIS B0**, **JIS B1**, **JIS B2**, **JIS B3**, **JIS B4**, **34"x44" (ANSI E)**, **28"x40" (ANSI F)**, **22"x34"(ANSI D)**, **17"x22"(ANSI C)**, **13"x19" (Super B)**, **11"x17" (Ledger)**, **Legal (8.5"x14")**, **Letter (8.5"x11")**, **36"x48" (ARCH E)**, **30"x42" (ARCH E1)**, **26"x38" (ARCH E2)**, **27"x39" (ARCH E3)**, **24"x36" (ARCH D)**, **18"x24" (ARCH C)**, **12"x18" (ARCH B)**, **9"x12" (ARCH A)**, **DIN C0**, **DIN C1**, **DIN C2**, **DIN C3**, **DIN C4**, **20"x24"**, **18"x22"**, **14"x17"**, **12"x16"**, **10"x12"**, **10"x15"**, **8"x10"**, **US Photo 16"x20"**, **Poster 20"x30"**, **Poster 30"x40"**, **Poster 42"x60"**, **Poster 44"x62"**, **13"x22"**, and **Poster 300x900mm**
Print area	Normal size	Printable area • Rolls 5 mm (0.2 in) from each side • Sheets 5 mm (0.2 in) from the top, 23 mm (0.9 in) from the bottom, and 5 mm (0.2 in) from the left and right side For information on the recommended print area, see "Print Area." →P.1126
	Borderless printing (*2 →P.1125)	Printable area (rolls) 0 mm from from each side
Supported width for borderless printing		**44-in. Roll (1117.6mm)**, **42-in. Roll (1066.8mm)**, **JIS B0/B1 Roll (1030.0mm)**, **36-in. Roll (914.4mm)**, **ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)**, **24-in. Roll (609.6mm)**, **ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)**, **JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)**, **17-in. Roll (431.8mm)**, **14-in. Roll (355.6mm)**, and **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**

*1: Varies depending on the operating system or application.

*2: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

Hard Disk

Hard disk capacity	160 GB	
	Personal mail boxes (Permanent storage area)	92 GB
Print job storage capacity	Common Box	100 jobs
	Personal Boxes	100 jobs

Print Area

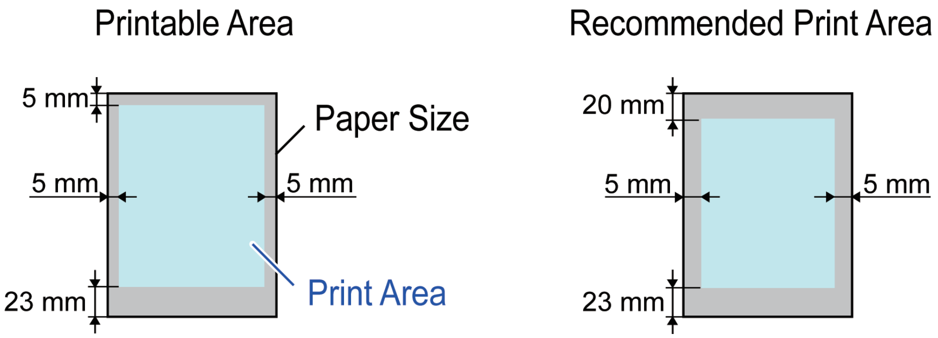
A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

Note

- Printable Area: The area that can be printed.
- There is no margin (that is, a margin of 0 mm) during borderless printing on rolls.
- Recommended Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (See "Printing on Oversized Paper.") →P.93

	Margins of Printable Area			Margins of Recommended Print Area		
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	5 mm (0.20 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	0/5 mm (0/0.20 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets



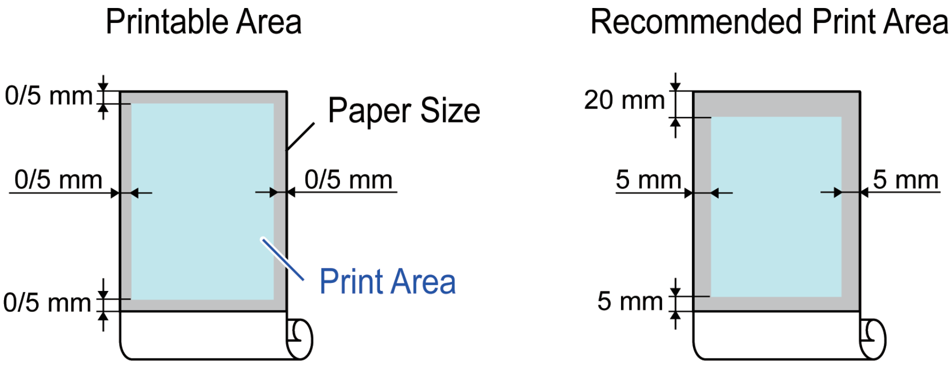
- Printable Area:

  A margin of 5 mm (0.20 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

- Recommended Print Area:

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



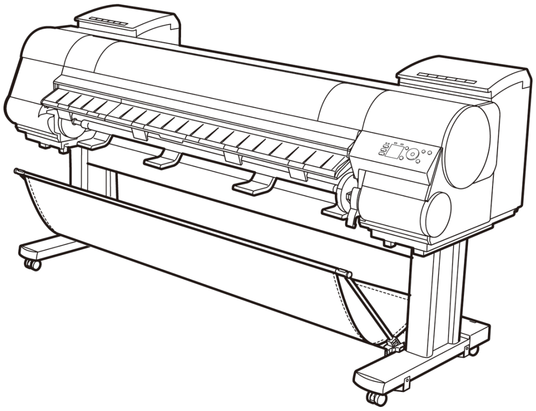
- Printable Area:

A margin of 5 mm (0.20 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") →P.774

- Recommended Print Area:

A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Appendix



How to use this manual

About This User Manual

- Symbols

The following symbols are used in this user manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

⚠	Warning	Indicates warning items for which operating error poses a risk of death or serious injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these warnings.
⚠	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these cautions.
✋	Important	Indicates important information and restrictions that definitely are to be followed during operation. Be sure to read this information to prevent troubles, malfunctions, or damage to equipment or property by operating errors.
✎	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.
Control panel messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software interface items (menus and buttons)	Example: Click **OK**.
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Cross-reference

Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Cross-reference in the same user manual	Example: see "Turning the Printer On and Off." →P.3 Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide .
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens

  - Figures in this user manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this user manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.

- Trademarks

  - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.

- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Adobe RGB is a color space proposed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and a trademark of this company.
- Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

• Copyright

- Unauthorized reproduction of this user manual in whole or part is prohibited.

• May we request

Thank you for understanding the following points.

- The information in this user manual is subject to change without notice.
- We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this user manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

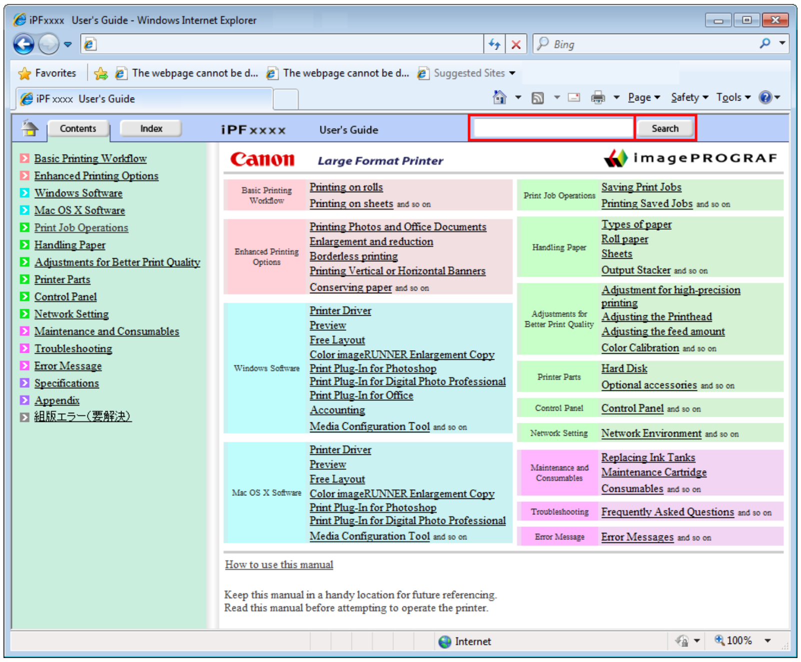
Searching Topics

You can find information in topics of this User Manual by searching for relevant terms.

1. Enter a term and click the **Search** button.

Note

- To search for multiple terms at once, enter a space between each term.



- Basic Printing Workflow
- Enhanced Printing Options
- Windows Software
- Mac OS X Software
- Print Job Operations
- Handling Paper
- Adjustments for Better Print Quality
- Printer Parts
- Control Panel
- Network Setting
- Maintenance and Consumables
- Troubleshooting
- Error Message
- Specifications
- Appendix
- 組版エラー(要解決)

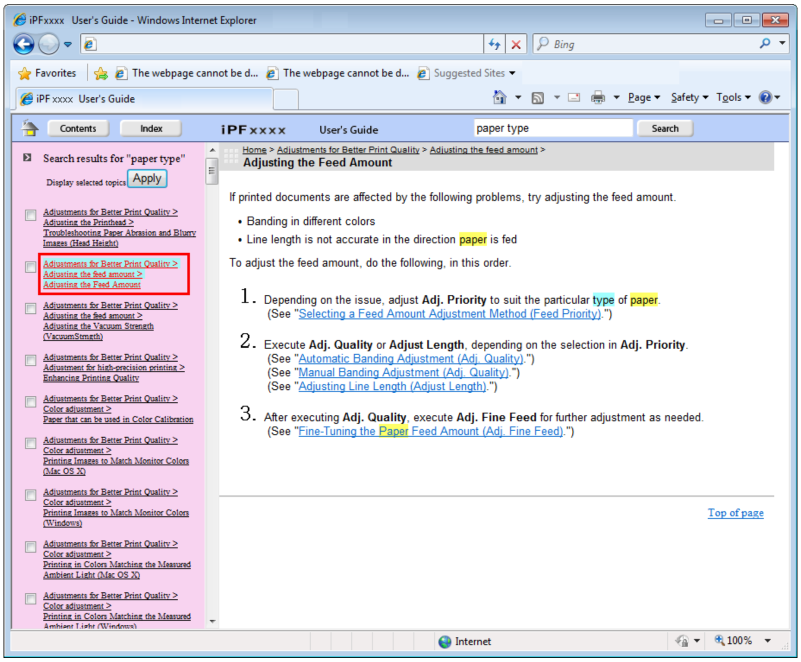
Basic Printing Workflow	Printing on rolls Printing on sheets and so on
Enhanced Printing Options	Printing Photos and Office Documents Enlargement and reduction Borderless printing Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners Conserving paper and so on
Windows Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Print Plug-In for Office Accounting Media Configuration Tool and so on
Mac OS X Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Media Configuration Tool and so on
Print Job Operations	Saving Print Jobs Printing Saved Jobs and so on
Handling Paper	Types of paper Roll paper Sheets Output Stacker and so on
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	Adjustment for high-precision printing Adjusting the Printhead Adjusting the feed amount Color Calibration and so on
Printer Parts	Hard Disk Optional accessories and so on
Control Panel	Control Panel and so on
Network Setting	Network Environment and so on
Maintenance and Consumables	Replacing Ink Tanks Maintenance Cartridge Consumables and so on
Troubleshooting	Frequently Asked Questions and so on
Error Message	Error Messages and so on

How to use this manual

Keep this manual in a handy location for future referencing.
Read this manual before attempting to operate the printer.

Search results are listed at left.

2. Click a topic you want to read.
   The terms you searched for will be highlighted in the topic.



Search results for "paper type"

- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the Printhead > Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount > Adjusting the Feed Amount
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount > Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjustment for high-precision printing > Enhancing Printing Quality
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Paper that can be used in Color Calibration
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS X)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Mac OS X)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Windows)

Home > Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount >

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

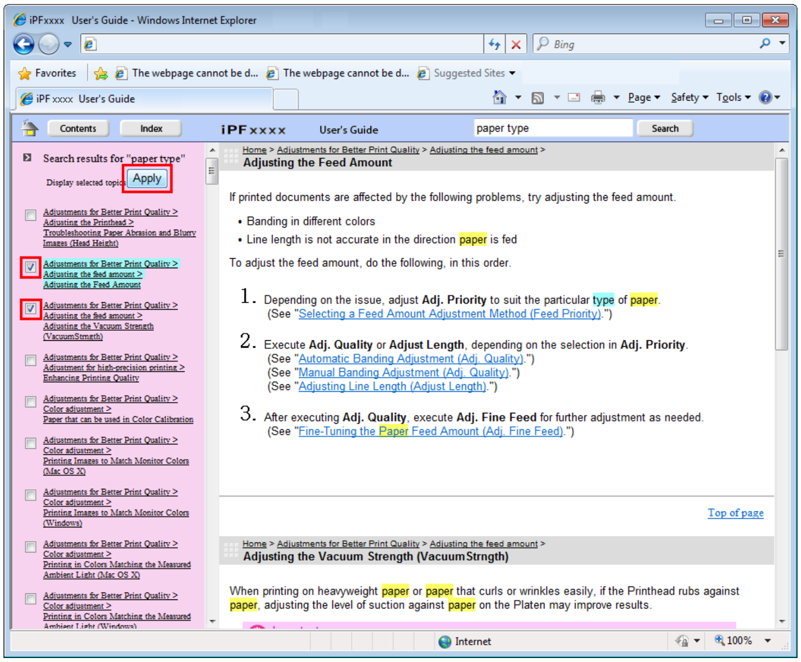
- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

1. Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper.
   (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).")
2. Execute **Adj. Quality** or **Adjust Length**, depending on the selection in **Adj. Priority**.
   (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).")
   (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).")
   (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).")
3. After executing **Adj. Quality**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** for further adjustment as needed.
   (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).")

Top of page

To review multiple topics at once, select the check box of desired topics and click the **Apply** button.



Search results for "paper type"

- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the Printhead > Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)
- ☑ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount > Adjusting the Feed Amount
- ☑ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount > Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjustment for high-precision printing > Enhancing Printing Quality
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Paper that can be used in Color Calibration
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Mac OS X)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing Images to Match Monitor Colors (Windows)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Mac OS X)
- ☐ Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Color adjustment > Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (Windows)

Home > Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount >

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

1. Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper.
   (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).")
2. Execute **Adj. Quality** or **Adjust Length**, depending on the selection in **Adj. Priority**.
   (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).")
   (See "Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality).")
   (See "Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length).")
3. After executing **Adj. Quality**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** for further adjustment as needed.
   (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed).")

Top of page

Home > Adjustments for Better Print Quality > Adjusting the feed amount >

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the Printhead rubs against paper, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

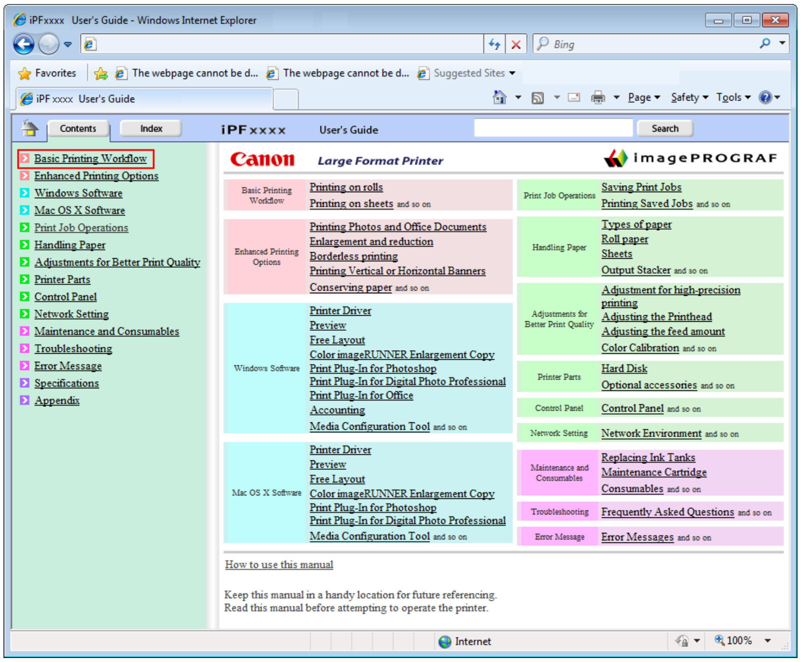
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

You can select a group of topics in the table of contents or individual topics in this manual for printing.
The following procedure describes how to do this, using the information in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

Printing a group of topics in the manual

When you access printable HTML versions of the content from section titles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.



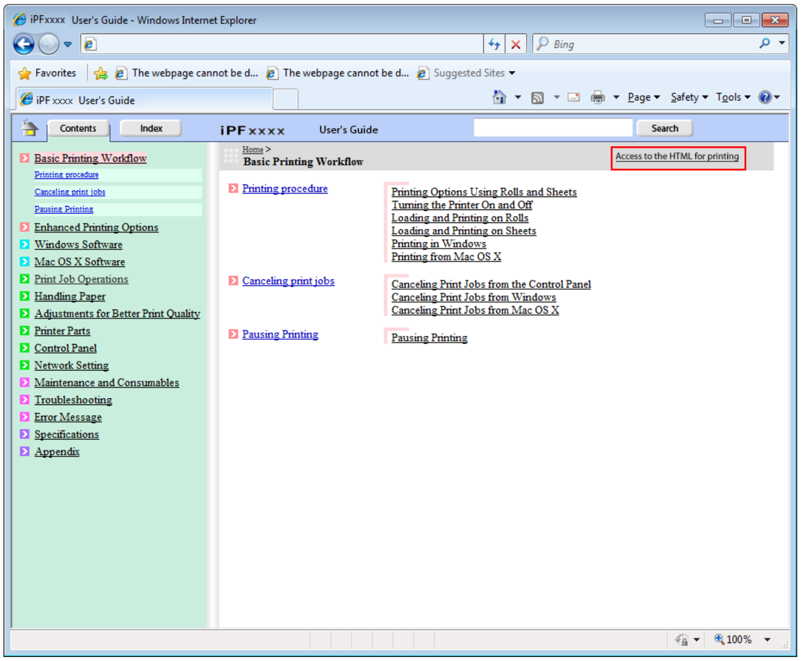
- Basic Printing Workflow
- Enhanced Printing Options
- Windows Software
- Mac OS X Software
- Print Job Operations
- Handling Paper
- Adjustments for Better Print Quality
- Printer Parts
- Control Panel
- Network Setting
- Maintenance and Consumables
- Troubleshooting
- Error Message
- Specifications
- Appendix

Basic Printing Workflow	Printing on rolls Printing on sheets and so on	Print Job Operations	Saving Print Jobs Printing Saved Jobs and so on
Enhanced Printing Options	Printing Photos and Office Documents Enlargement and reduction Borderless printing Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners Conserving paper and so on	Handling Paper	Types of paper Roll paper Sheets Output Stacker and so on
Windows Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Print Plug-In for Office Accounting Media Configuration Tool and so on	Adjustments for Better Print Quality	Adjustment for high-precision printing Adjusting the Printhead Adjusting the feed amount Color Calibration and so on
		Printer Parts	Hard Disk Optional accessories and so on
		Control Panel	Control Panel and so on
		Network Setting	Network Environment and so on
Mac OS X Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Media Configuration Tool and so on	Maintenance and Consumables	Replacing Ink Tanks Maintenance Cartridge Consumables and so on
		Troubleshooting	Frequently Asked Questions and so on
		Error Message	Error Messages and so on

How to use this manual

Keep this manual in a handy location for future referencing.
Read this manual before attempting to operate the printer.

2. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.

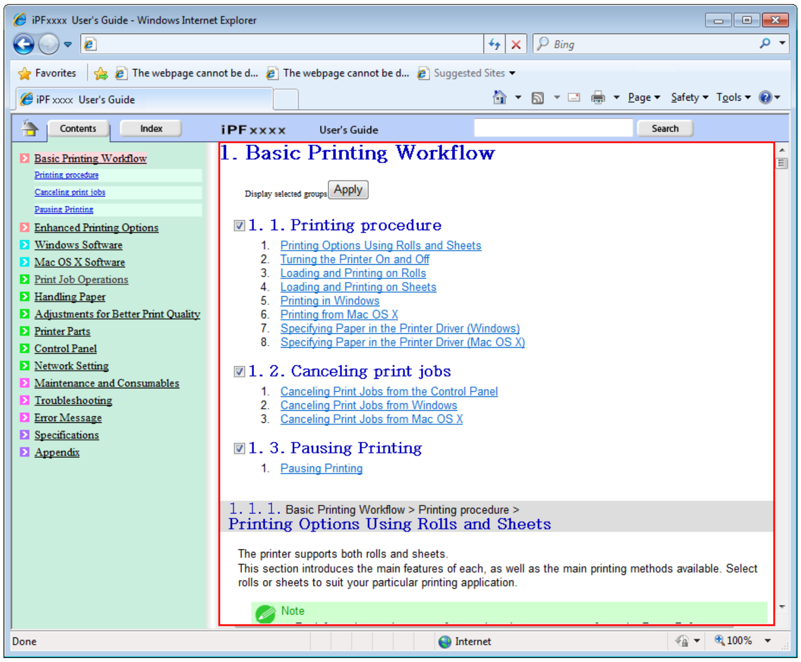

iPFxxxx User's Guide - Windows Internet Explorer
Bing
Favorites
The webpage cannot be d...
The webpage cannot be d...
Suggested Sites
iPF xxxx User's Guide
Page
Safety
Tools
Contents
Index
iPFxxxx
User's Guide
Search
Access to the HTML for printing
100%

- Basic Printing Workflow
  - Printing procedure
  - Canceling print jobs
  - Pausing Printing
- Enhanced Printing Options
- Windows Software
- Mac OS X Software
- Print Job Operations
- Handling Paper
- Adjustments for Better Print Quality
- Printer Parts
- Control Panel
- Network Setting
- Maintenance and Consumables
- Troubleshooting
- Error Message
- Specifications
- Appendix

Home >
Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure	Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets Turning the Printer On and Off Loading and Printing on Rolls Loading and Printing on Sheets Printing in Windows Printing from Mac OS X
Canceling print jobs	Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel Canceling Print Jobs from Windows Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X
Pausing Printing	Pausing Printing

The topics in **Basic Printing Workflow** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



1. Basic Printing Workflow

Display selected groups Apply

☑ 1. 1. Printing procedure

1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Turning the Printer On and Off
3. Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. Printing in Windows
6. Printing from Mac OS X
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

☑ 1. 2. Canceling print jobs

1. Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel
2. Canceling Print Jobs from Windows
3. Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

☑ 1. 3. Pausing Printing

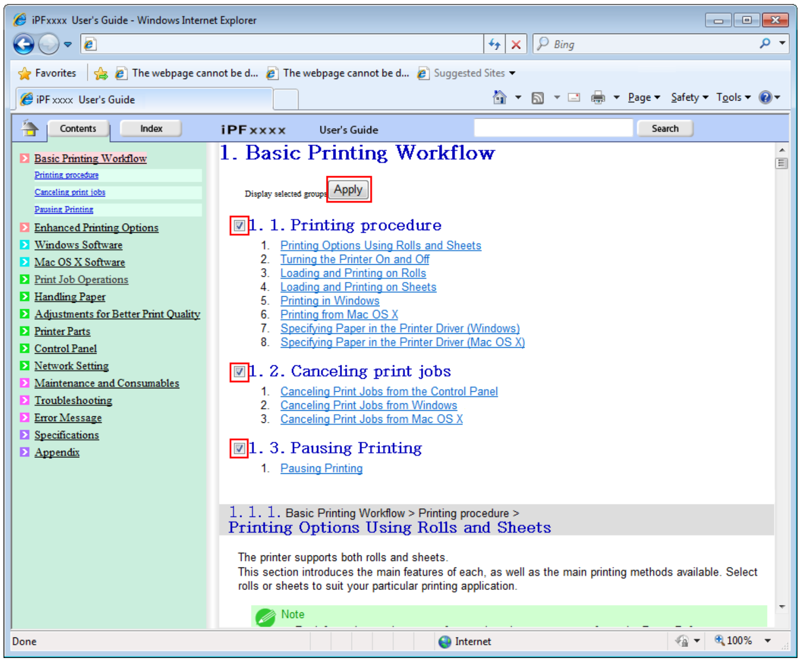
1. Pausing Printing

1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

3. Clear the sections you will not print and click the **Apply** button.



1. Basic Printing Workflow

Display selected groups Apply

☑ 1. 1. Printing procedure

1. Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. Turning the Printer On and Off
3. Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. Printing in Windows
6. Printing from Mac OS X
7. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

☑ 1. 2. Canceling print jobs

1. Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel
2. Canceling Print Jobs from Windows
3. Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

☑ 1. 3. Pausing Printing

1. Pausing Printing

1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

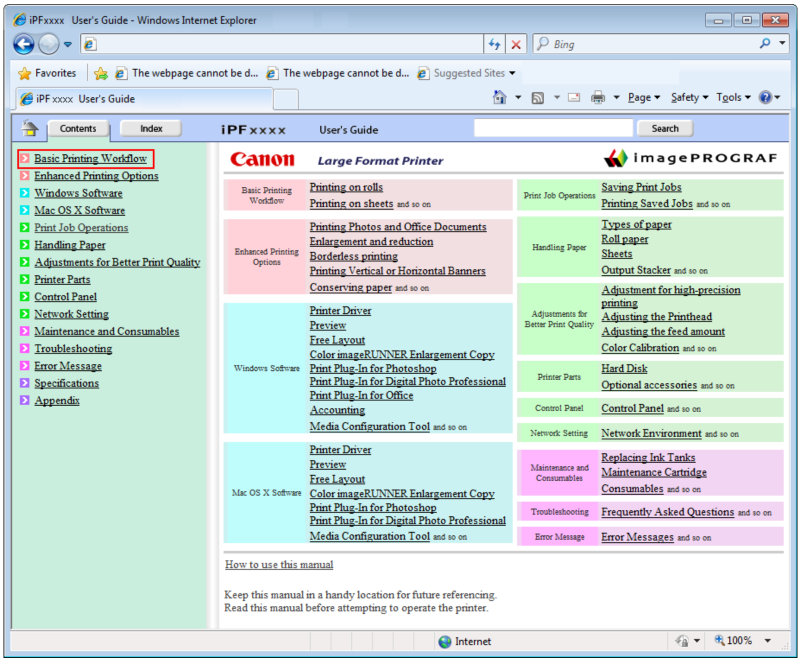
The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

Printing a group of individual topics in the manual

When you access printable HTML versions from subtitles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.



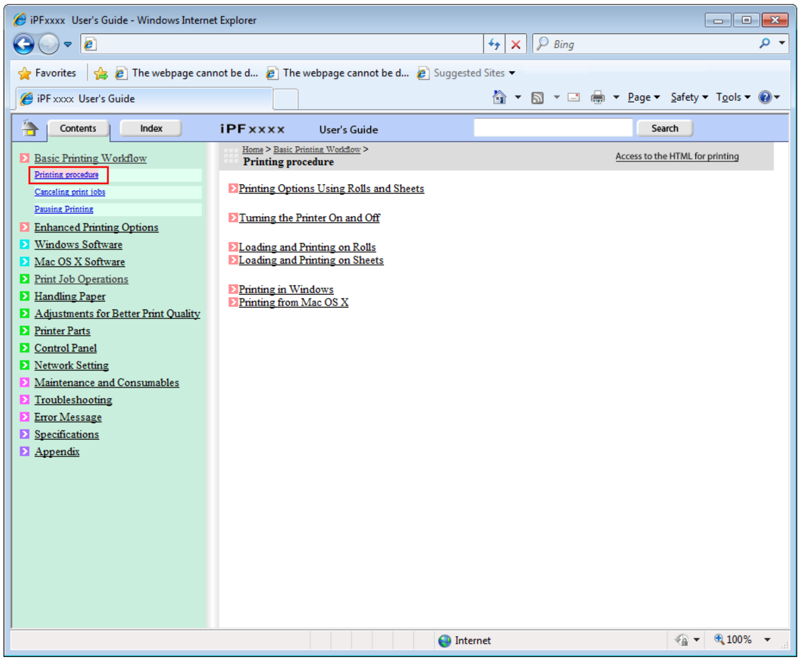
- Basic Printing Workflow
- Enhanced Printing Options
- Windows Software
- Mac OS X Software
- Print Job Operations
- Handling Paper
- Adjustments for Better Print Quality
- Printer Parts
- Control Panel
- Network Setting
- Maintenance and Consumables
- Troubleshooting
- Error Message
- Specifications
- Appendix

Basic Printing Workflow	Printing on rolls Printing on sheets and so on
Enhanced Printing Options	Printing Photos and Office Documents Enlargement and reduction Borderless printing Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners Conserving paper and so on
Windows Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Print Plug-In for Office Accounting Media Configuration Tool and so on
Mac OS X Software	Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Photoshop Print Plug-In for Digital Photo Professional Media Configuration Tool and so on
Print Job Operations	Saving Print Jobs Printing Saved Jobs and so on
Handling Paper	Types of paper Roll paper Sheets Output Stacker and so on
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	Adjustment for high-precision printing Adjusting the Printhead Adjusting the feed amount Color Calibration and so on
Printer Parts	Hard Disk Optional accessories and so on
Control Panel	Control Panel and so on
Network Setting	Network Environment and so on
Maintenance and Consumables	Replacing Ink Tanks Maintenance Cartridge Consumables and so on
Troubleshooting	Frequently Asked Questions and so on
Error Message	Error Messages and so on

How to use this manual

Keep this manual in a handy location for future referencing.
Read this manual before attempting to operate the printer.

2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow**, click **Printing Procedure**.

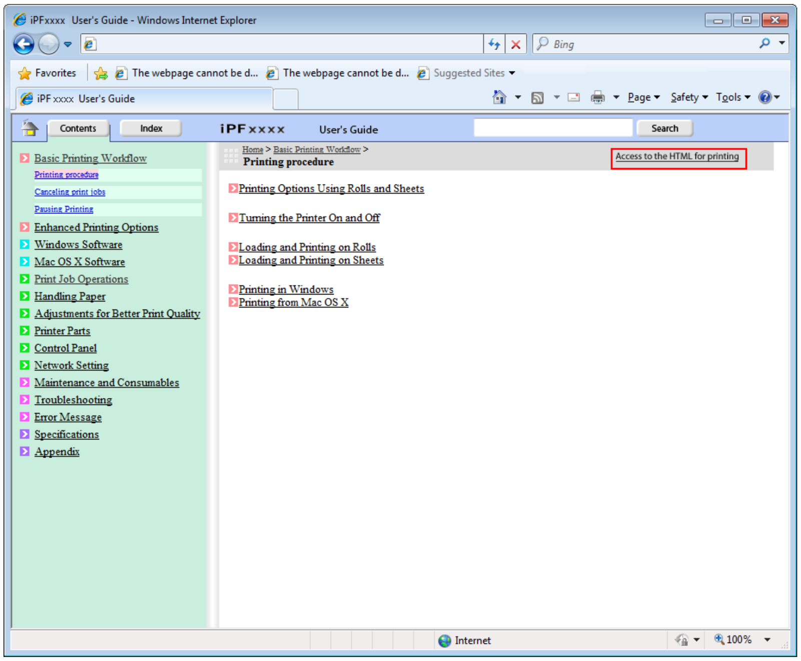


- Basic Printing Workflow
  - Printing procedure
  - Canceling print jobs
  - Pausing Printing
- Enhanced Printing Options
- Windows Software
- Mac OS X Software
- Print Job Operations
- Handling Paper
- Adjustments for Better Print Quality
- Printer Parts
- Control Panel
- Network Setting
- Maintenance and Consumables
- Troubleshooting
- Error Message
- Specifications
- Appendix

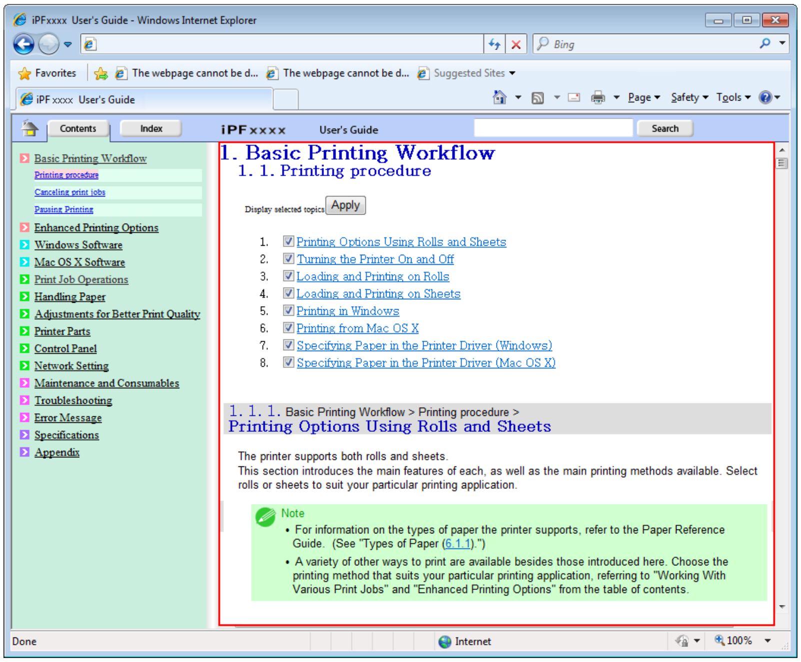
Home > Basic Printing Workflow >
Printing procedure
Access to the HTML for printing

- Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
- Turning the Printer On and Off
- Loading and Printing on Rolls
- Loading and Printing on Sheets
- Printing in Windows
- Printing from Mac OS X

3. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.



The topics in **Printing Procedure** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



1. Basic Printing Workflow

1. 1. Printing procedure

Display selected topics Apply

1. ☑ Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. ☑ Turning the Printer On and Off
3. ☑ Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. ☑ Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. ☑ Printing in Windows
6. ☑ Printing from Mac OS X
7. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

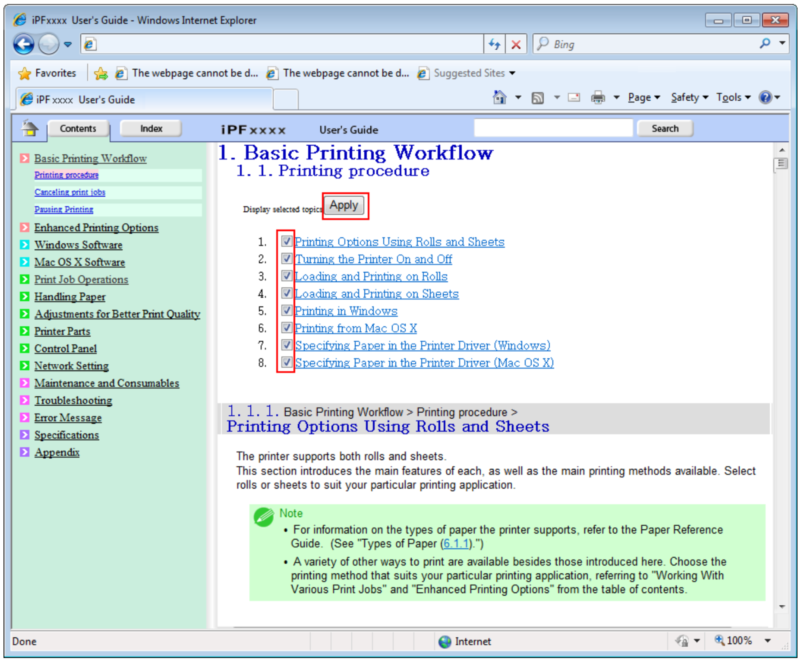
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper (6.1.1).")
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

4. Clear the topics you will not print and click the **Apply** button.



1. Basic Printing Workflow

1. 1. Printing procedure

1. ☑ Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. ☑ Turning the Printer On and Off
3. ☑ Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. ☑ Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. ☑ Printing in Windows
6. ☑ Printing from Mac OS X
7. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note
- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper (6.1.1).")
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

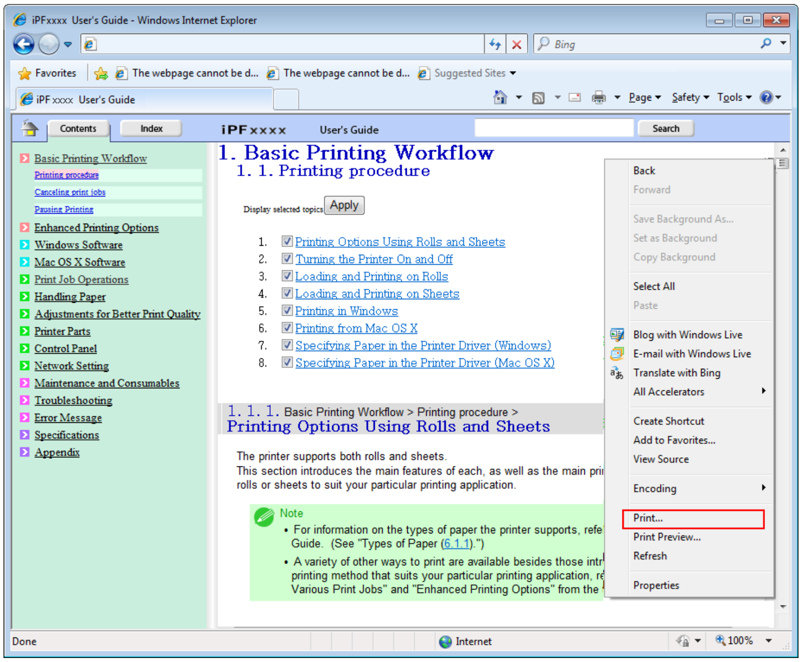
Printing selected topics

Print selected topics as follows.

1. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.

- Windows

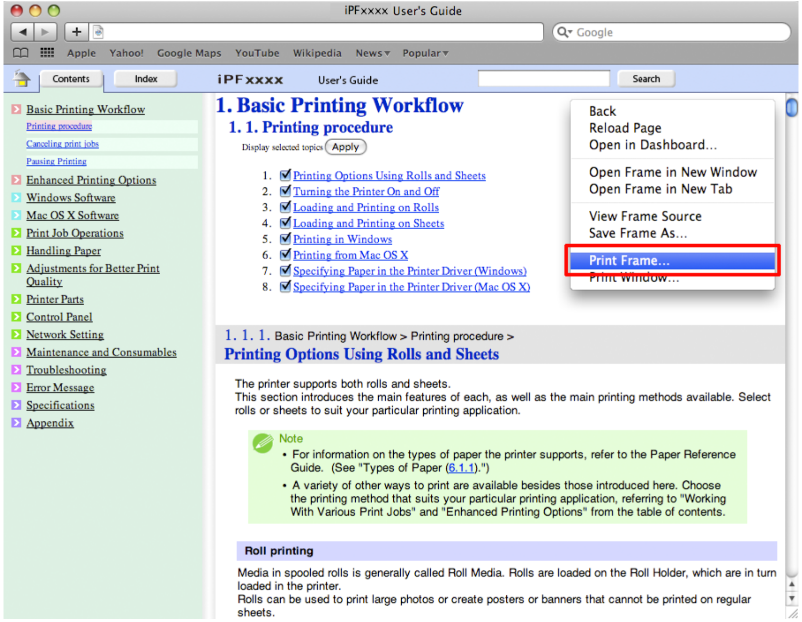
In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link.In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.



1. Basic Printing Workflow
1. 1. Printing procedure
1. ☑ Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. ☑ Turning the Printer On and Off
3. ☑ Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. ☑ Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. ☑ Printing in Windows
6. ☑ Printing from Mac OS X
7. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)
1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main pri
rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

- Macintosh

On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.



1. Basic Printing Workflow

1. 1. Printing procedure

1. ☑ Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets
2. ☑ Turning the Printer On and Off
3. ☑ Loading and Printing on Rolls
4. ☑ Loading and Printing on Sheets
5. ☑ Printing in Windows
6. ☑ Printing from Mac OS X
7. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)
8. ☑ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

1. 1. 1. Basic Printing Workflow > Printing procedure >

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.
This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.

Note

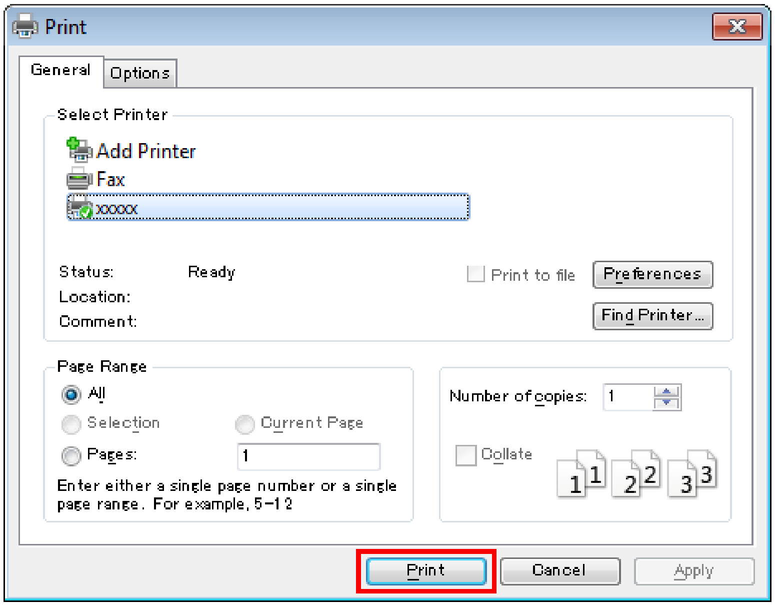
- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper (6.1.1).")
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.
Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

2. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



Status: Ready
Location:
Comment:

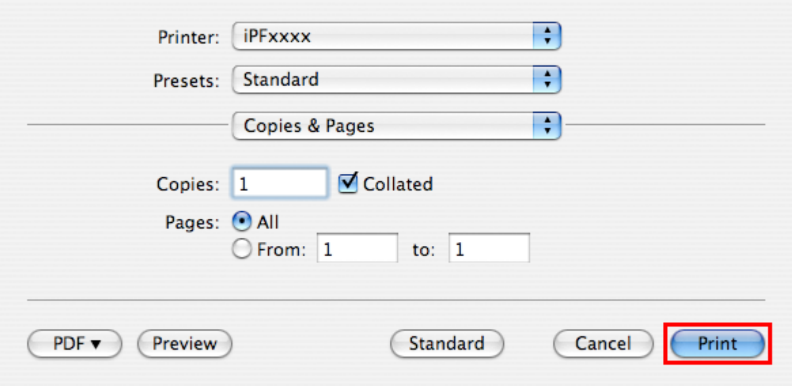
● All
○ Selection ○ Current Page
○ Pages: 1

Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12

Number of copies: 1

☐ Collate

- Macintosh



Printer: iPFxxxx

Presets: Standard

Copies & Pages

Copies: 1 ☑ Collated

Pages: ● All

○ From: 1 to: 1

Note

- To print only individual topics that are displayed, use this method.

Disposal of the product

WEEE Directive

EUROPE ONLY

European Union (and EEA) only.

These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and/or your national laws implementing those Directives. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries and accumulators. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie (en EER).

Met deze symbolen wordt aangegeven dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2002/96/EC), de richtlijn 2006/66/EC betreffende batterijen en accu's en/of de plaatselijk geldende wetgeving waarin deze richtlijnen zijn geïmplementeerd, niet bij het normale huisvuil mag worden weggegooid. Dit product dient te worden ingeleverd bij een hiervoor aangewezen inzamelpunt, bijv. door dit in te leveren bij een hiertoe erkend verkooppunt bij aankoop van een gelijksoortig product, of bij een officiële inzameldienst voor de recycling van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA) en batterijen en accu's. Door de potentiële gevaarlijke stoffen die gewoonlijk gepaard gaan met EEA, kan onjuiste verwerking van dit type afval mogelijk nadelige gevolgen hebben voor het milieu en de menselijke gezondheid. Uw medewerking bij het op juiste wijze weggooien van dit product draagt bij tot effectief gebruik van natuurlijke bronnen. Voor verdere informatie over recycling van dit product kunt u contact opnemen met uw plaatselijke gemeente, afvaldienst, officiële dienst voor klein chemisch afval of afvalstortplaats, of kunt u terecht op www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EER: Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)

Endast för EU (och EEA).

De här symbolerna anger att produkten inte får slängas i hushållssoporna enligt WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EG), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EG) och/eller nationell lagstiftning som implementerar dessa direktiv. Produkten ska lämnas in på en där för anvisad insamlingsplats, t.ex. hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, liknande köps (en mot en) eller på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) samt batterier och ackumulatorer. Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha negativ inverkan på miljön och människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som vanligen återfinns i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning. Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av produkten bidrar till effektiv användning av naturresurserna. Om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna in den här produkten, kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet eller företag för avfallshantering eller besök www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)

Pouze Evropská unie (a EHP)

Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice o OEEZ (2002/96/ES), směrnice o bateriích (2006/66/ES) a/nebo podle vnitrostátních právních prováděcích předpisů k těmto směrnicím nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností. Tento výrobek má být vrácen do určeného sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek, nebo do autorizovaného sběrného místa pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ) a baterií a akumulátorů. Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky.Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů. Chcete-li získat podrobné informace týkající se recyklace tohoto výrobku, obraťte se prosím na místní úřad, orgán pro nakládání s odpady, schválený systém nakládání s odpady či společnost zajišťující likvidaci domovního odpadu nebo navštivte webové stránky www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EHP: Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejnsko)

Gjelder kun EU (og EØS).

Disse symbolene indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsavfall, i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EF), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller nasjonal lov som har implementert disse direktivene. Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når en kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr) og batterier og akkumulatorer. Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr. Din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet vil bidra til effektiv bruk av naturressurser. Du kan få mer informasjon om resirkulering av dette produktet ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, avfallsadministrasjonen, et godkjent program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap, eller gå til www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EØS: Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Len Európska únia (a EHP)

Tieto symboly označujú, že podľa smernice o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) 2002/96/ES, smernice o batériách (2006/66/ES) a/alebo podľa vnútroštátnych právnych predpisov zahŕňajúcich tieto smernice sa tento produkt nesmie likvidovať spolu s domácim odpadom. Tento produkt je potrebné odovzdať do určenej zberne, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného produktu, alebo do autorizovaného zberného miesta na recykláciu odpadu z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ) a batérií a akumulátorov. Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky. Vašou spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii tohto produktu prispejete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov. Ďalšie informácie o recyklácii tohto produktu získate od svojho miestneho úradu, úradu zodpovedného za odpad, zo schváleného plánu o OEEZ alebo od spoločnosti zaisťujúcej likvidáciu domáceho odpadu alebo na webovej stránke www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EHP: Nórsko, Írsko a Lichtenštajnsko)

Solo per l'Unione Europea e lo Spazio Economico Europeo.

Questi simboli indicano che il prodotto non può essere smaltito con i rifiuti domestici, ai sensi della Direttiva RAEE (2002/96/CE), della Direttiva sulle Batterie (2006/66/CE) e/o delle leggi nazionali che attuano tali Direttive. Il prodotto deve essere conferito a punto di raccolta designato, ad esempio il rivenditore in caso di acquisto di un nuovo prodotto simile oppure un centro di raccolta autorizzato per il riciclaggio di rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche (RAEE) nonché di batterie e accumulatori. Un trattamento improprio di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere conseguenze negative sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana a causa delle sostanze potenzialmente nocive solitamente contenute in tali rifiuti. La collaborazione dell'utente per il corretto smaltimento di questo prodotto contribuirà a un utilizzo efficace delle risorse naturali ed eviterà di incorrere in sanzioni amministrative ai sensi dell'art. 50 e successivi del Decreto Legislativo n. 22/97.Per ulteriori informazioni sul riciclaggio di questo prodotto, contattare le autorità locali, l'ente responsabile della raccolta dei rifiuti, un rivenditore autorizzato o il servizio di raccolta dei rifiuti domestici, oppure visitare il sito www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Spazio Economico Europeo: Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)

Samo za Evropsko unijo (in Evropski gospodarski prostor).

TI simboli pomenijo, da tega izdelka skladno z Direktivo OEEO (2002/96/ES), Direktivo 2006/66/ES in/ali nacionalno zakonodajo, ki uvaja ti direktivi, ne smete odlagati z nesortiranimi gospodinjskimi odpadki. Ta izdelek je treba odnesti na izbrano zbirno mesto, t. j. pooblaščeno trgovino, kjer ob nakupu novega (podobnega) izdelka vrnete starega, ali na pooblaščeno zbirno mesto za ponovno uporabo odpadne električne in elektronske opreme (EEO) ter baterij in akumulatorjev. Neustrezno ravnanje s to vrsto odpadkov lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človeško zdravje zaradi potencialno nevarnih snovi, ki so pogosto povezane z EEO. Vaše sodelovanje pri pravilnem odlaganju tega izdelka predstavlja pomemben prispevek k smotrni izrabi naravnih virov. Za več informacij o ponovni uporabi tega izdelka se obrnite na lokalen mestni urad, pristojno službo za odpadke, predstavnika pooblaščenega programa za obdelavo odpadkov ali na lokalno komunalo. Lahko pa tudi obiščete našo spletno stran www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Evropski gospodarski prostor: Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)

Kizárólag az Európai Unió (valamint az EEA) részére.

Ezek a szimbólumok azt jelzik, hogy a termék hulladékkezelése a háztartási hulladéktól különválasztva, a WEEE - elektromos és elektronikus berendezések hulladékairól szóló (2002/96/EK) irányelvnek és, az elemekről és akkumulátorokról, valamint a hulladékelemekről és -akkumulátorokról szóló (2006/66/EK) irányelvnek megfelelően, és/vagy ezen irányelveknek megfelelő helyi előírások szerint történik. Ezen terméket az arra kijelölt gyűjtőhelyre kell juttatni, pl., hasonló termék vásárlásakor a régi becserélésére vonatkozó hivatalos program keretében, vagy az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések (EEE) hulladékainak gyűjtésére, valamint a hulladékelemek és hulladékakkumulátorok gyűjtésére kijelölt hivatalos gyűjtőhelyre. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok nem előírásszerű kezelése az elektromos és elektronikus berendezésekhez (EEE) általánosan kapcsolható potenciálisan veszélyes anyagok révén hatással lehet a környezetre és az egészségre. Ezen termék megfelelő módon történő eltávolításával Ön is hozzájárul a természeti források hatékony használatához. A termék újrahasznosítását illetően informálódjon a helyi polgármesteri hivatalnál, a helyi közterület-fenntartó vállalatnál, a hivatalos hulladéklerakó telephelyen, vagy a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző szolgáltatónál, illetve látogasson el a www.canon-europe.com/environment internetes oldalra.

(EEA : Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein)

Apenas para a União Europeia (e AEE)

Estes símbolos indicam que este produto não deve ser eliminado juntamente com o seu lixo doméstico, segundo a Directiva REEE de 2002/96/CE, a Directiva de Baterias (2006/66/CE) e / ou a sua legislação nacional que transponha estas Directivas. Este produto deve ser entregue num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo num local autorizado de troca quando compra um equipamento novo idêntico, ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar equipamento eléctrico e electrónico (EEE) em fim de vida, bem como pilhas e baterias. O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduos pode ter um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana, devido a substâncias potencialmente perigosas que estão associadas com equipamentos do tipo EEE. A sua cooperação no tratamento correcto deste produto irá contribuir para a utilização mais eficaz dos recursos naturais. Para obter mais informações acerca de como reciclar este produto, por favor contacte as suas autoridades locais responsáveis pela matéria, serviço de recolha aprovado para pilhas e baterias ou serviço de recolha de resíduos sólidos domésticos da sua municipalidade, ou visite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(AEE: Noruega, Islândia, e Liechtenstein)

Üksnes Euroopa Liit (ja Euroopa Majanduspiirkond).

Antud sümbolid viitavad sellele, et vastavalt WEEE direktiivile (2002/96/EÜ), patareide direktiivile (2006/66/EÜ) ja/või nimetatud direktiive rakendavatele riiklikele õigusaktidele ei või seda toodet visata ära koos majapidamisjäätmetega. Antud toode tuleb anda vastavasse kogumispunkti, nt üks ühe vastu, kui ostad uue sarnase toote, või vastavasse elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmete ning patareide ja akude ümbertöötlemiseks mõeldud kogumispunkti. Antud liiki prügi vale käitlemine võib kahjustada keskkonda ja inimeste tervist elektri- ja elektroonikajäätmetes tavaliselt leiduvate potentsiaalselt ohtlike ainete tõttu. Antud toote ettenähtud nõuete kohase kõrvaldamisega aitate efektiivselt kasutada loodusvarasid. Täiendava teabe saamiseks antud toote ringlussevõtu kohta võtke ühendust kohaliku linnavalitsusega, jäätmekäitlejaga, lubatud skeemiga või majapidamisjäätmete prügilateenistusega või külastage Interneti-lehekülge www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Euroopa Majanduspiirkond: Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein)

Paredzēts tikai Eiropas Savienības valstīm (un EVA).

Šie simboli norāda, ka atbilstoši ES direktīvai par izlietotu elektrisku un elektronisku aparatūru (2002/96/EK), direktīvai par baterijām un akumulatoriem (2006/66/EK) un vietējai likumdošanai no šī produkta nedrīkst atbrīvoties, izmetot to kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem. Šis produkts ir jānodod piemērotā savākšanas punktā, piemēram, autorizētā veikalā, kur iegādājaties līdzīgu jaunu produktu un veco atstājat vietā, vai autorizētā dienestā, kas nodarbojas ar izlietotas elektriskās un elektroniskās aparatūras (waste electrical and electronic equipment — WEEE) otrreizēju pārstrādi. Nepareizi apejoties ar šāda veida izlietotu aparatūru, var apdraudēt vidi un cilvēka veselību potenciāli bīstamu vielu dēļ, kas parasti ietilpst elektriskajā un elektroniskajā aparatūrā lietotajos sakausējumos. Turklāt pareiza atbrīvošanās no šī produkta sekmē racionālu dabas resursu izlietojumu. Lai saņemtu plašāku informāciju par vietām, kur izlietotu aparatūru var nodot otrreizējai pārstrādei, sazinieties ar vietējās pašvaldības pārstāvjiem, dienestu, kas atbild par atkritumu savākšanu, pilnvarotu WEEE struktūru vai iestādi, kas veic atbrīvošanos no sadzīves atkritumiem vai apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Eiropas Ekonomiskā zona: Norvēģija, Īslande un Lihtenšteina).

Tik Europos Sąjungai (ir Europos Ekonominei Zonai)

Šie simboliai reiškia, kad šio gaminio negalima išmesti į buitines atliekas, kaip reikalauja WEEE Direktyva (2002/96/EB) ir Baterijų Direktyva (2006/66/EB) ir (ar) jūsų šalies nacionaliniai įstatymai, kuriais šios Direktyvos yra įgyvendinamos. Šį gaminį reikia pristatyti į specialų surinkimo punktą, pavyzdžiui, mainais, kai jūs perkate naują panašų gaminį arba į specialią surinkimo vietą, kuri perdirba elektrinės ir elektroninės įrangos atliekas bei naudotas baterijas ir akumuliatorius. Dėl netinkamo šio tipo atliekų tvarkymo gali nukentėti aplinka bei iškyla grėsmė žmogaus sveikatai dėl potencialai kenksmingų medžiagų, iš esmės susijusių su elektrine ir elektronine įranga. Bendradarbiaudami teisingai utilizuojant šiuos gaminius, jūs padėsite efektyviai naudoti gamtinius išteklius. Daugiau informacijos apie gaminio perdirbimą jums gali suteikti vietinis biuras, atliekų tvarkymo bendrovė, sertifikuoti organai ar buitinių atliekų surinkimo įmonės. Be to, aplankykite interneto svetainę www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europos Ekonominė Zona: Norvegija, Islandija ir Lichtenšteinas)

Union européenne (et Espace économique européen) uniquement.

Ces symboles indiquent que ce produit ne doit pas être mis au rebut avec les ordures ménagères, comme le spécifient la Directive européenne DEEE (2002/96/EC), la Directive européenne relative à l'élimination des piles et des accumulateurs usagés (2006/66/EC) et les lois en vigueur dans votre pays, appliquant ces directives. Ce produit doit être confié à un point de collecte désigné, par exemple, chaque fois que vous achetez un produit similaire neuf, ou à un point de collecte agréé pour le recyclage équipements électriques ou électroniques (EEE) et des piles et accumulateurs. Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques ou électroniques. Votre coopération envers la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit contribuera à l'utilisation efficace des ressources naturelles. Pour de plus amples informations sur le recyclage de ce produit, veuillez contacter vos services municipaux, votre éco-organisme ou les autorités locales. Vous pouvez également vous rendre sur le site www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Espace économique européen : Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein)

Tylko kraje Unii Europejskiej (i Europejskiego Obszaru Gospodarczego).

Te symbole oznaczają, że produkt należy wyrzucać oddzielnie od odpadów domowych, zgodnie z dyrektywą WEEE w sprawie zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2002/96/EC) lub dyrektywą w sprawie baterii (2006/66/EC) i/lub przepisami krajowymi, wdrażającymi te dyrektywy. Zużyty sprzęt powinien zostać przekazany do punktu zbiórki sprzętu (EEE), a w przypadku zakupu nowego na zasadzie wymiany jeden do jednego przy zakupie podobnego co do rodzaju produktu. Użytkownicy baterii i akumulatorów mają obowiązek korzystać z dostępnego programu zwrotu, recyklingu i utylizacji baterii i akumulatorów. Niewłaściwe postępowanie z tego typu odpadami może mieć wpływ na środowisko i zdrowie ludzi ze względu na substancje potencjalnie niebezpieczne ogólnie związane ze zużytym sprzętem elektrycznym i elektronicznym. Państwa współpraca w zakresie właściwej utylizacji tego produktu przyczyni się do efektywnego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych. W celu uzyskania informacji o sposobie recyklingu tego produktu prosimy o kontakt z właściwym urzędem miejskim lub zakładem gospodarki komunalnej lub zapraszamy na stronę www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europejski Obszar Gospodarczy: Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)

Gælder kun i EU (og EØS).

Disse symboler betyder, at produktet ikke må bortskaffes sammen med husholdningsaffald i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2002/96/EF), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller den lokale lovgivning, som disse direktiver er gennemført i. Produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-for-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller på et godkendt indsamlingssted for genanvendeligt affald fra elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr samt for batterier og akkumulatorer. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan muligvis få negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige substanser, der generelt associeres med elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr. Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af produktet, bidrager dette også til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Kontakt din kommune, den lokale affaldsmyndighed, forvalterne af en godkendt affaldsordning eller det lokale affaldsanlæg, eller besøg www.canon-europe.com/environment for at få flere oplysninger om genbrug af dette produkt.

(EØS: Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση (και ΕΟΧ) μόνο.

Αυτά τα σύμβολα υποδεικνύουν ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία για τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2002/96/ΕΚ), την Οδηγία για τις Ηλεκτρικές Στήλες (2006/66/ΕΚ) ή/και την εθνική νομοθεσία που εφαρμόζει τις Οδηγίες εκείνες. Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής, όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ) και ηλεκτρικών στηλών και συσσωρευτών. Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων θα μπορούσε να έχει πιθανό αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικώς επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ. Η συνεργασία σας για τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με ανακύκλωση αυτού του προϊόντος, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων ή επισκεφθείτε τη διεύθυνση www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Ευρωπαϊκός Οικονομικός Χώρος: Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)

Sólo para la Unión Europea (y el Área Económica Europea).

Estos símbolos indican que este producto no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos de acuerdo con la Directiva sobre RAEE (2002/96/CE) y la Directiva sobre Pilas y Acumuladores (2006/66/CE) y/o la legislación nacional que implemente dichas Directivas. Este producto deberá entregarse en un punto de recogida designado, por ejemplo, en un establecimiento autorizado al adquirir un producto nuevo similar o en un centro autorizado para la recogida de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE), baterías y acumuladores. La gestión incorrecta de este tipo de residuos puede afectar al medio ambiente y a la salud humana debido a las sustancias potencialmente nocivas que suelen contener estos aparatos. Su cooperación en la correcta eliminación de este producto contribuirá al correcto aprovechamiento de los recursos naturales. Los usuarios tienen derecho a devolver pilas, acumuladores o baterías usados sin coste alguno. El precio de venta de pilas, acumuladores y baterías incluye el coste de la gestión medioambiental de su desecho, y bajo ninguna circunstancia se indicará por separado la cuantía de dicho coste en la información y la factura suministradas a los usuarios finales. Si desea más información sobre el reciclado de este producto, póngase en contacto con el departamento municipal, el servicio o el organismo encargado de la gestión de residuos domésticos o visite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Área Económica Europea: Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)

Vain EU- ja EEA-alueelle.

Nämä tunnukset osoittavat, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (WEEE-direktiivi, 2002/96/EY), paristoista ja akuista annettu direktiivi (2006/66/EY) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana. Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun tai paristojen ja akkujen keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää samalla luonnonvaroja. Jos haluat lisätietoja tämän tuotteen kierrätyksestä, ota yhteys kunnan jätehuoltoviranomaisiin tai käyttämääsi jätehuoltoyhtiöön tai käy osoitteessa www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA-maat: Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein)

Samo za Europsku uniju (i Europski gospodarski prostor).

Oznaka pokazuje da se baterije i akumulatori, korišteni u ovom proizvodu, odlažu odvojeno od kućnog otpada, u skladu s direktivom 2002/96/ EZ-a (“Direktiva”) i lokalnim zahtjevima koji primjenjuju te Direktive. Ovaj bi proizvod trebao biti prenesen do određene točke sakupljanja, npr. na neku dozvoljenu bazu u omjeru 1:1 kada kupite novi sličan proizvod, ili na ovlašteno mjesto za sakupljanje istrošene električne i elektronske opreme, (waste electrical and electronic equipment – EEE) baterija i akumulatora. Neodgovarajuće rukovanje ovim tipom otpada može utjecati na okoliš i ljudsko zdravlje zbog potencijalno opasnih supstanci koje se najčešće nalaze uz EEE. Vaša suradnja u pravilnom zbrinjavanju ovog proizvoda doprinijet će efikasnoj uporabi prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o recikliranju ovog proizvoda, molimo vas da kontaktirate svoj lokalni gradski ured, lokalne vlasti, pogledate odobrenu shemu, kontaktirajte vašu komunalnu službu za uklanjanje radioaktivnog otpada ili posjetite www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Europski gospodarski prostor: Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)

Nur Europäische Union (und EWR)

Diese Symbole weisen darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß WEEE-Richtlinie 2002/96/EG (Richtlinie über Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte), Batterien-Richtlinie (2006/66/EG) und/oder nationalen Gesetzen zur Umsetzung dieser Richtlinien nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf. Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines neuen ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten sowie Batterien und Akkumulatoren geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potenziell gefährlicher Stoffe, die häufig in Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte enthalten sind, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben. Durch Ihre Mitarbeit bei der sachgemäßen Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei. Um weitere Informationen über die Wiederverwertung dieses Produkts zu erhalten, wenden Sie sich an Ihre Stadtverwaltung, den öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, eine autorisierte Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihre Müllabfuhr oder besuchen Sie www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EWR: Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)

Только для Европейского Союза (Европейской экономической зоны).

Эти символы указывают, что данный продукт не должен утилизироваться вместе с хозяйственно-бытовыми отходами в соответствии с Директивой WEEE (2002/96/EC), Директивой об аккумуляторах 2006/66/EC и/или законами Вашей страны, осуществляющими данные Директивы. Данное изделие доолжно быть передано в предназначенный для этого пункт сбора, напрмер, на основе авторизованного обмена «один к одному», когда Вы покупаете подобное новое изделие, или в авторизованное место сбора отходов электрического и электронного оборудования, батарей и аккумуляторов для переработки. Неправильное обращение с отходами подобного типа может иметь влияние на окружающую среду и здоровье человека из-за потенциально опасных для здоровья веществ, которые, как правило, тесно связаны с электрическим и электронным оборудованием. Ваше сотрудничество в области правильной утилизации данного изделия вносит вклад в рациональное использование природных ресурсов. Чтобы узнать больше информации о переработке отходов батарей и аккумуляторов, пожалуйста, обратитесь в местную городскую администрацию, орган по работе с отходами или предприятие по утилизации отходов, или зайдите на www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Европейская экономическая зона: Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенштейн)

Només per a la Unió Europea (i EEA)

Aquests símbols indican que aquest producte no s’ha de llençar amb les escombraries de la llar, d’acord amb la RAEE (2002/96/EC), la Directiva relativa a piles i acumuladors (2006/66/EC) i la legislació nacional que implementi aquestes directives. Aquest producte s’hauria de lliurar en un dels punts de recollida designats, com per exemple, intercanviant un per un en comprar un producte similar o lliurant-lo en un lloc de recollida autoritzat per al reciclatge de residus d’aparells elèctrics i electrònics (EEE) i piles i acumuladors. La manipulació inadequada d’aquest tipus de residus podria tenir un impacte negatiu en l’entorn i en la salut humana, a causa de les substàncies potencialment perilloses que normalment estan associades a l’EEE. La vostra cooperació a l’hora de rebutjar correctament aquest producte contribuirà a la utilització efectiva dels recursos naturals. Els usuaris tenen dret a retornar les bateries o els acumuladors usats sense cap càrrec. El preu de venda de les bateries i els acumuladors inclou el cost de la gestió ambiental dels residus i, sota cap circumstància, l'import d'aquest cost s'especificarà per separat en aquest fullet o en la factura que es lliuri a l’usuari final. Per a més informació sobre el reciclatge d’aquest producte, contacteu amb l’oficina municipal, les autoritats encarregades dels residus, el pla de residus homologat o el servei de recollida d’escombraries domèstiques de la vostra localitat o visiteu www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Noruega, Islàndia i Liechtenstein)

Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană (şi EEA).

Aceste simboluri indică faptul că acest produs nu trebuie evacuat împreună cu deşeurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva WEEE (2002/96/EC), Directiva referitoare la baterii (2006/66/EC) şi/sau legile dvs. naţionale ce implementează aceste Directive. Acest produs trebuie înmânat punctului de colectare adecvat, ex: printr-un schimb autorizat unu la unu atunci când cumpăraţi un produs nou similar sau la un sit de colecţie autorizat pentru reciclarea reziduurilor de echipament electric şi electronic (EEE) şi baterii şi acumulatori. Administrarea neadecvată a acestui tip de deşeuri, ar putea avea un impact asupra mediului şi asupra sănătăţii umane datorită substanţelor cu potenţial de risc care sunt în general asociate cu EEE. Cooperarea dvs. în direcţia evacuării corecte a acestui produs va contribui la o utilizare eficientă a resurelor naturale. Pentru mai multe informaţii despre reciclarea acestui produs, vă rugăm să contactaţi biroul dvs. local, autorităţile responsabile cu deşeurile, schema aprobată sau serviciul dvs. responsabil cu deşeurile menajere sau vizitaţi-ne la www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norvegia, Islanda, Lichtenstein)

Yalnızca Avrupa Birliği (ve AEA).

Bu simgeler, WEEE Direktifi (2002/96/AT), Pil Direktifi (2006/66/AT) ve/veya bu Direktifleri uygulamaya koyan ulusal kanunlarınız uyarınca bu ürünün evsel atıklarınızla birlikte atılmaması gerektiğini gösterir. Bu ürün örneğin, benzer bir yeni ürün aldığınızda yetkili bir değiştirme esaslı toplama noktası veya elektrikli ve elektronik cihazlar (EEE) ile pil ve akü geri dönüşümü için yetkili bir toplama merkezi gibi belirlenmiş bir toplama noktasına götürülmelidir. Bu gibi atıkların gerektiği şekilde işlem görmemesi genel olarak EEE ile bağlantılı olan tehlikeli olabilecek maddeler nedeniyle çevre ve insan sağlığı üzerinde olumsuz etkiye yol açabilir. Bu ürünün düzgün şekilde atılması için işbirliği yapmanız doğal kaynakların verimli şekilde kullanımına katkıda bulunacaktır. Bu ürünün geri dönüşümü hakkında daha fazla bilgi için lütfen belediyeniz, atık merkeziniz, onaylı atık programı veya çöp toplama servisine başvurun ya da www.canon-europe.com/environment adresini ziyaret edin.

(AEA: Norveç, İzlanda ve Lihtenştayn)

Тільки для Європейського Союзу (та Європейської економічної зони).

Ці символи вказують, що даний продукт не повинен утилізуватися разом з господарчо-побутовими відходами згідно Директиви WEEE (2002/96/EC), Директиви про батареї 2006/66/EC та/або законів Вашої країни, що реалізують ці Директиви. Даний виріб повинно бути передано до призначенного приймального пункту, наприклад, на базі авторизованого обміну «один до одного», якщо Ви купуєте подібний новий продукт, або до авторизованого місця збору відходів електричного та електронного обладнання, батарей та акумуляторів для подальшої переробки. Невідповідне обходження з подібними відходами може завдавати впливу на оточуюче середовище і здоров’я людини через присутність потенційно небезпечних речовин, які загалом тісно пов’язані з електричним та електронним обладнанням. Ваша співпраця щодо відповідної утилізації даного виробу робить внесок у раціональне використання природніх ресурсів. Будь ласка, зверніться до місцевої адміністрації, органу по роботі з відходами або підприємства по утилізації відходів, щоб дізнатися більше про переробку даного виробу, або зверніться на www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(Європейська економічни зона: Норвегія, Ісландія та Ліхтенштейн)

Само за Европейския съюз (и ЕИП).

Тези символи указват, че този продукт не може да се изхвърля заедно с боклука от вашето домакинство, според Директивата ИУЕЕО (2002/96/ЕС), Директивата за батерии (2006/66/ЕС) и/или вашите национални закони, които изпълняват тези Директиви. Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в обозначен събирателен пункт, т.е. в одобрена база, когато купувате нов подобен продукт или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на отпадъци от електрическо и електронно оборудване (ЕЕО), батерии и акумулаторни батерии. Неправилното третиране на този вид отпадъци може да има потенциален вреден ефект върху околната среда и човешкото здраве, поради възможните опасни вещества, с които обикновено се свързва ЕЕО. Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективната употреба на естествените ресурси. За повече информация относно рециклирането на този продукт, моля свържете се с вашия местен офис, с органа, който отговаря за отпадъчните продукти, одобрената програма или учреждението по изхвърляне на боклука на вашето домакинство, или посетете www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(ЕИП: Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)

الاتحاد الأوروبي (والمنطقة الاقتصادية الأوروبية) فقط

تشير هذه الرموز إلى عدم التخلص من هذا المنتج في النفايات المنزلية العادية طبقاً لتوجيه الاتحاد الأوروبي WEEE (الخاص بنفايات المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية) (EC/96/2002)، والتوجيه الخاص بالبطاريات (EC/66/2006)، و/ أو القوانين المحلية التي تنطبق على تلك التوجيهات. يجب تقديم هذا المنتج إلى أحد مراكز تجميع النفايات المخصصة، على سبيل المثال، على أساس فردي عند شراء أحد المنتجات الجديدة المماثلة أو إلى موقع التجميع المعتمد الخاص بإعادة تدوير المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية (EEE) والبطاريات والمراكم. التعامل غير الصحيح مع هذا النوع من النفايات قد يكون له تأثيراً على البيئة وصحة الإنسان بسبب المواد الخطيرة المحتملة المرتبطة بشكل عام بتوجيه EEE (المعدات الكهربائية والإلكترونية). تعاونك في التخلص الملائم من هذا المنتج سيساهم في الاستعمال الفعال للمصادر الطبيعية. للحصول على مزيد من المعلومات حول إعادة تدوير هذا المنتج، برجاء الاتصال بمكتب المدينة المحلي الخاص بك، أو سلطة التخلص من النفايات أو البرنامج المعتمد أو مرفق خدمة التخلص من النفايات المنزلية أو التفضل بزيارة الموقع www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(المنطقة الاقتصادية الأوروبية : النرويج، وأيسلندا وليخنشتين)

Index